



Normal cellular constituents of adult human blood 1 Segmented (polymorphonuclear) neutrophil 2 band (stab) neutrophil 3 segmented eosinophil 4 basophil 5 small lymphocytes 6 large lymphocyte 7 monocytes 8 thrombocyte

# NORMAL VALUES IN CLINICAL MEDICINE

By

F WILLIAM SUNDERMAN, M D , Ph D

Professor of Experimental Medicine and Clinical Pathology University  
of Texas Postgraduate School of Medicine Chief of The Department of  
Clinical Pathology and Director of Clinical Research M D Anderson  
Hospital for Cancer Research Houston Texas

And

FREDERICK BOERNER, V M D

Late Associate Professor of Clinical Bacteriology Graduate School  
of Medicine University of Pennsylvania and Assistant Professor of  
Bacteriology, The School of Medicine University of Pennsylvania  
Bacteriologist The Graduate Hospital of Philadelphia Advanced  
Bacteriologist Pennsylvania Department of Health

ILLUSTRATED

W B SAUNDERS COMPANY

Philadelphia & London

1949

Copyright 1949 by W B Saunders Company

---

Copyrighted by International Copyright Union

---

All Rights Reserved

This book is protected by copyright. No part of it  
may be duplicated or reproduced in any manner  
without written permission from the publisher.

---

MADE IN U S A

---

PRESS OF

W B SAUNDERS COMPANY  
PHILADELPHIA

## COLLABORATORS

- ALLAN JOHN HAMILTON A B M D** Associate in Orthopedic Surgery <sup>University of</sup> Pennsylvania School of Medicine (Skel ton and Skeletal Muscles)
- ALPHTON J L T B S DDS Sc D** Professor of Bacteriology and Dean School of Dentistry University of Pennsylvania (Teeth and Saliva)
- ATKINS JOSEPH P A B M D M Sc (Med)** Assistant Professor of Bronchology and Esophagology Medical School of the University of Pennsylvania Assistant Professor of Bronchoesophagology and Laryngeal Surgery Graduate School of Medicine University of Pennsylvania (Upper Respiratory Tract)
- AUSTIN J HAROLD B S M D** Professor of Research Medicine School of Medicine University of Pennsylvania (Foreword)
- BERMAN HERMAN A B M D Sc D (Med)** Professor of Dermatology and Syphilology Graduate School of Medicine University of Pennsylvania Dermatologist to Pennsylvania Ho pital Dermatologist to Radium Clinic Philadelphia General Hospital (Skin and Appendages)
- BELLFT SAMUEL M D** Assistant Professor of Cardiology Graduate School of Medicine University of Pennsylvania Cardiologist Philadelphia General Hospital (Heart)
- BRADBURY SAMUEL M D** Director Service Department of Medicine Germantown Dispensary and Hospital Philadelphia Medical Director Outpatient Department Pennsylvania Hospital (Drugs)
- BURDICK E DOUGLASS Ph D** Associate Professor of Economic and Social Statistics Wharton School Assistant Professor of Vital Statistics and Biometry Medical School University of Pennsylvania (Statistics)
- BURKET LESTER W DDS M D** Professor of Oral Medicine Dental School University of Pennsylvania Professor of Oral Medicine Graduate School of Medicine University of Pennsylvania (Teeth and Saliva)
- COHEN REUBEN J A B M D** Instructor in Medicine School of Medicine University of Pennsylvania Instructor in Medicine Henry Phipps Institute Philadelphia Assistant Visiting Physician Department of Tuberculosis Philadelphia General Hospital Clinical Assistant in Medicine Mt Sinai Hospital Philadelphia (Chest)
- COPELAND BRADLEY A B M D** Assistant in Clinical Pathology, University of Texas M D Anderson Hospital Houston Texas (Tolerance Tests Hemoglobin Porphyrins)
- CUSTER R PHILIP M D** Director of Laboratories The Presbyterian Hospital Philadelphia Assistant Professor of Pathology University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine (Bone Marrow)
- FINKELSTEIN ARTHUR A B M Sc (Med) M D** Director Department of Radiology Graduate Hospital University of Pennsylvania Associate Professor of Radiology Graduate School of Medicine University of Pennsylvania (X ray)
- FROST JOHN W M D** Assistant Instructor in Medicine Medical School University of Pennsylvania (Circulation Time)
- GILSON G JOHN A B M D** Bishop Matthews Fellow and Assistant Instructor in Urology University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine and Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania Assistant Urologist Children's Hospital of Philadelphia (Urology)

\* Deceased



- GRIFFITH JOHN Q JR M D** Research Foundation 133 S 36th St Philadelphia Pa  
(Blood Pressure)
- HENNY GEORGE C AB MS M D** Professor of Medical Physics Temple University  
Medical School (Isotopes)
- HUNSCHER MARTHA ALDERMAN BS** Director of Food Clinic Pennsylvania Hospital  
(Food Values)
- JOHNSON, THOMAS A AB M D** Associate Professor of Gastroenterology Graduate  
School of Medicine University of Pennsylvania (Digestive System)
- JONAS LEON M D** Associate in Medicine University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine  
Associate Pepper Laboratory University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine (Metab-  
olism)
- MACHELLA THOMAS E AB M D** Assistant Professor of Medicine Associate in  
Physiology School of Medicine University of Pennsylvania (Digestive System)
- MCCURDY DINO E AB M D** Instructor in Cardiology Graduate School of Medicine  
University of Pennsylvania Assistant Visiting Physician Methodist Episcopal Hospital  
Philadelphia (Urine)
- McELROY ROBERT C, AB M D** Instructor in Obstetrics and Gynecology School of  
Medicine University of Pennsylvania Associate in Obstetrics and Gynecology Graduate  
School of Medicine University of Pennsylvania (Obstetrics and Gynecology)
- MONTGOMERY JOHN BARRICK AB M D** Clinical Professor of Obstetrics and  
Gynecology Jefferson Medical College Philadelphia (Obstetrics and Gynecology)
- ORNSTEEN ABRAHAM M Ph G, M D** Assistant Professor of Neurology University  
of Pennsylvania Medical School Neurologist Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania  
Philadelphia General Hospital and Jewish Hospital Philadelphia (Neurology)
- PEPPER D SERGEANT, M D** Assistant Medical Director Provident Mutual Life Insur-  
ance Company Philadelphia (Actuarial Tables)
- PIERSOL GEORGE MORRIS BS M D MACP** Professor of Medicine Graduate  
School of Medicine University of Pennsylvania Professor of Physical Medicine School  
of Medicine University of Pennsylvania (Body Temperature)
- RAKOFF ABRAHAM F AB M D** Associate in Obstetrics and Gynecology Jefferson  
Medical College Endocrinologist Jefferson Hospital Philadelphia (Endocrinology)
- RAWSON ARNOLD J BS M D** Fellow in Pathology University of Pennsylvania (Renal  
Function)
- REINHOLD JOHN G M Sc Ph D** Principal Biochemist Philadelphia General Hospital  
Assistant Professor of Physiological Chemistry Graduate School of Medicine, University  
of Pennsylvania Consultant Biochemist Nutritional Service Hospital of the University  
of Pennsylvania (Lipids)
- ROBINSON HOWARD W MS Ph D** Professor of Physiological Chemistry Temple  
University School of Medicine (Blood Chemistry)
- ROSE EDWARD M D** Associate Professor of Clinical Medicine University of Pennsylvania  
School of Medicine (Growth Height Weight Standards)
- ROSE ELIZABETH KIRK AB M D** Assistant Professor of Pediatrics University of  
Pennsylvania School of Medicine (Growth Height Weight Standards)
- RUBIN EDWARD AB M D** Assistant Neuro-ophthalmologist Philadelphia General  
Hospital Clinical Assistant in Ophthalmology Wills Hospital and Mt Sinai Hospital  
Philadelphia (Eye)
- SCOTT DONALD JR Ph D** Associate in Neurology University of Pennsylvania Medical  
School (Electroencephalogram)

- SHELDON WARNEF R M D C M** Associate in Pathology University of Pennsylvania  
School of Medicine Assistant Pathologist Hospital of the University of Pennsylvania  
(Anatomical Measurements)
- SHUSTER BENJAMIN H M D** Associate Professor of Neuro-Otology Graduate School  
of Medicine University of Pennsylvania Laryngologist Philadelphia General Hospital  
(Ear and Nose)
- SPAETH EDMUND H M D** Professor of Ophthalmology Graduate School of Medicine  
University of Pennsylvania Attending Surgeon Wills Hospital Philadelphia Consultant  
in Ophthalmology Naval Hospital Philadelphia (Eye)
- TOCANTINS LEANDRO MAUES M D** Associate Professor of Medicine Jefferson Medical  
College Philadelphia Hematologist Pennsylvania Hospital (Hematology)
- TRUFMAN ROBERT H FISERMAN A B M D** Associate in Ophthalmology Graduate  
School of Medicine University of Pennsylvania Assistant Surgeon Wills Hospital  
Neuro-ophthalmologist Philadelphia General Hospital (Eye)
- TUMEN HENRY J A B M D** Associate Professor of Gastroenterology Graduate School  
of Medicine University of Pennsylvania Gastroenterologist Jewish Hospital Philadelphia  
(Liver)
- VALENTINE ELEANOR H A B M D** Director of Clinical Laboratory Denver General  
Hospital and Associate Professor of Clinical Pathology University of Colorado Medical  
School (Liver)
- WILLARD DE FORST P B S M D** Professor Emeritus of Orthopaedics Graduate  
School of Medicine University of Pennsylvania (Skeleton and Skeletal Muscles)
- ZION DAVID F B S M D** Associate in Radiology Graduate School of Medicine Uni  
versity of Pennsylvania Associate Radiologist Graduate Hospital of the University of  
Pennsylvania (X ray)



## FOREWORD

IT IS GOOD PRACTICE to use the term 'norm' for that selected range of values which can be accepted as a standard and to use the adjective 'normal' for any measurement which falls within the norm

To establish a 'norm' requires the selection of a sufficiently large group of subjects who, on other criteria than the measurement under consideration can be considered as typical healthy persons and the choice of a method of selecting an appropriate segment of the distribution within the group of values for the measurements in question

*Persons are commonly considered normal when they appear healthy and free from any disability or disease which may be expected to modify the measurement in question* It is recognized with respect to some measurements that the norm for healthy persons varies with age sex race or diet altitude, climate or other environmental conditions

For some measurements published data on a large series of apparently healthy subjects perhaps classified by sex age and race are available The range that includes some fraction of the distribution has sometimes been advocated as the norm when such data are available

For most measurements we are dependent upon the range commonly found in hospital experience in patients whose condition justifies no suspicion of abnormality of the measurement in question In such cases the range selected is often rather arbitrarily chosen to include most supposed normals and to exclude most supposed abnormals 'Norms' so selected and published gain acceptance when they conform to the experience and judgment of other workers

J HAROLD AUSTIN, M D



## PREFACE

"WHEN YOU CAN measure what you are speaking about and express it in numbers you know something about it, when you cannot express it in numbers your knowledge is of a meager and unsatisfactory kind (Lord Kelvin)

\* \* \* \* \*

The various connotations attached to the word *normal* frequently result in a confusion of concepts. The sense in which the term is used in this book has been defined in the Foreword.

Workers in the fields of medicine and allied sciences are always concerned with the need for ascertaining or determining values and characteristics that constitute the 'norm'. Although this need has been clearly recognized practically no attempt has ever been made to select and assemble such pertinent data into a comprehensive unit. The authors proceeded with this need in mind.

In accordance with the definitions established in the Foreword the pioneering purpose of this book is to present a discussion and compilation of values which may be termed *normal*. The authors ventured to hope that the book might thus serve as a criterion and a source of convenient reference for students and workers in the broad fields of clinical medicine. Data, selected and condensed from relevant literature on the advice of collaborators, have been included in certain instances because they seemed to be the only authoritative measurements available, meager though they be. In addition it should be noted that the investigator in medicine often finds that he cannot arrive at a range of values which can be accepted as standard and must be content with average values, although these may prove eventually to be inconclusive in their significance. To consider such average values as *normal* has sometimes led to semantic confusion. We suggest that the reader evaluate and interpret the tabulations and figures included in the text in the light of his own experience and that he consult the original sources noted in the bibliography.

Special efforts have been made to select reliable data and to interpret and record them accurately. In view of the insidious ways in which errors are prone to intrude it would be noteworthy, indeed, if our efforts toward these ends were successful throughout. Critical comment regarding errors of omission or commission as well as suggestions for improvements or refinements will be received with respect and appreciation.

A section has been added which includes certain information such as statistical methods, actuarial tables, food values and the like that cannot be considered 'norms'. These inclusions are made for the reader's convenience rather than for their essential pertinency.

The surviving author (F. W. S.) takes this opportunity to pay tribute to the memory of his esteemed friend and colleague Dr. Frederick Boerner. Dr. Boerner's intense desire to advance the standards of the medical and allied

professions and his enthusiastic support and valuable contributions aided materially in the development of this work

The help and guidance given the authors by their Collaborators by Miss Irene Orchard and Mrs Eleanor Warner through their secretarial assistance and by the W B Saunders Company, are gratefully acknowledged

F WILLIAM SUNDERMAN

*Cleveland, Ohio*  
*September, 1949*

# CONTENTS

## Section I

### CIRCULATORY SYSTEM

(Normal Values in Cardiology)

<i>Chapter 1</i>	THE HEART	3
<i>Chapter 2</i>	ELECTROCARDIOGRAM	8
<i>Chapter 3</i>	ROENTGEN CARDIAC MENSURATION	16
<i>Chapter 4</i>	CIRCULATION TIME	27
<i>Chapter 5</i>	BLOOD PRESSURE	30

## Section II

### BLOOD CELLULAR ELEMENTS

(Normal Values in Hematology)

<i>Chapter 6</i>	ERYTHROCYTES	37
<i>Chapter 7</i>	LEUKOCYTES	54
<i>Chapter 8</i>	HEMOSTATIC FUNCTION OF THE BLOOD	59
<i>Chapter 9</i>	BLOOD GROUPS	71
<i>Chapter 10</i>	THE BONE MARROW	79
<i>Chapter 11</i>	HEMATOLOGIC ERRORS	89

## Section III

### CHEMICAL COMPONENTS AND PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF BLOOD

(Normal Values in Blood Extracellular Fluids and Lymph)

<i>Chapter 12</i>	PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF BLOOD	93
<i>Chapter 13</i>	PROTEIN AND NONPROTEIN COMPONENTS OF BLOOD PLASMA	101
<i>Chapter 14</i>	BLOOD SUGAR	112
<i>Chapter 15</i>	LIPIDS	114
<i>Chapter 16</i>	HEMOGLOBIN PORPHYRINS AND RELATED COMPOUNDS	123



<i>Chapter 17</i>	BLOOD VITAMINS	137
<i>Chapter 18</i>	TOLERANCE TESTS	139
<i>Chapter 19</i>	ANIONS AND CATIONS IN BLOOD AND SERUM	154
<i>Chapter 20</i>	BODY FLUIDS	171
<i>Chapter 21</i>	THE LYMPH	177
<i>Chapter 22</i>	ENZYMES AND MISCELLANEOUS CONSTITUENTS OF THE BLOOD	179
<i>Chapter 23</i>	RÉSUMÉ OF PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS AND CHEMICAL COMPONENTS OF BLOOD AND SERUM	185

## Section IV

## RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

(Normal Values for Respiratory Tract)

<i>Chapter 24</i>	RESPIRATORY SYSTEM	193
<i>Chapter 25</i>	VITAL CAPACITY	204

## Section V

## DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

(Normal Values in Gastroenterology)

<i>Chapter 26</i>	THE ESOPHAGUS AND STOMACH	225
<i>Chapter 27</i>	THE SMALL INTESTINE	243
<i>Chapter 28</i>	THE COLON	249
<i>Chapter 29</i>	FECES	254
<i>Chapter 30</i>	THE LIVER	262
<i>Chapter 31</i>	LIVER FUNCTION TESTS	266
<i>Chapter 32</i>	THE GALLBLADDER	275
<i>Chapter 33</i>	THE PANCREAS	278

## Section VI

## THE NERVOUS SYSTEM

(Normal Values in Neurology)

<i>Chapter 34</i>	THE CRANIAL NERVES	289
<i>Chapter 35</i>	ENCEPHALOGRAPH	300
<i>Chapter 36</i>	ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAPH	305
<i>Chapter 37</i>	THE CEREBROSPINAL FLUID	314

# CONTENTS

xv

## Section VII

### THE URINARY SYSTEM

(Normal Values in Urology)

<i>Chapter 38</i>	THE KIDNEYS	325
<i>Chapter 39</i>	TESTS OF RENAL FUNCTION	330
<i>Chapter 40</i>	THE URINARY BLADDER AND URETHRA	343
<i>Chapter 41</i>	URINE	350

## Section VIII

### MALE GENITALIA

(Normal Values in Urology)

<i>Chapter 42</i>	EXTERNAL GENITALIA	375
<i>Chapter 43</i>	THE SEMINAL VESICLES	379
<i>Chapter 44</i>	PROSTATE GLAND	380
<i>Chapter 45</i>	SEMEN EJACULATE OR SEMINAL FLUID	384
<i>Chapter 46</i>	SPERMATOOA	389

## Section IX

### FEMALE GENITALIA AND REPRODUCTION

(Normal Values in Gynecology and Obstetrics)

<i>Chapter 47</i>	FEMALE GENITALIA	397
<i>Chapter 48</i>	REPRODUCTION	406

## Section X

### SKELETON AND SKELETAL MUSCLES

(Normal Values in Orthopedics)

<i>Chapter 49</i>	SKELETON AND SKELETAL MUSCLES	435
-------------------	-------------------------------	-----

## Section XI

### THE SKIN AND ITS APPENDAGES

(Normal Values in Dermatology)

<i>Chapter 50</i>	THE SKIN	465
<i>Chapter 51</i>	HAIR	483
<i>Chapter 52</i>	SUDORIPAROUS GLANDS	486
<i>Chapter 53</i>	FINGERNAILS AND TOENAILS	491

## Section XII

## THE EYE

(Normal Values in Ophthalmology)

*Chapter 54 THE EYE*

493

## Section XIII

## THE EAR

(Normal Values in Otology)

*Chapter 55 THE EAR*

515

## Section XIV

## THE NOSE

(Normal Values in Rhinology)

*Chapter 56 THE NOSE*

521

## Section XV

## ENDOCRINES

(Normal Values in Endocrinology)

*Chapter 57 ANDROGENS AND 17 KETOSTEROIDS*

535

*Chapter 58 ESTROGENS*

543

*Chapter 59 PROGESTERONE*

557

*Chapter 60 GONADOTROPHIC HORMONES*

564

## Section XVI

## METABOLISM AND NUTRITION

(Normal Values)

*Chapter 61 BODY METABOLISM*

575

*Chapter 62 NORMAL STANDARDS FOR GROWTH HEIGHT AND WEIGHT*

597

*Chapter 63 NORMAL BODY TEMPERATURE*

635

## Section XVII

## ANATOMICAL NORMALS

*Chapter 64 ANATOMICAL NORMALS*

641

## CONTENTS

xvii

### Section XVIII

#### TEETH AND SALIVA

(Normal Values in Dentistry)

<i>Chapter 65</i>	FORMATION AND ERUPTION OF TEETH	657
<i>Chapter 66</i>	CHEMISTRY OF TEETH	682
<i>Chapter 67</i>	RELATIVE HARDNESS OF TEETH	686
<i>Chapter 68</i>	MASTICATION	689
<i>Chapter 69</i>	SALIVA	695

### Section XIX

#### MISCELLANEOUS DATA

<i>Chapter 70</i>	STATISTICAL METHODS	705
<i>Chapter 71</i>	FOOD VALUES	716
<i>Chapter 72</i>	DRUGS AND THEIR DOSES	773
<i>Chapter 73</i>	ISOTOPES	788
<i>Chapter 74</i>	LIFE AND ACTUARIAL TABLES	803
<i>Appendix</i>	TABLES OF WEIGHTS MEASURES AND STANDARDS	812
INDEX		818



## TABLES

Table 1	Normal Pulse at Various Ages	5
Table 2	A Study of 1460 Teleroentgenograms	19
Table 3	Prediction for Normal Cardiac Area and Transverse Diameter	22
Table 4	Dimensions of the Cardiac Silhouette and the Thoraco-Abdominal Cavity in Normal Infants by Certain Subdivisions of Age Under 1 Year	23
Table 5	Cardiothoracic Ratio in Infants by Certain Subdivisions of Age Under 1 Year	24
Table 6	Internal Diameter of the Chest by Age and Sex and Percentage Relationship of Transverse Diameter of the Heart to the Internal Diameter of the Chest	25
Table 7	Circulation Time	28
Table 8	Average Blood Pressure of Adults According to Age	32
Table 9	Variations in Systolic Blood Pressure in Men Over 11 to 10 Year Period	32
Table 10	Blood Pressure in Children	33
Table 11	Normal Erythrocyte Count at Various Altitudes	37
Table 12	Values for Hemoglobin of the Blood of White and Negro Populations	40
Table 13	Erythrocyte and Hemoglobin Values in Boys and Girls from 4 to 13 Years of Age	41
Table 14	Normal Hemoglobin at Various Altitudes	41
Table 15	Incidence of the Sickling Trait in the Negro Population	43
Table 16	Mean Corpuscular Diameter of Healthy Men at Various Altitudes	44
Table 17	Mean Corpuscular Thickness of Healthy Men at Various Altitudes	45
Table 18	Normal Hematocrit Readings at Various Altitudes	45
Table 19	Mean Corpuscular Volume, Hemoglobin and Hemoglobin Concentration of Healthy Men at Various Altitudes	47
Table 20	Values Commonly Used for Calculating C I with Normal Range and M C H Equivalent	47
Table 21	Volume Index (V I) Values Commonly Used for Calculating V I With Normal Ranges and M C V Equivalents	48
Table 22	Comparison of 11 Commonly Used Sedimentation Methods	49
Table 23	Reticulocyte Count of Healthy Men at Various Altitudes	51
Table 24	Résumé of Normal Erythrocytes	52
Table 25	Schilling Hemogram	56
Table 26	Normal Ranges of Leukocytes in Children and Adults	57
Table 27	Range of Leukocytes in Infants	57
Table 28	Frequency Distribution (in Per Cent) of the Negative Pressure Required to Bring out Petechiae in the Skin of Different Regions of the Body in 100 Normal Subjects	62
Table 29	Mean Lowest Negative Pressure (Mm Hg) Required to Bring out Petechiae in the Skin of Different Regions of the Body in 240 Children (Newborn to Age 12)	62

Table 30	Values for the Coagulation Time of Cutaneous and Venous Blood Estimated by Various Methods	64
Table 31	Prothrombin Time by the One Stage Method (Quick) in Normal Adults of Both Sexes	67
Table 32	Classification of Blood Groups	71
Table 33	Cross Agglutination of the Major Blood Groups	71
Table 34	Differentiation of Pseudoagglutination Autoagglutination and Iso agglutination	74
Table 35	Distribution of Major Blood Groups	74
Table 36	Distribution of M and N Agglutinogens	75
Table 37	Varieties of Rh Agglutinin	75
Table 38	Reactions Between the Several Varieties of Human Rh Antiserums and the Rh Factors of Human Red Cells (English and Equivalent American Designations)	76
Table 39	Major Blood Groups in Relation to Parentage	77
Table 40	Agglutinogens M and N in Relation to Parentage	77
Table 41	Rh Agglutinin in Relation to Parentage	77
Table 42	<i>Heredity of Rh Blood Types Summary of Results of 300 Families with 620 Children</i>	78
Table 43	Normal Differential Count of Bone Marrow	84
Table 44	Observations on Bone Marrow of Healthy Human Adults	85
Table 45	Average Peripheral Blood and Marrow Counts in Infants (First 24 Hours and 1 Week Later)	86
Table 46	Comparison of Absolute Counts per Cubic Millimeter in Sternal Marrow During the Three Trimesters of Pregnancy	87
Table 47	Hematologic Errors	90
Table 48	Specific Gravity of Blood at 20° C	93
Table 49	Serum Water and Factors for Calculation of Molality of a Solute (X) in Serum When Specific Gravity Has Been Measured	94
Table 50	Serum Conductivity at 20° C and 25° C	95
Table 51	Total Base Conductivity and Specific Gravity Measurements on Serums of 8 Normal Subjects	95
Table 52	Refractive Index of Serum at 17.5° C (Abbe Refractometer Refractive Index of Distilled Water Being 1.3332)	98
Table 53	Viscosity of Plasma Serum and Blood	99
Table 54	Freezing Point Depression ( $\Delta$ ) of Serum	99
Table 55	Partition of Serum Proteins	103
Table 56	Serum and Plasma Proteins of Infants	104
Table 57	Distribution of Serum Protein Serum Albumin and Globulin and the Albumin/Globulin Ratio in Normal Infants	106
Table 58	Concentrations of Sodium Sulfate and Sodium Sulfite Required to Precipitate the Proteins of Blood Serum	106
Table 59	Serum Albumin and Albumin/Globulin Ratios by Different Methods	107
Table 60	Protein Components of Normal Human Plasma Characterized by Physical Chemical Methods	107
Table 61	Amino Acid Composition of Protein Fractions from Normal Human Serum	108
Table 62	Nitrogen Partition of Albumin and Gamma Globulin from Normal Human Serum	109

Table 63	Partition of Nonprotein Nitrogen in the Blood of Normal Persons and the Distribution of the Various Nitrogenous Constituents Between the Cells and Plasma	110
Table 64	Concentration of Blood Urea in Relation to Sex (Blood Urea Concentration Milligrams per 100 ml Blood)	111
Table 65	Values for Normal Fasting Blood Sugar in Adults	112
Table 66	Concentration of Lipids in Blood Plasma or Serum	116
Table 67	Phospholipids of Blood	118
Table 68	Lipids of Blood Corpuscles	119
Table 69	Absorption Bands of Hemoglobin and Related Compounds	125
Table 70	Carboxyhemoglobin (Carbon Monoxide Hemoglobin) Concentration in Normal Human Blood	126
Table 71	Normal Blood Concentrations of Methemoglobin and Inactive Hemoglobin	127
Table 72	Myoglobin and Hemoglobin Values	128
Table 73	Oxygen Values in Normal Human Blood (Resting Subjects)	129
Table 74	Physical Constants of Important Porphyrins	131
Table 75	Absorption Spectra of Important Porphyrins	132
Table 76	Fluorescence Spectra of the Porphyrin Substances	132
Table 77	Daily Urinary and Fecal Excretion of Coproporphyrin I	133
Table 78	Normal Values of Blood Vitamins	137
Table 79	One-Dose Glucose Tolerance Tests on Normal Subjects	141
Table 79a	Glucose Tolerance Tests in Pregnant Women	142
Table 80	One-Hour Two-Dose Glucose Tolerance Test (Exton Rose)	143
Table 81	Intravenous Glucose Tolerance Test	144
Table 82	Insulin Glucose-Insulin Insulin Adrenalin and Adrenalin Tolerance Tests	146
Table 83	Urinary Excretion After Oral Doses of Galactose	147
Table 84	Galactose Tolerance Tests	148
Table 85	Glycerol Tolerance Tests in 13 Normal Persons	149
Table 86	Levulose Tolerance	149
Table 87	Sucrose Tolerance Test	150
Table 88	Fat Tolerance Test	151
Table 89	Bilirubin Tolerance Test	151
Table 90	Protein and Amino Acid Tolerance	152
Table 91	Total Base in Serum	154
Table 92	Normal Ranges of Sodium and Potassium in Serum	154
Table 93	Concentrations of Sodium and Potassium in Blood Serum and Cells	155
Table 94	Total Calcium in Serum	156
Table 95	Normal Serum Calcium and the Calcium Binding Power of the Serum Proteins	156
Table 96	Magnesium in Blood	156
Table 97	pH of Normal Blood Plasma or Serum at 38° C	157
Table 98	Carbon Dioxide Content and Carbon Dioxide Tension of Blood Blood Serum and Plasma in a Normal Resting Person	159
Table 99	Normal Values of Blood and Serum Carbon Dioxide Capacity	160
Table 100	Bicarbonate and Free Carbon Dioxide (Carbonic Acid) in Normal Blood Plasma	161
Table 101	Sex Differences in Acid Base Balance of Blood	162
Table 102	Concentration of Chloride in Blood	163



Table 103	Distribution of Phosphorus in the Blood of Normal Persons in Milligrams per 100 Ml. of Blood Cells of Serum	164
Table 104	Concentration of Sulfur in Blood	164
Table 105	Distribution of Anions and Cations in Serum and Blood Cells (in Miliequivalents per Liter)	165
Table 106	Synopsis of Differences Between Arterial and Venous Blood	166
Table 106a	Total Blood Iron of Normal Subjects	166
Table 106b	Serum Iron of Normal Persons	167
Table 107	Range of Serum Copper Values	167
Table 108	Normal Blood Total Iodine Values	168
Table 108a	Protein Bound Serum Iodine	168
Table 109	Normal Values for Plasma and Whole Blood	171
Table 110	Extracellular Fluid Volume	173
Table 111	Volumes of Secretions per Day	176
Table 112	Comparison of the Concentration of Some of the Constituents in Peripheral (Cervical) Lymph and Blood Plasma of the Dog Under Normal Conditions	177
Table 113	Normal Values for Serum Phosphatase	180
Table 114	Normal Range of Amylase Activity of Serum (Plasma)	181
Table 115	Range of Concentrations of Miscellaneous Constituents of Normal Blood or Plasma	182
Table 116	Normal Values Found in Author's Laboratories	185
Table 117	Resumé of Chemical Composition of Blood	186
Table 118	Average Measurements of the Adult Larynx	193
Table 119	Cadaveric Dimensions of the Tracheobronchial Tree	194
Table 120	Thoracic Indices of 18 557 School Children	197
Table 121	Average Maximum Expiratory and Inspiratory and Average Relaxation Pressures at Different Lung Volumes with Standard Deviations	198
Table 122	Relationship of Age Pulse and Respiratory Rates to Body Temperature	200
Table 123	Rate of Respiration in Healthy Young Infants During Sleep	201
Table 124	Rate and Volume of Respiration According to Days of Life After Birth	201
Table 125	Volume of Air Breathed by Average Man	204
Table 126	Vital Capacity of Lungs	206
Table 127	Mean Vital Capacity White and Negro Boys	206
Table 128	Comparison of Percentage of Vital Capacity of Male Whites and Negroes Calculated from Surface Area	207
Table 129	Comparison of Percentage of Vital Capacity of Normal Adult White and Negro Males from 20 to 45 Years of Age	207
Table 130	Vital Capacity of University of the Philippines Students Compared with That of Chinese and Occidental Groups	207
Table 131	Vital Capacity of Normal Boys and Girls	209
Table 132	Percentage of Vital Capacity of Men Calculated from Standing Height	210
Table 133	Percentage of Vital Capacity of Women Calculated from Standing Height	212
Table 134	Percentage of Vital Capacity of Men Calculated from Surface Area	214
Table 135	Percentage of Vital Capacity of Women Calculated from Surface Area	216

Table 136	Percentage of Vital Capacity of Men Calculated from Body Weight	218
Table 137	Percentage of Vital Capacity of Women Calculated from Body Weight	220
Table 138	Diameter of the Esophagus at the Level of the Esophageal Constrictions	225
Table 139	Gastric Acidity After a Test Meal During the First Month of Age	231
Table 140	Fasting Secretions of Infants	231
Table 141	Analysis of Gastric Juice of Children	232
Table 142	Volume and Acidity of Gastric Juice of Children After Histamine Stimulation	232
Table 143	Analysis of Fasting Gastric Juice of Children	233
Table 144	Normal Range of Hydrochloric Acid (Fractional Analysis)	233
Table 145	Normal Standards for Free and Total Acidity Volume and Achlorhydria of Adults	236
Table 146	Free Acidity of Gastric Secretion (Distribution According to Age)	236
Table 147	Free Hydrochloric Acid in Gastric Secretion	237
Table 148	Chemical Constituents of Gastric Juice	238
Table 149	Variation of Emptying Time of Stomach of Infants	240
Table 150	Evacuation Times and Highest Total Acidities for Various Articles of Diet	240
Table 151	pH of Small Intestine in Fasting Subjects	244
Table 152	Osmotic Pressure of Small Intestinal Secretions	244
Table 153	Osmotic Pressure of Fasting Jejunal Secretions	245
Table 154	Concentration of Calcium Nitrogen and Phosphorus in the Intestinal Contents of Fasting Subjects	245
Table 155	Amount of Glucose Absorbed at Different Intestinal Levels After Gastric Instillation of Various Concentrations	246
Table 156	Results of Daily Roentgen Examinations in 52 Subjects	250
Table 157	Rate of Passage of Inert Materials Through the Digestive Tract	251
Table 158	Composition of Colonic Gases (Ruge)	253
Table 159	Influence of Various Foods and Medicaments on the Color of the Stool	255
Table 160	Water Content of Human Feces	256
Table 161	Amount of Fat in Feces on an Unregulated Diet	257
Table 162	Fat Composition of Stools on Diets of known Fat Content	257
Table 163	Fat Retention on Cow's Milk and Breast Milk	257
Table 164	Percentage of Total Minerals Excreted in Urine and Feces	258
Table 164a	Comparison of the Mean Daily Quantities of Trace Metals in Successive Samples of the Feces and Food of a Normal Adult American	259
Table 165	Urobilinogen Content of Feces	259
Table 166	Résumé of Chemical Constituents of Feces	260
Table 167	Composition of Liver Bile	264
Table 168	Interpretation of Cephalin Cholesterol Flocculation Thymol and Colloidal Gold Responses	270
Table 169	Résumé of Normal Values for Liver Function Tests	272
Table 170	Composition of Gallbladder Bile	275
Table 171	Chemical Analysis of Pancreatic Juice	278
Table 172	Volume Concentration of Bicarbonate and Enzymes in Duodenal Juice After Injection of Secretin	279
Table 173	Volume and Concentration of Enzymes in Duodenal Juice After Injection with Mecholyl	280

Table 174	Duodenal Fluid Analyses for Pancreatic Enzymes from 8 Normal Subjects over 24 Hour Test Periods (Average Values 288 Tests)	281
Table 175	Pancreatic Enzymes in Duodenal Juice of Children	281
Table 176	Range of Amylase Values for Normal Blood Serum by Various Methods	282
Table 177	Normal Values of Serum Lipase	283
Table 178	Pancreatic Juice (Normal Values)	284
Table 179	Position of Nerve Roots Relative to the Vertebral Column	292
Table 180	Evaluation of Electrical Reactions in Motor Muscle Tests	297
Table 181	Chloride Concentration of Normal Cerebrospinal Fluid	316
Table 182	Electrolytes in Cerebrospinal Fluid	317
Table 183	Concentration of Glucose in Cerebrospinal Fluid Compared with That of Serum	318
Table 184	Routine Cell Counts of 1219 Spinal Fluid Specimens	319
Table 185	Resume of Normal Values for Cerebrospinal Fluid	320
Table 186	Size of Normal Kidney	327
Table 187	Normal Weight (in Grams) of Both Kidneys According to Age and Sex	327
Table 188	Urea Clearance in Normal Pregnant Patients	332
Table 189	Normal Values of Nonprotein Nitrogen Blood Components	337
Table 190	Resume of Renal Function Tests	340
Table 191	Average Diameter of Ureteral Lumen	343
Table 192	The Three Cystometric Factors	346
Table 193	Length of Prostatic Urethra	348
Table 194	Normal Volume of Urine in Children According to Age	350
Table 195	Effect of Drugs on Color of Urine	351
Table 196	Daily Excretion of Nitrogenous Substances in Normal Human Urine	352
Table 197	Excretion of Creatinine and Creatine by Normal Infants	353
Table 198	Creatinuria in Normal Persons	354
Table 199	Urinary Excretion of Free and Combined Amino Acids by 18 Subjects on Normal Diets (Reported as Milligrams per 24 Hours)	354
Table 200	Urinary Phenols in Normal Subjects	355
Table 201	Protein in Normal Urine	356
Table 202	Albuminuria in School Children	356
Table 203	Incidence of Albuminuria in Three Age Groups	357
Table 204	Incidence and Percentage Distribution of Melituria According to Age Groups	358
Table 205	Mineral Balance of Normal Men	359
Table 206	Normal Urinary Excretion of Magnesium	360
Table 207	Normal Urinary Excretion of Iron	360
Table 207a	Mean Values for Lead in Urine Blood and Feces of Groups of Persons Under Varying Conditions of Lead Exposure	360
Table 208	Excretion of Nicotinic Acid and Its Derivatives Estimated Daily Nicotinic Acid Plus Amide Intake	361
Table 209	Cellular Elements in Urine for 12 Hour Period (Normal Addis Counts)	365
Table 210	Crystal Forms Found in Urinary Sediments of Normal Urine	367
Table 211	Constituents of Urine (Normal Ranges for Adults)	368
Table 212	Medians for Length and Circumference of Penis and for Volume of Testis by Age	375

Table 213	Size of Prostate	380
Table 214	Chemical Composition of Prostatic Fluid	382
Table 215	Volume of Ejaculate	384
Table 216	Chemical Composition of Seminal Fluid	386
Table 216a	Normal Spermatozoal Count of Semen	390
Table 217	Spermatozoal Types	391
Table 218	Motility of Spermatozoa in Normal Semen	392
Table 219	Age of Menarcheal Girls in Various Countries	401
Table 220	Variability in Length of Menstrual Cycle	404
Table 221	Frequency Distribution of Systolic and Diastolic Blood Pressures in Normal Pregnant Patients	409
Table 222	Number of Erythrocytes Per Cent Packed Cell Volume Hemoglobin Mean Corpuscular Constants and Indices of the Blood of Pregnant Women at Different States of Pregnancy	412
Table 223	Packed Cell Volume and Hemoglobin in the Blood of Pregnant Women at Various Times	412
Table 224	Blood Chemistry in Pregnancy	413
Table 225	Conductivity Total Base Carbon Dioxide Content pH and Sodium Chloride Concentration in the Serum of Pregnant Women at Different Stages of Pregnancy	413
Table 226	Plasma Fibrin Serum Protein and Plasma Cholesterol of Pregnant Women at Different Stages of Pregnancy	414
Table 227	Plasma Protein and Specific Gravity of Blood of Pregnant Women at Different Times	414
Table 228	Confinement Table (Ely)	417
Table 229	Height and Breadth of Uterus in the Puerperium	419
Table 230	Constituents of Human Milk	419
Table 230a	Composition of Fetal Urine	420
Table 230b	Comparative Data of Amniotic Fluid with Other Body Fluids	420
Table 230c	Comparison of Maternal Serum and Amniotic Fluid at Term	420
Table 230d	Comparison of Maternal Serum and Amniotic Fluid Before Term	421
Table 230e	Comparison of Maternal Serum and Amniotic Fluid in 36 Cases	421
Table 231	Relations of Age Size and Weight in the Human Embryo	422
Table 232	Determination of the Age of the Human Fetus	423
Table 233	Number of Bones in Adults	435
Table 234	Age Order of Epiphyseal Union in Man	443
Table 235	Normal Ranges for Motion	446
Table 236	Chemistry of Synovial Fluid	453
Table 237	Differential Cell Count of Synovial Fluid	459
Table 238	Measurements of Components of Normal Human Skin	466
Table 239	Thickness of Skin of Face (in Millimeters)	466
Table 240	Reconciliation of Processes and Symptoms in Aging	468
Table 241	Topography of Skin Temperature	469
Table 242	Skin Temperatures of Normal Children at Room Temperature (20° to 22.5° C)	469
Table 243	Density of Cold Points	470
Table 244	Average Density of Warm Points of Different Parts of the Body	471
Table 245	Density and Threshold of Pain Points at Various Regions of the Body	471
Table 246	Threshold for Sharp and Dull Pain in Response to Cold at Various Regions of the Body	472

Table 247	Important Constituents of Skin	479
Table 248	Hydrogen Ion Concentration of Skin Surface and Sweat	479
Table 249	Nitrogen Values in Skin	480
Table 250	Percentage Incidence of Micro Organisms in Scrapings from the Skin and Scalp of 133 Patients	481
Table 251	Yeastlike Organisms Recovered from 100 Normal Persons	481
Table 252	Hair Counts	483
Table 253	Scalp Hair Counts	483
Table 254	Thickness of Hair	484
Table 255	Range of Variation and Average Growth of Hair (Women)	484
Table 256	Apocrine and Eccrine Glands Compared Anatomically and Otherwise	486
Table 257	Distribution of Functional Sweat Glands on Different Body Surfaces (Functional Pores per Square Centimeter)	487
Table 258	Average Composition of Sweat	488
Table 259	Chemistry of the Nails	492
Table 260	Visual Efficiency Ratings (Evans)	498
Table 261	Visual Acuity Equivalents (Far Types)	498
Table 262	Relation Between Visual Acuity and Visual Efficiency	499
Table 263	Response to Visual Tests for Infants	502
Table 264	Visual Acuity of Children of Different Ages (Evans)	502
Table 265	Percentage of Persons of Each Age Group with the Specified Vision as Determined by the Snellen Test	503
Table 266	Age Prevalence of Various Types of Refractive Errors as Determined by Retinoscopic Examination After the Administration of a Cycloplegic	504
Table 267	Table of Normal Accommodation at Various Ages	505
Table 268	Intra Ocular Pressure in Normal Eyes Estimated by the Tonometer	506
Table 269	Composition of Tears (in Grams per 100 Ml)	508
Table 270	Clinical Perimetry	510
Table 271	Isopters in the Normal Field	510
Table 272	Extent of the Field for White	511
Table 273	Arithmetic Means and Standard Deviations for Distribution of Threshold Acuity Measurements by Air Conduction	519
Table 274	Arithmetic Means and Standard Deviations for Distribution of Threshold Acuity Measurements by Bone Conduction	519
Table 275	Normal Reactions to the Rotation Test	520
Table 276	Normal Reactions to the Caloric Test (Mass Irrigation)	520
Table 277	Normal Vestibular Reactions in Various Planes of the Head	522
Table 278	Concentrations of Various Solutions Used in the Olfactometer in Grams per Liter of Liquid Petrolatum	529
Table 279	Odorous Substances and Their Olfactory Coefficients (M I O)	529
Table 280	Development of the Sinuses from Birth	530
Table 281	Androgen (Biologic Assay)	538
Table 282	Average Output of 17 Ketosteroid per Day by Normal Persons of Various Ages	540
Table 283	17 Ketosteroid Values in Normal Mature Persons (Mg Equivalent of Androsterone)	540
Table 284	Day and Night 17 Ketosteroid Values	541
Table 285	Average Excretion of Alpha Beta and Total Neutral Ketosteroids by Normal Subjects	541

Table 286	Estrogen Values in the Urine and Serum	549
Table 287	Estrogen Excretion in Urine per 24 Hours (International Units)	549
Table 288	Serum Estrogen Values in Pregnancy	550
Table 289	Normal Pregnancy	551
Table 290	Pregnandiol Values in Pregnancy	561
Table 291	Urine Gonadotrophin Values	568
Table 292	Serum Gonadotrophin Values in Pregnancy	571
Table 293	Urinary Excretion of Chorion Gonadotrophin (Prolan) in 8 Cases of Normal Pregnancy	572
Table 294	Surface Area in Square Meters (Du Bois Formula) 20 Kg to 34 Kg 110 Cm to 174 Cm	577
Table 295	Surface Area in Square Meters (Du Bois Formula) 35 Kg to 49 Kg 120 Cm to 184 Cm	578
Table 296	Surface Area in Square Meters (Du Bois Formula) 50 Kg to 64 Kg 135 Cm to 199 Cm	579
Table 297	Surface Area in Square Meters (Du Bois Formula) 65 Kg to 79 Kg 135 Cm to 199 Cm	580
Table 298	Surface Area in Square Meters (Du Bois Formula) 80 Kg to 94 Kg 135 Cm to 199 Cm	581
Table 299	Surface Area in Square Meters (Du Bois Formula) 95 Kg to 109 Kg 135 Cm to 199 Cm	582
Table 300	Calories per Square Meter of Body Surface per Hour	583
Table 301	Standard Values for Calories per Square Meter per Hour	583
Table 302	Normal Standards	585
Table 303	Harris Benedict Standards Based on Age and Stature	586
Table 304	Standard Total Calories for Weight	587
Table 305	Standard Total Calories for Height	588
Table 306	Central Trend Line Values for Calories per Hour per Square Meter of Body Surface (Du Bois and Du Bois Height Weight Formula with Constant 71.84) in Relation to Age	589
Table 307	Central Trend Line Values for Calories per Hour in Relation to Weight	590
Table 308	Central Trend Line Values for Calories per Hour in Relation to Height	591
Table 309	Central Trend Line Values for Calories per Hour in Relation to Body Surface (Du Bois and Du Bois Height Weight Formula with Constant 71.84)	591
Table 310	Mean Values of Basal or Standard Metabolism (An Application of the Du Bois Standards to the Adolescent Period of Life)	592
Table 311	Caloric Value of Foodstuffs	593
Table 312	Analysis of the Oxidation of Mixture of Carbohydrate and Fat	594
Table 313	Energy Requirements of Persons of the Same Size Engaged in Different Types of Activity	595
Table 314	Strength of Women Compared with That of Men	595
Table 315	Strength in Relation to Weight	595
Table 316	Normal Height Weight	598
Table 317	Heights and Weights of Children Between 1 and 4 Years of Age (Without Clothes)	599
Table 318	Height Weight Age Tables	600
Table 319	Width Weight Tables	602
Table 320	Ideal Weight Tables Based on Maximum Longevity	632

Table 321	Heights and Weights of 221 819 Men 15 or More Years of Age (with Clothes)	633
Table 322	Heights and Weights of 136 504 Women 15 or More Years of Age (with Clothes)	634
Table 323	Weight and Measurements of Various Organs in Adults	641
Table 324	Organ Weights in Children	643
Table 325	Brain Weight in Grams at Various Ages	644
Table 326	Normal Weight of the Heart	644
Table 327	Normal Weight of the Liver	644
Table 328	Adrenal and Testis Weights at Various Body Lengths	645
Table 329	Development of the Sex Organs	645
Table 330	Determination of the Age of the Human After Birth	646
Table 330a	Chloride in Tissues	648
Table 331	Mineral Content per Kilogram of the Whole Body at Different Ages and of Adult Organs on a Fat Free Basis	649
Table 332	Mineral Content of the Whole Body at Different Ages	650
Table 333	Weights of the Organs of the Newborn and Adults and Mineral Content of Adult Organs	651
Table 334	Approximate Phospholipid Content of Tissues (as Lecithin)	652
Table 335	Approximate Total Sterol Content of Tissues	652
Table 336	Distribution of Lead in Human Tissue	652
Table 336a	The Concentration Levels of Trace Metals in Normal Human Tissues (Americans) (Arithmetical Mean Values)	653
Table 337	Chronology of Human Dentition	658
Table 338	Eruption of Teeth According to Age	659
Table 339	Eruption of Deciduous Teeth	659
Table 340	Age in Months when Individual Deciduous Teeth Erupt	659
Table 341	Percentage of Children Having the Specified Corresponding Per manent Teeth Erupted	666
Table 342	Means and Standard Deviations of Age Distribution of Eruption of Corresponding Permanent Teeth	667
Table 343	Average Age and Standard Deviation in Years of Erupting Per manent Teeth	668
Table 344	Average Age and Standard Deviation in Years of Erupting Per manent Teeth in Children with Normal Occlusion	669
Table 345	Eruption Time of Teeth Showing Probable Statistical Error and the Variation in Eruption of the Right and Left Sides	670
Table 346	Dimensions (Average) of Deciduous Teeth	671
Table 347	Dimensions of Permanent Teeth	672
Table 348	Maximum Widths and Variabilities of Upper Central and Lateral Incisor Teeth (Boys and Girls Ages 8 to 14 Years)	673
Table 349	Asymmetry of Mesiodistal Width	674
Table 350	Number of Missing and Peg Shaped Teeth in 184 Persons	675
Table 351	Observed Combinations of Missing Teeth in 184 Persons	675
Table 352	Incidence of Combinations of Missing Teeth Based Upon 148 Propositi	676
Table 353	Number of Missing Permanent Second Premolars and Retained Deciduous Second Molars in 153 Persons	676
Table 354	Proportion of Persons Retaining Deciduous Teeth or Spaces in Second Premolar Area	676

## TABLES

XXIX

Table 355	Average Weights of Permanent Teeth	679
Table 356	Relative Weights of Enamel to Dentin and Cementum	680
Table 357	Specific Weight and Index of Refraction of Dental Tissues	680
Table 358	Calcium Magnesium Phosphorus and Carbon Dioxide (from Carbonate) of Human Enamel Dentin and Bone in Percentage of Whole Tissue on Dry Bases	682
Table 359	Calcium Magnesium Phosphorus and Carbon Dioxide (from Carbonate) in Enamel and Dentin	682
Table 360	Analyses of Whole Sound Teeth	683
Table 361	Fluorine Content (per Cent) of Enamel and Dentin of Mottled Teeth	684
Table 362	Fluorine Content of Dentin and Enamel to Dental Caries	684
Table 363	Composition of Enamel of Sound and Carious Teeth	684
Table 364	Fluorine Content of Enamel and Dentin of Sound and Carious Teeth	685
Table 365	Fluorine Content of Enamel and Dentin of Mottled Teeth	686
Table 366	Strength of Bite	690
Table 367	Statistics of Bite Pressure in Pounds	690
Table 368	Number of Chews When Eating a Standard Meal	693
Table 369	Number of Chews when Eating a Standard Meal (Good Teeth and Poor Teeth)	694
Table 370	Lowest and Highest Activated Rates of Flow of Saliva	695
Table 371	Comparison of Rates of Flow of Resting and Activated Salivas	696
Table 372	Rate of Flow of Continuously Activated Saliva	696
Table 373	Inorganic Constituents of Mixed Saliva of the Mouth Cavity and Plasma	697
Table 374	Saliva (Normal Values)	697
Table 375	Mean Values for Stimulated Saliva of Caries Free and Caries Groups	698
Table 376	Analysis of Mixed Salivas Secreted at Widely Different Rates	698
Table 377	Analysis of Stimulated and Unstimulated Saliva	698
Table 378	Amino Acid Concentration of Saliva	698
Table 379	Variations in Tryptophane and Glutamic Acid Content of Saliva During a 24 Hour Period	699
Table 380	Mineral Analysis of Salivas Secreted at Different Rates	699
Table 381	Computation of Standard Deviations of Sample and Population (Estimated) and of Coefficient of Variation	709
Table 382	Probability of an Item Deviating as Much from the Mean as the One Observed When the Underlying Distribution Is Normal	710
Table 383	Recommended Daily Dietary Allowances	716
Table 384	Nutritive Values of Selected Foods Edible Portion	718
Table 385	Mineral Components in 100 Grams of the Edible Portions of Foods	741
Table 385a	Sodium and Potassium Contents of Food	744
Table 385b	Sodium and Potassium Content of Water Supplies in the United States	748
Table 386	Cholesterol Concentration of Food Samples Purchased in Open Market (Edible Portion)	749
Table 387	Cholesterol Concentration of Substances Used as Foods	750
Table 388	Purine Concentration of Foods per 100 Gm	751



Table 389	Iodine in Foods from Goitrous and Nongoitrous Regions Parts per Billion of Dry Matter	751
Table 390	Average Servings of Common Foods Arranged for Comparison of Their Excess of Acid or Alkaline Ash in Terms of Normal Solution	752
Table 391	Calcium and Oxalate Concentration of Various Foods	754
Table 392	Organic Acid Constituents of Foods	756
Table 393	Food Composition Table for Short Method of Dietary Analysis	758
Table 394	Vitamin Summary	762
Table 395	Nutritive Value of Army Rations	771
Table 396	International Standards	785
Table 397	Chart of Local Anesthetics	786
Table 398	Irradiated Units	789
Table 399	Stable Isotopes Existing in Nature	794
Table 400	The Electromagnetic Spectrum	795
Table 401	Table of International Atomic Weights	796
Table 402	Radium Body Content of Occupationally Unexposed Persons	798
Table 403	Commissioners 1941 Standard Ordinary Mortality Table	804
Table 404	Graduated Annual Rate of Mortality per 1000 Based on Experience 1930-1940	805
Table 405	Life Table for the Total Population of the United States 1939-1941	806
Table 406	Life Table for Total White Population in the United States 1939-1941	809
Table 407	Measures of Length and Surface	812
Table 408	Measures of Capacity and Volume	813
Table 409	Measures of Mass (Weights)	813
Table 410	Domestic Weights and Measures	814
Table 411	Metric and Apothecaries Equivalents	815
Table 412	Useful Equivalents—Weights and Measures	816
Table 413	Temperature Equivalents	816

## **Section I**

### **CIRCULATORY SYSTEM (Normal Values in Cardiology)**



## Chapter 1

### THE HEART

#### THE NORMAL HEART

APPLIED TO the heart the term normal implies that this organ is structurally and functionally like that observed in healthy persons. An opinion regarding normality is frequently difficult to arrive at and can be made only after careful evaluation of the patient's history, physical examination and laboratory studies.

For example, two hearts may vary considerably in size and still be considered normal. However, if on successive examinations (in the absence of significant gain in weight) the heart is seen to become progressively larger, even though it may still be considered of normal size, this finding is significant. Similarly, the presence of heart murmurs which by themselves may appear to be of only slight significance must be considered important if they were previously absent. This applies also to alteration in the intensity of heart sounds, increase in blood pressure and other changes in the clinical status.

#### RHYTHM OF THE HEART

Although rhythm is usually regular in normal hearts, certain irregularities are known to occur in the absence of disease. *Sinus arrhythmia* consists usually of a change in the heart rate which varies with the phases of respiration. In *sino auricular heart block* there is observed either a sudden halving of the heart rate or long cycles interrupting the normal rhythm. *Sinus bradycardia* (slow heart rate) is observed normally in older persons and occasionally in young individuals with overactive vagal tone. The heart rate in such conditions may range from 40 to 60 beats per minute.

The occasional occurrence of premature contractions, whether auricular or ventricular, is said to be normal. It is difficult to give the exact range of the normal in terms of frequency of these ectopic beats. The appearance of one or two such beats per minute may be normal. The occurrence of numerous auricular or ventricular premature beats, however, is probably the result of some disturbance which cannot be considered normal. The same is true of coupled rhythm, auriculoventricular dissociation and nodal rhythm.

#### HEART SOUNDS

Normally three sounds are heard over the precordium. The first sound is synchronous with cardiac systole. The second sound marks approximately the beginning of diastole. The third sound in a normal subject, when audible, is heard best at the apex in the recumbent position, halfway between the apex and the left sternal border. It occurs in diastole about one tenth of a second after the second sound.

be lost in extreme cases this causes the red blood cell count and hemoglobin to rise the blood nonprotein nitrogen to increase and a general acidosis to develop in the same way as after a severe burn of the body surface The mechanical obstruction of the ur passages by edema fluid may cause asphyxia

In some attacks the blood pressure falls the pulse becomes thready respiration gasping and shock appears during which the patient expires

If the reflex tachypnea in a patient with pulmonary edema (and even in cardiac asthma) assumes a rapid and shallow character the tidal air may be reduced to 250 cc or even less Since about 150 cc are needed to fill the dead space gas exchange in the lung suffers Hypoxia may ensue in a few minutes resulting in even more rapid and shallow breathing During such tachypnea the oxygen unsaturation of the blood may amount to 40–50 per cent Accordingly changed arterial oxygen saturation may be the result rather than the cause of dyspnea

Hyperventilation may reduce carbon dioxide tension of the blood (hypocapnia) causing a shocklike syndrome with symptoms of tetany This dyspnea fails to serve any useful purpose and imposes a heavy burden on a heart already strained Moreover it increases the oxygen consumption of the body which is greater from the start owing to the high metabolic rate of cardiac patients

#### *Functional Disturbances of Other Vegetative Centers in Paroxysmal Dyspnea*

As with patients with Cheyne Stokes respiration those persons who suffer from cardiac asthma or pulmonary edema may exhibit a series of other respiratory phenomena These disturbances are also prone to occur at night and may be coincident with or independent of the paroxysmal episodes

An early sign of left ventricular failure is nocturnal cough While it represents a typical complaint in pulmonary congestion sometimes it develops in patients with progressive left heart failure before pulmonary congestion can be detected clinically It causes considerable discomfort and is often treated for a long time with cough medicines before its true nature is recognized The administration of digitalis usually abolishes it in a short while

Persistent sighing and yawning are frequently noted in patients with left ventricular failure Patients rarely complain about these symptoms but they are readily discovered Like the cough these phenomena vanish after a short course of digitalis therapy Since the yawning and sighing observed after an acute profuse hemorrhage are generally attributed to cerebral anemia that is to a diminished blood supply to the cerebral centers it is conceivable that a lessened cardiac output and slow peripheral circulation have a similar effect

The various respiratory phenomena just mentioned make patients with left ventricular failure extremely restless and noisy During ward rounds the physician often becomes aware of such a patient even when he is some distance away

Naturally left ventricular failure would never be diagnosed on the basis of these symptoms alone because other factors are more commonly responsible for

their appearance. They are mentioned merely to emphasize that vegetative centers in the neighborhood of the respiratory centers also function abnormally in left ventricular failure.

### *Concluding Remarks*

The available evidence indicates that no single factor is exclusively responsible for attacks of paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea. The various mechanisms and the interaction of multiple factors may explain why the character of the individual attacks varies. Thus the amount of fluid in the pulmonary parenchyma, the increased intracapillary pressure, the permeability of the pulmonary capillaries and of the alveolar epithelium, subject to central regulation as well as to local changes, may explain the presence or absence of pulmonary edema during an attack of cardiac asthma. Certainly the importance of reflexes on respiration has been grossly underestimated in the past, a mistake partly understandable since some of these reflexes have been discovered only recently. On the other hand, in accreditation of the significance of these reflexes should not relegate the local situation in the lungs and the chemical regulation of respiration to a minor position.

Paroxysmal dyspnea may appear early in heart failure when cardiac dilatation and evidence of congestive failure is absent. Patients with hypertension of unknown etiology and those with coronary atherosclerosis may have such an attack as a first alarm. Just as peripheral edema is no index of the degree of cardiac failure, the frequency and severity of paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea affords no conclusion as to the extent of myocardial damage.

It is not clear why failure of the left ventricle alone causes paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea; one might anticipate that all types of failure would show this discrepancy, presents great difficulties to those who believe that the attack is released exclusively by reflexes set in action by pulmonary congestion. If pulmonary congestion is certainly very marked in mitral stenosis and yet the attack is absent even in button-hole mitral stenosis with an almost imperceptible stenosis and a marked reduction of minute volume. In the recent literature, however, attacks of paroxysmal dyspnea are said to appear frequently in mitral stenosis but we shall see in the section devoted to this valvular disease that this is not the case. The attacks also fail to appear in right ventricular failure, for example in severe tricuspid lesions, under these circumstances pulmonary congestion may be negligible although the minute output of the heart is small and peripheral circulation remarkably slow.

Cardiac asthma may disappear when right heart failure supervenes and recur if the latter is successfully treated.

It is presumably the different factors discussed in the preceding paragraphs, pulmonary congestion with its direct mechanical and reflex effects, the local chemical status of the centers and of chemoreceptors, participate in the production of paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea observed in left ventricular failure.

## CHEYNE STOKES RESPIRATION

Fully developed Cheyne Stokes respiration with continual alternation of apnea and dyspnea is easily discovered when the apnea is prolonged and marked hyperpnea characterizes the dyspneic period. Cheyne Stokes respiration is however often overlooked although it is one of the most constant and early signs of left ventricular failure. During the examination it may exist in a fragmentary form and may be discernible only if looked for.

*Clinical Picture*

In the consulting room and at home patients often fail to exhibit periodic breathing despite a thorough examination since the least excitement or physical exertion may abolish it. If the patient can be induced to relax or to rest with closed eyes in a quiet room for only a few minutes periodic breathing may soon appear. Sometimes there is no alternation of breathing and periods of apnea but a mere change from deep to more superficial breathing. All gradations from a slight waxing and waning of the respiratory excursions to fully developed Cheyne Stokes can occur.

Figure 3 was obtained from a patient fifty eight years of age who suffered from coronary sclerosis. The upper tracing shows the periodic change from superficial to deep respiration. The lower tracing was obtained a few minutes later when the patient relaxed and became more accustomed to the use of the spirometer. dyspnea and apnea alternate. In this tracing the lever moves downward with inspiration.

Figure 4 shows a spirogram obtained from the abdomen (upper tracing) and chest (lower tracing) of a patient with hypertension and left ventricular failure. In this tracing inspiratory movements are directed upward. Whereas the apneic periods are short in figure 3 the dyspneic and apneic periods are almost equal in figure 4. The former situation seems more common. Each phase may last as long as 50 seconds.

The characteristic gradual increase of amplitude and the tendency of the chest to assume the inspiratory position in the crescendo phase are visible in both figures. This accounts for the slow rise of the curve in the dyspneic phase (depression in figure 3) and the gradual reversion to the normal position in the decrescendo phase before the dyspnea begins. Apnea usually occurs in the expiratory position. In a given case the number of respiratory movements in each phase may remain constant for a long time.

In addition to the periodic changes of respiration various other signs may be observed in patients with Cheyne Stokes breathing. They likewise come and go periodically and are bound to a certain phase of respiration. Thus the pupils may contract at the onset of apnea the blood pressure may increase in the dyspneic phase and arrhythmias such as extrasystoles and paroxysmal ventricular tachycardias may appear periodically. Bradycardia may be noted in the apneic phase and tachycardia in the dyspneic phase the opposite situation may also

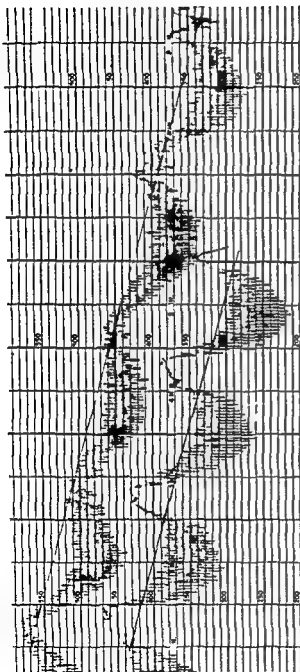


FIG 3 Cheyne Stokes respiration in a patient with coronary sclerosis

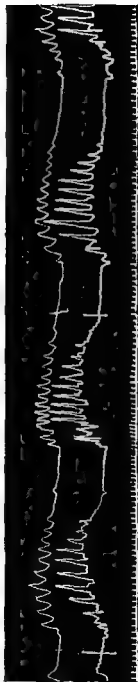


FIG 4 Cheyne Stokes respiration in The upper tracing was obtained from the abdomen the lower from the thorax



prevail. No fixed rules have been discovered for the appearance of most of these changes in one or the other phase of respiration. Somewhat more constant is cough or deep sighing which may develop regularly during the crescendo phase of the dyspneic period.

The patient's behavior may change with the different periods. In well marked Cheyne Stokes breathing restlessness and involuntary movements of the limbs with twitching and clonic convulsions may be noted during dyspnea whereas the patient is fully relaxed with the eyeballs turned up as in coma during the apneic period. Clouding of consciousness is not rare during apnea. Delusions of persecution or a syndrome resembling dementia may occur and require commitment to a special institution.

Periodic breathing is a normal phenomenon in infants (especially premature ones) during sleep in healthy elderly people and in normal subjects at high altitudes. It is also observed in animals during hibernation. Patients with sclerosis of the cerebral arteries frequently exhibit it. Left ventricular failure is its most common cause. Periodic breathing is conspicuously absent in patients with mitral or tricuspid lesions and in those with pulmonary disease and cor pulmonale.

The assumption that Cheyne Stokes breathing is an ominous sign is often true however a very pronounced form may occur transiently in patients with coronary sclerosis and myocardial infarction until the left ventricle regains its strength. If this happens the patient may remain free from respiratory embarrassment and other symptoms for many years. Therefore the prognosis depends upon the underlying etiology rather than on the mere presence of the phenomenon.

The absence of Cheyne Stokes breathing during the examination and despite a special search does not preclude episodes of nocturnal periodic breathing with extreme hyperpnea and when it is present during the day it tends to be more severe at night.

The periods of hyperpnea may be associated with extreme anxiety and air hunger so that the patient cannot rest. He suddenly sits up, looks around in despair and utilizes all auxiliary muscles for breathing. In a few seconds he relaxes, lies down, quiet or unconscious in apnea, only to have the cycle repeated in a short time. This situation may persist for hours and recur night after night. When the attacks are milder the patient may leave his bed and restlessly pace the floor.

Some patients with Cheyne Stokes breathing do not complain of dyspnea and deny any breathless ness despite the existence of long apneic periods. The complaints do however suffer from insomnia usually the result of the restlessness which to them is incomprehensible. Accordingly many mention only the insomnia the actual cause of which is overlooked. If examination fails to disclose Cheyne Stokes respiration careful interrogation of the attendants or relatives and sometimes even of the patient may reveal the presence of rhythmic changes in the depth of respiration.

The possible existence of Cheyne Stokes respiration must be considered in every case of nocturnal dyspnea and every effort should be made to establish the diagnosis for this permits the introduction of effective specific treatment which speedily abolishes otherwise intractable complaints. The therapy is discussed in the final chapter.

### *Pathogenesis*

No explanation for the pathogenesis of periodic breathing is entirely satisfactory. All theories assume a changed excitability of the respiratory centers. Slow circulation and local vascular disturbances (which provoke Cheyne Stokes breathing in cerebral vascular sclerosis and increased spinal fluid pressure) might produce hypoxia. The apnea induced by depression of the centers is assumed to allow the accumulation of carbon dioxide and perhaps of nonvolatile acids which excite dyspnea when a certain threshold is reached. During the dyspneic period carbon dioxide is removed from the blood and the hypoxia disappears. Since the elimination of carbon dioxide removes the strongest stimulus for the respiratory center apnea returns.

This conception leaves much unexplained. While the mechanism of the fully developed Cheyne Stokes breathing becomes clear its beginning remains obscure. Sometimes the apneic periods are very long while the dyspneic periods are exceedingly short. In fact the periods of dyspnea may be so short that they can scarcely permit the elimination of accumulated metabolites. Pryor as well as Gilmore and Kopelman are of the opinion that the prolongation of the circulation time in patients with Cheyne Stokes breathing is of primary importance. Delayed passage of blood from the lungs to the arterial chemoreceptors and the respiratory centers permits an overventilation irrespective of the cause to last longer. Therefore apnea must follow which in turn must be followed by dyspnea.

In dogs Cheyne Stokes breathing could be produced by insertion of a delay system between heart and brain (Guyton et al.). Normally with physiologic changes of respiration the oxygen and carbon dioxide content of the blood changes; this altered blood reaches the respiratory centers quickly and regulation sets in. When the circulation time of the blood is delayed the respiratory centers are reached after a longer interval. This permits marked changes of the blood gas concentration to develop which as soon as they reach the centers provoke great changes of the respiration.

The importance of hypoxia in Cheyne Stokes breathing is shown by the fact that periodic respiration may be induced in normal subjects if they breathe an oxygen poor mixture. Moreover the Cheyne Stokes respiration of cardiac patients usually although not invariably disappears when oxygen is inhaled.

The experience that Cheyne Stokes respiration may appear only during sleep or be aggravated then speaks in favor of cortical participation in its development. This view has some experimental support (Schoen).

During Cheyne Stokes breathing the carbon dioxide tension must be low. Hypoxia in combination with high carbon dioxide tension does not cause Cheyne

**Stokes breathing** Thus Cheyne Stokes respiration in a cardiac patient usually vanishes when a mixture containing 5 per cent carbon dioxide is inhaled and this may be the reason why patients with pulmonary emphysema practically never have this form of periodic breathing even when fully decompensated. The reflex dyspnea of patients with mitral stenosis and pulmonary congestion prevents the appearance of Cheyne Stokes respiration.

An objective survey of the medical literature discloses that most observers who deny the possibility that hypoxia in the respiratory center might play any part in the mechanism of other types of dyspnea readily concede its primary importance in Cheyne Stokes respiration. This is somewhat paradoxical since Cheyne Stokes breathing often antedates other forms of dyspnea and appears in patients subject to recurrent attacks of cardiac asthma. Cheyne Stokes breathing occasionally disappears as soon as sleep deepens perhaps because acidosis becomes greater (East).

The role played by a diminished blood supply to the centers in the genesis of Cheyne Stokes breathing is stressed by the following observation: Otherwise healthy young individuals with paroxysmal tachycardia and a rapid ventricular rate may present Cheyne Stokes respiration for the duration of the tachycardia. When the heart rate reverts to normal Cheyne Stokes respiration vanishes immediately. The great reduction of the minute volume in such tachycardias is well known. That the excitability of the respiratory centers is a determining factor for the appearance of Cheyne Stokes respiration is indicated by the periodic breathing of many young individuals after the administration of morphine.

Periodic breathing resembling Cheyne Stokes respiration also occurs in patients with the Morgagni Stokes Adams syndrome when attacks follow each other at short intervals. In this condition dyspnea follows cardiac standstill. This is understandable since hypoxia and the accumulation of acid metabolites during the period of cardiac arrest may reach a point where they constitute an unusually strong stimulus for the respiratory centers and chemoreceptors. Respiration ceases with the reappearance of the first pulse because hyperventilation during the period of cardiac standstill blows out large quantities of carbon dioxide from the blood in the lungs with the resumption of cardiac action after the standstill this hyperpneic blood reaches the respiratory centers and the stimulus for respiration is so weak that apnea results. If the cardiac standstill recurs every few minutes as sometimes happens hyperpneic and apneic phases alternate so that the respiratory syndrome cannot be distinguished from ordinary Cheyne Stokes. Usually the dyspneic phase coincides with cardiac standstill while the heart beats during the period of respiratory arrest.

#### DISPNEA IN CARDIAC NEUROSIS HYPERVENTILATION SYNDROME

A highly characteristic form of dyspnea is common in patients with nervous instability neurocirculatory asthenia anxiety neurosis and hysteria. The breathing is typically irregular and sometimes accelerated so that it might be con-

pared to the rapid irregular pulse of atrial fibrillation. The continuous change of depth, rate and level of respiration readily distinguishes it from other forms of dyspnea from the typical crescendo and diminuendo of Cheyne Stokes breathing from the slow respiration of increased intracranial pressure, the transitory arrest of respiration without changes in depth (Biot type) and finally from the Kussmaul breathing of acidosis.

Sometimes the respiration of patients with a cardiac neurosis resembles that seen in healthy subjects who on request breathe as fast as possible. The same type of breathing may be noted in patients under the influence of some great emotional strain such as the unanticipated death of a close relative. Dentists sometimes observe this type of dyspnea preceding an extraction or some other operation.

Since rapid and superficial respirations may reduce the tidal air to 200 cc or less, the volume of gases available is insufficient for a normal exchange. Acute hypoxia thus results.

*Hyperventilation Syndrome* In the hyperventilation syndrome faintness, dizziness, tingling of the fingers, sense of impending death and even loss of consciousness may appear. Patients may experience palpitation, dysphagia, anxiety, tightness about the chest or a dull pain in the lower anterior chest wall. Hyperventilation due to encephalitis or poisoning with salicylates may lead to the same syndrome (Lewis). These patients feel cold and clammy when touched.

Peripheral and perioral paresthesias appear related to respiratory alkalosis. The low carbon dioxide content of the arterial blood leads to constriction of smaller vessels causing among other phenomena cerebral hypoxia. Signs and symptoms of tetany appear.

If the respiratory excursions increase but slightly in rate while their depth becomes greater, larger quantities of carbon dioxide are blown off so that hypocapnia and alkalosis develops. Want of carbon dioxide may cause the larger peripheral vessels including the veins to dilate so that larger amounts of blood are retained in the venous depots. Consequently the amount of blood returned to the heart is reduced, the pulse becomes small or even impalpable, the blood pressure may fall, the neck veins fill poorly and a shocklike syndrome may appear. We have been repeatedly summoned to see patients who were supposed to have developed shock or circulatory failure following an operation but who exhibited only this syndrome.

Individuals who present this type of respiration frequently suffer from sighing respiration as well. The latter is discussed below.

Holding the breath, rebreathing into a paper bag or the inhalation of 5 per cent carbon dioxide help. Treatment of a psychoneurosis is often necessary.

Electrocardiographic changes during hyperventilation have been repeatedly described. They are not due to alkalosis (Scherf and Schlachman).

#### DYSPNEA IN ENDOCRINE DISORDERS

Patients who have sighing respiration (suspicious respiration) often complain of dyspnea. This does not apply to those who sigh deeply because of grief or

sorrow nor when a sigh is taken to relieve mental tension but it is true in another large group of patients with sighing respiration. The patient usually a woman complains that the breath will not go through or that the breath goes only so far (pointing to the upper third of the sternum) or that she is unable to take a deep breath. Great relief is secured once she succeeds in breathing deeply (the sigh). Sometimes the complaint of breathlessness is reported with considerable excitement and apprehension. Patients are rarely aware that they are compelled to sigh periodically.

Figure 5 reproduces a spirogram obtained during the determination of the basal metabolic rate of a 29 year old woman. A deep sigh occurs after 3 to 5 normal respirations. Apart from the deep sighs there is no irregularity in rate or

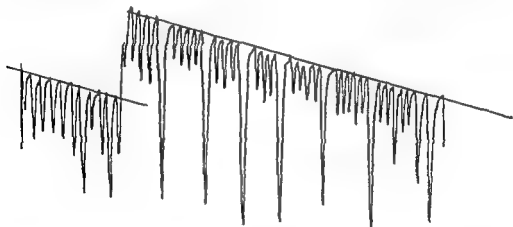


FIG. 5. Sighing respiration.

depth of respiration. Sometimes the sigh may occur after every second or third respiration for a time or alternate with a normal respiratory excursion (respiratio alternans). Since the preceding as well as subsequent respirations are unchanged the deep breath is not compensatory.

The deep sigh represents a maximal respiratory effort and corresponds closely to the vital capacity. It will frequently be discovered if spirograms or basal metabolism tracings are inspected with this phenomenon in mind. It is more pronounced in the recumbent position. Christie found such sighs in 6.9 per cent of 1,00 consecutive respiratory tracings. In 2,000 successive spirograms investigated by one of us, sighing respiration was found in 68; only two of these patients were males. One of the 2 males had undescended testes. Thirty-five of the females were beyond 35 years of age and had symptoms suggestive of disturbed ovarian function. All but three of the other patients were listed as examples of hyper- or hypothyroidism, uterine fibroids, functional disorders of the nervous system and endocrine imbalance.

In the few investigations devoted to it, sighing respiration has usually been considered a sign of neurosis and its great incidence in neurocirculatory asthenia

is stressed. While patients with neurocirculatory asthenia often display this type of breathing it is a common and regular finding in women with hypothyroidism. It is observed in adolescents and it is particularly prominent at the climacterium even in women over 60 years of age. Awareness of its occurrence in these conditions will prevent serious diagnostic errors.

Sighing respiration certainly does not result simply from estrogen deficiency for it appears in patients suffering from such other disorders as hyper- and sometimes hypothyroidism and it is often absent after panhysterectomy. It is interesting that the phenomenon is infrequent in males. Presumably the endocrine imbalance which plays a dominating role in the production of other climacteric symptoms is responsible for sighing respiration in an unknown way.

Sighing respiration is often rapidly abolished by therapy with estrogens. The great apprehension and anxiety exhibited by many of those affected has led some observers to regard the symptoms as manifestations of hysteria but specific treatment creates a great change and the distress may vanish in a few days.

## Bibliography

- Altschule M D. *Physiology in Diseases of the Heart and Lungs*. Cambridge: Harvard Univ. Press, 1949.
- Baker D M. Sighing respiration as a symptom. *Lancet* *1* 174, 1934.
- Besterman E M et al. Pulmonary oedema due to angiocardigraphy: treatment with intravenous hydrocortisone. *Brit M J* *2* 695, 1956.
- Binger C A L, Brown G R and Branch A. Experimental studies on rapid breathing. *J Clin Investigation* *1* 127, 1924.
- Bruce M B, Martin R T and Smirk F H. Effect of the initial level of the blood pressure upon the response of the human subject to blood pressure raising reflexes. *J Physiol* *103* 412, 1945.
- Brunn E. Über Asthma cardiacum. *Zentralbl f inn Med* *49* 873-990, 1928.
- Cameron G R. Pulmonary oedema. *Brit M J* *1* 964, 1948.
- and De S N. Experimental pulmonary oedema of nervous origin. *J Path & Bact* *61* 376, 1949.
- Campbell G S and Visscher M B. Pulmonary lesions in guinea pigs with increased intracranial pressure: the effect of bilateral cervical vagotomy. *Am J Physiol* *157* 130, 1949.
- Christie C D and Beams A J. The estimation of normal vital capacity with especial reference to the effect of posture. *Arch Int Med* *30* 34, 1922.
- Christie R V. Some types of respiration in neuroses. *Quart J Med* *1* 427, 1935.
- Dyspnoea. *Review Quart J Med* *7* 421, 1938.
- and Meakins J C. The intrapleural pressure in congestive heart failure and its clinical significance. *J Clin Investigation* *13* 323, 1934.
- Churchill E D and Cope O. The rapid shallow breathing resulting from pulmonary congestion and edema. *J Exper Med* *49* 331, 1929.
- Collip J B and Backus P L. The effect of prolonged hyperpnoea on the carbon dioxide combining power of the plasma, the carbon dioxide tension of alveolar air and the excretion of acid and basic phosphate and ammonia by the kidney. *Am J Physiol* *51* 568, 1920.

- Comroe J H Jr The hyperpnea of muscular exercise *Physiol Rev* 24 319 1944
- Dock W The anatomical and hydrostatic basis of orthopnea and of right hydrothorax in cardiac failure *Am Heart J* 10 1047 1935
- Drinker C K Pulmonary Edema and Inflammation Cambridge Harvard Univ Press 1945
- Dunn J S The effects of multiple embolism of pulmonary arterioles *Quart J Med* 13 129 1919
- East T Failure of the Heart and Circulation London John Bale 1937
- Engel D The influence of the sympathetic nervous system on capillary permeability *J Physiol* 99 161 1941
- Ernstine A C and Blumgart H L Orthopnea its relation to increased venous pressure of myocardial failure *Arch Int Med* 45 593 1930
- Field H Jr and Bock A V Orthopnea and the effect of posture upon the rate of blood flow *J Clin Investigation* 2 67 1925
- Formigne P Apnea or convulsions following standstill of the heart *Am Heart J* 15 129 1934
- Galli C Un cas de respiration alternante et periodique analogie de ce phenomene avec celui du coeur alternant *Arch d mal du coeur* 12 49 1919
- Gilmore H R and Kopelman H Cheyne Stokes respiration *Brit M J* 2 1439 1954
- Guyton A C Crowell J W and Moore J W Basic oscillating mechanism of Cheyne Stokes breathing *Am J Physiol* 187 395 1956
- Haldane J M Meakins J C and Priestley J G The effects of shallow breathing *J Physiol* 52 433 1919
- Harrison T R et al Studies in congestive heart failure V Reflex versus chemical factors in the production of rapid breathing *J Clin Investigation* 11 133 1932
- Henderson V Acapnia as a factor in postoperative shock atelectasis and pneumonia *JAMA* 90 572 1930
- Henneman P H Acute pulmonary edema with special reference to experimental studies *New Engl J Med* 35 590 1946
- Hill I C W and MacKinnon A U Association of Adams Stokes attacks with Cheyne Stokes respiration with case report *Edinburgh M J* 41 513 1934
- Hofbauer L Ursachen der Orthopnoe *Ztschr f klin Med* 61 389 1901
- Jackson F The radiology of acute pulmonary oedema *Brit Heart J* 13 503 1951
- Jarisch A Richter H and Thoma H Zentrogenes Lungenodem *Klin Wchnschr* 19 1440 1939
- Kerr W J Dalton J W and Cliebe I A Some physical phenomena associated with the anxiety states and their relation to hyperventilation *Ann Int Med* 11 961 1937
- Kroetz C Dr 24 Stunden Rhythmus der Kreislaufregulation *Acta med Scandinav Suppl* 108 234 1940
- Lewis B I The hyperventilation syndrome *Ann Int Med* 39 918 1953
- Luisada A The pathogenesis of paroxysmal pulmonary edema *Medicine* 19 470 1940
- McMichael J Hyperpnea in heart failure *Clin Sc* 4 19 1939
- MacWilliam J A Some applications of physiology to medicine III Blood pressure and heart action in sleep and dreams their relation to haemorrhage angina and sudden death *Brit M J* - 1196 1953
- Meakins J The cause and treatment of dyspnea in cardiovascular disease *Brit M J* 1 1043 1953
- Means J H Dyspnea *Medicine* 3 309 1954

- Merkle A and Wiss F Zur Pathogenese der kardialen Dyspnoe Schweiz med Wchnschr 80 1154 1950
- Murphy I D Correll H and Grill J C The effects of intravenous solutions on patients with and without cardiovascular defects J A M A 116 104 1941
- Nielsen J M and Roth I Clinical spirometry spirograms and their significance Arch Int Med 43 132 1929
- Nielsen M Untersuchungen über die Atemregulation beim Menschen Skandinav Arch f Physiol Suppl 10 to Vol 74 1936
- Palmer R S and White I D The clinical significance of cardiac asthma review of 200 cases J A M A 97 431 1929
- Parker F Jr and Weiss S The nature and significance of the structural changes in the lungs in mitral stenosis Am J Path 12 573 1936
- Teabody F W and Wentworth J A Clinical studies of the respiration IV The vital capacity of the lungs and its relation to dyspnea Arch Int Med 20 443 191
- Plotz M Asthmatoïd heart failure a form of left ventricular failure and its differentiation from bronchial asthma by circulation time and other criteria Ann Int Med 13 151 1939
- Tryer W W Cheyne Stokes respiration in patients with cardiac enlargement and prolonged circulation time Circulation 4 233 1951
- Raab W Hirnblutuntersuchungen bei Hypertonie Ztschr f klin Med 115 511 1931
- Hormonal and Neurogenic Cardiovascular Disorders Baltimore Williams and Wilkins 1953
- Resnik H Jr and Friedman B Studies on the mechanism of the increased oxygen consumption in patients with cardiac disease J Clin Investigation 14 551 1935
- Richards D Jr The nature of cardiac and of pulmonary dyspnea Circulation 15 1903
- Sahl H Verhandl d Kongress Inn Med 19 45 1901
- Sarnoff S J and Sarnoff L C Neurohemodynamics of pulmonary edema Circulation 6 51 1951
- Scheinberg B Cerebral circulation time in heart failure Am J Med 8 148 1950
- Scherf D The respiratory and the circulatory system in females with ovarian dysfunction Ann Int Med 13 1414 1940
- and Schlaichman M The electrocardiographic changes caused by hyperventilation Am J M Sc 213 342 1947
- Schmidt C F The respiration In Macloed's Physiology in Modern Medicine ed 1 St Louis C V Mosby 1941
- Schoen R Untersuchungen über die zerebrale Innervation der Atmung über periodische Atmung und Apnoe Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol 108 339 1928
- Sharpey Schafer E P and Wallace J Circulatory overloading following rapid intravenous injections Brit M J 2 304 1942
- Symposium on the regulation of the performance of the heart Physiol Rev 35 91 1955
- Traube L Bemerkungen über cardiales Asthma Gesammelte Beitr z Path u Physiol 3 209 1878
- Tschermak Seysenegg A Über den Einfluß des Nervensystems auf die Durchlässigkeit der Zellen Med klin 79 213 1933
- Vierordt Handwörterbuch der Physiologie (Wagner) 912 1844
- Wassermann S Der Cheyne Stokes Symptomkomplex Wien Arch f inn Med 4 410 1922 5 221 283 1923 6 303 1923
- Das akute kardiale Lungenodem und sein reflektorischer Mechanismus Wien Arch f inn Med 74 213 and 387 1933
- and Goodman J I A neurogenic mechanism of acute pulmonary edema Exper Med & Surg 4 165 1946



- Weiss S and Robb G P Cardiac asthma (paroxysmal cardiac dyspnea) and the syndrome of left ventricular failure J A M A 100 1841 1933
- Welch W H Zur Pathologie des Lungenödems Arch f path Anat 72 375 1878
- White I D and Hahn R G The symptom of sighing in cardiovascular diagnosis with spirographic observations Am J M Sc 177 179 1929
- Wiggers C J Physiology in Health and Disease Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1949
- Zdansky E Beiträge zur Kenntnis der kardialen Lungenstauung auf Grund röntgenologischer klinischer und anatomischer Untersuchungen Wien Arch f inn Med 18 461 1929
- Über das Röntgenbild des Lungenödems ; gleichzeitig ein Beitrag zur Frage der Pathogenese des Lungenödems Röntgenpraxis 5 248 1933
- zu Jeddeloh B Untersuchungen zur Histologie chronischer Stauungslungen Beitr z path Anat u z allg Path 86 387 1931

## Chapter 2

# The Size of the Normal Heart

THE AVERAGE WEIGHT of the adult heart is 250 grams (females) to 300 grams (males). There is a definite correlation between body weight and the weight of the heart although this correlation is not valid in obesity. The normal heart at birth weighs about 23 grams. The weight of the heart increases in proportion to the weight of the skeletal muscles (a fact known to Harvey). The taller and the heavier a man is, the larger his heart.

Generally speaking, the weight of the heart in man and animals increases with added physical activity. It is small in people engaged in sedentary work but large in athletes and in those who do heavy physical labor.

*Position of the Diaphragm* The size and shape of the normal heart varies with the individual; it may even change in the same person within a short time for it depends upon many factors. The position of the diaphragm, for example, is an influencing factor. A diaphragm too low to afford cardiac support results in a pendulum or vertical heart. The observer may consider such a heart normal in size even though an enlargement is actually present. If on the other hand the diaphragm is elevated the apex beat may be located outside the mid-clavicular line and the mistaken diagnosis of cardiac enlargement may be made.

Figure 6 shows how the heart changes its size and shape when the position of the diaphragm varies. Figure 6a depicts the heart when the diaphragm is high. The heart seems large with a pronounced waist line. The vascular band is wider and an enlargement of the aorta may be erroneously assumed. In Figure 6c (low diaphragm) the cardiac axis is perpendicular causing the heart to appear small. Figure 6b shows the form of the average normal heart when the diaphragm is in a normal position.

*Physical Exertion* After brief but heavy physical exertion the heart may temporarily enlarge such enlargement lasting for only a few minutes. Its subsequent reduction of size may persist for hours or days. The enlargement is probably due to increased venous return with greater cardiac filling, while the reduction in size can be attributed mainly to the tachycardia which is characteristic of diastole (ventricular filling) and to an increase in sympathetic tone.

After prolonged exertion cardiac enlargement may be more or less permanent and more marked. This is particularly apt to occur when the muscular system is fatigued.

damaged the individual is unaccustomed to such effort and the exertion is unusually strenuous (Zdarsky)

**Heart Rate** Cardiac rate exerts a marked influence on cardiac size. The heart becomes smaller in tachycardias and larger during bradycardias. Thus in cases of heart block or in healthy young athletes who develop bradycardia while in training the heart is large. In these instances the augmented size is a result of prolonged diastole with greater ventricular filling.

**Blood Volume** The heart becomes smaller after a copious phlebotomy and after diarrhea with dehydration and becomes larger for a few minutes after an intravenous infusion. It is very small in patients with Addison's disease particularly during a crisis when there is reduction of blood volume; it returns to normal when the crisis is treated successfully (McCrack).

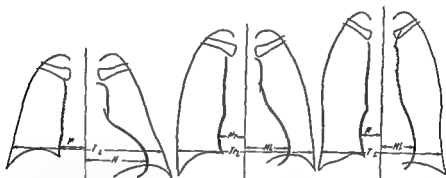


FIG. 11 Changes in the shape of the normal heart and of the transverse cardiac diameter in different positions (a) With a high diaphragm (b) normal position of the diaphragm (c) with a low diaphragm (Zdarsky)

**Measurement** Since so many factors exert a marked influence upon cardiac size methods of finding slight enlargement by mensuration of different diameters are fraught with error and may lead to false impressions. Moreover such measurements do not permit an unequivocal detection of early cardiac enlargement and they are superfluous when definite changes are present; therefore they will not be discussed in detail. If measurements are recorded films ought to be obtained when the patient is recumbent since this position allows better filling and minimizes variations. Tables have been constructed which predict the cardiac measurements for various heights and weights (Ungerleider). In many conditions e.g. deformities of the chest, pregnancy or ascites mistakes will occur when these tables are used.

The cardiothoracic ratio which enjoys considerable popularity is obtained in the following manner. The width of the chest is measured at the level of the uppermost portion of the diaphragmatic dome, the inner side of the ribs being used as end points. The transverse diameter of the heart is considered the sum of the greatest distances between the right and left cardiac borders from the midline (fig. 6). The normal ratio between the diameter of the chest and the transverse diameter

of the heart varies with the age and size of the individual but it may be considered 2:1 for the adult male. Figure 6 shows how these values depend upon the position of the diaphragm: the ratio increases as the diaphragm descends. Abnormal values are obtained in patients who are very tall or stocky. The cardiothoracic ratio (or cardiopulmonic ratio) therefore furnishes little clinical help in determining early cardiac enlargement. Moreover, certain parts of the heart may be enlarged even when the transverse diameter is normal (see outflow tract of the right ventricle).

Congestive heart failure may be present with a small heart (in myocardial infarction) and it may be absent with the very large hearts of cor biconvexum in hypertension or aortic insufficiency.

In patients with scoliosis or funnel chest the heart is often displaced and appears larger than it actually is.

That changes of shape often are of greater diagnostic value than changes of size will be evident from the discussion in the succeeding chapters.

*Tonus of the Heart* This phenomenon defies definition. We refer the reader to Zdansky's discussion of the problem. Many authors believe that tonus is not a separate function of the heart but anyone who sees the flabby, almost shapeless heart resting on the diaphragm in certain myocardial diseases and compares it with the heart of normals or of those in good physical condition will be inclined to think otherwise.

## Bibliography

- Danzer C S: The cardiothoracic ratio: an index of cardiac enlargement. *Am J Med* 157:513, 1919.
- Dielen H: Über Herzgröße und Herzmessung. *klin Wchnschr* 1:2097, 1923.
- Hammer G: Die röntgenologischen Methoden der Herzgrößenbestimmung (nebst Aufstellung von Normalzahlen für das Orthodiagramm und die Fernaufnahme). *Fortschr a d Geb d Röntgenstrahlen* 25:510, 1918.
- McCrea F D, Fyster J A E and Meek W J: The effect of exercise upon diastolic heart size. *Am J Physiol* 81:678, 1929.
- McGavach T H: Changes in heart volume in Addison's disease and their significance. *Am Heart J* 27:1, 1941.
- : Critical evaluation of cardiac mensuration in the treatment of Addison's disease with desoxycorticosterone acetate. *Am Heart J* 27:331, 1944.
- Meek W J: The effect of changes in pulse rate on diastolic heart size. *Am J Physiol* 70:395, 1924.
- Scherf D and Zdansky F: Über die Beeinflussung der Herzgröße durch Atropin, Adrenalin und Amylnitrit. *Wien Arch f inn Med* 16:399, 1929.
- Smith H L: The relation of the weight of the heart to the weight of the body and the weight of the heart to age. *Am Heart J* 4:9, 1918.
- Ungerleider H F: Cardiac enlargement. *Radiology* 48:129, 1947.
- Zdansky E: Über die Veränderungen der Herzgröße und Form nach einmaliger Arbeitsleistung. *Ztschr f klin Med* 131:112, 1936.
- Zdansky F and Boyd L J: *Röntgen Diagnosis of the Heart and Great Vessels*. New York: Grune & Stratton, 1953.

## Chapter 3

# Hypertrophy and Dilatation of Cardiac Chambers

### GENERAL DISCUSSION

**D**ILATATION OF A CHAMBER of the heart often is an occurrence which enables the heart to adapt itself to a changed situation. It appears under different conditions.

*First* an increased inflow into the heart (arteriovenous fistula, patent ductus arteriosus, rapid intravenous infusions) augments cardiac filling and leads to an increased content of blood at the end of diastole. As a consequence the myocardial fibers are subjected to greater stretch so that according to the law of Starling a stronger contraction results and the heart is able to cope with the increased demand. The dilatation at the end of systole may be minimal. This is also the manner in which the left ventricle disposes of increased filling if a mitral or aortic insufficiency is present. Within physiological limits the larger the volume of the heart the greater is the energy of its contraction and the amount of chemical change at each contraction. The energy of contraction however measured is a function of the length of the muscle fiber (Starling). In addition to the volume at the end of diastole hormonal and neurogenic factors also are influences on cardiac performance.

Starling's law of the heart has been questioned lately but has also been confirmed and amplified (Sarnoff).

*Second* dilatation occurs when the heart works against increased resistance (hypertension, aortic stenosis) and is incapable of expelling all of its contents at the end of systole. Cardiac output initially diminished soon becomes normal.

*Third* if a primary myocardial lesion or one caused by coronary artery disease renders the muscle unable to contract against the resistance of a normal diastolic blood pressure the amount of residual blood again increases. Filling is greater and contraction improves.

Hypertrophy develops within a few weeks in such hearts. The increased stretch presumably acts as the physiologic stimulus. In hypertrophy muscle fibers become larger; in rare instances a numeric increase of fibers has been observed (Lanzbach).

Hormonal factors in the development of hypertrophy are discussed by Raab

## ATRIAL HYPERTROPHY AND DILATATION

Physicians are often confused about the possibility of determining the presence of hypertrophy or dilatation of the atria or the ventricles by physical examination. It may be worthwhile therefore to review the subject in a few introductory remarks.

### *Atrial Hypertrophy*

Hypertrophy of the right or left atrium even when extreme cannot be detected by physical examination; moreover it does not significantly change the shape of the heart on x-ray examination. The slight dilatation that invariably precedes hypertrophy scarcely exceeds the limits of normal variation. Therefore massive hypertrophy of the left atrium in mitral stenosis or of the right atrium in tricuspid stenosis cannot be diagnosed except by inference.

### *Dilatation of the Left Atrium*

This occurs in two ways both illustrated by the two lesions which commonly deform the mitral valve. In mitral stenosis the atrium can compensate for some time by hypertrophy alone. Only when hypertrophy no longer suffices and the atrium cannot expel its contents through the narrowed valve does the retention of larger amounts of residual blood at the end of systole cause dilatation. This is called "secondary dilatation." From the onset of mitral insufficiency however blood enters the atrium both from the pulmonary veins and under high pressure from the left ventricle by regurgitation causing a primary dilatation to appear early.

Dilatation of the left atrium may occur mainly along the left cardiac border where it straightens the waist line and causes dullness in the second interspace to the left of the sternal border; this is one reason for "mitralization" of the heart. Owing to this enlargement and also to the rotation of the heart to the left (clockwise) in mitral stenosis the left atrium may become visible on the right cardiac border during roentgenologic examination. Normally it just reaches this border. In some patients with mitral insufficiency and a huge left atrium a very strong pulsation appears at the right of the sternum between the fourth and sixth ribs for the atrium fills under high ventricular pressure and may closely approximate the chest wall in this area. Marked enlargement of the left atrium may cause left paravertebral dullness between the third and sixth dorsal vertebra. We have seen patients with a giant left atrium in whom the left pleura was tapped because of a mistaken diagnosis of pleural effusion.

The position of the left atrium as the uppermost posterior part of the heart and its location beneath the tracheal bifurcation in front of the esophagus explains why it displaces these structures when it enlarges. Compression of the left main bronchus and displacement of the esophagus occur; these actions will be discussed in the chapter on mitral stenosis.

Radiologic examination will best reveal dilatation of the left atrium in the early stage if the patient is placed in the right anterior oblique position. The patient is turned 30 to 40 degrees to the left. Then the normally clear retrocardiac space is filled by the shadow of the left atrium. A study of the course of the esophagus in this position is helpful. If the patient swallows a suspension of barium sulfate



FIG. 7 Displacement of the esophagus by an enlarged left atrium in mitral stenosis (right anterior oblique position)

the normal esophagus is seen to swerve in a slight arc whose concavity is directed toward the abdomen. In left atrial enlargement the esophagus is displaced sharply backward just beneath the bifurcation of the trachea.

In figure 7 the typical displacement of the esophagus just beneath the bifurcation of the trachea is clearly visible. The picture was obtained in the right anterior oblique position from a patient with rheumatic mitral stenosis and regurgitation.

Occasionally a slight circumscribed displacement may occur without left atrial enlargement when the diaphragm is high. Therefore the observation should be made during deep inspiration. Persistent esophageal displacement in

deep inspiration speaks in favor of enlargement of the left atrium. A pericardial effusion or an enlargement of the left ventricle causes a similar dorsal displacement of the esophagus; this however does not begin just below the bifurcation and is less sharply circumscribed.

### *Dilatation of the Right Atrium*

This can be easily demonstrated by percussion since dullness is obtained at the right lower cardiac border and to a variable extent beyond the edge of the lower sternum. This enlargement is also readily demonstrated by x-ray but it must be differentiated from displacement by an enlarged right (or even left) ventricle. Usually such differentiation is possible when the patient is in the oblique position and when an examination is made of the neck veins and the liver. Enlargement of the right atrium when extensive is accompanied by hepatomegaly and congestion of the neck veins.

### *Electrocardiogram*

The electrocardiogram offers some aid in the differentiation of atrial hypertrophy and dilatation. In mitral disease with predominant left atrial dilatation

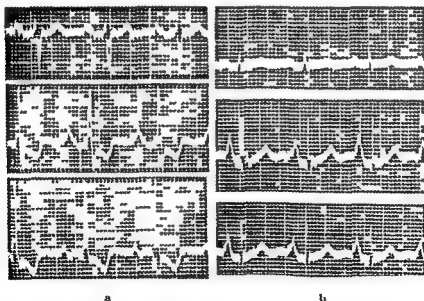


FIG. 8 The three standard leads. Figure 8a shows a right ventricular strain pattern and widened slurred P waves in leads I and II in a patient with mitral stenosis. Figure 8b shows abnormally high I waves in leads II and III in a patient with chronic pulmonary emphysema.

abnormally wide, slurred and notched P waves appear in leads I and II (figure 8a). This is probably due to intra atrial conduction disturbances associated with marked left atrial dilatation. In right atrial hypertrophy, as seen in the various types of cor pulmonale, the I waves are low in lead I but unusually high, often



over 3 mm in leads II and III (figure 8b) These waves are not wide abnormally slurred or notched In this instance hypertrophy of the right atrium seems solely responsible The tall P waves (figure 8b) are followed by depressed P R and RS T segments This is due to the pronounced T waves of the P (Ta or Tp waves)

Very large P waves in all leads are often seen in congenital heart diseases such as the tetralogy of Fallot Occasionally these typical changes of the P waves provide diagnostic help in difficult cases Figure 9 shows the huge P waves in leads I and II obtained from a 4 year old child with tetralogy of Fallot

## VENTRICLES

### *Inflow and Outflow Tracts*

Cardiac dilatation and hypertrophy do not develop simultaneously in all parts of the right or left ventricle when these structures are subjected to increased strain The sequence of cardiac dilatation and hypertrophy follows certain rules (Kirch)

Each ventricle may be divided into two parts which function as physiologic units (figure 10) The inflow (receiving) portion is located between the atrio-ventricular orifices and the apex while the outflow (expelling) portion is found between the apex and the semilunar valves These sections converge toward the apex The inflow tract of the right (or left) ventricle is represented by the posterior part of the ventricle and adjoining septum whereas the outflow tract is formed by the anterior ventricular wall and adjoining septum When dilatation (and hypertrophy) develop in a healthy right (or left) ventricle owing to an increased pressure in the lesser (or systemic) circulation the only part affected at first is that situated immediately below the semilunar valves (terminal portion of the outflow tract) The dilatation gradually extends toward the apex and only then affects the inflow tract as well Thus dilatation progresses gradually moving from one part to another in a direction opposite to that of blood flow If for some reason the cause of ventricular hypertrophy disappears (left ventricular hypertrophy in hypertension) recovery starts at the end of the inflow section and moves with the blood stream down toward the apex and then up to the arterial orifice This tonogenic dilatation the result of increased resistance causes the heart to enlarge mainly along the longitudinal axis of the outflow tract

These postmortem observations have been confirmed by experiments on the mammalian heart In aortic stenosis the conus area is exposed to increased intraventricular pressure for a longer time and it retains more residual blood than the rest of the ventricle at the end of systole With increasing resistance to the emptying due to an increasing residuum of blood the process gradually extends toward the apex this produces a gradual dilatation in a direction opposite to that of the intracardiac blood stream

In patients with mitral insufficiency the inflow of larger quantities of blood from the atrium to the left ventricle during diastole leads to an early dilatation

of the inflow tract the same process applies to the right ventricle in a tricuspid insufficiency. These rules are not applicable to cardiac dilatation resulting from myocardial damage (myogenic dilatation) since here the entire chamber dilates simultaneously. This is seen in myocarditis or coronary sclerosis.

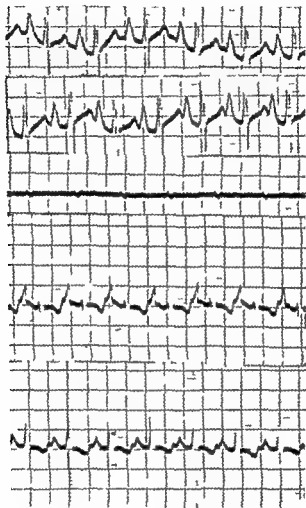


FIG. 9. Huge T waves in the standard leads as well as in V<sub>2</sub> and V<sub>3</sub> in a child with Fallot's tetralogy.

Involvement of the inflow or outflow tracts of the right ventricle can be recognized fluoroscopically, especially in the left anterior oblique position. Occasionally important diagnostic data are obtained by this means. The inflow tracts of both ventricles are situated posteriorly, the outflow tracts anteriorly. Hence the most anterior portion of the heart is the outflow tract of the right ventricle (conus of the pulmonary artery) while the most dorsal section is the inflow tract of the left ventricle and the left atrium.

In figure 10a b c the positions of the inflow and outflow tracts of the right and left ventricles are indicated by arrows. Figure 10a is a postero anterior view. Figure 10b shows the right anterior oblique position and figure 10c the left anterior oblique position.

It can be seen in figure 10a that the inflow and outflow tracts of the *left* ventricle run almost parallel. The inflow tract from the mitral valve to the apex is situated posteriorly and borders on the posterior mediastinum. The outflow tract from the apex to the aortic orifice forms the left cardiac border. Simple

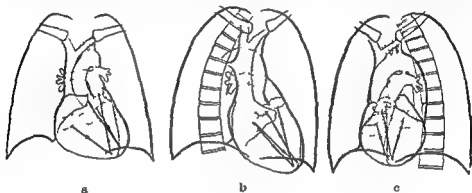


FIG 10 Course of the inflow and outflow tracts of the right and left ventricles (a) postero anterior position (b) right anterior (c) left anterior oblique position (Zdansky)

prolongation of the outflow and inflow tracts along their axes without dilatation along the transverse diameter will displace the apex best downward but the heart will not appear larger as more of the left ventricle will be hidden in the abdominal shadow than under normal conditions.

The inflow tract of the *right* ventricle extends from the tricuspid orifice toward the apex of the right ventricle lying more or less horizontally upon the diaphragm. The outflow tract of the right ventricle on the other hand runs almost perpendicularly upward from the apex to the pulmonary orifice.

Dilatation of the inflow tracts is best studied in the left anterior oblique position (figure 10c) for which the patient turns 40 to 60 degrees to the right. If the inflow tract of the left ventricle is dilated a greater part of the left ventricle is hidden in the shadow of the vertebral column. Enlargement of the inflow tract of the right ventricle makes the right heart border more prominent so that it bulges into the right lung field.

The enlargement of the outflow tract of the right ventricle is best studied in the right anterior oblique position (figure 10b) which brings the prominent conus into view. In the postero anterior position it causes filling of the waist line.

### *Hypertrophy of the Left Ventricle*

One often hears the remark that the right or left ventricle is hypertrophied because of some particular finding on percussion or x ray examination. It may not be amiss to stress that concentric hypertrophy even if massive does not

necessarily alter cardiac size enough for demonstration by percussion. Only one sign of left ventricular hypertrophy is found on physical examination: a heaving strong apical impulse which can scarcely be suppressed by the examining fingers despite the use of considerable force. Such a sign, however, is uncommon. The apical impulse is not palpable in the recumbent patient in at least 60 per cent of normal adults. This is to be expected since most of the left ventricle is located posteriorly; the apical area is thoroughly covered by lung and the impulse is absorbed by the chest wall. Conditions are not much different when there is hypertrophy of the ventricle. Accordingly, the apical impulse is heaving only in a minority of cases. When this sign is positive it often stems also from displacement of the apex by dilatation of the left ventricle, bringing it nearer to the chest wall. Hypertension or aortic stenosis may persist for years and hypertrophy of the left ventricle may reach great proportions without there being any evidence from physical examination to prove the existence of this hypertrophy. Usually the presence of hypertrophy is merely inferred; its existence cannot be positively demonstrated.

The situation is somewhat similar on x-ray examination. Only greater rounding of the lower left cardiac border and apical area is found, but this finding is also noted in normal hearts and in athletes. In concentric hypertrophy of the left ventricle for a long time only the outflow tract — which is not very accessible to examination — is involved. Hypertrophy of the left ventricle need not necessarily be accompanied by a similar change in the right ventricle.

The electrocardiogram is discussed below.

### *Hypertrophy of the Right Ventricle*

Hypertrophy of the right ventricle can be demonstrated more readily. The right ventricle lies anteriorly, immediately behind that part of the thoracic wall called the precordium. In this area the lung either does not cover the heart or covers it only in part, and thus right ventricular hypertrophy causes a diffuse and increased pulsation of the whole area to the left of the lower sternum. The most anterior part of the heart is the outflow tract of the right ventricle, that is, the conus of this ventricle. Since in the majority of cases it undergoes hypertrophy first, a pulsation of the conus area is palpable very early.

It is in cases of pulmonary emphysema and abnormalities of the thoracic wall that the pulsation does not appear. The sign is not pathognomonic, however, since it is found in the absence of right ventricular hypertrophy, i.e. in the juvenile heart when the chest wall is thin and in the overactive heart of cardiac neurosis, hyperthyroidism, or acutaminosis (beriberi heart). The differential diagnosis is nevertheless usually easy.

Pure hypertrophy of the right ventricle without dilatation is difficult to detect by x-ray. When the conus of the right ventricle is accentuated and the right ventricular contour is more prominent in the left anterior oblique position, dilatation of considerable degree has already taken place.

The electrocardiogram is discussed below.

during systole if the amount of fluid in the alveoli is greater than normal (cardio pulmonary edema). In cases of left ventricular hypertrophy and dilatation a larger part of the heart is close to the anterior chest wall and the lung having lost its elasticity due to chronic emphysema cannot expand with sufficient speed during cardiac systole. Therefore the atmospheric pressure presses on the soft inter spaces and causes systolic retractions — which are so often misinterpreted as being caused by pericardial adhesions.

Right ventricular dilatation usually involves the outflow tract primarily (tonogenic dilatation) the conus area therefore shows the first evidence of enlargement. The axis of the outflow tract of the right ventricle is almost perpendicular (figure 10a). Upward dilatation develops easily whereas the diaphragm prevents downward expansion. Therefore a prominent conus of the right ventricle in the right oblique position and neutralization in the postero anterior position are early roentgenologic signs of right ventricular dilatation. The enlarged conus of the right ventricle is best visualized when the patient is standing in a lordotic position.

Dilatation of the inflow tract of the right ventricle e.g. in a tricuspid regurgitation causes a marked enlargement of the cardiac shadow to the right and left since the axis of the inflow tract of the right ventricle runs almost horizontally from right to left.

### *Electrocardiogram*

The electrocardiogram may be normal despite the presence of cardiac hypertrophy and dilatation. In more advanced hypertrophy and dilatation of a ventricle the electrocardiogram assumes a typical pattern. The presence or absence of an axis deviation which was strongly emphasized a few years ago is of little importance. In patients with left ventricular hypertrophy but a perpendicular cardiac axis no left axis deviation need be present while in right ventricular hypertrophy and a horizontal heart left axis deviation has been seen. Thus the position of the heart is of importance for the appearance of an axis deviation. If a marked emphysema supervenes in a patient with left ventricular hypertrophy due to hypertension and the heart assumes a more perpendicular position the two factors (hypertrophy and position) acting in opposite directions may cause the disappearance of any deviation or even the appearance of a right axis deviation. In left ventricular hypertrophy occasionally the QRS complexes are 0.10 or 0.11 second wide. The P, S, T segments and T waves are displaced in the standard leads in a direction opposite to the QRS complexes.

The chest leads are of greater importance than the standard leads for the diagnosis of hypertrophy. As figure 13 shows in left ventricular hypertrophy the P wave in V<sub>2</sub> may become lower or may disappear while the S wave is deeper. The RS/T segment is often more elevated than in normal hearts. In V<sub>1</sub> the P wave is very large, the S wave is often absent and the P, S, T segment as well as the T waves are depressed below the zero line as in lead I. In right ventricular

necessarily alter cardiac size enough for demonstration by percussion. Only one sign of left ventricular hypertrophy is found on physical examination: a heaving, strong apical impulse which can scarcely be suppressed by the examining fingers despite the use of considerable force. Such a sign, however, is uncommon. The apical impulse is not palpable in the recumbent patient in at least 80 per cent of normal adults. This is to be expected since most of the left ventricle is located posteriorly; the apical area is thoroughly covered by lung and the impulse is absorbed by the chest wall. Conditions are not much different when there is hypertrophy of the ventricle. Accordingly the apical impulse is heaving only in a minority of cases. When this sign is positive it often stems also from displacement of the apex by dilatation of the left ventricle bringing it nearer to the chest wall. Hypertension or aortic stenosis may persist for years and hypertrophy of the left ventricle may reach great proportions without there being any evidence from physical examination to prove the existence of this hypertrophy. Usually the presence of hypertrophy is merely inferred; its existence cannot be positively demonstrated.

The situation is somewhat similar on x-ray examination. Only greater rounding of the lower left cardiac border and apical area is found, but this finding is also noted in normal hearts and in athletes. In concentric hypertrophy of the left ventricle for a long time only the outflow tract — which is not very accessible to examination — is involved. Hypertrophy of the left ventricle need not necessarily be accompanied by a similar change in the right ventricle.

The electrocardiogram is discussed below.

### *Hypertrophy of the Right Ventricle*

Hypertrophy of the right ventricle can be demonstrated more readily. The right ventricle lies anteriorly, immediately behind that part of the thoracic wall called the precordium. In this area the lung either does not cover the heart or covers it only in part, and thus right ventricular hypertrophy causes a diffuse and increased pulsation of the whole area to the left of the lower sternum. The most anterior part of the heart is the outflow tract of the right ventricle; that is the conus of this ventricle. Since in the majority of cases it undergoes hypertrophy first, a pulsation of the conus area is palpable very early.

It is in cases of pulmonary emphysema and abnormalities of the thoracic wall that the pulsation does not appear. The sign is not pathognomonic, however, since it is found in the absence of right ventricular hypertrophy, i.e. in the juvenile heart when the chest wall is thin and in the overactive heart of cardiac neurosis, hyperthyroidism, or avitaminosis (beriberi heart). The differential diagnosis is nevertheless usually easy.

Pure hypertrophy of the right ventricle without dilatation is difficult to detect by x-ray. When the conus of the right ventricle is accentuated and the right ventricular contour is more prominent in the left anterior oblique position, dilatation of considerable degree has already taken place.

The electrocardiogram is discussed below.

### *Dilatation of Left and Right Ventricle*

Dilatation of the left or right ventricle increases the size of the heart and therefore cardiac enlargement is found on percussion or by x ray examination. Since both ventricles are situated mainly in the left chest it is often impossible to decide by percussion alone which ventricle is enlarged.

*Left Ventricle* The position of the apical impulse if present permits one to deduce which ventricle is dilated. The normal apical impulse is located in the fifth left intercostal space within the mid clavicular line. Dilatation of the left



FIG. 11 Displacement of the apex beat with dilatation of the left (a) and of the right (b) ventricle

ventricle displaces the apex beat outward and downward in the direction of the arrow in figure 11a. The left leaf of the diaphragm is often pushed downward. When the outflow tract of the left ventricle dilates e. g. in hypertension or aortic valve stenosis the expansion occurs almost exclusively along the axis of the outflow tract (figure 10a). If there is no widening along the transverse diameters percussion and fluoroscopy will fail to disclose much cardiac enlargement in the usual sense. The heart merely becomes oblong (egg shaped) and as pointed out before a greater part of the enlarged ventricle is hidden in the abdominal shadow. This part becomes visible only if a large amount of gas is present in the colon or stomach.

In myocardial lesions and in more advanced stages of left ventricular dilatation the inflow tract becomes involved the heart enlarges along the transverse axis and the characteristic aortic configuration appears.

*Right Ventricle* With right ventricular dilatation the apex beat is displaced mainly outward but not downward (figure 11b). Often it is situated a little higher than the normal location and an epigastric pulsation is frequently present.

Since the right ventricle is located anteriorly the occurrence of hypertrophy and dilatation of this chamber in childhood (before the chest develops fully) causes a characteristic bulge of the precordium. The left mammae therefore may have a different position than the right one.

Figure 12 shows a characteristic bulge over the precordium in a patient who developed rheumatic mitral stenosis and regurgitation in early childhood. Pronounced hypertrophy and dilatation of the right ventricle were present.

Right ventricular dilatation may also cause a diffuse systolic retraction of the interspaces in the precordial area. Normally when the ventricles contract the



FIG. 1. Bulge of the precordial area of the chest wall in a patient with a rheumatic mitral stenosis and regurgitation.

negative intrathoracic pressure increases because blood leaves the chest the elastic lung bordering on the heart immediately widens and fills the gap (Lang). This explains why moist rales are heard over the anterior part of the left lung



during systole if the amount of fluid in the alveoli is greater than normal (cardio pulmonary rales). In cases of right ventricular hypertrophy and dilatation a larger part of the heart is close to the anterior chest wall and the lung having lost its elasticity due to chronic congestion cannot expand with sufficient speed during cardiac systole. Therefore the atmospheric pressure presses on the soft inter spaces and causes systolic retractions — which are so often misinterpreted as being caused by pericardial adhesions.

Right ventricular dilatation usually involves the outflow tract primarily (tonogenic dilatation) the conus area therefore shows the first evidence of enlargement. The axis of the outflow tract of the right ventricle is almost perpendicular (figure 10a). Upward dilatation develops easily whereas the diaphragm prevents downward expansion. Therefore a prominent conus of the right ventricle in the right oblique position and neutralization in the postero anterior position are early roentgenologic signs of right ventricular dilatation. The enlarged conus of the right ventricle is best visualized when the patient is standing in a lordotic position.

Dilatation of the inflow tract of the right ventricle e. g. in a tricuspid regurgitation causes a marked enlargement of the cardiac shadow to the right and left since the axis of the inflow tract of the right ventricle runs almost horizontally from right to left.

### *Electrocardiogram*

The electrocardiogram may be normal despite the presence of cardiac hypertrophy and dilatation. In more advanced hypertrophy and dilatation of a ventricle the electrocardiogram assumes a typical pattern. The presence or absence of an axis deviation which was strongly emphasized a few years ago is of little importance. In patients with left ventricular hypertrophy but a perpendicular cardiac axis no left axis deviation need be present while in right ventricular hypertrophy and a horizontal heart left axis deviation has been seen. Thus the position of the heart is of importance for the appearance of an axis deviation. If a marked emphysema supervenes in a patient with left ventricular hypertrophy due to hypertension and the heart assumes a more perpendicular position the two factors (hypertrophy and position) acting in opposite directions may cause the disappearance of any deviation or even the appearance of a right axis deviation. In left ventricular hypertrophy occasionally the QRS complexes are 0.10 or 0.11 second wide. The P-S-T segments and T waves are displaced in the standard leads in a direction opposite to the QRS complexes.

The chest leads are of greater importance than the standard leads for the diagnosis of hypertrophy. As figure 13 shows in left ventricular hypertrophy the I wave in V2 may become lower or may disappear while the S wave is deeper. The R-S-T segment is often more elevated than in normal hearts. In V5 the R wave is very large the S wave is often absent and the P-S-T segment as well as the T waves are depressed below the zero line as in lead I. In right ventricular

hypertrophy the R wave in V2 is often but not invariably taller than usual and the T wave is flat or inverted. In V5 there are deep S waves preceded by R waves of medium height. The RS-T segments and T waves are normal in V6.

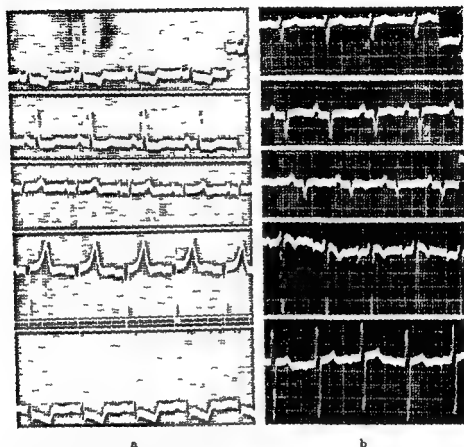


FIG. 13. Electrocardiograms showing the patterns of left (a) and right (b) ventricular hypertrophy. Figure 13a was registered from a 68 year old woman with hypertension; figure 13b was obtained from a 54 year old patient with pulmonary emphysema.

## Bibliography

- Assmann H. Die klinische Röntgendiagnostik der inneren Erkrankungen. Berlin: Vogel, 1934.
- Cabrera E C. and Monroy J P. Systolic and diastolic loading of the heart. *Am Heart J* 43: 661, 1952.
- Cole G C. The conus arteriosus and the pulmonary artery. *Am J Roentgenol* 45: 32, 1941.
- Cabert F. Die Lagebeziehungen des Oesophagus zur dorsalen Herzfläche und ihre Veränderung durch Erweiterung des linken Vorhofs im Röntgenbild. *Fortschr a d Geb d Röntgenstrahlen* 32: 416, 1944.
- Ippolito T L. and Reinstein H. The aortic electrocardiogram in chronic cor pulmonale. *Bull New York M Coll* 43: Flower & Fifth Ave Hosp 4: 3, 1941.

- Kirch E Der Einfluß der linksseitigen Herzhypertrophie auf das rechte Herz Beitr z path Anat z u allg Path 73 35 1924
- Pathogenese und Folgen der Dilatation und der Hypertrophie des Herzens Klin Wchnschr 9 769 817 1930
- Der Entwicklungsablauf der rechtsseitigen tonogenen Herzdilatation bei Mensch und Versuchstier und seine physiologische Erklärung Virchows Arch f path Anat 291 682 1933
- Lang G Über einige durch die Herzaktion verursachte Bewegungen der Brustwand und des Epigastriums D Arch f klin Med 109 3, 1912
- Linzbach A J Mikrometrische und histologische Analyse hypertrophischer menschlicher Herzen Virch Arch 314 534 1947
- MacLenzie I Diseases of the Heart London H Frowde 1908
- Nemet J and Schwedel J B Roentgenographic studies of the right ventricle Am Heart J , 560 1932
- Parlinson J Enlargement of the heart Lancet 1 1337 1936
- Samojloff A and Stoshinsky M Über die Vorhoferhebung des Elektrokardiogramms bei Mitralstenose München med Wchnschr 56 1942 1909
- Sarnoff B J Myocardial contractility as described by ventricular function curves Physiol Rev 35 107 1955
- Starling E H Law of the Heart London Longmans Green 1918
- Vaquez H and Bordet E Radiologie du coeur et des vaisseaux de la base Paris Bailliere 1928
- Winternitz M Zur Pathologie des menschlichen Vorhofelektrokardiogramms Med Klinik 31 1575 1935
- Zdansky F and Boyd L J Roentgen Diagnosis of the Heart and Great Vessels New York Grune & Stratton 1953

## Chapter 4

# Percussion and Auscultation

### PERCUSSION

#### *Introduction*

**I**N RECENT YEARS with the development and increased availability of roentgenology percussion of the cardiac borders is hardly taught or practiced in many institutions. It has been called a dying method which served in the past but should be extruded from our important and growing number of clinical and laboratory methods (Parlinsion). One must concede that roentgenology and especially fluoroscopy give more exact and more detailed information about the size and what is more important the shape of the heart. Moreover patients with emphysema obesity or a deep or deformed thorax (kyphoscoliosis) present unsurmountable obstacles to cardiac percussion. Furthermore in such cases percussion often provides misleading information. Notwithstanding the fact that moderate emphysema is not rare in cardiac patients percussion is and will continue to be however a very important and valuable method for every student and physician so long as x ray machines will not fit into the doctor's bag. Those who ridicule percussion or deny the possibility of obtaining information from it deprive themselves of a valuable means of learning at the bedside the size and shape of the heart.

#### *Technic*

As an aid to reliable and informative cardiac percussion one should mark the borders of the heart as obtained by percussion with a skin pencil (dermatograph) and try to locate the right and left borders. Thus *orthopercussion* provides information about the size and shape of the heart and furnishes results that can be compared in accuracy to those of a postero anterior x ray film.

It is well to percuss first the attachment of the right diaphragm or the lower border of the right pleural sinus for percussion of the dome of the diaphragm is unreliable. In about 67 per cent of normal adults small dilated cutaneous veins (pleural sinus veins) indicate the site of the pleural sinuses. The presence of these veins does not indicate pulmonary cardiac pleural or hepatic pathology as is often suggested. Either the veins are physiologic structures most obvious in those engaged in athletics or heavy physical work (Burrett and Scherf) and are more pronounced in patients with an obstruction of the superior vena cava. Figure 14

shows very pronounced pleural sinus veins in a patient with a mediastinal tumor (lymphosarcoma). Smaller chains of veins are seen in normals.



FIG. 14. Pleural sinus veins in a patient with a mediastinal tumor.

After determining the border between the lowest part of the lung and liver which can be obtained with very light percussion the right border of the heart is mapped out. Percussion is performed in the interspaces from right to left. In mapping out the left cardiac border one starts at the second interspace. When the

lower half of the left cardiac border is reached the examiner attempts to keep the plessimeter finger parallel to it and disregards the interspaces.

One question arises very often. Should the first suggestion of diminished resonance or a very distinct dullness be considered as the cardiac border? If the former is used and the heart is enlarged impurment will be found at some distance from the heart. On the other hand very light percussion obtains the area of absolute dullness. This shows only how much of the heart is uncovered by lung and yields little information about cardiac size and shape. For the best results the beginner should mark the border at points where the difference between two successive percussion strokes is most distinct.

The examiner should never draw a line upon the discovery of a dull area but instead should mark it with a dot. In this way the subjective aspect of percussion is reduced.

Experience gained in the instruction of many groups of undergraduate students in physical diagnosis has shown the inadvisability of giving general or specific rules concerning the force used in percussing different parts of the right or left borders. Such rules confuse rather than help the beginner. Practice alone provides the necessary experience and makes it possible to consider such numerous variables as the shape of the thorax, the amount of subcutaneous fat, the resonance of the thoracic cage, etc.

To avoid errors created by diaphragmatic elevation and to obtain sharper dullness percussion should be performed whenever possible with the patient standing. In this position the heart approaches the anterior chest wall so that the changes on percussion are clearer and more distinct. When percussion is performed on a bedridden patient right handed individuals should always stand on the left side since otherwise the plessimeter finger could not be kept parallel to the cardiac border.

Patients with a high diaphragm as well as those with right ventricular dilatation often have a definite dullness at the lower sternum.

Much more important than the determination of the transverse diameter of the heart either by percussion or x ray examination is the establishment of the cardiac shape. Thus in enlargement of the outflow tract of the right ventricle the heart assumes a nutral shape, i. e. filling of the waist line. This derives from the almost perpendicular position of the outflow tract of the right ventricle. The transverse diameter of the heart may be normal. In enlargement of the outflow tract of the left ventricle displacement of the apex belt downward and outward is of diagnostic value here as well the transverse diameter of the heart may be normal.

### *Right Cardiac Border*

The lower half of the right border is formed by the right atrium (figure 10a). Rarely the right ventricle contributes a very short section to the lowest portion of the right cardiac border just above the diaphragm. Here the inferior vena cava and the hepatic veins may become visible on x ray with a low position of the

diaphragm. The upper half of the right cardiac border is formed by the superior vena cava and the innominate vein but these structures do not play an important role in percussion. In many normal subjects particularly in elderly people the ascending aorta participates in the formation of the right cardiac border.

On x-ray examination the atrial portion of the right border is approximately the lower half extends about twice as far beyond the vertebral column as the upper half of the cardiac border. The dullness produced by percussion of the right lower border under normal conditions projects no more than 5 mm. beyond the right edge of the sternum. This value may be greater in patients with a high diaphragm.

Any dullness beyond this limit in the region of the right lower cardiac border often means enlargement of the right atrium especially when the dullness is clear and superficial. Roentgenologically dilatation of the left atrium may cause the right border to protrude farther. Enlargement of the right or the left ventricle may also displace the right atrium to the right. In hydrothorax percussion of the border of the right atrium is performed most satisfactorily with the patient in the recumbent position for the effusion if not too extensive moves posteriorly. In such cases percussion sometimes yields better results than roentgenography.

Dullness to the right of the upper half of the right sternal border for all practical purposes and insofar as cardiovascular alterations are concerned always stems from an abnormality of the ascending aorta. Normally the aorta is not sufficiently wide or sufficiently superficial to provoke any dullness at this area. Dilatation and elongation of the aorta forces the vessel to approach the upper sternum and increases dullness over the manubrium sterni.

### *Left Cardiac Border*

The left border of the heart may be divided into four parts formed from above downward by the aortic knob, the pulmonary artery, the left atrium and the left ventricle (figure 10a). The aortic knob, which is formed by the sigittal portion of the transverse aorta, is absent in infants and children since they do not have any sigittal section (the aorta proceeds diagonally from the right anterior part of the chest to the left posterior aspects). Percussion of this area is not informative because of the deep position of the aorta.

Normally percussion reveals no dullness over the pulmonary artery and the left atrium. Only a very small section of the left atrium, the tip of its appendix, participates in the formation of the left cardiac border. The mass of the left atrium is located dorsad. Under normal conditions one can percuss in the second and third left intercostal spaces from the axilla to the sternal border without encountering dullness. This segment of the left border is called the waistline of the heart.

Under physiologic conditions a small portion of the left cardiac border above the appendix of the left atrium is formed by the pulmonary artery. The remaining and major part of the left cardiac border swinging in a long arc to the cardiac

apex is formed by the outflow tract of the left ventricle which also represents the apex. Most of the left ventricle is situated dorsad. The right ventricle lies just under the chest wall anteriorly and does not contribute to the formation of the normal left cardiac border.

Dilatation of the descending aorta cannot be discovered by percussion of the anterior chest wall. Occasionally, dorsal percussion to the left of the spinal column elicits some dullness if the descending aorta is dilated.

### *Mitral Configuration*

Enlargement of the conus arteriosus (outflow tract) of the right ventricle as well as dilatation of the pulmonary artery and the left atrium provoke an easily detected dullness at the second and third left intercostal spaces near the sternum. Thus the waistline of the heart straightens and one speaks of mitral configuration of the heart. Since the discovery of parasternal dullness in the second left intercostal space readily permits the diagnosis of increased tension in the lesser circulation, it has great clinical significance.

The term mitral configuration is only descriptive and indicates more or less complete disappearance of the waistline. It does not prove the existence of a mitral lesion. Mitralization is absent in early stages of mitral disease. On the other hand, it may be pronounced without presence of mitral disease as in hypertension, heart disease or in aortic valvular lesions when there is back pressure and hypertension in the lesser circuit. Sometimes under these circumstances a relative mitral insufficiency may also contribute to the development of mitralization. Mitralization is common in cor pulmonale.

The individual components of the left heart border cannot be distinguished in infants and children for their hearts normally show mitral configuration with a relatively straight left cardiac border. The heart is globular in form. If an adult has a high diaphragm which shoves the heart upward in the midline, the waistline may disappear creating mitralization. Since this often happens in women, the term female heart has gained some currency. Mitralization is also found when the low diaphragm fails to support the heart from below, causing the left border to straighten (figure 6c). Mitralization is also seen sometimes when the right diaphragm is unusually high and it is common in kyphoscoliosis. In all these instances fluoroscopic study of the heart in oblique positions usually permits the examiner to decide whether an enlargement of the outflow tract of the right ventricle or dilatation of the left atrium causes the mitralization.

### *Aortic Configuration*

If the left ventricle alone is enlarged, the cardiac waistline becomes accentuated, resulting in a condition called aortic configuration of the heart. Usually this change of shape can easily be detected by percussion. Aortic configuration signifies nothing more than a sharper angle on the left heart border with a large left ventricle. It does not mean aortic disease. Since it is present whenever the



left ventricle dilates it is a common finding in certain stages of hypertensive cardiovascular disease in diseases of the aortic valves and in myocardial lesions. If a patient has a high diaphragm the apical area of the heart may be displaced upward and to the left to cause an aortic configuration; this is often wrongly attributed to an enlarged left ventricle (figure 6a).

### *Fat Pad*

In fluoroscopy and in chest films the lower left border of the heart often seems elongated so that its lowest part exhibits a concavity or (sometimes in inspiration) a convexity outwardly directed. This is caused by an accumulation of fat (Fettbuerzel) between the layers of the parietal pericardium and the mediastinal pleura (Schwarz). The presence of this fat pad is not restricted to obese people. It is usually less dense than the heart and at the apical area. Occasionally a fat pad found at the lower right cardiac border is confused with a tumor or a diverticulum.

### *Concluding Remarks*

Despite the limitations that emphysema or chest deformities impose upon percussion the method is very useful for discovering dilatation of the heart to the right. Moreover, percussion is valuable for detecting mitralization especially when the latter stems from enlargement of the outflow tract of the right ventricle. This tract is located ventrad and produces marked dullness in the second left intercostal space parasternally. The aortic configuration in the lesions enumerated above is easily percussed.

It will be shown in the chapter on pericardial diseases that percussion is also of major importance in the discovery of a pericardial effusion.

Details of percussion and of changes in cardiac shape will be discussed in connection with the individual cardiac lesions.

### AUSCULTATION

At birth the heart rate is about 180 beats per minute but falls considerably in the following hours.

It may be said that normal cardiac action leads to the appearance of four sounds, all of which are occasionally audible. They will not be described here in the order of their appearance to avoid confusion; we shall begin with the classical first heart sound.

(1) The first heart sound is composed for the most part of vibrations caused by closure of the mitral and tricuspid valves. To what extent vibrations caused by the contraction of ventricular muscle are a factor is still a matter of controversy (Dock). The opening of the semilunar valves, the vibrations caused by atrial systole and the distension of the ascending aorta and proximal part of the pulmonary artery at the beginning of systole may contribute, but certainly only to a small degree. The first heart sound appears approximately 0.02 second after the beginning of the QRS complex in the electrocardiogram and lasts between 0.14 and 0.16 second in the phonocardiogram. Its loudness — as we shall see —

depends upon the position of the atrioventricular valves at the beginning of systole and upon the anatomic condition of the c valves it is louder in aortic

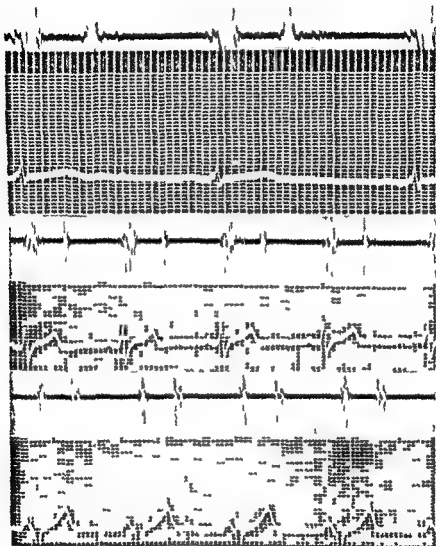


FIG. 15 (a) Ph phonocardiogram and electrocardiogram (lead II) obtained over the cardiac apex from a 22 year old without evidence of cardiovascular disease the vibrations of the first heart sound are covered by coarse vibrations caused by atrial systole there is a faint systolic apical murmur slow and low vibrations of the third heart sound follow those caused by the second sound Figure 15b and c were obtained from a 15 year old male with the microphone over the apical area and over the second left intercostal space parasternally In (b) the first heart sound reveals two groups of vibrations in (c) the second and pulmonic sound is split

cardiac neurosis hyperthyroidism fever and mitral stenosis In the phonocardiogram two chief groups of vibrations can be discerned (figure 15c)

left ventricle dilates it is a common finding in certain stages of hypertensive cardiovascular disease in diseases of the aortic valves and in myocardial lesions. If a patient has a high diaphragm the apical area of the heart may be displaced upward and to the left to cause an aortic configuration this is often wrongly attributed to an enlarged left ventricle (figure 6a)

### *Fat Pad*

In fluoroscopy and in chest films the lower left border of the heart often seem elongated so that its lowest part exhibits a concavity or (sometimes in inspiration) a convexity outwardly directed. This is caused by an accumulation of fat (Fettbuerzel) between the layers of the parietal pericardium and the mediastinal pleura (Schwarz). The presence of this fat pad is not restricted to obese people. It is usually less dense than the heart is at the apical area. Occasionally a fat pad found at the lower right cardiac border is confused with a tumor or a diverticulum.

### *Concluding Remarks*

Despite the limitations that emphysema or chest deformities impose upon percussion the method is very useful for discovering dilatation of the heart to the right. Moreover percussion is valuable for detecting mitralization especially when the latter stems from enlargement of the outflow tract of the right ventricle. This tract is located ventrad and produces marked dullness in the second left intercostal space parasternally. The aortic configuration in the lesions enumerated above is easily percussed.

It will be shown in the chapter on pericardial diseases that percussion is also of major importance in the discovery of a pericardial effusion.

Details of percussion and of changes in cardiac shape will be discussed in connection with the individual cardiac lesions.

### ARTICULATION

At birth the heart rate is about 120 beats per minute but falls considerably in the following hours.

It may be said that normal cardiac action leads to the appearance of four sounds all of which are occasionally audible. They will not be described here in the order of their appearance to avoid confusion we shall begin with the classical first heart sound.

(1) The first heart sound is composed for the most part of vibration caused by closure of the mitral and tricuspid valves. To what extent vibration caused by the contraction of ventricular muscle are a factor is still a matter of controversy (Dock). The opening of the semilunar valves the vibrations caused by aortic systole and the distention of the ascending aorta and proximal part of the pulmonary artery at the beginning of systole may contribute but certainly only to a small degree. The first heart sound appears approximately 0.02 second after the beginning of the QRS complex in the electrocardiogram and lasts between 0.14 and 0.16 second in the phonocardiogram. Its loudness — as we shall see —

**impact murmur** which occurs when a jet of blood strikes a part of a vessel or a false tendon or a section of a cardiac chamber at a certain distance (Bondi)

*False tendons and some aortic insufficiencies cause cooing murmurs like the cooing of a dove or the cry of a seagull* These murmurs show regular vibrations in the phonocardiogram

The murmurs heard in healthy subjects will be discussed in detail in the section on mitral insufficiency. It may be noted by way of anticipation that they are always systolic, are most common in young people but also appear in adults particularly when the velocity of blood flow is increased. They are said to be different in loudness and to disappear with a change of posture, thus however is not unusual in murmurs caused by organic heart disease. They are also said to change their loudness with deep inspiration or expiration. Such change is rare with murmurs caused by organic heart disease but since it also takes place in normal persons it cannot be used for a differential diagnosis.

The system of grading murmurs introduced by Levine is useful. A grade 1 murmur is one which is just audible while a grade 6 murmur is so intense that it can be heard without a stethoscope at a distance from the chest wall. Grade 5 murmurs are the loudest heard with the stethoscope on the chest but are not audible at a distance. Grade 2 murmurs are soft but easily heard. From this it will be easy to judge grade 3 (loud murmur) and grade 4 murmur (very loud) so that in actual practice different observers grade murmurs accurately. Murmurs from grade 3 to 6 are said never to be found in healthy subjects. We would like to modify this statement to the effect that organic disease is *usually* present when such murmurs are heard. On the other hand it must be stressed that grade 1 and 2 murmurs may be encountered in people with organic heart disease such as mitral regurgitation.

Some murmurs — e.g. of mitral stenosis, an interventricular septal defect and a patent ductus arteriosus — are almost characteristic. They are rarely found in other lesions and then other signs permit the differentiation.

Murmurs are not always heard best over the auscultation area of the valve from which they originate. Diastolic murmurs of aortic regurgitation are often heard over the lower left sternal border. A systolic murmur caused by aortic stenosis may be detected only over the apex if emphysema prevents its appearance in the second right intercostal space. These and other related findings will be discussed in detail in appropriate sections.

### *Phonocardiography*

With respect to the murmurs that appear in the heart the human ear is an imperfect instrument. Vibrations of 20 or less per second are not audible but such vibrations and even those as low as 15 per second occur in mitral stenosis. High pitched sounds may occasionally obscure low pitched ones. Phonocardiography which is almost as old as electrocardiography can often assist in detecting

abnormal vibrations moreover it keeps a documentary objective record of the auscultatory findings. Although a less subjective method than auscultation it rarely contributes to the diagnosis based on the existence of murmurs. It does aid however in the analysis and differentiation of split sounds, gallop rhythms and abnormal clicks.

The phonocardiogram may be obtained with three different types of microphones: (1) the linear microphone which magnifies all vibrations uniformly and reproduces particularly well the very low frequency vibrations which normally are not heard; (2) the stethoscopic microphone which does not reproduce the low vibrations due to the apex beat and the like (these have no value in clinical auscultation) but which magnifies the others to the degree they would be heard were our ear a more perfect instrument; and (3) the logarithmic microphone which attenuates low frequency vibrations but increases those heard by the human ear on a logarithmic scale. Because of the excessive amplification the linear microphone method is not practical. The stethoscopic microphone yields more than just auscultation alone and is best used in clinical studies while the logarithmic microphone records high pitched vibrations well and is most practical in the verification of clinical impressions.

### *Practical Advice*

Auscultation should be performed with the patient in the upright and in the recumbent position. Some murmurs such as the diastolic murmurs of aortic valve insufficiency are more audible when the patient stands while mitral murmurs especially those of mitral stenosis are heard better or exclusively when the patient is recumbent. Sometimes the latter murmurs are detected only when the patient is lying on his left side. Whenever possible the heart should also be auscultated after exertion. Some murmurs like the low pitched ones of mitral stenosis are confused with split heart sounds. Such a mistake is understandable since from the standpoint of the physicist the physiologic heart sounds are in reality murmurs. The French are more nearly correct when they speak of the first and second bruit of the normal heart.

For high pitched murmurs a stethoscope possessing a diaphragm chest piece should be used; the diaphragm filters low pitched vibrations while the bell receiver facilitates the discovery of low pitched murmurs. The ear pieces of the stethoscope should fit well into the auditory canal of the examiner and both should run in the same direction.

The most difficult task for beginners is the differentiation of the heart sounds. With a normal rate or bradycardia it is easy to determine which sound is the first and which the second but with a tachycardia this task becomes more difficult unless the apex beat or carotid pulse is palpated simultaneously. Therefore beginners should never listen to the heart without simultaneously palpating the carotid pulse. All auscultatory phenomena synchronous with the carotid pulse are systolic. Palpatory or auscultatory signs before or after this are diastolic.

Many mistakes would be avoided if auscultation were regularly done with one finger resting on the carotid artery.

Since details about auscultation are presented in other chapters only a few general facts will be mentioned at this time.

### *Modification of Sounds*

The first heart sound is accentuated more often as the result of hyperexcitability of the heart than of organic cardiac disease. Frequently very distant and faint sounds suggest pulmonary emphysema rather than myocardial weakness. With a few noteworthy exceptions which are discussed elsewhere no conclusions should be drawn concerning the state of the myocardium from the loudness of the heart sounds. Subsequently it will be shown that the first or second sound may become accentuated or disappear in a host of conditions even in the absence of intrinsic cardiac damage.

Impurity or splitting of the first or second heart sounds are common findings in healthy individuals and particularly in young people. On the other hand they are frequently due to cardiac abnormalities. The difference in time between the two parts must be at least 0.06 second in order to be perceptible (Lunsada). In rare instances splitting is heard when the interval is only 0.03 second.

Splitting of the first heart sound is heard best during expiration and at the apex in a healthy person. It is ascribed to asynchronous closure of the mitral and tricuspid valves. This splitting is not rare in the hyperexcitable heart of cardiac neurosis, hyperthyroidism, the hypertrophic heart of kyphoscoliosis or fibrotic pulmonary tuberculosis. It may be caused by the vibrations of atrial contraction. It causes confusion with the murmur of a mitral stenosis. Splitting of the first sound may be confused with a presystolic gallop rhythm and a systolic click in pulmonary hypertension or in pericardial adhesions.

Systolic clicks will be discussed in the section on gallop rhythm.

Duplication of the second heart sound heard best in the second left intercostal space is believed to result from a short difference in time between the closure of the aortic and pulmonic valves (figure 15c). The first part originates in the aortic, the second in the pulmonary valves. Paradoxical splitting of the second heart sound in which the aortic component appears after the pulmonary one is seen in left bundle branch block and in aortic stenosis. It is explained by prolongation of the duration of systole of the left ventricle (Gray).

The phenomenon is heard best and often exclusively over the pulmonary artery in the second left intercostal space and the question arises whether asynchronous closure of the pulmonary valves alone is responsible. With the artificial ball valve of Hufnagel for surgical treatment of aortic regurgitation splitting of the second sound may be found (McKusick et al.) and may appear when the ball strikes one corner of the orifice before the other. This splitting occurs particularly at the end of inspiration and the onset of expiration. It is absent in complete pulmonary stenosis and is especially pronounced in right bundle branch block (figure 16).

In a large percentage of children and healthy adults during rest (but some times only on exertion) the third heart sound is heard physiologically over the lower end of the sternum and at the apex. In some individuals this low pitched sound is very loud but in others it is scarcely audible. It may appear and disappear with the different phases of respiration. About 90 per cent of healthy children have a physiologic third heart sound (Steinberg) and it has been observed in 42 per cent of medical students. Thayer found a third heart sound in 65 per cent of his normal subjects. We occasionally found it during routine examinations in

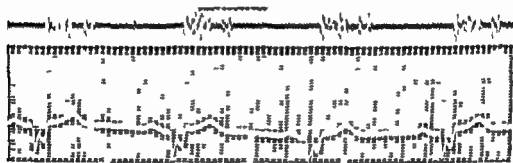


FIG. 16 Right bundle branch block (lead II). The phonocardiogram was recorded with the microphone in the second left intercostal space. It shows splitting of the second sound.

individuals up to but not beyond 25 years of age. Some claim to have heard it in normal people as old as 40. It is easily confused with gallop rhythm. This triple heart rhythm is best heard in and median to the apical area. It may be missed in the erect posture.

Some investigators explain that the third heart sound derives from a stretching of the myocardium during the diastolic inflow of blood, while others believe that normal filling causes a sound produced by the impact of the ventricles on surrounding tissues. But this theory does not explain the fact that the third heart sound can also be heard in the exposed heart. It is more probable that the stretching of the fibrous tissue in the chordae tendineae or vibrations of the valves (Lewis and Dock) causes the third heart sound at the beginning of diastole. Increasing thickness of the chest wall or, in the opinion of others, the gradual reduction of cardiac elasticity with increasing age makes the third heart sound disappear.

On the small normal chest of children without heart disease but with cardiac hypermotility, and more often in children and adults with enlarged hearts, a soft grating systolic friction rub is heard. The rub may be noted in systole as well as in diastole and it may disappear on deep inspiration. This phenomenon results from friction created when the normal epicardium rubs against the normal parietal pericardium. It is most frequently detected in hypertensive patients with large left ventricles when they are in the left lateral recumbent position. Usually this friction sound is transient. It is often noted in connection with the hyperexcitable heart of hyperthyroidism (Goodall) and in this instance it may be

limited to the area over the conus of the pulmonary artery, i. e. the most prominent part of the heart. The evaluation of all the clinical data usually permits the differentiation from the friction rub caused by pericarditis.

Pulmonicardiac murmurs or respiratory heart murmurs are heard most commonly along the left cardiac border. They are explained by pulmonary compression when the heart enlarges in diastole or by pulmonary expansion when the heart becomes smaller in systole, since air may be thus expelled or drawn into a section of lung thereby producing rales or a murmur. Ordinarily a little experience will permit differentiation from an endocardial murmur. Naturally these phenomena are more frequent when the heart is enlarged. They are heard best over the lingula of the lung near the conus of the pulmonary artery. In this area rales are often audible in one or the other phases of the cardiac cycle (cardiopulmonic rales).

More often in children but occasionally in adults, particularly with anemia, a venous hum may be heard over the base of the heart transmitted from the large veins of the supraclavicular area. The hum is continuous and shows a diastolic accentuation, since blood flows faster in the veins in ventricular diastole. This murmur is mentioned in the chapter on aortic insufficiency and anemia.

## Bibliography

- Bondt S. Die Entstehung der Herzgeräusche. *Ergebn inn Med Kinderhke* 50:303 1936.  
 Braun Venendez I and Orias O. Estudio fonocardiográfico en cien adultos jóvenes. *Rev argent doc cardiol* 1:101 1934.  
 Bridgeman F W. Observations on the third heart sound. *Heart* 6:41 1914.  
 Burrett J B and Scherf D. The clinical importance of small intracutaneous veins in the human chest. *Am J W Sc* 90:399 1941.  
 Cossio I and Fong E G. Auricular sound. *Am Heart J* 11:73 1936.  
 Dock W. Further evidence for the purely valvular origin of the first and third heart sounds. *Am Heart J* 30:339 1945.  
 — Grandell F and Taubman F. The physiologic third heart sound. *Am Heart J* 50:449 1955.  
 Linthoven W. Ein dritter Herzton. *Arch f d ges Physiol* 120:31 1907.  
 Fliss H. Die Pericardialerkrankungen der normalen und pathologischen Aorta. *Klin Wchnschr* 4:2377 1925.  
 Evans W. Triple heart rhythm. *Brit Heart J* 5:203 1943.  
 — The use of the phonocardiograph in clinical medicine. *Lancet* 1:1093 1951.  
 Frost J. Phonocardiographic studies on gallop rhythm. *Acta med Scandinav* 133:268 1949.  
 Goodall J S. The heart in Graves' disease. *Fractitioner* 10:37 1950.  
 Grandpre R de and Raab W. Interrelated hormonal factors in cardiac hypertrophy. *Circ Res* 1:345 1953.  
 Cray J R. Paradoxical splitting of the second heart sound. *Brit Heart J* 18:1 1956.  
 Holt J F. Epicardial fat shadows in differential diagnosis. *Radiology* 28:412 1947.  
 Leatham T. Splitting of the first and second heart sound. *Lancet* 9:601 1954.  
 Levine S A and Harvey W P. *Clinical Auscultation of the Heart*. Philadelphia Saunders 1949.  
 Lewis J H and Dock W. The origin of the heart sounds and their variations in myocardial disease. *J A M A* 110:271 1938.



- Lian C and Weltz J J Le dédoublement du premier bruit le premier bruit = precession auriculaire et le galop pré-systolique retardé Arch d mal du coeur 31 408 1938
- Luisada A A Clinical applications of phonocardiography Arch Pediatr 60 498 1943
- and Fleischner F G Temporal relation between contraction of the right and left sides of the normal human heart Proc Soc Biol Med 66 436 1947
- McKusick V A Musical murmurs Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 97 136 1955
- Reagan W P Santos G W and Welde G A The splitting of heart sounds Am J Med 19 849 1955
- et al Spectral phonocardiography Clinical Studies Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 90 90 1954
- O'Meara P J Type I triple cardiac rhythm in normal hearts Brit Med J 1 922 1947
- Orias O The genesis of heart sounds New England J Med 241 763 1949
- Ortiz T The sounds produced by friction of normal serosae Am Heart J 17 643 1939
- Parkinson J Enlargement of the heart Lancet 1 1337 1936
- Raab W Hormonal factors in heart disease Ann Int Med 41 757 1954
- Rappaport M H and Sprague H H Physiologic and physical laws that govern auscultation and their clinical application Am Heart J 21 257 1941 23 591 1942
- Reid J A and Humphries J Q Systolic clicks (so called systolic gallop) A study of their clinical significance Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 97 177 1955
- Rushmer R F Cardiac Diagnosis a Physiological Approach Philadelphia Saunders 1955
- Sahl H Über das Vorkommen und diagnostische Bedeutung einer Zone ectasierter feinsten Hautgefäße in der Nähe der unteren Lungengrenze Ch B f schweiz Ärzte 15 135 1885
- Schwarz G Über einen typischen Röntgenbefund am Herzen Fettleibiger Wien klin Wchnschr 23 1850 1910
- Sloan A W et al Incidence of the physiological third heart sound Brit M J 2 853 1957
- Smith J R Observations on the mechanism of the physiologic third heart sound Am Heart J 28 661 1944
- Steinberg L D Über die normale druckbedingte Melodie des Herzens bei Kindern Ztschr f Kinderh 40 620 1925
- Thayer W S On the early diastolic heart sound (the so called third heart sound) Boston M & Surg J 158 713 1908
- Weitzmann D The mechanism and significance of the auricular sound Brit Heart J 17 70 1935
- Wolferth C C and Margolies A Gallop rhythm and the physiological third heart sound 1 Characteristics of the sounds classification comparative incidence of the various types and differential diagnosis Am Heart J 8 441 1933
- Zdarsky F Die Funktion des Herzens im Röntgenbild Fortschr a d Geb Röntgenstrahl 76 220 1952

## Chapter 5

# Compensation and Decompensation

### CARDIAC RESERVE AND COMPENSATION

A fundamental property of heart muscle is an ability to accommodate its activity to the requirements of the organism. This adaptability is what makes life possible since it permits the heart to increase its stroke and minute volumes and thus meet greater demands of the body during exertion, digestion, pregnancy and innumerable other situations. The amount of blood expelled by the heart may increase from 5 to 7 liters per minute at rest to 25 or 30 liters during vigorous exercise. The myocardium does not utilize all its potentialities during rest; a reserve force is available and is brought into play whenever the filling of the heart increases. Within certain limits Starling's law can be applied to the healthy heart: i.e., greater stretching of the myocardial fibers by increased cardiac filling causes a stronger contraction.

During exertion large amounts of blood are returned rapidly from the muscles and blood depots to the right heart so that its contents increase. The left heart thus receives and expels more blood and the output per minute rises. In some patients an increase of blood pressure offers added resistance to the discharge from the left ventricle which does not empty completely for a few beats. This increases the amount of residual intraventricular blood at the end of systole, slightly distends the left ventricle and stretches the cardiac muscle fibers; thus systole becomes stronger even when the inflow from the atrium remains constant. After a few beats cardiac output is the same as before the elevation of blood pressure.

Under physiologic conditions the output of the heart per minute can be increased in another simple manner, namely, by acceleration of cardiac rate. If the tachycardia does not exceed certain limits (about 120 beats per minute) the diastolic filling is not impaired and therefore the output per minute of the heart will be markedly increased.

Under pathologic conditions the heart endeavors to adapt itself, as we shall see, to the changed situation by means of similar mechanisms; i.e., it attempts to compensate for the consequences of the disease. If the heart succeeds in supplying an adequate amount of blood to every part of the body so that sufficient quantities of oxygen reach all tissues while metabolites like carbon dioxide are speedily removed and congestion is avoided, one speaks of a compensated circulation. The chief goal of compensation is to deliver a normal minute volume, not

only at rest but also when demands are moderately increased. If the cardiac reserve is decidedly diminished with the result that the circulation is inadequate only at rest or with very restricted effort such as walking on level ground while ascent of stairs causes distress the condition borders on decompensation. If the faltering heart can no longer accomplish its tasks and symptoms perhaps trifling at first gradually or suddenly become worse one speaks of failing or broken compensation or decompensation. The term congestive heart failure is also employed when the circulation is no longer adequate and passive congestion (increased venous pressure in the lesser or systemic circulation) is present even during rest. To be sure the concept of decompensation is rather hazy which accounts for the bewildering variety of definitions that have been advanced.

### BACKWARD AND FORWARD FAILURE

The mechanism of cardiac failure has interested physicians for more than a century. The theory that the cavity behind the failing one suffers first — an idea propounded by Hope as early as 1842 — was widely accepted and subsequently supported by Starling's experiments. Blood dams up behind the failing ventricle. Thus with insufficient systolic emptying of the right ventricle the amount of residual blood at the end of systole is increased, the diastolic pressure in the right ventricle is higher and the normal inflow of blood from the right atrium is impeded; the pressure in the right atrium rises until an effective pressure gradient is re-established, causing increased venous pressure. With failure of the left ventricle similar changes occur in the left atrium and the lesser circuit. All this leads to a diminished cardiac output. In order to maintain a normal blood pressure a reflex arteriolar constriction occurs. This causes peripheral hypoxia and stimulates the bone marrow. Blood volume increases (Starling).

This back pressure theory is still valid. Early voices were raised, however, pointing out that some phenomena, particularly paroxysmal dyspnea in cardiac patients, are better explained by the diminished output of the failing heart (forward failure theory). With the introduction of cardiac catheterization and the possibility of determining cardiac output with greater accuracy the occurrence of a diminished output in patients with a failing left ventricle as the result of hypertension, coronary sclerosis or aortic valvular lesions was confirmed. These investigations and the determination of the renal blood flow (see below) induced many physicians to explain all signs of heart failure by forward failure. According to this conception ventricular failure and the ensuing diminution of cardiac output lead to a reduced blood supply to the kidney, causing diminished excretion of sodium and water. The increase in blood volume is the reason for the elevated venous pressure. For many practitioners the old concept of backward failure was a thing of the past and the new theory was believed to be the only one to explain all signs of heart failure.

Critical evaluation of the data obtained in the laboratory and clinical observations in particular show that the rejection of the back pressure mechanism

is unjustified. We often see within a few hours the development of an enlarged liver and congestion of the peripheral veins in patients with atrial fibrillation or paroxysmal tachycardia with a rapid ventricular rate. Retention of water and increased blood volume could not play a part so soon. Duly clinical experience reveals a marked pulmonary congestion but no increase of venous pressure or peripheral edema in patients with left ventricular failure or in patients with mitral stenosis and diminished cardiac output. The pulmonary congestion in mitral stenosis diminishes when right ventricular failure supervenes. On the other hand patients with pericardial adhesions or cor pulmonale with failure develop peripheral venous congestion and enlargement of the liver without any other signs of cardiac failure.

Thus the back pressure mechanism does play a great part in the development of signs and symptoms of cardiac failure. It is possible that it is the dominant mechanism in acute failure with the consequences of forward failure determining the picture in chronic heart failure (Dock).

The emphasis that has been laid upon the forward failure mechanism in recent years has aided in a better understanding of some aspects of heart failure. Thus the influence of peripheral vasoconstriction — considered by Starling long ago — was completely neglected and only now has become better appreciated. In a similar manner the increased amount of circulating blood in cardiac failure has been known for many years but its importance for the explanation of some features of cardiac failure is at present better understood.

Cardiac catheterization enabled us to distinguish another type of cardiac failure, high output failure. It was found by investigators using methods available before cardiac catheterization for the determination of cardiac output that occasionally the cardiac output per minute was high despite the presence of failure. In patients with emphysema and a lower oxygen saturation of the arterial blood, hyperthyroidism with an increased oxygen consumption, anemias with a disturbed oxygen transportation, arteriovenous fistulas, Paget's disease with an increased venous return and finally in beriberi disease with an abnormal tissue metabolism the circulation is markedly accelerated. The cardiac output per minute at rest in anemia may amount to 10 liters; in emphysema with marked oxygen undersaturation of the arterial blood it has been found to be 6 to 10 liters per minute. If congestive failure develops the output falls but it is still higher than it is in patients with primary heart disease.

Thus the mechanism in this group of patients does not differ from others. When the heart fails the tissues are supplied with less blood than they need.

## MECHANISMS OF COMPENSATION

### *Compensation by Cardiac Dilatation*

The importance of dilatation of the cardiac chambers for compensation becomes clear if we recall the changes following experimental valvular lesions. An immediate result of aortic regurgitation is an increased flow of blood into the

left ventricle. This structure receives a normal amount of blood from the left atrium plus the blood regurgitating from the aorta. The increased content causes a stronger contraction and the output is larger by the volume of regurgitated or pendulum blood. Despite the loss of some aortic blood by regurgitation during each diastole the minute volume remains normal. If a marked aortic stenosis is created experimentally, increased resistance prevents complete emptying for a few beats until the diastolic volume of the heart and the diastolic tension of its muscle fibers increase sufficiently to permit the output to reach a normal value. The mechanism of compensation in hypertension operates in a similar way. In myocardial lesions incomplete emptying of the heart is a factor in the dilatation.

Hence dilatation of the cardiac chambers may be produced by any of the mechanisms: i.e. increase of cardiac contents by regurgitation, by augmented resistance to outflow (insufficient emptying) and finally by greater venous return. The extent of cardiac dilatation is limited by the pericardium. Dilatation permits the heart to maintain its output and within broad limits to compensate for abnormalities within the circulatory apparatus. This dilatation is often minimal and cannot be recognized clinically or even by x-ray examination.

If the heart is unable to compensate for the lesion by means of the initial slight increase of filling and hypertrophy discussed above the amount of residual blood will increase and the dilatation is greater. Thus a dilated heart is not necessarily a failing heart; on the contrary dilatation is often a compensatory measure. The left ventricle may dilate tremendously in aortic regurgitation and all signs and symptoms of heart failure may be missing. However when the dilatation surpasses a certain limit cardiac output decreases.

In normals it has been calculated that the residual blood within the cardiac chambers may amount to 50 ml. rising as high as 2000 ml. in cardiac failure.

#### *Compensation by an Increase of Rate*

Another mechanism for rapidly increasing the output is a moderate acceleration of the heart rate. While this may decrease diastolic filling of the heart somewhat the increased number of beats per minute may offset this and the net result may be a larger or even doubled minute output. In many heart lesions acceleration that derives mainly from reflex action occurs very early.

An increase of intraventricular pressure causes an immediate rise of pressure within the corresponding atrium for it is mainly the difference in pressure between the atrium and ventricle which causes ventricular filling. Elevation of intra-atrial pressure and the consequent dilatation of its wall and the walls of veins leading to the atrium cause a reflex tachycardia by means of the Bainbridge reflex. The path of this reflex utilizes vagal and in part sympathetic fibers. The effect of the reflex is diminished by atropine and disappears after extirpation of the stellate ganglion. The exact location of the receptors is uncertain. It is possible that no reflex is needed because when the right atrium is dilated the stretch

exerted on specialized fibers of the sinus node suffices to make the latter form faster impulses

Tachycardia appears very early in aortic insufficiency but in this instance a carotid sinus reflex is activated by the low mean blood pressure at the carotid sinus

While an acceleration of rate sinus tachycardia is often a useful measure of maintaining the minute volume in some conditions it may be harmful. In mitral stenosis the tachycardia shortens diastole further hampering the filling of the left ventricle and adding to the pulmonary congestion. As will be shown later a tachycardia increases oxygen requirements of the heart muscle and if the demand cannot be satisfied owing to disease of the coronary arteries myocardial nutrition suffers and the frequency of anginal attacks increases.

### *Compensation by Hypertrophy*

In cardiac hypertrophy the size of the myocardial fibers increases. This increase in size also follows a primary dilatation since the fibers do not enlarge unless they increase in length and gain in tension. Cardiac hypertrophy was fully developed in dogs within 80 days after an experimental lesion. The border line is not sharp between physiologic cardiac hypertrophy of healthy athletes or people engaged in heavy physical work on the one hand and the hypertrophy consequent to increased filling or greater resistance on the other. Hypertrophy enables the heart to perform the added task made necessary by greater filling. However it also necessitates a much greater blood supply although there is no evidence to show that the number of capillaries increases in the hypertrophied heart. Hence the size of the muscle fiber that can be adequately nourished by one capillary is limited. There are reasons for believing that in some conditions, e.g. stenosis of the aortic valve the hypertrophy reaches a point at which some layers of heart muscle are inadequately nourished and hypoxia of the myocardium results. Furthermore the nuclei of the heart muscle cells do not grow and their number does not increase in hypertrophy. Therefore limits are established for the growth of the protoplasm in hypertrophy.

Whereas tachycardia and cardiac dilatation occur immediately if the need arises hypertrophy develops slowly when the added load for the heart has existed for some time. Although hypertrophy does not appear without antecedent dilatation the latter may be too slight for demonstration by clinical methods. This type of hypertrophy is called *concentric hypertrophy* a rather common occurrence in the left ventricle of patients with hypertension or in those with an aortic valve stenosis. It is found in the right ventricle if a disease elevates the blood pressure in the lesser circuit. When hypertrophy and more marked dilatation coexist the term *eccentric hypertrophy* is used. This form is encountered in the left ventricle in aortic regurgitation in connection with myocardial lesions or in coronary sclerosis. If concentric hypertrophy changes to eccentric hypertrophy one may assume that cardiac reserve is diminishing. The evolution of this process may however require a considerable period of time.

Prab stresses hormonal factors in the genesis of cardiac hypertrophy. He refers to the large heart seen in acromegaly and the absence of hypertrophy after ligation of the aorta when an hypophysectomy had been done before.

#### CHANGES IN THE AMOUNT OF CIRCULATING BLOOD AND OF TOTAL BLOOD VOLUME

The volume of circulating blood is reduced in a large number of cardiac patients. By retaining a great quantity of blood the engorged liver and the markedly enlarged left atrium tend to prevent pulmonary congestion due to a stenotic mitral valve. Accordingly, patients with mitral valve disease and a large liver or with an enormous left atrium (aneurysm of the left auricle) often are remarkably free from pulmonary congestion and dyspnea. This is understandable if one realizes that more than 2000 ml of blood may be retained occasionally in the huge left atrium of mitral stenosis.

If cardiac weakness or congestion lasts for a long time however the arterial oxygen deficit acts as a constant stimulus to the hemopoietic apparatus. This stimulus is responsible for the increased production of red blood cells and an increase of the circulating and total blood volumes. Many pathologists have directed attention to the large amount of blood found at necropsy in patients dying of congestive heart failure. Such increased volume of circulating blood imposes a great burden on the heart and causes further slowing of the peripheral circulation. As the peripheral blood depots become engorged the heart finds it increasingly difficult to adapt itself to the varying requirements.

Wollheim distinguishes between minus decompensation (with diminished blood volume) as in myocardial infarction and plus decompensation (with increased blood volume and elevated venous pressure) in the usual type of cardiac failure.

#### INCREASED UTILIZATION OF BLOOD

When contact between the blood and tissues is prolonged oxygen is utilized more completely and consequently the arteriovenous oxygen difference increases. This may be a compensatory measure in congestive heart failure. Actually the arteriovenous oxygen difference may double in heart failure and it may approximate the situation occurring in exertion. In patients with congestive heart failure cardiac output cannot increase on exertion but there is an increase of the arteriovenous oxygen difference.

#### RIGHT AND LEFT VENTRICULAR FAILURE

##### *Mechanism*

It is proper to distinguish between failure of the right and the left ventricle although some objections have been raised to the justification of this practice. For example it has been stated that weakness of the left ventricle results in a decrease of its output therefore the return of blood to the right heart suffers since this is effected mainly by *vis a tergo*. Accordingly the amount of blood

expelled by the right ventricle decreases to the same extent that the left ventricular output diminishes. In this way stasis in the lesser circuit is avoided.

Similarly in right ventricular failure less blood is propelled to the left heart so that its output is again reduced in proportion to the fall of right ventricular output. Under these circumstances the return of blood to the right heart diminishes and stasis in the great veins and liver does not necessarily appear.

While these presumptions are correct they are applicable only when it is assumed that the volume of circulating blood remains constant and the right heart invariably receives just as much blood as the left ventricle ejects. It is this assumption which is incorrect. The inflow of blood into the right heart undergoes continual variations for nervous as well as humoral regulatory mechanisms constantly control and adapt the amount of venous return to the heart in accordance with the momentary requirements of the organism. A large amount of blood may be stored in depots (liver, subcutaneous venous plexus, splanchnic veins) if it is not needed and this depot blood may be suddenly mobilized and sent to the right heart if necessary. When the inflow of blood increases suddenly the demands upon the heart are greater. If the right or left ventricle has no reserve force available it is unequal to the burden causing backward stasis and congestion to develop. The early consequence of heart failure is congestion upstream in the veins.

In this way pulmonary congestion develops in left ventricular failure while hepatic congestion and engorgement of the systemic veins follow failure of the right ventricle. If the entire heart is equally and simultaneously damaged so that both ventricles fail at the same time the clinical picture is the same as in ordinary right ventricular failure because congestion develops upstream of the heart with the result that hepatic enlargement and venous engorgement occur in the absence of pulmonary congestion. This happens in cases of diffuse myocardial damage as in diphtheria and rheumatic fever. Hepatic congestion is also seen in association with paroxysmal tachycardia or atrial fibrillation with a rapid ventricular rate. With a tachycardia both ventricles contract rapidly and the inflow of blood into the right heart is impeded by the brevity of diastole.

### *Relief Afforded by Right Ventricular Failure*

In patients with pulmonary congestion and dyspnea the onset of right ventricular failure may afford speedy and remarkable relief. If pulmonary congestion has become extreme and dyspnea and orthopnea have attained great intensity, right ventricular failure with engorgement of the liver and systemic veins may change the situation completely. Dyspnea and orthopnea diminish, the vital capacity increases and x-ray reveals less pulmonary congestion. Naturally the development of peripheral edema and hepatomegaly now create new complaints but the dyspnea which harassed the patient day and night has lessened. Since the patient soon becomes more or less accustomed to the discomfort evoked by the hepatic engorgement and since mercurial diuretics satisfactorily control the edema the grateful patient considers the new situation a vast improvement.



This unloading of the lesser circuit fails to occur only when the state of the patient is precarious because of advanced pulmonary congestion. Often the right heart is involved from the start and therefore pulmonary congestion of a high degree never develops. Thus patients with rheumatic mitral stenosis who have a simultaneous tricuspid regurgitation need not within certain limits suffer from dyspnea or orthopnea. If however the right heart works normally in a patient with mitral stenosis extreme pulmonary congestion may result since the barrier raised by the stenotic valve prevents blood from entering the left ventricle. When it is recalled that a congested liver can retain approximately 1 500 ml of blood the relief of pulmonary congestion afforded by hepatic engorgement becomes comprehensible.

### *Bernheim's Syndrome*

In pronounced hypertrophy and dilatation of the left ventricle signs of right heart failure may appear without a preliminary period of pulmonary congestion. Clinical observations by Bernheim suggested that in such cases the interventricular septum may bulge into the right ventricle and prevent a normal inflow of blood from the systemic veins. The Bernheim syndrome is said to be especially encountered in patients with aortic stenosis and hypertension with marked cardiac hypertrophy. A similar phenomenon has been seriously considered by physiologists. On the basis of personal clinical and postmortem observations we accept the possibility of this mechanism although proof of its occurrence in patients with left ventricular hypertrophy is lacking. The role this mechanism could play in diminishing back pressure in the lung and in relieving dyspnea is obvious.

The only instances in which we consider this syndrome proved are cases of septal infarction with an aneurysmal bulge into the cavity of the right ventricle.

### *Concluding Remarks*

These observations show again how a multitude of factors interact in the production of different cardiac symptoms so that it is not advisable to infer the degree of heart failure from the severity of pulmonary symptoms.

It should be clear that in practice right and left ventricular failure do not always appear in pure form nor do they have to appear in sequence for the clinical syndromes just discussed to emerge clearly. Not rarely there is evidence of pulmonary as well as moderate congestion in the systemic circulation so that signs of right and left ventricular failure coexist. Nevertheless an awareness of the rules outlined in this section may facilitate an understanding of both the variations in patients' complaints and objective findings in the different stages of decompensation.

### DIAGNOSIS OF HEART FAILURE AND CONGESTION

To recognize the beginning of heart failure is difficult and often impossible. Pulmonary congestion may be detected by careful interrogation designed to

elicit the subjective symptoms that accompany the condition. Heart failure may be recognized by physical examination and by the evidence provided by roentgenography, measurement of circulation time and venous pressure.

One of the fundamental rules in the diagnosis of every case of heart failure is to endeavor to ascertain the reason for its occurrence. Myocardial failure may be caused by excessive strain or by a primary disturbance of the myocardial fiber. It is rare for the heart to fail gradually because of progressive dilatation. Very often failure is precipitated by pulmonary embolism or paroxysmal atrial fibrillation; in other instances an acute infection such as streptococcal tonsillitis or pharyngitis is responsible. Among 300 patients with heart failure a respiratory tract infection was found in 167; in 160 it was the cause of heart failure (Flint). Overeating, increase of weight, mental and physical strain and progressive coronary sclerosis may be precipitating factors.

If the precipitating cause is known its eradication can lead to a decided improvement of long duration. This happens if atrial fibrillation with rapid ventricular rate is successfully treated with digitalis; if foci of infection which damage the myocardium are removed; if an anemia is abolished; or if the patient recovers from a pulmonary embolism.

According to Hegglin myocardial failure may be of hemodynamic origin; that is, it may result from fatigue and overexertion; it may also be of energetic dynamic origin, resulting from a primary disturbance of the heart muscle itself. Energetic dynamic heart failure is a form of heart failure in which a shortening of the mechanical systole and a prolongation of the Q-T interval are found (Hegglin). According to the author a heart in an abnormal metabolic state cannot maintain a systole of sufficient duration. With a damaged myocardium the hemodynamically efficient systole is shortened (Wiggers) and this diminishes cardiac output. If the blood supply to the myocardium via the coronary arteries is inadequate the heart becomes fatigued more quickly.

Stimulation of receptors of the Jarisch-Bezold reflex in the myocardium leads to an increased vagus tonus; the heart is slowed and peripheral vessels dilate to protect the heart from overfilling.

### *Clinical Diagnosis of Pulmonary Congestion*

Clinical demonstration of pulmonary congestion may be so difficult that reliance must be placed upon the history of exertional dyspnea. It should always be remembered, however, that dyspnea on effort occurs in other conditions — e.g., obesity, neurocirculatory asthenia, or pulmonary diseases in the absence of congestive heart failure.

As will be shown later, cyanosis is not an unequivocal sign of pulmonary congestion and the determination of vital capacity yields little information. The latter procedure has diagnostic value in slight pulmonary congestion only when comparative figures are available to indicate the status of the same patient prior to the onset of stasis; but such information is rarely at hand. Even elevation

of the diaphragm may diminish the vital capacity so that absolute values give little conclusive information. Moreover accurate measurements are frequently difficult to obtain particularly in women.

It should be emphasized that evidence of pulmonary congestion as well as dyspnea on exertion do not always prove that heart failure has occurred. In some conditions such as mitral stenosis pulmonary congestion is due to the valvular lesion and is present prior to heart failure.

With more advanced stasis a cough develops and a brownish sputum is expectorated. This sputum may contain macrophages containing hemosiderin i. e. heart failure cells or cells with a brownish stain. If pulmonary congestion sets in abruptly moist crepitant rales are often audible over the bases of the lungs more commonly on the right side than on the left. In chronic congestion the rales are often dry. Even in the absence of other signs of heart failure the appearance of these rales in patients with conditions causing strain of the left ventricle such as hypertension myocardial or aortic lesions is an indication for digitalis therapy. If digitalis is withheld congestion increases and pulmonary edema may occur without further warning. This danger may also be averted by mercurial diuretics.

The appearance of rales does not depend exclusively upon the severity of the pulmonary vascular engorgement thus in some patients with mitral lesions and pulmonary congestion of long duration relatively few rales and rhonchi are heard or only somewhat roughened expiration and intensified breath sounds are noted. In long standing pulmonary congestion sclerosis of the pulmonary arterioles together with increased fibrosis and induration of the pulmonary tissue reduce the amount of fluid in the lung. While large quantities of fluids exude from the lungs during necropsy of a patient who died from left ventricular failure caused by hypertension the lungs of patients with mitral stenosis and advanced pulmonary congestion of year long duration are dry. Accordingly the absence of rales does not disprove the presence of pulmonary congestion.

On the other hand some patients particularly elderly ones have moist rales over large areas of the lungs but principally in the basal region. These rales which persist without modification for years despite intensive therapy are due to otherwise asymptomatic pleural adhesions obstructing the local lymphatic channels and causing transudation into the air passages. Thus there is simulation of the auscultatory findings of pulmonary congestion.

To distinguish between simple pulmonary congestion and infectious bronchitis is not always easy. If the temperature is elevated and the protein content of the sputum increased bronchitis is the probable diagnosis. However fever sometimes persisting for days is not uncommon in decompensation and is regarded as a consequence of stasis. Formation of toxic substances due to hypoxia slowing of the circulation and therefore local disturbances in the thermal regulatory mechanisms in the periphery and lessened heat dispersal are responsible for a moderate rise of temperature. If the temperature surpasses one degree Celsius above normal a complication such as pulmonary infarction probably exists.

When emphysema is present in combination with fever and rales the findings are sometimes interpreted to be evidence of a primary pulmonary disorder and the underlying cardiac pathology is overlooked. This is a common occurrence in those cases in which no abnormal auscultatory cardiac findings are present.

In pulmonary congestion the second pulmonic sound becomes accentuated but it will be shown later that this sign has only limited clinical value.

With progressive failure of the left ventricle dilatation of the left atrium is an early development. Hypertrophy and moderate dilatation of the right ventricle especially of the outflow tract gradually develop and the heart becomes nutralized on percussion.

This discussion should make clear that a roentgenologic examination is often indispensable for the demonstration of pulmonary status especially in its initial state.

### *Roentgenologic Diagnosis of Pulmonary Congestion*

A history of increasing exertional dyspnea aids considerably in the early diagnosis of pulmonary congestion even when physical diagnostic methods yield little pathognomonic evidence. Roentgenoscopy and roentgenography are invaluable for providing reliable objective data.

Pulmonary congestion causes engorgement of the blood vessels and therefore creates large hilar shadows with increased pulsation and accentuated pulmonary markings. It has been estimated that congested lungs may hold twice as much blood as normal ones without increase of pulmonary arterial pressure. Congestion of the perivascular and peribronchial lymph vessels contributes decidedly to the increase of pulmonary markings whereas enlargement of lymph glands accentuates the hilar shadows. Later cloudiness of the lung fields increases and these changes may be general or circumscribed. This cloudiness and mottling is due to transudation into the alveoli distention of the pulmonary capillaries and particularly to the dilatation of the lymphatics. Since the lymphatics are more numerous and larger where the large bronchi and blood vessels bifurcate cloudy areas with ill defined borders often appear. Formerly these shadows were confused with those of intrinsic diseases of the pulmonary parenchyma (Zdrinsky).

The lungs become less transparent and the definition of the heart and vessels less distinct. In rare cases of pulmonary congestion the lungs display innumerable small shadows scattered diffusely throughout and give the impression that miliary tuberculosis may be present. Pulmonary congestion causes hemosiderosis and fine granulation resembling pneumoconiosis, miliary tuberculosis or Boeck's sarcoid. This impression is also created by small bronchi seen end on and filled with heart failure cells.

In chronic congestion increased markings and abnormal shadows in the lungs are also due to progressive pulmonary fibrosis (resulting from hyperplastic connective tissue and from reactive and reparative processes following intrapulmonary hemorrhages) and to sclerosis of the pulmonary arteries. Since intrapulmonic

transudates form predominantly in the poorly ventilated areas local atelectasis may result

A new x ray sign of pulmonary congestion has been described recently by Kerley Two to 15 horizontal lines up to 2 mm in thickness and 0.5 to 1 cm



FIG. 17 Kerley lines in the right lung, field of a 32 year old patient with rheumatic mitral stenosis

apart and 5 to 15 mm in length are seen in the costophrenic angle perpendicular to the lateral chest wall They are most common in mitral stenosis but they also appear in pulmonary congestion of other etiology They are called

septal lines since the precipitation of hemosiderin and edema in the interlobular septa is responsible. Short found these lines in 25 of 33 patients with severe mitral stenosis.

Figure 17 shows Kerley lines in a patient with mitral stenosis and a large left atrium. They must be differentiated from blurred vessels which usually communicate with each other. In Figure 17 one of the horizontal lines stops short of the vascular shadow while the other extends beyond it.

Pleural adhesions as well as local pulmonary indurations, the sequelae of old infarctions and hemorrhages, account for the irregular distribution of congested areas.

When pulmonary congestion develops rather abruptly the lung fields become less clear and clouding appears, but there are no hilar changes so characteristic of chronic passive congestion of the lungs.

### CYANOSIS

An increased amount of reduced hemoglobin in the arterial (capillary) blood is responsible for cyanosis; the bluish color of the skin observed in connection with cardiac lesions. Cyanosis appears as soon as reduced hemoglobin amounts to 5 Gm. per 100 ml. of arterial blood. Since 1 Gm. of hemoglobin unites with about 1.34 ml. of oxygen, 6.7 per cent oxygen unsaturation will be present when cyanosis appears (Lundsgaard and van Slyke); the normal figure for oxygen unsaturation is approximately 3.5 per cent. While the occurrence of cyanosis depends entirely upon the amount of reduced hemoglobin, its depth as well as its early discovery are influenced by the thickness of the skin, pigmentation and the number of capillaries. Cyanosis appears earliest where the skin is thin, i. e. in the lips, fingertips and nail beds.

If the patient is severely anemic cyanosis never occurs, since 5 Gm. of reduced hemoglobin per 100 ml. of blood, the necessary amount, cannot be present. On the contrary, patients with polycythemia and an otherwise normal circulation may display cyanosis constantly because the percentage of oxygen unsaturation per 100 ml. of blood easily reaches the critical level.

In cardiac patients cyanosis or an increased amount of reduced hemoglobin in the arterial blood may originate in four different ways:

(1) In congenital heart lesions the arterial and venous systems often communicate abnormally (malformations of the septa riding aorta, transposition of the aortic and pulmonic orifices) and venous blood is shunted into the arterial system. The presence of increased amounts of reduced hemoglobin in the arteries of these patients requires no discussion, although it should be noted that at least one third of the venous blood must be short circuited for cyanosis to appear.

A large percentage of congenital heart lesions, however, belong to the so-called acyanotic group, despite the existence of an abnormal communication between the arterial and venous systems as a result of a left to right shunt. Normally, pressure in the left atrium, left ventricle and aorta is higher than in the

right atrium right ventricle and pulmonary artery. Therefore arterial blood flows into the venous system without venous blood entering the arterial so that cyanosis is absent. Not infrequently however activities like coughing or crying spells or complications like pulmonary or mitral stenosis elevate the pressure in the right heart sufficiently to force venous blood into the arterial side in amounts adequate for the production of cyanosis. Of course in children crying spells may cause cyanosis under normal conditions owing to the prevention of inflow of blood into the chest during pressing and straining.

(2) Slow peripheral circulation the result of dilated peripheral vessels or congestion and increased venous pressure permits prolonged contact between the blood and tissues thereby increasing oxygen utilization. In this way the amount of reduced hemoglobin in the capillary blood rises (stagnant anoxemia). The cyanosis found in patients with pericardial adhesions and inflow stasis or some cases of right heart failure belongs in this group.

This form of cyanosis also occurs in the absence of heart disease. Not rarely patients are referred for a cardiac examination because they exhibit a striking cyanosis of the lips or fingers. This creates the suspicion that organic heart disease exists. In actuality nothing more than a slow peripheral circulation resulting from dilatation of the peripheral vessels is present. The causative factor varies. In many cases there is a constitutional widening of the peripheral vessels in some parts of the body; in others vascular dilatation appears after prolonged exposure to cold weather or by virtue of some disturbance of unknown etiology (acrocyanosis). This type of cyanosis is easily recognized by the cyanotic parts — lips, fingers, tip of the nose or lobes of the ears — feeling cold to the touch. Owing to the retarded circulation less warm blood than normal enters these tissues per minute consequently this kind of cyanosis is called cold cyanosis and can be distinguished from other varieties by palpation.

(3) Cyanosis conceivably may occur when oxygen utilization in the tissues is increased for other reasons. Thus an increase of the arteriovenous oxygen difference in cardiac patients is an important cause of cyanosis.

(4) The fourth and most important form of cyanosis in circulatory disorders of which two sub-varieties are distinguished depends upon abnormal oxygenation of the blood in the lungs.

(1) PULMONARY STASIS. If the pulmonary circulation is slow in the absence of any other disturbance oxygenation of the blood should be excellent for the corpuscles have a better opportunity for gas exchange with alveolar air. Widening of the capillary bed however prevents some of the red blood cells from coming in contact with the alveolar wall. Furthermore congestion alters the pulmonary epithelium or capillary endothelium and prevents the normal exchange of oxygen. Carbon dioxide due to its greater permeability is not retained. The interaction of all these factors is the reason that the depth of cyanosis does not strictly parallel the degree of congestion. Indeed decided pulmonary congestion may be unaccompanied by cyanosis.

Like the dyspnea of pulmonary congestion cyanosis may diminish if supervening right heart failure and hepatic enlargement reduce pulmonary congestion. Rapid failure of the right heart often diminishes rather than accentuates a previously existing cyanosis. Such patients may become quite pale because of the large amount of blood that is retained in the liver. Marked cyanosis is not a regular sign of right heart failure. If such patients show a deep cyanosis an underlying pulmonary disease or severe venous congestion is usually responsible.

In pneumonia and more rarely in pulmonary infarction cyanosis may appear when large amounts of blood are shunted from the pulmonary arteries to the pulmonary veins without undergoing arterialization.

(b) PULMONARY SCLEROSIS ESSENTIAL PULMONARY HYPERTENSION. Primary sclerosis of the larger arteries in the lesser circuit is extremely common. Atherosclerosis of these vessels is no rarer than in the systemic circulation. Approximately one half of all individuals beyond the age of fifty years exhibit this lesion and senile pulmonary sclerosis is almost invariable in patients over seventy years of age. This variety is asymptomatic.

Another primary form of pulmonary sclerosis the Auerza or Auerza Arrillaga syndrome involves the smaller peripheral arteries. Its pathogenesis is not clear. Syphilis formerly considered provocative does not play any role. Bronchopneumonia has been assumed without justification to be the initial lesion. Some form of primary arterial involvement may contribute to the development of this disease. Such cases may have been instances of essential pulmonary hypertension in which an unknown mechanism increases pressure in the lesser circuit. It may be assumed that we are not dealing with a disease entity and that different conditions causing pulmonary arterial hypertension are responsible.

Patients with pulmonary hypertension display a deep blue cyanosis (cardiacos negros) and trivial dyspnea. This disparity between the depth of cyanosis and the mildness of the dyspnea is remarkable. Headache, vertigo, somnolence, cough, hemoptysis, and anginal pain are typical symptoms. A polycythemia which may reach ten million red blood cells per cubic millimeter is common and contributes to the cyanosis. Physical examination discloses evidence of right ventricular hypertrophy. The *conus of the pulmonary artery* and its branches are prominent and the second pulmonic sound is accentuated. A systolic murmur is often audible over the pulmonic orifice and moderate pulmonary emphysema may be found. Clubbing of the fingers is common. Congestive heart failure with hepatomegaly, edema, and ascites appear early. Ordinarily the disease runs a rapid course after the appearance of symptoms. Frequent phlebotomy with the removal of relatively small amounts of blood (200 ml) may afford some symptomatic relief.

Sclerosis of small pulmonary arteries due to stasis (secondary sclerosis) is a common event when the pulmonary vessels are engorged for a long time. The small precapillary arteries are involved in the same way the peripheral arterioles are affected in systemic hypertension. This sclerosis is common in rheumatic mitral stenosis. It also develops regularly although in varying degree in other conditions associated with increased pressure in the lesser circuit. These conditions



are exemplified by congenital heart lesions, emphysema, kyphoscoliosis, fibrotic pulmonary tuberculosis, and extensive pleural adhesions.

The etiologic significance of elevated pressure in the lesser circuit for the development of pulmonary atherosclerosis is emphasized by the readiness with which this lesion develops in childhood when transposition of the large vessels, patent ductus arteriosus, or a defect in the interventricular septum create an abnormally high pressure in the lesser circuit.

### HYPSTATIC CONGESTION AND PNEUMONIA

In debilitated patients who do not change their position for a long time and who do have congestive heart failure, hypostatic congestion develops in the dependent parts of the lungs. Sudden infiltration and pneumonia may develop in these areas. Hypostatic pneumonia is often diagnosed when pulmonary embolism with infarction exists.

### INCREASED BASAL METABOLISM

An increased basal metabolic rate, so often found in patients with cardiac failure, is due to the dyspnea, the increased temperature, intake of more oxygen because of tissue anoxia, excitement, and other unknown factors.

### MENTAL DISTURBANCES

Insomnia, a mild depression, or greater irritability are common in heart failure, particularly in the presence of Cheyne-Stokes breathing. Delirium, mental confusion, hallucinations may occur. Cerebral edema is in part responsible.

### FATIGUE

Marked fatigue is a common symptom in cardiac patients and particularly among those with arteriosclerosis. Often it is the only complaint. Sometimes this symptom stems from a diminished intake of thiamine, in which case it is easily treated. In patients who have been on a salt-free diet for a long time, the fatigue is the result of sodium chloride deprivation. Sometimes it is a symptom of an anxiety neurosis. A diminished content of potassium in the skeletal muscle has been held responsible. In many cases, digitalis therapy may help, and it is probable that tissue anoxia due to the lowered cardiac output is an etiologic factor. In most cases, however, no reason for the fatigue is found, and the symptom often vanishes after having been present for months with no change in the objective findings.

### HEPATIC ENLARGEMENT

Engorgement of the liver is properly regarded as the earliest sign of right heart failure. The liver is located directly upstream from the right heart and is separated from the inferior vena cava and right atrium only by the wide valvular

**hepatic veins** The left lobe of the liver seems to enlarge first in cardiac patients probably owing to the anatomic arrangement of the hepatic veins and their branches For this reason patients with hepatic engorgement rarely complain of pain in the right side of the abdomen Instead relief from stomach pain is sought since the distress is felt in the epigastrium Some time may elapse before it is realized that swelling of the liver and not a gastric disorder is responsible for the pain

At first this pain may be experienced only after meals which tends to confirm the patient's opinion that it is of a gastric origin Sometimes it occurs only on exertion (Boyer and White)

Not every congested liver causes pain or is tender on palpation Congestion frequently enlarges the liver so much that the upper portion of the right abdomen bulges although the patient reports nothing more than epigastric fullness no pain is elicited by pressure or palpation In such cases the congestion is slow in onset or of long duration The more acutely right heart failure develops the more marked is hepatic pain Therefore both the presence or absence of pain and tenderness on pressure in the hepatic area are valuable means of appraising the speed with which right heart failure develops or its duration If an already enlarged liver again becomes sensitive on pressure progressive right heart failure is present even if no other signs support this conclusion For the reasons mentioned the gradual development of hepatomegaly in pericardial adhesions precludes sensitivity of the liver On the other hand the hepatic engorgement resulting from paroxysmal tachycardia (paroxysmal fibrillation) or right heart failure from pulmonary embolism develops acutely producing pain and tenderness of the liver on palpation

The pain from an acute hepatic engorgement is not felt exclusively over the liver it may radiate to the right shoulder and be mistaken for arthralgia

Meteorism and nausea appear in many cases of hepatic congestion an increased excretion of urobilinogen and urobilin are regular findings The stasis gastritis aggravates the symptoms The distention of the intestines increases the abdominal pressure and decreases the venous backflow and thus may enhance edema formation

Vomiting is a common manifestation of acute hepatic engorgement and presumably is the result of peritoneal irritation The ominous vomiting that occurs in patients with diphtheria and acute heart failure is well as that appearing in patients with paroxysmal tachycardia is a well known phenomenon Hepatic enlargement and vomiting is not infrequent in patients who receive digitalis in small amounts Indeed the physician often ascribes the vomiting to this drug and discontinues it but the fact is that the vomiting ceases quickly if increased amounts of digitalis are administered since this symptom results from progressive heart failure

Enlargement of the liver may be seen in right heart failure at a time when the venous pressure is still not yet increased this is explained by the fact that the hepatic veins flow into the inferior vena cava at an angle of almost 90 degrees

thus producing an early congestion that would not be produced were the angle less than  $90^\circ$

The retention of approximately 1600 ml of blood in a congested liver and the consequent withdrawal of this amount from the circulation may cause pulmonary congestion to diminish and dyspnea as well as cyanosis to disappear.

Histologically the congested liver shows a typical widening of the central vein with necrosis of the central cells. This seems to be caused by hypoxia because this portion of the liver lobule receives less oxygen.

Heart failure with chronic hepatic congestion is claimed to be responsible for attacks of hypoglycemia with sudden weakness, sweating, palpitation and nervousness. Psychoses, convulsions and coma may also appear. As the result of congestion a nutmeg liver may develop and the amount of fibrotic tissue may gradually increase in the central part of the lobule. This increase was found in one third of 286 cases of chronic passive congestion of the liver. Congestive cirrhosis with splenomegaly gradually develops. In recent years this has become a more common finding since mercurial diuretics prolong the life of these patients for years formerly death occurred before congestive cirrhosis of the liver could develop.

Liver function in patients with congestive heart failure may be disturbed. Direct and indirect bilirubin in the serum is raised in heart failure corresponding to the degree of liver congestion. Different tests of hepatic function show abnormalities such as the tendency to lower albumin and greater globulin levels in the serum.

Congestion of the intestinal tract in patients with engorgement of the liver leads to meteorism, eructations and the sensation of fullness. The meteorism is due to diminished reabsorption of gases caused by venous congestion (Schoen).

### JAUNDICE

The skin and sclera may become slightly yellow (subicteric tint) in patients with congestive heart failure and evident hepatic congestion. Jaundice appears because the pulmonary congestion is associated with destruction of many red blood cells while the liver damage in right heart failure, the result of hypoxia, impairs its excretory function. If jaundice becomes pronounced pulmonary infarction should always be suspected.

Large amounts of urobilin and urobilinogen and even (rarely) bilirubin may be excreted in the urine. The van den Bergh reaction in the blood serum is usually delayed and indirect as in hemolytic jaundice of other origin but a direct reaction may be obtained with greater liver damage.

If the patient has edema jaundice may be absent from the edematous areas.

### EDEMA

The formation of edema in most cardiac patients is the result of multiple rather than single factors. While a marked alteration of one of the mechanisms about to be described may be provocative usually a number of abnormal con-

ditions interact to produce edema (In this respect one is reminded of the mechanism of dyspnea)

The movement of water through the capillary wall into the tissues depends mainly upon the intravascular (hydrostatic) pressure the centrifugal force which drives water into the tissue and the colloidosmotic (oncotic) pressure of the plasma proteins as the major opposing force which tends to retain water within the vessels. Both of these factors in turn are opposed by the hydrostatic and colloidosmotic pressure of the tissue fluids.

Normally the forces are so balanced that the quantity of fluid pressed through the capillary membrane into the tissue equals the amount removed by the lymphatics or discharged back into the capillaries. Three factors were formerly held responsible

*Increased Venous Pressure* Under normal conditions the hydrostatic pressure in the arterial section of the capillaries is higher than all opposing forces and therefore plasma passes into the tissue spaces. Since this hydrostatic pressure is lower in the venous limb of the capillary fluid passes from the tissues to the capillary in this area. This mechanism is altered if venous pressure is increased. A high venous pressure also impedes the flow of lymph because the entrance of lymph into the large veins in the upper thorax will be retarded as well. Mechanical compression of veins causes edema. The amount of edema however does not parallel the height of venous pressure. Even ligation of the inferior vena cava frequently does not result in the formation of edema.

While other factors are of greater importance venous engorgement has importance in the formation of edema. This mechanism explains why edema of cardiac patients is dependent and collects at points where venous pressure is particularly high. It also makes clear why patients with pericardial adhesions and inflow stasis due to compression of the superior vena cava have facial edema only when in the supine position. Their edema disappears in the erect posture because of the consequent lowering of pressure in the tributaries of the superior vena cava.

*Increased Permeability of the Capillary Endothelium* If the circulation is disturbed and the oxygen supply to the tissues diminished the capillaries may become more permeable to water and crystalloids. The development of tissue anoxia is enhanced by the increased oxygen requirements of the tissues (increased basal metabolic rate) in decompensated cardiac patients. However the low protein content of the edema fluid and the absence of hemoconcentration in acute heart failure with edema formation show that this factor is not solely responsible. With severe anoxia in patients with pulmonary diseases and congenital heart lesions edema is often absent.

*Hypoproteinemia* Cardiac patients often have a relatively low level of serum proteins as the result of several factors such as the great loss of albumin in the urine when renal congestion is present. Hypoproteinemia may also stem from malnutrition. Great loss of proteins also occurs in conjunction with edema and transudates. This loss of protein may be great if hydrothorax and ascites develop

and their evacuation by paracentesis is necessary. If the critical level of plasma proteins is reached (5.5 Gm of plasma proteins with 2.5 Gm of plasma albumin per 100 ml of plasma) edema appears occasionally. The oncotic pressure of the serum is diminished in cardiac patients even before edema forms. The serum protein level is said to fall in right but not in left heart failure (Kagan).

*Other Causes* The pathogenesis of diffuse and circumscribed edemas which appear in women suffering from climacteric disturbances or during the menstrual period is obscure. It is most probably connected with the retention of sodium caused by the sex hormones. Injection of crystalline preparations of estrone, progesterone and pregnandiol causes water, sodium and chloride retention in normal dogs (Thorn et al). Similar retention is observed premenstrually in humans; these substances are excreted in increased amounts at the beginning of menstruation. Such patients suffer from headaches, fatigue, vertigo and even mental aberration.

### *New Concepts of the Mechanism of Edema*

In acute hemorrhage and in certain types of shock a widespread vasoconstriction occurs; this has been claimed to be a useful phenomenon (by addicts of teleologic reasoning) because it diverts blood from less vital organs to more important ones — the heart, brain and kidney. The arteries of these organs were said not to participate in the general vasoconstriction. In recent years it has become increasingly clear that this concept is fallacious. Attacks of sudden blindness that have been observed after acute hemorrhage indicate participation of the retinal arteries in the general vasospasm. We were able to show that marked electrocardiographic changes appear temporarily in a majority of patients with acute hemorrhage, thus demonstrating the participation of the coronary arteries. Experimental investigations and the finding of azotemia following a profuse hemorrhage show that a reduction of renal circulation also exists in these patients.

Patients with cardiac failure respond in a similar manner as those with an acute hemorrhage. Here also — as pointed out earlier — general vasoconstriction takes place as a consequence of the diminution of cardiac output. However, while in other organs the diminished blood supply parallels and corresponds to the diminution of cardiac output, renal blood flow is reduced out of all proportion. If the cardiac output is reduced to one half its normal value, renal blood flow is reduced to 20–30 per cent of normal, which in turn causes a reduction of the filtration rate in the kidney to 50–75 per cent of normal. This is said to be accomplished by the constriction of the efferent and according to some investigators the afferent glomerular arterioles. The mechanism of the event is still not clear. Tubular function seems to be unchanged while, owing to the presence of diminished filtration rate with normal reabsorption in the tubuli, more sodium and consequently more water is retained. According to others (Dawies and Kilpatrick, Sinclair Smith and others) the tubular absorption of sodium is actually increased.

Thus a response which is useful in acute hemorrhage — to a degree — for the preservation of the species by conserving electrolytes and fluids and by less en-

ing their excretion through the kidneys leads in heart failure to the formation of edema

According to Starling's rules of equilibrium (see p 83) cardiac failure leads to increased venous and capillary pressure. This causes the transudation of fluid (edema). The consequent reduction of plasma volume causes retention of salt and water. According to the new conception cardiac failure causes via the renal mechanisms just mentioned retention of salt and water the plasma volume expands the venous and capillary pressures rise and transudation into the tissues takes place.

The new conception lacks universal approval. The necessity of accepting Starling's rules of osmotic and hydrostatic equilibrium is stressed (Peters) and so is the important part which the increase of venous pressure plays in edema formation. According to some authors (Miller) the initial phenomenon is retention of water sodium being retained secondarily. For many years the discussion has been going on whether venous pressure must rise before edema appears (Jouko and Vague). The experiments of Starr in which it was demonstrated that in resting dogs very severe damage of the right ventricle by burning need not cause a conspicuous increase of venous pressure do not prove too much since increased venous pressure would in all probability have been found had the dogs been forced to work. In patients with severe acute myocardial infarction following coronary occlusion we see no congestion unless heavier meals or physical exertion increase the amount of circulating blood. The venous bed is wide and can be expanded the venous pressure need not rise immediately therefore when right ventricular failure appears.

The participation and the degree of action of hormones from the adrenal cortex and hypophysis in edema formation has not been elucidated. It may be assumed that these hormones control the excretion of sodium and water (Riab-Singer and Wener, Bornstein, Hanenson et al). Paab elicited the clinical picture of congestive heart failure by overdosage with adrenocorticotrophic hormone.

The part played by the antidiuretic hormone of the hypophysis and the sodium retaining corticoid aldosterone is under active investigation. The excretion of aldosterone in the urine is markedly increased in heart patients with cardiac failure and edema. A temporary increase is also seen in patients with acute myocardial infarction (Wolff).

An inadequate cardiac output causes a discharge of adrenocortical hormone and a discharge of posterior pituitary hormone. The hormonal action on tubular reabsorption of salt and water may thus play a paramount part in the formation of edema in cardiac failure (see Hamilton).

While the finer mechanism of the diminution of the renal excretion of sodium and water is unknown there is no doubt that renal blood flow is diminished in cardiac failure. These investigations were significant since physicians were again led to realize the importance of sodium in the genesis of edema a point stressed by Widul and others more than 50 years ago.

The early recognition of water retention is very difficult. When edema becomes visible and when pitting appears a considerable amount of water has already been retained in the body; about 5 to 6 kilograms are retained before pitting is demonstrable. Edema can be detected by palpation if the size of the limb has increased 8 to 10 per cent. Accordingly, an accurate record of the patient's weight is the most reliable simple method of following water balance when retention is suspected or discovery of recurring edema is important. Several tests have been advocated for early diagnosis of water retention but they are not reliable and for the most part have been abandoned.

In elderly as well as in obese patients edema often appears in the absence of demonstrable cardiac damage. It is a common event during periods of continued warm weather. Individuals who stand quietly without moving their legs may develop ankle edema. Edema appearing in only one lower extremity is not of cardiac origin. Superficial or deep varices or deformities of the foot (fallen arches and the like) are more likely causes.

If the skin becomes wrinkled over an edematous area the edema is receding provided no alteration of position has occurred.

The edema may be hard or soft. Hard edema is usually chronic and exhibits changes in the connective tissue. Occasionally this type — which may be painful — is found in the abdominal wall but rarely above the level of the umbilicus. Thrombosis of the deep veins of the abdominal wall apparently is the major etiologic factor.

Sometimes bilateral edema of the hands and arms appears in very advanced heart failure when venous pressure is markedly raised. Unilateral edema of an arm may develop in this stage if the patient has increased local venous pressure brought about by lying on the affected side. Thrombosis of the jugular vein causes unilateral edema of the arm, the face and the breast on the corresponding side. If the superficial vessels of the neck become thrombosed the jugular veins may be palpable as hard cords.

Massive edema and necrosis of the toes and occasionally also of the ear and tip of the nose have been observed in connection with ball thrombi of the left atrium (see later).

When the patient is confined to bed the examination should include inspection and palpation of the sacral region for cardiac edema is a gravity edema and collects in the most dependent part.

There is no parallelism between the severity of the decompensation and the degree of edema. This must be anticipated since the edema is usually the result of an interplay between several mechanisms.

### HYDROTHORAX

One of the earliest signs of decompensation that often antedates all other evidence of cardiac failure by months is hydrothorax.

In most cardiac patients hydrothorax is more prominent on the right side. It may be absent on the left side even when a massive effusion exists on the right.

It has been maintained recently that a right sided effusion appears most commonly in patients with mitral lesions in combined left and right heart failure and in atrial fibrillation whereas a left sided effusion is more common in patients with left ventricular failure. An enlarged left ventricle is alleged by compression to impede the circulation in the left pulmonary veins while a dilated right atrium hampers the return from the right pulmonary veins. Exceptions to these rules are by no means uncommon and in our opinion right sided effusion is the rule, irrespective of the etiology of the heart failure.

Very often the appearance of a right hydrothorax follows infarction in the middle or lower lobe of the right lung. Infarction in the left lung may cause a left sided effusion. If the right pleural cavity is obliterated by adhesions and the conditions prevail in which a hydrothorax develops the effusion can form only on the left side. Right pleural adhesions are common in cardiac patients with chronic failure due to repeated pulmonary infarction. Left sided effusions sometimes develop after coronary thrombosis.

Many hypotheses have been devised to explain the high incidence of effusions into the right pleural cavity. Some of these theories assume that an enlarged right atrium compresses the azygos vein or that differences of intrathoracic pressure play a role. It has also been stated that the average venous pulmonary pressure is higher in the right lung especially with the patient in the preferred right recumbent posture. The pulmonary venous blood from the right lung must be lifted more than that from the left lung to reach the left atrium (Dock). The volume of the right lung seems to be 10 per cent larger than that of the left. This makes the surface exuding fluid larger. Convincing proof to support either explanation however is lacking.

Hydrothorax may develop in right or left heart failure. The veins of the parietal pleura drain for the most part into the azygos system whereas the veins of the visceral pleura send their blood mainly into the pulmonary veins. Therefore increase of pressure in either atrium may lead to edema. Pulmonary engorgement seems to be the chief factor in the development of hydrothorax.

Bilateral hydrothorax is an early and rather regular phenomenon in acute hemorrhagic nephritis and is indicative of the general capillary damage in this condition.

When hydrothorax persists for some time (it may last for years) its protein content may be relatively high so that the differential diagnosis between an exudate and transudate is impossible by the usual laboratory tests.

X ray permits an earlier diagnosis of hydrothorax than does physical examination since a considerable amount of fluid at least 500 ml must collect in the pleural cavity before physical examination will disclose it. Moreover x ray examination is invaluable for the diagnosis of interlobar effusions which are not uncommon on the right side when adhesions have been created by previous pulmonary infarctions. It should be emphasized however that the fibrotic tissue of pleural adhesions may become so edematous that a differential diagnosis by x ray between edematous adhesions and a free hydrothorax is difficult. This



difficulty becomes more comprehensible when one recalls that free pleural effusions usually develop first along the visceral pleura and therefore cause a dry findings which resemble pleural adhesions.

If a massive hydrothorax is added to the pulmonary congestion and to the enlarged heart the vital capacity is markedly reduced for mechanical reasons the resultant cyanosis and dyspnea may be very pronounced.

### ASCITES

If ascites dominates the clinical picture severe passive congestion in the portal circulation should be suspected. Under these circumstances two conditions deserve serious consideration. First tricuspid insufficiency may be present usually this is easily recognized by the expansile pulsation of the liver and the positive venous pulse in the neck. Second the inferior vena cava or hepatic veins may be compressed by adhesions at the base of the right lung or by pericardial adhesions. In many patients the thin walled hepatic veins empty into the inferior vena cava in part or entirely above the diaphragm. Consequently they are readily compressed by a pericardial effusion or adhesions in this region. Ascites may however also appear in conditions other than tricuspid and pericardial lesions as occasionally in syphilitic aortic regurgitation.

It is of practical importance to note that effusions in the pleural and peritoneal cavities are continuously absorbed and reformed. It has been estimated that 40 to 80 per cent of the ascitic fluid enters and leaves the abdominal cavity per hour! The appearance of ascites is based upon the fact that the outpouring of lymph into the peritoneal cavity continuously exceeds normal. In ascites reabsorption is affected by the venous congestion. Thus continuous circulation of the effusion in the pleural and abdominal cavities explains the diuretic effect that follows the injection of mercurial diuretics into ascitic fluid or into a hydrothorax.

### RENAL CONGESTION

Congestion of the kidneys produces changes in the urine which are often characteristic. The urine is concentrated and the specific gravity may be as high as 1.035. If allowed to stand a few hours after it is voided the urine is dark red in color because of the presence of large amounts of urobilin. Albuminuria is usually present and may be pronounced. The number of granular casts likewise increases. There may be 10 times as many red blood cells as in the urine of a healthy individual.

The discovery of a marked albuminuria in conjunction with casts and increased number of red blood cells in the urinary sediment may create the wrong impression of a primary renal lesion especially when the blood pressure is high. The great increase in the specific gravity of the urine and its high content of urobilin and urobilinogen speak in favor of renal congestion.

Many tests have been introduced for the evaluation of renal function. The simplest and best is one of the modifications of Volhard's dilution and concen-

tration test. An amount of 1000–1500 ml of water is taken and one observes whether this fluid is excreted within four hours. During the day the patient is not allowed any fluid and the specific gravity of the urine should gradually rise to values above 1.025 in the healthy. It should be stressed that this test is applicable for the determination of renal function only when there is no evidence of congestive heart failure. If the latter is present or imminent retention of the ingested water is marked and abnormal values of the urinary specific gravity are obtained.

The blood nonprotein nitrogen and urea may be abnormally high in congestive heart failure or following myocardial infarction. The values return to normal soon after improvement begins. In such cases some intrinsic renal lesion like atherosclerosis or arteriolar sclerosis is often present in addition to congestive heart failure. While the renal lesion does not suffice to create any disturbance it causes azotemia as soon as some circulatory disturbance is superimposed. Precipitous fall of blood pressure in myocardial infarction leads to azotemia by the same mechanism as in acute blood loss—that is, narrowing of the arterial tree particularly in the kidneys. Nonprotein nitrogen may also increase as the result of too energetic treatment with mercurial diuretics in an attempt to relieve edema.

## Bibliography

- Alexandresco-Dersca C. and Eosca I. Trois cas de syndrome de Bernheim. *Revue med.* 39 1437 1931
- Anrep G. V. and Segall H. V. The central and reflex regulation of the heart rate. *J. Physiol.* 71 215 1926
- Bainbridge F. A. The influence of venous filling upon the rate of the heart. *J. Physiol.* 50 65 1915
- Bedford D. F. and Lovibond J. L. Hydrothorax in heart failure. *Brit. Heart J.* 3 93 1941
- Bernheim. De l'asthose veineuse dans l'hypertrophie du coeur gauche par sténose concomitante du ventricule droit. *Rev. de med.* 30 785 1910
- Blake W. D., Wegria R., Keating R. P. and Ward H. E. Effect of increased renal venous pressure on renal function. *Am. J. Physiol.* 15, 1 1949
- Bolton C. The absorption of fluid in cardiac dropsy. *Heart* 11 343 1924
- Bornstein J. and Trewthella P. Adrenocorticotrophic activity of blood plasma extracts. *Lancet* 2 118 1950
- Borst J. G. G. The maintenance of an adequate cardiac output by the regulation of the urinary excretion of water and sodium chloride—an essential factor in the genesis of edema. *Acta med. Scandinav. Suppl.* 207 1948
- Boyer A. H. and White P. D. Right upper quadrant pain on effort—an early symptom of failure of the right ventricle. *New England J. Med.* 266 217 1942
- Bradley S. F. and Blake W. D. Pathogenesis of renal dysfunction during congestive heart failure. *Am. J. Med.* 14 11 1949
- Brenner O. Pathology of the vessels of the pulmonary circulation. *Arch. Int. Med.* 56 211 1935
- Bruwer A. S., Ellis F. H. Jr. and Kirklin J. W. Cystofibrotic septal lines in pulmonary venous hypertension. *Circulation* 12 80, 193
- Burch G. F. and Ray C. T. A consideration of the mechanism of congestive heart failure. *Am. Heart J.* 41 918 1951

- Chávez I Sepulveda B and Ortega I A The functional value of the liver in heart disease *J A M A* 121 1276 1943
- Cohn A F and Steele J M Unexplained fever in heart failure *J Clin Investigation* 13 853 1934
- Cossio P Heart disease in the Argentine *Am Heart J* 25 145 1943
- and Berconsky I The cyanosis in mitral stenosis *Am Heart J* 17 1 1939
- Curschmann H Über Krimakterisches Ödem *Med Klin* 29 1270 1933
- Davies C E and Kilpatrick J A Renal circulation in low output and high output heart failure *Clin Science* 10 53 1951
- Day T D and Armstrong T G Fibrosis of the liver in heart failure *J Path & Bact* 50 221 1940
- Dock W The anatomical and hydrostatic basis of orthopnea and of right hydrothorax in cardiac failure *Am Heart J* 10 1047 1935
- Congestive heart failure *J A M A* 140 1135 1949
- Drury A N and Jones N W Observations upon the rate at which oedema forms when the veins of the human limb are congested *Heart* 14 55 1927
- East T Pulmonary hypertension *Brit Heart J* 2 189 1940
- and Bain C Right ventricular stenosis (Bernheim's Syndrome) *Brit Heart J* 11 145 1949
- Editorial Hydrothorax in congestive heart failure *Am J Roentgenol* 60 419 1949
- Elias H and Feller A Stauungstypen bei Kreislaufstörungen Mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der exsudativen Perikarditis Wien & Berlin J Springer 1926
- Fajposito M J Focal pulmonary hemosiderosis in rheumatic heart disease *Am J Roentgenol* 3 351 1955
- Eufinger H and Spiegler R Der Einfluß des menstruellen Zyklus auf den Wasserstoffwechsel *Arch f Gynak* 135 223 1928
- Evans J M Zimmerman H J Wilmer C J Thomas L J and Lethridge C B Altered liver function of chronic congestive heart failure *Am J Med* 13 704 1952
- Fyster J A E Cardiac dilatation and hypertrophy *Tr A Am Physicians* 4 15 1957
- Fishberg A M Jaundice in myocardial insufficiency *J A M A* 80 1516 1953
- Heart failure Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1937
- Fitzgerald Peel A A Dissecting aneurysm of the interventricular septum *Brit Heart J* 10 239 1948
- Fleischner F G and Reiner L Lin ar x ray shadows in acquired pulmonary hemosiderosis and congestion *New Engl J Med* 250 900 1952
- Flint F J The factor of infection in heart failure *Brit M J* 2 1018 1954
- Frank O Zur Dynamik des Herzmuskels *Ztschr f Biol* 14 370 1895
- Grassmann W and Herzog F Die Wirkung von Digitalis (Strophanthin) auf das Minuten und Schlagvolumen des Herzkranken *Arch f Exper Path u Pharmacol* 163 97 1931
- Hamilton W F Experimental congestive failure of the circulation *Tr Am Colleg Cardiol* 7 9 1957
- Hanenson I B Weston R F Grossman J and Leiter L Pathogenesis and treatment of congestive heart failure *M Clin North America* p 643 (May) 1953
- Hare D C and Roa J M Syphilitic disease of the pulmonary arteries *Lancet* 2 806 1929
- Hegglin R Die Klinik der energetisch dynamischen Herzinsuffizienz Basel Karger 1947
- Henderson A The efficiency of the heart and its measurement *Lancet* 2 1965 1955
- and Prince A J The relative systolic discharges of the right and left ventricles and their bearing on pulmonary congestion and depletion *Heart* 5 217 1913

- Hickam J B and Cargill W H Effect of exercise on cardiac output and pulmonary arterial pressure in normal persons and in patients with cardiovascular disease and pulmonary emphysema *J Clin Investigation* 27 10 1948
- Hyatt H F and Smith J R The mechanism of ascites *Am J Med* 16 434 1954
- Jouve A and Vague J La circulation de retour *Paris Masson* 1940
- Kagan B M The serum proteins in diseases of the heart and kidneys *Am J Clin Path* 14 327 1944
- Katzin H M Waller J V and Blumgart H L Cardiac cirrhosis of the liver *Arch Int Med* 64 454 1939
- Keefer C S and Resnik W H Jaundice following pulmonary infarction in patients with myocardial insufficiency *J Clin Investigation* 9 375 389 1936
- Kinsey D and White I D Fever in congestive heart failure *Arch Int Med* 65 163 1940
- Krogh A Landis F M and Turner A H The movement of fluid through the human capillary wall in relation to venous pressure and to the colloid osmotic pressure of the blood *J Clin Investigation* 11 63 1932
- Kugel M A and Lichtman S S Factors causing clinical jaundice in heart disease *Arch Int Med* 59 16 1933
- Landis E M Brown E Fauteux M and Wise C Central venous pressure in relation to cardiac competence blood volume and exercise *J Clin Investigation* 95 237 1946
- Leaf A and Counter W T Evidence that renal sodium excretion by normal human subjects is regulated by adrenal cortical activity *J Clin Investigation* 99 1067 1949
- Loeb L Edema *Medicine* 2 171 1923
- Lundsgaard C and Van Slyke D D Cyanosis *Medicine* 2 1 1923
- McMichael J The output of the heart in congestive failure *Quart J Med* 7 331 1938
- Meakins J C Distribution of jaundice in circulatory failure *J Clin Investigation* 4 135 1927
- Mellinkoff S M and Tumulty P A Hepatic hypoglycemia its occurrence in congestive heart failure *New England J Med* 97 445 1952
- Meneely G R and Kaltreider N L A study of the volume of the blood in congestive heart failure *J Clin Investigation* 22 521 1943
- Merrill A J Edema and decreased renal blood flow in patients with chronic congestive heart failure evidence of forward failure as the primary cause of edema *J Clin Investigation* 95 389 1946
- Miller G F Water and electrolyte metabolism in congestive heart failure *Circulation* 4 20 1951
- Mokotoff R Ross G and Lester L Renal plasma flow and sodium reabsorption and excretion in congestive heart failure *J Clin Investigation* 2 1 1948
- de Navasquez S Forbes J R and Holling H E Right ventricular hypertrophy of unknown origin so called pulmonary hypertension *Brit Heart J* 2 177 1940
- Iago I H Ipsilateral edema and contralateral jaundice associated with hemiplegia and cardiac decompensation *Am J M Sc* 17 3 1929
- Peters J P The problem of cardiac edema *Am J Med* 19 60 1955
- Raab W Hormonal and Neurogenic Cardiovascular Disorders Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 1953
- Hormonal factors in heart disease their role in myocardial hypertrophy hypoxia and electrolyte imbalance *Ann Int Med* 41 757 1954
- Rich A R and Resnik W H On the mechanism of the jaundice following pulmonary infarction in patients with heart failure *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 39 1956

- Schalm L and Hoogenboom W A H Blood bilirubin in congestive heart failure  
Am Heart J 44 571 1952
- Schoen R Experimentelle Untersuchungen über Meteorismus Deutsches Arch f klin  
Med 148 86 1926
- Schroeder H A Studies on congestive circulatory failure Circulation 1 481 1900
- Selzer A Chronic cyanosis Am J Med 10 334 1951
- Bradley H W and Willett F M A critical appraisal of the concept of Bernheim's  
syndrome Am J Med 18 567 1955
- Seymour W H et al Cardiac output blood and interstitial fluid volumes total circulating  
serum protein and kidney function during cardiac failure and after improvement  
J Clin Investigation 21 229 1942
- Sherlock S The liver in heart failure Brit Heart J 13 273 1951
- Short A S Radiology of the lung in severe mitral stenosis Brit Heart J 17 33 1955
- Singer B and Wener J Excretion of sodium retaining substances in patients with  
congestive heart failure Am Heart J 45 795 1953
- Smirk F H Observations on the causes of oedema in congestive heart failure Clin Sc  
2 317 1936
- Sodeman W A and Burch C J The precipitating causes of congestive heart failure  
Am Heart J 15 22 1938
- Starling F H The Arris and Gale lectures on some points in the pathology of heart disease  
Lancet 1 560 652 723 1897
- Starr I and Rawson A J Role of the static blood pressure in abnormal increments  
of venous pressure especially in heart failure Am J Med Sc 199 27 40 1940
- Jeffers W A and Meade R H Jr The absence of conspicuous increments of  
venous pressure after severe damage to the right ventricle of the dog Am Heart  
J 27 291 1943
- Stewart H J and Moore N S The number of formed elements in the urinary sediment  
of patients suffering from heart disease with particular reference to the state of heart  
failure J Clin Investigation 9 409 1931
- Steeny J S Menstrual edema J A M A 103 234 1934
- Sylla A Lungenstauung und Stauungslunge Ergebn d inn Med und Kinderh 49 122  
1934
- Thomas W A Generalized edema occurring only at the menstrual period J A M A  
101 1126 1933
- Thorn C W Nelson K R and Thorn D W A study of the mechanism of edema  
associated with menstruation Endocrinology 22 155 1934
- Warren J V and Stead F A Jr Fluid dynamics in chronic congestive heart failure  
Arch Int Med 73 139 1944
- Wiggers C J The regulation of the pulmonary circulation Physiol Rev 1 239 1921
- Wolff H I Über die Aldosteron Aktivität und Natriumretention bei Herzkranken und  
ihre pathologische Bedeutung Klin Wochschr 31 110, 1956
- Wollheim H Die zirkulatorische Blutmenge und ihre Bedeutung für die Kompensation  
und Dekompensation des Kreislaufes Ztschr f klin Med 116 69 1931
- Die Aktive Blutmenge in Gefäßinsuffizienz Klin Wochschr 31 106, 1955
- Zdanksy F Beitrag zur Kenntnis der kardialen Lungenstauung auf Grund röntgenolo-  
gischer klinischer und anatomischer Untersuchung. = Arch inn Med 18 461 1929
- Die Funktion des Herzens im Röntgenbild Fortschr Geb d Röntgstr 77 295 1952
- Verh d Ges f Kreislaufforsch 1951
- and Boyd I J Roentgen Diagnosis of the Heart and Great Vessels New York  
Cruce & Stratton 1953

## Chapter 6

# The Circulation Time

THE VELOCITY OF BLOOD FLOW is ascertained by measuring the so called circulation time. In clinical medicine the circulation time is found by introducing some substance into the circulation and determining the time required for its arrival in sufficient quantities at another point to produce either an objective response or a response determined by other methods.

*Substances Used* Many substances have been suggested among which may be mentioned ether, lobeline, sodium cyanide, aminophyllin, fluorescein, saccharine, histamine, calcium chloride, radium, magnesium sulphate, sodium dehydrocholate, labeled erythrocytes, calcium gluconate, sodium succinate, methylene blue and congo red. Some of these substances possess the advantage of giving responses that are amenable to objective observation.

*Methods and Normal Values* Ordinarily the circulation time is measured from the moment of injection to the appearance of the substance in the skin, tongue, carotid sinus, an artery of the opposite arm, etc. Even when the test is performed with great care and with the patient under basal conditions the values for normal circulation vary. The normal arm to skin time varies from 9 to 20 seconds according to the method used. The injected substance naturally appears earlier in the arm than in the leg (approximately half the time).

The arm to lung circulation time is measured with the aid of ether. Ether (0.2—0.33 ml.) and saline (0.5 ml.) are injected intravenously and a cough, deep breath or the smell of ether on the breath is considered the subjective and objective endpoint. Other substances have also been used — paraldehyde, for example, also elicits a cough reflex. Arm-lung times of four to eight seconds are considered normal.

With a combination of these methods it is possible by measuring the arm to lung and the arm to tongue time to calculate the lung to tongue time or the velocity from the lung to some part of the systemic circulation.

The circulation time is greater when the blood volume is increased and shorter when the cardiac output rises. Cardiac output is increased with higher room temperature. It may rise 40 per cent after a meal and 100 per cent during anxiety.

Of great importance is the discovery by Nylin and his collaborators that in dilated hearts the circulation time is prolonged because the injected substance is mixed with the enormously increased residual blood in the dilated cardiac chambers. Under normal conditions the heart has a capacity of 400 ml. The heart

of a patient with aortic insufficiency may have a capacity of 3000 ml and the amount of residual blood may exceed 2000 ml. Therefore in patients with enlarged heart an increased circulation time does not necessarily indicate a slower blood flow.

To obtain a reliable test the physician should have the patient rest comfortably for at least 20 minutes before the test is taken.

*Interpretation.* Since the speed of the blood flow in the arterial part of the circulation (pulmonary artery and its tree, aorta and its vascular branches) is not remarkably altered even in advanced heart failure, prolongation of the arm to lung circulation indicates a delay in the flow in the venous system in right heart failure. In heart failure the figures for arm to skin and arm to lung circulation may be trebled. With a normal arm to lung circulation time, prolongation of the arm to tongue circulation time indicates a delay in the pulmonary venous circulation caused by left heart failure.

The circulation time is decreased in beriberi, anemia, fever, and hyperthyroidism. It is also shortened in arteriovenous fistulas and in congenital heart disease with a right to left shunt. It is increased in myxedema.

The values of circulation time do not parallel the degree of heart failure. The range of errors in the performance of the test must be considered. Moreover, heart failure may be present even though the circulation time is normal or the circulation time may be prolonged when the patient is relatively free from symptoms. Improvement may result from therapy while the circulation time remains unchanged. For these reasons, as well as because of the variations encountered in healthy subjects, most of these procedures have limited practical importance in bedside cardiology. Furthermore, diagnosis of congestive heart failure is easier and no less exact by other means. Since healthy subjects show a wide difference in the velocity of circulation, the method does not permit the diagnosis of beginning or imminent heart failure.

The procedure has some value, however, in the recognition of right to left shunts in congenital heart disease, in the differentiation of bronchial and cardiac asthma (the circulation rate in the former is normal) in the localization of pericardial adhesions which compress the superior or inferior vena cava, in the evaluation of how much the heart contributes to dyspnea in a patient with pulmonary emphysema and cardiac disease (pulmonary emphysema does not prolong the circulation time) and in ascertaining whether ascites is the result of cardiac failure. Of theoretical interest also is the discovery of the diminished velocity of blood flow in most patients with congestive heart failure.

## Bibliography

- Baer, S., and Isard, J. H. The value of the ether circulation time in the diagnosis of right heart failure. *Am. J. M. Sc.* 760 249, 1940.
- Blumgart, H. L. The velocity of blood flow in health and disease. Velocity of blood flow in man and its relation to other measurements of circulation. *Medicine* 10 1, 1931.

- Candel S Determination of the normal circulation time from the antecubital veins to the pulmonary capillaries by a new technique *Ann Int Med* 17 236 1938
- Friedman C F Heart volume myocardial volume and total capacity of the heart cavities in certain chronic heart diseases *Acta med Scandinav Suppl* 257
- Greenfield I Sodium succinate as a test of circulatory efficiency *Ann Int Med* 32 524 1950
- Hitzig W M The use of ether in measuring the circulation time from the antecubital veins to the pulmonary capillaries *Am Heart J* 10 1080 1935
- Meneely G R and Chesnut J L A relation between the size of the heart and the velocity of the blood *Am Heart J* 33 175 1947
- Nylin G On the amount of and changes in the residual blood of the heart *Am Heart J* 25 598 1943 30 1 1945
- Piccione F V and Boyd L J The determination of blood velocity by lobeline *J Lab & Clin Med* 26 766 1941



## Chapter 7

# Venous Pressure

THE CLINICAL IMPORTANCE of venous pressure became fully appreciated when it was realized that cardiac activity depends to a considerable extent upon the amount of blood returned to the heart and that this in turn depends upon the venous pressure. The veins cannot be regarded as passive tubes; their width and capacity vary continually under the influence of hormones, chemical substances such as carbon dioxide, and central and reflex (carotid sinus) nerve impulses. It is the amount of blood returning to the heart which regulates the cardiac output rather than the converse. If the quantity of blood returning to the right heart is greater than the heart can transfer to the arterial side, venous pressure rises. Normally, venous pressure rises during exertion.

Measurement of venous pressure aids in the clinical diagnosis of right ventricular failure. Moreover, it will often help to determine whether cardiac decompensation plays a part in a case of hepatic enlargement or ascites. Likewise, determination of the venous pressure will often make it possible to learn how much the cardiac factors contribute to the clinical picture when a patient has extensive pulmonary emphysema and fibrosis.

In some cases of right ventricular failure, however, the liver may be enlarged and edema present while venous pressure is normal. In these cases the veins may be dilated so that inspection sometimes yields more information than the determination of venous pressure, since the venous bed has adapted itself to the greater content.

*Methods.* Whereas a dilated vein which is not under pressure is difficult to palpate, a marked increase in venous pressure causes it to feel like a hard cord or a thrombosed vessel.

The simplest method for determining venous pressure remains the procedure originally suggested by Ciermer. This method is based on the fact that since the veins of the upper extremities communicate with the right atrium, they act like a manometer and indicate intra-atrial pressure with great exactitude. If the arm of a relaxed and seated patient is permitted to hang down for 15 minutes, the veins on the back of the hand become congested and easily visible. If the eyes of the examiner are fixed upon a small vein on the back of the hand and the arm of the patient is slowly elevated by the observer, a point will be reached at which the pressure in the hand vein exceeds the pressure in the right atrium; at this moment the vein empties and collapses. The level at which this collapse occurs is regarded as the point at which the vein is subject to the same pressure as the right atrium.

As a reference point the upper border of the fifth rib is chosen in the seated patient. Normally the veins should collapse 10 cm above the reference point. Sclerotic veins however do not collapse readily. The observation that the venous pressure in one arm may be higher than in the other if the first has performed some work shortly prior to the test demonstrates that the values obtained with this method do not depend upon the state of the circulation alone.

Sir Thomas Lewis recommended inspection of the superficial jugular veins for the estimation of venous pressure. Normally these veins collapse if they are flush with the upper end of the manubrium sterni. This is the reference level regardless of body position. Therefore in the upright posture no portion of the vein should be visibly congested under normal conditions. If the veins remain engorged above this level venous pressure is elevated and the higher this congestion extends up the neck in the erect patient the higher the pressure.

As a reference level in the supine position some observers recommend a point 5 cm dorsad to the fourth costochondral junction or 10 cm above the level of the back of a patient lying on a table.

The normal levels vary according to the reference point used and range from 4 to 15 cm water. Some investigators regard 10 cm as the upper limit and others consider values over 15 cm as abnormal. Figures of over 32 cm have been obtained in congestive heart failure. Direct measurement of the pressure by means of a catheter within the human right atrium yields values of 3 to 7 cm water in normal persons.

A needle introduced into a vein provides a direct method for measurement of venous pressure but this technic also suffers because of the impossibility of locating the correct zero level. This and other similar methods offer little advantage over the procedures mentioned above.

*Interpretation.* While there is no parallelism between the height of the venous pressure and the degree of decompensation, venous pressure is usually elevated in failure. Since venous pressure is normal in uncomplicated emphysema and lung asthma this fact may aid in problems of differential diagnosis. It is elevated in a compensated tricuspid stenosis and in pericardial adhesions. The method is of value in the diagnosis of obstruction of the superior or inferior vena cava. Following venesection venous (and spinal fluid) pressures fall.

Within certain limits increased venous pressure means better filling of the heart and therefore improved cardiac efficiency in accordance with Starling's law; this holds true despite the shortening of diastole by the increase of heart rate via the Bainbridge reflex. In this sense it helps to compensate the heart lesion. These rules are not valid when the heart has no reserve force.

Of clinical interest is the phenomenon of *hepato jugular reflux*. Strong pressure exerted with both hands on the right upper abdomen, particularly on the patient's liver area, does not change the filling of the veins of the neck in normal individuals. The venous pressure remains unchanged or more often it falls 1 to 3 cm water. In patients with right heart failure the veins become engorged and the venous pressure may rise by 3 cm water. According to Burch and Ray, increased tonus of the veins in conjunction with greater filling is responsible.

of 3500 postmortem examinations but by using a more exact procedure the same authors found the condition in 14 per cent of the cases in a second series of patients (Hampton and Castleman). There is no other autopsy finding which is more readily passed over. In many reports only the number of infarctions is noted the fact that pulmonary embolism often is not followed by infarction finding no consideration. Whereas Belt believes that infarction occurs in some what more than 50 per cent of the cases of pulmonary embolism others found an infarction only in 27 to 30 per cent. In another study in which pulmonary infarction was observed in 5.2 per cent of 648 necropsies only 22 per cent of these infarctions were diagnosed ante mortem. In 60 per cent a medical disease existed (Krause and Chester). It is claimed that a pulmonary embolism appears after 3.5 per cent of major operations and in 5.3 per cent of parturitions. At least every tenth embolism is said to be lethal but we would assume the incidence of death to be much rarer. The danger of pulmonary embolism is greater in all patients over 50 years old especially if they are obese. It is estimated that 34 000 persons in the United States die every year from this accident. Fat embolism occurs after injuries. Air embolism is prone to occur in connection with fractures. Embolism from tumor particles is rare but does occur.

Fatal pulmonary embolism may rarely develop from a thrombus in the axillary veins following diagnostic or therapeutic venipuncture.

### *Pathology*

*Pulmonary Embolism* Embolism may occur in the trunk of the pulmonary artery in one of its main branches or in its peripheral ramifications. In a majority of instances the embolus lodges in a vessel supplying the lower lobe of the right lung. This is not entirely explained by anatomic factors such as the greater width of the right pulmonary artery. The location of pulmonary infarcts was recorded in a series of 200 cases with the following result: 84 cases had infarction of the lower lobe of the right lung; 52 showed an infarction of the lower lobe on the left; 64 had infarction of both lungs (Gsell). According to the same observer infarction of an upper lobe occurs in only 10 per cent of the cases and these have a poorer prognosis. Multiple rather than solitary pulmonary embolism characterizes a high percentage of cases a point of major therapeutic import.

If small masses of a radiopaque substance are introduced experimentally into the femoral vein of a dog a majority of such emboli pass into the branch of the pulmonary artery supplying the lower lobe of the right lung. In two experiments three out of every five emboli inserted in this way even passed into the same small artery of the right lower lobe (Scherf and Schoenbrunner).

*Pulmonary Thrombosis* Hemorrhagic infarction of the lung may also be the consequence of thrombosis of a pulmonary artery. Fowler found thrombosis of this vessel 6 times in 935 consecutive necropsies. A distinction between pulmonary thrombosis and pulmonary embolism may be difficult even at necropsy. The formation of a thrombus at the site of a small embolus is also encountered. A part of

the thrombus may become detached and may cause an embolism in a peripheral part of the artery. Often a thrombus forms at the site of sclerosis of a pulmonary artery. Pulmonary thrombosis is also encountered in the postoperative or post partum period and is common in conjunction with disease of the pulmonary or mitral valve. Since such thrombi ordinarily are terminal developments the symptomatology tends to be masked by the underlying disorder. Dyspnea and cyanosis stand in the foreground of the clinical picture while the stormy manifestations of pulmonary embolism are often absent.

*Pulmonary Infarction* Since pulmonary embolism often is not followed by hemorrhagic infarction an accurate postmortem estimate of its incidence would require a technique similar to that used to discover coronary occlusion, namely, radioscopic examination after the injection of an opaque substance into the pulmonary artery. The formation of a hemorrhagic infarct is greatly enhanced by the presence of pulmonary congestion; this may account for the high incidence in cardiac patients. In the experimental animal hemorrhagic infarcts appear after ligation of the pulmonary arteries and veins.

Hemorrhagic infarction of the lung may have other causes. Thus infected emboli formed in the course of a general sepsis cause capillary damage and hemorrhagic infarction. Embolism of a large pulmonary artery or embolism in old people causes hemorrhagic pulmonary infarction. Anemic infarction of the lung is uncommon.

Pulmonary embolism leads to localized hyperemia and edema. The hemorrhagic infarct is a solid, well defined conical mass whose apex extends toward the hilus. The base of the infarct is almost invariably formed by the pleura so that pleural irritation is inevitable. Around the infarct is a zone of reactive inflammation just as it develops in the myocardium after infarction. The alveoli are filled with blood which may be fresh or disintegrated depending upon the age of the infarct. Unlike a cerebral apoplexy the pulmonary parenchyma is not destroyed by a hemorrhagic infarct and the red blood cells are slowly absorbed. If the patient survives there may be complete healing without evidence of necrosis and the site of a former infarction may be visible on x-ray films only as a fine scar. A small pleural adhesion may be the sole evidence of a previous pulmonary infarction.

Hemorrhagic infarctions heal slowly. Eighteen months may be required before canalization is complete or the scar forms. Encapsulation and cicatrization are not unusual but the formation of pulmonary cysts after infarction is rare. If the patient survives embolism of a large pulmonary artery canalization may follow. The ensuing arterial stenosis may lead to secondary thrombosis.

### Symptom

*Massive and Small Embolisms* Occlusion of the main stem of the pulmonary artery by an embolus causes almost instantaneous death and scarcely requires detailed comment. Sometimes the patient has only time to cry out in alarm. If

death is delayed for a few minutes the syndrome of sudden asphyxia marked anxiety cyanosis and finally loss of consciousness is most dramatic

Massive embolism of one large pulmonary artery multiple embolisms of smaller vessels or a solitary embolism of a small peripheral lung artery may produce a very similar picture Accordingly one should not infer that massive embolism has occurred merely because the subjective phenomena are severe As a matter of fact even massive pulmonary embolism causes remarkably few symptoms at times This is understandable since the clinical picture in most cases does not derive from the mechanical obstruction of the pulmonary vessels

*Dyspnea* One of the most common symptoms is dyspnea of sudden onset It may be mild or extreme — in the latter instance it requires immediate treatment The sudden occurrence of dyspnea in a cardiac patient particularly a bed ridden one arouses the suspicion of a pulmonary embolus provided no other explanation is satisfactory This dyspnea is subjective and objective Breathing is rapid often shallow and is associated with great apprehension or even extreme anxiety For the most part the dyspnea is of reflex origin but massive embolism will cause dyspnea without the activation of reflexes Pulmonary edema occasionally occurs and causes dyspnea Dyspnea may be the only symptom of pulmonary embolism Experimentally it occurs even when small arteries are occluded and disappears immediately if the vagi are severed If reflex bronchospasm develops as occasionally happens the breathing may be asthmatic

*Pain* Pain is a common symptom of pulmonary embolism Four types can be distinguished

(1) Pain may be felt in the precordium or in the retrosternal area and may present all the features of pain from a myocardial infarction The pain may be mild or excruciating it may last for hours and like the pain of coronary occlusion it may radiate into the arms As will be shown later the distinction between pulmonary embolism and myocardial infarction may be extremely difficult In a series of 100 cases of the former there was a history of pain in 32 instances In another report pain in the chest or back was mentioned in 50 per cent of the cases (Moller) This pain may occur without any changes appearing in the electrocardiogram At least in some patients this pain may be due to a similar mechanism as that observed in patients with high pressure in the lesser circuit (see chapter on Cor pulmonale)

(2) Sometimes anginal pains recur at short or long intervals during the first twenty four hours The pain experienced may last for only a few minutes and may radiate to the ulnar side of the left or right arm Nitroglycerin brings prompt relief (Scherf Currens and Barnes)

(3) Hours or days after pulmonary embolism pain may develop in the right or left side of the chest It is aggravated by deep breathing The pain is typical of pleuritis this diagnosis being confirmed by the appearance of a friction rub over the involved area

(4) A constant pain may be referred to the shoulder neck abdomen or lumbar region. It lasts usually for days. The common occurrence of this kind of pain and the frequency with which it is misinterpreted is worthy of emphasis. Presumably the pain results from diaphragmatic pleurisy. The great incidence of pulmonary infarction at the base of the right or left lung makes irritation of the diaphragmatic pleura a common event. The center of each leaf of the diaphragm is innervated by the phrenic nerve which is derived from the cervical segments. Inflammation of the dome of the diaphragm therefore causes pain which is referred to the cervical region. Experimental irritation of the central portion of the diaphragm actually causes pain which is referred to the neck and shoulder corresponding to the third and fourth cervical segments (Capps and Coleman). These patients are often treated for arthritis. Likewise after gynecologic operations the pain is falsely attributed to the pressure of shoulder pads while the patient is in the Trendelenburg position. Since the costal or marginal portion of the diaphragm receives afferent nerves from the last six thoracic nerves irritation of this section evokes pain that seems to arise in the lower part of the thorax the upper abdomen or the lumbar region.

For this reason patients with pulmonary infarction may be suspected of acute appendicitis or cholecystitis and as personal experience has repeatedly confirmed this has often led to unnecessary laparotomy. Since strong stimuli cause muscular rigidity tenderness and hyperesthesia of the corresponding segments the danger of an erroneous diagnosis is great.

Irritation of pain to other segments and even to the opposite side may occur. If autonomic stimuli irradiate reflex visceral spasm and even paralytic ileus may develop in connection with pulmonary embolism (see next chapter).

Sometimes pain is felt later over the precordium when pericarditis supervenes (see below).

**Hemoptysis.** The diagnostic importance of hemoptysis in pulmonary embolism is overestimated for it actually occurs only in a minority of cases. Hemorrhagic sputum cannot occur unless a hemorrhagic infarct develops and is infrequent even when necropsy discloses several old and recent hemorrhagic infarctions. When present hemoptysis undoubtedly facilitates the diagnosis. Sometimes only close inspection of the sputum reveals the presence of fine streaks of blood but in other cases the expectoration is definitely red and mucoid. It is never frothy as in pulmonary edema usually it is very tenacious and adheres to the sides of the container. Profuse hemoptysis occurs at times.

The appearance of bloody sputum in a cardiac patient does not prove the existence of pulmonary infarction. If the usual causes prevailing in noncardiac patients can be eliminated and an aortic aneurysm is ruled out pulmonary congestion may be provocative. Hemoptysis from pulmonary engorgement is by no means uncommon and patients with mitral stenosis were sometimes sent by mistake to a sanatorium for the treatment of a nonexistent pulmonary tuberculosis. Hemoptysis may also occur in coronary thrombosis and in paroxysmal tachycardia.

### *Other Symptoms*

Patients with pulmonary infarction may display great anxiety. Not infrequently the body is bathed in a cold sweat. Csell reported chills in one per cent of his cases. Loss of consciousness occurs and is related to the fall of blood pressure. A feeling of impending death is not rare.

On rare occasions we have noted painful swallowing. This pain was felt in the interscapular region and occurred when food passed through the esophageal hiatus. When severe it created feeding problems. Diaphragmatic pleurisy or periesophagitis has seemed to be the most likely causative factor. A similar lesion may initiate persistent and exhausting hiccough.

### *Signs*

*Temperature and Heart Rate* The most consistent and thus the most important signs are elevation of the temperature and the heart rate. Formerly both were regarded as evidence of venous thrombosis and have been called the signs of Mahler and Michaels. However it is not established that a simple thrombosis without thrombophlebitis provokes fever and tachycardia. Embolisms are probably provocative.

Every unexplained rise of temperature and heart rate in a cardiac patient as well as a postoperative patient should arouse the suspicion of pulmonary embolism. The pulse rate may increase considerably and a tachycardia of 140 beats per minute may be reached in pulmonary embolism. The fever subsides in 4 to 5 days by gradual lysis. A renewed elevation of temperature suggests the development of a complication or a new embolism.

*Cyanosis and Jaundice* *Azotemia* Cyanosis may be very pronounced but is often absent despite marked dyspnea. Jaundice is a common finding. As mentioned previously the combination of hemolysis and hepatic damage in a cardiac patient often causes jaundice. The discoloration may be rather deep and may last for weeks. A similar jaundice is encountered occasionally in hemorrhage with marked anemia leading to hepatic damage (ruptured ectopic pregnancy). For a long time the hemorrhagic infarct was regarded as a site for the extrahepatic formation of bile pigment.

In some cases of pulmonary infarction with jaundice the nonprotein nitrogen of the blood serum reaches a level of more than 60 mg per cent coincidentally with a high value for serum bilirubin (Csell).

*Examination of Lungs* If the infarct is large examination of the lungs may reveal dullness of varying intensity and crepitant rales over circumscribed areas. Since embolism occurs most often in the lower lobe of the right lung this area should be examined with great care. On the other hand examination may fail to reveal any abnormality despite embolism and infarction. Often the affected area is too remote from the thoracic wall to create signs. If physical signs are discovered they need not be due to infarction per se but rather to a complicating process like infarction pneumonia.

A pleural effusion often forms most commonly on the right side. It develops in 40 to 50 per cent of patients with pulmonary embolism. In 100 cases of pleural effusion which appeared following infarction fluid developed on the right side in 51 on the left in 28 and bilaterally in 21. The fluid may possess the characteristics of an exudate and frequently is hemorrhagic. Often a pleural friction rub is audible but no effusion develops. Pleural irritation is common since every infarction of necessity reaches the surface of the lung.

*Cardiac examination* reveals the tachycardia mentioned above. Paroxysmal atrial fibrillation is a rare event presumably caused by acute dilatation of the right atrium with stretch of the muscular fibers (Scherf et al.). Cardiac enlargement is rare unless it was present prior to the infarction or multiple infarctions (embolisms) had occurred over a long period. If pre-existing disease has caused cardiac enlargement after an infarction dullness may rapidly develop to the right of the sternum as the result of right atrial dilatation. The second pulmonic sound is often accentuated and a systolic murmur may be heard over the pulmonary artery for a few hours; this bruit is sometimes called Litten's murmur although it was mentioned by Laennec. Gallop rhythm is not rare.

A syndrome which may lead to a remarkable dilatation of the right heart is known as subacute cor pulmonale. In patients demonstrating this syndrome because of the large heart with gallop rhythm and evidence of congestive failure the diagnosis of intrinsic heart disease is made and eventual pulmonary x-ray findings are explained by the diagnosis of pneumonia. This picture is seen in repeated embolization of the lungs in which therapy with anticoagulants or venous ligation often are helpful.

The pericarditis occurring in a small percentage of cases apparently represents an extension from the pleurisy by continuity; the mechanism is the obverse of the pleuritis which develops in the left chest after the pericarditis of myocardial infarction. The pericardial friction rub may persist for a few days. Occasionally pleuropericardial friction sounds are heard along the left border of the heart. Disturbances of rhythm such as paroxysmal atrial fibrillation can occur as mentioned above. Finally there may be a fall of blood pressure in some instances reaching shock levels.

*Laboratory Investigations:* Leukocytosis of 10 000—15 000 is found in the average case but the figures may be much higher and with an infarction pneumonia the count may reach 45 000 with predominantly polymorphonuclear cells. The erythrocytic sedimentation rate rises and undergoes further acceleration if a pulmonary complication supervenes.

*Röntgenology* may contribute to the diagnosis of pulmonary infarction. The typical wedge shaped shadow with its apex directed toward the hilus and the broad base at the pleural surface is not very common. More often the shadow is round because its location and projection on the chest plate determine the shape. If films are taken in different positions it may be possible to discover additional infarcts. The infarction shadow may persist as long as two or three months; therefore particularly if there are several infarcts in the same lung the radiologic



### *Other Symptoms*

Patients with pulmonary infarction may display great anxiety. Not infrequently the body is bathed in a cold sweat. Gsell reported chills in one per cent of his cases. Loss of consciousness occurs and is related to the fall of blood pressure. A feeling of impending death is not rare.

On rare occasions we have noted painful swallowing. This pain was felt in the inter-scapular region and occurred when food passed through the esophageal hiatus. When severe it created feeding problems. Diaphragmatic pleurisy or periesophagitis has seemed to be the most likely causative factor. A similar lesion may initiate persistent and exhausting hiccough.

### *Signs*

*Temperature and Heart Rate* The most consistent and thus the most important signs are elevation of the temperature and the heart rate. Formerly both were regarded as evidence of venous thrombosis and have been called the signs of Mahler and Michaels. However it is not established that a simple thrombosis without thrombophlebitis provokes fever and tachycardia. Emboli are probably provocative.

Every unexplained rise of temperature and heart rate in a cardiac patient as well as a postoperative patient should arouse the suspicion of pulmonary embolism. The pulse rate may increase considerably and a tachycardia of 180 beats per minute may be reached in pulmonary embolism. The fever subsides in 4 to 5 days by gradual lysis; a renewed elevation of temperature suggests the development of a complication or a new embolism.

*Cyanosis and Jaundice* Azotemia Cyanosis may be very pronounced but is often absent despite marked dyspnea. Jaundice is a common finding. As mentioned previously the combination of hemolysis and hepatic damage in a cardiac patient often causes jaundice. The discoloration may be rather deep and may last for weeks. A similar jaundice is encountered occasionally in hemorrhage with marked anemia leading to hepatic damage (ruptured ectopic pregnancy). For a long time the hemorrhagic infarct was regarded as a site for the extrahepatic formation of bile pigment.

In some cases of pulmonary infarction with jaundice the nonprotein nitrogen of the blood serum reaches a level of more than 60 mg per cent coincidentally with a high value for serum bilirubin (Gsell).

*Examination of Lungs* If the infarct is large examination of the lungs may reveal dullness of varying intensity and crepitant rales over circumscribed areas. Since embolism occurs most often in the lower lobe of the right lung this area should be examined with great care. On the other hand examination may fail to reveal any abnormality despite embolism and infarction, often the affected area is too remote from the thoracic wall to create signs. If physical signs are discovered they need not be due to infarction per se but rather to a complicating process like infarction pneumonia.

wave in one of the leads. We have seen tracings in which the QRS complexes alone underwent the modifications just mentioned whereas the P-S-T segments and T waves remained normal (Scherf and Boyd). The differentiation between a posterior inferior wall infarction and pulmonary embolism is not always easy in the early stage but usually it becomes possible in the following days. The inversion of the T waves in the chest leads in positions 2 and 3 does not occur with inferior wall infarction causing a deep Q wave and an elevated R-S-T with an inverted T in lead III. There are no changes in aVF characteristic for inferior infarction. In cardiac infarction no S wave appears suddenly in lead I to disappear

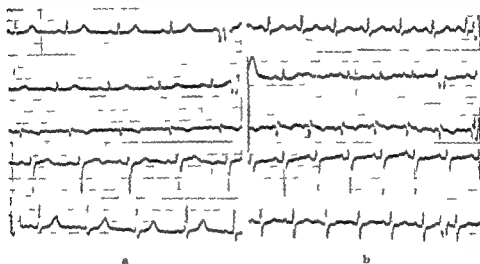


FIG 10 (a) The electrocardiogram taken preoperatively is normal (b) The electrocardiogram recorded 6 days after an appendectomy shows the typical signs of a pulmonary embolism in addition to a sinus tachycardia a deep S wave appeared in I and the Q wave is deeper in III. The T wave in V 2 is slightly inverted it is lower in V 5

within a few days it is common in pulmonary embolism. The electrocardiographic changes in pulmonary embolism usually persist for several days in one of our patients they remained for three weeks. A small pulmonary embolus is capable of inducing electrocardiographic changes in the experimental animal. The electrocardiographic changes may be found without clinical signs of pulmonary embolism and there is no parallelism between the extent of alteration in the electrocardiogram and the symptoms.

Figure 19 shows a common pattern. The electrocardiogram of a 48 year old man had been taken preoperatively (figure 19a) and showed essentially normal findings. Six days after a successful appendectomy clinical symptoms and signs of a pulmonary embolism suddenly occurred. The electrocardiogram (figure 19b) showed in addition to the increase of rate the appearance of a typical S wave in lead I which we always consider the most characteristic finding. Simultaneously the Q wave in lead III became deeper. The T wave in V 2 is slightly negative the

T wave in V5 is lower. The other changes are readily explained by the increased rate.

The changes in V2 speak against the diagnosis of an inferior wall infarction.

### *Complications*

If the patient survives the initial shock, recovery usually is rapid and the danger is over in a few days. However, there is always the threat of a new embolism. Moreover, if certain complications develop, the prognosis is guarded.

Infarction pneumonia is a common complication. In addition to the reactive inflammation surrounding the infarcted area, in all patients with hemorrhagic infarction, pneumonic patches appear. The temperature curve undergoes a sudden rise and the systemic signs of pneumonia are present. Rarely, the infarcted or necrotic area becomes infected with pyogenic or putrefactive organisms, so that a pulmonary abscess or gangrene occurs, particularly in debilitated patients. A pulmonary cavity or empyema may result from an aseptic necrosis.

In cardiac patients the strain imposed on the right heart by embolism may lead to marked hepatic enlargement and to right heart failure. The latter may be resistant to therapy. Not rarely new emboli appear again and again over a long period of time, causing progressive right heart failure with marked cyanosis and dyspnea, even in the otherwise healthy person. Symmetrical peripheral gangrene has been observed, although rarely (Hejtmancik and Bruce).

### *Differential Diagnosis*

Most of the conditions with which pulmonary embolism and infarction may be confused were mentioned in the preceding paragraphs. The clinical differentiation between coronary thrombosis and pulmonary embolism sometimes is extremely difficult. Both conditions may be associated with severe prolonged retrosternal pain, followed by a fall of blood pressure, fever, leukocytosis, dyspnea, tachycardia, pulmonary signs, increased sedimentation rate, and electrocardiographic changes. Even hemoptysis occurs in both, while in some cases the existence of a lung infarct can be established. Sometimes the differentiation is impossible without the electrocardiogram.

The resemblance to acute abdominal conditions such as appendicitis or cholecystitis was mentioned earlier. Pneumonia also causes an abdominal syndrome and the provocative mechanism is probably similar. The picture of a paralytic ileus may be caused by pulmonary embolism. The diagnosis of virus pneumonia or hypostatic pneumonia is often wrongly made while in other cases bronchogenic carcinoma or atelectasis is diagnosed.

The responsibility of pulmonary embolism for the appearance of a broncho pneumonia may be overlooked and a distinction between infarction pneumonia and virus pneumonia may be difficult. By the same token simple pleuritis may be diagnosed and the provocative infarction may remain undiscovered.

*Pathologic Physiology*

Embolism in the main stem or in a major branch of the pulmonary artery may cause death almost instantaneously. In other patients sudden severe dyspnea, anxiety and pain are succeeded by unconsciousness and death in a short time. Autopsy reveals a small embolism. There are patients, however, who survive an embolism in one of the main pulmonary arteries.

Reduction of the pulmonary circulation to less than 50 per cent does not necessarily produce pressure changes in the systemic or lesser circulation and ligation of a major pulmonary artery during a thoracic operation ordinarily does not have serious consequences. Fatalities or very severe manifestations may occur on the other hand when a very small embolus lodges in the periphery of the lung. For example, Saucerbruch mentions a 32 year old patient who died suddenly after a herniotomy. At post mortem nothing was found except a small embolus 3 mm in width in a minor artery within 4 cm. of the lung surface. In another study of 35 fatalities caused by pulmonary embolism the embolus was small in seven.

These observations alone imply that the mechanical occlusion of the pulmonary vessel is not the sole reason for the serious effects of lung embolism.

To explain the marked disturbances following embolism of a small pulmonary artery, recourse was often made to nervous (vagal) cardiac inhibition and to shock. Even vagal reflexes were incriminated. However, shock is often absent despite other serious symptoms and it is difficult to understand the theory of vagal inhibition since a tachycardia usually prevails; moreover, a direct vagal influence on the mammalian ventricle does not exist or is negligible.

Recent experience indicates that certain reflex mechanisms play a major part in the development of circulatory disturbances in pulmonary embolism. These reflexes may be divided into three groups: (1) intrapulmonary, (2) those from the pulmonary vessels to the systemic circulation, and (3) pulmocardiac (pulmocoronary) reflexes.

*Intrapulmonary Reflexes.* Many experimental pathologic and clinical observations demonstrate how pulmonary embolism imposes increased strain on the right ventricle. The dilatation of the right ventricle and pulmonary artery, the accentuation of the second pulmonic sound, and the systolic murmur over the pulmonic area speak in favor of larger demands upon the right ventricle. The dilatation has been seen in experimental animals and in man. The outflow tract is primarily involved, as would be expected in a dilatation due to increased strain. This acute rise in intrapulmonic pressure leads to the appearance of an acute cor pulmonale. Massive pulmonary embolism certainly may cause such changes, although extensive reduction of pulmonary circulation to 50 per cent of normal by ligation of the main right or left pulmonary artery or even obstruction of many pulmonary vessels by embolism need not create any alteration in the pulmonary arterial pressure. On the other hand, the intrapulmonic blood pressure may increase with a small peripheral embolism of one pulmonary artery.

The part played by reflexes in causing this rise of pressure in small peripheral embolism is easily understood if we recall the situation that prevails when a peripheral artery (an artery of the leg, for example) is occluded by an embolus. In such a case rather stormy manifestations are common. The leg may be bloodless, cold, pale and immobile; tendon reflexes vanish and even sensation is severely disturbed. The situation appears to be one in which the femoral artery had been occluded. After some time, during which papaverine and other vasodilators are administered, rapid improvement may occur. Naturally the embolus is not removed by drugs of this type; rather there is the potential danger that because of the disappearance of vascular spasm the clot might be thrust toward the periphery where the collateral circulation is even less adequate. It seems more plausible to assume that occlusion of a small peripheral artery, as small as a muscular branch of an interosseal artery, for example, causes a reflex vasoconstriction of neighboring vessels; this spasm could produce the alarming syndrome which promptly disappears after the administration of vasodilators. The existence of a reflex vasoconstriction following irritation of peripheral arteries and veins is established, and arterial spasm in thrombophlebitis is common. Axon reflexes are responsible for this phenomenon.

Conceivably a similar reflex spasm operates in pulmonary embolism which may elevate the pressure in the lesser circuit. The rich innervation of the lung and the existence of adrenergic pulmonary vasoconstrictor fibers make such reflexes possible.

*Reflexes from the Lung to the Systemic Circulation.* Increase of pressure in the lesser circuit causes a reflex bradycardia and a fall of systemic blood pressure. The reflex is released from the receptors in the pulmonary arteries and disappears if the pulmonary nerves are cut.

This reflex has been called protective since it prevents overdistension of the lesser circuit by dilating the systemic vessels. The early bradycardia observed in some patients with pulmonary embolism as well as the shocklike syndrome with marked fall of blood pressure may be caused by such a reflex mechanism (Schwiegler).

*Reflexes from the Lung to the Coronary Arteries.* The study of patients with pulmonary embolism who showed gallop rhythm and marked changes in the electrocardiogram but no dilatation of the right heart during life or at post mortem and no evidence of organic heart disease led to the following hypothesis (Scharf). A pulmocoronary reflex from the site of the embolus in the pulmonary artery or from the infarcted area causes the coronary arteries to narrow and leads to anginal pain, electrocardiographic changes and even to death. There need be no actual coronary artery constriction. The signs and symptoms could be explained by the tachycardia and increased load of the right ventricle without a corresponding increase in the blood supply to the heart. This would lead to hypoxia especially in the most sensitive areas around the papillary muscles subendocardially. The existence of reflexes from the lung and other parts of the respiratory tract to the heart is indisputable (many examples will be cited in the next chapter). The powerful influence of reflexes arising in the lung and

on the heart becomes clear to every physician who has observed patients (1) with attacks of paroxysmal atrial tachycardia which do not respond to different vagal reflexes including carotid pressure but are promptly stopped when the patient inspires deeply or (2) who developed paroxysmal atrial flutter or fibrillation whenever they took a deep breath. Against the assumption that all findings in pulmonary embolism can be explained solely by increased pressure in the lesser circuit and in favor of the theory just advanced the following facts are cited:

(1) Fatalities from pulmonary embolism occur in otherwise healthy patients who present gallop rhythm and similar symptoms without signs of increased pressure in the lesser circuit. It also occurs when there is no right ventricular strain during life and no evidence for this at post mortem (figure 18).

(2) The attacks of angina pectoris in particular those attacks which respond to nitroglycerin are best explained by a myocardial ischemia.

(3) In cases of pulmonary embolism the electrocardiogram shows not only the changes one would anticipate in right ventricular strain but also the alterations expected in ischemia of certain parts of the myocardium. This has been emphasized by Meyers in his recent book on the unipolar electrocardiogram. The depression of the RS T in lead I, the inversion of the T wave in 2 and 3 and the elevated RS T in aVL speak for interference with the circulation in the right coronary artery.

(4) The electrocardiographic changes of pulmonary embolism are not reproduced experimentally by increasing pressure in the lesser circuit e. g. by clamping the pulmonary artery.

(5) Occasionally the changes in the electrocardiogram persist for weeks. The increase of intrapulmonic arterial pressure lasts only for a few hours and the systolic murmur over the pulmonic valve area is equally transient.

(6) The electrocardiographic changes often do not present a typical pattern whereas those evoked by right or left ventricular strain show constant features.

(7) Acute right ventricular strain resulting from pneumothorax, prolonged bronchial asthma and the like does not produce these changes in the electrocardiogram.

(8) Occasionally patients have an electrocardiogram very similar to that observed in acute inferior wall infarction. Even in clinical instances in which the right ventricle works under greater strain and there is a tachycardia and a decreased oxygen saturation of the blood the pattern of acute infarction does not appear in the electrocardiogram.

(9) The presence of necroses in the myocardium especially in the wall of the right ventricle in patients dying from a small pulmonary embolism in the absence of organic coronary artery disease suggests a disturbance of the coronary circulation. Moreover these necrotic areas have peculiarities of form and position which are found whenever the myocardium works under hypoxic conditions.

(10) The occurrence of paralytic ileus or gastrointestinal phenomena in pulmonary embolism likewise speaks in favor of irradiating autonomic reflexes.

Aviado and Schmidt, reviewing reflexes from stretch receptors in heart and lungs mention unpublished experiments by Aiden that demonstrate the existence of axon reflexes in the lung. One lobe of the dog's lung was supplied with blood from a donor dog. Injection of glass beads into the arteries of an unperfused lobe caused reflex vasoconstriction in the perfused lobe even after the vagus nerves were cut. Similarly we invoked axon reflexes for many years; therefore the experimental findings of Mahnow et al. showing persistence of electrocardiographic changes after the vagus nerves in the neck were cut do not conflict with our explanation.

Hochrein and Schneyer measured the blood flow in the coronary arteries directly and found in the right coronary artery a diminution of the blood flow following experimental pulmonary embolism. Hackel et al. saw a marked rise of pulmonary arterial pressure (almost three times the normal pressure) after intravenous injection of a suspension of *Ixopodium*. There were no significant changes of the coronary blood flow. This alone should create myocardial hypoxia since with the greater activity of the heart an increase of blood flow should be needed.

Comroe et al. discuss the possibility that 5 OH tryptamine (serotonin) formed in blood clots by dissolved platelets (which given intravenously to cats causes not only reflex bradycardia, hypotension and apnea but also pulmonary vasoconstriction and bronchospasm) is responsible for some of the signs and symptoms discussed above.

Because the existence of many of the reflexes remains undemonstrated in the experimental animal they are discarded by some physiologists. Our inability to reproduce them however does not mean they do not exist. It is not possible to reproduce many of the well recorded reflexes mentioned in the next chapter. Even though it is scarcely possible to prove experimentally that gentle mechanical irritation of the rectum can cause proximal ventricular tachycardia or fibrillation this undoubtedly is what happens in man under particular circumstances. It will also not be easily proven experimentally that mechanical irritation of the pharynx can lead to cardiac standstill although this too probably has often occurred (but again only with a particular constellation of factors — see next chapter).

It is difficult to decide whether the reduction of coronary artery blood flow alone or the augmented strain on the right heart with unfulfilled increased requirements for oxygen is responsible. The second possibility has greater appeal. Experimental investigation of this problem is fraught with difficulties since these reflexes are not active in every individual (this also will be discussed in the next chapter).

Before discussing the treatment of pulmonary embolism we deem it appropriate to give a short description of the chief initiating process, venous thrombosis. This seems in order at least insofar as cardiac patients are concerned.

## VEIN THROMBOSIS AND PULMONARY EMBOLISM

Usually pulmonary embolism is caused by thrombi from the pelvic veins or from veins in the lower extremities. Intraatrial thrombi formerly regarded as very important are rarely provocative.

In one of the first systematic investigations of the occurrence of venous thrombosis the condition was found in the calf veins in 27.1 per cent of 324 consecutive postmortem examinations in a general hospital (Poessle). In many cases the femoral veins were also affected. In another study in which the small veins of the foot were included in the investigation venous thrombosis was found in 60 per cent of 165 non selected subjects. In 52 instances the thrombosis was bilateral. Thrombosis of the plantar veins usually involves the vessels of both feet and is often the primary site; the thrombosis of the calf veins is often secondary. This thrombosis is more common in patients with fallen arches. In 100 patients with venous thrombosis of the lower extremities the calf veins were affected in 87, the plantar in 71 and the veins of the thigh in 22 (Neumann). In this series pulmonary embolism had occurred in 11.8 per cent. In another investigation venous thrombosis in the leg was found in 52.7 per cent of 351 autopsies (Hunter et al.). Medical cases comprised 79.7 per cent of the series. If the veins of the pelvis as well as those of the extremities had been investigated the incidence of venous thrombosis would have been even greater. In a statistical study of 1665 cases of postoperative pulmonary embolism that included 135 fatalities clinical as well as necropsy evidence of a venous thrombosis was missed in 24.3 per cent (Barker et al.). Presumably the whole thrombus detached itself to form the embolus. For unknown reasons thrombosis occurs more often in the veins of the left lower extremity than the right one.

Accordingly the disease is much more common than formerly believed. The clinical diagnosis is difficult and often impossible especially when the phlebotrombosis is bland and without much inflammatory reaction (thrombophlebitis).

A common condition is the one known as traumatic thrombosis that is a venous thrombosis that occurs several hours or days (up to 14 days) after blunt trauma striking the leg against a chair or stumbling against the bumper of an automobile. The trauma may be so slight that patients forget it completely making the subsequent thrombosis seem spontaneous.

Effort thrombosis follows an unusual effort and often occurs in the veins of the arms following backward rotation. It has been described particularly in tall men after severe effort (Naide). Effort with or without rupture of muscle fibers may locally increase venous pressure so that small veins burst and a propagating thrombosis ensues.

Venous thrombosis was often observed during the blitz in England when patients were seated for hours on crudely built seating devices with cross bars compressing the leg veins (shelter legs). Keeping the legs bent (a pillow under the knees) while lying quietly in bed for hours is a prolific source of thrombosis; the



Catch frame used in many hospitals to keep the knee and hip joint bent is another device that hastens thrombus formation

One may assume that during prolonged rest the weight of the leg compresses the thin walled veins and causes a lesion of the endothelium which leads to thrombosis

In cardiac patients who often suffer from congested peripheral veins and who have an abnormally nourished vascular endothelium bed rest is frequently enforced thereby often causing thrombosis in the veins of the lower extremities

An increased tendency to thrombosis has been found in patients with congestive heart failure following rapid diuresis induced by too energetic therapy. It is apparently not an increased concentration and viscosity of the blood but the movement of tissue fluid into the blood stream which is responsible

Polycythemia enhances thrombus formation

Increased coagulability has also been described following the administration of large doses of digitalis and the administration of quinidine sulfate and penicillin. Even fear and apprehension are said to promote coagulation of the blood. The shortening of the clotting time by a fatty meal is still under investigation

While local pain, fever, chills, redness, swelling and increased temperature in the involved area characterize some cases of thrombophlebitis, venous thrombosis often presents either no local signs or else merely a slight enlargement of the calf or ankle detectable only by careful measurement. Pain in the plantar area is in our opinion one of the earliest signs to indicate a beginning thrombosis in the leg (Payr). The pain appears at the mesial aspect of the plantar region due to pressure of the thrombosed veins on the nerves (Denecke). Likewise of value although often absent is the appearance of soreness of the gastrocnemius region on dorsiflexion of the foot (Homan). Pain in the calf that comes with walking in low heels (slippers) is occasionally an early sign. Compression of the calf by a blood pressure cuff with pressures between 60 and 150 may cause pain (Lowenberg).

The danger from noninfected, latent and unrecognized thrombosis is greater than from an obvious thrombophlebitis in which the thrombus adheres firmly to the wall of the vein.

Thrombosis may develop very early in postoperative and bedridden medical patients and pulmonary embolism may occur in less than 24 hours. Venous thrombosis and to a greater extent lethal pulmonary embolism become increasingly dangerous in older age groups.

Of great therapeutic importance is the finding that a thrombus older than 3 days is not detached. Some organization of the thrombus is seen after 24 hours.

Elastic stockings are applied while the patient is bedridden and always applied for 2 to 3 months or longer when the patient is ambulatory.

#### *Prevention and Treatment of Peripheral Vein Thrombosis*

Therapy begins with measures to avoid peripheral vein thrombosis. To accomplish this in postoperative cases walking is recommended as early as possible although some doubt exists as to the efficacy of this measure (de Bakey).

The same procedure should be followed in cardiac patients. In the first edition of this book (1935) therefore it was recommended that cardiac patients with certain exceptions (such as those with coronary thrombosis) should not be kept too quiet in bed. Movement of the lower extremities was suggested even for patients with acute myocardial infarction. In decompensated cardiac patients enforcement of strict bed rest seems to lead almost invariably to venous thrombosis and to the danger of pulmonary embolism. No harm is done in ordinary congestive heart failure if a patient is permitted to walk from one room to another to have bath room privileges or to sit in a chair. Lethal pulmonary embolism has been precipitated many times simply because such patients were forced to rest. Therefore in our wards absolute bed rest for this group of patients has been prohibited during the last thirty years and the results have been encouraging. Recent papers by others (Dock) stress the danger of absolute bed rest and the value of this procedure. It has been stated that the rarity of pulmonary embolism in paraplegics indicates that absolute bed rest is not dangerous (Cook and Lyons). However the immobility of such patients also prevents dislodging of thrombi.

The lower end of the bed should be raised so that the legs and pelvis are elevated sufficiently to promote the return of blood to the heart. The toes should be moved frequently and active or passive bending of the knees in bed should be encouraged. Application of elastic bandages compresses the superficial veins and enhances the blood flow in the deep veins where thrombosis is common.

Surgical intervention has found increasing popularity. In recent years however the incidence of embolism in patients whose femoral veins were ligated was found to be so high and the propagation of thrombi in the pelvic veins proved so common that surgery has been almost abandoned. Ligation of the inferior vena cava is rarely done since it is a more formidable procedure. Furthermore a statistical study from the Massachusetts General Hospital showed that the incidence of pulmonary embolism did not diminish after the widespread employment of venous ligation. Nevertheless we have repeatedly observed a complete change of the clinical picture after patients with subacute cor pulmonale caused by repeated emboli in the lung over many weeks had a ligation of the vena cava inferior performed. This operation can be life saving when anticoagulant therapy is contraindicated.

Since the introduction of treatment with anticoagulants the danger of pulmonary embolism following venous thrombosis or thrombophlebitis has apparently been lessened. Some claim that judicious use of these agents reduces the risk of this serious complication to less than 1 per cent. Others are doubtful whether the danger of thromboembolism is markedly lessened (de Bakey). To be sure the new danger of hemorrhage is added. However if all rules and contraindications are observed it is worthwhile to take the risk.

**Heparin.** Heparin is a mucopolysaccharide resembling chondroitin sulfuric acid which is found in cartilage. It is said to diminish the tendency of the platelets to agglutinate and it retards the conversion of prothrombin into thrombin. Its mode of action is unknown. Heparin is commercially prepared from beef lung

It is found in the granules of the mast cells in the body. The chemical structure has not been precisely determined and therefore its synthesis has not been accomplished. The standardization of heparin in different countries is not the same and consequently 50 or 100 mg. is not a uniform dose. One of its greatest handicaps is the fact that oral administration produces no effect.

Signs of allergy have become infrequent after foreign proteins were eliminated from commercial preparations. They do occur however and fever is an outstanding finding.

The effect of heparin is controlled by the estimation of coagulation time which although it seems to be a simple determination (Lee White method or others) is actually difficult and often inaccurate. Great variations are obtained if the estimation is not done very meticulously. One should try to maintain a coagulation time which is two or three times the normal value but not longer than 30 minutes.

Ulcers in the gastrointestinal tract, hemorrhagic diathesis, blood dyscrasias, excessive hypertension, old age (over 65 years), liver, renal or pancreatic damage and subacute bacterial endocarditis are contraindications to its use. Heparin is inadvisable in thrombosis of the mesenteric vessels where the tendency to bleeding is great. Bleeding due to pulmonary infarction is not a contraindication.

Heparin should be employed as soon as the diagnosis of a venous thrombosis is made when signs of a thrombophlebitis or of pulmonary embolism are found. The recommended doses vary. If given by intravenous infusion 200 mg. are added to 1000 ml. of physiologic saline or of 5 per cent dextrose solution and the number of drops infused per minute is adjusted to the results of tests of the coagulation time. Another widely used method is to give 50 mg. intravenously every 4 to 6 hours or concentrated heparin (100 mg.) intramuscularly or subcutaneously twice daily. The doses are not repeated when the coagulation time is over 30 minutes. If this intermittent method is used the coagulation time returns to normal between the peaks that is before the next injection is given. Clinical experience has shown that these peaks suffice to prevent thrombosis even during the hours when coagulation is normal. It seems that these peaks do not bring the danger of hemorrhage.

While Scandinavian investigators find that the estimation of coagulation time is not necessary when heparin is administered in this way it is safer to check the coagulation time twice daily for the first few days in order to increase the dose when the patient is a hyporeactor or to decrease it when he responds too strongly.

In venous thrombosis, pulmonary embolism or thrombophlebitis this therapy is continued for 5 to 10 days, the last injections being given when the patient is ambulatory. Because of the rebound phenomenon it is advisable to diminish the dose gradually and not to stop the administration of the drug abruptly.

In order to prevent postoperative thrombosis and embolism heparin is given from the second postoperative day until the patient is ambulatory.

Hemorrhages in the form of hematuria hemarthrosis subcutaneous or intramuscular hematoma hemopericardium appear in about 22 per cent of treated cases. If evidence of hemorrhage appears and an intramuscular or intravenous injection of heparin has been given shortly before its absorption should be slowed down with an ice bag. Blood transfusions help. The intravenous injection of 50 to 100 mg. of protamine sulfate or toluidine blue (an azo-dye) in the amount of 2 mg. per kilogram body weight serves to stop the hemorrhage quickly. Protamine counteracts heparin milligram for milligram.

**Dicumarol** This substance (3,3'-hydroxycoumarin) was discovered in spoiled sweet clover and is the cause of certain hemorrhagic tendencies in cattle. Its cheapness represents a great advantage over heparin. Another advantage is the fact that it can be given orally. On the other hand no satisfactory preparation for parenteral use has as yet been found. A great disadvantage is the necessity to estimate the prothrombin time daily.

Dicumarol inhibits prothrombin formation in the liver and causes a prothrombin deficiency. The prothrombin test is not simple and requires meticulous work and careful selection of the thromboplastin used. Therefore the administration of this drug is permissible only when adequate and responsible laboratory facilities are available and the daily dose should be given only when the result of the daily test is known. The daily amount may be given at one time and not in divided doses, since dicumarol works after a latent period of 1 to 3 days. This is of course a great disadvantage at the onset of treatment; it is therefore a common procedure to start with heparin and to continue with it for one or two days until the effect of the dicumarol given simultaneously become manifest.

Another disadvantage of the use of dicumarol is the occasional sudden and quite erratic unpredictable change of the prothrombin time which seems to be influenced by the intake of proteins. The values are usually said to be more stable if the patient takes 3 to 4 g/l. of milk daily. Absorption of dicumarol is irregular and is increased with constipation and decreased with diarrhea. Alcohol should not be taken while dicumarol is used. No aspirin should be prescribed because salicylates have in effect similar to that of dicumarol. The hypoprothrombinemic effect of a small dose of dicumarol is much greater if congestive heart failure exists.

Contraindications to its use are similar to those of heparin: the most important being open wounds, ulcers in the gastrointestinal tract, diseases of the blood, old and marked hypertension, hepatic disease, renal disease with disturbance of liver function, diabetes, hyperthyroidism, essential hypoprothrombinemia, poor nutrition, blood dyscrasias and subacute bacterial endocarditis. Such side effects as nausea, vomiting or diarrhea may become so severe as to prevent their use in some patient.

The urine and stools should be watched closely and the urinary sediment examined daily for an increase in the number of red blood cells. Hemorrhage may occur in varied ways such as the nose, rectum, kidneys, stomach, eyes and very often into the retroperitoneal tissues. This latter complication causes a rather

typical clinical picture which is often misinterpreted. The hemorrhage behind the peritoneum and the accumulation of large amounts of blood in this area may lead to sudden death caused by the acute loss of blood or the severe pain and abnormal reflexes. If the hemorrhage takes place in the right lower abdomen unnecessary emergency surgery may be performed for a nonexistent acute appendicitis. If located on the left side an operation may be performed for a perforated diverticulum. Sometimes this hemorrhage leads to urinary retention. In exceptional cases who survive this event the lower abdomen and upper thigh show widespread bluish discoloration from the hemorrhagic suffusion.

Death from retroperitoneal hemorrhage seems to occur particularly in patients with peripheral arterial embolism when sympathetic block is performed while anticoagulants are being used. On the other hand Pratt claims that this event occurs only if a large vein is torn. It must be stressed that hemorrhages do not always occur at the peak of hypoprothrombinemia. They may be missed with marked hypothrombinemia and may occur with relatively slight change from the normal level.

Serious bleeding is said to occur in 1 per cent of patients treated. milder hemorrhage in 6 per cent. Unfortunately in our experience the accidents appear a little more frequently than the figures indicate.

The initial dose for an adult of 60 kilograms weight is 300 mg. given in a single dose. It is recommended to follow on the next day with 200 mg. This is often dangerous especially in patients with myocardial infarction and shock or in hypertensors who are not rare. We administer the second dose after 48 hours. On the following days when the effect of this therapy on the prothrombin time becomes manifest the dose is adjusted to the results of the prothrombin tests. Usually 25 to 100 mg. are necessary. The results of the tests are expressed in prothrombin times or in percentage of the normal. The goal is to keep the prothrombin time around double the control value of a normal individual or between 20 and 30 per cent of normal. A normal blood sample should be tested daily in order to be sure of the activity of the thromboplastin used in the laboratory. If the control shows prothrombin time of 14 one may say that with a prothrombin time of the patient of 14 seconds there is 100 per cent prothrombin activity. With a prothrombin time of 22 seconds there is a 30 per cent activity. With a prothrombin time of 30 seconds the activity is 20 per cent and it is 10 per cent with a time of 45 seconds.

When the laboratory reports a prothrombin time of 40 second or more no dicumarol is given on that day. With a prothrombin time of 35 to 40 second the daily dose is 25 to 50 mg. according to whether one feels the prothrombin time to be stable or still ascending. With a prothrombin time of 30 to 35 seconds the daily dose is 50 to 100 mg. and it is 100 to 150 mg. when the time is under 30 seconds.

If bleeding occurs an intravenous infusion of 500 ml. of whole fresh blood is useful and the administration of a vitamin K<sub>1</sub> preparation is advised.

Vitamin K preparations are given intravenously in doses of 70 to 100 mg. If the prothrombin time remains high this injection must be repeated every 4 hours. Quicker and more reliable action (Gamble et al.) can be obtained by the intravenous administration of an emulsion of vitamin K<sub>1</sub> oxide given slowly in an amount of 5 to 10 mg of phytonadione. Ten to 50 mg of K<sub>1</sub> orally in orange juice reduce the prothrombin time within 3 to 8 hours. Vitamin K<sub>1</sub> is now the preferred substance. If the prothrombin time reaches 60 seconds 10 mg of phytonadione should be given in orange juice even without bleeding. The ambulatory patient who takes dicumarol should have tablets of 10 mg of phytonadione with him take them immediately and call his physician. These substances are also the treatment of choice for the anticoagulants discussed below. Following the administration of large doses of vitamin K and K<sub>1</sub> the patient is refractory to dicumarol for from several hours to a few days.

**Tromexan.** This is a derivative of dicumarol (ethyl biscoumacetate) and represents the first new synthetic preparation of this group to promise advantages. It is more rapidly absorbed and works within 24 hours. Its effect disappears usually (not invariably) faster than within 24 hours which makes it safer when hemorrhages occur. It has the disadvantage however of great lability of its effect with unpredictable rises of prothrombin time. Its potency is about one fifth of dicumarol and the initial dose therefore is 1500 to 1800 mg. The maintenance dose is selected according to the prothrombin tests which must be done daily but it is usually 300 to 900 mg daily. One tablet contains 300 mg and tromexan is given in divided doses several times a day. Because of a rebound of the prothrombin level withdrawal of the compound should be gradual.

**Warfarin (Coumadin) sodium** is a derivate of dicumarol that can be administered orally or intravenously and that produces a therapeutic level of the prothrombin time in less than 24 hours. The intravenous injection acts a few hours earlier but the dosage is the same. According to Clatinoft et al. warfarin is comparable to tromexan in the quickness of its action. The control of a stable prothrombin level seems easier.

One starts with a dose of 50 to 75 mg given orally or intravenously (1 mg/kg). The daily maintenance dose based on the prothrombin time should amount to 5 to 10 mg.

Hypersensitivity is occasionally observed.

In the event hemorrhage occurs vitamin K<sub>1</sub> is a good antidote.

**Marcumar** (a hydroxycoumarin) is a new effective anticoagulant (Holler and Jacob Burgain et al.). The dose is about 20 mg on the first day and then 3 to 5 mg daily.

**Phenylindanedione (phenindione).** Several commercial preparations of this compound (Danilone, Hedulin) are in use since Soulie employed it for the first time clinically. It has dicumarol like action without being related to it. Like tromexan it works quickly and is less cumulative than dicumarol. The prothrombin time returns to normal within 24 to 48 hours after therapy is discontinued. An average patient of 70 kilograms weight takes 150 to 200 mg as the

initial dose and 50 to 100 mg. daily as the maintenance dose regulated by prothrombin tests. Sometimes patients show a great resistance to this drug and do not respond with a change of the prothrombin time for days. Jaundice and granulocytopenia have been reported (Shapiro) but in general this is a satisfactory preparation.

*Other Anticoagulants.* Synthetic heparin like preparations are available (heparinoids). They are effective and have the advantage of being much cheaper but they have one great disadvantage—a severe alopecia may appear after these drugs are employed for a few weeks. This phenomenon has been described in a mild form also after the use of tromexan and dicumarol but it is much more pronounced after the synthetic heparinoids. Usually after a few months the hair begins to grow back.

Therapy with anticoagulants in venous thrombosis should be continued for 6 to 10 days and then ambulation be permitted. Because of the slow onset of action of many anticoagulants and the short duration of the treatment heparin is the therapy of choice.

Cosgriff using anticoagulants observed 3.1 per cent embolisms in 96 patients with venous thrombosis none lethal. Of 107 patients with pulmonary embolism the author found subsequent embolism in spite of the therapy with anticoagulants only in 2.8 per cent. One patient died 10 minutes after the initial dose of heparin.

### *Surgical Therapy*

Venous ligation is rarely performed at present. This is due in part to the fact that thrombi and pulmonary embolism originating proximal to the ligation was observed in about 6 per cent of postoperative patients. Mostly however venous ligation was abandoned because therapy with anticoagulants was so successful. Only in rare cases—e.g. when anticoagulants are contraindicated or when no laboratory facilities exist—is the operation performed.

It should be done bilaterally—the femoral vein just distal to the inflow from the vena profunda femoris being usually ligated. Unfortunately a large percentage of postoperative pulmonary embolisms arise from the pelvic veins (prostatic plexuses) and ligation of the inferior vena cava although occasionally lifesaving is a formidable procedure.

It is difficult to decide when a patient with thrombophlebitis or a proven venous thrombosis should be allowed to walk. If bed rest is enforced for too long a period the danger of new thrombi becomes great. Too early movement is associated with the danger of embolism. Therefore some chance is always taken regardless of the decision.

### *Treatment of Pulmonary Embolism*

If a patient has just experienced an embolism of the main trunk of the pulmonary artery it is too late for therapy. Embolectomy in pulmonary embolism is rarely applicable and success is even more uncommon.

To relieve the anxiety and dyspnea in embolism of smaller arteries morphine should be given (0.01—0.02 Gm.) If available an oxygen mask should be used. There is some evidence that inhalation of 100 per cent oxygen widens the pulmonary arteries. Since the greatest danger in embolism of the smaller pulmonary arteries is reflex vascular spasm every attempt should be made to prevent it. For this purpose nitrites and papaverine in particular have been used. The intravenous injection of 0.04—0.05 Gm. of papaverine repeated in two hours if necessary seems to be a very useful procedure for the relief of vasospasm. In addition atropine and ergotamine tartrate may be administered since clinical and experimental observations (Bardin) emphasize the importance of autonomic reflexes in the pathologic physiology of pulmonary embolism. Preparations containing atropine, ergotamine and phenobarbital (Bellergal tablets) are available and seem to be of help. Three tablets daily may be used prophylactically in those patients who are apt to develop a pulmonary embolus. We like spasmalgin, a mixture of pantopon, papaverine and belladonna.

Phlebotomy has been recommended for relief of the markedly increased pressure in the lesser circuit. Digitalis is not indicated unless the embolism occurs in a patient whose heart is already on the verge of decompensation or when recurrent emboli cause chronic strain and failure of the right ventricle. In these cases unfortunately digitalis does not afford the customary rapid relief that otherwise occurs when this drug is indicated in cardiac patients.

## Bibliography

- Allen A. W., Linton R. R. and Donaldson G. A. Thrombosis and Embolism. *Ann Surg* 118:728, 1943.
- Amann A. and Schaefer H. Über sensible Impulse im Herznerven. *Flügers Arch* 246:757, 1943.
- Aviado D. M. Jr. and Schmidt C. F. Reflexes from stretch receptors in blood vessels of heart and lungs. *Physiol Rev* 35:247, 1955.
- Bageant W. E. and Rapee L. A. The treatment of pulmonary embolus by stellate block. *Anesthesiology* 3:500, 1947.
- De Bakey M. E. A critical evaluation of the problem of thromboembolism. *Internat Abstracts Surgery* 28:1, 1954.
- Bardin I. *L'embolie pulmonaire*. Paris: Masson et Cie, 193.
- Barker N. W., Nygaard K. B., Walters W. and Priestley J. T. A statistical study of postoperative venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism. IV. Location of thrombosis. Relation of thrombosis and embolism. *Proc Staff Meet. Mayo Clin* 16:33, 1941.
- Bauer G. Nine years experience with heparin in acute venous thrombosis. *Angiology* 1:161, 1950.
- Becker F. Erfahrungen mit der intravenösen Novocainanwendung in der Chirurgie. *Helvet Chir. Acta* 16:312, 1943.
- Belt T. H. Thrombosis and pulmonary embolism. *Am J Path* 10:199, 1934.
- Binger C. A. L., Brow G. R. and Branch A. Experimental studies on rapid breathing, tachypnea independent of anoxemia resulting from multiple emboli in pulmonary arterioles and capillaries. *J Clin Investigation* 1:127, 1934.



- Bjerkelund C I and Gleditsch F Hypoproteithrombinemia — occurrence and prognostic significance in congestive heart failure *Acta med Scandinav* 115 181 1953
- Blaustein A Shneyerson N and Wallach R Clinical use of a new anticoagulant phenylindandione *Am J Med* 11 704 1953
- Bourgain H Todd M Herig I and Wright I S Marcumar 3 (1 phenyl propyl) 4 hydroxycoumarin A new anticoagulant *Circulation* 10 690 1954
- Buchner F Die Koronarsuffizienz Dresden Steinkopff 1939
- de Burgh Daly I The physiology of the bronchial vascular system *Harvey Lect* 11 235 1936
- Judany G Todd V and Verney F B Sensory receptors in the pulmonary vascular bed *Quart J Exper Physiol* 2 123 1937
- Burt C C Wright H I and Kubik M Clinical tests of a new coumarin substance *Brit M J* 2 1250 1949
- Capps J A and Coleman C H An Experimental and Clinical Study of Pain in the Pleura Pericardium and Peritoneum New York Macmillan 1937
- Clatanoff D V Triggs I O and Meyer O O Clinical experience with coumarin anticoagulants Warfarine and Warfarine sodium *Arch Int Med* 91 213 1954
- Collins D C Pulmonary embolism based on a study of 271 instances *Am J Surg* 33 210 1936
- Comroe J H Jr Van Lingen I Stroud R C and Roncoroni A Reflex and direct cardiopulmonary effects of 5 OH tryptamine (serotonine) *Am J Physiol* 173 379 1953
- Cook A W and Lyons H A Venous thromboembolic phenomena their absence in paraplegiac and tetraplegiac patients *Am J Med* 218 155 1949
- Coon W W Duff I F Hodgson P F and Dennis F W Therapeutic evaluation of a new anticoagulant Phenylindandione *Ann Surg* 138 467 1953
- Cosgriff S W Cross R I and Habib H V The management of venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism *Surgical Clin North America* April 1948 p 324
- Crane C Deep venous thrombosis in the leg following effort or strain *New England J Med* 246 529 1952
- Currans J and Barnes A R The heart in pulmonary embolism *Arch Int Med* 11 375 1943
- Denecke K Der Plantarschmerz als Frühsymptom einer beginnenden Thrombose der unteren Extremität München med Wchnschr 16 1912 1929
- Denk W Zur Behandlung der arteriellen Embolie München med Wchnschr 81 437 1934
- Dock W The evil sequelae of complete bed rest *J A M A* 125 1093 1944
- Duff I F The control of excessive effect by anticoagulants *Ann Int Med* 43 955 1955
- and Shull W H Fatal hemorrhage in dicumarol poisoning *J A M A* 139 767 1949
- Duken J Profuse Lungenblutungen bei recidivierender Endocarditis und Polyarthrits im Kindesalter *Ztschr f Kinderh* 45 333 1928
- Dunn J S The effects of multiple embolism of pulmonary arterioles *Quart J Med* 13 129 1919
- Farr C E and Spiegel R Pulmonary infarction and embolism *Ann Surg* 89 481 1929
- Fine J and Sears J B The prophylaxis of pulmonary embolism by division of the femoral vein *Ann Surg* 114 801 1941
- Fowler W M Obliterating thrombosis of the pulmonary arteries *Ann Int Med* 1101 1934
- Fruhd H Thrombektomie als Prophylaxe gegen Lungenembolie *Zentralbl f Chir* 64 1202 1937
- Gamble J R et al Clinical comparison of Vitamin K<sub>1</sub> and watersoluble Vitamin K *Arch Int Med* 95 52 1955

- Gsell O Der hamorrhagische Lungeninfarkt und seine komplikationen Deutsche med Wehnschr 61 1317 1360 1935
- Hackel D M Kinney T D and Goodape W T Cardiovascular effects of pulmonary embolization in dogs studied by venous catheterization in the coronary sinus Am J Physiol 176 135 1954
- Haggart G E and Waler A M The physiology of pulmonary embolism as disclosed by quantitative occlusion of the pulmonary artery Arch Surg 6764 1923
- Hampton A W and Castleman B Correlation of post mortem chest teleroentgenograms with autopsy findings with special reference to pulmonary embolism and infarction Am J Roentgenol 43 305 1940
- Hejtmancik M R and Bruce E I Symmetrical peripheral gangrene complicating pulmonary embolism Am Heart J 45 289 1953
- Hochrein M and Schneyer Zur Pathologie der Lungenembolie Munchen med Wehnschr 84 1929 1937
- Hohf R P Dye W M and Julian O C Danger of lumbar sympathetic blocks during anticoagulant therapy J A M A 152 399 1953
- Homans J Exploration and division of the femoral and iliac veins in the treatment of thrombophlebitis of the leg New Engl J Med 274 170 1941
- Deep quiet venous thrombosis in the lower limb preferred levels for interruption of veins Surg Gynec & Obst 79 70 1944
- Hunter W C Sneed N D Robertson T D and Snyder G A C Thrombosis of the deep veins of the leg Arch Int Med 68 1 1941
- James D F Bennet I D Jr Scheinberg P and Butler J J Clinical studies on dicumarol hypoprothrombinemia and vitamin K preparations Arch Int Med 83 632 1949
- Jarisch A Kreislaufstörung durch das Herz Klin Wehnschr 90 1041 1941
- Jarisch A and Zotterman L Depressor reflexes from the heart Acta physiol Scand 16 31 1948
- Jorpes J E The origin and the physiology of heparin Ann Int Med 9 361 1947
- Karanar H T and Ash J E Studies in infarction J M Research 27 205 1912
- Kienle F Elektrokardiographische und morphologische Untersuchungen zur Frage der Schädigung des rechten oder des linken Ventrikels Verhandl d deutsch Gesellsch f inn Med Kong 50 145 1935
- Kirch E Das Verhalten des Herzens bei Embolien Verhandl d deutsch Gesellsch f Kreislaufforsch 1934 p 31
- Koller F and Jacob H Über ein neues Anticoagulans mit protalierter Wirkung Schweiz med Wehnschr 83 476 1953
- Krause G R and Chester F M Infarction of the lung Arch Int Med 67 1144 1941
- Kruesi O R and Schilling F The clinical evaluation of phenylindandione as an anticoagulant New Engl J Med 251 927 1954
- Krumbhaar F M Note on electrocardiographic changes accompanying acutely increased pressure following pulmonary artery ligation Am J M Sc 187 191 1934
- Lichtheim L Die Störungen des Lungenkreislaufs und ihr Einfluß auf den Blutdruck Berlin A Hirschwald 1846
- Lilly G M and Lee R M Complications of anticoagulant therapy Surgery 96 957 1949
- Litten Gefäßgeräusche bei Lungenembolie Charite Annalen 3 190 1878
- Lockhart Mummery P Discussion on post operative pulmonary embolism Brit M J 2 850 1954
- Lowenberg R I Early diagnosis of phlebothrombosis with aid of a new clinical test J A M A 155 1566 1954
- Nacht M I Influence of some drugs and of emotions on blood coagulation J A M A 148 265 1957

- Malinow M R, Katz I N and Kondo H Is there a vagal pulmonocoronary reflex in pulmonary emboli? *Am Heart J* 31 702 1946
- Marple C D and Wright I S Thromboembolic Conditions and Their Treatment with Anticoagulants Springfield Thomas 1950
- Marvel R J and Schullerberger W A Thromboembolic phenomena associated with rapid diuresis in the treatment of congestive heart failure *Am Heart J* 19 194 1951
- McCinn S and White I D Acute cor pulmonale resulting from pulmonary embolism *J A M A* 101 1473 1931
- Meyers C B The Interpretation of the Unipolar Electrocardiogram St Louis Mosby 1956
- Müller I Studien über embolische und autochthone Thrombose in der Arteria Pulmonalis. Beitr z path Anat u z allg Path 11 26 1922
- Murnaghan D, McCinn S and White I D Pulmonary embolism with and without acute cor pulmonale with especial reference to the electrocardiogram *Am Heart J* 5 573 1943
- Naidu M Spontaneous venous thrombosis in the legs of tall men *J A M A* 115 120 1952
- Neumann R Ursprungszentren und Entwicklungsformen der Bein Thrombose Virchows Arch f path Anat 301 704 1934
- Ortner N Körperschmerzen Wien Urban und Schwarzenberg 1922
- Payr F Gedanken und Beobachtungen über die Thrombo Emboliefrage *Ztschr f klin Med* 119 218 1930
- Perkins R B and Bradshaw H H Pulmonary infarction mistaken for bronchogenic carcinoma *J A M A* 151 46 1953
- Pirk L A and Engelberg R Hypoprothrombinemic action of quinine sulfate *J A M A* 158 1093 1945
- Pollock B F Clinical experience with Warfarin (Coumadin) sodium a new anticoagulant *J A M A* 159 1095 1955
- Iratt G H Anticoagulants and sympathetic nerve blocks in the treatment of vascular lesions *J A M A* 152 903 1953
- Proft F Über die Quellen starker Lungenblutungen bei Stauungslungen *Ztschr f klin Med* 119 18 1931
- Ramsey H, Pinschmidt N W and Haag H B The effect of digitalis upon coagulation time of the blood *J Pharmacol Exper Therap* 85 159 1945
- Rossle R Über die Bedeutung und die Entstehung der Wadenvenenthrombosen Virchows Arch f path Anat 300 180 1937
- Sauerbruch F F Die Chirurgie der Brustorgane Berlin J Springer 1920
- Schorf D Über die Lungenembolie *Wien klin Wchnschr* 50 1589 1937
- and Boyd L J Clinical Electrocardiography ed 3 New York Grune & Stratton 1953
- Scharf M M and Coklen M F Effect of stretch and pressure on stimulus formation in the dogs auricle *Proc Soc Biol Med* 70 708 1940
- and Schonbrunner F Über Herzbefunde bei Lungenembolien *Ztschr f klin Med* 128 456 1935
- and Schonbrunner F Über den pulmonocoronaren Reflex bei Lungenembolien *klin Wchnschr* 16 340 1937
- Schumacher E D and John W Experimentelle Untersuchungen über die Ursache des Todes durch Lungenembolie *Ztschr f d ges exper Med* 3 340 1914
- Schweitzer A Vascular reflexes from the lung *J Physiol* 87 46P 1936
- Schwiegk H Der Lungenentlastungsreflex *Pflug Arch* 236 206 1935
- Shapiro E The administration of the hypoprothrombinemia inducing drugs *Angiology* 6 498 1955

- Short D S A radiological study of pulmonary infarction *Quart J Med* *0* 233 1951
- Soulier J L and Cuguen J Action hypoprothrombinemique (Antik) de la Dhenylindanedione *Compt rend Soc de biol* *141* 1007 1947
- Stats D and Davison S The increased hypoprothrombinemic effect of a small dose of dicumarol in congestive heart failure *Am J M Sc* *218* 318 1949
- Stats D and Neuhoef H Concentrated aqueous heparin *Am J M Sc* *214* 169 1947
- Tigerstedt R Über den Lungenkreislauf *Skandinav Arch f Physiol* *14* 259 1903
- Von Reinis Z and Kubik M Klinische Erfahrungen mit einem Präparat der Cumarinreihe *Schweiz med Wchnschr* *78* 785 1948
- Weinschenk K Herzmuskelveränderungen bei pathologischer Belastung des rechten Ventrikels *Beitr a path Anat u z allg Path* *10* 417 1939
- Wermer P Über das Auftreten von Perikarditis nach Lungeninfarkten *Klin Wchnschr* *11* 329 1932
- Westermarck N On the roentgen diagnosis of lung embolism *Acta radiol* *19* 357 1938
- Whitteridge D Multiple embolism of the lungs and rapid shallow breathing *Physiol Rev* *30* 475 1950
- Wilkins R W and Stanton J R Elastic stockings in the prevention of pulmonary embolism *New Engl J Med* *248* 1087 1953
- Wynn A Goodwin J F and Birbeck A Prolonged anticoagulant therapy with heparin *Brit M J* *1* 893 1952
- Zdarsky F and Boyd L J Roentgen Diagnosis of the Heart and Great Vessels New York Grune & Stratton 1954
- Zilliacus H On the specific treatment of thrombosis and pulmonary embolism with anticoagulants *Acta med Scandinav Suppl* *161* 1946

## Chapter 9

# Irradiation of Autonomic Reflexes to and from the Heart

EARLIER REFERENCE WAS MADE to the great importance of reflexes in the causation of various types of dyspnea and of some disturbances following pulmonary embolism. Reflexes will receive further consideration in the discussion of such subjects as peripheral vascular diseases and angina pectoris.

It may not be amiss to review briefly other better known reflexes that occasionally influence cardiac action. This subject has been neglected in text books and consequently though many of these reflexes are not rare their effects are unrecognized when encountered. There has been some skepticism about the existence of such reflexes since often they cannot be elicited at will in man and their occurrence has scarcely been analyzed statistically. Therefore the authors friends and colleagues who represent the basic sciences and who never see cardiac standstill when pleura or pericardium are opened and never see cardiac asystole when one of their animals swallows do not believe in such reflexes. Nevertheless medical literature abounds with individual examples of their effect. Fortunately most of this literature had been compiled at least up to 1937 in an excellent monograph (Schweitzer).

The discovery of pressoreceptors in the ascending aorta and in the carotid sinus and the recognition of their reflex influence on cardiac action, blood pressure, respiration, the tonus of the urinary bladder, stomach and intestines, and on adrenal secretion and the formation of urine has led to more general appreciation of the fact that the activity of one organ may be influenced by autonomic reflexes from another distant organ (irradiation of autonomic reflexes) (Kisch).

Irradiation of sensory reflexes has been known for more than a century. J. Mueller mentioned the cold chills occasionally experienced while listening to certain classical music and the sneezing that occurs when a person leaves a dark room and is exposed to sudden light. The contraction of somatic body muscles causing a chill during the contraction of the urinary bladder at the end of urination is a relatively common phenomenon in many healthy individuals and indicates an irradiation to somatic structures from an autonomically innervated organ.

Disturbances of cardiac activity due to irradiation of autonomic reflexes are not rarely observed. These derive largely from the fact that the activity of no other organ can be measured with the same exactitude and ease.



FIG. 6. Deep bradycardia causes ventricular fibrillation (a) or flutter (b).



FIG. 7. Ventricular fibrillation (a) leads to inhibition of the sinus node with AV nodal escape.

Just as the heart may respond to autonomic reflex stimuli it may also provoke them. The diarrhea and vomiting of coronary thrombosis and the short dry cough accompanying every extrasystole in some patients exemplify reflexes from the heart to other systems (Scherf and Schott).

### *Reflexes from the Respiratory System to the Heart*

The reflexes have been well studied and their existence is indubitable. They were examined early by experimental method.

Instillation of chloroform, ammonium chloride and other irritating substance into a rabbit's nostril causes reflex bradycardia and cardiac arrhythmia. In dogs and rabbits arrhythmias can be elicited by mechanical irritation of a certain spot on the posterior nasal septum near the middle turbinate. Not infrequently syncope is produced in man when certain areas on the nasal mucosa are touched.

Bradycardia cardiac standstill and arrhythmias following mechanical or chemical irritation of the larynx, the trachea and bronchi have been produced experimentally in man. This may explain sudden fatalities during operations during bronchoscopy and after the aspiration of small particles of solid food or fluid. In one patient with glossopharyngeal neuralgia cardiac arrest with syncope occurred. Section of the ninth nerve intracranially cured the patient (Ray and Stewart).

Of great interest are the cases in which deep inspiration causes atrial extrasystoles or even atrial fibrillation. One patient (Burak and Scherf) had atrial fibrillation or flutter whenever he took one or two deep breaths. During a period of observation extending over several months attacks of atrial fibrillation could be elicited at will.

In another personal observation a 64 year old man complained of attacks of palpitation and it was discovered that transient atrial flutter and fibrillation was regularly induced by deep breathing (figure 20).

The immediate cessation of many attacks of paroxysmal tachycardia by deep inspiration or the vagal diving experiment (activation of all expiratory muscles with a closed glottis) is well known.

Of interest in this connection is figure 21 which was obtained from a 59 year old patient with coronary sclerosis on effort and a sinus tachycardia. Whenever over an observation period of several weeks the patient held his breath the atrium was inhibited and deeper centers escaped. This phenomenon was observed in any phase of the respiration as long as breathing stopped. Here we are dealing in all probability not with reflexes but with an irradiation of impulse from the respiratory centers to the vagal centers.

Sudden collapse and even death during the induction of an artificial pneumothorax is often due to air embolism. When this accident happens just as the needle is inserted reflexes may play a role and the term "pleural shock" seems justified. Mere opening of the pleura by the surgeon or ligation of a bronchus may cause cardiac arrest.

*Reflexes from the Digestive System to the Heart*

In 1864 Goltz reported reflex cardiac inhibition by the application of mechanical stimuli to the abdomen shortly afterward reflex disturbances of cardiac rhythm were noted during the insertion of a gastric tube in animals.

A patient who had just been recovering from tonsillitis had ventricular standstill whenever an area in the pharynx near the soft palate was touched with a probe. The same patient developed attacks of Stokes Adams syndrome regularly on swallowing. In order to enable the patient to eat it was necessary to anesthetize the area whence the reflex was initiated (Medvei and Uiberall). A few days later the attacks disappeared completely. Attacks of paroxysmal tachycardia are often terminated when the patient puts two fingers deeply into his throat to elicit retching or an emetic reflex.

The occurrence of heart block and paroxysmal tachycardia during swallowing is not uncommon. Atrioventricular conduction disturbances have been induced by the distention of an esophageal traction diverticulum (Weiss et al.). In a patient with atrioventricular block attacks of the Morgagni Stokes Adams type appeared during straining at stool and could always be elicited by gentle digital (mechanical) stimulation of the rectum. They were due to ventricular tachycardia and ventricular fibrillation (Scott and Sincetta).

The influence of irritation of various abdominal organs (liver gall bladder colon) on cardiac activity — the appearance of extrasystoles in patients with gallstones for example — is so generally appreciated that no detailed discussion is warranted. The effect of gastric or esophageal distention on coronary blood flow has been the subject of investigations and marked changes are reported. The coronary blood flow diminishes with distention of the stomach and lower esophagus. Some patients actually complain of anginal pain when they start eating.

*Other Reflexes*

In lower animals (crustacea) cardiac action can easily be influenced from the skin. The arrest of paroxysmal tachycardia by mechanical irritation of the outer ear or pressure on the eyeballs is due to a reflex transmitted over the trigeminal nerve. The reduction of coronary blood flow in dogs by the blowing of cold air on the skin has considerable clinical significance.

There are other similar reflexes in which the heart does not participate. Abdominal symptoms are common in the pneumonias of children and in pulmonary embolism as was mentioned earlier (Binzold). Paralytic ileus may occur in pulmonary embolism or extraperitoneal urologic operations (two personal observations). Ileus in nephrolithiasis arises from obstruction of a single ureter by a stone (reno renal reflex) and fainting when the rectal mucosa is stimulated by an enema illustrate the irradiation of some autonomic reflexes.

For the most part vagal fibers are used as pathways for these reflexes but there is convincing evidence for the participation of sympathetic fibers.



Certain conditions must be present for these reflexes to appear a certain status of the receptors the reflex arc the centers and the receptive organs is necessary. The importance of the status of the effector organ is shown by the fact that the same mechanism (deep breathing carotid pressure swallowing) may initiate or abolish arrhythmias.

## Bibliography

- Allen W I An experimentally produced premature systolic arrhythmia (pulsus bigeminus) in rabbits I Its nature and agents which produce it *Am J Physiol* 91 569 1930
- An experimentally produced premature systolic arrhythmia (pulsus bigeminus) in rabbits IV Effective areas in the brain *Am J Physiol* 93 344 1931
- Arnstein A and Wischnowitzer L Zur Frage des sogenannten Ikuraschocks *Wien klin Wchnschr* 1934 p 300
- Binger C A L Boyd D and Moore R L The effect of multiple emboli of the capillaries and arterioles of one lung *J Exper Med* 45 647 1927
- Bingold K Zur Symptomatologie lungenembolischer Prozesse *München med Wchnschr* 72 1237 1925
- Blatt I Über rinorinale Reflexe *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 153 67 1930
- Brodie T G and Russell A F On reflex cardiac inhibition *J Physiol* 96 97 1900
- von Brucke M T Zur Kenntnis des Reflexes von der Nasenschleimhaut auf die Herznerven *Ztschr f Biol* 67 520 1916—1917
- Burak M and Seherf D Angina pectoris und paroxysmale Tachykardie *Wien Arch f inn Med* 23 475 1933
- Capps J A Air embolism versus pleural reflex as the cause of pleural shock *J A M A* 109 852 1937
- Danielopolu D and Marcou I Sur la presence d flets excitateurs et inhibiteurs du centre respiratoire dans les nerfs sino carotidiens *Compt rend Soc de biol* 109 761 193
- Flaum E and Klima R Zur neurogenen Form des Adams Stokeschen Symptomenkomplexes *Wien Arch f inn Med* 23 223 1932
- Forsberg C W Paroxysmal premature ventricular contractions induced by swallowing *Lancet* 53 298 1933
- Gilbert N C Fenn G K LeRoy G V and Hobbs T G The role of sympathetic inhibition in the production of attacks of angina pectoris *Tr A Am Physicians* 56 279 1941
- Goltz F Vagus und Herz *Arch f Path Anat* 96 1 1863
- Greene C W Control of the coronary blood flow by reflexes arising in widely distributed regions of the body *Am J Physiol* 113 399 1935
- Henle K Spastischer Ileus bei Lungenembolie *Zentralbl f Chir* 55 1094 1908
- Heymans C Le sinus carotidien zone reflexogene regulatoire du tonus vagal cardiaque du tonus neurovasculaire et de l'adrenaline secretion *Arch intern Pharmacodyn* 35 269 1929
- Hinrichsen J and Ivy A C Effect of stimulation of visceral nerves on coronary flow in dogs *Arch Int Med* 91 932 1933
- Iglauer S and Schwartz B A Heart block periodically induced by the swallowing of food in a patient with cardiospasm (Vagovagal syncope) *Ann Otol Rhin Laryng* 45 875 1936

- Jannsen S and Schmidt J Die Carotissinuspolyurie Arch f exper Iath u Pharma kol 1 1 672 1933
- Kisch H Die Irradiation autonomer Reflexe und ihre Beziehung zu gewissen pathologisch physiologischen Erscheinungen Ztschr f d ges exper Med 52 499 1926
- Knoll P Über Veränderungen des Herzes klarer bei reflectorischer Erregung Sitzber Wien Akad Wissch 66 195 1872
- Koblanck and Roeder H Experimentelle Untersuchungen zur reflektorischen Herz arhythmie Arch f d ges Physiol 125 377 1908
- Kratschmer F Über Reflexe von der Nasenschleimhaut auf Atmung und Kreislauf Sitzber Wien Akad Wissch 67 2 Abt 177 1810
- Mackenzie J Diseases of the Heart London Oxford Univ Press 1909
- Magne H Mayer A and Plantefol L Recherches sur les actions reflexes produites par l'irritation des voies respiratoires Ann de physiol 1 394 1925
- Mayer S and Pribram A Über reflectorische Beziehungen des Magens zu den Innervation centren für die Kreislauforgane Sitzungsber d k Akad d Wissensch Wien 66 102 1872
- Medvei C V and Uiberall H Über schwere von der Mund und Pharynxschleimhaut auslösbare Rhythmusstörungen des Herzens Wien klin Wchnschr 51 234 1939
- Müller J Handbuch der Physiologie des Menschen für Vorlesungen Coblenz Holscher 1844
- Pollak W Klinischer Beitrag zur Kenntnis schwerer Magen Darmstörungen nach extra peritonealen urologischen Eingriffen Beitr z klin Chir 167 224 1935
- Recht C Dyspnoë beim Vagusdruckversuch Klin Wchnschr 3 916 1924
- Reid L C and Brace M F Irritation of the respiratory tract and its reflex effect upon the heart Surg Gynec & Obst 70 157 1940
- Rein H Die Physiologie der Herzkranz Gefäße Ztschr f Biol 92 101 115 1931
- Richert C Garrelon L and Santenaise D Les reflexes laryngocardiaque Compt rend Acad d Sc 176 347 1923
- von Saalfeld E Herzreflexe pulmonalen Ursprungs Arch f d ges Physiol 231 33 1931
- Sakai and Mori F Über einen Fall von sog Schlucktachykardie Ztschr f d ges exper Med 50 106 1926
- Scherf D Cardiac reflexes originating in the respiratory tract New York State J Med 46 1647 1945
- and Schott A Extrasystoles and Allied Arrhythmias New York Grune & Stratton 1953
- Schweitzer A Die Irradiation autonomer Reflexe Basel S Karger 1937
- Scott R W and Sances S M Stokes Adams attacks induced by rectal stimulation in a patient with complete heart block Circulation 20 886 1950
- Smith F M and Moody W B The induction of premature contractions and auricular fibrillation by forced breathing Arch Int Med 39 197 1923
- Sculie I Tricot R and Verdun di Cantogno L Cœur pulmonaire aigu et infarctus du myocarde Arch mal coeur 41 867 1951
- Starling H J Heart block induced by the vagus Heart 3 31 1921
- Sunder Plassmann I Über neue Receptoren II in der Wand der intrapulmonalen Bronchien des Menschen und ihre klinische Bedeutung insbesondere ihre Schockwirkung bei Lungenerkrankungen Deutsche Ztschr f Chir 240 49 1933
- Wei S Ferris B J and Campbell J M The influence of reflexes in the induction of intracardiac disturbance Tr A Am Physicians 49 1 1934

## Chapter 10

# Rheumatic Fever

THE CLINICAL PICTURE OF RHEUMATIC FEVER is protean but the histologic findings are typical. We are dealing with a clinical entity. Despite the fact that the active disease may be unassociated with fever for a long time and may run its course without rheumatism, the term 'rheumatic fever' has been almost impervious to many attempts at replacement.

### INCIDENCE

Although it is a disease of major importance the exact incidence is unknown for rheumatic fever is not generally reportable in the United States and many mild cases escape recognition. Possibly 500 000 to 1 000 000 people living in the United States have hearts damaged by rheumatic fever and it is estimated that rheumatic heart disease occurs in two per cent of our school children. Rheumatic fever, the cause of 98 per cent of heart disease in people under 20 years of age, occurs most often between the ages of five and twelve. It is the cause of death in almost all patients suffering from fatal heart disease between five and 24; the over all yearly death rate of this disease throughout the U.S.A. has been between 40 000 and 60 000. The general trend both here and abroad now, however, seems toward a decreased incidence of the disease. According to White the incidence fell from 39.5 per cent of all heart diseases in the year 1925 to 23.5 per cent in 1950. An increase in the number of instances of coronary disease and hypertensive heart disease may make this decrease more apparent than real.

### ETIOLOGY

*Relationship to Group A Hemolytic Streptococci* Although the cause of the disease is unknown, some relation between rheumatic fever and infection with group A hemolytic streptococci (of which more than 40 subtypes exist) seems established. Repeated infections appear necessary. It is estimated that rheumatic fever follows three to five per cent of all streptococcus infections, including scarlet fever. The disease seems to be caused by sensitivity to antigens against protein products of certain forms of streptococci. Viral infections have been repeatedly suspected but without proof. Epidemics of streptococcal pharyngitis or tonsillitis have been followed in seven to 21 days by epidemics of rheumatic fever. Such incidents have been observed in barracks, training centers, schools and camps. The streptococcus infection is often subclinical. An infection of the

upper respiratory tract a few days to a month prior to rheumatic fever is a common occurrence in a large number of cases. Rheumatic fever may also follow an infection elsewhere e. g. after an appendicitis.

The apparent success with which antibiotics given early during a streptococcal infection prevent the appearance of rheumatic fever and the effect of sulfonamide and penicillin prophylaxis in preventing recurrences speak strongly in favor of streptococcal infection as an etiologic factor.

The increased titer of antistreptococcal lysins and other serologic reactions obtained in the blood of patients with rheumatic fever is also suggestive of the etiologic role of streptococcal infection but it is still not conclusive evidence.

Overexertion, chilling, trauma (Glazebrook and Thomson) and vaccination against smallpox (Freud) may lead to a recrudescence or recurrence of an attack. These factors are more comprehensible in view of the work of Selye who demonstrated that arthritis and myocardial lesions similar to those seen in rheumatic fever are found as a consequence of stress and belong to the picture of the general adaptation syndrome.

*Allergy.* At present it is widely assumed but not proven that rheumatic fever results from a chronic streptococcal infection which in some individuals causes the connective tissue to respond abnormally with exudation and proliferation. Myocardial and coronary lesions similar or according to some identical to those of rheumatic fever can be obtained by injecting horse serum into rabbits to produce anaphylaxis or serum sickness. This supports the opinion of those who regard rheumatic fever as the consequence of a hypersensitivity to bacterial products.

Accordingly the pathogenesis of rheumatic fever is explained by the existence of hypersensitivity to streptococci resulting from repeated low grade infections or the persistence of foci of infection in the body. Under suitable conditions when certain organisms or their products are disseminated in the tissues these tissues react abnormally producing the characteristic picture of rheumatic fever. While this hypothesis as well as variants designed to embrace the hereditary and environmental conditions are not uniformly accepted, allergy or some related state appears to be the most acceptable theory for the pathogenesis of rheumatic fever pending further discoveries.

*Heredity.* This seems to play a role for genetically susceptible individuals acquire the disease at an early age. The appearance of several instances of rheumatic fever in a single family, however, has been explained by an exposure to the same infection, the same nutrition and the same living conditions — in other words to environmental conditions.

*Social Status.* Rheumatic fever was once called a disease of the poor for it was believed to be associated with living in dampness, overcrowding and poverty. While it is more frequent in the slums it is by no means rare in higher income classes.

*Race.* Racial susceptibility has not been established.

*Age* Rheumatic fever is primarily a disease of infancy and childhood. Acute rheumatic fever has been reported in the newborn (Kissano and Koons) but in these cases the mother invariably seems to have suffered from the active disease during pregnancy. Although it is not rare in children at the age of two years the peak of incidence is between five and twelve. When the age of 15 years is reached 70 per cent of the patients have already been affected. The acute manifestations become rare in older individuals but instances of the first attack after the age of 60 years are known. An apparently first attack of acute rheumatic fever has been observed in a patient 74 years of age. During the past year we have observed three instances in a hospital caring for 2000 aged patients; all three cases were beyond the age of 65 but we were unable to determine whether this attack was the first.

*Sex* There is no striking difference in incidence between the two sexes in most regions but girls seem particularly susceptible in some areas. The disease tends to appear somewhat later in boys than in girls.

*Avitaminosis* In respect to nutrition a deficiency of vitamins (A, B, C and even D) has been frequently asserted to favor the development of the disease. Crucial evidence that vitamin deficiency has etiologic importance in rheumatic fever has not been provided. The low blood levels of vitamin C frequently reported may be due to an inability to utilize the vitamin during the disease.

*Proteins in Diet* Of interest is the statement that rheumatic fever is less common in farming areas than in places where the diet is deficient in proteins, eggs in particular.

*Climate* The role of climate in the incidence of the disease is not definitely established. Rheumatic fever is more common in cold than in warm climates and is more frequently encountered in the changeable weather of the northeastern Atlantic states and of the British Isles than in Arizona, Florida or California. However it is frequent in dry and sunny Colorado. In the New England states and the eastern section of the United States the disease is more prevalent in late winter and early spring than in summer or early autumn (Sutton). In the tropics the disease is rare except on high plateaus (Clarke). Its occurrence becomes less frequent if endangered patients are removed to subtropic climates where streptococcal infections are less common. This prevails only while the patient remains there; for return to cold climate often leads to reactivation.

#### PATHOLOGY

The first change seems to appear in the mucoprotein ground substance of the collagenous tissues (Klinge). It is associated with swelling and necrosis of the latter.

The *Aschoff body* is essential to the histologic diagnosis of rheumatic fever. It has never been found in man in other conditions. This pathognomonic lesion when fresh consists of a small focus of necrosis, scattered lymphocytes and peculiar large epithelioid cells arranged in the shape of a fan. This granuloma is specific for rheumatic fever although the large cells with their peculiar nucleus

alone are not characteristic. In the myocardium the Aschoff body ultimately disappears leaving a scar.

The interfibrillary ground substance consists of chondroitin sulfuric acid and hyaluronic acid. The latter is depolymerized by an enzyme, hyaluronidase. The relation of this enzyme to rheumatic fever has been widely discussed of late but is not clear. A certain spreading factor which increases tissue permeability has been discovered in testicular extracts and group A hemolytic streptococci. This factor was recognized as hyaluronidase and this substance is antigenic. The amount of antihyaluronidase is greater in patients with rheumatic fever. Silicates are reported to inhibit the spreading reaction of hyaluronidase and the antirheumatic effects of this drug have been attributed to this action. Crucial evidence has not yet been submitted.

Rheumatic fever is a disease of the mesenchyme and involves connective tissue everywhere. However the responses in different organs vary. Thus typical Aschoff bodies are not found in the lungs although perivascular infiltrations and alveolar exudation appear; they are also absent from the brain.

*Vascular System.* Inflammatory reactions are often discovered at the root of the pulmonary artery and aorta. Similar changes occur regularly in the systemic arteries in the peripheral vessels of the lungs and especially in the coronary arteries. They consist of round cell infiltrations, changes in the intima, media and adventitia with hyaline exudate which obstructs the small vessels. A glomerulitis is demonstrable in over 20 per cent of the cases.

*Joints and Serous Surfaces.* The same changes are noted in the joints and in some serous surfaces such as the pleura and pericardium. In these tissues the exudate is predominately serous. The joint cavity may be distended by fluid exudate which contains fibrin and a few granulocytes. The synovia is edematous and hyperemic. The periarticular tissues are involved in a similar manner and Aschoff bodies may persist in these structures for a long time.

*Heart.* In the heart myocardial involvement with the formation of Aschoff bodies seems to occur in 100 per cent of the cases (Talalaeff). This holds at least for all cases of fatal rheumatic fever. Myocardial changes are also caused by the vascular alterations mentioned above by degeneration of the myocardial fibers, diffuse myocarditis and infiltration with eosinophilic leukocytes.

In a large percentage of cases changes appear in the endocardium along the line of closure of the valves. This happens particularly on the atrial surface of the mitral and tricuspid valves and on the ventricular surface of the aortic valves. Here also swelling of the fibers and of the ground substance, secondary necrosis of the fibrilli and migration of granulocytes and fibroblasts are the primary changes. Secondary deposits composed principally of fibrin produce small warty vegetations, verrucous endocarditis. At the beginning the verrucae can easily be removed but invading capillaries and fortifying connective tissue gradually attach them more securely to the valve. Verrucae also appear on the chordae tendineae and on the endothelium of the chambers. The mural endocardium of the posterior wall of the left atrium is often affected. Healing leads to

thickening of the endocardium and valves to retraction stiffening and fusion of the cusps and valves and to shrinkage and fusion of the chordae tendineae with eventual secondary degeneration and calcification. Frequently the pericardium is also involved (pericarditis). Involvement of the valve rings and ascending aorta as well as pulmonary artery occurs and facilitates later enlargement of these structures if failure and congestion develop.

The pericardial changes are described in a later chapter. Marked alterations are also found in the diaphragm.

*Lungs.* Apart from ordinary bronchopneumonia other pulmonary complications may appear which are characterized clinically by fever, severe cough and bloody sputum. Dyspnea occurs in these patients. In this rheumatic pneumonia an alveolitis is found with buds of connective tissue filling and obstructing the alveolar ducts. They have been called *bourgeons conjonctifs* or *Masson bodies* and they are said to represent the characteristic pulmonary equivalent of the Aschoff body in rheumatic fever. The specificity of the Masson bodies has been recently denied (Herbert and Manges). Atelectasis is common. Physical findings may be scarce. X-ray studies show massive density or radiation of opaque shadows from the hilus into the lung fields. The arteries of the lung especially in the smaller divisions may show an obstructive arteriolitis. Acute fibrinous or serofibrinous pleurisy also occurs with or without pneumonitis.

*Subcutaneous Tissue.* The firm rounded subcutaneous nodules are gray and translucent. They are composed principally of edematous connective tissue and cellular infiltrations lacking definite arrangement. The presence of Aschoff bodies in these nodules is exceedingly rare.

*Nervous System.* Proliferative arteriolitis with occlusion of small vessels and focal malacia of the central nervous system especially of the cortical gray matter and meninges have been described repeatedly. The pathologic picture often resembles a meningo-encephalitis but the spinal fluid usually remains normal. These changes are mentioned to explain the acute and even chronic psychoses such as schizophrenia which may follow rheumatic fever. Epileptiform convulsions are said to be seven times as common in patients who have had rheumatic fever as in the general population (Foster).

*Atherosclerosis.* Atherosclerosis especially coronary sclerosis is often considered a final stage of the arterial involvement in rheumatic fever. It seems however that rheumatic fever does not predispose to coronary sclerosis. Experience shows that the incidence of coronary atherosclerosis is no higher in rheumatic fever patients than in nonrheumatics despite the fact that the coronary artery lesions described above are demonstrable in approximately one half the patients dying of an acute attack of rheumatic fever.

### SYMPTOMS

*Insidious Onset.* Often the onset is very insidious so that the disease is easily overlooked. Accordingly the number of patients is rather large (30 to 40 per cent) who at a later date develop complaints from a valvular lesion due to an earlier

but entirely unrecognized rheumatic fever. This feature and the fact that cardiac changes are not invariably permanent make the compilation of accurate statistics exceedingly difficult.

*General Symptoms* In many cases loss of appetite, profuse sweating, loss of weight, irritability, fatigue, restlessness, slow growth, abdominal pain and lassitude as well as anemia are the first and sometimes the only manifestations of the disease. Epistaxis is common. Since salicylates have an anticoagulant action, some authors attribute the epistaxis to the administration of large doses of salicylates. Epistaxis often occurs, however, in acute rheumatic fever before any medication has been given.

So called growing pains are common manifestations of a synovitis localized in the region on the hamstring tendons behind the knee, but they may have other causes which are not related to rheumatic fever. In the latter instance they are usually felt in the muscles and tendons rather than in the joints. They are rare in the upper extremities and do not cause pain on motion.

*Local Symptoms* The clinical picture of an acute migratory arthritis with inflammation, redness, extreme tenderness and swelling of the joints, successive involvement of one joint after another and the tendency to involve the large (knee, elbow) as well as the small joints (bones of the hands, feet, spine, jaw) is well known. This syndrome of acute polyarthritis is more common in childhood and becomes infrequent with increasing age. The arthritis may be monoarticular and need not migrate. Return of normal joint function within a short time is the rule.

At other times the disease may begin abruptly with vomiting, acute abdominal pain and tenderness in the right lower quadrant. This may suggest acute appendicitis (pseudosurgical crises). The abdominal pain has been explained by the presence of an arteritis in abdominal organs as well as by a rheumatic mesenteric lymphadenitis. These abdominal signs respond well to salicylates. Cardiac symptoms, symptoms indicating pulmonary pathology or involvement of the nervous system may dominate the clinical picture.

Pain over the precordium or retrosternal pain is very common and in most cases is due to involvement of the coronary vessels; it may become aggravated if acute pericarditis develops.

The widespread involvement of small arteries in active rheumatic fever accounts for the protean picture.

## SIGNS

*Fever* Fever is often absent. If present it may persist for days or months. While it may develop into a hyperpyrexia of 111 degrees F, this is rare. Temperatures of 103 degrees F are common. There is profuse sweating.

*Joints* An important sign suggestive of the correct diagnosis is redness and swelling of the joints with periarticular inflammation causing pain which is sometimes extremely severe. This statement is particularly valid when the original joint involvement subsides in approximately eight days while other



joints are successively invaded in the interim. In classical cases the arthritis is associated with general malaise, pallor, anorexia and weight loss. Cold clammy sweats and profound prostration are also present. In these cases the diagnosis is simple. In the absence of joint involvement however diagnosis by physical examination alone may be exceedingly difficult.

**Skin** Erythema multiforme is common. Erythema marginatum (circinatum annulare) with pale centered ringlets over the flexor surface of the joint is considered pathognomonic. Erythema nodosum and purpuric eruptions also occur as unspecific reactions.

**Subcutaneous Tissue** The occurrence of subcutaneous rheumatic nodules is considered frequent in some countries and relatively uncommon in others. Such nodules are infrequent in adults. They are reported in approximately 1 to 4 per cent of the American cases but the latter figure presumably includes more juvenile cases. Since the nodules are painless the search for them must be conducted with patience in the areas usually affected—the extensor surface in the neighborhood of the elbows, wrists and knees and over flat bones as in the scalp. They are often symmetrical. They appear in crops and may persist for weeks. When large they are readily detected but small ones require careful palpation because the non-tender masses may be no larger than peas. Later the nodules become firmer, fibrous and more circumscribed. These rheumatic manifestations which disappear as healing occurs are important because they constitute a sign of activity. Some consider them a sign of a more virulent process.

**Lungs** Pneumonitis is not uncommon. Some authors found it in 11 per cent of the cases. It begins with fever, dyspnea, cough and pleural pain and imitates the picture of atypical pneumonia. It seems particularly common in children and may lead to a fulminating clinical picture and death. Rales and dullness are found. Roentgenograms show bilateral symmetrical multilobular infiltrations often simulating pulmonary edema (Seldin et al.). Pleurisy with effusion is common.

**Heart** Since cardiac involvement is exceedingly common and acute myocarditis seems to be invariably present during the active phase examination of the heart may aid in the diagnosis. Moreover repeated careful observation of the heart is necessary especially in early childhood for many of these patients succumb to cardiac complications during the active phase.

A sinus tachycardia is present and the heart rate may reach 140 per minute. The cardiac rhythm is usually regular since the respiratory arrhythmia, other wise so common in the healthy heart particularly during childhood tends to disappear. In some cases arrhythmias due to conduction disturbances (periodic dropped beats or Wenckebach's periods) develop. Extrasystoles and atrial fibrillation are rare.

Palpation reveals a hyperactive heart as in hyperthyroidism. This hypermotility is also demonstrable fluoroscopically and in the absence of other diseases (hyperthyroidism, anemia, cardiac neurosis) is considered a valuable sign of active rheumatic carditis. The heart may be enlarged. This always indicates severe

myocardial damage in ominous development if it occurs early in the active phase. Cardiac dilatation is frequently seen in ambulatory patients in whom marked myocardial damage existed and in whom the diagnosis was overlooked for some time. Occasionally this dilatation disappears rather quickly as the patient recovers from the acute phase. In many cases the enlargement of the cardiac shadow is more apparent than real since it is due to the formation of a pericardial effusion.

At times the heart sounds are impure, distant and split. Since splitting or duplication of the heart sounds is a common event in normal people, particularly in childhood, this does not necessarily mean cardiac involvement, but sudden appearance of this sign is important. A presystolic gallop occurs if conduction time is prolonged. With more severe myocardial damage the sounds are muffled and a diastolic type of gallop rhythm is heard. The differentiation of this type of gallop rhythm from the physiologic third heart sound, which is common in children, may be impossible (see chapter on myocardial diseases).

Systolic murmurs over the apex and the pulmonic area are heard frequently. Changes in the valvular ring with consequent relative mitral insufficiency and edema of the valves are offered as an explanation of the former while in rheumatic mesopulmonitis, with dilatation of the supra-valvular portion of the pulmonary artery and formation of eddies is held responsible for the latter. Probably the cardiac hypermotility, tachycardia and the fever contribute to the appearance of systolic murmurs. These early systolic murmurs do not indicate valvular involvement for it requires many months before the connective tissue can shrink sufficiently to produce actual valvular changes.

In 75 per cent of the cases these systolic murmurs disappear within six months. In many patients with acute rheumatic fever no lasting disturbance of cardiac function remains. The longer and more severe an attack, the more probable is involvement of the valves. At the termination of the first attack of rheumatic fever, Ash found no evidence of heart disease in 59.2 per cent of the patients.

Diastolic murmurs have been described repeatedly in the acute phase. They are transient and are explained perhaps by the rapid diastolic influx of blood into the dilated ventricles. Often impure sounds and diastolic accidental sounds are confused with murmurs indicative of structural damage. A pericardial friction rub is audible in a large percentage of the childhood cases when the search is repeated sufficiently often and with great diligence. Effusions are common.

**Laboratory Tests.** The white blood cell count, the sedimentation rate, the electrocardiogram and other tests are important and may help establish the diagnosis and aid in estimating the progress and in detecting recurrences. The findings are not characteristic of rheumatic fever but they yield invaluable information in conjunction with other clinical data.

**Leukocytosis** is common; the total figure may exceed 20,000. A count above 9000 is considered by some indicative of an active process. With relapse the white blood cell count rises; sometimes before other evidence of the recurrence is demonstrable. Persistent leukocytosis often but not invariably speaks in favor of con-

tinued activity. A normal leukocyte count however does not preclude an active process.

Usually a progressive anemia due to bone marrow depression develops rapidly early in the active phase.

**Urine.** Marked sweating occasionally results in a drastic reduction of the urinary output. The specific gravity of the urine rises and the color is dark. Often the highly acid urine deposits urates on cooling. Albuminuria is not uncommon in the febrile cases and red blood cells may be found in the sediment. The latter findings are important and should be checked frequently, sometimes hematuria has been reported to be the result of salicylate therapy. Acute nephritis occurs but its relationship to rheumatic fever is not clear.

**Erythrocytic Sedimentation Rate.** This test or Westman's coagulation test has primary importance in determining the degree of activity of the process. Figures of 100 to 130 (Westergren method) are not rare in the active stages of the disease. Sometimes tachycardia and increased sedimentation rate are the sole indications of persistent activity at other times only the latter is found. But exceptions that is activity in spite of a normal sedimentation rate are not rare. This became clear when the appendices of the left atrium were resected during commissurotomy in patients with mitral stenosis. Histologic examination revealed Aschoff bodies in 30 per cent of the specimens examined despite absence of clinical evidence of activity. According to some authors these Aschoff bodies represent a healed stage (Tedeschi et al.) When pulmonary congestion supervenes the rate of red blood cell sedimentation is lowered.

**Streptococcal hemolysins** dissolve red blood cells. Antibodies are formed which are called antistreptolysins. Individuals who have recently had a streptococcal infection form an antibody which neutralizes the O (oxygen labile) hemolysin of certain beta hemolytic streptococci. The titers in rheumatic fever are high in 85 per cent of the cases in the active phase. But similar titers (250 and above) are seen for a long time following any streptococcal infection. The test is not specific and does not indicate progress of the lesion.

**C reactive protein.** Apparently this is one of the most valuable tests. During various infections or necrotizing processes a protein appears in the blood which reacts differently from any other blood protein with the C polysaccharide of pneumococci in vitro. It is a precipitation reaction. This antibody is developed by hemolytic streptococci. A precipitate is formed with a test reagent consisting of antiserum prepared in rabbits by immunization with purified C reactive protein. However the test may be negative despite activity of the process. On the other hand it is not reversed by congestive heart failure as is the sedimentation rate. It is suppressed by salicylates, cortisone and ACTH and is absent in normal blood. There is thus no normal range. Any positive reaction is abnormal.

**MUCOPROTEINS.** Estimation of the concentration of mucoproteins in the serum has been said to be a useful index of rheumatic activity. The test is nonspecific. The mean value for healthy children is 2.5 mg. percent. In rheumatic children values of 8.5 mg. per cent are found.

**OXALACETIC TRANSAMINASE** In active rheumatic fever the serum concentration of the enzyme glutamic oxalacetic transaminase is increased (Nydick et al.)

**Electrocardiogram** This is altered in most instances of active rheumatic fever if tracings are registered sufficiently often changes are found in 95 per cent of the cases. The changes may come and go within a few hours — ten negative tracings may be followed by a positive one. Frequent registration of the electrocardiogram in active rheumatic fever has served to reveal the high incidence of myocardial involvement and the peculiar affinity of this disease for the specific tissue of the heart. Prolongation of the P R interval is the most common finding. The normal P R interval should not exceed 0.16 second in infants, 0.18 second in childhood and 0.21 second in the adult. In rheumatic fever the values often exceed 0.21 second. Occasionally higher degrees of block or even complete heart block appear. These changes are usually transitory. Some maintain that prolonged atrioventricular conduction time is due to increased vagal tonus or to an increased response of the heart muscle to vagal stimuli since the prolongation is abolished by atropine. This conclusion seems unwarranted in view of the fact that the normal conduction time is also markedly shortened by this drug. In rare cases the P P interval remains permanently prolonged after full recovery of the patient.

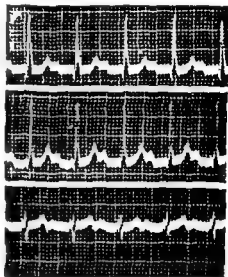


FIG. 22 Sinus tachycardia and prolonged atrioventricular conduction time (0.26 second) in a patient with active rheumatic fever.

Figure 22 shows an electrocardiogram obtained from a 12 year old boy with active rheumatic fever. The atrioventricular conduction time is prolonged to about 0.24 second. There is a tachycardia of 124 beats per minute since P is hidden in the T the exact measurement of the beginning of the P wave is impossible. Abnormal T waves and evidence of intraventricular block especially right bundle branch block often occur.

#### CLINICAL COURSE

The manifestations and duration of the active phase of rheumatic fever varies. In the past overemphasis has been laid on the joint manifestations, often they are absent. Mono and polycyclic forms have been described the first being about twice as common as the second. In the monocyclic type only one series of joints is affected in rapid succession whereas in the polycyclic type there are repeated exacerbations with and without joint manifestations over a long

period of time. There is also a continuous form which persists for several years.

The elevated sedimentation rate, increased leukocyte count and other evidence show that the period of activity frequently lasts for years although much of its evolution is subclinical. At other times, notably in early childhood, the stormy signs of activity may be fulminating and the manifestations are alarming. Within a few weeks either the severe myocardial damage causes congestive heart failure which does not respond to treatment or else a pericarditis develops. In many of these cases death cannot be prevented. Sometimes the initial picture is rather severe but the subsequent recovery proceeds without leaving much trace of damage as far as the clinical examination reveals.

In general the course of rheumatic fever is unpredictable and variable but the cases can be grouped readily into three categories:

(1) Cases in which the process dies out entirely leaving the patient without cardiac damage or with a minimal injury compatible with a long and active life.

(2) Cases in which the patients develop a valvular lesion following the first or second attack of rheumatic fever which persists compensated for a variable time, often throughout a long and active life.

(3) Cases in which the process is active for many years with frequent relapses increasing disability and death at an early age.

All possible variants of these three groups may be found.

Fortunately hyperpyretic rheumatic fever is rare. In this variety temperatures of 43 degrees C and higher occur and the cerebral centers regulating temperature are presumed to be affected, perhaps as a part of an encephalitis. These patients usually have delirium, a symptom otherwise uncommon as long as rheumatic fever is uncomplicated and the patient has not received large doses of salicylates. Skin eruptions are frequently present; most of the patients succumb.

Recurrences of rheumatic fever are common, especially in children, but are less frequent after the age of 14 years. Many patients in the childhood group who recover from rheumatic fever suffer from a recurrence within one year. The average risk for a major recurrence of rheumatic fever is 25 per cent in patients who are four to 13 years old and 8.6 per cent in patients between 14 and 16. The risk of a major recurrence is many times greater in the year following a period of active rheumatic fever than in subsequent years (Wilson and Lubschetz). It is often difficult to decide whether we are dealing with a recurrence or a recrudescence of an existing attack. These observations have an important bearing on prophylactic measures, especially in endangered children.

For reasons already mentioned and particularly because so many cases of rheumatic fever escape diagnosis, it is difficult to ascertain the incidence of permanent cardiac disease. If observations are limited to people known to have had active rheumatic fever, residual cardiac disease may be expected in 85 per cent. Others, as mentioned above, place the incidence at 50 per cent or less, but all agree that the percentage rises with subsequent attacks. Another factor in statistical variation is the duration of the follow-up, often the time elapsing after the acute phase is too short for a positive statement. In a four to eight year

follow up study of veterans Engleman Hollister and Kolb found rheumatic heart disease as a sequel to rheumatic fever in 23.7 per cent of 135 men. In a study of 1000 patients with rheumatic fever Blind and Duckett Jones found evidence of rheumatic heart disease in 44 per cent at the end of an observation period of 20 years.

*Signs of Activity* There are fever, joint inflammation, increased sedimentation rate, positive C reactive protein, leukocytosis, temporary changes in the electrocardiogram, tachycardia, and the presence of subcutaneous nodules. Only one or two of these signs need be present.

### DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Occasionally this is very difficult. Earlier when discussing the gastrointestinal symptoms of rheumatic fever we alluded to a possible confusion with appendicitis.

The differentiation between rheumatic pneumonia and pulmonary congestion is likewise often difficult, while stiffness of the neck or delirium may simulate meningitis. The pulmonary manifestations may lead to the diagnosis of bronchopneumonia or pleurisy, and the renal changes with subsequent hematuria and cylindruria may suggest the erroneous diagnosis of acute nephritis. Confusion with poliomyelitis is said to be common.

Great care must be exercised to exclude an arthritis of gonococcal origin. Not rarely the latter may be polyarticular whereas rheumatic arthritis may be limited to a single joint, so that the opportunity for error is great. The rapid relief afforded by adequate doses of salicylates in rheumatic fever may help in the differential diagnosis of this type of arthritis.

Very difficult is the differentiation between rheumatic fever and the syndrome following infection with streptococci. Joint pains and cardiac changes appear in both conditions. This question is discussed in the chapter on myocarditis. The wrong diagnosis of influenza is often based on noncharacteristic complaints and fever.

There are several acute infectious diseases which may be associated with a secondary polyarthritis. The related features of scarlet fever, dysentery, and so forth usually make the differential diagnosis relatively easy. Likewise the circumstances under which a septic arthritis with great joint destruction develops usually precludes diagnostic errors. Unfortunately this is not always the case in an acute osteomyelitis. Osteomyelitis has a more intense local symptomatology and the process is at the epiphysis rather than in the joint; moreover the constitutional reaction is severe. Nevertheless childhood osteomyelitis is often considered rheumatic fever until sepsis develops; the mistake may be fatal. Rheumatic fever may also be confused with undulant fever and miliary tuberculosis (Freund et al.).

According to the modified criteria of Jones for the diagnosis of rheumatic fever, the presence of two major criteria or one major and two minor criteria indicate a high probability of the presence of rheumatic fever.

Major criteria are (1) carditis (as manifested by the presence of significant murmurs increasing cardiac enlargement as seen by x ray examination per carditis congestive heart failure in the absence of other causes) (2) polyarthritis (3) chorea (4) subcutaneous nodules and finally (5) erythema marginatum

Minor diagnostic criteria are fever arthralgia prolonged P R interval in the electrocardiogram increased sedimentation rate presence of C reactive protein and leukocytosis and evidence of preceding infection with beta hemolytic streptococci. The presence of a previous history of rheumatic fever or of inactive rheumatic heart disease are also minor diagnostic criteria

*Sickling Disease* In sickling disease the appearance of dyspnea arthritis cardiac enlargement with a prominent conus of the pulmonary artery the presence of systolic and even diastolic murmurs and changes in the electrocardiogram may cause confusion. Anemia and thrombotic occlusion of small pulmonary and coronary arteries seem responsible for many of these findings. The presence of lymphadenopathy jaundice anemia reticulocytosis no response to salicylates and a normal sedimentation rate speak in favor of sickling disease. The possibility that in rare instances rheumatic fever and sickling disease may coexist (Plachta and Speer) should be borne in mind

*Rheumatoid Arthritis* In adults active rheumatic fever often resembles rheumatoid arthritis since the latter disorder may start in abruptly with all features of rheumatic fever. Subcutaneous nodules occur in 15 to 20 per cent. Sometimes distinction is possible only after prolonged observation since the initial picture is the same as in rheumatic fever. Formerly narrowing of the joint spaces and limitation of motion as well as poor response to salicylates were considered suggestive of rheumatoid arthritis. In recent years cardiac manifestations such as electrocardiographic changes the appearance of valvular lesions and the like have been reported in rheumatoid arthritis. Among 25 cases of infectious arthritis 14 showed evidence of cardiac involvement identical with that found in rheumatic heart lesions (Baggenstoss and Rosenberg). Even structures resembling Aschoff bodies and subcutaneous nodules have been reported. There is much support for the opinion that both conditions are variants of the same pathologic process (Klinge). The occurrence of cardiac manifestations in such patients however is more rare in our experience than is indicated by some authors. On the basis of their experience with 100 patients with rheumatoid arthritis and 13 post mortem examinations Egelins et al. claimed that the incidence of myocarditis or endocarditis is increased

### PROGNOSIS

Many patients succumb in or shortly after the active phase of this highly serious disease while a large number die in the prime of life from its consequences

Generally speaking the prognosis is more serious when the initial manifestations are severe when activity persists for a long time or when the disease begins early in life. Only 69 per cent survive childhood and only 35 per cent live through adolescence when the process starts early. Fifty per cent of the patients

die within nine years of the onset and only five per cent live beyond the age of 45 (Cohn and Lingg). The more pronounced the myocardial damage is and the earlier cardiac failure develops the worse the prognosis. If a permanent valvular lesion develops the prognosis depends mainly upon such recurrences and complications as atrial fibrillation or pulmonary embolism. Nevertheless it is not uncommon to see a patient who developed a rheumatic valvular lesion at the age of five or six years and is still active and well at 70 or 75.

A good deal depends upon the treatment during the attack and thereafter. In this respect the great advance made in recent years justifies the hope for remarkable improvement in the prognosis in the near future.

### CHOREA

Sydenham's chorea is related to rheumatic fever but the precise association is obscure. It is a childhood and adolescent disease and is more common in girls whereas as mentioned earlier rheumatic fever affects both sexes equally. Sulkiness and emotional outbursts are early signs.

Many physicians regard chorea simply as another manifestation of rheumatic fever. In 20 per cent of cases of chorea rheumatic heart disease develops although there has been no other evidence of rheumatism (Sutton and Dodge). According to other studies the incidence of heart disease in cases of pure Sydenham chorea is over 50 per cent. Some observers believe chorea is succeeded by cardiac complications only when there has been other evidence of rheumatic infection. It is even asserted (Usher) that valvular disease is never the consequence of chorea per se but rather that it is due to an intercurrent rheumatic infection. In one patient with signs of chorea but no other evidence of active rheumatic fever however death occurred accidentally and an active rheumatic endocarditis was found at necropsy (Sutton and Dodge).

While leukocytosis and fever may be absent in chorea it is possible that these signs of activity have vanished by the time chorea appears. The sedimentation rate in chorea is normal.

Of 134 patients with chorea without any other manifestation of rheumatic fever only 3 per cent developed heart disease (Jones and Bland). The authors consider chorea to be a mild manifestation of rheumatic fever not particularly conducive to the development of rheumatic heart disease.

Rheumatic endarteritis of the cerebral vessels (meningoencephalitis) with perivascular infiltrations has been observed and pronounced changes may be found in the corpus striatum.

### TREATMENT OF RHEUMATIC FEVER

A distinction should be made between the treatment of the active phase of rheumatic fever and the measures designed to prevent a recurrence.

*Bed Rest.* This is necessary in active rheumatic fever and must be enforced as long as signs of activity persist and at least three weeks after the sedimentation



rate returns to normal. Increased heart rate, fever and progressive electrocardiographic changes are also indications for rest. Bed rest need not be absolute in a majority of cases — the patient may have bathroom privileges.

Prolonged rest is extremely important for despite the acuteness of some of its manifestations rheumatic fever is a chronic disease. The process may be active and progressive even in the absence of symptoms of poor health.

In the acute stage with arthritis some thought should be given to the proper type of bed as well as to suitable clothing in view of the severe sweating. Attention to these details will add greatly to the patient's comfort. The situation is much the same as in tuberculosis, a disease comparable to rheumatic fever in many respects. Since it is impossible to predict the duration of activity of the disease rest should be enforced for three weeks after all evidence of activity has vanished.

*Drugs.* The therapeutic agent of choice for the management of acute rheumatic arthritis is sodium salicylate, which has been employed for more than half a century in this disease. Many observers believe that the drug furnishes such prompt relief that this in itself may provide a therapeutic diagnosis. While there are patients who do not respond, those whose joint pains are not caused by rheumatic fever may obtain relief from salicylates. It seems that sodium salicylate does not influence the course or duration of the disease nor the progress of complications, but it is capable of rapidly dissipating the joint swelling, relieving pain and acting as an antipyretic. Large doses of sodium salicylate at regular intervals are recommended. A typical daily dose might be one grain per kg. body weight or 10 grams every 4 hours. It has been claimed that when large amounts of salicylates are given day and night a favorable effect is exerted on the course of the disease and cardiac complications can be prevented. This is denied by others. There is no doubt that the doses of sodium salicylate which were formerly administered were often too small. Large doses are more beneficial. It has been claimed that the quick relief of inflammation and pain in the joints is due to the fact that salicylates stimulate protein catabolism and alter the water content of the cells (Reid et al.).

Intravenous administration has been repeatedly recommended in order that a high therapeutic blood level be reached. To be sure it is not always easy to maintain or even reach a high blood level without such untoward effects as tinnitus, deafness, diarrhea, headache, nausea or vomiting. Occasionally these complaints disappear despite continuation of treatment. Dizziness, mental confusion and disturbances of vision or breathing (Kussmaul's respiration) may appear. Since larger doses are employed more often instances of salicylate poisoning are being reported more frequently in medical literature (Troll and Menten).

Hypoprothrombinemia is observed during the administration of large doses of salicylates, particularly if more than six grams are given daily. If hemorrhage occurs preparations of vitamin K should be given.

Salicylates are said to inhibit the spreading effect of hyaluronidase. Like anaproxime they affect enzyme reactions.

The combination of salicylates with sodium bicarbonate for oral administration may diminish gastric irritation. This has been said to prevent the attaining of a high salicylate level in the plasma. However this finding has not been confirmed. Other salicylate preparations and magnesium carbonate in place of sodium bicarbonate have been recommended but these compounds have not been tried on a sufficiently wide scale to form a sound judgment.

Sodium salicylate can be replaced by acetyl-salicylic acid (aspirin) the dose of both compounds is identical. To avoid side effects others recommend an aspirin dosage  $\frac{3}{4}$  of the dose of salicylates and double the amount of sodium bicarbonate. Sodium is to be avoided in heart failure. It is important to administer these compounds every four hours day and night in the amount of 0.15 Gm per kilogram in twenty four hours. This dose is reduced if deafness, tinnitus or nausea appear. In the case of nausea and vomiting sodium salicylate can be given rectally in an amount of 4 to 5 grams in 150 ml of warm starch water. Stolzer recommends 60 mg of aspirin per pound body weight for two days then 40 mg /lb for the third to seventh day and 30 mg /lb from the eighth day on. Instead of sodium salicylate one may administer sodium gentisate which is a metabolic product of the former. The dosage is identical.

Because of the appearance of the rebound phenomenon this treatment is not discontinued suddenly, doses are gradually diminished when all signs of activity have disappeared. The shortened sedimentation rate during therapy with salicylates (or ACTH or cortisone) is not always a sign of improvement but is accounted for by the inhibition of production of fibrinogen and globulin in the liver.

Parely patients either are refractory to salicylate therapy or display untoward symptoms even when relatively small amounts are administered. For these cases aminopyrin (Pyramidon) has been repeatedly recommended. Doses of 2 to 5 grams daily have been given over long periods without the development of toxic symptoms. This treatment carries with it the risk of agranulocytosis. If frequent determinations of the white blood cell count are carried out to detect the early onset of this rare complication no danger is involved. Untoward accidents are more common during the administration of cinchophen derivatives which are rarely used in acute rheumatic fever.

The administration of sulfonamides in the treatment of active rheumatic fever is abandoned. Penicillin is given in the amount of 600 000 units daily in the beginning for one week in order to eradicate infections with streptococci. Then one injection of bicillin is given monthly (see below). No particular success has been observed from the administration of antistreptococcic sera and vaccines. In patients sensitive to penicillin one of the broad spectrum antibiotics is indicated.

**ACTH AND CORTISONE** The administration of pituitary adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) and of adrenocortical hormone (cortisone) in patients with rheumatic fever in the active stage has a profound influence on the process. Within 1 to 2 days the fever subsides, the toxemia disappears, arthralgia is relieved, the sedimentation rate slowly becomes normal, a pericardial effusion

is absorbed tachycardia disappears and even the rheumatic nodules vanish in a few weeks. These effects however are rarely lasting and discontinuation of the administration of these compounds in most cases is soon followed by reappearance of activity.

As with the administration of salicylates here also the discussion continues on whether the illness is actually shortened by these compounds or whether complications are prevented. It seems that this may be the case if treatment is started very early although the same has been claimed — without proof — for salicylates as well.

There is no doubt that in certain cases these hormones may be lifesaving. This is especially true in juvenile patients with advanced cardiac failure that does not respond at all to standard therapy. Here the administration of cortisone or ACTH may lead in the first few days to an aggravation of the condition because of sodium and water retention. Nevertheless marked improvement soon takes place. Even if cessation of therapy leads to the reappearance of signs of congestive heart failure this can be relieved by the same compounds, indeed it is often possible to carry the patient over a critical period in this manner. Pretreatment with cortisone before mitral surgery diminishes the incidence of histologic signs of activity.

Cortisone has the advantage of being active even if given orally but ACTH has a more prolonged effect. Two tablets of cortisone acetate of 25 mg are given four times daily or 120 units of ACTH are injected daily (3 injections of 40 units each). In some patients this therapy is tolerated for six to eight weeks. For prolonged treatment the daily dose of cortisone in men should not exceed 50 mg and in women 30–40 mg.

According to Stolzer cortisone is given intramuscularly in a dose of 300 mg on the first day, 200 mg daily on the second to fifth days and 100 mg daily up to the thirty fifth day and 75 mg daily from the thirty sixth to forty second day. Smaller doses are needed when the newer stronger similar compounds are given.

In children one starts with 80 units of ACTH on the first day followed by 60 units on the second and 40 units daily after two or three days.

Another recommended dosage for corticotropin intramuscularly is as follows on the first to fourth day 120 units daily, 100 units daily from the fifth to seventh days, 80 units daily from the eighth to fourteenth, 60 units daily from the fifteenth to twenty first day and then 40 units daily to the thirty fifth day and 20 units daily until the forty second day.

Prednisone (Meticorten) is given in the amount of 75 mg daily in divided doses every 8 hours. The therapy is continued for 4 weeks in the same dosage then about 5 mg less daily. The total duration of the therapy should last if possible 8 to 12 weeks.

The patient should be watched carefully for side effects. Among others there are rounding of the face (moonface) with acne and Cushing's syndrome (striat hypertension hyperglycemia and glycosuria sodium and water retention).

hirsutism distention of the abdomen mental depression and psychoses The patient should be kept on a sodium poor diet (less than 500 mg of sodium daily) diuretics should be given and potassium ions in the form of fruit juice or 1 to 3 grams of potassium chloride by mouth daily Occasionally an old tuberculosis becomes activated The compounds in particular cortisone and related compounds (hydrocortisone Meticorten) should not be discontinued abruptly The dose is reduced gradually to avoid rebound effects with fever thrombophlebitis rheumatoid arthritis and pleurisy

Recent comparative studies revealed no superiority of treatment of rheumatic fever with these hormones as compared to salicylates Phenylbutazone cortisone corticotropin sodium salicylate and paraminobenzoic acid are of equal value so that patient's tolerance for the treatment is of decisive value (Halliornak) The question is still open It is possible that further studies will show that early therapy with adequate dosage administered for a sufficient time does prevent cardiac involvement and shortens the illness Less rebound phenomena are observed if cortisone is combined with paraminobenzoic acid and salicylates Some observers suspect that the modus operandi of salicylates is also via the adrenals

*Symptomatic Cardiac Therapy* Occasionally it is necessary to treat cardiac complaints and complications symptomatically Although digitalis is administered when the patient shows evidence of passive congestion or cardiac failure it often fails to produce the desired response since the myocardial damage is too far advanced Paracentesis may be necessary for large pericardial effusions At times morphine must be given for a short period to control pain Codeine may be advisable to relieve the cough

*Diet* During the early period fluids should be administered freely and the diet should be light After the first week high caloric but easily digestible diet is indicated Various vitamins have been recommended although the value is uncertain Large doses of ascorbic acid (100 to 200 milligrams daily) are often recommended There is no proof of a beneficial action of succinic or benzoic acid or for the inhalation of oxygen which has been advocated Treatment of the anemia can be postponed until early convalescence Any of the usual iron preparations (ferrous salts) will suffice

*Chorea* There is no specific treatment for chorea Bed rest quiet surroundings and sedation may afford relief The use of some arsenical preparation such as Fowler's solution is a time honored procedure While some physicians have failed to observe any good effects from ACTH or cortisone others seem to have employed the drugs with success

*After Care* Even after signs of activity have vanished patients must be watched carefully for a recurrence The young patient especially is susceptible to a new attack after a cold or a sore throat In general children should not return to school for several months after an attack so that they may be protected against new infections and overexertion Plans should be made for the child to receive instruction after convalescence is well under way It may be difficult

to convince parents of the necessity of prolonged care but emphasis upon the fact that cardiac damage may progress as long as there is any sign of active rheumatic fever helps them to understand the importance of a well ordered prolonged recovery phase

*Education* It is important to educate parents and teachers about rheumatic fever and its subclinical stages (moreover loss of weight) in order to aid in the early recognition of reactivation or recurrence

*Local Treatment* Apart from general therapy there remains the perennial question of local treatment of the joints. The use of cradles to lift bed clothing from the affected extremities and fixation of painful joints by splints and similar measures deserve consideration since they add to the comfort. The value of heat local application of methyl salicylates and similar agents counter irritation and the like is disputed but sometimes they make the situation more tolerable. Sponge baths with a weak alcohol solution should be used daily. In very rare cases with extreme distention of a joint and the resultant pain the problem of aspiration of the exudate in the joint may come under consideration. Aspiration should be done only with complete surgical asepsis. It should be emphasized that this is rarely necessary.

### PROPHYLAXIS

Recurrences are common and each attack means more damage to the heart. Preventive therapy often neglected in the past is therefore of great importance.

*Tonsillectomy* One of the oldest measures to prevent a recurrence is tonsillectomy for tonsillitis often precedes the first and subsequent attacks. However the success of this operation is not impressive it has been reported that the number of recurrences is not influenced at all by the operation. This limited success might be anticipated since pharyngitis like any other infection with hemolytic streptococcus may precipitate acute rheumatic fever. The operation is justified however in patients with recurrent tonsillitis or evident infection of the tonsils. Naturally the operation should never be performed during active rheumatic fever and it should not be done too soon after an acute bout of tonsillitis. At least 6 to 8 weeks should elapse between the disappearance of acute tonsillitis and operation. A bacteremia following tonsillectomy has been found in 28 per cent of the cases. Penicillin should be given (600 000 units) daily for five days pre and postoperatively.

*Environmental Changes* The proposal to isolate children and to prevent contact with others in the same age group (sanatoria or convalescent homes with careful selection of their children) has several advantages but obviously is limited in practical application. Another method to prevent recurrences is to have the endangered patient move away from possible sources of infection that is crowded areas. Permanent transfer to southern climates is also to be considered but the hardship involved in dislocating families and the expense of moving plus the fact that rheumatic fever does occur in the tropics makes such a procedure difficult.

### *Streptococcal Throat Infections*

It is estimated that more than 3 per cent of all patients who have a throat infection caused by hemolytic streptococci develop rheumatic fever. It is now known that penicillin therapy instituted very early will markedly reduce the incidence of rheumatic fever even though it fails to prevent it in every instance consequently all streptococcal infections particularly those in children should be treated with antibiotics. According to Weinstein in patients with scarlet fever who are treated early with only 15 000 units of penicillin intramuscularly every 8 hours for 10 days rheumatic fever appeared in 7 per cent.

According to the recommendation of the American Heart Association in children it is best to give 300 000 units of procaine penicillin with aluminum monostearate intramuscularly and to repeat the injection again after three and six days. In adults 600 000 units of procaine penicillin in oil are injected intramuscularly every third day.

For oral therapy children may take tablets of 200 000 adults 300 000 units one hour before each meal and at bedtime i e four times a day. Treatment should be continued for 10 days.

If the patient is sensitive to penicillin erythromycin can be given 10 milligrams per pound in four divided doses daily for two days and one half this amount daily for the next eight days.

*Prophylaxis* Therapy carried out throughout the year is indicated in all patients who have had rheumatic fever or chorea particularly if a valvular lesion developed. One should start soon after the diagnosis of rheumatic fever is made.

Penicillin is given twice daily orally in the form of a tablet containing 200 000 units before breakfast and preferably an hour before meals. The injection of 1 200 000 units of benzathine penicillin G (bicillin) once a month is highly recommended but allergy or local pain often prevent this therapy. Lozenges or troches of penicillin should not be employed. Sulfadiazine in the amount of 1 gram may be given every morning but this should not be employed if the patient has any evidence of allergy. Gantresin is also effective. Patches sore throats and leukopenia necessitate immediate interruption of this form of therapy.

## **Bibliography**

- Aaron H ■ Sickle cell anemia a clinical study with emphasis on the cardiac status  
New York State M J 51 1611 1951
- American Heart Association Prevention of rheumatic fever and bacterial endocarditis  
Circulation 11 317 1955
- Ash R Influence of tonsillectomy on rheumatic infection Am J Dis Child 55 63 1938  
— The first ten years of rheumatic infection in childhood Am Heart J 56 89 1948
- Baggenstoss A H and Rosenberg F F Cardiac lesions associated with chronic infectious arthritis Arch Int Med 67 241 1941

- Bland F F and Duckett Jones T Rheumatic fever and rheumatic heart disease *Circulation* 4 836 1951
- Bradley W H Epidemic acute rheumatism in a public school *Quart J Med* 1 70 1937
- Breese B B and Cray H Antistreptolysin titer as an aid in the diagnosis of rheumatic fever *New York State J Med* 51 349 1951
- Bruetsch W L Rheumatic brain disease *J A M A* 131 450 1947
- Bywaters I C I The relation between heart and joint diseases including rheumatoid heart disease *Brit Heart J* 12 101 1950
- Chain J and Duthie F S Identity of hyaluronidase and spreading factor *Brit J Exper Path* 21 324 1940
- Clarke J T The geographical distribution of rheumatic fever *J Trop Med* 33 249 1930
- Clarke N I Mosher R I and Clarke C N Iphenolic compounds in the treatment of rheumatic fever *Circulation* 7 247 1953
- Coburn A F and Moore L J The independence of chorea and rheumatic activity *Am J M Sc* 193 1 1937
- Cohn A F and Lingg C The natural history of rheumatic cardiac disease a statistical study I Onset and duration of disease *J A M A* 121 1 1943
- Coombs C F Rheumatic Heart Disease Bristol John Wright & Sons 1924
- Denny F W et al Prevention of rheumatic fever *J A M A* 143 151 1950
- Ditkowsky S P Stevenson I and Campbell J M An epidemic of rheumatic fever in a children's institution following an outbreak of acute tonsillitis *J A M A* 121 991 1943
- Dodge K G Baldwin J S and Weber M W The prophylactic use of sulphanyl amide in children with inactive rheumatic fever *J Pediat* 24 483 1944
- Duran Reynals F Studies on a certain spreading factor existing in bacteria and its significance for bacterial invasiveness *J Exper Med* 58 161 1933
- Egelins N Gohle O Jonsson E and Wahlgreen F Cardiac changes in rheumatoid arthritis *Ann Rheumat Dis* 14 11 1955
- Ihrstrom R and Wahlberg J Polyarthritis: Herzaffektionen und Salizyltherapie *Acta med Scandinav* 58 350 1923
- Ingelman E P Hollister L E and Kolb F O Sequelae of rheumatic fever in men *J A M A* 155 1134 1954
- Ferris E B Jr and Myers W K Initial attacks of rheumatic fever in patients over sixty years of age *Arch Int Med* 55 809 1935
- Fischel E E Frank G W and Ragan C Observations on treatment of rheumatic fever with salicylate ACTH and cortisone *Medicine* 31 331 1952
- Foster D B Association between convulsive seizures and rheumatic heart disease *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 47 254 1942
- Freund F Über rheumatische Knotchen bei chronischer Polyarthritis *Wien Arch f inn Med* 16 73 1928
- Gauld R L and Read F E M Studies of rheumatic disease I Familial association and aggregation in rheumatic disease *J Clin Investigation* 19 393 1940
- Glazebrook A J and Thomson S Acute rheumatism and trauma *Edinburgh M J* 49 674 1941
- Glover J A Milroy lectures on incidence of rheumatic diseases incidence of acute rheumatism *Lancet* 1 499 1930
- Gluck F J Prednisone in active rheumatic carditis *New Engl J Med* 253 518 1955
- Gouley B A and Eisman J The pathology of rheumatic pneumonia *Am J M Sc* 183 359 1932
- Grant R T Observations on endocarditis *Guy's Hosp Rep* 86 20 1936

- Green C A Epidemiology of haemolytic streptococcal infection in relation to acute rheumatism I Haemolytic streptococcal epidemic and first appearance of rheumatism in a training center J Hyg 47 36 1942
- Greenfield J C and Wollsohn J M The pathology of Sydenham's chorea Lancet 2 603 1929
- Griffith C C Rheumatic fever J A M A 133 94 1947
- Cross L Lesions in the roots of the pulmonary artery and aorta in rheumatic fever Am J Path 11 611 1935
- and Fried B M Lesions in the auricular ventricular conduction system occurring in rheumatic fever Am J Path 11 31 1936
- Guerra F The action of sodium salicylate and sulfadiazine on hyaluronidase J Pharmacol & Exper Therap 5 193 1946
- Hall E M and Anderson L R The incidence of rheumatic stigmas in hearts which are usually considered non-rheumatic Am Heart J 26 64 1943
- Halpern B C and Faber H K The cardiopathy of sickle cell anemia and its differentiation from rheumatic carditis J Pediatr 30 289 1947
- Hansen A F Conditions causing confusion in the diagnosis of rheumatic fever in children J A M A 171 987 1943
- Harris T V Failure of massive salicylate therapy to suppress the inflammatory reaction in rheumatic fever Am J M Sc 213 482 1947
- and Harris S Studies in the relation of the hemolytic streptococcus to rheumatic fever Am J M Sc 21 14 1949
- Hawskley J C The nature of growing pains and their relation to rheumatism in children and adolescents Brit M J 1 155 1939
- Hench P S Slocumb C H Barnes A R Smith H L Pooley H F and Kendall E C The effects of adrenal cortical hormone (compound E) on the acute phase of rheumatic fever Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 24 277 1949
- Herbut P A and Manges W F The Masson Body in rheumatic pneumonia Am J Path 21 741 1945
- Hill A G S C reactive protein in rheumatic fever Lancet 2 558 1950
- Hiller R I and Graef I An epidemic of rheumatism at a cardiac camp Am Heart J 271 1928
- Howard C P The rheumatic lung Ann Int Med 7 165 1933
- Johnson A L and Ferenetz C The effect of cortisone therapy on the incidence of rheumatic heart disease New Engl J Med 248 845 1953
- Kaiser A D Results of tonsillectomy J A M A 95 837 1930
- Kalliomaki L Comparison of results obtained with salicylates cortisone (or corticotrophine) phenylbutazone and combinations of sodium salicylate para-aminobenzoic acid and cortisone Acta med Scand 159 473 1955
- Karner H T and Bayless F Coronary arteries in rheumatic fever Am Heart J 2 507 1934
- Keith J D and Ross A Observations on salicylate therapy in rheumatic fever Canad M A J 2 54 1945
- Kelley V C Adams P H and Good R A Serum mucoproteins in patients with rheumatic fever Pediatrics 12 607 1953
- Kissane R W and Koons R A Intra uterine rheumatic heart disease Arch Int Med 52 905 1953
- Klinefelter H F The heart in sickle cell anemia Am J Sc 61 34 1942
- Klinge F Das Gewebebild des fieberhaften Rheumatismus das rheumatische Frühinfiltrat Virchows Arch f path Anat 2 8 438 1930
- Der Rheumatismus Ergebn d allg Path u path Anat 2 1 1933



- Krehl J. Beitrag zur Pathologie der Herzklappenfehler. *Deutsches Arch f klin Med* 46 454 1899
- Kugcl M A and Epstein I Z. Lesions in the pulmonary artery and valve associated with rheumatic cardiac lesions. *Arch Path* 6 247 1928
- Kuttner A C and Meyersbach C. The prevention of streptococcal upper respiratory infections and rheumatic recurrence in rheumatic children by the prophylactic use of sulfanilamide. *J Clin Investigation* 22 77 1943
- Lichtwitz L. Pathology and Therapy of Rheumatic Fever. New York: Grune & Stratton 1944
- Losner S and Volk H W. The fibrinogen polymerization test in active rheumatic disease. *Am J Med Sc* 229 371 1955
- Lustock M J and Kuzuna J F. Rheumatic fever pneumonitis. A clinical and pathological study. *Ann Int Med* 44 337 1956
- Macleod C M and Avery O T. The occurrence during acute infections of a protein not normally present in the blood. *J Exper Med* 73 183 1941
- Massell H F. ACTH and cortisone therapy of rheumatic fever and rheumatic carditis. *New Engl J Med* 261 183 263 1954
- and Warren J F. Effect of pituitary adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) on rheumatic fever and rheumatic carditis. *J A M A* 144 1335 1950
- Masson P, Riopelle J L and Martin P. Poumon Rhumatismal. *Ann d anat path* 14 350 1937
- Meyer K. The biological significance of hyaluronic acid and hyaluronidase. *Physiol Rev* 27 335 1947
- Neuberger K T, Geever E F and Rutledge F K. Rheumatic pneumonia. *Arch Path* 37 1 1944
- Nydick I, Tang J, Stollerman G H, Wróblewski F and La Due J L. The influence of rheumatic fever on serum concentrations of the enzyme glutamic oxalacetic transaminase. *Circulation* 12 795 1955
- Oarrish P L, Taran L M and Starr S. The incidence of heart disease in cases of Sydenham's chorea. *J Pediat* 11 617 1937
- Paul J R. The epidemiology of rheumatic fever and some of its public health aspects. 2nd ed. New York: Metropolitan Life Ins Co for the Am Heart Assn 1943
- Perry C H. The main branches of the coronary arteries in acute rheumatic carditis. *Quart J Med* 23 241 1930
- The aetiology of erythema nodosum. *Brit M J* 2 843 1944
- Plachta A and Speer F D. The coexistence of rheumatic heart disease and sickle cell anemia. *Am J Clin Path* 22 970 1952
- Rantz L A, Maroney M and DiCaprio J M. Antistreptolysin O response following hemolytic streptococcus infection in early childhood. *Arch Int Med* 87 360 1951
- Reid J. Does sodium salicylate cure rheumatic fever? *Quart J Med* 17 139 1948
- Rich A R and Gregory J E. Experimental evidence that lesions with the basic characteristics of rheumatic carditis can result from anaphylactic hypersensitivity. *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 73 239 1943
- Ritchie W T. Acute rheumatic carditis. *Lancet* 2 581 1939
- Romberg E. Über die Bedeutung des Herzmuskels für die Symptome und den Verlauf der acuten Endocarditis und der chronischen Klappenfehler. *Deutsches Arch f klin Med* 53 141 1894
- Ross Cooper E C. Rheumatic infection in childhood. *Arch Dis Childhood* 18 88 1943
- Rössle R. Die nosologische Stellung des Rheumatismus. *Klin Wchnschr* 15 809 1936
- Sable H Z. Toxic reactions following salicylate therapy. *Canad M A J* 52 153 1945

- von Santha K V Über Gefäßveränderungen im Zentralnervensystem bei Chorea Rheumatica Virchow's Arch f path Anat 29 405 1937
- Schottmuller H Behandlung des akuten und chronischen Gelenkrheumatismus mit Pyramidon München med Wehnschr 4 861 1927
- Schultz M P The use of amidopyrine in rheumatic fever Arch Int Med 48 1138 1931
- Seldin D Kaplan H S and Bunting W Rheumatic pneumonia Ann Int Med 26 496 1947
- Selye H The general adaptation syndrome and the disease of adaptation J Clin Endocrinol 11 117 1946
- Slocumb C H Rheumatic complaints during chronic hypercorticism and syndrome during withdrawal of cortisone in rheumatic patients Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clinic 29 655 1953
- Smull K H Wegria R and Leland J The effect of sodium bicarbonate on the serum salicylate level during salicylate therapy of patients with acute rheumatic fever J A M A 125 1173 1944
- Stollerman G H Rusoff J H and Hirschfeld I Prophylaxis against Group A streptococci in rheumatic fever the use of single monthly injections of benzathine penicillin New Engl J Med 250 787 1955
- Stolzer B L Houser H B and Clark E J Therapeutic agents in rheumatic carditis Arch Int Med 55 676 1955
- Sutton L P and Dodge K G The relationship of Sydenham's chorea to other rheumatic manifestations Am J Med Sc 190 656 1933
- Swift H F Public health aspects of rheumatic heart disease J A M A 115 1809 1940
- Swift H F Derick C L and Hitchcock C H Rheumatic fever as a manifestation of hypersensitiveness (allergy or hyperergy) to streptococci Tr A Am Physicians 43 192 1908
- Swift H F Miller C P Jr and Boots R H The leukocyte curve as an index of the infection in rheumatic fever J Clin Investigation 1 197 1944
- Talalaeff V T Der akute Rheumatismus Klinisch anatomische Skizze Klin Wehnschr 8 124 1920
- Taussig H B Acute rheumatic fever the significance and treatment of various manifestations J Pediat 14 581 1939
- Tedeschi C G Wagner B M and Pain K C Studies in rheumatic fever Arch Pathol 60 408 1955
- Tegner W S The treatment of rheumatic disease in the United States and continent of Europe Ann Rheum Assn 1 249 1933
- Tillet W S Edwards L B and Garner R L Fibrinolytic activity of hemolytic streptococci J Clin Investigation 13 47 1934
- Troll M M and Menten M L Salicylate poisoning Am J Dis Child 69 37 1945
- Usher S J The etiology of chorea its relation to rheumatic fever and heart disease Canad M A J 39 565 1939
- Vaubel E Die Eiweißüberempfindlichkeit (Eiweißhyperergie) des Bindegewebes experimentelle Untersuchungen zur Erzeugung des rheumatischen Gewebsschadens im Herzen und in den Gelenken Beitr z path Anat u = allg Path 89 374 193
- Von Glahn W C and Pappenheimer A M Specific lesions of peripheral blood vessels in rheumatism Am J Path 2 235 1926
- Waksman B H The etiology of rheumatic fever Medicine 28 143 1949
- White P D Changes in relative prevalence of various types of heart disease in New England J A M A 152 303 1953

- Wilson M C and Lubschitz R Recurrence rates in rheumatic fever *J A M A* 196 477 1944
- and Schweitzer M D Rheumatic fever as a familial disease Environment communicability and heredity in their relation to the observed familial incidence of the disease I Clin Investigation 16 555 1937
  - Schweitzer M D and Lubschitz R The familial epidemiology of rheumatic fever genetic and epidemiologic studies I Genetic studies *J Pediat* 22 468 1943
- Winblad S Haguin M and Wilander O Studies in the pathogenesis of rheumatic fever antistreptolysin titre in acute tonsillitis and rheumatic fever *Acta med Scandinav Suppl* 196 533 1947
- Winckel N W and Eckel J I Endarteritis of the small cortical vessels in severe infections and toxemias *Arch Neurol & Psychiat* 21 863 1929
- Young D and Schwedel J B The heart in rheumatoid arthritis *Am Heart J* 28 1 1944
- Zdanksi F and Boyd L J Roentgen Diagnosis of Diseases of the Heart and Great Vessels New York Crane & Stratton 1954

## Chapter 11

# Bacterial Endocarditis

**B**ACTERIAL ENDOCARDITIS may be divided into acute and subacute forms but the distinction is often arbitrary. Patients whose illness does not last over six to eight weeks are assigned to the acute type. In this form the picture is invariably that of sepsis. In the subacute variety septic phases may appear but weeks or even months may elapse before evidence of more than slight infection and bacteremic stages are encountered. The introduction of penicillin changed these clinical syndromes and early treatment cures most cases of the acute and subacute type quickly. There is however a much more potent reason for separating the acute and subacute forms: acute bacterial endocarditis usually involves healthy hearts as a complication of general sepsis while subacute bacterial endocarditis (or endarteritis) is a disease involving abnormal hearts or vessels. Actually the duration of both acute and subacute bacterial endocarditis may be the same and another term for these conditions would seem desirable.

### ACUTE BACTERIAL ENDOCARDITIS

*Etiology* This lesion, also called malignant or ulcerative endocarditis, is an infection caused by highly virulent microorganisms. It may accompany any type of sepsis: pneumonia, osteomyelitis, puerperal fever, or sinus thrombosis. The causative agents are hemolytic streptococci, staphylococcus albus, and aureus, pneumococci, gonococci, and influenza bacilli. Sometimes the colon bacillus or the meningococcus is found. Among 44 cases of acute bacterial endocarditis, hemolytic streptococci were found in 21, staphylococcus aureus in 11, bacterium coli communis in 5, and gonococci in 2. Two other patients had meningococcus infections, one staphylococcus albus, and two a mixed infection (Phipps). The bacteremia is not always demonstrable.

*Pathology* Sometimes the valvular vegetations are small and are arranged like those of rheumatic endocarditis; more often they are large and irregularly arranged. The favorite sites of development are the atrial aspect of the mitral and tricuspid valves or the ventricular side of the aortic valves. The large thrombi are composed of clumps of bacteria between layers of fibrin and leukocytes. The vegetations may appear on a normal valve or on one previously diseased. If multiple, the vegetations may attain a diameter exceeding 1 cm. and in this instance they may render the orifice stenotic. The firmly attached vegetations usually have a friable, lobulated surface. With necrosis of the valvular tissue an

ulcer forms with a shaggy base covered by a clot. If the ulceration penetrates a leaflet aneurysm or perforation may follow.

*Symptoms Signs* The clinical picture can hardly be separated from that of sepsis. Irregular chills, sweating, high widely fluctuating fever, extreme malaise, headache, and anorexia prevail in the symptomatology. Very often the participation of the heart in the process is not discernible for the cardiac manifestations (tachycardia and a systolic murmur) stand in the background in comparison to the signs of sepsis. Owing to the stormy course of the disease there is rarely time for the formation of valvular alterations capable of producing diastolic murmurs. The latter alone would establish cardiac involvement. The spleen is often enlarged and sometimes tender. Sooner or later petechiae appear in the skin or conjunctiva. The white blood cell count may be increased to 30,000. The urine shows albumin and red blood cells. Not infrequently embolic occlusion of a large vessel in the spleen, kidneys, brain, mesentery, or extremities rapidly changes the picture.

Acute bacterial gonococcal endocarditis in previous years was not rare. One author found it in 26 per cent of all his patients with acute and subacute bacterial endocarditis in the preantibiotic era. Acute nephritis and uremia are frequent complications. Pneumococcal endocarditis, which often involves the valves of the right heart, was rapidly fatal. The pulmonic valves occasionally are affected in other forms of bacterial endocarditis.

The progressive anemia, leukocytosis, the course of the disease, and its complications are the same as those of sepsis.

*Prognosis* In the past the disease usually has been fatal, and cases with evidence of healing were only rarely encountered. Instances of healing even of gonococcal endocarditis have been reported, but these were rare, as indicated. At the present time, with the general use of antibiotics, most patients, including those who suffer from septicemia caused by meningococci or staphylococci, are saved. Therapeutic problems, however, do arise when the agent (staphylococci) does not respond readily to the antibiotics or when the illness is recognized too late.

*Therapy* Penicillin is the antibiotic of choice in most cases. With meningococcal sepsis sulfonamides are more useful. The other antibiotics are used according to specific indications (see below).

### SUBACUTE BACTERIAL ENDOCARDITIS

Subacute bacterial endocarditis (endocarditis lenta) has been separated from acute bacterial endocarditis chiefly by virtue of its prolonged course and certain features resulting from this time factor and the nature of the etiologic agent. The patient developing subacute bacterial endocarditis already has an acquired or congenital cardiac abnormality. After World War II an increased incidence of this disease was observed in countries where widespread malnutrition was rampant.

**Etiology and Pathogenesis** The causative agent in over 90 per cent of the cases is streptococcus viridans which is an organism of low virulence. This group of streptococci can be subdivided into several strains. Of special importance is the most common causative agent the streptococcus salivarius which responds readily to penicillin treatment. Another streptococcus fecalis (enterococcus) is a normal inhabitant of the human intestines. In rare cases hemolytic streptococci, meningococci, influenza bacilli, staphylococcus aureus and albus, diplococcus pneumoniae, L. scherichii, coli, Salmonella, Neisseria catarrhalis, streptobacillus moniliformis, Bacillus proteus, Pseudomonas aeruginosa and even gonococci — all agents usually responsible for the acute type of bacterial endocarditis — may produce the subacute form when the virulence of the provocative agent is low. In rare cases streptothrix, candida albicans and members of the Brucella group are etiologic factors. Occasionally two or even three microorganisms have been found simultaneously.

Under normal conditions blood plasma and leukocytes destroy the streptococcus viridans quickly even when large numbers are injected intravenously. Fibrin, however, which is soon deposited on affected endothelium and endocardium, protects the microorganism from destruction. Blood is bacteriocidal only for organisms free in the circulation. In subacute bacterial endocarditis the body seems biologically immune to the infectious agents in contrast to the hypersensitive reactions of the connective tissue to hemolytic streptococci in rheumatic fever.

**PREVIOUS CARDIAC CONDITIONS** It is very unusual for a subacute bacterial endocarditis to develop in a healthy heart. Even if the valves occasionally seem normal on gross examination, histologic sections usually reveal new or old rheumatic changes. In a vast majority of cases an old rheumatic valvular lesion is present. In this respect the mitral valve is involved a little more commonly than the aortic valve. Not rarely, subacute bacterial infection is superimposed upon a congenital heart lesion, especially on a patent ductus arteriosus, a ventricular septum defect or coarctation of the aorta. In rare cases the disease develops on the basis of a syphilitic aortitis or atheromatosis.

The cardiac malformations which form the basis for subacute bacterial endocarditis sometimes are too trifling to produce any clinical symptoms or signs. Thus the disease may develop in patients with bicuspid aortic valves of a congenital type (bicuspid valves are occasionally the result of a former rheumatic infection) or on a malformed pulmonic valve.

Of interest is the discovery of subacute bacterial endocarditis in the dog as the result of strain Mural and valvular vegetations were observed after the creation of a large arteriovenous fistula in dogs and were also seen clinically in this condition (Lillehei, Parmley et al.) presumably because of the combination of stress and infection. Subacute bacterial endocarditis was found in a patient with mitral regurgitation caused by rupture of a papillary muscle which resulted from myocardial infarction (Leman) in mural thrombi following myocardial infarction (Joffe and Feil) and after endocardial trauma in connection with

cardiac catheterization. Bacterial endocarditis may appear during treatment with ACTH owing to diminished resistance. In arteriovenous fistulas the focus spreading the infection was occasionally the fistula itself and the patients were cured by its extirpation.

Evidence of active rheumatic fever is found in an astonishingly high percentage of patients with subacute bacterial endocarditis. Some pathologists have found activity (presence of Aschoff bodies) in most of their patients with rheumatic heart disease who succumbed to subacute bacterial endocarditis. The streptococcus *viridans* infection is often implanted on a fresh rheumatic valvulitis. The disease seems to follow various infections which erode the endothelium and produce deposits of fibrin.

Trauma and contamination suffice. Streptococci of the *viridans* type are often present in the blood; one wonders, as Sir Thomas Lewis did, why subacute bacterial endocarditis does not occur more frequently.

An experimental form of the disease can easily be provoked by creating a valvular lesion and injecting streptococcus *viridans* into the blood stream. The mechanical factor in its appearance is demonstrated by the fact that the lesion develops on that part of the valve which is most exposed to mechanical irritations. In a patent ductus arteriosus the lesion occurs in the wall of the pulmonary artery where the blood forced by aortic pressure through the duct strikes the wall of the artery. In a patent ventricular septum the lesion develops in the right ventricle at the point where blood is forced through the septal defect, and in coarctation of the aorta it is found near the stenotic isthmus. In the cases of patent ductus arteriosus and aortic coarctation we are of course dealing with an endarteritis rather than an endocarditis.

**PORTAL OF ENTRY.** The most frequent portal of entry is the upper respiratory tract, after which comes the urogenital system, otitis and wound infections. Not rarely subacute bacterial endocarditis follows a perfectly normal delivery.

There is a frequent opportunity for implantation of streptococci in areas with damaged endothelium, since blood cultures often reveal the presence of streptococcus *viridans* in patients without subacute bacterial endocarditis. In rheumatic fever nonhemolytic streptococci are found in almost 10 per cent (Lichtman and Gross, Swift and Kinsella). Streptococcus *viridans* bacteremia is common after irritation of foci of infection — after massage of infected gums or tonsils, for example. Among 138 patients who had teeth extracted, a transitory bacteremia due to nonhemolytic streptococci was found in 60.9 per cent; the incidence was even higher (75 per cent) in patients with a chronic mouth infection. Among 110 patients with a septic mouth, streptococcic bacteremia was found in 10.9 per cent in a single examination, irrespective of any operative procedure (Olell and Elliott). In another study (Palmer and Kempf) one or two teeth were extracted in 82 patients and streptococcus *viridans* bacteremia followed in 13.4 per cent. The clinical experience that subacute bacterial endocarditis frequently follows extraction of teeth, upper respiratory tract infections, tonsillectomy, and puerperal infections is in accord with these results. Nonhemolytic streptococci are likewise

found in the blood after a curettage or after a simple surgical operation such as an appendectomy. Bacterial endocarditis may follow genito urinary manipulations (Bertic) or cardiac surgery (Kosow and Nahas). From all data now available it seems that infection of the blood stream is a common event and gives opportunity for streptococci to invade a locus minoris resistentiae in the heart. Staphylococci are often found in the blood of patients who suffer from osteomyelitis and in drug addicts who give themselves injections of morphine or heroin without the necessary precautions.

**AGE.** The disease is observed at all ages having been reported in infants as well as in patients over 60 years old. It is not common in children, however.

**Incidence.** It is difficult to evaluate the incidence of the disease. Apparently subacute bacterial endocarditis complicates about 5 per cent of rheumatic heart lesions. In two Boston hospitals Gelfman found subacute bacterial endocarditis in 25 per cent of patients with rheumatic heart disease. This figure does not reflect the true incidence of the disease in congenital heart lesions; it is much higher.

**Pathology.** Ulcers and thrombotic vegetations form on the affected valve on the endocardium or in an artery. The vegetations consist of remnants of blood platelets, white and red blood cells, microorganisms and great masses of fibrin and vary in size, color and consistency. They may be small and nodular or they may form large irregular club-shaped friable masses. The pedunculated formations are often firm and contain fibrous tissue or calcium deposits as evidence of a tendency to heal.

The vegetations may be large enough to obstruct the flow of blood. Valves may be perforated and chordae tendineae may rupture. At times mycotic aneurysms occur in various vessels but they are especially prone to develop in the aorta, the arteries of the brain and the heart and in the extremities. Presumably they are the result of infected emboli lodging in the vessel wall. Embolism may occur anywhere and not rarely causes death. If the right heart is involved (in patients with ventricular septal defects) pulmonary embolism is frequent. Embolic or diffuse hemorrhagic nephritis is common. Acute myocarditis with hemorrhages and minute infarcts also occurs regularly (Saphir).

In all stages there may be bacteria free periods with negative blood cultures and according to some observers no organisms in the vegetations.

**Symptoms.** In many cases the disease begins insidiously with very vague and indefinite initial symptoms such as general malaise, cough, loss of weight, transitory arthralgia, fatigue, loss of appetite, sweating, aches and pains in various parts of the body. At times the onset is associated with a cold or a sore throat. Under these circumstances the physician may not be consulted until much later, months may elapse before the situation is regarded more seriously. In other cases the disease begins as a polyarthritides and resembles rheumatic fever clinically, only gradually does the picture of subacute bacterial endocarditis become evident. A sudden chill, hemiplegia or pain in the finger tips and toes caused by small emboli are the factors that impel some patients to summon a



physician and seek help. Often intolerable abdominal pain indicates embolism of the spleen, kidney or intestine.

In many cases patients are free from complaints and are even euphoric.

If the fever were not present, "I would be well" is a commonly heard statement.

**Signs.** While there is no characteristic single sign of subacute bacterial endocarditis, the syndrome is so typical that the fully developed disease is easily recognized. At the beginning the diagnosis is difficult and errors are committed in two directions. Not rarely the unwarranted diagnosis is made on the basis of fever and a heart murmur in patients who are later discovered to be suffering from pyelitis or some other febrile disease. Errors are also made in failing to consider the possibility of subacute bacterial endocarditis from the start, a mistake the patient's family rarely forgives.

The temperature may show all variations from a slight elevation to a septic intermittent or remittent curve with chills. The fever may disappear completely for weeks and even for months.

The heart rate is usually not abnormally rapid. Arrhythmias are uncommon for subacute bacterial endocarditis. Usually develops in a compensated heart without evidence of congestion. Myocardial inflammatory lesions are often present and decompensation, which may occur in the course of the disease, necessitates the use of digitalis.

Inspection usually shows a yellow-muddy (cafe au lait) discoloration of the pallid skin, coincidental with a secondary anemia. This secondary anemia may become a very prominent feature as the disease progresses. The fingers are often clubbed. Few diseases manifest such rapid development of this change. Since this sign is very rare in uncomplicated rheumatic valvular disease, the presence of clubbing in a febrile cardiac patient should immediately arouse the suspicion of subacute bacterial endocarditis.

In a majority of cases cardiac examination reveals the typical features of a rheumatic or congenital heart lesion. Occasionally the cardiac involvement is too slight to produce signs detectable by auscultation or percussion, but such cases are rare. Murmurs change in intensity, new murmurs appear or murmurs which were present for years vanish. This is because large vegetations may obstruct an orifice, close a deficiency in the interventricular septum or close a patent ductus arteriosus.

**Petechiae**, often appearing in crops, develop in the neck, under the nails, above and below the clavicle, around the inner malleolus, and on the conjunctiva and the soft palate. They result from hemorrhage caused by small bacterial emboli in capillaries. Often they have a white center due to a minute necrosis created by the embolus. Splinter hemorrhages under the nails, with or without this white center, are not pathognomonic for they may occur in various infections and are not rare in generalized lupus erythematosus.

**Osler nodes** are very tender, pea-size nodules which appear in the finger tips, toes (often under the nails) and on the vola manus and planta pedis. They cause local swelling, and their tenderness may distress the patient for several days.

According to most observers the nodes as well as the petechiae derive from emboli. Others attribute them to a proliferative arteritis. The skin over the affected area appears red or a redness shimmers through from the deeper parts. The pain disappears in a few days and only a purple spot remains for a while. The picture is modified if deeper or more superficial arteries are involved. Janeway lesions are maculae or papulae not painful 1 to 4 mm in diameter appearing on the palms or the soles of the feet.

Purpura occurs rarely.

The spleen is enlarged and hard in about 50 per cent of the cases. The enlargement is greatly accentuated by embolism to this organ. If embolism occurs late the spleen may not be palpable for several months.

*Laboratory tests.* Laboratory examination reveals a positive blood culture in 75 to 90 per cent of the cases. Since as pointed out earlier nonhemolytic streptococci are not rarely found in the blood in other conditions such as rheumatic fever, rheumatoid arthritis and dental infections, three or four positive blood cultures should be secured if possible to verify the diagnosis. On the other hand, one or more negative reports do not eliminate the possibility of subacute bacterial endocarditis for the disease may be associated with negative blood cultures over a considerable period of time. The incidence of negative blood cultures is reduced by the taking of fairly large amounts of blood for culture. At least 20 ml of blood should be drawn and on the first day a culture should be taken every hour for five hours. One should always employ both plates and broth cultures. The best time to withdraw the blood is when the patient's temperature is rising or during a chill. It is reported that the incidence of positive blood cultures is high if from bone marrow aspirations. Instances are known however in which cultures were negative from the bone marrow and positive from venous blood. Arterial blood has no advantage over venous blood. The growth of some nonhemolytic streptococci may not be visible before three weeks.

From 140 patients with nontreated subacute bacterial endocarditis Griffith and Levinson obtained 129 positive cultures on the first day of hospitalization, 8 positive ones on the second day and only 3 on the third day. In this connection it is important to note that less than 3 per cent of the patients who failed to show a positive blood culture on the first two days showed one later. The culture is often sterile in subacute bacterial endocarditis within the right heart.

In 46 per cent of 135 blood cultures Loewe and Altmeppen found a streptococcus with a distinctive combination of properties which the authors called streptococcus *sublebens*. It was the causative organism in 40 of 63 subjects with subacute bacterial endocarditis. Standard dosage of penicillin often is not sufficient in these patients and the disease recurs.

In every instance an anaerobic culture should be made. Penicillinase should be used whenever the patient has received penicillin about 24 hours prior to withdrawal of the blood.

Sensitivity tests measuring the inhibition of growth of the responsible agent by different antibiotics should be done if possible. More than 90 per cent of all

strains of streptococcus viridans are inhibited by 0.01 to 0.1 units of penicillin per cubic centimeter

Usually there is a moderate increase of sedimentation rate. A hypochromic anemia is common and often is progressive. The white blood cell count does not change characteristically, but a polymorphonuclear leukocytosis may be present. However, leukopenia can also occur. Large phagocytic cells are occasionally seen in the blood smear. The Wasserman reaction may be positive in the absence of syphilis.

**Electrocardiogram** The electrocardiogram affords no diagnostic help. Changes may appear and are to be expected in view of the frequent alterations of the myocardium, but they are not characteristic. Extrasystoles and atrial fibrillation are rare.

**Urine** The urine shows a great number of red blood cells in many cases and even gross hematuria. The latter may temporarily increase after renal infarction. In the intervals between renal infarctions, albumin, hyaline and granular casts are observed.

**Duration** This varies greatly, since the course may be suddenly interrupted by a lethal cerebral embolus, or the disease may assume a very protracted character and last for more than two years. When the patient succumbs to a complication early in the course the diagnosis is often missed. Long bacteria-free intermissions with relative well being are also encountered.

**Complications** Most of the complications are due to emboli or to mycotic embolic aneurysms. The damage caused by emboli depends upon the location and size of the occluded artery and the frequency with which embolism recurs. Their appearance cannot be predicted or prevented. Cerebral emboli may cause hemiplegia or paresis. Renal embolism is responsible for severe backache and hematuria. Embolism of a coronary artery may produce myocardial infarction with prolonged anginal pain as seen in coronary thrombosis. Valvular thrombi cause obstruction and valvular ulcerations cause perforations. Perforation of the heart may follow an abscess of the ventricular wall. If the endocardial thrombi are situated in the right ventricle (as happens in an inter-ventricular septal defect) pulmonary emboli are released and simulate the picture of a pneumonia. Generally, embolism causes a rise of temperature, leukocytosis and increase of the sedimentation rate. It should be emphasized that an embolism may occur months after the illness seems to be under control as the result of antibiotic therapy.

Pericarditis occurs occasionally. A subarachnoid hemorrhage may be the first sign of the disease. Emboli in a peripheral artery may cause gangrene. A splenic abscess may follow embolism of this organ and may rupture into the peritoneal cavity causing peritonitis.

Mesenteric infarction and intestinal gangrene are occasionally observed.

Uremia due to nephritis terminates the scene in a large percentage of cases. The nephritis may be diffuse, acute or subacute. Lohlein's embolic nephritis may exist.

Sometimes psychoses appear that may be connected with anatomic changes in the nervous system. There is also severe headache, double vision, and meningeal signs caused by emboli. Signs of brain abscess occur. Subarachnoid hemorrhages occur because of rupture of mycotic aneurysms.

*Differential Diagnosis.* Any unexplained fever, particularly in a cardiac patient, whatever the age, speaks in favor of subacute bacterial endocarditis. The differentiation from rheumatic fever is especially difficult since both may be present simultaneously, and the diagnosis of subacute bacterial endocarditis is often missed in these cases because the physician fails to consider its presence. One of the most common conditions wrongly diagnosed is grippe or viral infection.

*Prognosis.* The outlook in this disease became brighter with the advent of intensive antibiotic therapy.

In rare cases spontaneous recovery is possible. Distinct healing processes with scar formation and even lime salt deposits have been observed at necropsy. According to some estimates, these spontaneous recoveries occur in 1 to 3 per cent of all diagnosed cases. The latter figure is in our opinion too optimistic, at least if the fully developed cases alone are taken into consideration. But cases with a mild infection that run a benign course do occur; they are more prone to spontaneous cure and respond better to treatment. They occur more often among the cases with congenital abnormalities. One must be cautious in pronouncing a patient cured, for recurrences may last as long as six months. The prognosis is undoubtedly better for these cases where combined penicillin therapy and surgical intervention are applicable, as in patent ductus arteriosus or an infected arteriovenous fistula.

The incidence of cures approaches 80 per cent if all cases of subacute bacterial endocarditis are considered, but in bacteremia with staphylococci it drops to 52 per cent. Patients die from complications such as emboli and cardiac failure even after the endocarditis is cured.

*Therapy.* Therapy starts with prophylaxis. Oral sepsis must be treated carefully; infected teeth and tonsils should be removed.

In view of the frequent occurrence of temporary bacteremia after dental extractions or tonsillectomy, antibiotics are administered prophylactically for a few days before and after tooth extraction. The same method is employed for five days after delivery.

The treatment of subacute bacterial endocarditis should start as soon as the diagnosis is made. One should not wait for weeks until a positive blood culture is obtained, since irreparable damage may be inflicted in the interim by the myocarditis or embolism. It is better occasionally to treat a patient without absolute proof of the diagnosis than to wait too long.

When the diagnosis is suspected, five blood cultures should be taken at hourly intervals and therapy should be started immediately after. It should be remembered that persistently negative cultures are not rare.

The recent findings that penicillin penetrates fibrin and that it persists in tissue fluids much longer than in the blood (as well as the general availability of this antibiotic) make it the remedy of choice.

In 95 per cent of the cases the administration of 2 000 000 units of penicillin daily for a few weeks is sufficient to cure the patient. In some cases smaller doses suffice but one can never predict this in advance. If sensitivity tests are available early, one chooses a dose which is 4 to 5 times higher than that required to inhibit the causative agent *in vitro*. Sometimes sensitivity may be high *in vitro* but not *in vivo*. Most nonhemolytic streptococci are sensitive to 0.1 unit of penicillin per cc. or less. Enterococci may be sensitive to 1 to 5 units. Experience with the sulfonamides has shown that pure inhibition does not suffice to cure the disease.

We recommend starting with the administration of 600 000 units of procaine penicillin 4 times a day. Others recommend the administration of penicillin 1 000 000 U every three hours. If cardiac failure is present the potassium salt is preferred. This makes greater peak levels than repository penicillin and fibrin deposits are penetrated better. It is important to note (Eagle et al.) that if the concentration of penicillin in the blood exceeds a certain level the effect is no greater than at a lower level. In the intervals between injections when the level of penicillin falls the bacteria do not multiply and many damaged microorganisms are disposed of by the body.

In most cases the fever subsides in a few days, an unusual sense of well being is experienced by the patient, the appetite improves and the heart rate becomes slower. When all signs of activity disappear we continue the same dose for three more weeks. Cultures if positive at the beginning are taken repeatedly, even if the fever subsides. A positive culture may indicate that the dose is insufficient. One should bear in mind that fever may be due to the presence of active rheumatic fever, the absorption of abnormal diseased foci to embolism or sensitivity to penicillin. In the latter case another penicillin is used (penicillin O instead of penicillin G) which is antigenically different.

If there is no clinical evidence that the disease is becoming arrested or if the culture persists positive the dose is increased. Daily doses up to 100 million units have been found necessary and have been given with success.

If enterococci are found one starts with 10 to 20 million units daily and adds twice daily an intramuscular injection of 1 gram of a mixture of streptomycin and dihydrostreptomycin. In these cases penicillin is also administered intravenously in doses of 500 000 units or more every two hours. If the microorganism is susceptible the dose may soon be reduced. The combination of penicillin with other antibiotics has been claimed to reduce the activity of penicillin but this does not hold for streptomycin. In staphylococcal endocarditis a combination of penicillin with erythromycin (3 to 4 grams daily intravenously) or bacitracin may prove successful. Sometimes bacitracin alone cures the endocarditis provoked by gram positive bacteria. 100 000 units are given daily, one third or one fourth of this amount in each dose intramuscularly. Nephrotoxic effects have been reported

Terramycin and Chloromycetin given alone seem merely to exert bacteriostatic effects. In some instances successes have followed the use of dihydrostreptomycin combined with Terramycin. Neomycin sulfate intramuscularly may help in staphylococcal endocarditis, there is danger of injuring the acoustic nerve but this risk must be taken in a disease which is so serious. The danger is not great if only one gram (of neomycin) is given daily for 10 days. Usually 0.25 Gm is injected every 6 hours. In infections with proteus or pseudomonas aeruginosa one must administer polymyxin B in spite of potential renal damage. This danger has been lessened by newer preparations. One administers 100-200 mg daily intramuscularly divided into four doses. These compounds are often lifesaving. In the endocarditis of brucellosis the combination of Aureomycin with dihydrostreptomycin has proved useful. Infections with bacillus influenzae and parainfluenzae may be treated with the same mixture or with Terramycin in place of Aureomycin. Laboratory sensitivity tests are decisive for the choice of the antibiotic.

It is of interest that 6% per cent of the patients who died when the endocarditis seemed controlled had viable microorganisms in the valves. Therefore in advanced long standing disease it is well to continue therapy for more than three weeks after clinical improvement is established.

For the first three or four weeks the patient must rest in bed but in the last few weeks he may be up and about provided no exertion is undertaken. The circulation must be watched since myocardial damage often leads to heart failure.

In order to increase the blood level of penicillin by preventing its rapid excretion by the renal tubules simultaneous administration of other agents has been recommended. Caronamide seems effective. 1.5 to 2.0 Gm are given every four hours. Benemid, diotrist, paraminohippuric acid have also been employed. Benamide (Irobencid, Baker and Pilkington) is usually well tolerated and preferred. One half gram is given every 6 hours. In most cases these drugs can be omitted.

After the illness seems cured the patient is advised to watch his temperature every two hours one day a week for a year so that therapy is started early if the disease shows evidence of recurrence. Such recurrences are not rare. Often it is difficult to decide whether a recrudescence or reinfection has occurred.

Short term therapy in various forms has been recommended. In one investigation 600,000 units of aqueous penicillin was given every 6 hours with a mixture of 1.0 Gm of equal parts of streptomycin and dihydrostreptomycin (Combistrep or Districin) intramuscularly (If not more than 2 grams of the mixture are given daily for not longer than 4 weeks vestibular damage (streptomycin) and auditory nerve damage (dihydrostreptomycin) occurs rarely.) This was continued for five days the injections were then given at 12 hour intervals (Hall et al.) In a certain percentage of cases this short term therapy is sufficient the type in which success will be secured cannot be foretold. Therefore prolonged therapy with moderate dosage seems better than short term method.

### TERMINAL (CACHECTIC) ENDOCARDITIS

The small valvular vegetations in rheumatic endocarditis should not be confused with similarly located small thrombi seen occasionally along the closure line of the mitral and aortic valves in cachectic patients suffering from cancer, uremia, leucemia and other wasting diseases.

These thrombi may reach the size of a pea and in rare instances are even larger. They do not contain much fibrin but are composed mainly of amorphous masses derived from blood platelets. The finer mechanism of their formation is unknown. They are nonbacterial but may be invaded by microorganisms just before death.

Careful histologic examination of valves showing this type of endocarditis may disclose evidence of an old rheumatic infection occasionally terminal endocarditis is superimposed on an atherosclerotic process of the valve.

Patients showing this type of endocarditis not rarely have thrombosis of the systemic veins (Grant) they may even present the clinical picture of migratory phlebitis.

The process is not always terminal. Healing is possible if the patient recovers from the associated chronic cachectic disease. Because there is no evidence of inflammation the term degenerative verrucal endocarditis has been proposed (Allen and Sirota).

### ENDOCARDITIS IN GENERALIZED LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS

**Etiology** The etiology of this interesting lesion known for many years only as a skin affection is obscure. It seems to be allergic in origin and belongs to the group of so called collagen diseases. Sunlight may aggravate the process. The resemblance to other forms of lupus is rather remote. Over 80 per cent of the cases are encountered in women before the menopause although no endocrine factor has been demonstrated.

Of great importance is the finding of L. E. (lupus erythematosus) cells that is large polymorphonuclear cells containing nuclear debris in the blood and bone marrow. In rare cases they are also found in the pericardial fluid. They result from the phagocytosis of free nuclear material from another leucocyte of the same type. The cells are found in 96 per cent of the cases. A negative test does not militate against the diagnosis. False positive tests are exceedingly rare.

**Pathology** The collagenous fibers all over the body are affected and degenerative necrotic lesions appear in the kidney, skin and heart.

The endocardium is involved in about 30 per cent of the cases (Libman and Sacks). Verrucae appear on both sides of the valve but not at the line of closure and mural vegetations often develop on the atrial endocardium. Vegetations may also develop between the papillary muscles particularly in the right heart. These changes were originally described as atypical or indeterminate endocarditis. There is evidence of myocardial degeneration with interstitial infiltration and exudate. The pericardium and pleura are often involved in a fibrinous inflammation. Bronchopneumonia is common. In the kidney a peculiar thickening of the capillary walls called wire loop changes is characteristic. The skin lesions

are not pathognomonic on microscopic examination and consist of a cellular infiltration into the corium. The vascular lesions are composed of capillary dilatation, proliferation of the endothelium and necrotizing inflammation, sometimes with thrombosis of the smaller arteries. No Aschoff bodies are found and no bacteria are demonstrable in the tissues.

**Symptoms Signs** The disease often begins insidiously with low irregular fever, joint pain, weakness and loss of weight. A lymphadenopathy is often found. Typical leukopenia is usually associated with progressive anemia and thrombocytopenia. Albuminuria is common. Often there is a skin eruption consisting of disc-like patches with raised red edges and depressed centers. When the covering desquamates, dull white scars are left behind. These lesions may be seen on the hands, feet, ears or chest; in their most typical form they merge to form a butterfly pattern over the nose and on the cheeks. The cutaneous signs may be outstanding but in some cases they are absent. They may appear after sunburn or the use of ultraviolet light or x-rays. The electrocardiogram may show abnormal T waves in many or all leads.

False positive serologic tests for syphilis are obtained.

Physical examination of the heart shows nothing characteristic. A systolic murmur may be audible and is without significance. Evidence of pleural or pericardial involvement may be obtained.

**Therapy** Cortisone (150 to 200 mg) daily or ACTH (50 to 150 mg) often arrest the illness and in a crisis may bring about improvement in 24 to 48 hours. While some observers claim this improvement does not increase life expectancy, others believe that the patient may be kept alive for an indefinite period (Soffer et al). After improvement the dose is reduced; sometimes doses as small as 5 milligrams of ACTH daily suffice. All the precautions necessary in connection with this therapy must be observed.

Recently prednisone and prednisolone, which are said to be four times as potent as cortisone, are used in lupus erythematosus. As the initial suppressive daily dose, Bollet et al recommend 20 to 60 mg, usually 30 or 40 mg daily, as a maintenance dose 18 mg were given daily. Effectiveness and limitation of therapy with these drugs are the same as with cortisone and corticotropin.

#### PARE TYPES OF ENDOCARDITIS

Tuberculosis may cause an endocarditis in which tubercle bacilli are demonstrable in the valvular vegetations (Davie). This endocarditis is not unusual in miliary and disseminated tuberculosis and it does not affect the closure line of the valves (Baker).

A variety of organisms have been recovered from the valves including *Bruella abortus* and organisms such as actinomyces; other fungi are also known to produce a mycotic endocarditis.

In exceptional cases other agents such as erysipelas; the causative agent of swine erysipelas causes endocarditis in man. Loeffler described an endocarditis parietalis fibroplastica with eosinophils (up to 70 per cent) in the blood.



## Bibliography

- Ahern J J and Kirby W M M Cure of subacute bacterial endocarditis with penicillin and chloramphenicol *J A M A* 150 33 1952
- Allen A C and Sirota J H The morphogenesis and significance of degenerative verrucal endocarditis (terminal endocarditis) endocarditis simplex non bacterial thrombotic endocarditis *Am J Path* 20 1025 1944
- Babes V Über die pathologische Bedeutung der Anwesenheit von nur zwei Ventrikulklappen *Virchows Arch f path Anat* 124 362 1891
- Bachr C and Lande H Clomerulonephritis as a complication of subacute streptococcus endocarditis *J A M A* 75 789 1920
- Baker C P and Fikkington T Benemid in the treatment of endocarditis *Lancet* 2 25 1952
- Baker R D Endocardial tuberculosis *Arch Path* 19 611 1935
- Baylis R I S Subacute bacterial endocarditis a review of 41 cases *St Thomas Hosp Gaz* 124 1944
- Beattie J W Intracoccal endocarditis *Brit M J* 2 25 1954
- Bloomfield A L Diagnosis and prevention of bacterial endocarditis *Circulation* 8 200 1953
- Blumer C The digital manifestations of subacute bacterial endocarditis *Am Heart J* 1 257 1928
- Boger W I Kay C F Fisman S H and Yeoman F F Caronamide a compound that inhibits penicillin excretion *Am J M S* 214 493 1947
- Bollet A J and Bunim J J Treatment of systemic lupus erythematosus with prednisone and prednisolone *J A M A* 155 1501 1955
- Call J D Baggenstoss A H and Merritt W A Endocarditis due to *Brucella* report of two cases *Am J Clin Path* 14 508 1944
- Cates J E and Christie R V Subacute bacterial endocarditis *Quart J Med* 20 93 1951
- Clawson B J The Aschoff nodule *Arch Path* 9 664 1929
- Clawson B J Bell E T and Hartzell T B Valvular diseases of the heart with special reference to the pathogenesis of old valvular defects *Am J Path* 2 193 10 6
- Cotton T F Clubbed fingers as a sign of subacute infective endocarditis *Heart* 34 1927
- Crosson I W Boger W I Shaw C C and Miller A K Caronamide for increasing penicillin plasma concentrations in man *J A M A* 134 1528 1947
- Davie T B Tuberculous verrucose endocarditis *J Path & Bact* 41 313 1936
- De Jong R V Central nervous system complications in subacute bacterial endocarditis *J Nerv & Ment Dis* 85 397 1937
- Denmann H C Subacute bacterial endocarditis an analysis of fifty cases with autopsy findings *Ann Int Med* 16 904 1942
- Dowling H F Lepper M Caldwell E P and Spies H W Staphylococcal endocarditis *Medicine* 31 155 1952
- Dubois E L Commons R R Starr P Stein C S Jr and Morrison R Corticotropin and cortisone treatment for systemic lupus erythematosus *J A M A* 149 995 1952
- Fagle H Fleischman R and Musselman A D Effect of schedule of administration on the therapeutic efficacy of penicillin *Am J Med* 9 290 1950
- Finland M Treatment of bacterial endocarditis *New Engl J Med* 250 372 1954
- Friedberg C K Subacute bacterial endocarditis revision of diagnostic criteria and therapy *J A M A* 144 627 1950
- Treatment of subacute bacterial endocarditis with Aureomycin *J A M A* 148 98 1952
  - The use of drugs in the treatment of bacterial endocarditis *North Amer M Clin* 1954 p 385

- Galbreath W R and Hull F Sulfonamide therapy of bacterial endocarditis results in 42 cases *Ann Int Med* 18 201 1943
- Gelfman R The incidence of acute and subacute bacterial endocarditis in rheumatic heart disease *Ann Int Med* 19 253 1943
- Grant H T Observations on endocarditis *Cuy Hosp Reports* 86 20 1936
- Griffith G C and Levinson D L Subacute bacterial endocarditis *Calif Med* 71 403 1949
- Cross L The cardiac lesions in Libman Sacks disease *Am J Path* 16 315 1940
- and Fried B M The role played by rheumatic fever in the implantation of bacterial endocarditis *Am J Path* 13 69 1937
- and Friedberg C K Non bacterial thrombotic endocarditis *Arch Int Med* 58 690 1936
- Hall B Dowling H F and Kellow W Successful short term therapy of streptococcal endocarditis with penicillin and streptomycin *Am J Med Sc* 130 73 1955
- Hamburger M and Stein L *Streptococcus viridans* in subacute bacterial endocarditis *J A M A* 149 546 1952
- Hamman L Healed bacterial endocarditis *Ann Int Med* 11 175 1937
- and Rienhoff W F Jr Subacute streptococcus *viridans* septicemia cured by excision of an arteriovenous aneurysm of the external iliac artery and vein *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 29 19 1935
- Hargraves M M Richmond H and Morton E Presentation of two bone marrow elements the Tart cell and the L E cell *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clinic* 3 25 1948
- Holzmann M Über septisch Endokarditis der Pulmonalklappen *Ztschr f klin Med* 116 209 1930
- Hunter T H Speculations on the mechanism of cure of bacterial endocarditis *J A M A* 144 224 1950
- Jawetz F Gunnison J B Speck R S and Coleman J R Studies on antibiotic synergism and antagonism *Arch Int Med* 87 349 1951
- Joffe S and Feil H Subacute bacterial endocarditis arising in mural thrombi following a myocardial infarction *Cardiology* 1 4 1955
- Jones Criteria (modified) for guidance in the diagnosis of rheumatic fever *Modern Concepts Cardiovascul Dis* 24 9 1955
- Jones M Subacute bacterial endocarditis of nonstreptococcal etiology *Am Heart J* 40 106 1950
- Jones T D and Bland F F Clinical significance of chorea as a manifestation of rheumatic fever *J A M A* 105 671 1935
- Kinsella H A and Muether R O Experimental streptococcal endocarditis *Arch Int Med* 6 247 1939
- Klemperer P Pathogenesis of lupus erythematosus and allied conditions *Ann Int Med* 28 1 1948
- Tollack A D and Baer C Pathology of disseminated lupus erythematosus *Arch Path* 32 669 1941
- Koivay F K and Nahas H C Subacute bacterial endocarditis following ear lobe surgery *Arch Surg* 3 11 1956
- Koletsky S Syphilitic cardiovascular disease and bacterial endocarditis *Am Heart J* 23 208 1941
- Krimsky C M and Merritt H H Neurotropic manifestations of subacute bacterial endocarditis *New Engl J Med* 218 563 1938
- Kunstalter R H MacLean H and Greengard J Mycotic endocarditis due to *Candida albicans* *J A M A* 149 8 9 1952

- Leman J I Subacute bacterial endocarditis of the mitral valve previously rendered incompetent by infarction of the papillary muscle and shortening of the chordae tendineae *Ann Int Med* 9 1587 1936
- Lennox B Acute parietal endocarditis in a case of status asthmaticus *J Path & Bact* 60 621 1949
- Lewis T and Grant R I Observations relating to subacute infective endocarditis *Heart* 10 21 1923
- Libman F and Friedberg C K Subacute Bacterial Endocarditis New York Oxford Univ Press 1941
- and Sacks B A hitherto undescribed form of valvular and mural endocarditis *Arch Int Med* 33 701 1924
- Lichtman S S and Cross L Streptococci in the blood in rheumatic fever rheumatoid arthritis and other diseases based on a study of 5233 consecutive blood cultures *Arch Int Med* 49 1078 1932
- Lillehei C B Robb J R R and Visscher M B Occurrence of endocarditis with valvular deformities in dogs with arteriovenous fistulae *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 75 9 1950 *Ann Surg* 132 677 1950
- Loewe L The combined use of penicillin and heparin in the treatment of subacute bacterial endocarditis *Canad M A J* 52 1 1945
- and Altme Werber E The clinical manifestations of subacute bacterial endocarditis caused by streptococcus S B F *Ann Int Med* 1 353 1946
- Rosenblatt P Greene H J and Russell M Combined penicillin and heparin therapy of subacute bacterial endocarditis *J A M A* 124 144 1944
- Löffler W Endocarditis parietalis fibroplastica mit Bluteosinophilie *Schweiz med Wchnschr* 17 817 1936
- Löhlein M Über hemorrhagische Nierenaffektionen bei chronischer ulzeröser Endocarditis *Med Klin* 6 375 1910
- MacNeal W J Blevins A and Poindexter C A Clinical arrest of endocarditis lenta by penicillin *Am Heart J* 28 669 1944
- Martin W H and Spink W W Endocarditis due to type B hemophilus influenzae involving only the tricuspid valve *Am J M Sc* 214 139 1947
- McGehee A et al Systemic lupus erythematosus *Medicine* 33 291 1954
- Meads M Harris W H and Finland M The treatment of bacterial endocarditis with penicillin *New Engl J Med* 23 463 1945
- Meneeley J K Jr Bacterial endocarditis following urethral manipulation *New Engl J Med* 239 708 1948
- Verklen P and Wolf M Participation des endothelites arteriocapillaires au syndrome de l'endocardite maligne lente *Presse méd* 36 97 1928
- Oille J A Graham D and Detweiler H K A further report on a series of recovered cases of subacute bacterial endocarditis *Tr A Am Physicians* 39 227 1924
- Olell C C and Elliot S D Bacteremia and oral sepsis with special reference to the aetiology of subacute endocarditis *Lancet* 2 869 1935
- Palmer H D and Kempf M Streptococcus viridans bacteremia following extraction of teeth *J A M A* 113 1788 1939
- Parmley L F Orbison J A Hughes C W and Mattingley T W Acquired arteriovenous fistulas complicated by endarteritis and endocarditis lenta due to streptococcus faecalis *New Engl J Med* 250 305 1954
- Phipps C Acute bacterial endocarditis *New Engl J Med* 20 768 1930
- Reed C E and Wellman E A Staphylococcus endocarditis treated with neomycin *J A M A* 157 702 1953
- Reid J Watson R D and Sproul D H The mode of action of salicylate in acute rheumatic fever *Quart J Med* 19 1 1950

- Richards J H: Bacteremia following irritation of foci of infection J A M A 99 1496 1932
- Roantree R J and Rantz L A: Clinical experience with the C reactive protein test Arch Int Med 96 674 1956
- Rogers R J: Subacute bacterial endocarditis confined to a pulmonic valve with malformed leaflets J Lab & Clin Med 29 82, 1944
- Rosebury T: The aerobic non hemolytic streptococci: a critical review of their characteristics and pathogenicity with special reference to the human mouth and to subacute bacterial endocarditis Medicine 23 249 1944
- Russel W O and Lamb M F: Erysipelothrix endocarditis: a complication of erysipelas J A M A 114 1045 1940
- Saphir O: Myocardial lesions in subacute bacterial endocarditis Am J Path 11 143 1936
- In Gould S E: Pathology of the Heart Springfield Thomas 1953
- Schottmuller H: Endocarditis lenta zugleich ein Beitrag zur Artunterscheidung der pathogenen Streptokokken Munchen med Wchnschr p 617 1910
- Seaman A J and Christerson J W: Demonstration of L F cells in pericardial fluid J A M A 149 145 1957
- Soffer L J, Elster S K and Hamerman J: Treatment of acute disseminated lupus erythematosus with corticotropin and cortisone Arch Int Med 93 103 1954
- Spies H W, Dowling H F, Lepper M H, Wolfe C K and Caldwell C E: Aureomycin in the treatment of bacterial endocarditis Arch Int Med 87 66 1951
- Steele H H: The effect of sulfanilamide on the length of life of patients with subacute bacterial endocarditis New Engl J Med 2 1067 1940
- Swift H F and Kinsella R A: Bacteriologic studies in acute rheumatic fever Arch Int Med 19 391 1917
- Tinsley C M: Pneumococcal endocarditis Arch Int Med 70 80 1946
- Touroff A S W: The results of surgical treatment of patency of the ductus arteriosus complicated by subacute bacterial endocarditis Am Heart J 25 187 1943
- Von Glahn W C and Pappenheimer A M: Relationship between rheumatic and subacute bacterial endocarditis Arch Int Med 55 173 1935
- Wallach R and Pomerantz N: Combined antibiotic therapy Arch Int Med 89 840 1961
- Weinstein L, Boyer N H and Goldfield M: Rheumatic heart disease in scarlet fever patients treated with penicillin New Engl J Med 253 1 1955
- , Daikos G K and Ferrin T S: Studies on the relationship of tissue fluid and blood levels of penicillin J Lab & Clin Med 35 112 1951
- Weiss H: Relation of portals of entry to subacute bacterial endocarditis Arch Int Med 54 710 1934
- Whipple R L Jr: Subacute bacterial endocarditis presenting as a subarachnoid hemorrhage Ann Int Med 35 1351 1951
- : The cure of a patient with a very resistant streptococcus viridans endocarditis with massive penicillin therapy (average daily dose of 86 million units) Am Heart J 42 414, 1951
- Winchell P: Infectious endocarditis as a result of contamination during cardiac catheterization New Engl J Med 258 245 1953
- Wright J and Zeek P M: Bacterial endocarditis superimposed on syphilitic aortic valvulitis Am Heart J 19 581 1940

## Chapter 12

# Valvular Lesions

### INSUFFICIENCY OF THE AORTIC VALVES

#### *Incidence*

**I**NSUFFICIENCY OF THE AORTIC VALVES commonly but somewhat incorrectly called aortic insufficiency or aortic incompetence is one of the most frequent isolated valvular lesions. It is most prevalent in males. The rheumatic type is usually combined with an aortic stenosis and often also with a mitral stenosis of the same origin. In recent years the incidence of syphilitic aortic insufficiency has been greatly reduced.

#### *Etiology*

*Rheumatic Fever and Syphilis:* The high incidence of the lesion is readily appreciated because both rheumatic fever and syphilis are responsible for deformities of the aortic valves which render them incapable of proper closure and permit diastolic regurgitation of blood into the left ventricle. The valves become thickened, deformed and retracted. In syphilis the widening of the commissures in addition to shortening of the valve aids in the production of incompetency.

*Atherosclerosis:* Formerly aortic insufficiency due to atherosclerotic changes in the valve was a very common diagnosis. This was due to the fact that a syphilitic aortic insufficiency was usually mistaken for an atherosclerotic lesion. This error is partly explained by the secondary atherosclerotic changes prone to occur in fully developed syphilitic aortitis. Although aortitis has been known as a pathologic lesion for several decades its prevalence has been noticed rather slowly by the clinician and pathologist. Very often the atherosclerotic process is so pronounced that on gross examination it conceals the underlying syphilitic aortitis making the correct diagnosis possible only in microscopic sections.

Since no history of rheumatic fever can be elicited in an appreciable percentage of rheumatic patients and a syphilitic infection is often denied either from ignorance or embarrassment, atherosclerotic insufficiency is diagnosed when secondary calcification has taken place in a valve altered by syphilis.

Primary atherosclerotic changes of the aortic and mitral valves are however so common that they may even be called physiologic. Small yellow spots appear on the aortic side of the aortic valves and on the ventricular surface of the mitral valves that is in places most exposed to pressure. This is seen even in patients under ten years of age. These spots represent deposits of cholesterol. They often

disappear in children but recur and later persist. Still later the amount of connective tissue increases, small necroses appear and secondary calcification takes place. The annulus fibrosus also is often affected. The process starts at the base of the valves, extends to the free edge and reaches the valvular surface. Shrinkage of the connective tissue and calcification disturb the function of the valve and may cause insufficiency.

*Relative Incompetence.* Another type known to Corrigan is relative aortic insufficiency. It is rare for the valvular ring itself to dilate and to cause incompetency in the presence of a normal valve even with the highest blood pressure values. Relative aortic insufficiency is usually the result of marked damage to the myocardium or the aorta (Laubry and Doumer). It has been described in connection with myomalacia consequent to coronary sclerosis in fatty degeneration, infiltration from anemia in aortitis without involvement of the valves (Marshall) and in hypertension. Although some authors consider it a frequent event (Garrin) in our experience it is rare.

*Trauma.* Traumatic aortic insufficiency is also rare. It occurs after direct or indirect trauma regardless of whether the valves are normal or abnormal. Sudden physical strain in a patient with aortitis and syphilitic valvular changes may rupture a leaflet and lead to the sudden appearance of an aortic insufficiency. These patients often present a musical diastolic murmur (sea gull murmur) which may be heard at some distance from the chest wall with the unaided ear. The murmur is usually accompanied by a thrill. Immediately after the provocative exertion severe pain is felt over the heart and the midsternal region, the result of acute cardiac dilatation causing stretching of the pericardium. This form of aortic regurgitation like the other types is more common in males. It developed in one of our patients during a brawl and in another while he was playing soccer. Both had syphilitic aortitis.

*Marfan's Syndrome.* In this congenital abnormality of the connective tissue which will be discussed more in detail in the chapter on congenital heart diseases, insufficiency of the aortic valves occurs caused by changes in the aortic wall and valvular ring. Dissecting aneurysms or rupture of the aorta are common.

### Symptoms

*Paucity of Symptoms.* Most patients with aortic insufficiency have few symptoms. In other valvular lesions, especially those of the mitral valves, dyspnea and palpitation appear quite early and many times the patient is aware of his cardiac disease long before decompensation occurs. Patients with aortic insufficiency on the other hand remain asymptomatic for a long time. For this reason the discovery of the lesion is often accidental — in the course of a periodic health examination after application for life insurance or upon examination by Army draft boards. Such patients are often fully active, they pursue ordinary sports and may even indulge in strenuous exertion without symptoms. The diagnosis of an organic disease is consequently received with surprise.

Freedom from complaints occurs even in patients who exhibit all the peripheral and auscultatory signs of the lesion that is marked backflow through the valve. This situation is explained by the fact that the left ventricle is capable of full performance for many years even when increased demands are placed upon it. The chief complaint of most cardiac patients is dyspnea. Paroxysmal nocturnal as well as exertional dyspnea are absent in aortic insufficiency so long as there is complete compensation by the left ventricle; accordingly the lesion is often entirely asymptomatic.

Complaints may be absent for decades in aortic insufficiency which appeared after rheumatic fever in childhood may never produce symptoms or may cause them only at an advanced age. Thus good prognosis and long duration of full compensation, however, are more often seen in the rheumatic type. In syphilitic aortic insufficiency the prognosis is much poorer. Naturally exceptions do occur; we have seen patients with a syphilitic aortic insufficiency whose hearts did not change in size or shape and in whom no symptoms of decompensation appeared for more than a decade.

The duration of compensation in any valvular lesion depends to a great extent on the condition of the myocardium and only to a slight degree upon the extent of the valvular lesion. Patients with an extreme aortic stenosis or regurgitation may remain well provided the myocardium is normal. On the other hand rapid and progressive decompensation takes place despite a minor valvular alteration when the heart muscle is damaged.

Although the heart muscle is affected quite regularly in rheumatic fever usually the process is focal and heals completely without causing significant or permanent damage. Only in occasional cases does failure set in early. In syphilitic aortic insufficiency early myocardial damage is common largely because the orifices of the coronary arteries are narrowed; heart failure thus appears usually at an early stage and often before the affected valves become markedly insufficient.

*Dyspnea.* The first complaint of patients with aortic regurgitation is, as a rule, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea, which is typical for left ventricular failure. Exertional dyspnea follows in accordance with the speed with which the left ventricle progressively fails and pulmonary stasis develops.

*Angina Pectoris.* A small percentage of cases with aortic insufficiency have real anginal pain. It may occur even in children. Often the distress develops while the patient is at rest or sleeping at night. The pain may be tormenting. While it responds readily to nitroglycerin frequently the relief is only temporary. In this type of pain a paroxysmal rise of blood pressure has decisive importance. The phenomenon will be discussed in the chapter on angina pectoris.

### *Signs*

*Skin.* According to some clinicians patients with aortic insufficiency are so pale that the disease can be differentiated at first glance from mitral lesions. Such a statement, however, is not in accord with the facts. Patients with beginning

or advanced aortic insufficiency usually look perfectly normal and pallor certainly is not typical for this lesion. If the patients are pale the chances are this can be traced to definite causes. When the lesion is caused by syphilis a secondary anemia was seen following therapy with mercury or the arsenicals. In rheumatic aortic insufficiency pallor may suggest continued activity of the rheumatic fever and therefore the temperature, leukocyte count and the sedimentation rate should be checked. The possibility of subacute bacterial endocarditis should be borne in mind.

**Pulse** The examination of the patient should begin — as should the examination of all cardiac patients — with palpation of the pulse. In a fully developed insufficiency of the aortic valve a *pulsus celer et altus* is found: the pulse climbs and falls quickly and has a large amplitude. The terms *water hammer* (a toy) pulse, (quick ascent) *Corrigan pulse* and *collapsible pulse* (quick descent) are often employed. The pulse seems abrupt and jerky.

These changes of the pulse stem from many factors. At the time the ventricle ejects its contents the arteries are emptier than normal due to the regurgitation of blood in diastole and peripheral vasodilatation. The velocity of arterial blood flow is increased and the pulse wave climbs steeply. The period of isometric contraction is distinctly shortened as is the ejection time: a large volume of blood is therefore discharged within a short time. The peripheral arteries are widened. The diastolic backflow of blood causes a steeper descent of the pulse wave while the large stroke volume makes the pulse wave higher.

This pulse however is not pathognomonic since it may be present without insufficiency of the aortic valve and it may be absent despite a regurgitation. Other conditions with a similar abnormal mechanism present a *Corrigan pulse*. It may be pronounced in persistent patent ductus arteriosus and in arteriovenous fistulas. In the latter instance such a pulse may appear even when a small peripheral artery — e.g. the temporal artery — communicates with the accompanying vein.

Furthermore this pulse is rather common in hyperthyroidism and in mild as well as in the fully developed Graves disease but the mechanism is somewhat different. Hypermotility of the heart and arteriolar dilatation are the contributing factors. The *water hammer pulse* is also encountered in many infectious diseases with high fever of varying origin such as pneumonia with isomotor paralysis. Patients with atheromatous and aortitis may present this pulse even when the aortic valve is normal. In these cases the elasticity of the ascending aorta is diminished and the contents of the left ventricle are expelled immediately into the peripheral vessels. This pulse is often pronounced in beriberi even in the mild occidental form since thiamine deficiency disturbs muscular metabolism and changes the tone of the vascular tree. The ventricles are hyperactive. A collapsible pulse may also be seen in severe anemias.

If these disturbances can be ruled out (and usually this is a fairly simple matter) one may infer the diagnosis and — with the exercise of due care — even the degree of the lesion from the celerity of the pulse. In uncomplicated cases the celerity of the pulse is proportional of the degree of regurgitation.



Pulsus celer may be absent despite marked valvular insufficiency when an advanced mitral stenosis coexists. In this case the stroke volume is small since the left ventricle is not well filled. Under these circumstances none of the peripheral signs of an aortic insufficiency need appear. The auscultatory signs may also vanish if there is a marked mitral stenosis. It is obvious that an accompanying aortic stenosis will also abolish the peripheral signs of an aortic insufficiency. The character of the pulse in this combined lesion depends upon the predominance of one lesion or the other. It is not rare for the peripheral vasoconstriction in hypertension and nephrosclerosis to abolish the Corrigan pulse of an aortic insufficiency. Finally, in a terminal stage myocardial weakness may abolish the pulse changes.

Whenever the examiner suspects the presence of a Corrigan pulse the radial artery should be palpated with the patient's arm raised perpendicularly. In this position the characteristics of a water hammer pulse are more pronounced than when the arm is horizontal. Not rarely the pulse seems normal unless the arm is elevated. Hydrodynamic factors (the summation of the pulse wave with reflected waves) seem responsible for this difference (Wiggers). It is also advisable to palpate the carotid artery, which may show alterations of the pulse at an earlier stage than the radial artery; this is explained by the size of the carotid artery and its proximity to the heart.

The radial as well as the carotid pulse should be palpated on both sides to determine whether or not differences exist. Not uncommonly there is some discrepancy in the size of the radial pulse in normal subjects. This discrepancy might be anticipated since the course of the radial artery is subject to anatomic variations. On the other hand the existence of distinct changes when both brachial or carotid arteries are compared is an important sign of the syphilitic form of aortic insufficiency. In vascular syphilis the ostia of the innominate subclavian or left carotid arteries are often narrowed or even completely occluded. In such a case one brachial or carotid artery may show little or no pulsation. These pulse differences, although often attributed to an aneurysm, are simply the consequences of the syphilitic process in the aorta and in many cases permit the differentiation of the two major forms of aortic insufficiency.

**CAPILLARY PULSE** Some observers assign far too much importance to the so called capillary pulse in the diagnosis of aortic insufficiency. Our feeling is that this sign has no value. It may be encountered in normal individuals a fact known to Quincke; many healthy people show it on hot days or when a hand is placed in hot water in order to dilate the peripheral arteries (Lewis). It is also found in other disorders, e.g. mitral lesions, arteriosclerosis and hyperthyroidism and is therefore not characteristic. Even the term capillary pulse is improper in view of the fact that the phenomenon may be noted without pulsation of the capillaries themselves. That the phenomenon of capillary pulsation seen with the unaided eye derives from a different mechanism than the type observed with the capillary microscope is a source of much confusion.

*Other Peripheral Signs* The other oft mentioned peripheral signs of aortic insufficiency have just as little practical importance as the capillary pulse Traube's sound Duroziez's double murmur Musset's sign and other phenomena are found when the water hammer pulse is present Most of these signs may be elicited whenever there is a marked peripheral vasodilatation and they are found in the absence of aortic insufficiency as in beriberi and hyperthyroidism

*Blood Pressure* The blood pressure shows characteristic alterations The diastolic regurgitation of blood into the left ventricle diminishes the diastolic pressure which usually reaches a level below 50 mm Hg Sometimes the diastolic pressure cannot be measured at all since the sound over the vessel remains loud down to zero The pulse pressure or amplitude the difference between systolic and diastolic pressure is increased but it should be stressed that the diastolic blood pressure is often equally low in other conditions such as hyperthyroidism beriberi, arteriovenous fistulas and persistent patency of the ductus arteriosus On the other hand the diastolic blood pressure may remain high if the regurgitation is accompanied by a marked stenosis of the aortic valve or hypertension with nephrosclerosis In the condition last named a diastolic blood pressure of over 100 mm Hg is not rare despite a pronounced aortic insufficiency

There is no characteristic change of the systolic blood pressure in this lesion It may be normal despite an advanced aortic insufficiency Occasionally however it may attain a remarkably high level in both the rheumatic as well as the syphilitic form In one case of rheumatic aortic insufficiency we observed a systolic blood pressure of 320 mm Hg The hypertension is attributed to rapid arterial filling under increased force during the short ventricular systole which ejects a larger stroke volume Owing to the increased diastolic filling systole is more forceful in accordance with Starling's law The loss of elasticity of the ascending aorta particularly in the syphilitic type of aortic insufficiency also contributes to the systolic hypertension

In aortic insufficiency as well as in other cardiac lesions the blood pressure may rise in the course of cardiac failure (stasis hypertension)

*HILL'S PHENOMENON* In aortic incompetency the blood pressure in the lower extremities is markedly higher than in the brachial arteries sometimes by as much as 80 to 100 mm Hg This is called Hill's phenomenon The same situation is encountered although less frequently in such other conditions as hyperthyroidism and arteriosclerosis The difference in systolic pressure between the arms and legs in normal individuals usually does not surpass 40 mm Hg This sign has always been somewhat puzzling because such differences in pressure would not be anticipated in a system of communicating tubes Actually with the use of a direct method for the registration of blood pressure in the lower extremities in cases of aortic insufficiency much smaller differences between the arm and leg readings are found than indicated above The Hill phenomenon is probably due partly to the fact that a larger mass of tissues surrounding the arteries of the lower extremities must be compressed when the blood pressure is measured partly to the higher kinetic energy of the blood in the large vessels of

the legs (Bazett Clidstone) The arteries for the arms and head depart at a right angle from the aorta whereas the femoral artery is a direct continuation of the abdominal aorta Therefore the velocity heard due to systole is much higher in the arteries of the legs The Hill phenomenon does not seem to have any practical significance It is also found in arteriovenous fistulas (Jewiss and Drury)

*Apical Impulse* : The apical impulse is often heaving owing to hypertrophy of the left ventricle Due to left ventricular dilatation the apex beat may be displaced downward The fact that a large stroke volume leaves the thoracic cage within a short time leads to increased negativity of intrathoracic pressure and causes retraction of the interspaces over the precordial area (Lang)

### *Percussion and Roentgen Examination*

Corresponding with the various stages of decompensation cardiac shape may assume one of three patterns (1) the heart may be normal in size and shape (figure 23 a) (2) it may show an aortic configuration with varying degrees of left ventricular dilatation (figure 23 b) (3) it may assume the shape of a mitralized aortic heart (figure 23 c) Establishing the size and shape of the heart by means of percussion or x ray has great value because this permits an evaluation of the various compensatory mechanisms in operation and also yields important prognostic information

(1) As just stated the heart may be normal in size and shape Naturally such patients are rarely encountered in hospital wards but they are often seen in private practice especially when presumably healthy individuals are examined (life insurance athletes military service) A heart of normal size can be found not only at the beginning or with a slight insufficiency but also in fully developed lesions of long duration and associated with all typical palpitory and auscultatory signs

The abnormal dynamic mechanism in an aortic insufficiency consists of blood returning from the aorta into the left ventricle during diastole The left ventricular content increases to the extent of the volume of regurgitated blood Different opinions prevail concerning the volume In the highest estimates about 50 per cent of the stroke volume (30 ml) flows back into the left ventricle when the valves are completely incompetent The increase of the diastolic ventricular content by 30 ml alone is inadequate to produce a cardiac enlargement distinctly perceptible and recognizable as pathologic Considerably larger amounts of fluid must accumulate for a pericardial effusion to be demonstrated clinically A moderate slowing of the heart rate within normal limits prolongs diastole The increment thus added to the usual ventricular contents far surpasses that of aortic insufficiency Furthermore the left ventricle in these cases empties normally in systole and there is no increase of residual blood Therefore it is reasonable to conclude that no clinically demonstrable enlargement of the left ventricle need occur solely from the abnormal valvular mechanism in aortic insufficiency

A 72 year old physician was observed who had developed an insufficiency of the aortic valve following rheumatic fever at the age of six. The diagnosis was made by a competent internist and was frequently confirmed in the course of sixty six years. Nevertheless the heart was normal in size and shape when the patient was last seen.

(2) A healthy myocardium can perform the increased work demanded of it by aortic insufficiency without unduly disturbing the circulation. However with incomplete emptying of the ventricle greater amounts of residual blood and dilatation appear early if the myocardium is damaged. Dilatation of the left ventricle appears with a rapidity proportionate to the state of this structure. If the myocardium in general is healthy, no visible enlargement of the heart need



FIG. 23 Three orthodiagrams obtained from patients with aortic regurgitation. (a) Heart of normal size and shape. (b) the heart shows an aortic configuration with a widened aorta. (c) the heart is mitralized.

appear for years. Early enlargement takes place when the heart muscle is damaged by either the rheumatic or the syphilitic process (coronary stenosis). One may conclude therefore with justification that if marked dilatation occurs with considerable speed the myocardium is injured even in the absence of other signs. The state of the myocardium and not the extent of the valvular lesion determines the size of the heart. As a matter of fact enormous cardiac enlargement (cor bovinum) otherwise observed only in hypertension may be encountered in the late stages of aortic insufficiency. It is clear from this discussion that the rapidity with which the left ventricle enlarges in aortic insufficiency has definite prognostic significance.

Since the strain is on the outflow tract of the left ventricle in accordance with the rules discussed before the heart first becomes elongated and the apex bent is displaced downward. There is no widening of the heart. Later the apex becomes rounded, the heart is somewhat more plump and with increasing dilatation of the left ventricle the waist of the heart becomes more pronounced leading to the typical aortic configuration (figure 23 b). The patient may be asymptomatic and normally active even when the enlargement of the left ventricle has reached a remarkable degree.

the legs (Bazett Gladstone) The arteries for the arms and head depart at a right angle from the aorta whereas the femoral artery is a direct continuation of the abdominal aorta Therefore the velocity head due to systole is much higher in the arteries of the legs The Hill phenomenon does not seem to have any practical significance It is also found in arteriovenous fistulas (Lewis and Drury)

*Apical Impulse* The apical impulse is often heaving owing to hypertrophy of the left ventricle Due to left ventricular dilatation the apex beat may be displaced downward The fact that a large stroke volume leaves the thoracic cage within a short time leads to increased negativity of intrathoracic pressure and causes retraction of the interspaces over the precordial area (Lang)

### *Percussion and Roentgen Examination*

Corresponding with the various stages of decompensation cardiac shape may assume one of three patterns (1) the heart may be normal in size and shape (figure 23 a) (2) it may show an aortic configuration with varying degrees of left ventricular dilatation (figure 23 b) (3) it may assume the shape of a nutrilized aortic heart (figure 23 c) Establishing the size and shape of the heart by means of percussion or x ray has great value because this permits an evaluation of the various compensatory mechanisms in operation and also yields important prognostic information

(1) As just stated the heart may be normal in size and shape Naturally such patients are rarely encountered in hospital wards but they are often seen in private practice especially when presumably healthy individuals are examined (life insurance athletes military service) A heart of normal size can be found not only at the beginning or with a slight insufficiency but also in fully developed lesions of long duration and associated with all typical palpatory and auscultatory signs

The abnormal dynamic mechanism in aortic insufficiency consists of blood returning from the aorta into the left ventricle during diastole The left ventricular content increases to the extent of the volume of regurgitated blood Different opinions prevail concerning the volume In the highest estimates about 50 per cent of the stroke volume (30 ml) flows back into the left ventricle when the valves are completely incompetent The increase of the diastolic ventricular content by 30 ml alone is inadequate to produce a cardiac enlargement distinctly perceptible and recognizable as pathologic Considerably larger amounts of fluid must accumulate for a pericardial effusion to be demonstrated clinically A moderate slowing of the heart rate within normal limits prolongs diastole The increment thus added to the usual ventricular contents far surpasses that of aortic insufficiency Furthermore the left ventricle in these cases empties normally in systole and there is no increase of residual blood Therefore it is reasonable to conclude that no clinically demonstrable enlargement of the left ventricle need occur solely from the abnormal valvular mechanism in aortic insufficiency

tion of the aortic valve. Whenever the diastolic murmur is heard best in this area the ascending aorta is markedly dilated and therefore moves near the chest wall. The murmur is thus transmitted from the aortic valve to the second right intercostal space by the dilated aorta. Conversely the more the murmur is transmitted toward the right shoulder the greater the aortic dilatation. Since marked dilatation of the ascending aorta usually occurs in the syphilitic type the diastolic murmur of syphilitic aortic insufficiency is in most cases heard best over the second right intercostal space. In the rheumatic form and especially when the aortic insufficiency is accompanied by a mitral lesion the murmur is heard best along the left lower sternal border as mentioned before. Naturally there are exceptions to all rules no one should attempt to establish the etiology

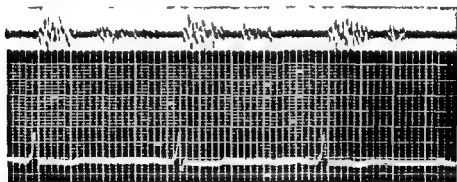


FIG. 24 Rough systolic and high pitched diastolic murmur registered over the second right intercostal space near the sternum in a 54 year old man with syphilitic aortic regurgitation

of the lesion solely on the point of maximum intensity of the diastolic murmur. In some cases of syphilitic aortic insufficiency the aorta does not dilate abnormally and the murmur is audible only at the lower sternal border. Sometimes in rheumatic aortic lesions a combined insufficiency and stenosis of the valves causes the ascending aorta to enlarge markedly and the diastolic murmur to be heard best in the second right intercostal space. Nevertheless in most cases the location of the diastolic murmur is a valuable aid in differentiating the two main types of aortic insufficiency.

As previously mentioned the diastolic murmur may disappear in aortic insufficiency if accompanied by an advanced mitral stenosis or a tricuspid regurgitation.

In rare cases (usually but not invariably in syphilitic aortic insufficiency) the diastolic murmur may be chirping, mewing or cooing (sea gull murmur). This cooing like the sound of a cuckoo clock may be due to a tearing of the valve and actually appears not rarely in traumatic aortic insufficiency. An explanation of this phenomenon may be retroversion of the right aortic valve toward the chamber (Bellet et al.)

The systolic murmur which develops early in the syphilitic type of aortic regurgitation and which sometimes appears later in the rheumatic form may be very rough and harsh and may last throughout systole. In other cases it is soft and distant. When accompanied by a thrill it may be confused with the murmur of aortic stenosis. While aortic stenosis never occurs in the pure syphilitic lesion it may be present when rheumatic and syphilitic changes in the valve are simultaneously present.

The old conception that roughness of the aortic wall or valves is responsible for the murmur has been rightly relinquished. Since the blood flows mainly in the center of the vessel mural friction scarcely comes into consideration as the cause of the systolic murmur. The following explanation is probably more

accurate. Blood is forced from a dilated left ventricle into a dilated aorta through a ring of normal diameter. This acts as a relative stenosis and the abnormal turbulences and eddies create a murmur. Actually a similar murmur always develops over the aorta when the left ventricle and aorta are dilated (hypertension, myocardial lesion, heart block with bradycardia and an increased stroke volume). In aortic insufficiency the acceleration of the systolic blood flow due to greater filling of the left ventricle may participate in the development of the systolic murmur.

The point of maximum intensity of this systolic murmur is located at the classical site for auscultation of the aortic valve that is parasternal, in the second right intercostal space. If the murmur is sufficiently loud it is transmitted

to the neck vessels. All systolic aortic murmurs however have a second point of maximum intensity which is situated at the cardiac apex. If the stethoscope is moved slowly from the second right intercostal space toward the cardiac apex the murmur becomes progressively softer over the right ventricle and then gradually grows louder as the apex is approached. Apparently the murmur is transmitted to the apical area along the interventricular septum. Systolic aortic murmurs are called hourglass murmurs since graphic representation of the two points of maximum intensity portrays the form of an hourglass (figure 25).

The presence of a loud systolic murmur over the apical area occasionally leads to the mistaken diagnosis of mitral insufficiency. This diagnosis seems supported by the fact that the systolic murmur over the apex may sound entirely different from that over the aorta. Nevertheless an alteration of the acoustic properties does not mean a different origin or mechanism of the murmur. Murmurs may be filtered and modified by the transmitting tissues; some vibrations are transmitted well, some poorly, while others are lost completely.

Not rarely the upper point of maximum intensity disappears and no murmur is heard at the base while the loud systolic murmur persists over the apex. This



FIG. 25 Sketch to demonstrate the transmission of a systolic aortic murmur to the apex (hourglass murmur).

is also wrongly interpreted as a mitral murmur. The possibility of its transmission from the aorta is often forgotten. This situation usually arises in patients with emphysema in whom the heart and ascending aorta are covered by lung. At the apex where the left ventricle approaches the chest wall the murmur is audible. Naturally in these cases the heart sounds disappear parasternally at the second right interspace.

If the emphysema is more pronounced and the heart more thoroughly covered by lung cardiac auscultatory phenomena disappear even at the apical area. In this instance heart sounds and murmurs are audible only over the lower end of the sternum near the xiphoid and often even more caudad.

In an aortic insufficiency with marked dilatation of the left ventricle a relative mitral regurgitation often develops as described above. The mitralization of the heart then progresses more rapidly a new systolic murmur appears over the apex and the second pulmonic sound becomes more accentuated.

In some instances of rheumatic or syphilitic aortic insufficiency a tripartite murmur is heard between the apex and the lower end of the sternum. It is composed of one systolic and two diastolic murmurs. The reason for duplication of the diastolic murmur is unknown to us. Both parts have the same intensity and seem practically identical. The rhythm is like that found in gallop rhythm except that the sounds are replaced by murmurs.

*Austin Flint Murmur.* Occasionally in aortic insufficiency a presystolic or rumbling diastolic murmur is heard over the apex causing confusion with mitral stenosis. This murmur the Austin Flint murmur is regarded by some as very common and is said to occur in 50 per cent of the cases. We have found it to be uncommon. Inexperienced physicians often confuse an impurity of the first or second heart sound with a murmur and make the diagnosis of mitral stenosis or Austin Flint murmur. As a matter of fact it has been shown recently that a variety of acoustic phenomena may simulate the murmur of mitral stenosis in cases of aortic regurgitation (Laurida). With experience graphic registration is not necessary for differentiation.

Many explanations have been advanced for the Austin Flint murmur. Some believe that the diastolic influx of blood from the aorta causes the mitral valves to float. If the floating leaflets are pushed close to the mitral orifice they may impede the atrial blood entering the ventricle. Others think that the murmur is especially apt to occur in those cases of aortic insufficiency in which the aortic cusp of the mitral valve is forced back by blood regurgitating from the aorta; this is said to hamper the inflow of blood from the atrium. Another group believes that the murmur is created by the meeting of the two blood streams one from the left atrium and the other from the aorta.

An unequivocal differentiation between this functional mitral stenosis the presumptive cause of the Austin Flint murmur and true mitral stenosis is possible only at necropsy.

The character of the heart sounds lacks significance in the appraisal of the degree of aortic insufficiency. Owing to left ventricular hypertrophy the first



heart sound at the apex may be very loud but it may also be submerged in or indistinguishable from the systolic murmur. Likewise the second heart sound may be absent or faint in advanced cases as well as in early cases when the to and fro murmur is heard instead of the heart sounds. Even with a well advanced aortic insufficiency the second sound may have a ringing tone. We have seen one case in which two of the aortic leaflets were completely destroyed by bacterial endocarditis and only one half of the third leaflet functioned. A very loud second aortic sound was heard until the end.

The intensity of the second sound offers no assistance in the differential diagnosis between rheumatic fever and syphilitic aortic insufficiency.

Occasionally when aortic insufficiency is severe and the water hammer pulse is pronounced a very loud sound is noted at the base of the heart with its greatest intensity in the supra- and infraclavicular region. It is usually confused with the first heart sound actually however it is not of cardiac origin. Rather it is produced by systolic distention of the large arteries near the base of the heart and corresponds to the vascular sounds audible over the peripheral arteries in such cases.

*Rhythm* The rhythm is usually regular. atrial fibrillation is rather the exception.

*Rate* The rate is often rapid. This sinus tachycardia is prone to occur in young individuals rates of 120 per minute being not uncommon. The tachycardia some times occasions the use of digitalis which is not indicated in a sinus tachycardia of this type. The low mean arterial pressure in aortic insufficiency causes the tachycardia with the aid of a carotid sinus reflex. The significance of this acceleration was recognized by Corrigan more than a century ago but thinking somewhat teleologically he regarded it a compensatory measure the tachycardia by shortening the duration of diastole reduces the amount of regurgitating blood.

### *Electrocardiogram*

In early uncomplicated cases the electrocardiogram shows only a left axis deviation more advanced cases present the pattern of left ventricular hypertrophy as in hypertension.

### *Complications*

With the exception of angina pectoris the most serious complication is subacute bacterial endocarditis. If the patient with aortic regurgitation develops fever weakness loss of appetite and anemia this ominous complication should be suspected.

### *Differential Diagnosis*

While the diagnosis is easy in a fully developed pure aortic insufficiency it may be difficult when mitral or aortic stenosis coexists. Earlier it was pointed out that all peripheral and auscultatory signs of an aortic insufficiency may disappear in such cases sometimes the correct diagnosis is possible only when

the results of the roentgen examination are correctly evaluated. Thus a wide aortic knob showing strong pulsations may lead to the correct diagnosis of an unrecognized aortic insufficiency in the presence of a mitral lesion.

A diastolic murmur at the same place and with the same characteristics is sometimes heard in mitral stenosis when a relative insufficiency of the pulmonary valve appears (Graham Steell murmur). The differentiation will be discussed later.

Difficult occasionally is the differentiation from a patent ductus arteriosus or aneurysm of the sinus of Valsalva which has ruptured into a ventricular cavity. The condition of patients with the latter condition rapidly deteriorates and death soon follows. Usually in both of the above mentioned conditions there is a continuous murmur with systolic accentuation. A systolic murmur followed by a diastolic one over the pulmonary artery appears in patients with atrial septal defects.

Diastolic murmurs in the same area as those of aortic insufficiency are sometimes heard in hyperthyroidism. In such patients the differentiation may be difficult since both conditions produce the same peripheral signs.

In a cardiac aneurysm a soft high pitched diastolic murmur is sometimes audible to the left of the sternum, this murmur may be confused with the murmur of aortic insufficiency until necropsy reveals the correct diagnosis (Scherf and Brooks). Peripheral signs of aortic regurgitation are absent.

The most important problem in the differential diagnosis is the distinction between the rheumatic and syphilitic type of aortic insufficiency. Very often the history throws no light on the situation. In many cases a history of syphilis cannot be obtained for a variety of reasons. The serologic tests are not decisive for up to 15 per cent of patients with luetic aortic insufficiency have an entirely negative serology. About 40 per cent of the rheumatic cases are unaware of a previous attack of rheumatic fever.

Two points mentioned during the discussion of symptoms and signs may be of value.

(1) The presence of a marked difference in the strength of the brachial or carotid pulse between the two sides is a strong argument in favor of a syphilitic aortic insufficiency.

(2) If the murmur is heard best over the second right intercostal space and particularly toward the right shoulder pronounced dilatation of the ascending aorta and therefore syphilitic aortic insufficiency should be suspected.

Undoubtedly in a certain number of patients the differential diagnosis is impossible.

### *Prognosis*

As pointed out earlier the prognosis depends mainly on the status of the heart muscle. Since myocardial damage during rheumatic fever is rarely very pronounced the outlook for patients with a rheumatic aortic insufficiency usually is rather good. The frequent concurrence of coronary orifice stenosis in the syphilitic form necessitates a more guarded prognosis. While some statistics suggest

that the average duration of life from the beginning of symptoms may approximate two years in syphilitic aortic insufficiency the process may come to a standstill at any time and complete compensation for 15 or more years occurs Nevertheless the prognosis is certainly more serious than in the rheumatic type

### *Surgery*

Surgical therapy of aortic regurgitation is only in its infancy and further developments may be expected (Hufnagel)

The Hufnagel plastic (lucite) valve leads to hemolytic anemia because of the mechanical destruction of red cells

A traumatic aortic insufficiency was found in a 17 year old man who had been kicked in the chest by a horse and became unconscious A plastic aortic valve was inserted and the patient was symptom free and working 14 months after the operation (Leonard et al)

## STENOSIS OF THE AORTIC VALVE

### *Incidence*

*Stenosis of the aortic valve (aortic stenosis) is a common valvular lesion* This fact must be stressed because it contradicts the opinion which prevailed widely until a few years ago To be sure the diagnosis often is made only when the lesion is rather advanced the diagnosis of a moderate stenosis may be difficult The lesion is more common in men than in women the ratio being 3 to 1 (Kumpke and Bean)

### *Etiology*

*Rheumatic Fever* In a majority of cases aortic stenosis results from rheumatic fever causing endocarditis in which the aortic valves fuse usually an insufficiency accompanies a stenosis Rheumatic aortic stenosis without insufficiency is very rare but the latter is often not diagnosed because of the absence of peripheral signs and murmurs

*Atherosclerosis* The occurrence of another form of aortic stenosis the atherosclerotic type is established but its frequency is at present not fully determined Harsner thinks that rheumatic fever is responsible for the majority of advanced aortic stenoses while others maintain that atherosclerosis is responsible in most instances The atherosclerotic process begins at the base of the valve in the sinus pocket and slowly advances to the free edge that is in a direction opposite to that occurring in rheumatic fever Since many patients with rheumatic aortic stenosis live to an old age since lime salts are commonly deposited in the valves following rheumatic verrucous endocarditis and since a positive history of rheumatic fever may be absent in rheumatic aortic stenosis an atherosclerotic aortic stenosis is frequently diagnosed in patients with rheumatic valvular disease This mistake is understandable in view of the fact that as emphasized in the original description of atherosclerotic aortic stenosis the ascending aorta in these cases need not show evidence of atherosclerosis

*Congenital* Congenital stenosis of the aortic orifice due to a malformation is not rare. It may involve the conus of the left ventricle, the aortic orifice itself or the supra-auricular aorta.

As mentioned above, syphilis never causes aortic stenosis. The presence of syphilitic aortitis or regurgitation therefore precludes the existence of an aortic stenosis unless an additional rheumatic valvulitis exists.

### *Mechanism*

Stenosis of the aortic valve is easily compensated. As in hypertension the augmented resistance increases the residual blood, the diastolic filling and thus the initial stretch of the fibers of the left ventricle. This causes increased energy of contraction and hypertrophy. Since the stenosis progresses gradually, there is ample time for these changes to develop. The hypertrophy may assume great dimensions in aortic stenosis. Animal experiments have shown that the aortic orifice must be reduced to less than one quarter its normal size before the output diminishes and changes of blood pressure and pulse appear (de Heer). Even under physiologic conditions the valves approximate rather closely during a great part of systole and permit only a small opening. The normal aortic orifice is about 20 square centimeters in area. In confirmation of the experimental findings, Gorlin et al. found that an aortic orifice of 0.5 cm. is critical since it makes necessary a high intraventricular pressure (up to 200 mm. Hg). The isometric contraction period, like the ejection period, is slightly prolonged.

### *Symptoms*

The adjustment of the circulation to the lesion is usually so complete that patients with extreme aortic stenosis may pursue athletic activities and may undertake arduous physical strain without symptoms. Naturally, here as in other valvular lesions, a healthy myocardium is the necessary prerequisite.

The excellent compensation of aortic stenosis makes it understandable why patients are sometimes encountered who had an aortic stenosis since early childhood, the first symptoms of which appeared only when they were 60 years old or later. Patients may even be over 70 when the first evidence of left ventricular failure due to aortic stenosis appears. Cheyne-Stokes respiration and paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea are the first signs of decompensation.

Some patients, however, develop symptoms very early in the disease at a time when full compensation prevails. They complain of fainting and anginal pain.

*Syncope.* Attacks of syncope and loss of consciousness may follow brisk movements and sudden change of posture or overexertion (Gravier, Callard). Often they appear without any visible reason. Even epileptiform convulsions occur, causing these patients to be treated for epilepsy until the real reason for the attacks is discovered. Contrary to frequent statements, such attacks also occur at rest and even during sleep.

The attacks are not rare for syncope was noted in 31 of 230 cases of aortic stenosis (McGinn and White). Hammarsten found syncope in 16 of 63 subjects

with aortic stenosis Unconsciousness may last from a few minutes to a half hour The convulsions are not as a rule generalized Few studies of the pulse rate facial color or blood pressure during the attacks are available since the episodes recur too infrequently to permit observations and records Marked arrhythmias were found in electrocardiograms taken during an attack of syncope it seems however that the syncope appears before the arrhythmia The latter is not marked enough to cause unconsciousness

The mechanism of these attacks is not satisfactorily explained A cerebral ischemia is probable but unproven the long duration of some episodes however makes a profound cerebral ischemia dubious There are no sequelae recovery is prompt and complete This and the absence of auri help in the differentiation from epilepsy It has been suggested that the syncope of aortic stenosis might be due to some disturbed carotid sinus reflex mechanism Pressure on the carotid sinus of such patients however does not initiate an attack and the responses are not abnormal Nevertheless it is conceivable that the carotid sinus in these patients responds abnormally to physiologic stimuli such as a sudden fall of blood pressure consequent to dilatation of the splanchnic vessels Thus regulation of the blood pressure level is disturbed

*Anginal Pain* This is another typical complaint Kumpke and Bean noted cardiac pain in 37 per cent of their cases The pain often radiates in the usual manner to the left arm and appears on exertion or excitement like the classic angina on effort In addition it often awakens the patient from deep sleep Its mechanism will be discussed later in the chapter on angina pectoris

### Signs

*Pulse* In advanced cases the pulse shows definite changes the exact opposite to the pulsus celer et altus of aortic regurgitation It is called pulsus parvus because of its small size in button hole aortic stenosis even the carotid pulse is scarcely palpable It is also called pulsus tardus because of its slow rise The pulse is often anacrotic While the blood pressure is often low we have frequently found normal values and hypertension is not less common than in the average population The auscultatory gap (see chapter on hypertension) is usually found during the auscultatory measurement of the blood pressure

*Palpation* A heaving apex beat may be felt since the left ventricle is hypertrophied This sign however is often missed In most cases a systolic thrill is palpable over the aortic area in the second right interspace and also over the carotid vessels particularly on the right side It is common because of the low pitch of the murmur in aortic stenosis Sometimes it can be palpated only in deep expiration and when the patient sitting or standing bends forward slightly It is absent with pulmonary emphysema A similar thrill however may be present whenever a rough systolic murmur arises at the same place therefore it may occasionally be noted in atheromatosis and syphilitic aortitis The systolic thrill is also found over the apex and may be located exclusively there when emphysema prevents its palpation over the aorta

*Percussion and Roentgen Examination* Both methods often fail to reveal any enlargement of the left ventricle for many years even when the lesion is advanced. This is explained by the fact that the primary change is hypertrophy which starts at the outflow tract of the left ventricle. Dilatation which may not appear until late proceeds along the axis of the left ventricle displacing the apex beat downward. This displacement is often missed during the examination when the apex beat is not felt and the cardiac shadow merges with the abdominal shadow. Enlargement of the heart along the transverse diameter causing the aortic configuration is a late event.

On x ray examination but rarely on percussion an unusual widening of the aorta is found involving the initial portion of the ascending aorta. This finding is surprising since the small pulse and slow ejection of blood might lead one to expect the aorta to be less dilated than it is for instance in aortic insufficiency. If one has the opportunity to examine at necropsy a patient whose aorta seems to have been markedly dilated during life every sign of dilatation may be absent. This suggests that the dilatation is dynamic. Due to the great force with which the blood is ejected through the stenotic valve by the hypertrophied left ventricle a jet action is present and dilatation of the aortic wall is produced. In two cases of aortic stenosis with superimposed subacute bacterial endocarditis we found an endarteritis at autopsy. Vegetations were implanted in the aortic wall just where one would assume that the blood coming from the left ventricle struck the side of the vessel and caused a lesion of the endothelium. Schnoor et al expressed the opinion that turbulences and repetitive pulsatile stresses cause a structural fatigue and dilatation.

Careful fluoroscopy reveals calcification of the aortic valves in many cases. This finding greatly supports the diagnosis. Pyke and Symens who examined radiologically 400 males over 60 years of age found calcifications of the mitral valve in 2.75 per cent and of the aortic valves in 5 per cent. It is necessary to differentiate valvular calcifications from those in the pericardium and myocardium (following necrosis in myocardial infarction) and calcium deposits in old mural thrombi. Calcification occurs rather often in elderly subjects in the annulus fibrosus of the valve (the cardiac skeleton) (figure 26).

Sosman recommended certain rules that should enable one to distinguish between mitral and aortic valve calcifications. The former are situated more toward the apex in the antero posterior picture in the left anterior oblique position when the heart just clears the spine the mitral valves are in the posterior third of the cardiac shadow while the aortic valves are in the middle third. Valvular calcifications are C or J shaped and linear or diffuse.

*Auscultation* A rough systolic murmur is usually found over the second right intercostal space. This murmur radiates to the neck vessels and also to the apical area. It sounds very close to the ear is prolonged and may fill all systole. In some cases it is short and resembles the murmur heard in atheromatosis or aortitis. Kumpke and Bean found it in only 83 per cent of proved cases. In phonocardiograms one finds that the vibrations gradually increase in size and after

reaching a maximum height decrease (diamond shaped murmur) Figure 27 shows this murmur registered over the second right intercostal space in a 32 year old patient with aortic stenosis. Similar murmurs are found in pulmonary stenosis and some congenital heart lesions.



FIG 26 Atheroma of the aorta with calcium deposits in the arch and calcification of the heart skeleton

Quite characteristically either the systolic murmur of aortic stenosis is not followed by a second sound or else the second sound is distant. This is understandable if one recalls how the valves are transformed into a firm calcified ring in which the individual cusps are no longer discernable. Closure of these valves at the end of systole therefore is impossible. However the second pulmonic sound may be heard over the second right intercostal space. A normal second aortic sound is heard in patients with an infravalvular congenital aortic stenosis. In



Fig. 27 Diamond shaped murmur of aortic regurgitation over the second right intercostal space parasystolically in a patient with rheumatic aortic stenosis

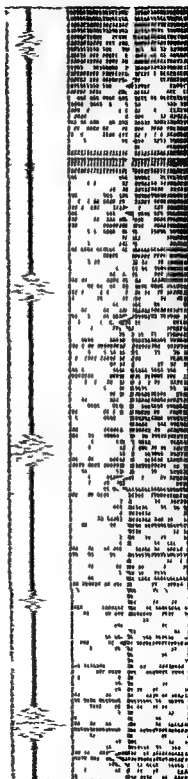


Fig. 28 The systolic diamond shaped murmur in a patient with aortic stenosis is louder the longer the preceding diastole



such cases the systolic murmur may be heard only over the left second or third intercostal space to the left of the sternum. The loud systolic aortic murmur becomes distinctly softer when the strength of the left ventricle diminishes and louder when the condition of such a heart is improved by digitalis. We have seen button hole stenoses of the aortic valves become silent with heart failure. In such cases no sounds or murmurs are audible over the aorta. Its loudness depends on the diastolic filling of the left ventricle (figure 28). The peripheral arteries scarcely pulsate but the patient may be able to walk without dyspnea and he can lie flat in bed without orthopnea.

A diastolic murmur of aortic regurgitation — if present — supports the diagnosis. It is inaudible in about 50 per cent of the cases. When present it is heard usually at the lower left sternal border. Being often very faint it is easily missed.

A systolic apical murmur is always present. Usually it is a transmitted aortic murmur but in advanced stages of dilatation of the left ventricle it may be caused by a relative mitral insufficiency.

Arrhythmias are rare. An unexplained bradycardia is as common as the tachycardia of aortic regurgitation. This is fortunate because the prolongation of diastole (and partly also of systole) is advantageous in the presence of an aortic stenosis. This bradycardia however is often deceptive and may dissuade the physician from giving digitalis if necessary.

A systolic click (*claquement aortique protosystolique*) appearing 0.06 to 0.08 second after the onset of the first heart sound has been described.

*Electrocardiogram.* In late stages the electrocardiogram shows evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy. Because of the elongation of the heart (egg shaped) and due to the dilatation of the outflow tract only left axis deviation is often missing and only inverted T waves appear in the standard leads.

### *Differential Diagnosis*

If there is a characteristic *pulsus tardus*, a systolic thrill and a loud prolonged systolic murmur over the aorta and the second aortic sound is absent the diagnosis of aortic stenosis is easy. This is particularly true if the heart shows the anticipated configuration and the patient complains of fainting spells and anginal pain.

The diagnosis and differentiation from other conditions will be difficult if the lesion is less advanced. Sometimes it will be impossible to decide whether a rheumatic aortic insufficiency with a slight stenosis of the valves exists or whether we are dealing with a pure aortic insufficiency. In syphilitic aortic insufficiency the systolic aortic murmur may be very loud and a thrill may even be palpable over the aorta. In the average case of syphilitic aortitis however the second aortic sound is loud. In elderly people with emphysema on the other hand the second aortic sound may become inaudible in a normal heart and this makes differentiation difficult.

When there is no evidence of aortic regurgitation the differentiation between an aortic stenosis and atheromatosis or aortitis may be difficult. It is not unusual to suspect atheromatosis in a patient of 70 years or more and to find an aortic stenosis of rheumatic origin at necropsy. In this case as well the presence or absence of an accentuated second aortic sound within certain limits may help in the differentiation.

An aortic stenosis may also be overlooked if it occurs in a patient with an advanced mitral stenosis for the mitral lesion may dominate the clinical picture.

*Catheterization.* Confirmation of the diagnosis by catheterization of the left ventricle although possible is not without risk and therefore is better omitted. The catheter must be introduced via a peripheral artery. Its introduction into the left ventricle may be difficult. It may obstruct completely the very small lumen of the aortic orifice. A very high systolic blood pressure in the left ventricle with a much lower one in the aorta is characteristic.

### *Prognosis*

The excellent prognosis of the lesion and the long duration of full compensation has often been stressed. Many patients with aortic stenosis live active lives without ever knowing that they have any heart disease. The average age reached by patients with pure aortic stenosis is 65 years (Mitchell et al.). This includes of course patients who developed the lesion late in life because of atherosclerosis. Grant alone comes to a different conclusion and calls the prognosis of aortic stenosis least favorable.

Patients with aortic stenosis may die suddenly. This event was noted in 6 of 29 observations (Cabot) and it occurred in 9 of 11 cases in another group (Marvin and Sullivan). It seems probable that the sudden death is in some way associated with the attacks of loss of consciousness or the anginal pain due to myocardial ischemia. The latter may induce ventricular fibrillation.

### *Surgery*

Surgical therapy of aortic stenosis with the finger fracture method was recommended as early as 1913 (Tuffier). The operation has been revived in recent years and with progress in surgical technique it may bring success. Because of the frequency of calcification of the valves surgery cannot always yield a good result. In view of the good prognosis of most cases the operation should be reserved for those patients with progressive stenosis of the aortic valves in which anginal pain, syncope or failure of the left ventricle make the outlook without surgery rather dubious. The approach from the ventricle is difficult as compared to pulmonary stenosis where it is employed with success. This depends upon the great thickness of the left ventricle and the very high pressure within it. According to one proposal a dilator should be introduced from the apical area of the left ventricle. The mortality is still near 16 per cent but diminishes gradually as better techniques are developed. A transaortic approach at present seems to provide better

results and a lower mortality Baker and Campbell had 6 deaths in 16 operated patients good results were obtained only in five The greatest danger is creation of an aortic regurgitation Personal experience taught us that in dog experiments with the heart exposed *in situ* creation of such a lesion during an attempt at severing the left bundle branch leads to an immediate tremendous dilatation of the left ventricle and cardiac standstill

### MITRAL STENOSIS

Mitral stenosis one of the most common valvular lesions is often combined with mitral insufficiency Observations during surgery reveal however that not rarely the stenosis is pure For didactic reasons only the latter type of mitral stenosis will be considered here

#### *Etiology*

Apart from very rare congenital malformations which cause atresia or narrowing of the mitral orifice traumatic mitral stenosis and rare instances of a healed bacterial endocarditis the etiology of the lesion is always rheumatic fever A previous history of rheumatic fever to be sure cannot be obtained in about 40 per cent of the cases These patients deny having had joint manifestations chorea or tonsillitis and even report that they have never suffered from a febrile disease

Two forms of congenital mitral stenosis exist A child may be born with a rheumatic mitral stenosis In such cases we may assume that the mother had rheumatic fever during pregnancy In the other type actual malformation of the mitral valves exists and defects of the atrial septum corrotation and aortic stenosis usually are also present (Feienetz et al)

*Age Sex* Owing to the relationship to rheumatic fever the maximum incidence of mitral valve disease is between the ages of 10 and 40 although many cases are observed in younger or older individuals Mitral stenosis was treated successfully by surgery in a child three years old Females seem more prone to develop rheumatic mitral disease, this is especially true for mitral stenosis

#### *Pathology*

The rheumatic process discussed in a previous chapter leads to fusion of the mitral leaflets with thickening and secondary calcification in an appreciable number of cases This process usually accompanied by shortening and fusion of the chordae tendineae may be only just discernible or very severe In an advanced case of mitral stenosis the orifice is so narrowed and distorted that it is compared according to its shape with a button hole or fish mouth If the shortening of the chordae tendineae displaces the orifice toward the apex a funnel form of the mitral orifice is found at postmortem examination Sometimes an extensive calcification may involve the entire ring

### *Pathophysiology*

Dynamic changes appear only in a rather advanced experimental stenosis since slight alterations are easily overcome by compensatory mechanisms. In experimental mitral stenosis reduction of the mitral orifice to one quarter of its natural size is necessary before the resistance becomes so high that the rise of pressure in the left atrium is unable to compensate for it. A valvular area of 1 square cm is critical since a pressure head to guarantee a normal cardiac output is necessary that is greater than the osmotic pressure of the plasma proteins. Blood pressures of 160 mm Hg have been measured in the pulmonary artery with an intracardiac catheter. That is 8 times the normal pressure. A hydraulic formula has been given which permits one to calculate the area of the mitral valve orifice in diastole. The rise of pressure within the left atrium leads to hypertrophy and later to dilatation of this chamber. The pressure within the lesser circuit also rises early and increases the strain on the right heart. Filling of the left ventricle decreases and leads to an atrophy which involves mainly its inflex tract.

The volume of intrathoracic blood rises but slightly as opposed to left ventricular failure where it is markedly increased. The progressive vascular changes in the lesser circuit in mitral stenosis are responsible for this. There is at first a marked functional narrowing the cause of which is local anoxia (see Cor pulmonale) later organic changes of the vessels occur (see below). Pulmonary and bronchial arteries anastomose with each other and the pulmonary veins are overloaded. The bronchial arteries show a marked hypertrophy of the media. The pressure in the pulmonary capillaries and in the left atrium is estimated by pushing the tip of a catheter into a small pulmonary artery.

The lesion develops slowly and its evolution requires at least six months and often longer before it can be recognized.

### *Symptoms*

The patient may have few complaints. Not rarely mitral stenosis is found accidentally and the patient denies any symptoms relating to the lesion. This situation occurs more frequently than in aortic insufficiency but such cases are known to every physician. Careful interrogation may reveal that the capacity for exertion has always been somewhat reduced and rapid climbing of stairs or walking uphill has provoked dyspnea and palpitation. Since however similar symptoms may appear in the absence of valvular lesions in healthy people especially in the obese and since the symptoms remained stationary the patient never consulted a physician nor complained of his condition. Once in a while the physician sees such patients who have had mitral stenosis for at least 30 to 40 years come for a routine physical examination and assert they feel absolutely normal. Occasionally a woman who has had a mitral stenosis since childhood seeks medical advice for the first time during or after the menopause when cardiac complaints typical for the climacteric develop. At other times mitral stenosis is discovered during pregnancy or when a subacute bacterial endocarditis develops.

*Dyspnea* In the majority of cases in contrast to the lesions of the aortic valve symptoms appear early. While the left ventricle can maintain compensation for a long time in an aortic lesion in mitral stenosis the burden of compensation falls upon the left atrium. The latter is equal to this task only in the presence of a very slight stenosis. Even when the left atrium is able to force sufficient blood through the narrowed orifice at rest this becomes impossible when the demands are increased by physical exertion. Stasis in the left atrium and engorgement in the lesser circuit appear with shortness of breath at first only upon severe exertion but later even on minimal activity. In some cases the lungs become engorged so quickly on exertion excitement or the increase of rate that severe attacks of pulmonary edema appear. Dyspnea may be so severe that any physical effort is difficult and the patient is forced to remain in a sitting position due to orthopnea.

Patients with mitral stenosis do not have cardiac asthma or Cheyne Stokes respiration unless complications exist which lead to left ventricular failure. Pulmonary edema is not too rare but it is a special type which has been discussed in the appropriate chapter.

In recent literature the statement is often encountered that paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea occurs in patients with pure mitral stenosis. If one interprets this phrase to mean dyspnea appearing suddenly at night it is correct. An exciting dream or sexual intercourse may cause dyspnea at night or the patient may slide down from his pillow and become dyspneic. If by the term paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea one understands the well defined forms of dyspnea discussed in the first chapter of the present volume then it must be said that patients with mitral stenosis are singularly free from this form of dyspnea. It has never become clear to us why mitral stenosis with the marked reduction of cardiac output does not show the several forms of paroxysmal dyspnea such as cardiac asthma and Cheyne Stokes respiration.

For obvious reasons digitalis is useless for the treatment of pulmonary edema in mitral stenosis. The use of mercurial diuretics and morphine — given prophylactically — in minute amounts (15 to 20 drops of a 1 per cent solution of morphine hydrochloride in water or a 50 mg tablet of Demerol prior to sexual intercourse) may prevent the attack.

*Palpitation* This symptom appears in the early stages. It is noted more frequently at night and awakens the patient. No satisfactory explanation for this phenomenon is known and the reason for its frequent occurrence in mitral stenosis are equally obscure. The quick systole due to incomplete filling of the left ventricle may contribute to the sensation of palpitation.

In hyperthyroidism and in cardiac neuroses palpitation may be due to increased rate and hypermotility of the heart. The rate alone however does not seem to be a decisive factor in evoking this symptom for palpitation may be absent in a paroxysmal tachycardia when the rate is over 250 and it may also be absent despite marked pounding of the chest wall by cardiac pulsations.

It is not rare in bradycardia in this instance it is due perhaps to the increased filling of the heart during prolonged diastole

*Fatigue* In advanced mitral stenosis fatigue is often an outstanding symptom. The marked reduction of cardiac output is presumably responsible. The cardiac output per minute may fall to 2 liters.

*Anginal Pain* A small percentage of patients with mitral stenosis complain of anginal pain which often appears at rest and occasionally is not relieved by nitroglycerin. Stuckey found pain in 8.5 per cent of 400 patients with mitral stenosis. Scherf and Coldhammer found a positive electrocardiographic exercise test in such patients proving that cardiac hypoxia was responsible in the patients examined. Compression of the left coronary artery between the left atrium and pulmonary artery or displacement and compression of the left coronary orifice by scars in the mitral valves have been proffered as explanations but they lack satisfactory proof. The intermittent claudication occasionally observed in mitral stenosis in the absence of peripheral vascular disease shows that a diminished minute volume may be responsible.

### Signs

*Complexion* Sometimes inspection reveals the typical mitral facies with the malar flush and cyanotic tint of the lips and ear lobes. Often however patients look normal. Cyanosis in mitral stenosis is caused by pulmonary congestion, by pulmonary vascular sclerosis in later stages or by increased peripheral utilization of the blood oxygen and stagnation in the advanced stage with right heart failure.

Therefore cyanosis may be absent early unless pulmonary congestion is present. It may diminish or disappear after having been present if the liver enlarges moderately and venous congestion develops due to right heart failure.

*Pulse* Palpation of the pulse has considerable importance in the appraisal of this valvular lesion. In advanced mitral stenosis filling of the left ventricle in diastole becomes so reduced that the stroke volume is diminished and the pulse is very small. It may be scarcely palpable at the wrist even if it is felt in the larger carotid arteries. If the patient has only a slight stenosis of the valve the pulse is normal. One may infer therefore to a certain degree the amount of stenosis from the amplitude of the pulse. In a beginning stenosis the pulse is normal but it becomes smaller as the stenosis increases. Other physical signs are less informative in regard to the degree of stenosis than the pulse. Thus murmurs may be both absent when the stenosis is advanced and very loud in the initial phase of the disease.

Mitral stenosis and mitral insufficiency are often combined. Under these circumstances the pulse alone reveals which lesion predominates. As will be noted later mitral regurgitation does not decrease the size of the pulse. Therefore if the pulse is normal in a combined mitral lesion it may be assumed that the stenosis is not extreme. A small pulse in such cases indicates an advanced stenosis.

even when the murmur of stenosis is absent and the murmur of mitral insufficiency is very loud

The pulse is also poorly filled and small in stenosis of the aortic valves in myocardial weakness and in the shock syndrome but the differentiation usually is easy

**Blood Pressure** In a youthful patient with mitral stenosis the blood pressure tends to be lower than the average level for the same age in the general population. With increasing age (or with the appearance of decompensation) the blood pressure often rises and sometimes reaches a high level. Some believe that the incidence of hypertension in mitral stenosis is the same as in the general population.

**Palpation** Examination of the thorax and especially of the precordium by palpation in mitral stenosis yields so many signs that this method of investigation permits the diagnosis in most cases. The apical impulse often remains at its normal site. This might be anticipated since the left ventricle does not assume the burden of compensation and does not enlarge. The right ventricle dilates only at a later stage and at this time the apex beat may be felt lateral to but never below its normal location. If the apex beat is displaced downward the left ventricle is dilated and some complication such as mitral or aortic insufficiency exists and has produced the left ventricular enlargement.

The apical impulse is abnormal in another respect. It becomes snappy and quicker than normal. In a normal heart if the apex can be felt at all it gives the impression of a slow pulsation. In left ventricular hypertrophy it is heaving and particularly slow. In a mitral stenosis however it is very short. This alteration of the apex beat corresponds to the accentuation of the first heart sound, a very common finding in mitral stenosis and enables one to make the correct diagnosis in the numerous instances when murmurs are absent.

In an advanced mitral stenosis the left ventricle is smaller than normal, sometimes it is even atrophic. While it normally constitutes the most massive section of the heart, in advanced mitral stenosis the left ventricle often looks like an appendage to the rest of the organ. The left atrium, right atrium and right ventricle hypertrophy and dilate in the evolution of the lesion but the left ventricle does not participate in the compensation. The atrophy is usually attributed to the inadequate filling of the left ventricle and the fact that it involves the inflow tract primarily suggests that this assumption is correct.

Another reason for the atrophy of the left ventricle also deserves consideration. During the last years of life patients with advanced mitral stenosis are compelled to avoid the least exertion because this provokes dyspnea. Such enforced inactivity which results in considerable atrophy of the skeletal musculature attains very striking proportions in mitral stenosis. There is a strict parallelism between the status of the skeletal muscles and the state of the left ventricle. In muscular athletes the left ventricle is stronger and heavier than in the average person; in sedentary individuals who are physically inactive the left ventricle is weaker and less capable of performance. Probably part of the left ventricular atrophy in cases of advanced mitral stenosis is due to inactivity of the patient.

This fact should make one hesitate to limit the activity too strictly in patients with valvular lesions. *All physical exertion should not be forbidden. The patient should be permitted to do as much physical work (initially under supervision) as he can without symptoms. Like every other muscle the heart must also do its share of work in order to retain as much functional capacity as possible.*

A diastolic thrill is often palpable in the apical area. A diastolic thrill means a diastolic murmur. The significance of this lies in the fact that diastolic murmurs are found only in organic heart disease. Systolic thrills which accompany systolic murmurs occasionally may be devoid of significance when the murmur is functional or physiologic. The thrill of mitral stenosis appears more often if the apical area is palpated with the patient lying on his left side. Its diastolic character is easily determined when the carotid pulse is palpated simultaneously and it is found that one does not coincide with the other.

The regularity with which the murmur of mitral stenosis is accompanied by a thrill is explained by the fact that the murmur is low in pitch and the chest is resonant to low pitched murmurs. Vocal fremitus is scarcely palpable in individuals with high pitched voices (mostly women) while it may be very distinct in men with deep voices (chest voice). This accounts for the usual absence of thrills in insufficiency of the aortic valve with its soft high pitched murmur. The murmurs in all stenotic mechanisms of organic heart disease are low pitched and cause thrills. This is also exemplified by the murmurs in aortic stenosis and in congenital cardiovascular defects.

Occasionally the murmurs are so low pitched and have such coarse vibrations of large amplitude that they can be better palpated than heard. The human ear is unable to perceive murmurs with less than sixteen vibrations per second. Thus it occasionally happens that a patient with mitral stenosis presents a distinct thrill yet the murmur is very short or even inaudible.

Palpation also reveals the signs of right ventricular hypertrophy that is a diffuse pulsation over the entire precordium. Since the outflow tract of the right ventricle bears the chief burden of compensation and the conus of the right ventricle projects as the most ventral part of the heart systolic pulsation in the conus area may be pronounced. Furthermore a brief but distinct impact is often felt in the conus area along the left cardiac border. This impact follows the slow systolic pulsation over the precordial area and does not coincide with the carotid pulse. It corresponds to the closure of the pulmonic valve which produces the second pulmonic sound. The second pulmonic sound is normally palpable over the area of the pulmonary conus only in early childhood. In adults palpability of the pulmonic sound is just as significant as the marked accentuation that always accompanies it. Occasionally the closure of the pulmonic valve is palpable only during expiration.

The wealth of manifestations on palpation — the snappy apical impulse, the diastolic thrill at the apex, the diffuse pulsation over the precordium and the more circumscribed systolic movement over the conus area of the right ventricle, the distinctly palpable closure of the pulmonic valve — all these signs permit



the immediate diagnosis of mitral stenosis in a majority of cases. By palpation of the pulse one can determine the extent of the lesion.

To be sure even moderate emphysema makes the detection of these phenomena difficult or impossible. Moreover some of the above mentioned phenomena occur in the absence of mitral stenosis. Thus in the hyperactive heart of hyperthyroidism and of many patients with cardiac neuroses in some cases of beriberi or hypertension a diffuse precordial pulsation may be found in the absence of right ventricular hypertrophy. In hyperthyroidism and cardiac neurosis the apex beat may be snappy and even preceded by a very short thrill. By considering the other physical findings however a differentiation is usually easy.

### *Percussion and Roentgen Examination*

The size and shape of the heart in mitral stenosis may reveal three different situations which like the three cardiac contours seen in aortic insufficiency correspond to three sequential stages of the lesion. Such findings are (1) a heart of normal size and shape (2) a mitralized heart of normal size (3) an enlarged mitral heart.

(1) For many years in cases of mitral stenosis the heart may be perfectly normal in size and shape despite the presence of a loud presystolic murmur. For obvious reasons this event is rare in clinics and in hospital wards but it is not uncommon in private practice. One of us collected within one year 16 cases of mitral stenosis which did not present changes in the contour or size of the heart. This situation prevails as long as the left atrium by hypertrophy alone is able to force sufficient blood into the left ventricle. Under these circumstances no stasis develops, no visible enlargement of the left atrium appears, and the cardiac shape is normal. Left atrial hypertrophy cannot be percussed and is not visualized by x-ray examination. Sometimes the heart retains its normal shape even if the auscultatory and roentgenologic findings indicate some congestion in the lesser circuit and the right ventricle becomes hypertrophic. Therefore mitral stenosis should not be excluded in doubtful cases on the basis of normal x-ray findings. The heart may be normal in size even with the presence of a tight mitral lesion.

(2) When left atrial hypertrophy no longer successfully maintains compensation, increasingly larger residues of blood remain in the left atrium at the end of systole and dilatation develops. The elevated pressure in the left atrium leads to a similar increase within the pulmonary veins and soon—in a manner not completely clear—in the arterial segment of the lesser circulation. The elastic wall of the pulmonary artery expands. The increased work for the right ventricle leads to a hypertrophy and dilatation of the outflow tract, the conus atri.

The dilatation of the outflow tract of the right ventricle as pointed out before develops cephalad. This change occasionally combined with dilatation of the left atrium causes the normal waistline on the left cardiac border to disappear and mitral configuration is found (figure 29 a).

A third mechanism is considered an important factor in the disappearance of the cardiac waist particularly in the late stages of mitral stenosis. Dilatation of the right ventricle causes the heart to rotate around its axis to the left. This rotation around the cardiac axis is clockwise (if the examiner stands opposite the patient) and is due mainly to an enlargement of the outflow tract of the right ventricle which lying anteriorly with an almost perpendicular axis fills the waistline if it becomes dilated. Enlargement of the inflow tract counteracts this rotation and may even nullify it. In a similar manner the heart rotates to



FIG. 29 Two orthodiagrams obtained from patients with mitral stenosis (a) Mitral configuration with moderate dilatation in the transverse diameter (b) Marked dilatation of the heart to the right and left. In both instances the left atrium is visible on the right side.

the right (counter clockwise) with dilatation of the outflow tract of the left ventricle. Dilatation of the inflow tract of the left ventricle again opposes this rotation. Thus it happens that the right ventricle not only fills the waistline progressively but forms the main part of the left cardiac border down to and including the apical area. Instead of the normal concavity the left heart border appears convex with the lower part of the left border extending almost perpendicularly toward the apex which is situated at its normal place (figure 30). This form of the heart is so characteristic that one may speak of a mitral stenosis configuration (Holzmänn).

Although the left atrium normally is situated posteriorly, it becomes visible at the right border of the heart in about 50 per cent of the cases with mitral stenosis. This is due to rotation of the heart and to enlargement of the left atrium. Sometimes the left atrium bulges far into the right lung field and a double contour is formed due to the superimposition of the right and left atrium (figure 29). The left atrium may be visible at the right and the left cardiac border (figure 31).

If the left lower heart border runs obliquely to the left the mitral stenosis is combined with some lesion which causes an enlargement of the left ventricle. Usually this will be a mitral insufficiency, but occasionally, an aortic insufficiency or hypertension will be responsible.

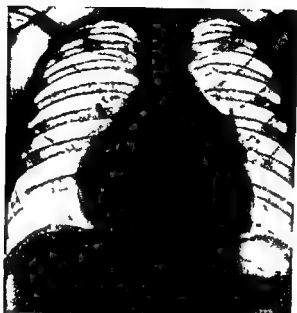


FIG 30 . Mitral stenosis configuration in a patient with rheumatic mitral stenosis

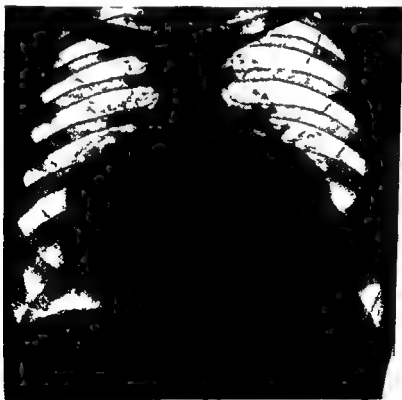


FIG 31 Giant left atrium in a patient with rheumatic mitral stenosis. The left atrium forms a great part of the left and right cardiac border. The lung fields are clear.

The huge proportions of the atrium in some cases of mitral stenosis are remarkable. One case is known in which it had a capacity of three liters (Minowski). An enormously dilated atrium may fill the right chest and may be confused with a right sided pleural effusion. Even moderate dilatation of the left atrium can produce left paravertebral dullness between the third and eighth dorsal vertebra. It may erode the vertebrae. It should be stressed however that a very large left atrium is encountered more often in mitral regurgitation than in stenosis. An unusual degree of dilatation which at times is encountered even with a slight mitral stenosis is clearly not due to dynamic factors alone. An old carditis with fibrosis of the atrial wall plays an important part.

A markedly dilated left atrium forms a large blood depot and acts like an enlarged liver in diminishing pulmonary congestion and dyspnea even in an advanced stenosis.

Due to the rotation of the heart and the diminishing output the aortic knob tends to disappear in the mitral heart. This happens especially when the mitral stenosis is acquired in early childhood. The dilated pulmonary artery and conus also push back the aorta (Zdanký).

The increased pressure within the lesser circuit causes the hilar markings to enlarge but they are sharply outlined. Pulsations are strong and may equal those observed in the 'hilar dance' seen in defects of the ventricular septum, pulmonary regurgitation, persistent ductus arteriosus, fever and hyperthyroidism.

(3) Marked dilatation of the inflow tract of the right ventricle finally develops. The apical impulse becomes palpable beyond the midclavicular line and the cardiac shadow enlarges to the left and to the right (figure 29 b). Dilatation of the right atrium causes a distinct dullness to the right of the lower sternum.

If the myocardium is damaged this third stage is reached even before the valvular lesion becomes very advanced. With a normal myocardium however this stage appears late.

### *Auscultation*

Auscultation reveals a very loud accentuated sometimes tympanic or bell like first heart sound in the region of the apex. There are two reasons for this accentuation: (1) the mitral valves are changed by increased amounts of connective tissue and lime salt deposits. (2) the filling of the left ventricle is diminished.

Vibrations due to the valvular closure and systole are apparently intensified if the filling of the ventricle is diminished. Empty barrels make the most noise. Actually a very loud first heart sound is heard during syncope and sometimes in shock when the content of the left ventricle diminishes. A loud first sound is heard when the heart is overactive as in hyperthyroidism or cardiac neurosis. This occurs not only as the result of hyperactivity but also because the tachycardia regularly present in these conditions shortens diastole and diminishes ventricular filling. A loud first heart sound is also noted in extrasystoles when the premature contraction occurs very early in diastole.

Another explanation of the sharp first sound is the abrupt intra atrial displacement of the leaflets which have decreased length and mass (Nichols et al)

The accentuation of the first heart sound will be absent when the left ventricle fills sufficiently due to an accompanying mitral or aortic insufficiency. It is also absent when the valves are calcified and not flexible. The change of the first heart sound is rarely the sole basis for the diagnosis of mitral stenosis. Often however it is a finding leading to a careful examination which will reveal the diagnosis.

In the phonocardiogram a delay of the appearance of the vibrations of the first heart sound is found (Cossio and Berconsky). Instead of appearing about 0.04 second after the beginning of the QRS complex in the electrocardiogram they appear after an interval of 0.08 second or more (figure 33 a).

In very early mitral stenosis murmurs may be absent and pure sounds are heard. The valvular alterations are too trivial to create abnormal eddies and murmurs. Nevertheless a murmur may appear in these cases if the examination is conducted immediately after exertion or after the inhalation of amyl nitrite (Morrison test).

Generally speaking a murmur may appear or may become louder first if the stenosis becomes greater (this cannot be produced artificially) or second if the velocity of blood flow is accelerated by exercise or amyl nitrite.

The murmur appears first at the end of diastole that is in the presystolic period. This presystolic murmur seems to begin softly; then gradually become louder ending in the accentuated first heart sound (figure 32 a). It is called the presystolic crescendo murmur. Actually graphic records reveal that this murmur is often continuously of the same intensity; the crescendo character is often an auditory impression due to the sound immediately following the murmur (Lewis).

The ventricle is filled from the atrium chiefly during the initial phases of diastole. Therefore it is striking that the murmur of mitral stenosis is often heard only at the end of the diastole presystolic rather than at the beginning. The reason is as follows: filling of the ventricles in the beginning of diastole depends mainly upon the influx of blood when pressure in the atrium and ventricle differ. Late in ventricular diastole however the atrium contracts increasing the speed of flow enough to produce a murmur in the case of a slight mitral stenosis. Thus in this instance as well as in many others the velocity of blood flow is responsible for the development of a murmur.

If the stenosis of the mitral valve progresses the inflow of blood in the earlier phases of diastole also produces a murmur and this is truly decrescendo. It is loud at first since intra atrial pressure is higher at the beginning of diastole and the blood flows speedily into the ventricle. Later in diastole atrial pressure diminishes and the murmur becomes softer. It often vanishes momentarily until the atrial contraction causes the presystolic murmur to occur. Occasionally one murmur merges directly into the other especially when the rate is fast so that all diastole is occupied by the characteristic rumble. In this stage one

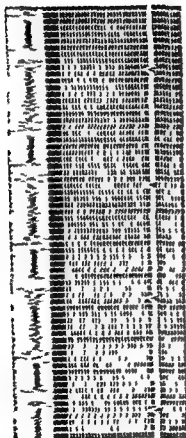


FIG. 150. (a) Normal sinus rhythm. (b) Normal sinus rhythm. A faint systolic murmur indicated the presence of a mitral regurgitation. (c) Mitral stenosis and atrial fibrillation. At the apex a pronounced diastolic murmur was audible in addition to a soft systolic murmur.

hears the classic *flout tataran* of Duroziez which is more closely approximated by *rrt tataran*

Thus an increase in the degree of mitral stenosis may intensify the murmur in certain stages. At the beginning of a mitral stenosis all murmurs may be absent during rest. Later a presystolic rumble is audible and finally a murmur appears in the early part of diastole as well. At any time however the common complications of mitral stenosis to be discussed presently may develop and the murmurs disappear. Therefore patients with loud murmurs are encountered more often in private practice and in out patient clinics among the ambulatory group than in those confined to hospital wards.

The first murmur to vanish the murmur which disappears sooner or later in the course of every mitral stenosis is the presystolic murmur. Since it develops from an accelerated inflow of blood produced by atrial systole it vanishes when the left atrium ceases to contract normally. There are two reasons for this disappearance.

(1) Marked overdistention of the left atrium makes the presystolic murmur vanish. The ventricles are composed chiefly of muscle fibers with a few interspersed connective tissue and elastic fibers the atria however are formed by a network of small muscle bundles the meshes of which are filled with considerable fat and connective tissue. Pronounced dilatation of the left atrium soon overstretches these bundles and reduces their contractile power. From the standpoint of cardiac dynamics overdistention of the atrium means paralysis of this chamber. Such an atrium acts chiefly as a reservoir and does not assist in the propulsion of blood. Thus with progressive dilatation of the left atrium the presystolic murmur becomes ever shorter until it vanishes completely. If a loud drawn out presystolic murmur is still audible certainly the left atrium is not markedly dilated and is able to perform valuable work in compensating the valvular lesion. If on the other hand a case of mitral stenosis with regular cardiac action comes under observation and no presystolic murmur is detected it is justifiable to infer the presence of marked left atrial dilatation from this finding alone. Usually this is confirmed by fluoroscopy.

(2) The second cause for the disappearance of the presystolic murmur is atrial fibrillation (figure 32 b). In fibrillation so many stimuli are formed in the atrium (approximately 600 per minute) that coordinated contraction ceases. The atria show very rapid scarcely visible remarkably feeble movements and therefore as far as the dynamics are concerned one may speak of a paralysis of the atria. With the onset of fibrillation the presystolic murmur vanishes. This event occurs sooner or later in most cases of mitral stenosis.

The murmur that appears in early diastole does not owe its development to the atrial contraction and therefore remains during atrial fibrillation just as it persists when the left atrium is greatly dilated. In some cases however the presystolic murmur disappears at a time when no diastolic murmur was present. In this instance the lesion becomes mute or silent.

Since ventricular rhythm is completely irregular in atrial fibrillation and repeatedly one beat follows another after a very short diastole the diastolic murmur may appear just before the first heart sound of the following beat in this case it may seem to develop a crescendo character and may simulate a presystolic murmur. This explains the recurrent but erroneous report that presystolic murmurs are heard in spite of fibrillation. If such patients are digitalized and diastole is lengthened by slowing of the rate one can readily be convinced that the murmur is purely diastolic (figure 32 b).

Some believe that the presystolic murmur of mitral stenosis originates not from the atrial contraction but rather from ventricular activity and that it is a systolic phenomenon. Graphic registration and the observation of the same presystolic murmur in 2:1 atrioventricular block even during the atrial systole which is not followed by a ventricular contraction prove that the murmur is actually caused by the atrial contraction.

The silent (mute) type of mitral stenosis is not limited to early cases nor to those cases in which the presystolic murmur disappears before the diastolic murmur has appeared. The diastolic murmur may also vanish as the lesion progresses if the valvular ring becomes rigid, calcified and narrower (tight mitral stenosis). The flow of blood into the ventricle becomes progressively slower until the blood merely trickles into the chamber when the velocity of blood flow diminishes enough the murmur disappears.

Under all these circumstances the lesion must be recognized by other signs by palpation and percussion in particular. The silent type of mitral stenosis is not rare and probably about 50 per cent of the cases observed for a sufficiently long time are temporarily silent. The characteristic history of increasing exertional dyspnea in the absence of nocturnal dyspnea facilitates the diagnosis.

Too often, however, the lesion is considered silent even though murmurs are present for the murmurs are not detected when certain rules are disregarded. These rules should be followed diligently in the auscultation of these cases.

The murmurs of mitral stenosis almost without exception are not widely transmitted. While other murmurs even if moderately loud are heard in several places or even over the entire heart the murmurs of mitral stenosis are audible only in circumscribed areas. They vanish if the stethoscope is shifted only a little. For this reason the apical area must be examined very carefully, point by point when mitral stenosis is suspected. Most frequently the murmur if present is found at the area of the apical impulse. Occasionally it is heard outside of the apex beat, nearer to the axillary line and in rare cases inside nearer the left sternal border. In mitral stenosis only relatively slight differences in pressure within the cardiac chambers are involved the murmurs are therefore never exceedingly loud.

Very often the murmur like the thrill is perceptible only when the patient assumes the left lateral position. Auscultation in this position should never be omitted when mitral stenosis is suspected and no murmurs are heard in the supine position. The murmurs of mitral stenosis are also often overlooked when patients



are examined while they are standing. For this reason instances of mitral stenosis are often missed in school examinations and other routine health surveys in which the examining physician listens to the heart only while the patient is in the erect posture.

Another reason for missing the murmurs of mitral stenosis is that they present peculiar qualities. Owing to their low pitch these murmurs sound quite different from other murmurs. The murmurs are rough, uneven and give the impression of a short rumble or a few split sounds rather than of gushing and flowing of liquid in the manner of other murmurs. If the murmur is very brief it is particularly difficult to differentiate from an impure sound. Thus students frequently report having heard no murmur in a given case — until they learn that the rough rumble they noted was the characteristic murmur of mitral stenosis. Undoubtedly some experience is necessary in order to recognize this particular diastolic murmur.

In some cases the diastolic murmur of mitral stenosis must be distinguished from a diastolic murmur of aortic insufficiency. As has been pointed out both murmurs may be heard at the apical area. Quite often in pulmonary emphysema, for example, it is audible only at this place. The physical findings in a pure aortic insufficiency to be sure differ vastly from those in a pure mitral stenosis. At the beginning, however, and before characteristic physical signs develop or when mitral and aortic valve involvement are combined it is not always easy to decide whether the apical diastolic murmur is due to mitral stenosis or aortic insufficiency. The low pitched rumble of mitral stenosis is not always sufficiently pronounced to permit differentiation.

In an insufficiency of the aortic valve the diastolic murmur immediately follows the second sound since high intra-aortic pressure causes an immediate regurgitation of blood into the left ventricle through the incompetent valve. In a mitral stenosis the diastolic flow of blood from the left atrium into the ventricle encounters an obstruction resulting in a diastolic murmur. The left atrial pressure, however, is considerably lower than the intra-aortic pressure. Until the mitral valve opens and the pressure in the ventricle is sufficiently low to permit the blood to flow from the atrium to the ventricle an interval elapses. Hence the murmur of mitral stenosis does not follow the second sound immediately as in the case of aortic insufficiency; it appears after an easily perceptible interval which separates it from the second sound. While a bipartite rhythm (a to and fro murmur) is heard in aortic insufficiency it is tripartite in mitral stenosis. In the latter one hears the loud first sound (and a systolic murmur since a mitral insufficiency often coexists) then the second sound and finally after a short pause there is the diastolic murmur of mitral stenosis. This triple event closely resembles gallop rhythm particularly when the diastolic murmur is very short and rough and thus difficult to differentiate from a heart sound.

The second pulmonic sound is often accentuated. Increased pressure within the lesser circuit is advanced as the primary factor in the accentuation since this causes more forcible closure of the valves. There is, however, another very important mechanism — dilatation of the conus of the right ventricle and of the

pulmonary artery brings these structures nearer to the thoracic wall so that the second sound is conducted better to our ear. Just as a dilated ascending aorta transmits the diastolic murmur of aortic insufficiency better to the second right intercostal space so the dilated pulmonary artery and pulmonary conus conduct the second pulmonic sound better to the left. Actually this accentuation is not heard best nor is the shock due to the closure of the pulmonic valves felt best in the area of the actual location of the valves rather one hears and feels the second pulmonic sound where the wall of the conus or pulmonary artery comes in contact with the thoracic wall. This is usually in the second or third interspace along the left cardiac border.

An accentuated second pulmonic sound is not invariably found in mitral stenosis. As long as the pressure within the lesser circuit is not elevated — as long as the left atrium compensates the stenosis perfectly — the second pulmonic sound is normal. A previously existing accentuation may disappear if the pressure in the lesser circuit falls owing to the appearance of right ventricular failure. On the other hand young individuals occasionally up to the age of twenty five often show a distinct accentuation of the second pulmonic sound in the absence of a mitral lesion. In youth the pulmonary artery physiologically is wide and prominent it lies near to the thoracic wall so that the second pulmonic sound is louder than the second aortic sound. Beyond the age of thirty five the second aortic sound normally becomes slightly louder.

These facts indicate that the importance of an accentuated second pulmonic sound in the diagnosis of a mitral lesion has been overrated in the past.

Apart from an accentuation a splitting (duplication) of the second pulmonic sound is found. This phenomenon is also observed in healthy young people. Although a final explanation is not as yet available many believe that the duplication is due to an asynchronous closure of the aortic and pulmonic valves. This explanation seems logical since in mitral lesions the increased pressure in the lesser circuit should cause the pulmonic valves to close earlier. Normally both shut at the same time despite the fact that the aortic pressure is approximately six times as high as the pulmonic pressure. If this explanation were exclusively valid the duplication should be heard distinctly over the aorta as well whereas it is actually found only over the pulmonic area. Therefore it is possible that the individual pulmonic valves themselves do not close simultaneously. The dilated conus of the pulmonary artery with its ostium thrust forward by the dilated left atrium might be partly compressed by the anterior chest wall so that the three pulmonary valves no longer lie in the same plane and no longer close simultaneously. Against this explanation is the fact that very slight differences are involved which are scarcely perceptible to the human ear. However not rarely the duplicated second sound is palpable in the form of a short circumscribed double shock exactly over the pulmonary area that is at the place where it may arise.

The *opening snap* (claquement d'ouverture de la mitrale opening click) is a phenomenon which is heard in a majority of patients with mitral stenosis.

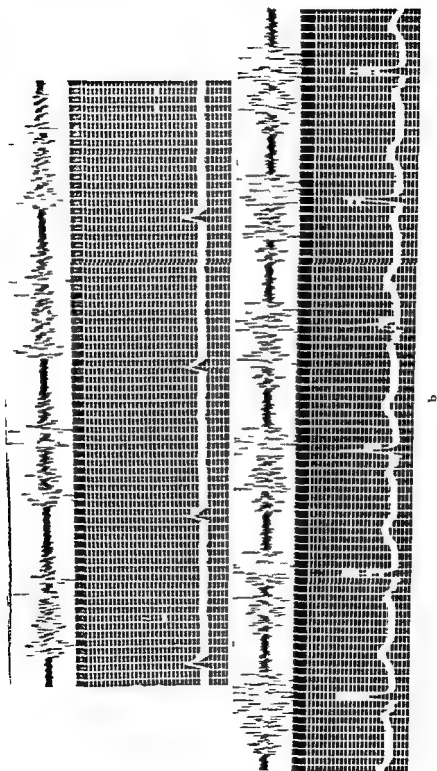


FIG. 111 (a) Mitral stenosis and aortic regurgitation with sinus rhythm. There is a soft systolic apical murmur and a rumbling diastolic one with an opening snap of the mitral valve. (b) Aortic stenosis with sinus rhythm. There is a soft systolic apical murmur and a rumbling diastolic one with an opening snap of the mitral valve.

(figure 33) It is a short high pitched sound which appears in the phonocardiogram 0.09 to 0.13 second after the beginning of the second heart sound. It coincides with the peak of the V wave in the phlebogram. Others claiming that this interval should be shorter than 0.08 second speak of a third heart sound when it amounts to 0.12 second or more (Ongley et al.) It is rarely found over the whole heart usually appearing on the left lower sternal border or about halfway between the apex and left sternal border. It is not present in atrial fibrillation. It is absent in patients with a very mild stenosis of the valves and when the valves are markedly calcified. It is also absent when mitral regurgitation predominates. These facts have great importance in the evaluation of a patient for surgery. The opening snap is heard best with the patient in the supine position. The diastolic murmur is separated from the opening snap by a very short interval. Often the snap is hidden from our ears in the murmur. Its relation to the second sound varies with the length of the preceding diastole. If this is short the closure of the mitral valve is delayed and the time interval between the second sound and the snap is shorter. The distance between the second heart sound and the snap depends on the height of left atrial pressure. The phenomenon is explained by the sudden tension of the fused mitral valves at the beginning of diastole when the downward movement of the valves is suddenly inhibited.

It is higher in pitch and shorter in duration than the second sound or the third heart sound. Moncey found an opening snap on 28 of 33 patients with mitral stenosis.

*Systolic Pulmonary Murmurs* Not rarely these patients exhibit a systolic murmur at the pulmonary area. Occasionally this murmur may be very loud and rough; it may even be associated with a thrill and may dominate the auscultatory picture. As a cause of this murmur the previously mentioned compression of the pulmonary artery by the anterior chest wall has been advanced (functional supravalvular pulmonary stenosis). Another and in our opinion better explanation is based upon the fact that in mitral stenosis both the right ventricle and pulmonary artery are dilated so that the valve ring whose diameter is normal acts as a relative stenosis.

*Diastolic Pulmonary Murmurs* Occasionally there is a high pitched diastolic murmur to the left of the sternum in the fourth or fifth interspace; this is due to a relative pulmonary insufficiency. The murmur and its mechanism will be discussed later.

### Angiocardiography

Angiocardiography has been recommended as a diagnostic method for the selection of patients for surgery. In advanced mitral stenosis prolonged and dense opacities are found in the left atrium while the left ventricle is not opacified to the same degree.

### *Electrocardiography*

This may aid in diagnosis. The P waves are often abnormally wide (more than 0.12 second) and they are slurred in leads I and II (figure 8 a). There is often a right axis deviation and in more advanced cases evidence of right ventricular hypertrophy (the PS-T segments and T waves are directed opposite to the main deflection) (figure 13). The R waves in V2 are often higher, the S waves in V5 and V6 deeper than normal. The T waves in V2 and V3 are often inverted. When the left ventricle is also affected due to a mitral insufficiency, aortic insufficiency, left axis deviation or no axis deviation is found. In such cases the P waves changes alone are significant. Atrial fibrillation is common.

### *Differential Diagnosis*

The low pitch of the murmurs in mitral stenosis makes them sound very much like an impure or split heart sound — a common source of error.

Experience shows that physicians who become interested in heart diseases for some time make the diagnosis of mitral stenosis too often because they diagnose the lesion in every case exhibiting an impurity of the first heart sound at the apex. A presystolic murmur is believed to be present when the first heart sound is split especially when the vibrations of the first part are softer than those of the rest of the first heart sound. Splitting of the first heart sound often depends upon an audibility of the atrial sound; this is a common event in the hyperexcitable heart of hyperthyroidism and cardiac neurosis. It is not rare in an advanced anemia and was common when the treatment of pernicious anemia was restricted to arsenicals and iron. Duplication of the first sound also occurs in kyphoscoliosis and pleural adhesions. Since the first heart sound is abnormally loud in most of the aforementioned conditions confusion with mitral stenosis is possible. Splitting of the first heart sound at the apical area also appears in some congenital heart lesions (patent ductus arteriosus, atrial septal defect) as well as in hypertension and coronary sclerosis. To be sure these cases lack the long drawn out presystolic rumble and present only a brief impure sound before the first heart sound, but the same acoustic phenomenon is also found in mitral stenosis.

The Austin Flint murmur wrongly believed by many to be common has been discussed above. It may be either presystolic or early diastolic. Since the left atrium is dilated in these cases and the second pulmonic sound may be accentuated, distinction from an actual mitral stenosis is often impossible during life.

Diastolic murmurs of the same origin have been described in patent ductus arteriosus and in atrial septal defects. In the latter this murmur leads to the wrong diagnosis of Lutembacher's syndrome. It has also been observed in active rheumatic fever. It is explained by the whirlpools created by the inflow of blood into the dilated left ventricle.

Occasionally the acoustic phenomena caused by the atrial contraction in partial atrioventricular block are confused with the murmurs of mitral stenosis.

A mid diastolic rumble like that of mitral stenosis is present in many cases of 2 I block. The sound caused by the atrial contraction is often double or split. This produces the very close resemblance to a diastolic rumbling mitral murmur.

The clinical picture of mitral stenosis is imitated by myxoma of the atria, particularly the left one. With angiocardigraphy the diagnosis is possible during life because of the constant presence of a filling defect in the atrium (Steinberg et al.).

These imitations of the murmurs of mitral stenosis as well as the fact that real organic mitral stenosis often presents no murmurs for some time make the diagnosis of some cases of mitral stenosis more difficult than is commonly realized.

### Complications

**Atrial Fibrillation.** This is one of the most common complications in the course of mitral stenosis. It is usually present in the more advanced cases on the hospital ward but it may appear at any time even in the very early stages of the lesion.

The disturbance of the circulation due to atrial fibrillation will be discussed in a later chapter. In regard to mitral stenosis the increased rate so often appearing at the onset of fibrillation and the disappearance of effective contractions of the left atrium are harmful. Many cases of mitral stenosis begin to show evidence of decompensation with the onset of atrial fibrillation.

The fact should be stressed however that atrial fibrillation proves a useful complication in other cases of mitral stenosis and may serve to make life more tolerable and even to prolong it. As long as sinus rhythm prevails in a compensated mitral stenosis the rate is often very high and may reach 120 beats per minute. Since a longer diastole is necessary in mitral stenosis to permit blood to pass through the stenotic valve this tachycardia serves to increase congestion within the left atrium and the lesser circuit. Digitalis does not slow such hearts; in fact there is no beneficial treatment available for these patients except mercurial diuretics which somewhat diminish the fluid content of the lungs and relieve dyspnea and orthopnea. In such cases the appearance of atrial fibrillation affords great relief. It is true that the fibrillating atrium is unable to contract effectively and cannot help compensate the lesion; this fact is of no consequence however because the left atrium is usually overdistended in the first place and therefore without significance from the standpoint of dynamics. In fibrillation with mitral stenosis digitalis can slow the heart to such a degree that the length of diastole almost doubles. Therefore pulmonary congestion quickly diminishes and patients may live comfortably for years.

Undoubtedly many patients live to reach the button hole stage of mitral stenosis only because atrial fibrillation occurred.

Before atrial fibrillation is established patients sometimes pass through a stage of paroxysmal fibrillation in which the attacks last a few minutes, hours or days. In this instance treatment may be difficult because the attacks do not

recur sufficiently often for preventive treatment with quinidine nor do they last long enough to permit the use of digitalis. With a longer duration of the attacks of paroxysmal fibrillation and when the physician has the impression that the patient would be better off with sinus rhythm 0.20 Gm quinidine sulphate is given every two hours until the attack subsides. But when atrial fibrillation has been definitely established in cases of mitral stenosis there is rarely an indication for abolishing it by quinidine.

*Mural Thrombi and Embolism* Not uncommonly mural thrombi form in the dilated left atrium especially if atrial fibrillation is present. They are not the result of a stagnant circulation alone but are usually due to involvement of the atrial endocardium by the rheumatic process; this often causes deposits of fibrin as well as the formation of thrombi at the affected area.

Detached fragments of such thrombi may produce vascular accidents such as cerebral embolism or embolism in a peripheral artery. The middle cerebral artery is often affected by such emboli. In a series of 72 cases of mitral stenosis with cerebral embolism atrial fibrillation was present in 55 (Harris and Levine). Recovery from a cerebral embolism sometimes progresses with astonishing speed and to a surprising extent.

It has been established that peripheral embolism occurs in 5 to 10 per cent of cases of mitral stenosis. After the first embolism occurs the physician is confronted with the problem whether to use prophylactic therapy with anticoagulants. Because of the necessity to maintain a certain critical prothrombin level the dangers of such therapy and the rarity of recurrences this treatment is utilized only for special patients exhibiting frequent embolic manifestations. Embolism occurs in spite of correctly guided therapy with anticoagulants.

*Tuberculosis* The frequently encountered statement that pulmonary congestion in mitral stenosis protects the patients from pulmonary tuberculosis is not justified. It seems that pulmonary tuberculosis in patients with mitral stenosis is as common as in the general population.

*Pulmonary Hemoptysis* This complication has various causes. It may appear in pulmonary embolism with infarction; it is seen in acute pulmonary congestion or in pulmonary edema. It is observed even in the presence of atrial fibrillation. Sometimes amounts up to 500 ml of blood are expectorated at one time. A leukocytosis and mild fever may be present. The patient may complain of precordial distress. The lung fields show nothing roentgenologically. A rupture of pulmonary veins or varices of the bronchial veins may be responsible.

*Ball Thrombus* A rather rare and interesting complication is a ball thrombus in the left or rarely right atrium. This thrombus may be sufficiently large to fill the entire atrium. The true ball thrombus is free or may be attached to the atrial wall by a pedicle. Atrial fibrillation is usually present. The clinical diagnosis of this complication sometimes is possible since the thrombus very markedly disturbs the circulation and causes certain characteristic signs. Angiocardiography demonstrating a filling defect in the atrium may help. These patients usually have deep cyanosis and severe dyspnea; the peripheral parts of the body

especially the feet and legs are cold the peripheral pulses are almost imperceptible and gangrene develops in the toes fingers nose and ears This gangrene is often symmetrical because the minute volume undergoes extreme reduction due to the obstruction of the mitral orifice It would be asymmetric if the gangrene were the result of embolism which sometimes appears in the peripheral arteries The evolution of symptoms from the mitral coldness of the extremities to pallor lividity necrosis and gangrene may require weeks

In addition to these permanent features transient complications may follow temporary impaction of the ball thrombus in the mitral orifice Such patients have attacks of fainting and disturbances of speech or paralysis of the limbs Disorientation and convulsive seizures occur if the impaction lasts longer Naturally prolonged block of the mitral orifice is fatal

In one of our cases (Lans) with the picture just described large thrombi practically filled the whole atrium and obstructed the orifices of the pulmonary veins to a great degree The presence of a ball thrombus is thus not necessary for this clinical syndrome to appear

Obviously the prognosis of these patients is poor A duration of life exceeding one month after the appearance of symptoms is apparently rare Atrial fibrillation in the absence of mitral stenosis is rarely associated with the formation of a ball thrombus but such cases have been observed in hypertension We saw a somewhat similar syndrome as a consequence of a ball thrombus in the right atrium Surgery for removal of the thrombus should be contemplated

A similar picture may be found in atrial myxoma where the glossy gelatinous tumor may fill the whole left atrium These tumors histologically have a structure like Wharton's jelly of the umbilical cord They appear in hearts without mitral stenosis and represent the most common primary new growth of the heart

*Laryngeal Nerve Paralysis* A paralysis of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve causing hoarseness sometimes occurs Originally this phenomenon was explained by a compression of the nerve between the enlarged left atrium and the arch of the aorta It seems however that the nerve is squeezed between the aorta and left pulmonary artery when the latter is pushed forward by the enlarged left atrium

Paralysis of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve due to a similar mechanism has also been described in connection with left ventricular failure (Kang et al) Improvement has been observed following mitral surgery (An et al)

*Dysphagia* This is an occasional result of the marked dilatation of the left atrium Posterior displacement of the esophagus is usually accompanied by a lateral displacement (in most cases to the right) so that the esophagus usually but not invariably escapes compression

Dysphagia also occurs in pericarditis with effusion in rare cases of left ventricular enlargement (aortic stenosis) in anomalies of the aortic arch and of the large arteries originating from the aorta (dysphagia lusoria) and aortic as well as dissecting aneurysms the three conditions mentioned last are provocative most often



*Bronchial Stenosis* Since the left atrium is situated just beneath the tracheal bifurcation atrial enlargement may increase the angle of the bifurcation. The angle of the two main bronchi is normally about 70 degrees and always less than 90 degrees. In mitral stenosis it may increase to 110 degrees. It is the left main bronchus which tends to be pushed upward as the tissues are softer in children. Compression of the left main bronchus in mitral stenosis can occur and may cause pulmonary atelectasis.

*Pulmonary Edema* The mechanism of this lesion has been explained in the first chapter. It is often missing for reasons explained above.

### *Prognosis*

The prognosis in patients with rheumatic mitral stenosis in general depends upon many factors, not the least of which is the frequency of recurrences of rheumatic fever and the condition of the myocardium. When mitral stenosis is observed early in the course of rheumatic fever or after the active phase is over it may seem very slight and therefore the outlook may appear good. But gradually and apparently without new attacks of rheumatic fever which can be diagnosed clinically, a button hole mitral stenosis may develop and the patient succumbs within a few years. At other times the lesion remains minimal and stationary; these patients lead almost normal lives and reach old age. Some live out their lives without being aware that heart disease exists.

Despite such exceptions the average age at death from mitral stenosis is near forty years. Most of these patients ultimately seek hospitalization for congestive failure.

### *Surgical Therapy of Mitral Stenosis*

The statements encountered in current literature, in particular literature of surgical origin, that mitral stenosis is essentially a surgical disease is a great simplification of the issue, although it may be conceded that in certain stages medicinal therapy has little to offer. This is true not only in advanced cases but in some patients even early when the heart is scarcely enlarged and the right ventricle functions perfectly but the pulmonary congestion is tremendous because of the mechanical obstacle of the stenotic mitral valve. Here digitalis is of little help while surgery miraculously relieves the attacks of pulmonary edema, dyspnea and hemoptysis.

The idea of surgical relief is not a new one. Sir Lauder Brunton suggested it long ago and Suttar performed the finger fracture procedure as early as 1925. The following year Pribram performed the operation from the ventricle. Since procedures advised at that time resulted in a detrimental mitral insufficiency a high mortality and rare improvement operations were soon discontinued.

*Different Surgical Procedures* Other surgical procedures were recommended all designed to diminish pulmonary congestion. Bland and Sweet recommended an anastomosis between the right inferior pulmonary vein and the vena azygosa. Cossio and Perianes recommended tricuspid valvulotomy from the jugular vein.

to create a regurgitation and relieve pressure in the lesser circuit and Cossio also ligated the inferior vena cava to reduce the right heart output others performed a sympathectomy to slow the heart All these efforts were soon overshadowed by two operations which proved safer since they did not usually create an appreciable insufficiency of the mitral valve mitral commissurotomy and the finger fracture method In both procedures one opens and enters the left atrium The finger fracture method is preferred if it is impossible commissurotomy is done With both methods the individual leaflets are separated no valvular tissue is removed but the orifice is enlarged

*Indications and Contraindications* Patients with mitral stenosis are divided into four groups or stages In stage I the lesion is asymptomatic In stage II the patient has symptoms at rest or effort but the complaints are static and do not progress In stage III the symptoms progress in spite of correct therapy In stage IV the complaints are incapacitating No operations are performed in stage I and they are seldom of use in stage IV they are indicated and useful in stages II and III These stages of course represent a rough distinction only A patient may show progressive complaints and failure (stage III) but the stenosis of the mitral valve is slight and not advancing however the myocardium is damaged by rheumatic fever and fails We recommend the operation in stage II only if pulmonary edema or hemorrhage is present or if the complaints are marked Stage III is in progressive disease offers the chief indication but one must be sure — if possible — that progression of complaints is not caused by reactivation of rheumatic fever acute infection overexertion and so forth

The operation is not performed too early in childhood since mitral stenosis tends to be progressive and new deposits of fibrin repeatedly develop on the valves due to recurrences of rheumatic fever Successful postoperative cases are known in which the benefit of operation disappeared after a few years because the stenosis recurred Therefore although active rheumatic fever is a contraindication it is clear that this rule is too dogmatic In the first place signs of rheumatic activity have been found in 30 to 40 per cent of postoperative patients in the resected left atrial appendices In most instances no clinical evidence of activity existed Moreover if a patient with mitral stenosis congestive heart failure and active rheumatic fever is operated on the diminution of only one of these factors may be life saving

Subacute bacterial endocarditis is also a contraindication Operation is contraindicated in patients with marked irreversible cardiac dilatation One does not operate on patients having an appreciable aortic stenosis and regurgitation or a definite mitral insufficiency Studies with the gloved finger during operation have shown that mitral insufficiency causes a regurgitating jet and that its presence of a slight degree does not contraindicate the operative procedure while a definite mitral regurgitation does The difficulty of diagnosing a mitral insufficiency will be discussed in the following section

We advise the operation in patients with increasing disability According to Wood surgery is required in 50 per cent of all patients with mitral stenosis

Since after the age of twenty years recurrences of rheumatic fever are less common some physicians prefer to operate on patients under 20. In patients over 40 years old complications occur more often and the mortality increases.

The patient should be digitalized before the operation. Neither atrial fibrillation nor a history of pulmonary embolism is a contraindication. However the operation cannot always be carried out since occasionally the atrium is filled with thrombi. Surgery is not advised if there is no evidence of an increased resting pressure in the pulmonary arterial system or when one suspects that pulmonary pressure is increased because of left ventricular failure (Courmand et al.).

*Results of Operation.* The operative mortality varies according to the surgeon and to the stage in which the patient is operated on. Thus in one series no patient died in stage II while 4.6 per cent died when the operation was performed in stage III, the immediate operative mortality in stage IV was 31 per cent. The average mortality is reported as between 6.6 and 27.4 per cent. Embolism in the systemic circulation occurred in 6 per cent of the operations. Harken reports a mortality of only 1 per cent in patients in stage III while it was 27 per cent in stage IV.

A serious complication is a systemic embolism from dislodged thrombi in the left atrium. At the present time owing to Bailey's method of compressing the carotid arteries and permitting the blood to gush out and carry the thrombotic material with it the incidence is somewhat diminished. But many surgeons abandoned this procedure. A rare but serious complication is dissection of the left circumflex coronary artery or subacute bacterial endocarditis caused by staphylococci (Dalton et al.).

While the operation brings dramatic relief in some cases it lacks success in others. Prediction is impossible at present. The operation is rarely curative however. In 214 patients one group of surgeons saw 41.6 per cent greatly improved, 7 per cent improved and 13.0 per cent unimproved. Bland reports an improvement varying between 58.3 and 86.9 per cent. The salvage rate of surgery in class IV patients according to Denton and Bolton is as follows: there was an immediate mortality of 12 of 61 patients, nine died within one month. Of 38 living patients 33 showed distinct improvement.

No proof has been given that mitral surgery diminishes the incidence of systemic embolism. Despite marked clinical improvement the change of heart size and shape and of the electrocardiogram are often insignificant. An improvement may appear 4 to 6 months following surgery. Disappearance of the increased pulmonary resistance seems to require time.

Clover examined 50 patients five years after the operation. In 20 the results were excellent, 16 were improved and 5 unimproved. The others had died. Baker et al. found the results in 13 out of 45 postoperative patients not favorable three years after the operation.

The final results — the frequency of re-stenosis, the ultimate effect of surgery as to duration of life — cannot as yet be evaluated.

The diastolic murmurs may become shorter or may disappear even if they remain unchanged improvement may be great. The size of the heart may diminish or increase the latter because of the better filling of the left ventricle. The first heart sound over the apex and the second pulmonic sound may be less accentuated after successful surgery.

*Ideal Subject* The ideal subject for surgery has a snappy apex beat and a very loud apical first sound (which disappears in an appreciable mitral regurgitation). There is a clearly audible opening snap (which disappears in marked regurgitation in rigid calcified valves which respond poorly to surgery and finally in marked pulmonary hypertension). In mitral regurgitation an audible third heart sound replaces the opening snap (Wood). The aortic knob is absent and the left ventricle not large. There is typical widening and slurring of the P waves in leads I and II.

*Postcommisurotomy Syndrome* An interesting complication of the operation is the postcommisurotomy syndrome which appears a few weeks after surgery. The incidence of this syndrome has been found to be around 24 per cent. It is known that rheumatic fever may be reactivated after trauma. In the syndrome the patient develops joint and chest pain, fever, leukocytosis, pericarditis and pleurisy. While some authors believe that pulmonary emboli and the pericarditis which follows every entry into the pericardium even under sterile conditions are responsible, we think that the appearance of a prolonged P-R interval in the electrocardiogram of some of these patients and the occasional marked increase of the antistreptolysin titer favor the assumption of a recurrence or reactivation of rheumatic fever. Dressler calls attention to the striking resemblance between idiopathic pericarditis and the postcommisurotomy syndrome. Different mechanisms may be responsible in different cases.

*Pathophysiology* The contributions of surgery to better understanding of the pathophysiology of this lesion are considerable.

Astonishing was the finding that in most patients examined by surgeons the size of the mitral orifice was 1 square cm. or less. The cardiac output may fall to 2 liters per minute or less (Dexter et al.). Even in patients who were asymptomatic (stage I) the orifice was found so small that the fingertip could not pass through it; even orifices of 0.3 square cm. have been seen. Surgery is very successful even if it increases the diameter only to 1.5 square centimeters. This is remarkable because one would have assumed that some patients with a damaged myocardium develop cardiac failure in earlier stages. In any event, in agreement with experimental findings and in analogy with the aortic orifice, reduction of the mitral orifice to one-fourth normal, which is about 1 square cm., seems to be the critical value. Under these conditions the pressure head necessary for adequate filling of the left ventricle must be considerable.

The mechanism of pulmonary hypertension in mitral stenosis has always puzzled clinicians. An increased pressure in the pulmonary veins is easily understood. Why should this lead to an increase in pressure in the pulmonary arteries? Anatomic changes have been found in the pulmonary arterioles; these however

are of a secondary nature the consequence and not the cause of hypertension in the lesser circuit. Catheterization revealed that pulmonary vascular resistance rises early in many cases to a multiple of the normal values. The mechanism is unknown and reflexes from the dilated pulmonary veins have been postulated. We shall see in the chapter on cor pulmonale that local hypoxia in the lung makes pulmonary arterioles contract by a direct action on their smooth musculature. Teleologically regarded this narrowing of arterioles may be considered beneficial since it prevents the appearance of excessively high pressures in the pulmonary capillaries and may explain why pulmonary edema is so rare in patients with advanced mitral stenosis. It is certainly much rarer than recent reports maintain. On the other hand even with mitral orifices of 0.5 square cm. normal pulmonary resistance was found so that the mechanism of its development is not clear.

*Procedure.* It is the duty of the physician whenever he advises a patient regarding mitral surgery to consider prognosis without surgery, the mortality of surgery, and the complications of the procedure. It is not ethical to tell the patient that he will be cured. It is purely fortuitous if the mitral valve regains normal function after finger fracture or commissurotomy. Usually the orifice becomes wider by only a few millimeters, yet it is astonishing how much improvement such enlargement may bring.

## MITRAL REGURGITATION

### *Etiology*

*Rheumatic Fever.* Verrucous endocarditis renders the mitral valve incompetent by retracting the thickened leaflets and by shortening the chordae tendineae. Rheumatic mitral insufficiency is usually combined with stenosis owing to fusion of the valves. Pure mitral regurgitation of rheumatic origin without any evidence of a stenosis is rare. Often the stenosis is silent and no diastolic murmur is audible. In performing a commissurotomy with the finger in the left atrium Bailey missed the typical regurgitation jet in one third of 1 000 patients. Mitral regurgitation is a little more common in men than in women.

*Relative Mitral Insufficiency.* Valvular incompetence without organic changes in the leaflets is a very common event in all conditions associated with marked dilatation of the left ventricle. It is a typical complication of hypertension, aortic insufficiency, and myocardial lesions. Two forms can be distinguished. In one the valvular ring may widen because of a pronounced left ventricular dilatation so that the valves are unable to close in systole. In the other and more common variety the heart dilates along the axis of the ventricle, thus displaces the papillary muscles downward and the chordae tendineae prevent the valves from closing completely.

*Malformations and Trauma.* Mitral insufficiency due to malformations or caused by trauma are rare. In a traumatic case personally observed by one of us a bullet created a small hole in one leaflet of the mitral valve (Adam).

*Atherosclerosis* Not rarely, atherosclerosis increases the thickness of the aortic leaflet of the mitral valve but this rarely makes the valve incompetent. Simon and Liu found calcification of the annulus of the mitral valves in 10 per cent of 590 unselected consecutive necropsies.

### *Dynamics*

In mitral insufficiency blood returns to the left atrium under high pressure during ventricular systole. In experimental mitral insufficiency more than 50 per cent of the stroke volume may regurgitate.

In order to overcome the diastolic intra aortic pressure and to eject its contents into the aorta pressure within the left ventricle must exceed aortic diastolic pressure. Due to the loss of blood by leakage through the mitral valve this level of intra aortic pressure is reached later than under normal conditions. Since pressure in the left atrium is much lower than that in the aorta it is not clear why the left ventricle does not send its entire output into the atrium. According to Wiggers the great vigor of contraction causes intraventricular pressure to rise so rapidly that the resistance of the diastolic intra aortic pressure is overcome. The more the myocardium is damaged the weaker the systole and the greater the loss of blood into the left atrium.

### *Symptoms*

The complaints are similar to those of mitral stenosis. Exertional dyspnea appears early and is the outstanding symptom during the entire course of the disease. There are no symptoms specific for mitral insufficiency.

### *Signs*

*Palpation* As in mitral stenosis palpation shows evidence of hypertrophy of the right ventricle as revealed by diffuse pulsations over the precordium. The second pulmonic sound may be palpable. Early, however the apex beat is displaced downward and outward since the left ventricle is dilated from the beginning. If the apical murmur is low pitched a systolic apical thrill is sometimes palpable. In some patients the unusually large left atrium reaches far into the right chest and systolic pulsations are found to the right of the sternum between the fourth and sixth ribs. These pulsations are rather strong owing to the systolic distention of the left atrium by ventricular pressure. The proximity of left atrium to the anterior chest wall is favored by the rotation of the heart around its axis to the left.

The heart is nutralized with evidence of marked enlargement of the left atrium and left ventricle.

*Auscultation the Systolic Murmur* Auscultation reveals an apical systolic murmur. Since murmurs of this kind are often heard in the healthy it is proper to discuss first the systolic apical murmurs encountered in healthy individuals that are so often confused with those of a real mitral insufficiency.

The nomenclature is difficult. One usually separates the organic murmurs of mitral insufficiency from the functional or 'accidental' murmurs of healthy people. The term 'functional' is not precisely appropriate for murmurs caused by organic changes also depend upon functional alterations. Therefore it has been proposed to differentiate between physiologic and pathologic murmurs. Naturally a pathologic systolic apical murmur will not always be due to a mitral insufficiency as there are many other causes for it. It has also been proposed to differentiate between significant and nonsignificant or incidental murmurs.

Physiologic murmurs are common. In fact many physicians who have reflected on the matter have wondered why a systolic murmur is not heard over every heart under normal conditions. When it is recalled how forcibly blood is ejected through narrow ostia into tortuous vessels the usual absence of systolic murmurs is indeed astonishing.

Systolic murmurs are quite common in healthy young people. Among 218 apparently healthy individuals in the first four decades of life Thayer found a systolic murmur in almost one third. Examination of 5541 high school students revealed a nonorganic systolic murmur in 86.63 per cent (Schwartzman). Parkinson and Hartly found systolic murmurs in 10 per cent of healthy recruits. Among those not presenting a murmur at rest over 80 per cent develop such a murmur after exercise. These murmurs are heard most often over the pulmonary artery and they may disappear in the erect position. Sometimes they are very loud and rough but only rarely are they accompanied by a thrill.

These physiologic murmurs are less frequent in adults. They do however occur at all ages. Since a murmur irrespective of its origin depends as pointed out earlier on a certain velocity of the blood flow these murmurs often become louder or appear on exertion. Other physiologic murmurs are audible only at rest. They may be blowing, rasping, mewing or musical. If by chance an opportunity is afforded for the examination of such a heart at necropsy no alteration capable of evoking the murmur may be discovered.

Acceleration of the blood flow in anemia or for other reasons may cause a systolic murmur. These murmurs appear over all ostia in anemia (Laennec's murmur) and are constantly heard over the base of the heart. Formerly they were accounted for by a diminished viscosity of the blood but undoubtedly the increased velocity of blood flow is the real causative factor. In anemic patients highly musical systolic murmurs may be audible over the large veins near the base of the heart (venous hum). In rare cases the latter are heard even during diastole. Loud systolic murmurs (hemic murmurs) and cardiac enlargement in anemic patients may simulate primary cardiac disease.

Systolic murmurs appear regularly in fever as the result of increased velocity of blood flow. If the fever is of unknown origin a loud systolic murmur over the heart may focus the attention on this organ (a subacute bacterial endocarditis is often suspected) and thus may lead to lack of recognition of the real cause for the fever. Hyperthyroidism is almost invariably associated with systolic murmurs owing to the acceleration of the circulation.

Differentiation between physiologic and organic murmurs is extremely important. In patients who have had rheumatic fever in the routine examination of school children in physical examinations for employment for military recruits or for insurance companies the question constantly arises how to interpret a systolic murmur at the base or apex.

It is important to remember that every systolic murmur should arouse suspicion. This is especially true in the older patient and if it was absent previously. Therefore every effort must be made to rule out a pathologic process.

Since the differentiation between physiologic and pathologic murmurs concerns a problem that confronts the physician almost daily several methods for arriving at a decision have been recommended.

(1) Considerable emphasis has been placed in the past on the fact that murmurs of mitral insufficiency are transmitted to the back while physiologic murmurs are heard only over the heart. This rule has little value. The transmission of a murmur to the back depends merely on its loudness and its pitch and not whether it originates in an organic lesion of the valve.

(2) Levine as pointed out before differentiates six degrees of a systolic murmur. It is often stated that murmurs beyond grade 2 are pathologic. This is not in accord with our experience. It is true that louder murmurs are more suspicious; however they are not invariably pathologic. Cardiac surgery has also revealed that even in the presence of a grade 3 apical systolic murmur no regurgitating jet could be detected at operation.

(3) The absence of the first sound at the apex (occasioned by the mitral incompetency and change in the presphygmic period) has value for the diagnosis of mitral insufficiency if a systolic murmur is audible at the apex. Since mitral regurgitation is usually accompanied by mitral stenosis which accentuates the first apical sound this rule often is not reliable.

(4) Whereas the physiologic systolic murmur may be very loud the murmur in a true case of mitral insufficiency may be soft and faint. The intensity of the murmur does not permit any conclusion concerning the extent of the valvular lesion. A slight valvular incompetency is associated with regurgitation of blood through a narrow opening into the left atrium and the murmur may be loud. In a more advanced mitral insufficiency the communication between the left ventricle and atrium is broad and sometimes no murmur at all or merely a very faint murmur is audible.

One may say that if two patients present exactly the same murmurs over the mitral valve it is entirely possible that one has an organic mitral regurgitation and the other a healthy heart with a physiologic murmur.

(5) Considerable stress is often placed upon the accentuation of the second pulmonic sound in mitral lesions. This sign is unreliable since it is absent in early stages of mitral regurgitation as long as pressure is not increased in the lesser circuit and is likewise absent in the later stages when right ventricular failure appears with a consequent fall of pressure in the lesser circuit. Moreover a loud second pulmonic sound is physiologic in healthy young people. Therefore



if such individuals present a loud apical systolic murmur and in addition complain of palpitation and dyspnea an erroneous diagnosis of mitral regurgitation is sometimes made. Since the diagnosis of a valvular lesion has a profound effect on the patient and may influence his whole life in many ways this diagnosis should not be made casually. Too often one sees patients with healthy hearts in whom the diagnosis of an organic heart disease was made many years ago simply on the basis of a systolic apical murmur.



FIG. 34 Rheumatic mitral lesion with regurgitation predominating—enlarged left ventricle

(6) Frequently it is said that a distinction between physiologic murmurs and those due to mitral insufficiency is possible if the patient is examined in different postures. The murmur of mitral insufficiency is loudest if the patient is recumbent while physiologic murmurs are intensified in the erect posture. It is true that the murmur of mitral insufficiency as well as those of mitral stenosis often are detected only in recumbent patients. Functional murmurs however sometimes have the same peculiarity and therefore no decisive conclusion can be drawn from this fact alone.

As a corollary to the preceding discussion it follows that the diagnosis of a mitral insufficiency should never be made from auscultatory findings alone. Only those who follow this rule will avoid errors of serious consequence. *In the presence of a systolic apical murmur mitral regurgitation should be diagnosed only if the left atrium and ventricle are enlarged.*

*Left Atrium and Ventricle* Whereas in mitral stenosis dilatation of the left atrium may be absent for a long time this dilatation occurs early in mitral regurgitation. In mitral stenosis the left atrium may overcome the obstruction by means of hypertrophy alone at least for some time. In this lesion the atrium dilates secondarily if compensation by simple hypertrophy is impossible. On the other hand in mitral insufficiency the left atrium dilates from the beginning (primarily) because with valvular incompetence the left atrium fills from both sides backwards and under high pressure from the ventricle as well as normally from the pulmonary veins. The dilatation of the left atrium may be enormous the term aneurysm has sometimes been applied to it.

Parallel and coincidental to the atrial dilatation the left ventricle also dilates since in pure insufficiency the patent mitral orifice permits the left ventricle to overfill in diastole (figure 34).

If enlargement of the left atrium and ventricle cannot be demonstrated by percussion fluoroscopic examination becomes necessary to confirm the diagnosis. The finding of an esophageal displacement in the right anterior oblique position is often decisive for the diagnosis. If no abnormality is revealed by this examination it is well to re-examine the patient after a few months. The diagnosis of a mitral insufficiency may be discarded if the left atrium remains normal. A normal left atrium and left ventricle are found only in patients with negligible mitral insufficiency.

### *Electrocardiography*

This gives no assistance in the diagnosis of a mitral insufficiency. With hypertrophy and dilatation of the right and left ventricle there is often no axis deviation.

### *Catheterization and Diagnosis During Surgery*

When during cardiac catheterization the tip of the catheter is wedged into a small pulmonary artery and the pressure registered it is claimed that a large systolic pulse wave appears in the presence of mitral regurgitation. This sign however proved unreliable. With a finger in the left atrium the surgeon can readily feel the regurgitating jet and — from its strength — can draw a conclusion as to the degree of regurgitation. With this method mitral insufficiencies were discovered when no systolic murmur existed at the apex. On the other hand as pointed out before loud systolic murmurs have been found with no evidence of mitral regurgitation a lesion of a different degree than the clinician had concluded from the loudness of the murmur may be found.

*Other Diagnostic Methods* In pure or predominating mitral insufficiency there is no opening snap and no accentuation of the first apical sound. Gallop rhythm occurs. Systolic expansion of the left atrium can be seen fluoroscopically but often is missed. These expansions have been registered in the esophagogram fluorocardiogram and kymogram. All these methods of examination contribute very little. If in a proven mitral stenosis roentgen examination particularly

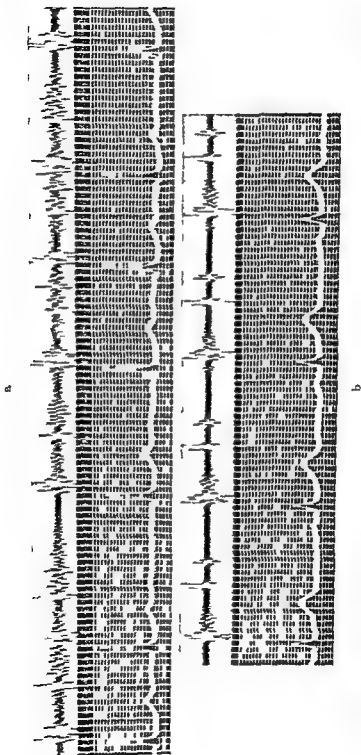


Fig. 3. (a) Obtained at the apical area from a 54 year old woman with mitral regurgitation and stenosis and atrial fibrillation a blowing systolic and a rumbling diastolic murmur were heard. (b) Obtained from a 22 year old woman with rheumatic mitral regurgitation the tracing was obtained at the cardiac apex and shows a systolic murmur and gallop rhythm.

in the left oblique position reveals an enlargement of the left ventricle there is a strong probability in favor of a mitral insufficiency but an aortic lesion must also be ruled out. In the latter the aortic knob is well developed while it is usually missing in pure mitral lesions.

### *Differential Diagnosis*

The outstanding problem in differential diagnosis of a mitral insufficiency is the distinction of the systolic apical murmur from a physiologic murmur (This was discussed in the preceding pages). The differentiation between an organic and a relative mitral insufficiency (which was often called functional) is easy if there is a diastolic murmur indicative of mitral stenosis (figure 35). This can only mean a rheumatic etiology. If however the systolic apical murmur alone is found and the heart displays a mitral configuration relative as well as organic mitral insufficiency may be present. Gallop rhythm (figure 30) occurs in both forms of mitral regurgitation. If the signs of the valvular lesion disappear during treatment one may properly assume the existence of a relative mitral insufficiency which disappeared when the state of the heart muscle improved. Other wise only careful investigation and the demonstration of some disease which might lead to marked dilatation of the left ventricle and a relative insufficiency of the valve permit one to reach a differential diagnosis. Occasionally the history will assist. A patient with a rheumatic lesion of the mitral valve complains of increasing exertional dyspnea. A patient with relative mitral insufficiency presents typical paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea characteristic of left ventricular failure.

It should be kept in mind that relative mitral insufficiency is a complication of some heart lesion and is not an entity *sui generis*.

### *Prognosis*

Statements concerning the outlook for a patient with mitral insufficiency should be guarded. In older reports the prospect was often described as excellent. This is understandable because rather often the diagnosis was made in healthy individuals with a physiologic murmur. If the diagnosis however is limited to real cases of mitral insufficiency it is soon discovered that patients with mitral insufficiency or a double mitral lesion with a predominating insufficiency develop the picture of complete and irreversible decompensation in a relatively short time. This is partly due to the early and sometimes enormous dilatation of the left atrium and ventricle.

The combination of mitral insufficiency with stenosis has its favorable aspects. The stenosis prevents overfilling and dilatation of the left ventricle even when the left atrium is markedly distended.

*Surgical Therapy* This is still in the experimental stage and it is too early for a proper evaluation. Venous and pericardial grafts have been used in dogs. Mitral suturing has been attempted. With deformities of the valves mitral commissurotomy may decrease the degree of regurgitation but often results in an increase.

## TRICUSPID REGURGITATION

This lesion is still frequently overlooked by physicians who rely largely on auscultation for the diagnosis of valvular lesions. The diagnosis, however, is often readily made by other methods.

*Etiology*

Isolated rheumatic involvement of the tricuspid valves is extremely rare. A combination of rheumatic valvulitis of the mitral aortic valves and evidence of a similar process in the tricuspid valves is common. Various statistics indicate that careful examination will disclose tricuspid valve involvement in 20 to 30 per cent of the patients with rheumatic mitral disease.

There are rare instances of an isolated tricuspid insufficiency resulting from healed bacterial endocarditis.

A relative tricuspid insufficiency due to dilatation of the right ventricle is the type most often encountered. It may be present with a moderate dilatation of the right ventricle or absent when there is considerable dilatation. It is commonly associated with rheumatic mitral lesions which lead to an enlargement of the right ventricle and with myocardial diseases of various etiologies. One case of a relative tricuspid and mitral insufficiency developing in the course of intractable paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia which lasted for years has been described elsewhere (Scherf and Kisch).

Congenital tricuspid insufficiency due to malformation of the valve is also known (Barritt and Ulrich).

*Dynamics*

If the tricuspid valves are incapable of closure a certain amount of blood is sent back into the right atrium during systole. Right atrial dilatation develops early and is accompanied from the beginning by dilatation of the right ventricle. In an uncomplicated case the regurgitating blood fills the right atrium without creating any abnormal sign. If congestion increases, however, or if the atria fibrillate, regurgitation even of small quantities of blood provokes certain easily detected signs.

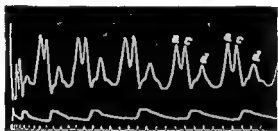
In an advanced tricuspid insufficiency the left ventricle is said to undergo atrophy due to inadequate filling.

*Symptoms*

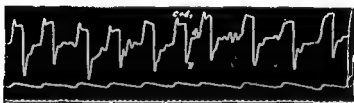
It is characteristic for patients with tricuspid regurgitation to have but few complaints. There is no dyspnea unless physical exertion exceeds certain modest limits. No orthopnea or paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea are observed. Sleep is undisturbed. Digitals in remarkably small amounts and above all diuretics keep these patients well for a long time.

### Signs

**Positive Venous Pulse** The diagnosis is often possible by inspection. In healthy people a venous pulsation composed of three waves can often be observed in the neck veins. Figure 36 a shows a normal venous pulse. The first wave (the a wave) arises during and in connection with atrial systole while the c wave and v wave arise during ventricular systole. During a large part of ventricular systole blood is expelled into the peripheral arteries thus increasing the negative pressure within the chest; this facilitates the inflow of blood into the chest so



a



b

FIG. 36 (a) Normal venous pulse (b) A positive venous pulse in a patient with tricuspid regurgitation and atrial fibrillation; the fibrillation waves are visible in the venous pulse

that the neck veins are not engorged. Accordingly there is a deep collapse between the a and v (or d) waves. The normal physiologic venous pulse is called negative because of this depression during a good part of systole.

With marked congestion and particularly when atrial fibrillation coexists the systolic collapse in the venous pulse may become less distinct or may disappear entirely without a tricuspid insufficiency being present. The reason for this is as follows: ventricular systole has little or no effect on the venous blood flow in advanced stages of congestion; the veins remain constantly distended and may show no pulsations at all. This can be demonstrated even in beginning right heart failure by pressure on the right upper abdomen. Such pressure increases the return of blood to the right heart and distends the veins to a greater extent and for a longer time than under normal conditions and abolishes pulsations of the vein.

In tricuspid insufficiency the systolic regurgitation of blood into the right atrium may cause the transmission of a pulsation into the neck veins, a finding that becomes increasingly obvious if the atrium and the veins are overfilled due to congestion. The collapse between the c and v waves disappears both waves merge into a single large one and the venous pulse is 'positive'. Figure 36b shows a positive venous pulse from a patient with tricuspid insufficiency. Atrial fibrillation is also present in this patient and therefore the a waves are abolished.

In tricuspid insufficiency the back flow of blood under the high pressure created by ventricular systole causes a visible pulsation in the neck. If the jugular veins are compressed halfway along their course this pulsation is still visible below the point of compression. This shows that a real backflow from the heart is responsible.

The pulsations are often absent from the superficial neck veins for these vessels are so distended that they cannot pulsate. The vein in which the pulsations are distinct is the deep jugular vein which is covered by the sternocleidomastoid muscle. As the result of persistent regurgitation of blood under ventricular pressure the vein wall distends. Often the internal jugular vein is so wide that at necropsy three fingers can easily be introduced into the lumen without stretching it. In such cases a broad pulse wave ascends the neck with each systole and lifts the sternocleidomastoid muscle. It ascends up to the lobe of the ear. Students often confuse these strong pulsations with the Corrigan pulse of aortic insufficiency. For differentiation one can easily discover that peripheral arteries do not show a collapsible pulse while palpation of the pulsating vessels reveals the low venous pressure. Furthermore the pulsation is not jerky but ascends relatively slowly.

The pulsations are usually most distinct on the right side for the right innominate vein ascends in direct continuity whereas the left departs from the superior vena cava at approximately a right angle. In rare cases we have seen a stronger pulsation on the left presumably the result of an anatomic anomaly in these vessels.

With marked venous stasis the pulsations may be visible only when the patient is erect in this position the pressure within the neck veins diminishes somewhat as the inflow of blood into the right atrium improves. This leads to less distention of the vessel and permits pulsations to appear. Often venous pulsations are absent in all positions but reappear as soon as successful treatment lowers the venous pressure. In early cases the huge right atrium can accept regurgitating blood and no abnormal venous pulse is noted in the neck. In these cases the characteristic pulsations appear only in the recumbent position or if the amount of blood flowing back to the right heart is increased by compression of the right upper abdomen.

Some patients are profoundly distressed by the regurgitation of blood into the neck veins at least when this first happens. They suffer from throbbing in the ears probably owing to the impact of the regurgitating blood on the bones enclosing the veins in the head. The pulsations are regular with sinus rhythm.

and irregular in fibrillation. The patient can readily count the heart rate by the throbbing alone. This sensation is aggravated by certain positions of the head and is diminished in others. A general oppression is felt in the neck as the result of increased systolic filling of all deep veins.

*Positive Liver Pulse.* The blood driven back into the right atrium by ventricular systole does more than reach the tributaries of the superior vena cava. It also flows back into the domain of the inferior vena cava particularly through the wide open valveless hepatic veins. A systolic swelling of the liver & systolic liver pulsation is the result.

Systolic pulsations of the liver occasionally occur without tricuspid insufficiency. Massive right ventricular hypertrophy may thrust the liver downward when the impact of cardiac systole is transmitted through the diaphragm. The abdominal aorta may push the liver ventrad in the midline. Like other organs the liver may show systolic pulsations if there is an aortic regurgitation and the hepatic arteries pulsate strongly. Local systolic pulsations may occur in the neighborhood of a liver abscess.

The hepatic pulsation of tricuspid insufficiency can be differentiated from the above mentioned forms for it is expansile. The liver volume increases in all directions, a fact easily discovered if both hands are applied at some distance from each other. By this means the systolic increase of the liver volume is readily distinguished from a transmitted cardiac or aortic pulsation. In early cases the pulsation is absent since the pressure of regurgitating blood is not sufficiently high to distend the liver. We have seen it disappear during the course of the disease when the amount of fibrotic tissue in the liver increased and cirrhosis developed. The enlarged liver is not tender unless congestion develops acutely or is of recent origin.

At times systolic pulsations may be noted in other regions such as the spleen or the peripheral veins. Pulsations of the veins of the forearm and of other peripheral vessels occur but with less regularity and less characteristically than the positive venous and hepatic pulse. The venous pulsations in the arms may be demonstrated by raising the arm almost to the level at which the veins collapse.

*Pulsations of the Chest.* Marked liver pulsation causes a distinctly perceptible movement of the right upper abdomen to the right. The hypertrophy and dilatation of the right ventricle simultaneously displace the thorax to the left so that a characteristic see saw movement is visible.

Inspection reveals the systolic retraction of the interspaces over the precordium which is typical for right ventricular hypertrophy and dilatation and there is a strong diastolic bulging.

*Ascites Edema.* The great stasis created in the portal circulation by the systolic regurgitation of blood into the liver produces ascites another sign characteristic of a fully developed tricuspid insufficiency. It is rarely absent. In many cases ascites is the outstanding feature and requires the continuous administration of mercurial diuretics. At present in many cases paracentesis



can be avoided or postponed for years by the skillful employment of these compounds. In the course of time more or less evidence of cardiac cirrhosis may appear.

Edema is common in relative tricuspid insufficiency and anasarca is not rare. The edema may vanish while the ascites persists. The appearance of edema may coincide with effusions into the serous cavities.

**Cyanosis.** Despite enormous dilatation of the right heart cyanosis is often absent. It has been pointed out earlier that with the appearance of right ventricular failure and the development of hepatic congestion cyanosis if previously present may vanish. If right heart failure develops acutely the patient may even show marked pallor owing to the retention of quantities of blood in the liver and veins. In accordance with these events x-ray examination discloses relatively clear lung fields in tricuspid insufficiency.



FIG. 37. Typical orthodiagram from a patient with tricuspid regurgitation.

**Percussion and X-ray Examination.** This provides evidence of dilatation of the right atrium and ventricle. These findings are not characteristic because they appear regularly in certain stages of the underlying accompanying condition (rheumatic mitral lesion or myocardial disease).

The dilatation of the right atrium however may reach considerable dimensions (figure 37). The vascular band widens owing to the congestion of veins near the heart.

**Auscultation.** The systolic murmur one might expect to hear at the lower end of the sternum at the site of auscultation of the tricuspid valve is absent in most cases. While the mute variety is exceptional in other valvular lesions it is the rule in tricuspid insufficiency. Contrary to statements by many authors in a large series of patients with tricuspid insufficiency with the diagnosis confirmed at necropsy we gained the impression that a distinct murmur over the tricuspid area is an exceptional finding. To be sure systolic murmurs are often detected in this area however one cannot be certain that they are not transmitted from the mitral or pulmonic valve. Although a murmur heard over the tricuspid area may sound different at this point from one at the mitral area this does not mean there are two different murmurs. The characteristics of a murmur may be changed more or less through transmission because the tissues filter it.

The reason for the frequent absence of a separate systolic murmur over the tricuspid area in tricuspid insufficiency is not known. The valve is not situated deeply and conditions for transmission to the surface of the thorax are good. In many cases it seems that the murmur is conducted better to the apex and is

then confused with a mitral murmur. This mistake is more apt to occur in those cases where the heart rotates to the left when the right ventricle dilates.

The statements in the preceding paragraphs disagree with those of many authors (Muller and Shillingford) who found a murmur in the fourth intercostal space to the left of the sternum to be the earliest and best sign of tricuspid incompetence.

The second pulmonary sound is rarely accentuated. The signs of aortic incompetency may disappear when a tricuspid regurgitation develops.

### *Differential Diagnosis*

Differentiation between a relative and an organic tricuspid insufficiency is not possible as a rule on the basis of the clinical findings. Even if evidence of tricuspid regurgitation appears during decompensation it is possible that regurgitation was present before but evoked no signs to permit the diagnosis. In a similar way the disappearance of signs of tricuspid regurgitation during successful treatment may be due simply to diminished congestion and does not necessarily signify that a relative tricuspid insufficiency has disappeared. It has been claimed that in tricuspid lesions caused by valvular disease the systolic venous wave appears later and reaches its peak later than in relative tricuspid insufficiency. Only in a pure myocardial lesion may one assume that the signs of tricuspid insufficiency appearing during decompensation are due to a relative insufficiency.

Cardiac catheterization reveals a higher diastolic atrial pressure compared to that in the right ventricle (Whitaker).

### *Prognosis*

The frequently expressed opinion that the appearance of a tricuspid regurgitation signifies a serious complication of bad prognostic significance cannot be accepted without reservation. Patients with an organic (more rarely with a relative) tricuspid insufficiency have been under our observation for more than eight years and have remained in a tolerable condition. The greatest danger to which these patients are exposed is pulmonary embolism.

The safety valve function of a tricuspid regurgitation in relieving the pressure in the lesser circuit was described as early as 1837 by Lang.

## TRICUSPID STENOSIS

### *Etiology*

This lesion is an occasional sequela of a rheumatic involvement of the tricuspid valves and under these circumstances always accompanies a rheumatic mitral and/or aortic lesion. It is much more common in women than in men. In rare cases congenital tricuspid stenosis is produced by a malformation; in this variety other malformations, particularly atrial septal defects, are usually present. The tricuspid stenosis in metastasizing carcinoids will be discussed later.

### *Symptoms and Signs*

There are no characteristic symptoms or signs. The diagnosis is made only on the basis of a syndrome that is not entirely typical and that hardly amounts to more than a suspicion.

Patients with tricuspid stenosis are usually cyanotic and have a definite yellow complexion (subicterus). The right atrium is very large. The neck veins are congested and show presystolic pulsation (an accentuated  $v$  wave). The presystolic venous (and liver) pulse can be registered by graphic methods; they are not pathognomonic for they may be noted in other conditions ■ e. pericardial adhesions. One may palpate a bifid liver pulsation. Clubbing of the fingers ■ common and a polycythemia is often noted. The peripheral pulses are small.

On percussion and  $x$  ray examination the heart shows a pronounced dilatation to the right since the right atrium enlarges. The vascular band at the base of the heart is wide owing to dilatation of the veins. The lung fields are clear; there is no pulmonary congestion.

Auscultation usually reveals no abnormality. Sinus rhythm is common. In some exceptional cases rumbling diastolic murmurs are said to be audible at the lower left sternal border. We have never found them despite the observation of a number of cases verified at necropsy.

An opening snap is heard over the tricuspid area or to the right of it; it appears about 0.1 second after the onset of the second sound (Kossmann).

The liver is markedly enlarged and ascites is frequently found. All these signs depend upon the fact that the right atrium is unable to empty its contents normally into the right ventricle and therefore some blood returns to the veins during atrial contraction (in presystole). Sometimes the right ventricle ■ smaller than normal just as the left ventricle is atrophic in mitral stenosis. Large P waves are seen in the electrocardiogram.

Catheterization may reveal a higher mean pressure in the right atrium. The resting cardiac output is reduced (Ferrer et al.).

### *Diagnosis*

If there is pronounced dilatation of the right atrium and massive congestion of the liver in a patient with rheumatic mitral or aortic valvular disease without evidence of tricuspid insufficiency or pericardial adhesions and if the patient shows cyanosis and some jaundice the presumptive diagnosis of tricuspid stenosis is justified. If there is no fibrillation the presence of presystolic pulsations of the jugular veins and of the liver gives some support to this diagnosis. The diagnosis ■ also probable but unproven when an expansile liver and positive venous pulse gradually diminish in a tricuspid insufficiency despite increasing cardiac dilatation and decompensation. In this case one may justifiably assume the existence of a tricuspid lesion in which an increasing stenosis progressively displaced the signs of insufficiency.

## PULMONIC REGURGITATION

*Etiology*

Pneumatic involvement of the pulmonic valve is exceedingly rare. Occasionally bacterial endocarditis causes pulmonary regurgitation and even more rarely the endocarditis heals leaving the patient with a pure valvular insufficiency. We have had the opportunity to observe only one case of this type but they will doubtless be seen more often since the introduction of the modern antibiotic treatment of bacterial endocarditis. Congenital pulmonary insufficiency is likewise rare; in such cases the number of cusps of the pulmonic valve is usually increased or decreased.

Relative insufficiency of the pulmonic valve is much more common. It seems to affect both sexes equally and to occur at all ages although the vast majority of cases are discovered in adult life. In a majority of these cases a rheumatic mitral stenosis coexists. If pressure is high in the lesser circuit as indicated by an accentuation of the second pulmonic sound and a wide pulmonary artery, a soft diastolic murmur may appear in the second or third interspace to the left of the sternum (Craham Steell murmur). It has the same pitch and the same site as the murmur of aortic insufficiency. It may be temporarily louder then vanish to reappear from time to time. If insufficiency of the aortic valve has been diagnosed one is surprised to find these valves normal at necropsy.

The murmur has been designated as the murmur of high pressure. A considerable increase of pressure in the lesser circuit may produce such marked dilatation of the pulmonary artery and valvular ring that the valves — otherwise normal — are unable to close.

If one has the opportunity to observe a large number of patients with mitral stenosis over a period of years relative pulmonary insufficiency is not rare. Cabot observed it in 22 of 55 autopsied cases of mitral stenosis. It disappears if pressure in the lesser circuit falls as the right heart fails or a relative tricuspid regurgitation develops; it reappears if the former status is restored by treatment.

The comparatively frequent occurrence of relative pulmonary insufficiency in mitral stenosis requires an explanation for it stands in striking contrast to the rarity of relative insufficiency of the aortic valve. Undoubtedly one reason is found in the local anatomy. The root of the pulmonary artery and the valvular ring is weaker than that of the aorta. Another factor is the preference of rheumatic histologic changes to involve the conus of the pulmonary artery and the root of the artery itself. Accordingly weakness or destruction of these structures makes the appearance of a relative pulmonic regurgitation easier if pressure rises in the lesser circuit.

Relative insufficiency of the pulmonic valve also develops in other conditions which increase pressure in the lesser circuit e. g. in fibroid tuberculosis, extensive myocardial lesions and kyphoscoliosis.

There are no characteristic symptoms.

### Signs

Invariably the second pulmonic sound is palpable and markedly accentuated in these cases unless emphysema coexists. The conus of the pulmonary artery and the pulmonary artery itself are dilated. Since the right heart enlarges markedly a very characteristic configuration—pouter heart—appears. Figure 38 shows the orthodiagram obtained from a rheumatic mitral stenosis and relative pulmonary incompetency, showing the characteristic change of cardiac shape.

According to Hall a diastolic thrill occurs only in the organic and never in the relative insufficiency of the pulmonic valve. It has been found, however, in a case of relative pulmonic insufficiency that was examined at necropsy. This should be expected because the intensity and pitch of the murmur rather than the etiology is decisive for the presence or absence of a thrill.

A loud systolic murmur over the pulmonary artery is heard in all cases. It is explained by the dilatation of the pulmonary artery and the right ventricle (relative stenosis of the ostium).

On fluoroscopy a pulsus celer of the hilar vessels gives a very characteristic picture although it is not always present. Hilar dance is not pathognomonic for it occurs in many conditions as mentioned in the preceding chapter. The lung fields are relatively clear since the relative pulmonary insufficiency acts like a safety valve for the lesser circuit and diminishes congestion.

Dilatation of the pulmonary artery occurring in mitral stenosis without relative pulmonic regurgitation is not typical.



FIG 38 Typical orthodiagram from a patient with rheumatic mitral stenosis and relative pulmonary insufficiency (pouter heart)

### Differential Diagnosis

Relative pulmonic regurgitation is most often confused with rheumatic aortic insufficiency because the location and type of the murmur is the same for both lesions. Therefore it should be strongly emphasized that auscultatory findings alone are not the basis for diagnosis. All physical signs and the results of fluoroscopy must be evaluated. The absence of peripheral signs of aortic insufficiency should not be used against the diagnosis of this lesion for a coexisting mitral stenosis may abolish the peripheral and even the auscultatory signs of aortic valve involvement.

The correct diagnosis may also be difficult when there is a silent mitral stenosis. Often a positive diagnosis must await necropsy.

The prognosis depends upon the underlying lesion.

## PULMONARY STENOSIS

Since pulmonary stenosis is ordinarily a congenital heart lesion and is often associated with other malformations discussion of its symptomatology will be deferred. This seems particularly advisable since the symptoms, signs and prognosis depend to a vast extent upon the associated conditions. The pulmonary stenosis in carcinoids is discussed below.

## COMBINED LESIONS OF MORE THAN ONE VALVE

The essential features of most combined valvular lesions have been mentioned in the preceding pages. In a large majority the mitral lesions constitute the fundamental disturbance. The prognosis depends not upon the number of valves involved but almost invariably upon the status of the myocardium.

Mitral, aortic and tricuspid lesions represent a common combination. Under this circumstance the tricuspid lesion may be organic or relative. These patients may remain in relatively good health for years despite the existence of a cor bovinum.

Since diastolic murmurs may be absent in such combined lesions and non-characteristic systolic murmurs alone may be present it may be difficult to decide whether a rheumatic trivalvular lesion exists or simply a decompensated heart from a myocardial disturbance or hypertension with relative mitral and tricuspid insufficiency.

It must be stressed again that the systolic murmur of aortic stenosis may be louder at the apex than over the aortic area while the diastolic murmur of aortic regurgitation may be absent over the aortic area but may be very loud over the left lower sternal border.

Sometimes only the presence of a pulsus celer of the aortic knob will indicate the presence of an aortic insufficiency in mitral lesions on fluoroscopy.

For the diagnosis of a silent mitral stenosis in combined lesions no sign is of greater value than the accentuation of the first heart sound with the snappy apex beat.

Often x-ray examination and electrocardiography offer some assistance in the differential diagnosis of combined lesions. The presence of widened and notched P waves in leads I and II will speak in favor of the presence of a rheumatic mitral stenosis. The advantage or disadvantage of the different combinations of single valvular lesions has often been discussed. Conclusions reached on this subject as a rule are merely speculative.

## CARCINOIDS AND VALVULAR LESIONS OF THE RIGHT SIDE OF THE HEART

Recently a well defined and readily recognizable syndrome has been observed in connection with carcinoids of the small intestine with metastases (argental finoma) (Isler and Hedinger).

Among other interesting features the patients suddenly develop flushes and report rapid changes in the color of the skin (deep red or purple) particularly

induced by emotions or physical exertion, sometimes permanently. Cyanotic or white patches are temporarily visible. Telangiectasias are common. Watery diarrhea (up to 30 stools daily) and abdominal pains may occur along with right heart failure with edema and ascites, more rarely attacks of asthma appear.

An intestinal carcinoid with metastases to the liver is regularly found. The pulmonary and tricuspid valves become thick and stenotic or insufficient; the valves of the left heart remain normal usually, but may also be involved (Mc Kusick). Marked thickening and swelling of the endothelium of the hepatic veins has been found (Heggin and Zollger).

The secretion of a vasoactive hormone by the carcinoid tissue has been known for many years. The carcinoid produces a substance called serotonin (Lembeck, Thorson et al.) which is under extensive investigation. This compound, 5-hydroxytryptamine, which is vasoactive and may lead to an elevation of pulmonary blood pressure and bronchial constriction, seems necessary for normal mental processes (Wolley). It is found in the blood platelets and can be easily recovered from clotted blood. It is found physiologically in the intestinal mucosa produced by the argentophilic cells and is therefore called enteramine (Erspamer). The platelets absorb it. The substance seems to be inactivated to a great extent in the lungs, so that the left heart is usually spared (Gobel et al.). The valve lesions are not explained. One is reminded of the valvular changes observed by Lillehei in arteriovenous fistulas. A color test has been developed to detect the excretion of metabolites of serotonin (5-hydroxy indole acetic acid) in the urine (Hanson and Serin, Sjoerdsma et al.).

Thickening and fibrosis of the endocardium involves also the chordae tendineae and the wall of the ventricles; it does not concern the valves exclusively.

A high incidence of congenital cardiovascular anomalies has been reported in these cases (Spain).

Therapy is limited so far only to reducing the size of the tumor.

Even after metastases occur the disease may last up to 20 years (Ritchie).

## Bibliography

- Abbott M E. Congenital Heart Disease. In Osler's Modern Medicine, ed 3, 4612, 1924.  
 Abelman W H, Ellis L B and Harken D E. The diagnosis of mitral regurgitation. *Am J Med* 15: 1953.  
 Adam A. Über die traumatischen Veränderungen gesunder Klappen des Herzens. *Ztschr f Kreislaufforsch* 19: 313, 1927.  
 Albertini A von and Staehelin A. Über die Beziehung der verkalkten Knopflochstenose zur Endocarditis. *Cardiologia* 18: 219, 1951.  
 Alimurung M M, Rappaport M H and Sprague H B. Auscultatory signs in rheumatic valvular disease. *New England J Med* 244: 1, 1951.  
 Altschule M D and Budnitz E. Rheumatic disease of the tricuspid valve. *Arch Path* 30: 1940.  
 Antonius N A, Miller R, Green H and Crocca A D. Selection of cases for mitral commissurotomy. *J W Soc New Jersey* 50: 490, 1953.

- Ari H Harvey W I and Hufnagel C A Etiology of hoarseness associated with mitral stenosis *Am Heart J* 50 153 1955
- Ashworth H and Morgan Jones A Aneurysmal dilatation of the left auricle with erosion of the spine *Brit Heart J* 8 207 1946
- Assmann H Die klinische Röntgendiagnostik der inneren Erkrankungen ed III Berlin Vogel 1934
- Bailey C P Surgery of the Heart Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1955
- Bolton H E and Ramirez R Surgery of the mitral valve *Surg Clin N America* 37 1807 1952
- Ramirez R and Larzelere H H Surgical treatment of aortic stenosis *J A M A* 150 1647 1957
- Bolton H P Jamison W L and Nichols H T Commissurotomy for rheumatic aortic stenosis *Circulation* 9 2 1954
- Baker C Brock R C Campbell M and Wood I Valvotomy for mitral stenosis *Brit M J* 1 1043 1952
- Brock R and Campbell M Mitral valvotomy *Brit M J* 2 933 1953
- Baker C G and Campbell M The results of valvotomy for aortic stenosis *Lancet* 1 171 1956
- Barber H and Osborn G R A case of mitral stenosis the result of trauma *Guy's Hosp Rep* 87 510 1937
- Barritt D W and Urie H Congenital tricuspid insufficiency *Brit Heart J* 18 133 1956
- Battistini F Due casi di trombosi dell orecchietta sinistra diagnosticata in vita *Gior d r Accad di med di Torino* 15 313 1909
- Bazett H C Factors in the causation of differential blood pressure *Am J Physiol* 70 550 1944
- Bean W B Olch D and Weinberg H D The syndrome of carcinoma and acquired valvular lesions of the right side of the heart *Circulation* 17 1 1955
- Bedford D F Extreme dilatation of the left auricle to the right *Am Heart J* 3 147 1927
- Bellet S Gouley B Nichols C F and McMillan T M Loud musical diastolic murmurs of aortic insufficiency *Am Heart J* 18 483 1939
- Berk L H Roentgen diagnosis of mural thrombi *Arch Int Med* 63 1183 1939
- Bernath J Guillemot R Samuel P and Heim De Balsac R Vena cava inferior ligation in congestive heart failure *Am Heart J* 50 112 1955
- Bland E F Surgery for mitral stenosis *Circulation* 5 290 1952
- Bland F F and Sweet R H Venous shunt for advanced mitral stenosis *J A M A* 140 1250 1949
- White P D and Jones T D Development of mitral stenosis in young people with discussion of frequent misinterpretation of mid diastolic murmur at cardiac apex *Am Heart J* 10 995 1935
- Bloomfield A L Dysphagia with disorders of the heart and great vessels *Am J M Sc* 200 289 1940
- Boas F P and Fineberg M H Hypertension in its relation hip to mitral stenosis and aortic insufficiency *Am J M Sc* 174 648 1926
- Bower B D Gerrard J W Darbreu A L and Parsons C G Two cases of congenital mitral stenosis treated by valvotomy *Arch Dis Childhood* 28 91 1953
- Bramwell J C and Duguid J D Aneurysmal dilatation of the left auricle *Quart J Med* 21 187 1958
- Brigden W and Leatham A Mitral incompetence *Brit Heart J* 15 55 1953
- Brockbank E M The Murmurs of Mitral Disease Edinburgh and London V J Pentland 1899



- Cabot R C Mitral stenosis: observation of 200 cases before and after death, also on 116 cases not autopsied. *Tr A Am Physicians* 29:22 1914
- Facts on the Heart. Philadelphia: Saunders 1926
- Campbell M and Kauntze R Congenital aortic valvular stenosis. *Brit Heart J* 15:179 1953
- Chamberlain V Proceed Cardiol Soc Great Britain and Ireland. *Brit Heart J* 5:249 1943
- Clarke J M Some features of aortic regurgitation in young subjects. *Brit M J* 1:1364 1911
- Coelho E, Fonseca J M, Nunes A and Barros F L Importance de l'etude physiopathologique de rétrécissement mitral dans l'indication de la commissurotomie. *Cardiologia* 21:626 1952
- Comroe J H Reflex and direct cardiopulmonary effects of 5-H tryptamine (Serotonine). *Am J Physiol* 173:379 1953
- Contratto V W and Levine S A Aortic stenosis with special reference to angina pectoris and syncope. *Ann Int Med* 10:1636 1937
- Cooke W T and White P D Tricuspid stenosis with particular reference to diagnosis and prognosis. *Brit Heart J* 3:147 1941
- Cosgriff S W Prophylaxis of recurrent embolism of intracardiac origin. *J A M A* 143:870 1950
- Cossio P Ligation of the vena cava in the treatment of heart failure. *Am Heart J* 43:97 1952
- and Perianes I Surgical treatment of the cardiac lung. *J A M A* 140:772 1949
- Crawford J H and Rosenberger H Studies on human capillaries: observations on the nature of capillary pulse in aortic insufficiency. *J Clin Investigation* 2:307 1937
- Dalton J C et al: Staphylococcal endocarditis after mitral valvulotomy: report of three cases. *New Engl J Med* 254:205 1956
- Davis F W and Andrus E C Mitral stenosis in facsimile. *New Engl J Med* 251:297 1954
- Decker J P, Lawn C van Z and Robbins S L Rheumatic activity as judged by the presence of Aschoff bodies in auricular appendages of patients with mitral stenosis. *Circulation* 8:161 1953
- Denton C and Bolton H E What is the salvage rate of mitral commissurotomy in class 4 cardiacs? Abstr of 28th Scientific Session Am Heart Ass. New Orleans 1955
- Dexter L et al Studies of the pulmonary circulation in man at rest. *J Clin Investigation* 29:602 1950
- Donnelly H Congenital mitral stenosis. *J A M A* 82:1318 1924
- Dressler W Pulsations of the wall of the chest V Pulsations associated with mitral regurgitation and aneurysmal dilatation of the left auricle. *Arch Int Med* 60:663 1937
- Idiopathic recurrent pericarditis. *Am J Med* 18:591 1955
- and Fischer R Über Tricuspidalstenose. *Klin Wchnschr* 8:1267 1929
- Ellis L B et al Studies in mitral stenosis. *Arch Int Med* 83:515 1951
- Epstein B S Comparative study of valvular calcifications in rheumatic and non rheumatic heart disease. *Arch Int Med* 65:279 1940
- Ersapamer E V and Asero B Identification of enteramine: the specific hormone of the enterochromaffine cell system as 5-Hydroxytryptamine. *Nature* 169:800 1952
- Evans W Mitral systolic murmurs. *Brit M J* 1:28 1943
- The use of the phonocardiogram in clinical medicine. *Lancet* 1:1093 1951
- and Lewis D The carotid shudder. *Brit Heart J* 7:171 1945
- Ferencz C, Johnson A I and Wigleworth F W Congenital mitral stenosis. *Circulation* 9:161 1954

- Ferguson F C, Kobalak R E and Detrick J F Varices of the bronchial veins as a source of hemoptysis in mitral stenosis *Am Heart J* 28 445 1944
- Ferrer I, Harvey R M, Kuzchner M, Richards D W and Cournand A Hemodynamic studies in tricuspid stenosis of rheumatic origin *Circulation Res* 1 49 1953
- Fetterolf C and Norris G W The anatomical explanation of the paralysis of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve found in certain cases of mitral stenosis *Am J M Sc* 111 623 1911
- Field C E Congenital mitral stenosis *Arch Dis Childhood* 13 31 1938
- Fischer R Klinische Untersuchungen über den Jugularvenenpuls 4 Mittelt. *Cardiologia* 4 26 1940
- Fleischner F Verkalkung des Annulus fibrosus *Wien med Wchnschr* 75 272 1925
- Freeman A R and Levine S A The clinical significance of the aortic murmur *Ann Int Med* 6 137 1933
- Futcher T B Tricuspid stenosis with a report on five cases *Am J M Sc* 11 625 1911
- Gallavardin L Syncope d'effort solitaires au cours du rétrécissement aortique *Medicine* 10 191 1935
- Garvin C F Functional aortic insufficiency *Ann Int Med* 13 1799 1910
- Gladstone S A A few observations on the haemodynamics of the normal circulation and the changes which occur in aortic insufficiency *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 11 83 1929
- Clover R P Intracardiac surgery for stenotic (acquired) valvular disease *New York State J Med* 53 1741 1953
- Bailey C F and O'Neill T J II Surgery of stenotic valvular disease of the heart *J A M A* 144 1049 1950
- McDowell D E, O'Neill T J E and Janton O H Mitral commissurotomy in relation to pregnancy *J A M A* 154 895 1955
- Gobel A J, Hay D R and Sandier M Preliminary communication 5 hydroxytryptamin metabolism in acquired heart disease associated with arginaffine carcinoma *Lancet* 2 1016 1955
- Gödel A Eine ungewöhnliche Form der Herzvergrößerung (enorme Vorhofvergrößerung) bei Mitralklenose *Wien klin Wchnschr* 4 427 1909
- Goodwin G F, Hunter J D, Cleland W I, Davies L G and Steiner R F Mitral valve disease and mitral valvotomy *Brit M J* 9 513 1955
- Corlin R et al Physiological and clinical observations in aortic valvular disease *Bull New Engl M Center* 11 13 1954
- and Corlin S G Hydraulic formula for calculation of area of stenotic mitral valve other cardiac valves and central circulatory shunts *Am Heart J* 41 1 1951
- Grant R P Architectonics of the heart *Am Heart J* 46 405 1953
- Grant R P After histories for ten years of a thousand men suffering from heart disease *Heart* 10 215 1933
- Gravier I Syncope d'effort solitaires au cours du rétrécissement aortique pur non rhumatismal *J Med de Lyon* 15 631 1934
- Hall J N Right pulmonary insufficiency *Am J M Sc* 148 416 1914
- Halmagyi D, Felka B, Ivanyi J, Zsotics T, Tenyi M and Szucs Zs The role of the nervous system in the maintenance of pulmonary arterial hypertension in heart failure *Brit Heart J* 15 15 1953
- Hammarsten J F Syncope in aortic stenosis *Arch Int Med* 81 274 1951
- Hanson A and Sevin F Determination of 5 hydroxyindolacetic acid in urine *Lancet* 2 1359 1955
- Harken D F, Ellis L B, Ware P F and Norman L R The surgical treatment of mitral stenosis I Valvuloplasty *New Engl J Med* 239 801 1948

- Harken D E The surgery of mitral stenosis III Finger fracture valvuloplasty *Ann Surg* 134 722 1951
- The surgical correction of mitral insufficiency *J Thorac Surgery* 28 604 1954
- Harper W F The structure of the heart valves with special reference to their blood supply and the genesis of endocarditis *J Path & Bact* 67 229 1945
- Harris A W and Levine S A Cerebral embolism in mitral stenosis *Ann Int Med* 15 637 1941
- Harris T N and Friedman S Phonocardiographic differentiation of vibratory (functional) murmurs from those of valvular insufficiency *Am Heart J* 43 707 1952
- Hanich H J Die Beziehung des Mitralöffnung tones zum Druck im linken Vorhof *Klin Wchnschr* 34 189 1956
- de Heer J L Die Dynamik des Säugetierherzens im Kreislauf in der Norm bei Aortenstenose und nach Strophanthin *Flugers Arch f d ges Physiol* 145 1 1912
- Hegglin R and Zolliger H Mitralstenose Libman Sacks Syndrom und metastasierendes Dunndarmcarcinom *Cardiologia* 23 151 1956
- Hellvig C A Atheromatosis of the mitral valve *Am Heart J* 24 41 1942
- Henderson Y A neglected feature of the mechanics of mitral stenosis *J A M A* 8 1046 1922
- Henry E W The small pulmonary vessels in mitral stenosis *Brit Heart J* 14 406 1952
- Hill L and Rowlands R A Systolic blood pressure (1) in change of posture (2) in cases of aortic regurgitation *Heart* 3 219 1911
- Holt F Deformity of the chest associated with extreme dilatation of the left auricle *Am Heart J* 9 363 1934
- Holzmann M Erkrankungen des Herzens und der Gefäße In *Lehrb Roentgendia* (H R Schinz et al) 4 Aufl Bd 2 Leipzig G Thieme 1939
- Horder T Endocarditis *Lancet* 1 690 745 850 1926
- Hurber F Operationsindikation und Schweregrad von Mitralfehlern *Wien Ztschr f inn Med* 36 109 1955
- Hufnagel C A Harvey W P Rabil P J and McDermott T F Surgical correction of aortic insufficiency *Surgery* 35 673 1954
- Hultgren H N Calcific disease of the aortic valve *Arch Path* 15 694 1948
- Isler P and Hedinger C Metastasierendes Dunndarmcarcinom mit schweren vorwiegend das rechte Herz betreffenden Klappenfehlern und Pulmonalstenose *Schweiz med Wchnschr* 83 4 1953
- January L F Bedell C N and Bateman R D Problem of mitral valve disease *J A M A* 155 231 1954
- Johnson R S and Lewis D Advanced mitral stenosis in a three year old *Brit Heart J* 7 62 1945
- Karsner H T and Koletsky S *Calcific Disease of the Aortic Valve* Philadelphia Lippincott 1947
- Kauf F Plötzlicher Herztod durch Verschluss des Mitralostiums *Zentralb f Herz und Gefäßkrankh* 15 197 1953
- Kelly J J Diagnostic value of phonocardiography *Am J Med* 19 862 1955
- King I H Hitzig W M and Fishberg A M Recurrent laryngeal paralysis in left ventricular failure *Am J M Sc* 189 691 1934
- King T W An essay on the safety valve function in the right ventricle of the human heart *Guy s Hosp Rep* 2 104 1837
- Kirch E Über Größen und Massenveränderungen der einzelnen Herzabschnitte bei Herzklappenfehlern insbesondere bei Mitralstenose und Aortenstenose *Verhandl d deutsch Gesellsch f inn Med Kongr* 41 324 1929
- Kissane R W Koons R A and Fidler R S Traumatic rupture of a normal mitral valve *Am Heart J* 12 231 1936

- Kissin M Pulmonary insufficiency with a supernumerary cusp in pulmonary valve *Am Heart J* 1 206 1936
- Kopelman H and de J Lee C Intrathoracic blood volume in mitral stenosis and left ventricular failure *Clinical Science* 10 383 1951
- Kossmann C The opening snap of the tricuspid valve a physical sign of tricuspid stenosis *Circulation* 1° 13°8 1955
- Kumpe C W and Bean W B Aortic stenosis a study of the clinical and pathological aspects of 107 proved cases *Medicine* 2 139 1948
- Lang C Über einige durch die Herzaktion verursachte Bewegungen der Brustwand und des Epigastriums *Deutsche Arch f Klin Med* 105 30 1912
- Lane P Über einen Fall von Thrombose des linken Vorhofes *Wien klin Wchnschr* 49 40 1930
- Larrabee W F Larker R L and Edwards J E Pathology of the intrapulmonary arteries and arterioles in mitral stenosis *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 6 316 1949
- Latach A B I dAllaines F and Lenègre J The pressures of the left atrium and ventricle in mitral stenosis before and after commissurotomy *Arch d mal du coeur* 4 383 1951
- Laubry C and Doumer F Sur l'insuffisance aortique fonctionnelle et sa pathogenie *Bull et mem Soc mèd d hop de Paris* 1° 84 1903
- Lauenstein H Über kardial bedingte Bronchostenosen und Lungenatelektasen im Kindesalter *Ztschr f Kinderh* 64 145 1933
- Leatham A The phonocardiogram of aortic stenosis *Brit Heart J* 13 163 1951
- Leiner C and Wachstein M Über das Hüllsche Symptom bei der Aorteninsuffizienz *Klin Wchnschr* 16 82° 1937
- Lembek F 5 hydroxyptamine in a carcinoid tumor *Nature* 1 2 910 1953
- Leonard J J Harvey W I and Hufnagel C A Rupture of the aortic valve *New Engl J Med* 208 1955
- Lewis B M Gorlin R Housney R E J Haynes F W and Dexter L Clinical and physiological correlations in patients with mitral stenosis *Am Heart J* 13 2 1957
- Lewis T The time relations of heart sounds and murmurs with special reference to the acoustic signs in mitral stenosis *Heart* 4 241 1912
- Studies of capillary pulsation with special reference to vasodilatation in aortic regurgitation and including observations on the effects of heating the human skin *Heart* 11 151 1924
- Diseases of the Heart London Macmillan 1937
- and Drury A V Observations relating to arteriovenous aneurysm I Circulatory manifestations in clinical cases with particular reference to the arterial phenomena of aortic regurgitation *Heart* 10 301 1923
- Likoff W Berkowitz D Denton C Goldberg H and Reale A Transventricular commissurotomy in aortic stenosis *J A M A* 15° 1367 1955
- Lillehei C W Bobb J R and Visscher M B The recurrence of endocarditis with valvular deformities in dogs with arteriovenous fistulas *Ann Surg* 132 5 ~ 1950
- Logan A and Turner R Mitral stenosis *Lancet* 1 100° 1953
- and — Aortic stenosis *Lancet* 1 1091 1954
- Luger A Zur Symptomatologie der Insuffizienz der Aortenklappen mit besonderer Berücksichtigung einer relativen Insuffizienz derselben *Wien med Wchnschr* 5 209 24° 1919
- Luisada A A On the pathogenesis of the signs of Traube and Duroziez in aortic insufficiency *Am Heart J* 26 121 1943

- Luisada A A Recent advances in the diagnosis of rheumatic heart disease *Am J Med* 17 781 1954
- On the apical sounds and murmurs in aortic regurgitation *Am Heart J* 28 56 1944
  - and Fleischner F G Dynamics of the left auricle in mitral valve lesions *Am J Med* 4 791 1948
  - and Montes L I A phonocardiographic study of apical diastolic murmurs simulating those of mitral stenosis *Ann Int Med* 33 56 1950
  - and Wolff L The significance of the pulmonary diastolic murmur in cases of mitral stenosis *Am J M Sc* 209 204 1945
- Lutembacher R *Aneurisme de l'oreillette gauche contribution a l'etude du rythme bigemine* *Arch d mal du coeur* 10 145 1917
- Lyon D M The significance of systolic murmurs *Edinburgh M J* 48 589 1941
- MacLenzie J *Diseases of the Heart* London Oxford Univ Press 1908
- McKusick V A Rheumatic stenosis of the mitral valves *Arch Int Med* 95 501 1950
- Carcinoid cardiovascular disease *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 98 13 1956
- Margarey F R Pathogenesis of mitral stenosis *Brit M J* 1 856 1951
- Maresch R *Über Herzklappenfehler* *Wien klin Wchnschr* 41 80 1924
- Margolis A and Wolferth C C The opening snap (claquement d'ouverture de la mitral) in mitral stenosis *Am Heart J* 7 443 1932
- Margolis H M Zielhessen F O and Barnes A R Calcareous aortic valvular disease *Am Heart J* 6 340 1931
- Marvin H M and Sullivan A G Clinical observations upon syncope and sudden death in relation to aortic stenosis *Am Heart J* 10 705 1935
- Mears F I Harvey W I and Hufnagel C A Relief of pulmonary hypertensive pain after mitral commissurotomy *New Engl J Med* 249 715 1953
- Messer A L Hurst J W Rappaport M H and Sprague H B Study of the venous pulse in tricuspid valvular disease *Circulation* 1 348 1950
- Minkowski O *Demonstration eines Herzens mit ungewöhnlich starker Dilatation der Vorhöfe* *München med Wchnschr* 51 181 1904
- Mitchell A M Sackett C H Hummricher W J and Levine S A The clinical features of aortic stenosis *Am Heart J* 43 684 1954
- Monckeberg J G *Der normale histologische Bau und die Sklerose der Aortenklappen* *Virchow's Arch f path Anat* 176 472 1904
- Mounsey I The opening snap of mitral stenosis *Brit Heart J* 15 135 1953
- Mudd J C Inkley J J and Hanlon C R Myocardial ischemia during mitral commissurotomy *Am J Med* 17 330 1954
- Müller H *Die kongenitale Aortenkommissurenstenose* *Schweiz med Wchnschr* 44 702 1924
- Müller O and Shillingford J Tricuspid incompetence *Brit Heart J* 16 101 1954
- Müller W H et al Experience in the surgical treatment of aortic stenosis *J Thorac Surg* 28 517 1954
- Murray J R Systolic and diastolic blood pressure in aortic regurgitation *Brit M J* 1 697 1914
- Nadas A S and Alimurung M M Apical diastolic murmurs in congenital heart disease *Am Heart J* 50 691 1952
- Nichols C F and Ostrum H W Unusual dilatation of the left auricle *Am Heart J* 8 201 1932
- Nichols H T Likoff W Goldberg H and Lisan P The relation of valve function to the genesis of the sharp first sound in mitral stenosis *Am Heart J* 50 577 1955
- De Oliveira R M *Esclerose Valvular e Calcificação* Rio de Janeiro Tipografia do Patronato 1943
- Ongley I A et al The diastolic murmur of mitral stenosis *New Engl J Med* 210 1049 1959

- Iage I H Serotonin (5 hydroxy tryptamine) *Physiol Rev* 31 563 1954
- Parkinson J Radiology of rheumatic heart disease *Lancet* 1 896 1949
- and Hartley R Early diagnosis of rheumatic valvular disease in recruits *Brit Heart J* 8 212 1956
- Pawinski J Über Relative Insuffizienz der Lungenarterienklappen bei Mitralkstenose *Deutsche Arch f klin Med* 5 519 1894
- Tezzi C The radioscopic sign of hilum dance its clinical significance *Libman Annals Vols* 3 931 1932
- Libram B O Die operative Behandlung der Mitralkstenose *Arch f klin Chirurg* 14 459 1906
- Prior J T Congenital anomalies of the mitral valve *Am Heart J* 10 649 1933
- Puddu V La Malattia Mitralica Rome Poligrafica Reggiana 1941
- Lyke D and Symens C Calcification of the aortic valve and the coronary arteries *Brit Heart J* 13 35 1951
- Quincke H Beobachtungen über kapillare und Venenpuls *Berl klin Wehnschr* 5 307 1868
- Ravin A and Bershof E The intensity of the first heart sound in auricular fibrillation with mitral stenosis *Am Heart J* 41 539 1951
- and Darley A Apical diastolic murmurs in patent ductus arteriosus *Ann Int Med* 11 903 1950
- Reid W D The so called presystolic murmur *J A M A* 77 1648 1921
- Ritchie A C Carcinoid tumor *Am J M Sc* 23 311 1956
- Rivero Carvalho J M El diagnostico de la estenosis tricuspidea *Arch inst cardiol Mex* 9 1 1950
- Rosenbaum K F Sonster D C and Claudon A B Essential telangiectasia pulmonica and tricuspid stenosis and neoplastic liver disease a possible new syndrome *J Lab & Clin Med* 40 941 1953
- Samojloff V and Stehinsky M Über die Vorhofsrhebung des Elektrokardiogramms bei Mitralkstenose *München med Wehnschr* 56 1942 1909
- Scherf D Über die relative Insuffizienz der Lungenklappen *Klin Wehnschr* 2 865 1930
- and Brooks A M The murmurs of cardiac aneurysm *Am J M Sc* 718 389 1949
- and Friebacher O Zur Symptomatologie des partiellen Herzaneurysmas *Med klin* 30 168 1934
- and Goldhamer S Zur Frühdiagnose der Angina Pectoris mit Hilfe des Elektrokardiogramms *Ztschr f klin Med* 124 111 1933
- and Kisch F Ventricular tachycardias with vortiform ventricular complexes *Bull New York M Collg Flower & Fifth Ave Hosp* 7 73 1939
- and Urbanek J Kapillarmikroskopische Untersuchungen an der menschlichen Conjunctiva über den Kapillarpuls *Wien klin Wehnschr* 40 1533 1927
- Schnoor E F Ellis F E Da Costa I A and Holman E Experimental studies in post stenotic dilatation *Stanford Med Bull* 13 351 1955
- Scholz T Röntgenologische Darstellung von myokardialer Verkalkung intra vitam *Fortschr a d Geb d Röntgenstrahlen* 3 421 1954
- Schott V Zur Kenntnis der hochgradigen Erweiterung des linken Vorhofes *Klin Wehnschr* 3 106 1954
- Schwarz G Röntgenoskopische Beobachtungen von Eigenpulsationen der Hiluschatten und ihre Verzweigung *Wien klin Wehnschr* 3 892 1910
- Schwartz S I The radiographic signs of pulmonary insufficiency *Am Heart J* 2 407 1927
- and Biloon S The clinical signs of occluding thrombi in the left auricle *Am Heart J* 84 1931

- Schwartzman J Cardiac status of adolescents *Arch Pediat* 58 443 1941
- Simon M A and Liu S F Calcification of the mitral valve annulus and its relations to functional valve disturbance *Am Heart J* 48 497 1954
- Sjoedasma A Weissbach H and Udenfriend L Simple test for diagnosis of metastatic carcinoid (Argentaffinoma) *J A M A* 169 397 1955
- Smithy H G Boone J A and Stollworth J M Surgical treatment of constrictive valvular disease of the heart *Surg Gyn & Obst* 90 175 1950
- Sodeman W A The systolic murmur *Am J M Sc* 708 106 1944
- Sohal A R and Gross L Calcific stenosis of the aortic valve (Monckeberg Type) *Arch Path* 22 477 1936
- Soloff L A Zatuchni J Janton H O'Neill T J E and Glover R P Reactivation of rheumatic fever following mitral commissurotomy *Circulation* 8 481 1953
- and Zatuchni J Some difficulties in evaluating functional results after mitral commissurotomy *J A M A* 154 673 1954
- Sosman M C The technique for locating and identifying pericardial and intracardiac calcifications *Am J Roentgenol* 50 461 1943
- and Wosika I H Calcification in aortic and mitral valves *Am J Roentgenol* 30 3-8 1933
- Soultz I Baillet J Carlotti J Chiche I Picard R Servallo M and Vooz G Commissurotomies efficaces et commissurotomies nuisibles *Arch d mal du coeur* 46 624 1953
- Bouvrain Y Fortin J and De Vahia J L Le poulmon des mitraux *Arch d mal du coeur* 46 393 1953
- Souttar H S The surgical treatment of mitral stenosis *Brit M J* 2 603 1925
- Spain D M Association of gastrointestinal carcinoid tumor with cardiovascular abnormalities *Am J Med* 19 366 1955
- Steele J M Jr and Laterson R Distortion of the bronchi by left auricular enlargement *Am Heart J* 4 692 1929
- Steell G The murmur of high pressure in the pulmonary artery *M Chron* 9 182 1886
- Steinberg I Dotter C T and Glenn F Myxoma of the heart Roentgen diagnosis during life in three cases *Dis Ch st* 24 409 1957
- Sternberg M Stenokardio b, Mitralfehlern *Ztschr f klin Med* 9, 110 1923
- Stewart H J The occurrence of hemoptysis as a symptom of acute heart failure in the presence of mitral stenosis *M Clin North America* 18 917 1934
- Straub H Zur Dynamik der Klappenfehler des linken Herzens *Deutsches Arch klin Med* 192 1-6 1917
- Stuckey D Cardiac pain in association with mitral stenosis and congenital heart disease *Brit Heart J* 17 397 1955
- Sutton G C Wendel G Wedell H G and Sutton D C The evaluation of intracardiac angiocardiology *Am J Roentgenol* 64 596 1952
- Taylor W C The incidence and significance of systolic cardiac murmurs in infants *Arch Dis Childhood* 28 52 1953
- Telia L Le syndrome de langue de poitrine dans le stenose mitral *Arch d mal du coeur* 18 531 1925
- Templeton J A and Gibbon J H Jr Experimental reconstruction of cardiac valves by venous and pericardial grafts *Ann Surg* 159 181 1949
- Thayer W S Observations on the frequency and diagnosis of the Flint murmur in aortic insufficiency *Am J M Sc* 122 538 1901
- Thayer W S Reflections on the interpretation of systolic cardiac murmurs *Am J M Sc* 169 313 1925
- Thomas G C et al Rupture of the pulmonary artery complicating rheumatic mitral stenosis *Arch Path* 60 99 1955

- Thorsen A et al Malignant carcinoid of the small intestine with metastasis to the liver valvular disease of the right side of the heart etc *Am Heart J* 4 790 1954
- Trace H D Bailey C P and Wenkos M H Tricuspid valve commissurotomy with a one year follow up *Am Heart J* 4 613 1954
- Tuffier T l'état actuel de la chirurgie intrathoracique *Tr Int Congr Med* 1913 London 1914
- l'état actuel de la chirurgie intrathoracique plus spécialement du coeur et du péricarde aorte oesophage Paris Masson 1914
- Vaquez H and Bordet E Radiologie du coeur et des vaisseaux de la base Paris Bail liere 1928
- Vedoya H Una maniobra sencilla tendiente a facilitar la auscultacion y el registro grafico del ruido diastolico de la estenosis mitral *Rev Argent Cardiol* 13 174 1946
- Weinstein W and Lev M Apical diastolic murmurs without mitral stenosis *Am Heart J* 27 809 1942
- Whitaker W The diagnosis of tricuspid stenosis *Am Heart J* 50 237 1955
- White P D Adams F D and Craib D A note on cardiac murmurs recommendation for a revised terminology *Am J M Sc* 707 52 1942
- and Bland E F Mitral stenosis after eighty *J A M A* 116 2001 1941
- Wiggers C J The magnitude of regurgitation with aortic leaks of different sizes *J A M A* 9 1309 1931
- Physiology in Health and Disease Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1944
- Willer H and Beck L Über angeborene Stenosen der Aorta ascendens mit Atresie des Aortenostiums Zugleich ein Beitrag zur Frage der fetalen Endokarditis *Ztschr f Kreislaufforsch* 24 633 1932
- Wood P An appreciation of mitral stenosis *Brit M J* 1 1051 1954
- Woolley H W Some neurophysiological aspects of serotonin *Brit M J* 2 127 1954
- Wright I S Flynn J E and Druet K L Ball thrombus in the right auricle of the heart with a description of the symptoms produced *Am Heart J* 27 808 1944
- Yater W M and Shapiro M J Congenital displacement of the tricuspid valve *Ann Int Med* 2 1043 1937
- Zdarsky E and Boyd L J Roentgen Diagnosis of Diseases of the Heart and Great Vessels New York Grune & Stratton 1953
- von Ziemssen Zur Pathologie und Diagnose der gestielten und Kugelh thromben des Herzens *Verhandl d Cong f inn Med* 9 281 1890
- Zimsser H F Jr and Johnson J The use of angiocardiology in the selection of patients for mitral valvular surgery *Ann Int Med* 39 1200 1953
- Zipp H Mauter R and Muller F O Über die Bedeutung sogenannter Herzfehlerzellen besser Siderophagen im Sputum *Klin Wchnschr* 33 602 1955



## Chapter 13

# Diseases of the Myocardium

### INTRODUCTION

THE TERM MYOCARDIAL DISEASE is applied to a heterogeneous group of affections and includes by common consent primary lesions of the myocardium secondary involvement of the muscle in the course of various diseases as well as the myocardial damage associated with coronary artery disease. The great significance of myocardial lesions in national health is obvious from their incidence.

Students and young physicians who attend lectures and postgraduate courses often gain a false impression of the incidence and importance of myocardial disorders because valvular lesions with their richer symptomatology and abundance of demonstrable signs are presented much more often than the less colorful myocardial diseases. In practice however the diseases about to be discussed are much more common.

In these conditions more than anywhere else in cardiac patients a careful history and percussion are of paramount importance for the bedside diagnosis in many cases. Without percussion a severely affected myocardium may seem normal to many physicians particularly when murmurs are absent. Very often these patients present no signs that are easily detected by auscultation therefore physicians who rely on murmurs for the diagnosis of heart lesions without such laboratory aids as the x-ray or the electrocardiogram will often overlook a serious cardiac affection. Unfortunately a considerable number of doctors learn the clinical aspects of the diseases now to be discussed only after they have gained experience by serious mistakes.

For a long time all myocardial diseases have been lumped together in one category. Every cardiac lesion not caused by valvular involvement was regarded as the result of myocardial degeneration. This was followed by an era of myocarditis when elaborate classifications of parenchymatous and interstitial myocarditis were developed. For a time practically all myocardial lesions were discussed under this heading. Monographs on myocarditis were written and oddly enough made no mention of myocardial inflammation (which alone obviously is myocarditis). Actually the lesions secondary to coronary sclerosis were exclusively described. Ultimately there was a natural reaction to this unwarranted emphasis upon myocarditis and textbooks on cardiovascular diseases were written which did not even mention this lesion. A more objective attitude is encountered at the present time.

There are not many other subjects in cardiology which have undergone greater change in recent times. With the advance in knowledge the clinical diagnosis has become possible in many cases.

## MYOCARDITIS

### *Incidence*

As in the earlier editions of this book we wish to stress at the outset that myocarditis is a common disease and that the attitude still prevailing in many quarters where myocarditis is regarded as uncommon is unjustified and incompatible with present knowledge. Adequate data have accumulated to show that neither the incidence nor importance of this disease was correctly appraised in the past.

Histologic examination of the heart in over 5000 necropsies on adults who died from other than a contagious disease revealed myocarditis in 4.26 per cent. The percentage was even higher in children, i. e. 6.83 per cent (Saphir).

### *Pathology*

Grossly the soft flabby yellow or brown muscle resembles the pallid heart seen in connection with marked cloudy swelling. Microscopically nonsuppurative myocarditis shows granular and hyaline necrosis in small foci surrounded by interstitial collections of cells. The infiltrate is composed chiefly of lymphocytes, polymorphonuclear leukocytes and plasma cells; at times large numbers of eosinophiles are encountered. The amount of inflammatory edema varies and small hemorrhages may be observed.

In some coccal infections (strepto-staphylo-pneumo and gonococcal) small multiple abscesses may form, particularly in the left ventricle. The histologic picture is that of a focal abscess surrounded by a dense cellular infiltrate. Early death from the provocative sepsis may preclude the detection of reparative processes.

### *Common Varieties*

Myocarditis may accompany local or general infectious diseases and it may be essential—that is, without apparent involvement of other organs. Among the more important diseases in which myocarditis is known to occur the following must be mentioned:

*Rheumatic Fever.* It is universally agreed that myocarditis is extremely common in the acute phase of rheumatic fever; some observers even consider it a constant phenomenon. This conclusion is based largely upon histologic and electrocardiographic studies.

The many cases of rheumatic myocardial damage, the appearance of Aschoff bodies, round cell infiltrations and changes in the coronary arteries leading to the occlusion of small vessels have been discussed earlier. Occasionally symptoms or signs of rheumatic myocarditis lead to the diagnosis of active rheumatic fever.

which earlier was unrecognized. This lesion has been discussed in the chapter on rheumatic fever.

*Tonsillitis.* Not rarely tonsillitis as well as other infections of the throat provoked by hemolytic streptococci cause an acute myocarditis. In some cases evidence of cardiac participation is obtainable one or two days after the onset of tonsillitis; more frequently it appears 6 to 8 days after the throat infection starts. Often the changes are not detected until the fever has subsided. There is no parallelism between the severity of the tonsillitis or sore throat and the myocardial changes. Occasionally a severe myocarditis develops in patients who have had only a few hours of fever; sometimes they have not felt sufficiently ill to go to bed or else the tonsillitis was subclinical.

Opinions are still divided on the incidence of myocarditis following tonsillitis. According to some observers evidence of myocarditis is obtained electrocardiographically in 70 per cent of the cases. This figure is certainly too high. Marked changes consisting of widening of the QRS complexes to more than 0.10 second, prolongation of the P-R interval, abnormal RS-T segment and abnormal T waves appeared in 30 per cent of another series (Hotz and Huber). According to personal experience 10 to 15 per cent of patients suffering from an acute tonsillitis develop changes suggestive of myocardial involvement.

The patients complain of weakness, palpitation and cardiac pain. The pain may appear suddenly and without apparent provocation such as exertion; it is felt behind the sternum or over the precordium; it may radiate like the typical anginal pain to the right or left shoulder and arm. Sometimes the distress is mild and is revealed only when the patient is specifically interrogated about it; in other cases it is excruciating. The pain may last only a few seconds; rarely it persists for minutes and it recurs often.

The signs are the same as those of other types of myocarditis and will be discussed later in this chapter.

Often the lesion is overlooked. The weakness and palpitation are attributed to the preceding infection or to the absorption of toxins. Little attention is paid to the pain when it is atypical; the patient is often young and therefore anginal pain is out of the question.

The alterations in the electrocardiogram provide the best objective evidence of cardiac participation. Temporary prolongation of the atrioventricular conduction time and periodically dropped beats (Wenckebach periods) may appear. T wave changes are common. These changes usually disappear in a few days; rarely are they demonstrable for four to six weeks. In some cases the conduction time remains prolonged even after full recovery takes place.

Within the space of a few months the wives of two hospital administrators in the same institution complained of palpitation, general weakness and cardiac pain following mild tonsillitis. One patient had a temporary prolongation of the A-V conduction time to 0.23 second and the other to 0.32 second. Both women were young and otherwise healthy; no subsequent evidence of rheumatic fever could be obtained and complete recovery was noted within two weeks.

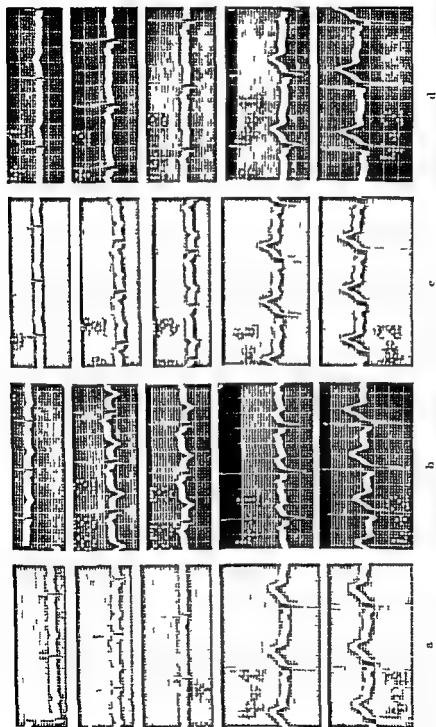


FIG. 39. A series of tracings from a patient with myocarditis following tonsillitis. The three standard leads are followed by CR4 and CR2.

Figure 39 was obtained from a 25 year old man who came to the hospital with a severe tonsillitis and pharyngitis. His temperature was  $40^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Weakness and palpitation were the chief complaints. Physical examination disclosed nothing abnormal except for the throat involvement. Within five days the fever and tonsillitis subsided under sulphonamide therapy but the weakness and palpitation persisted for several weeks.

The first electrocardiogram (figure 39 a) was taken on the second day of hospitalization. The T waves are inverted in leads I and II. The second electrocardiogram was recorded 6 days later, one day after the fever disappeared. It shows a sinus tachycardia of 100 and deeply inverted T waves in each limb lead. The third tracing (figure 39 c) was obtained three weeks after the preceding and shows evidence of improvement. The fourth tracing (figure 39 d) was obtained 19 days after the third and is almost normal. The patient remained under observation and at no time presented evidence of rheumatic fever.

Usually the prognosis is good because signs of cardiac involvement disappear within a few days or weeks. We have never seen acute heart failure develop. It is possible however that patients who are unaware of the existing condition may undertake severe exertion during the acute stage of myocardial involvement under these circumstances cardiac dilatation and congestive heart failure might develop. Embolism of the systemic arteries may arise from mural cardiac thrombi but fortunately this is a rare event. Little is known about any permanent weakness of the heart muscle due to scar formation following myocarditis (myocardial fibrosis).

The differential diagnosis is not always simple. The process must be distinguished from rheumatic fever. This is often difficult in view of the fact that arthralgias occur occasionally in connection with streptococcal infections of the upper respiratory tract. Under these circumstances the sedimentation rate is of great help since it shows abnormal values for a long time in rheumatic fever but only a slight change for a few days after a streptococcal pharyngitis or tonsillitis. Sometimes however differentiation of the two conditions is impossible in the beginning. There is certainly an interrelation although the connections are understood only in part at present.

Relatively little is known about the myocardial pathology since it is exceptional for these patients to succumb in the acute stage when a histologic study would be informative. Available evidence however justifies the term myocarditis for the cardiac lesions. It is of importance that most of the patients who succumbed to a simple streptococcal throat infection also had hyperthyroidism. In a patient with mild hyperthyroidism who developed a complete heart block following tonsillitis an inflammatory lesion in the heart muscle particularly in the bundle of His contained gram positive bacteria (Davis and Smith). In experimental streptococcus infections in the rabbit inflammatory foci were seen in the myocardium for the most part around the small branches of the coronary arteries. Therefore the possibility of an allergic response similar to that in rheumatic fever seems eliminated (Weicker and Petzlaff).

Penicillin should be given immediately 600 000 to 1 200 000 units being administered daily for several days. Tonsillectomy should not be performed until six weeks after all signs of activity have disappeared. Rest in bed is essential this must be enforced for days, weeks or months in accordance with the clinical and electrocardiographic signs.

*Other Focal Infections* These may likewise be accompanied by myocarditis. Dental infections with or without focal abscesses or a tonsillar abscess are rarer causes of myocarditis than was formerly believed but such cases undoubtedly occur.

An 18 year old man was admitted complaining of dyspnea and palpitation. The heart was moderately enlarged and the sounds were pure. A secondary anemia was present and the temperature underwent an occasional slight rise. The electrocardiogram was repeatedly found normal until one examination disclosed a prolongation of the A V conduction time. A renewed search for a focus of infection revealed a large latent apical abscess of one devitalized tooth. Extraction of the offending tooth led to rapid and complete recovery of the patient.

It is claimed that colitis, cholecystitis, adnexitis, accessory sinus infections, pyelitis and prostatitis may also act as foci and initiate a myocarditis in rare cases.

*Scarlet Fever* Myocarditis is common in this disease. Electrocardiographic alterations were found in 20 to 25 per cent of the cases observed. Inflammatory changes likewise occur particularly around the small branches of the coronary arteries. Histologic studies in scarlet fever and related streptococcal infections disclose focal and diffuse interstitial infiltrations in the myocardium in 90 per cent of the cases. According to some authors rheumatic fever is superimposed in these cases whenever there are definite clinical signs of myocardial involvement.

*Coccal Infections* Systemic diseases caused by streptococci, gonococci and meningococci often cause acute myocarditis as well as endo- and pericarditis. Modern treatment with the antibiotics permits a larger number of patients with these infections to survive and therefore more cases of myocarditis (and pericarditis) caused by these bacterial agents are observed.

*Parasites* In trichinosis the heart muscle is often involved and electrocardiographic changes are common. They disappear soon and the parasite vanishes if the patient survives. Focal myocarditis has been seen in toxoplasmosis (Paulley et al.).

*Syphilis* Myocarditis is certainly rare in syphilis. While it has been claimed that syphilis causes a diffuse chronic myocarditis and perhaps sudden death, increasing doubt has been raised concerning the criteria for an anatomic diagnosis. Spirochetes may abound in the myocardium of stillborn infants but inflammatory reactions are absent. The importance of syphilis in the causation of coronary ostial stenosis and the resultant train of symptoms will be discussed later.

*Trypanosomiasis* Chagas disease is known to cause myocardial lesions and cardiac arrhythmias. Its high frequency in certain parts of South America has

been recognized lately (Rosenbaum and Mori). This disease may in the future assume importance in the United States.

**Tuberculosis Myocarditis** Although a common event in tuberculosis often is not evaluated correctly. In our experience electrocardiographic changes are frequent in active exudative pulmonary tuberculosis and they are certainly not due to cachexia or avitaminosis since histologic examination of the hearts shows definite changes due to tuberculosis.

Four types of myocardial lesions are found in tuberculosis: (1) the large solitary tubercle which may be as large as a fist and may be confused with a cardiac aneurysm; (2) inflammatory infiltration of the myocardium which often starts from a tuberculous pericarditis; (3) miliary nodules in the course of a generalized miliary tuberculosis; (4) interstitial myocarditis (Gallavardin and Cravier). In one series tuberculous myocarditis was found in 10 of 100 cases of pulmonary tuberculosis (Roberts and Lisa).

Rather frequently we find abnormalities in the electrocardiograms of patients with an active exudative tuberculosis when they are examined prior to surgery. Thiamine deficiency, atrophy or other degenerative diseases of the heart must be ruled out in such cases.

Perrin et al. described heart failure in young subjects caused by tuberculous lesions of the myocardium. This etiology, however, is not proven in their patients.

**Typhoid Fever and Typhus** *Influenza Pneumonia* Heart muscle involvement in typhoid fever consists largely of degenerative changes, but actual inflammatory reactions are the rule in typhus. As elsewhere in the body, in typhus the inflammation is mainly in and around the vessels. In uncomplicated influenza myocardial involvement is unusual but does occur occasionally. It is common in pneumonia caused by pneumococci or streptococci.

**Virus Infections and Rickettsial Diseases** The existence of myocardial changes in virus infections has often been demonstrated. It appears in the experimental forms; different viruses seem to evoke responses peculiar to the agent employed (Pearce). The myocardium may be affected in poliomyelitis. In a series of 17 cases of poliomyelitis in which the heart was examined microscopically, histologic evidence of myocarditis was found in ten (Saphir). The electrocardiogram was altered in 21 out of 52 patients with poliomyelitis (Kirsch, Knecht and Zellweger) and this was considered to be caused by potassium depletion. This explanation may be valid for some of these changes. Myocarditis appears in mumps. Marked changes may appear in psittacosis. In the course of an epidemic one of us had the opportunity to observe two physicians ill with psittacosis; both had very marked but transient electrocardiographic changes. The T waves were deeply inverted in lead I in one case and were inverted in all leads in the other.

Electrocardiographic changes during life and perivascular infiltrations in the heart muscle after death have been seen in measles, epidemic (viral) hepatitis, primary atypical pneumonia, infectious mononucleosis (figure 40), rubella and influenza.

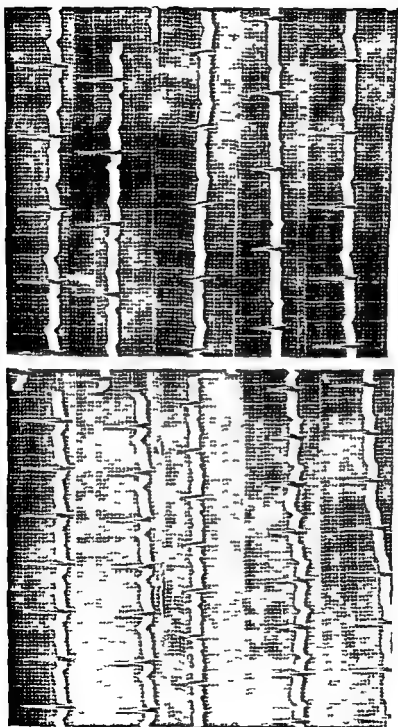


FIG. 40 Abnormal T waves in the standard leads as well as in V<sub>2</sub> and V<sub>3</sub> in a 50-year-old woman with infarcting myocardium (a) two days later (b) the electrocardiogram is normal



Cardiovascular lesions occurring in virus diseases have been reviewed by Lyon. Rickettsial diseases scrub typhus for example occasionally cause a myocarditis.

*Acute Nephritis* The nature of myocardial involvement in acute nephritis is still problematical but changes in the myocardium are the rule. The importance of sudden cardiac failure in acute glomerular nephritis has been known since the classical work of Volhard. In a series of 138 cases clinical signs of cardiac damage were found in 71 per cent. Opinions are still divided on the question whether this is due to inflammatory reactions in the myocardium to toxic changes or to ischemia resulting from a generalized capillaritis with increased capillary permeability. In the interstitial tissue exudate with cellular elements are found. The venous pressure is increased in patients with acute nephritis (Lé Due) and hydrothorax is common (Zdarsky).

*Drug Allergy* Of great interest are the changes occasionally seen after the administration of drugs. Electrocardiographic changes followed the injection of arsphenamine (neosalvarsan). Histologic studies have revealed the occurrence of an eosinophilic myocarditis in patients under treatment with this drug. Cardiac involvement appeared in one case after the seventh injection, and Charcot-Leyden crystals and infiltrations of eosinophiles were found in the myocardium. Some of these cases and others reported in the literature also developed a salivary gland dermatitis. The mechanism is obviously one of idiosyncrasy or allergy.

Every drug allergy and serum sickness may cause changes in the heart muscle resembling myocarditis with a necrotizing arteritis and periarteritis.

A similar interstitial myocarditis with a rich infiltration composed of eosinophiles was described following the clinical and experimental use of sulphonamides. These findings were denied by others (Fawcett). In all these instances the heart was not exclusively affected but participated in alterations like the other organs.

The possibility of allergic changes in the myocardium following the administration of otherwise harmless drugs is established and this may prove a clue to understanding a very peculiar serious affection of the myocardium commonly called Fiedler's myocarditis.

*Postpartum Myocarditis* Occasionally young women suddenly develop dyspnea, tachycardia and edema 5 to 30 days postpartum. The heart is found enlarged. Mural thrombi may cause emboli in the systemic circulation (Sodeman). Severe focal inflammation of the myocardium is noted at post mortem. The etiology of this syndrome is unknown and its differentiation from multiple embolisms from pelvic veins is difficult.

*Dermatomyositis* The cardiac changes found in dermatomyositis a collagen disease of obscure origin are also unexplained.

*Fiedler's Myocarditis* This lesion which has been called primary idiopathic acute interstitial isolated and pernicious myocarditis usually affects young adults. However it also occurs in children and apparently is not as rare as the few cases reported in the literature would seem to indicate.

Grossly the heart may show hypertrophy that may attain considerable proportions. The ventricles are involved more than the atria and the left ventricle more often than the right. The inner layers of the myocardium usually suffer more than the outer ones. The parenchyma itself is only slightly involved. In one type there is extreme infiltration with various types of white blood cells—sometimes mainly eosinophiles. In the second type the lesion is granulomatous with fibroblasts and giant cells but tuberculosis is not responsible.

Usually the onset is abrupt and ordinarily the course is one of progressive cardiac failure. Fever, chills, lassitude and anxiety may characterize the onset. Two of Saphir's 13 cases died suddenly and some of them had angular pain. Percussion usually reveals cardiac enlargement. Ordinarily tachycardia and hypotension prevail. The cardiac sounds are often altered and gallop rhythm is frequent. The electrocardiographic changes if present are consistent with a diffuse myocardial lesion. The disease is fatal within a period of days, a few weeks or rarely months. Pulmonary and cerebral embolism are frequent.

Treatment to date has been futile, the fatal outcome seeming to justify the term *pernicious myocarditis* (Boikau).

The terms *essential idiopathic* and *isolated myocarditis* indicate that the heart alone is affected insofar as postmortem studies show. The etiology of the disease is unknown. Since some other types of myocarditis are definitely allergic the same possibility must be seriously entertained in the pathogenesis of Friedler's myocarditis. It is also uncertain whether the disease is invariably fatal and what if any is its relation to milder forms of myocarditis. The relation of Friedler's myocarditis to the myocardial lesions of *avitaminosis* will be discussed later in this chapter.

### *The Clinical Picture of Myocarditis*

With certain readily understood exceptions dependent upon the etiology and accompanying disease the subjective symptoms and objective signs in all cases of myocarditis are similar. Some of them were mentioned in the discussion of tonsillitis (p. 250).

*Symptoms.* The subjective symptoms are usually mild and not characteristic. Palpitation is frequent and sometimes annoying. General weakness is pronounced. Anorexia and loss of weight are often noted.

*Precordial pain* is a very common symptom appearing without provocation and lasting only a few minutes. The pain may be very intense and may radiate to the shoulders and arms.

In most cases the above mentioned complaints are not sufficiently striking to draw the attention of an unwary physician to the heart.

*Signs.* The paucity of physical signs is explained by the fact that inflammatory foci scattered diffusely in the heart muscle usually do not alter cardiac size or auscultatory phenomena. Only the rare more extensive inflammations produce changes detectable by percussion or auscultation.

Fever is common in the acute stage but is often first noted by the physician because the patient is unaware of it. While the temperature may exceed  $39.5^{\circ}\text{C}$  it may be absent even in a florid myocarditis.

Cardiac enlargement is absent or minimal in an otherwise healthy heart but in some instances particularly when the patient does not remain in bed the enlargement may be pronounced. Nevertheless this enlargement is usually transient in contrast to the persistent form encountered in rheumatic valvular lesions; moreover it recedes with striking rapidity.

When a decompensated valvular defect with an enlarged heart is successfully treated and compensation is fully restored cardiac size usually remains constant. If cardiac size diminishes during treatment it is assumed — correctly in our experience — that a pericardial effusion was present and has now decreased or disappeared. However cardiac enlargement may recede considerably in myocarditis.

Fluoroscopy often reveals very strong pulsations and marked excursions of the cardiac border. Cardiac dilatation is often absent when the patient is examined by x-ray in the upright position but is detected in the supine position (Zdarsky). This is explained by the increased return of blood to the heart resulting in greater filling of the cardiac chambers in the recumbent position.

Auscultation often reveals normal pure heart sounds. The heart rate is fast and accelerates markedly even on slight exertion but this sign is not always present. A systolic apical murmur if present is not characteristic. The first or second sound is often split. In severe myocardial lesions the heart sounds become distant and impure. Gallop rhythm is often present. Arrhythmias due to partial A-V block are not rare but extrasystoles are rather unusual. A progressive anemia occurs in many protracted cases.

The electrocardiogram reflects the involvement of the myocardium more often than any other method of examination. Alterations are not always evident and are not continuously present even in proven cases. They develop only when inflammatory foci exist at definite places in the specific tissue or when large foci are situated in definite areas of the myocardium. Since new foci constantly light up and vanish the electrocardiographic changes consisting of widened QRS complexes, abnormal T waves and conduction disturbances may be present one day and gone the next. Frequent electrocardiograms are necessary and one positive record will establish the diagnosis.

*Diagnosis.* If the diagnosis of myocarditis were suspected more frequently it would be more widely appreciated that the affected patients need not manifest symptoms or signs demonstrable by percussion, auscultation, x-ray or even electrocardiography. Therefore if patients were examined more often with this diagnosis in mind the lesion would be found in innumerable cases currently unrecognized.

Since these patients must rest in bed and must avoid every unnecessary demand upon the heart, timely recognition is of utmost importance.

Probably the connective tissue scars discovered so frequently by pathologists in the heart muscle ( fibrous of the myocardium ) in patients dying for diverse reasons but without coronary artery diseases are often due to an old healed myocarditis. In view of the frequency of infections and the realization of the incidence of myocardial participation even in mild infections the assertions made in earlier editions of this book should be repeated namely that we believe that only a few individuals entirely escape the occasional presence of small inflammatory foci in the myocardium (myocarditis).

*Complications* As previously suggested one of the most serious nonpreventable complications is a peripheral embolus originating from a mural thrombus. In some young hemiplegics who have no signs of lues or a congenital aneurysm an undiagnosed myocarditis explains the accident.

Abscesses form in overwhelming septic subacute bacterial endocarditis and myocardial infarction. Such an abscess may perforate outwardly. Cardiac aneurysms sometimes develop.

*Prognosis* In most cases prognosis is excellent and healing of the lesion is thorough. Only in a minority of cases most of them at present still included in the group called Fiedler's myocarditis is the outcome fatal. The course of the disease in such cases may be rapid with early death.

*Treatment* Bed rest, the eradication of focal infection and antibiotic drugs are the only methods of treatment available. If allergy toward a drug is discovered its administration should be discontinued. Rest in bed should be enforced as long as electrocardiographic changes, fever, tachycardia or changes in the character of the heart sounds indicate activity of the myocarditis. In infectious myocarditis antibiotics should be given in sufficient doses. In the allergic type it is often difficult to find the responsible antigen.

### MYOCARDIAL DEGENERATION

The diagnosis of myocardial degeneration is justified only if an etiologic factor is detected. The myocardium like any other muscle does not degenerate without some extrinsic cause. At one time myocardial degeneration was diagnosed in every cardiac patient who did not have a valvular lesion.

#### *Cardiac Atrophy*

Atrophic changes of the myocardial fibers constitute the most common change in the heart. There is rarely a severe wasting disease (tuberculosis, a malignant tumor, severe anemia or a prolonged debilitating disease) that is not associated with cardiac atrophy. These hearts are firm because the connective tissue does not share in the atrophy to a comparable degree. The coronary arteries may become tortuous since they also escape atrophy. Apart from this simple atrophy, brown atrophy is also encountered especially in older individuals. These atrophic hearts usually are capable of meeting the demands imposed upon

them by individuals whose activities are necessarily limited although there is a definite decrease in the reserve power

Some of these hearts weigh less than 100 grams. Often there is a bradycardia particularly in hunger atrophy. The blood pressure falls and the electrocardiogram shows low voltage due to loss of muscular substance.

### *Cloudy Swelling*

Among the degenerations in a more strict sense there is the cloudy swelling which accompanies a host of infectious diseases and which may result from intoxications with chloroform as well as many other agents. The cardiac involvement is a single example of a widespread process with similar lesions in other parenchymatous organs.

Grossly the flabby heart looks like boiled muscle.

### *Diphtheria*

An outstanding instance of myocardial degeneration is the involvement of the muscle in diphtheria which too often is called a myocarditis. Actually reactive inflammatory processes occur secondarily, like those at the border of a myocardial infarct after coronary occlusion. The primary lesion of the heart in diphtheria is a focal degeneration and necrosis of the muscle fibers. Later a reactive inflammation and proliferation of the fixed tissue cells appear. These changes have a toxic origin; they are often widespread and the prognosis may be serious. Nowhere is the recuperative power of the heart more clearly manifested than in diphtheria. If patients survive the acute phase cardiac failure soon disappears, a complete atrioventricular block or bundle branch block vanishes and after a few months the patient may present normal cardiac findings. This is one of the reasons it was formerly held that the acute cardiac failure was primarily of the peripheral circulatory type that is vasomotor rather than cardiac. In rare cases atrioventricular block or bundle branch block persist (Hoel and Perg).

The clinical picture is well known. There is hardly a more tragic experience than that of observing a child pass through diphtheria and suddenly succumb to a cardiac affection. The premonitory symptoms are few in number and often elude detection. When present they consist of vague precordial oppression, dyspnea and palpitation. General weakness is often noted. Epigastric pain and vomiting may usher in the acute syndrome and death may occur in a lapse of consciousness. Extreme pallor is present. Usually there is no fever. Often sinus tachycardia, partial or complete heart block are observed. Extrasystoles are rare. The presence of conduction disturbance is considered particularly ominous. Even if sudden death does not occur early the final outcome may be dubious for weeks. A considerable number of these cases recover and have no permanent sequelae.

There is no specific treatment once the myocardial damage develops. Bed rest must be strictly enforced for weeks since slight exertion has been known to cause sudden failure. Otherwise treatment is symptomatic.

### *Fatty Degeneration in Anemia*

This alteration of the heart muscle seems to be provoked by the same causes as those responsible for cloudy swelling; the causative factor apparently acts over a long period of time and more intensely. This lesion played an important role in medicine up to a few decades ago. At present, however, it is rather uncommon since the modern treatment of anemias has found universal use for it was in this group of conditions that fatty degeneration attained clinical importance. This degeneration often involves the entire heart, particularly the subendocardial layers, causing the picture of the tiger heart. Alterations are usually most evident in the right ventricle, especially around the papillary muscles. Cardiac enlargement and murmurs appear. The enlargement is due to dilatation of both ventricles and congestive heart failure (predominantly right heart failure) may follow. With cardiac dilatation and the acceleration of blood flow consequent to the anemia, systolic and occasionally diastolic murmurs become audible and very often lead to the erroneous diagnosis of a rheumatic valvular lesion. The cardiac output becomes elevated when the hemoglobin level falls to 7 Gm. per 100 ml. of blood. There is a reduced blood volume in anemia and peripheral arteriolar dilatation. The circulation time is abnormally short.

While relative mitral (and even relative aortic) regurgitation occurs, the systolic and diastolic murmurs in these patients usually arise from the veins near the heart and are the result of the increased speed of blood flow.

### *Fat Infiltration*

This is a rare lesion in obese individuals. Not only is the subepicardial fat increased, but true infiltration occurs in the myocardium. This condition is also more common in the right ventricle. Owing to the fact that small interstitial cells, when they become fat cells, have an increased size, the myocardial fibers are pushed apart in event, which is important when the thin wall of the right ventricle is extensively permeated by fat cells. When fat infiltration is moderate, it seems to lack functional significance. When extreme (a rather rare occurrence) it may produce right heart failure and even death by rupture of the right ventricle (Smith and Willis).

### *Thiamine Deficiency (Beriberi)*

Cardiovascular involvement as the result of nutritional disturbances have been studied for many years. The type following thiamine deficiency was observed first in East Asia and in the East Indies.

*Incidence.* Cases of beriberi due to nutritional disturbances are observed in the Western Hemisphere relatively often. They are found in alcoholics, drug

addicts pregnant women and individuals who voluntarily (faddists) or on medical advice follow special diets. These individuals frequently develop severe cardiac changes from avitaminosis. Many patients of this kind may be seen in a hospital ward each year. Even on a normal diet cardiac damage may result from an abnormal absorption or an abnormal utilization of thiamine.

*Mechanism* Lack of thiamine disturbs tissue oxidation. The amount of tissue cocarboxylase is diminished. Pyruvic acid and lactic acid are not broken down and are found in the blood in larger quantities. In thiamine deficiency Raab found an excessive accumulation of adrenosympathetic substances in the heart muscle which may explain the short P-P interval in the electrocardiogram.

*Symptoms and Signs* Besides general weakness the usual symptoms of heart failure — dyspnea on exertion, swelling of the ankles and palpitation — are present.

Examination reveals a collapsible pulse which may resemble the Corrigan pulse of aortic insufficiency. The diastolic blood pressure is low, a systolic sound is heard over the peripheral arteries and a capillary pulse is present. These phenomena are at least in part due to a general peripheral vasodilatation. The signs are more pronounced in the oriental type of beriberi but are not completely absent in the occidental form (Aalsmeer).

Usually the heart rate is increased. The heart is diffusely enlarged particularly to the right, the pulmonary arc is prominent. Evidence of right (and left) heart failure occurs. Palpation reveals marked hypermotility of the cardiac area. This may be connected with the greater amounts of adrenalin and related compounds which have been found in the heart muscle of rats in vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency (Paab and Suplee).

The heart sounds are often impure. Gallop rhythm may appear but arrhythmias are rare. The blood pressure is often low and the velocity of blood flow is increased.

The patient may show other evidence of vitamin deficiency. In tropical beriberi electrocardiographic alterations are infrequent. Apart from a relatively short P-I interval little has been found even when marked cardiac dilatation and congestion prevailed. Definite depression of the RS-T segment and T wave changes were described in occidental beriberi and in our experience they are common (figure 41). Occasionally the P-R interval is prolonged and the QRS complexes are widened. The discrepancy between the electrocardiographic findings in oriental and occidental beriberi does not seem to have been explained. In all probability the lack of other vitamins plays a role. While in oriental beriberi right ventricular failure with right outflow tract dilatation is common it is rare in the occidental type.

*Pathology* Hydropic degeneration of the myocardium originally seemed to explain the severe myocardial lesion. The water content of the heart muscle however is not increased in experimental beriberi. In recent years focal myocardial necrosis has been found in avian and mammalian hearts during thiamine deficiency. The necrosis is often visible to the naked eye. Just as in other local

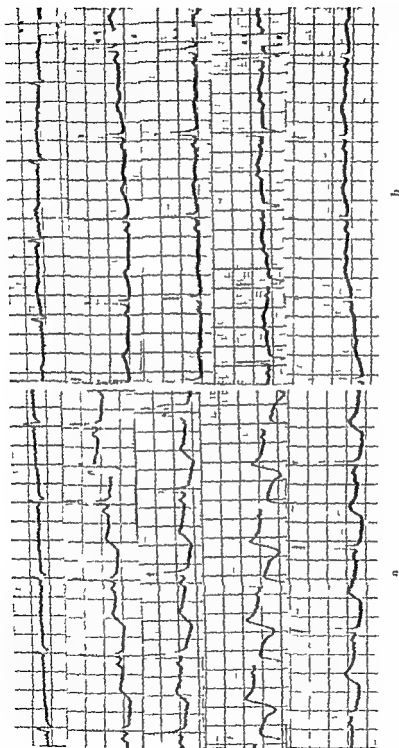


FIG. 41 An electrocardiogram in the standard leads as well as in  $V_1$  and  $V_2$  of a 49-year-old woman suffering from alcoholism. The R intervals measured 0.11 sec and the RS fragments in the T waves are abnormal (a). After a week, during which thiamine chloride was given, the electrocardiogram (b) was almost normal.



degenerations the necrotic area may be secondarily infiltrated with leukocytes scars form during healing Sometimes the endocardium becomes thick and the resulting mural thrombi may cause embolism The histologic changes may closely resemble those seen in Fiedler's myocarditis For these reasons the question has even been raised whether individuals supposedly suffering from idiopathic or essential myocarditis did not in reality have a thiamine deficiency (Dock)

It is possible that further investigation will show that allergic and nutritional disturbances explain many of the hitherto puzzling cases of essential myocardial lesions It is evident furthermore that nutritional disturbances in cardiac patients may damage the heart and aggravate existing conditions Inadequate nutrition is common in patients with chronic cardiac disease

*Therapy* The degree of myocardial necrosis and reactive inflammation may explain why the administration of large doses of thiamine chloride (100 to 150 mg daily) to some patients with a beriberi heart leads to rapid recovery while in others prolonged treatment is necessary Clearly hearts in which anatomic changes have already appeared require a longer time for recovery If the heart muscle has been irretrievably damaged improvement becomes impossible

When there are disturbances of absorption large doses of thiamine chloride must be given parenterally for a longer time than in cases of thiamine deficiency due to lack of intake The absence of cheilosis or abnormal reflexes and of tongue changes does not speak against the diagnosis A deficiency of other components of the vitamin B complex need not be present

### *Other Types of Degeneration*

*Myocardial Lesions Caused by Disturbances of the Electrolyte Balance* We are only now beginning to understand the disturbances of the myocardium caused by abnormal electrolyte content of the blood and heart muscle The disturbances of potassium content are known best since they cause electrocardiographic as well as histologic changes in the heart muscle

In patients with a great variety of lesions hypopotassemia or hypokalemia can develop It is seen in chronic diarrhea particularly in infants in diabetic acidosis in sprue after surgical operations following the administration of desoxycorticosterone or cortisone and in aldosteronism The changes may be particularly striking after the intravenous injection of glucose indeed such therapy may be dangerous in patients with the above mentioned conditions

The patient may experience dyspnea Cardiac enlargement is found Irregular rhythms interference between sinus and A V rhythms and extrasystoles appear

Histologically in animal experiments (pig, rat) and in man (McAllen) pinpoint necrosis of myocardial fibers with infiltration by polymorphonuclears and bands of fibrotic tissue are seen Similar lesions (interstitial myocarditis) (Kaye) have been reported in Friedrich's ataxia scleroderma and progressive muscular dystrophy It is of interest that in rats the myocardial necroses which appear on a potassium low diet are prevented by thiamine deficiency (Folles)

The electrocardiographic changes consist of a depression of the P S T segment and very prominent U waves (Bellet). An accompanying prolongation of the Q T interval is caused by a hypocalcemia present at the same time. It is not yet decided whether the electrocardiographic changes are more related to the serum

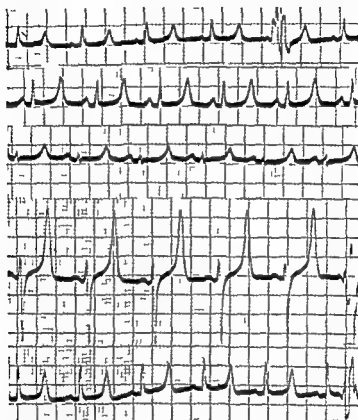


FIG. 49 The electrocardiogram of a 34 year old woman with acute renal failure and hyperkalemia (6 mEq/l). The T waves in the standard leads as well as in V2 and V5 are abnormally high and tent like. They have a small base and the ascent and descent are almost symmetrical.

than to the myocardial potassium level. In congestive cardiac failure and in a variety of myocardial diseases the K content of the myocardium is diminished. Large doses of digitalis have the same effect. In some patients with large myocardial infarctions the potassium level in the blood rises.

*Hyperkalemia* is seen in azotemia, Addison's disease or in untreated diabetic acidosis. Great muscular weakness and mental confusion may appear. The electrocardiogram shows typically huge T waves with small bases, peaked, reaching some times the height of the P waves. With rising levels of potassium intraventricular block, arrhythmias and atrial paralysis appear.

Figure 42 shows the electrocardiogram in a moderate hyperkalemia Figure 43 in an advanced hyperkalemia Figure 44 shows patterns of hypo and hyperkalemia in the same patient

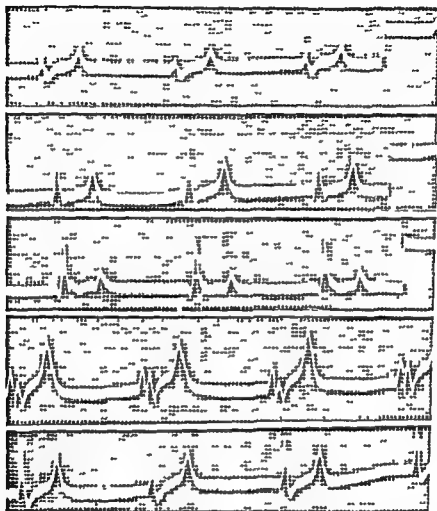


FIG 43 Pattern of hyperpotassemia in a patient with chronic nephritis and renal failure The T waves show a similar pattern to that in figure 42 the QRS complexes are blurred and widened and the sinus rhythm is replaced by an atrioventricular rhythm

*Other Types* Several degenerative processes in the heart muscle such as those caused by hypothyroidism or toxic doses of digitalis will be discussed under appropriate headings but a few others may be noted at this time Simple hyaline degeneration may occur in the interstitial tissue and in the blood vessels Zenker's hyaline degeneration with swelling and rupture of the fibers occurs in typhoid fever when massive this form of coagulation necrosis may cause circulatory disturbances

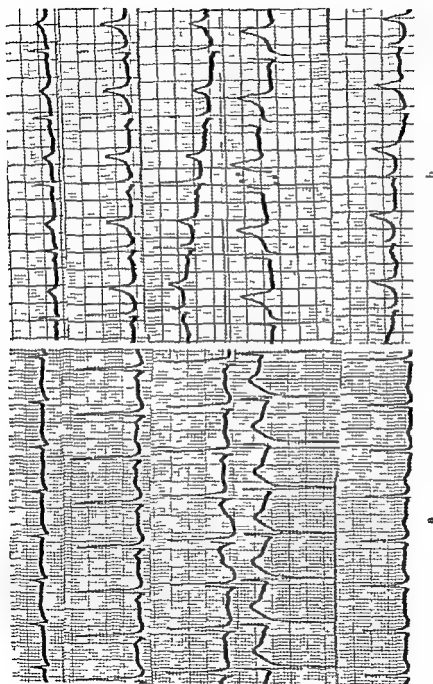


FIG. 44 A 36-year-old woman had a cholecystectomy with prolonged drainage. The electrocardiogram shows the pattern of hypokalemia with depressed ST segments and low T waves (a). Hypokalemia develops (b) after treatment therapy.

As a mesoblastic structure the heart may also suffer from primary as well as secondary amyloidosis. In primary systemic amyloidosis the heart is involved in 80 per cent of the cases. The clinical picture may simulate pericardial adhesions. As in other degenerative cardiac diseases only T wave changes are visible in the electrocardiogram. Primary cardiac amyloidosis occurs most often in the elderly patients. The diagnosis is usually missed since coronary sclerosis is suspected.

Myocardial damage due to trauma or caused by physical agents (x ray) will be discussed in a later chapter.

*Degenerations of Unknown Etiology* During the last war Bedford and Konstam described a severe myocardial disease in West Africans that affects young people and is of unknown etiology. Signs of heart failure with dyspnea and edema suddenly appear, general weakness is pronounced and the blood pressure is low. Subendocardial necrosis is found and strands of fibrotic tissue are present in the myocardium. Mural thrombi are common. Rarely there is an eosinophile reaction. A deficient diet was considered as etiologic and prolonged malnutrition was actually found to induce similar changes (Torreson). Subsequently it was noted that the histologic changes are different from those seen in beriberi. Furthermore, the illness certainly occurs without malnutrition. Cray found the syndrome in two Europeans who had visited West Africa. The possibility of a virus infection has been discussed.

The disease has also been observed in the United States (McKusick and Cochran).

Clinically these patients are admitted with evidence of congestive heart failure. Relative mitral and tricuspid insufficiency caused by involvement of the papillary muscles and thickening of the valves leads to the wrong diagnosis of a rheumatic valvular lesion. Men are affected more often than women. The clinical picture may simulate that resulting from pericardial adhesions with constriction of the heart (Loeffler). The situation rapidly deteriorates and there is no response to therapy.

This syndrome is probably related to the syndrome described by Loeffler in which there is endocardial fibrosis with thrombosis and eosinophilia. It may also be noted that after experimental stress Selig found similar strands of fibrotic tissue in the myocardium as a sign of his general adaptation syndrome.

Also of unknown mechanism are the myocardial changes frequently seen in Friedreich's ataxia: progressive muscular atrophy and myotonia atrophica. In the latter condition an abnormal electrocardiogram was found in 68.3 per cent of the cases. Bundle branch block and atrioventricular block are common.

*Paget's Disease* Involvement of the circulation is common in Paget's disease. Paget himself described the increased blood supply to the involved bone with increased warmth over the involved area. With widespread involvement of the bones the cardiac output was reported as amounting to 13.3 liters per minute in one case (Edholm et al). In addition such patients often have hypertension and an increased incidence of atherosclerosis. Kyphoscoliosis is common and may

contribute to the circulatory embarrassment. Legume and Denolin found at rest no increase of circulation; it appeared however following exercise provided abnormality of the bone was widespread.

## CORONARY SCLEROSIS

### *Introduction*

Atheroma is a lesion caused by lipid deposits in the intima. In atherosclerosis in addition to such deposition there is a proliferation of the intima and calcium deposits may appear. Arteriosclerosis is in itself not an entity, three main types of arterio-sclerotic processes being distinguished at present.

(1) *Monckeberg's Sclerosis*. Medial calcification of the arteries. Monckeberg's sclerosis is a more or less physiologic phenomenon. Small deposits of lime salts appear very early in the media of human arteries, particularly in the pelvic vessel. They are a regular finding in patients beyond the age of twenty (Clawson) and are more common in males than in females. When this process is somewhat more pronounced it is referred to as Monckeberg's sclerosis. It occurs most often in the femoral, pelvic, radial and temporal arteries; it is rare in the coronary arteries. The lack of cholesterol deposits in the intima distinguishes this process from true arteriosclerosis, but the two lesions may be combined. Since medial sclerosis does not narrow the arterial lumen it ordinarily has no clinical significance. The small calcified areas may be present as nodules or more commonly as rings and give rise to so-called "corduroy" arteries. If these rings fuse in continuous calcification, "pipe-stem" arteries will be felt when the peripheral arteries are palpated.

Physicians should be aware of the great incidence of this process, since patients sometimes become very apprehensive when lime salt deposits are found in the arteries of the abdomen, the pelvis or the extremities on the occasion of an x-ray examination performed for some other reason.

A similar process can be produced in animals by injections of epinephrine, by overdosage with vitamin D and by prolonged radiation with ultra violet light. Examples of medial calcification in the newborn have been described.

(2) *Arterio-sclerosis*. A second type of arteriosclerosis is more accurately described as arterio-sclerosis. The term is applied to the arteriole involvement that occurs in hypertension. It does not seem to depend upon the age of the patient. Its relation to the third type is not clear. Arterio-sclerosis will be discussed in association with hypertension.

(3) *Atherosclerosis*. Atherosclerosis is the chief cause of coronary artery pathology. The following pages are devoted to this type of arterio-sclerotic process.

### *Atherosclerosis — Pathology*

The lesion is seen in early youth. The "milk streaks" in the aorta are due to the presence of foam cells in the intima. They are found in most children over 8 years of age. The mitral valve is affected particularly often, at times even in

infancy (Aschoff Hirsch) The high cholesterol content of the food at this age may be responsible Lipid substances deposited in the intima of arteries and valves in early childhood are readily absorbed but the capacity for reabsorption disappears in later years The atheromatous plaques become larger and reabsorption does not take place

In children the atheromatous plaques are situated within the intima The plaques contain — as does the blood — cholesterol cholesterol esters phospholipids and dihydrocholesterol Later on beginning with the third decade they are more prominent and narrow the lumen of the artery since intimal proliferation becomes more pronounced

The left coronary artery is involved earlier and more often than the right (108 times out of 120 cases) The process is more common near the origin of the coronary artery Lime salts are deposited later Thin walled capillaries grow into the atherosclerotic area from the adventitia and the lumen of the artery when the subject reaches the fourth decade (Wolkoff) The importance of these vessels for the development of coronary thrombosis will be discussed in a later chapter

White plaques of lipid deposits appear in the aorta and valves in infants they are present in the main coronary arteries in patients 18 to 20 years old In subjects over 30 the chief branches are involved and between 50 and 60 fibrous prominent plaques which may obstruct the lumen are found also in the smaller tertiary branches of the coronary tree (Wolkoff)

Thickening of the intima is a physiologic process characteristic for the coronary arteries (Dock) In patients between 40 and 50 years of age the thickness of the intima of otherwise normal coronary arteries may surpass the thickness of the media (Wolkoff) This is less pronounced in women

### *Etiology*

*Lipid Metabolism* Since the classical experiments of Anitschkow which demonstrated the increased incidence of atheromatosis in rabbits fed large amounts of cholesterol new data have been obtained regarding the relation of lipid metabolism to atherosclerosis Nevertheless the problem is far from solved

Little is known about cholesterol metabolism It is certain that cholesterol can be formed in the body by building stones as simple as acetate derived from carbohydrates fats or proteins But the transport the regulation of cholesterol levels and details of its function in the body are unknown According to Certler et al the values of the different lipids in the blood are higher in mesomorphic individuals Lower levels of serum lipids were found in normal individuals aged 80 to 100 years old if compared to middle aged persons (Goldbloom and Liber)

With regard to the absolute level of cholesterol and cholesterol esters it is certain that normal levels may be found in patients with severe atherosclerosis while high abnormal levels are seen without it However the following laboratory findings are obtained in most patients with atherosclerosis

**THE CHOLESTEROL PHOSPHOLIPID RATIO** In addition to cholesterol the phospholipids of the blood represented for the most part by lecithin are of

importance. They act as stabilizers of the cholesterol protein molecules. Even a marked elevation of the serum cholesterol often does not lead to atherosclerosis when the cholesterol phospholipid ratio is normal, that is, when the phospholipids are also present in larger amounts and in their normal relation to cholesterol. Thus in familial hypercholesterolemia the phospholipids are not increased, the cholesterol phospholipid ratio is high and atherosclerosis is common. On the other hand, the latter disease is rare in idiopathic hyperlipemia because here the phospholipids are also increased.

**THE BETA LIPOPROTEINS** The cholesterol molecules are not free in the serum but like the phospholipids they are combined with great protein molecules. These molecules called lipoproteins consist of alpha lipoproteins, the protein molecules being derived from alpha globulins and the beta lipoproteins derived from beta globulin. The total cholesterol in the alpha lipoproteins is diminished but it is increased (70 per cent) in the beta lipoproteins in patients with atherosclerosis.

**PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE LIPIDS** With the ultracentrifuge (of man and his co-workers) found lipoproteins of different sizes and densities. These large molecules float at different levels with a certain speed of the ultracentrifuge and are classified according to Sf (Svedberg flotation) units. Molecules which float within a range of Sf 10 to 20 and Sf 20 to 100 units were found to be important in relation to atherosclerosis. Feeding a cholesterol and fat rich diet increases the amount of these molecules; a diet free of fat and cholesterol diminishes their amount in the blood. Among patients with myocardial infarction 91 per cent are said to possess a larger number of these molecules in the serum; there is a particularly strong association between atherosclerosis and levels of Sf 10 to 20.

The relation between atheromatosis of the coronary arteries and the Sf levels is said to be better than that of the cholesterol values. While some confirmation of this statement is available, additional data must be collected before further conclusions are drawn. It must be emphasized that in the individual case all the values mentioned above may be normal and advanced coronary sclerosis can exist; however, when groups are studied the abnormal values are prevalent.

**HYPERCHOLESTEROLEMIA AND CORONARY SCLEROSIS** Diseases associated with large amounts of lipid (cholesterol) in the blood have a propensity for the development of atherosclerosis and coronary sclerosis; in particular it is a complication. Thus these processes complicate hypothyroidism rather regularly.

In diabetes the disturbance of carbohydrate metabolism is usually associated with altered fat metabolism and coronary as well as general atherosclerosis appear more often than in the general population; moreover these lesions appear at an earlier age. Since the introduction of insulin, diabetic coma has become rare and atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease has become the most common cause of death in diabetics. It has been estimated that more than 90 per cent of diabetics whose disease has lasted more than ten years have generalized atherosclerosis.



a low caloric fat poor high carbohydrate diet has been recommended to prevent this arterial lesion. While the evidence at hand is not sufficient to prove that diabetes can initiate atherosclerosis, there is no doubt that in diabetes the vascular atherosclerotic changes are augmented and accelerated. While some believe that careful control of the diabetes can prevent atherosclerosis (Joslin, Dunlop), others deny this.

Atherosclerosis has been described in nephrosis (Weiss and Minot). The disorder is also common and hereditary in some types of xanthomatosis (e. g. Hand, Christian, Schuller disease) which are associated with a high blood cholesterol. In certain types of obesity or cholelithiasis coronary sclerosis is common. Statistical investigations indicate that diets containing excessive amounts of fat favor the appearance of atherosclerosis.

Atheromatosis of the aorta, the result of cholesterol feeding, is accelerated in experimental animals by castration, thyroidectomy, and the administration of posterior pituitary extracts. Administration of iodine compounds prevents the appearance of atherosclerosis induced by feeding cholesterol in rabbits.

The investigations of Bronte Stewart et al. are important because they confirm the finding that in general the higher the economic level of their patients the higher the serum cholesterol. There was a close correlation between intake of fats and the cholesterol level. The protein intake did not influence the results. Olive oil and different fats with a high content of unsaturated fatty acids depress the serum cholesterol level. So does cottonseed, corn oil and soy bean oil (Kinsell et al.).

Unsaturated fatty acids are those which have double bonds in the carbon chain. The degree of unsaturation is measured by their iodine number. The essential fatty acids (oleic acid, linoleic acid and arachidonic acid) prevent lipemia after ingestion of fats and eggs and depress the beta phospholipids in the blood.

*Pyridoxin.* Deficiency of vitamin B<sub>6</sub> causes in monkeys a lesion similar to human atherosclerosis (Rinehart and Greenberg). Pyridoxin is involved in the formation of unsaturated fatty acids (Schroeder). The intake of 11 mg. of pyridoxin daily has been recommended for prophylactic reasons.

*Lesions of the Intima.* According to some, the deposition of lipoids (cholesterol esters) is the primary factor, whereas others believe that some lesion of the arterial intima represents the primary alteration. Abnormal metabolism of the tissues and abnormal enzyme function have also been considered.

*Inflammation.* The part played by inflammation is illustrated best by syphilitic aortitis, where secondary atheromatosis is common. The appearance of atherosclerosis as a consequence of other kinds of arteritis is often discussed but remains unproven. Duguid believes that nonoccluding thrombus formation in the arterial intima leads to a picture resembling atherosclerosis.

*Mechanical Factors.* These seem to play an important role. The atherosclerotic changes in the heart valves appear at places exposed to the greatest

mechanical strain these are the aortic surface of the aortic valves and the ventricular surface of the mitral valves. Athero-sclerotic processes are also more frequent at the bifurcation of arteries. Even trauma seems to play some part in the development of local athero-sclerosis.

Hypertension likewise seems to be a factor. Coronary sclerosis was found in 20 per cent of the hypertensive subjects in a series of 4678 autopsies while it was present in only 12 per cent of those with normal blood pressure. Hypertension seems to be an accentuating and accelerating factor rather than a causal one in athero-sclerosis.

Athero-sclerosis is common in the lesser circuit in conditions in which the pressure is high e.g. cor pulmonale and congenital heart disease.

*Adiposity.* An increased incidence of athero-sclerosis in the obese is often stressed but occasionally is denied. The denials are particularly concerned with a lack of greater incidence in women.

*Tobacco.* The relation of smoking to the occurrence of coronary sclerosis is not fully elucidated. Many assume the incidence of coronary sclerosis is increased in heavy smokers. Some believe that an increased output of epinephrine under the influence of nicotine is responsible for the coronary sclerosis of smokers. Statistics showing that tobacco shortens the duration of life were found to be more significant as the amount of consumed tobacco increases (Pearl).

It is certain that nicotine may induce functional narrowing of peripheral vessels but whether this will cause athero-sclerosis is still undecided.

*Other Factors.* It is interesting that ultraviolet irradiation of cholesterol and egg yolk inhibits their atherogenic property experimentally (Altschul). Alloxan diabetes in rabbits does not lead to athero-sclerosis and even prevents this lesion following cholesterol feeding. However the phospholipids are markedly increased in these conditions.

### Sex

There is a distinct difference in the incidence of coronary sclerosis in the two sexes — the disorder is much less common in younger women unless they suffer from hypertension or diabetes.

In patients under 40 years of age the disease is much more common in men. After 60 years the incidence is the same in both sexes. This relation has often been attributed to the influence of the sex hormones. Recent experiments showing the prevention of athero-sclerosis by estrogen therapy serve as a confirmation. The degree of athero-sclerosis in women with bilateral oophorectomy is greater than in women in general (Wust et al.). Estrogen seems to clear the plasma of high molecular lipids. Estrogens correct pathologic protein lipid relationship. Hypogonadism in both sexes is associated with an increase of alpha lipoproteins; they are increased by stilbestrol and reduced by methyl testosterone.

Coronary sclerosis begins earlier in males. The peak of incidence is reached between 50 and 59. In women the rise is slow from the ages of 40 to 70 years (Peel).

Even in men the oral administration of estrogens tends to correct pathologic protein lipid relationships of the survivors of myocardial infarction. Methyl testosterone has an opposite effect (Russ, Eder and Barr). The mechanism of this action is unknown.

### *Race Eating Habits*

A racial factor has been postulated for there is some evidence to suggest that coronary sclerosis is particularly common in Jews and relatively infrequent in Negroes. It seems however that it is not the race but the dietary habits that are responsible. There is no doubt that Negroes in Africa and Chinese in China have less atherosclerosis but show the same incidence as soon as they adopt American eating habits. In areas of the world where little fat is consumed investigations show a lesser incidence of hypercholesterolemia and of atherosclerosis.

Dramatic proof of this situation was provided during the war. In Finland, Norway and Sweden the incidence of deaths due to atherosclerosis fell during the war when the consumption of fat was diminished and rose again with the resumption of customary eating habits. In Denmark where fat consumption rose during the Second World War the opposite trend of mortality due to heart disease as the result of atheromatosis occurred (Malmros, Strom and Jensen).

Kuczynski's investigations on the nomads of the Kargiz steppe where the mortality among young males from coronary disease was tremendous are well known. The food consisted chiefly of large quantities of mare's milk and its products.

One has to consider that with diminished consumption of fat the intake of proteins also is often diminished. The diet too is frequently undercaloric.

### *Age Heredity*

Coronary sclerosis is definitely not a disease of any particular age for it occurs in young people and it may be absent in the aged. Occasionally marked coronary sclerosis and even coronary thrombosis is seen in infants; it has also been found in siblings (Menten and Fetterman).

It is astonishing how frequently patients with coronary sclerosis reveal that the same lesion is present in other members of the family. We have observed one family in which one brother died of coronary sclerosis at 46, another developed left ventricular failure, gallop rhythm and marked changes in the electrocardiogram due to coronary sclerosis at 45, a third brother had a coronary thrombosis at 50 and a fourth brother was discovered to have hypertension when he was 42. Heart block due to coronary sclerosis has been observed to develop in twins at approximately the same time and an involvement of the same artery must be assumed. Abnormal cholesterol metabolism is also hereditary.

It is important to note that coronary sclerosis may be found without evidence of atherosclerosis of the aorta or in the peripheral arteries.

### *Incidence*

Anatomic investigations on otherwise healthy soldiers in wartime have shown that at the ages of 18 to 20 coronary sclerosis is found in 40 per cent of the necropsies. The average age of American soldiers killed in action in Korea was 22.2 years and the incidence of sclerosis was 77.3 per cent (Enos et al.). In necropsies on 65 young soldiers during World War I atherosclerosis of the aorta and coronary arteries was 44.6 per cent of all cases. In another series of 75 additional cases the same observer found atherosclerotic changes in 57.3 per cent (Monckeberg). The descending branch of the left coronary artery was most often affected.

In 1000 consecutive autopsies Allan found coronary lesions in 371. The youngest patient affected was 13 years old. In over 50 per cent of these cases myocardial fibrosis had resulted from the coronary lesion. From another study (Clawson) of 928 cases of coronary sclerosis it was concluded that this affection accounts for 2.5 per cent of all deaths from heart disease (exclusive of congenital heart lesions) and of 4 per cent of all deaths in individuals over 6 months old. While myocarditis and diphtheritic involvement are the most common affections of the heart muscle in youthful patients, coronary sclerosis with its resultant myocardial fibrosis is by far the most frequent affection in older individuals.

According to Pyle and Russell the mortality from coronary sclerosis is highest among physicians and lowest among gardeners, agricultural laborers and workers in chemical processes. Others found no greater incidence among physicians than in the general population, but a higher rate has been claimed among men engaged in sedentary occupations. Morris found a lower incidence of coronary sclerosis in physically active people. However in miners aged 55 to 64 the incidence of coronary sclerosis was 38 per cent (Thomas et al.).

At the age of 30 and over a twofold to threefold increase has occurred in England and Wales in the death rates attributed to coronary disease in the last 15 years (Martin).

Further details will be discussed in the chapter on angina pectoris.

### *Symptoms*

Sometimes the lesion is betrayed by the symptoms of angina pectoris. This occurs when the atherosclerotic process has led to the stenosis of a coronary artery. The occlusion of the involved artery leads to the syndrome of myocardial infarction. Very often, however, pain is absent even when a large branch of a coronary artery is completely blocked. While reliable statistics are not available, pain is mentioned in the history of only a minority of cases with fully developed coronary sclerosis.

In many patients the lesion is asymptomatic. Some consult the physician for vague complaints like fatigue or loss of appetite. Some have gastrointestinal symptoms such as persistent meteorism, eructations, alternating diarrhea and constipation. Since these symptoms are often pronounced in patients whose

circulation is fully compensated co existing sclerosis of the mesenteric vessels may be suspected if the action of reflexes and colonic spasm can be excluded

In many patients who consult their physicians for complaints relating to hypertension or diabetes evidence of coronary disease is discovered accidentally

In most cases the lesion remains unrecognized and unknown to the patient until some complication like coronary thrombosis or heart failure appears

### *Signs*

Very few signs may be called pathognomonic for coronary sclerosis the most reliable is the discovery of a sclerotic coronary artery in an x ray film This finding however offers little diagnostic help because medial sclerosis without obstructive atherosclerosis may show deposits of lime salts

From a factual standpoint the diagnosis of coronary sclerosis one of the most prevalent cardiac lesions is made only by inference If a patient complains of anginal pain we may infer the existence of a coronary sclerosis on the basis of known facts If a patient over 40 years of age has evidence of heart failure or of cardiac dilatation with changes in the electrocardiogram indicative of myocardial involvement and there is no other cause (myocarditis uncomplicated hypertension avitaminosis or infection) one may assume that coronary sclerosis exists This assumption is supported by the discovery of atherosclerosis in other arteries such as those of the fundus retinae

The diagnostic difficulties are exemplified by a study of 96 cases which came to necropsy with such diseases as carcinoma gastric ulcer and cirrhosis of the liver and which showed marked coronary sclerosis (Willius and Brown) The ages of the group varied from 33 to 81 years Seventy eight per cent were males Only 24 per cent had anginal pain In 40 per cent of the patients there was no subjective or objective evidence of cardiac disease

Accordingly at necropsy one is often surprised by the severity of the alterations in the coronary arteries and even by those in the myocardium when the asymptomatic patient has presented no evidence of cardiac disease on clinical examination Physicians who appraise the hearts of elderly individuals prior to operation accept a great responsibility and should always bear in mind our limitations of knowledge It is better to state that the examination does not disclose coronary sclerosis than to say that coronary sclerosis is absent

Often the first sign of atherosclerosis is a harsh systolic murmur over the apical area or over the aorta At first this murmur may be audible only after exertion but later it is permanent In all probability this murmur depends upon sclerotic changes in the aortic valve so that it is not a direct sign of coronary sclerosis Nevertheless it is significant as indicative of an atherosclerotic process and is important when found in relatively young individuals In 86 consecutive necropsies in which coronary sclerosis was found 51 per cent (44 cases) had sclerosis of the mitral or aortic valves In 17 per cent both valves were involved The remaining physical findings are similar to those elicited in other myocardial lesions and will be discussed in a later section

The electrocardiogram has been a great diagnostic aid and accounts for most correct diagnoses. Nevertheless a normal electrocardiogram does not preclude the presence of advanced coronary sclerosis. The electrocardiogram may remain normal when the lumen of the vessel is not markedly narrowed and therefore no myocardial ischemia develops. The same thing happens when the lesions are small or when they are located in areas not clearly represented in the electrocardiogram. One should also remember that profound changes in the electrocardiogram may vanish rapidly with the development of scar tissue and the progress of healing.

At present coronary sclerosis is diagnosed much more frequently than in former years. Whether or not this is due to an actual increased incidence is not fully decided. While pathologists report an increase it is equally true that they inspect the coronary arteries more carefully than in the past. The refinement of methods of examination and the fact that the term coronary sclerosis is generally used when formerly a diagnosis of dropsy, cardiac insufficiency, angina pectoris and the like would have been made are certainly responsible for the apparent increased incidence of the lesion.

### *Therapy*

There is no specific therapy for coronary sclerosis.

All types of fat should be restricted. Plant sterols are not absorbed from the human gastrointestinal tract in appreciable amounts. However they must be restricted as well since cholesterol values in the serum rise when vegetable fat is added to the diet of patients on cholesterol poor food.

The ingestion of neutral fat should also be restricted since fat facilitates the absorption of cholesterol. A reduction in the caloric intake in general seems to be important (see later). The rice diet and similar fat free diets have shown that it is possible to diminish the cholesterol content of the serum by 20 to 40 per cent.

The so called hypotropic substances such as inositol, choline and methionine seem to be without value. Serum cholesterol levels are said to be lowered by polysorbate 80 choline inositol complexes. This agent increases the stability of lipid emulsions.

Estrogens seem to clear the plasma from high molecular lipids (Pick et al.). They increase the phospholipids in coelers, lower the cholesterol phospholipids ratio and atherosclerotic plaques are perhaps reabsorbed. We recommend continuous administration of estrogens to all postmenopausal women with hypertension, diabetes or a family history of coronary artery disease. In man unfortunately this therapy leads to unpleasant side effects.

Estrogens have to be given in large amounts in order to be effective in changing the abnormal lipid pattern of the blood to a normal one. This problem is under study at the present time.

Soybean sterols, mainly sitosterol, admixed to the diet has been said to lower plasma cholesterol markedly. It may interfere with the absorption of cholesterol.

(Peterson) Eight grams of sitosterol are given before meals (Best et al.) However Wilkinson et al. working with ambulatory patients were unable to achieve sustained reductions in the level of the blood cholesterol. The substance needs further evaluation.

Cytellin, a mixture of beta sitosterols with dihydrobeta sitosterols is available. One gives 8 to 10 grams, 2 to 3 tablespoons per day orally in the form of a suspension.

Patients with hypercholesteremia may develop thromboembolic phenomena when they are under therapy with corticotropin or cortisone (Adlersberg et al.) In patients with hypercholesterolemia large doses of nicotinic acid cause the blood lipid pattern to change toward normal (Altschul et al.) Three to 6 grams of nicotinic acid are given daily. Side reactions such as flushing and pruritus diminish rapidly after a few days of treatment. Urticaria and vomiting disappear within a few days after discontinuation of the treatment and do not reappear when treatment is resumed.

Essential unsaturated fatty acids particularly linoleic acid are now recommended in capsule form in order to lower the cholesterol level of the blood. Nicotinic acid and pyridoxin are added.

In addition to diet, hormonal, hereditary and other factors play a role but a fat poor diet is the strongest weapon available at present against atherosclerosis.

The chylomicrons which appear in the blood following the absorption of fat disappear following the intravenous injection of heparin (Hahn) but the use of heparin injections (daily or twice weekly) as recommended did not yield convincing results in patients with evidence of coronary sclerosis. It has been claimed that this therapy improves angina on effort and similar complaints rapidly. Whether it prevents the progression or development of atherosclerosis is not established.

### MYOPATHIES

There is a small group of cases in which clinical and pathologic examination including histologic sections fail to reveal the diagnosis and the nature of the myocardial lesion. The heart is enlarged and evidence of heart failure is observed prior to death but the coronary arteries are normal and patent. No previous hypertension existed. Histologically the myocardium seems normal. The expression myopathy has been coined for these cases. Clinicians occasionally use the term myocardosis. Wuhrmann defines myocardosis as a change in the myocardium without cellular interstitial infiltrations; there is evidence of fatty degeneration and cloudy swelling. These cellular degenerations are encountered in Laennec's cirrhosis, in hepatitis, in the nephrotic syndrome, in alcoholism and sepsis and are explained by a dysproteinemia. If the cells die myocardial fibrosis may follow.

Undoubtedly many patients placed in this category belong to the group of nutritional disturbances (e.g. thiamine deficiency). While microscopic changes

are demonstrable in advanced stages of the lesion in all probability there are periods in which the rather crude histologic methods now available fail to reveal an alteration of the myocardial fibers

It is precisely in myocardial disease that the unreliability of anatomic and histologic methods of examination impresses one most distinctly. A normal microscopic appearance does not show whether the heart functioned normally and efficiently. It has been pointed out that it is often impossible to explain heart weakness and cardiac death anatomically. Often the pathologist cannot tell why a patient who responded excellently to digitalis for years suddenly ceased to react to treatment. When asked whether the heart muscle was sufficiently strong to compensate for a valvular lesion the pathologist can answer only by examining the liver, lungs or kidneys; the heart itself reveals nothing.

This experience was responsible for the chemical study of the heart muscle with the hope of finding significant changes which were not disclosed by histologic methods. Changes were anticipated since creatine, potassium and phosphorus play a definite role in muscular contraction. The amounts of phosphatides, of calcium, of creatine and of potassium in the hearts of patients with an abnormal or weak myocardium were found to be altered.

Abnormalities of this kind may lead to cardiac failure but the evaluation of these findings and the application to the clinic is still remote.

#### INVOLVEMENT OF THE MYOCARDIUM IN OTHER DISEASES

*Tumors.* The heart muscle is frequently invaded by tumors from neighboring organs and in rare cases is the site of primary growths; these are discussed briefly in connection with pericardial new growths.

*Sarcoidosis.* Death from cardiac failure is not unusual in sarcoidosis (Boeck's sarcoid, Schaumann's disease). While a detailed description of this disease is beyond the scope of the present book, attention may be directed to a few clinical features, all of which, although common, are rarely present in a single case.

The superficial lymph nodes are often enlarged and the skin may show a variety of lesions (lupus pernio of Besnier). The pulmonary infiltrations and enlargement of the mediastinal lymph nodes closely simulate the involvement of tuberculosis. Focal destruction of bone occurs in the distal parts of the extremities. Endocarditis is often combined with enlargement of the parotid gland and fever. The red blood cells are hypochromic; the sedimentation rate is increased and occasionally an eosinophilia or monocytosis dominates the blood picture. If superficial glands are involved, biopsy of the firm, grey, noncrusting nodules which may reach 1 cm. in diameter will disclose tubercle-like granulomas composed of epithelioid and giant cells of a foreign body type.

The etiology of this disease is unknown; nonspecific allergy is suspected to exist but has not been proved. Many arguments speak in favor of a tuberculous origin. While it affects the white and black races, the vast majority of American cases have been in Negroes. The course has an insidious onset and is characterized



by a slow advance that may be punctuated by remissions or recovery. Bundle branch block and atrioventricular block are common. Death occurs usually from heart failure although cardiac clinical manifestations stand in the background until the disease is far advanced.

*Sickle Cell Disease* Another disease associated with cardiac hypertrophy and chronic cardiac failure is sickle cell anemia. If as often happens the patient has recurrent attacks of painful joints and a systolic murmur at the apex as well as an enlarged right ventricle involving mainly the outflow tract the erroneous diagnosis of rheumatic heart disease is frequently made. Anginal retrosternal pain is not rare. Occasionally epistaxis is seen. The left atrium may be enlarged but rarely to a marked degree. The P-R interval may be prolonged. The R-S-T segment is often depressed and the T waves are abnormal. This chronic hereditary familial disease is confined almost exclusively to Negroes. Apart from the sickle cell trait a rather common intrinsic defect of the erythrocyte in Negroes an anemia is often present with the red cell count down to 1 000 000 cells. Highly characteristic are the punched out ulcers near the ankles which simulate the ulcerations of syphilis. Activity of the disease is often reflected in attacks of abdominal pain nausea vomiting and moderate jaundice which may closely mimic an acute abdominal emergency. Sometimes the bone changes which consist of peculiar radial striations are highly suggestive.

A variety of neurologic manifestations due to thrombosis of different vessels supplying the central nervous system dominates the clinical picture in other cases. The combination of anemia thrombosis and jaundice together with the cardiac findings previously mentioned may suggest a subacute bacterial endocarditis although confusion with a rheumatic carditis is more common. The cardiac changes are due partly to the occlusion by sickle cells of small vessels in the lesser circuit and partly to a similar process in the coronary arteries. The anemia also plays a role.

For differential diagnosis from rheumatic fever which may be difficult one should consider the normal sedimentation rate the normal left atrium and the absence of relief from salicylates in sickling disease. In this condition the pain is also located more over the bones than over the joints. On rare occasions rheumatic heart disease and sickling were seen simultaneously in the same patient.

*Von Gierke's Disease* Another disease characterized frequently by cardiac enlargement and symptoms of heart failure in a child is Von Gierke's disease or glycogen storage disease. In the more common hepatic type the liver is greatly enlarged the fasting blood sugar level is low sensitivity to insulin is increased and the elevation of blood sugar following the injection of epinephrine is smaller than normal. Ketonuria without glycosuria is often in evidence. In the cardiac type enlargement of the liver and kidneys may be slight and the fasting hypoglycemia and ketonuria are usually absent. Both varieties may be associated with mental retardation and epileptiform seizures. The outlook in the cardiac type is very unfavorable and treatment of the heart failure by the usual remedies is unsatisfactory.

*Idiopathic cardiac hypertrophy* that is hypertrophy of the heart without any visible cause comprises a variety of conditions. Formerly, patients with thymine deficiency or primary pulmonary hypertension were included and the condition is more rarely diagnosed with advance of our knowledge.

The abnormality is found more often in males. Increased deposits of glycogen were found in familial types (Evans). In many patients with this syndrome increased fibrosis is found at post mortem so that one of the myocardial diseases of unknown etiology mentioned above have to be assumed. In such cases the term idiopathic hypertrophy is not really correct.

There are numerous other diseases with cardiac repercussions but in general the alterations of the heart are interesting incidental findings rather than essential features of the process.

### SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS OF THE MYOCARDIAL DISEASES

Many symptoms and signs specific for myocardial lesions have been mentioned in previous chapters and some of the clinical features of cardiac involvement in tonsillitis, diphtheria, thymine deficiency and coronary sclerosis have been reviewed. In the present section the chief symptoms and signs common to all myocardial affections will be discussed.

*Dyspnea.* If heart failure supervenes dyspnea, particularly nocturnal dyspnea, occurs in all myocardial lesions for in all of them including coronary sclerosis the left ventricle is predominantly damaged. This group includes the great bulk of patients who at nights are made sleepless by Cheyne Stokes respiration. Such patients are often treated for asthma with epinephrine and asthma remedies so that a considerable period may elapse before the cardiac disease is recognized.

*Pulse.* The peripheral arterial pulse may be rather small if the myocardium is badly damaged. It is understandable that the diminution of contractile power of the left ventricle will reduce the stroke volume whenever the myocardium is profoundly injured. Naturally a small pulse since it is present only when myocardial failure is advanced is a very unfavorable prognostic sign.

*Palpation.* The results of palpation over the cardiac area are meager. The left ventricle is chiefly involved and its pulsations are often not felt normally. Many patients are advanced in age with the result that the heart is covered by emphysematous lungs. Finally a heart with a damaged myocardium reveals weaker pulsations than one with a healthy muscle. In some cases however the presence of a heaving apex beat indicates marked hypertrophy of the left ventricle. In other patients with pulmonary congestion the closure of the pulmonary valves is palpable. If gallop rhythm is present it can often be detected by palpating the chest between the lower end of the sternum and the apical area (see below).

*Percussion.* As pointed out earlier percussion often reveals a heart of normal size despite considerable myocardial damage. Later percussion shows (as x ray confirms) an aortic configuration. Finally with the development of back pressure in the lesser circuit mitralization appears. In this stage even dilatation of the left atrium may be found when the patient is examined in the right oblique

position with the administration of barium to visualize the esophagus. If the heart is strikingly large in myocardial disease (cor bonum) without relative mitral or tricuspid insufficiency being present the existence of hypertension should be suspected even if the blood pressure is normal at the time of examination.

The size and shape of the heart in late stages with dilatation to the right and left as well as mitralization closely resemble the picture presented by combined mitral aortic stenosis and tricuspid lesions or the one occasionally seen in pericardial effusions. The absence of pulsations along the cardiac border on fluoroscopy in cases with severe myocardial damage strongly suggests the latter.

*Auscultation.* Not rarely, auscultation yields normal findings. Normal pure and loud heart sounds may be heard despite a very advanced myocardial lesion. This is the chief reason why the examiner is led astray in those cases in which percussion has not provided satisfactory results. Sinus tachycardia is common but bradycardia may also be present.

Often soft or distant heart sounds are considered evidence of myocardial disease. As a matter of fact the heart sounds may become more distant as the disease progresses and louder with recovery from myocardial damage. Usually, however, there has been no opportunity to examine the patient earlier for comparison so that the discovery of distant heart sounds cannot be unequivocally attributed to myocardial damage. Even slight superimposition of the lung over the heart in the precordial area or obesity may make the heart sounds distant. Heart sounds are also distant in patients with a markedly convex thorax and a deep position of the heart.

Abnormal accentuation of the heart sounds, splitting of the first or second heart sound are common findings but they must be interpreted with great care as evidence of myocardial disease. Such signs may be elicited in young healthy individuals as well as in cases of cardiac neuroses and hyperthyroidism.

Often no systolic apical or aortic murmurs are audible. When present they should always be regarded with suspicion and must be distinguished from physiologic innocent murmurs. Every systolic murmur — those of recent appearance in particular — demands careful examination.

When for any reason the left ventricle undergoes a marked dilatation relative mitral insufficiency may appear. If the patient is seen when the lesions are fully developed it is often difficult to decide whether he has a relative mitral incompetence or a structural one of rheumatic origin.

Not uncommonly great dilatation of the right ventricle causes relative tricuspid insufficiency.

*Electrocardiogram.* The electrocardiogram has paramount importance in the diagnosis of myocardial lesions. Slurring, notching or widening of the QRS complexes, abnormalities of the RS-T segments and T waves in leads I and II and the chest leads are of great significance. In acute isolated myocarditis an elevated ST segment (as in acute myocardial infarction) has been observed (Gillis and Walters) probably due to patchy necrosis of superficial myocardial fibers.

It must be pointed out again that a normal electrocardiogram does not preclude the presence of a severe myocardial lesion moreover repeated tracings must be obtained for the alterations are often transient Therefore in diseases known to have a high incidence of myocardial involvement such as rheumatic fever the electrocardiogram should be recorded frequently but in chronic diseases the interval between tracings may be as long as six months provided the symptoms and signs remain unchanged

Practical experience shows unfortunately that insufficient knowledge of the normal variations of the electrocardiogram very often leads to an unjustified diagnosis of a myocardial lesion Therefore great caution must be observed before a heart muscle is pronounced abnormal on the basis of the electrocardiogram alone

### *Gallop Rhythm*

Gallop rhythm is an extremely important auscultatory sign in myocardial disease. It is however ambiguous and should be evaluated only in conjunction with other clinical signs

The first and sometimes difficult task is the distinction between splitting (duplication) of the heart sounds and gallop rhythm. This differentiation is usually based on the fact that in gallop rhythm the third sound is separated from the other sounds by an appreciable interval whereas the interval between the two parts of a split sound is extremely brief. Thus in cases without prolongation of atrioventricular conduction time the sound caused by the atrial contraction appears very shortly before the first heart sound. In some cases however recourse to graphic registration of the heart sounds is necessary in order to differentiate between these phenomena

If less important details and minor differential points are disregarded four types of gallop rhythm should be differentiated (1) Protodiastolic gallop rhythm (2) Presystolic gallop rhythm (3) Summation gallop rhythm (4) Systolic gallop rhythm

(1) **PROTODIASTOLIC GALLOP RHYTHM** This originates in a mechanism similar to that of the physiologic heart sound and creates a similar impression on the examiner (figure 43). The third heart sound is a very common finding in children and healthy young adults but it disappears in the adult. With development of myocardial damage the rush of blood into the atonic left ventricle may cause the third heart sound to appear early in diastole even in adults. This is the protodiastolic gallop rhythm. The new sound is explained by vibrations of the ventricular wall or the valves (Lewis and Dock) when the ventricle fills; the sound is prone to occur when this filling takes place under increased pressure caused by congestion. According to other observers protodiastolic gallop rhythm is caused by the impact of the left ventricle on surrounding structures during diastolic filling.

Differentiation from an abnormal third heart sound is impossible by auscultation or graphic registration. If an organic heart lesion is present the new sound is presumed to be due to gallop rhythm. Some think the differentiation can be accomplished by the following means (Bramwell) the third heart sound cannot be

palpated it is closer to the second sound than is the new sound in gallop and the third heart sound can be heard with a normal rate whereas gallop rhythm is observed usually with increased rates. There are cases however particularly in the younger age group in which differentiation is impossible. If the patient is over 30 years old a gallop rhythm can usually be safely assumed for a physiologic third heart sound is rare at this age.

(2) **PRESYSTOLIC GALLOP RHYTHM** In this type the new heart sound precedes the two normal heart sounds by an interval which is usually longer than that in a split first sound (figure 45).

It happens however that occasionally this interval is not sufficiently prolonged to permit differentiation without recourse to graphic methods. Heart sound registration shows that the new sound is definitely presystolic whereas in mere splitting of the first heart sound it is systolic.

The mechanism responsible for this type of gallop rhythm is disputed. While many still believe that an audible contraction of the atria is responsible there are strong arguments to support the assumption that its mechanism is similar to that causing protodiastolic gallop rhythm. Considered in this light the cause would be again found in ventricular filling as affected by atrial systole. Thus both types of gallop rhythm would have the same origin. If the P-R interval is prolonged the atrial contraction occurs earlier in diastole; gallop rhythm is then common for a summation takes place (see below).

(3) **SUMMATION GALLOP RHYTHM** This is the most common form. It is heard when the heart rate is accelerated (usually over 100 beats per minute) or with a prolonged P-R interval. Under these conditions vibrations due to early filling of the ventricle coincide with vibrations created by systole of the atrium and gallop rhythm appears. Thus many times when each factor alone does not suffice to cause gallop rhythm the combination produces a distinct new heart sound. It is clear from this definition that even the physiologic third heart sound often will become intensified or audible with an acceleration of rate owing to this summation factor.

This mechanism of summation also makes understandable the findings of those investigators who concluded that protodiastolic gallop rhythm is bound to atrial contraction. In the patients examined by them a summation gallop existed.

The importance of rate for the appearance of gallop rhythm is easily demonstrated. Often a gallop rhythm disappears when a fast rate is slowed by treatment or even temporarily slowed by carotid pressure.

(4) **SYSTOLIC GALLOP RHYTHM (SYSTOLIC CLICK)** This form was described a long time ago by Potvin. Two types are differentiated. The mechanism of one heard best over the apex is unknown. The other and more common type is heard at the base of the heart and derives from changes of the tonus of the aorta and pulmonary artery under the systolic impact of blood. It has been found in typhoid fever, tuberculosis and in nervous individuals. It does not seem to be a significant sign of cardiac disease but is often confused with diastolic gallop.

rhythm. Large pericardial or pleuropericardial adhesions may cause a similar phenomenon.

*Frequency* In 1353 consecutive cardiac patients gallop rhythm was found in 62 (Bramwell). In 50 of these the heart rate varied between 90 and 120. In 60

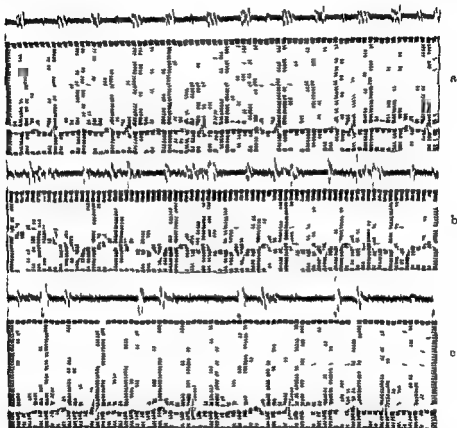


FIG. 45. Three instances of gallop rhythm. The top tracing (a) shows a gallop rhythm in a patient with coronary sclerosis and myocardial failure. The three heart sounds are clearly visible. There is a sinus tachycardia; a summation gallop developed. The middle tracing (b) also shows a summation gallop in a patient with hypertension and marked hypertrophy and dilatation of the left ventricle. In the lowermost tracing (c) the P-R interval in a patient with coronary sclerosis was prolonged to 0.24 second. The first heart sound was dull and shows low vibrations in the stethogram, while the second heart sound was accentuated. This is an instance of pre-systolic gallop.

cases of gallop rhythm (Wolferth and Margolies) the protodiastolic type was present 14 times, the presystolic type 2 times and a summation gallop 24 times.

*Clinical Aspects* The new sound in gallop rhythm is dull and of low pitch. It is heard best over the apex, the lower sternum and at a point between these two areas. Often it is present only when the patient stands or after light exertion due

to the increase of rate. In most patients it is heard better in the supine position. It has often been stated especially by the French school that gallop rhythm over the lower sternum develops in the right ventricle where is the type heard best over the apex originates in the left ventricle. While some authorities accept this differentiation it is our experience that very commonly gallop rhythm is detected only over the lower sternum in cases of coronary sclerosis or hypertension in the absence of hepatic or venous engorgement that is in cases of left ventricular damage.

Gallop rhythm is frequently palpable. The rapid succession of heart sounds creates three impacts resulting in the appearance of a peculiar and characteristic sensation which older workers called tremor cordis.

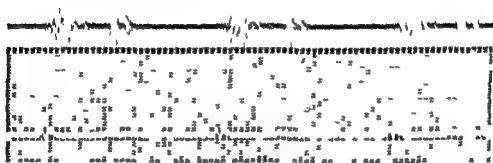


FIG. 46 Split second sound in a patient with left bundle branch block (Lead II)

With the appearance of atrial fibrillation and the cessation of effective atrial contractions gallop rhythm often disappears. But the assertion that gallop rhythm does not occur during atrial fibrillation is certainly incorrect. That type of gallop rhythm which is produced by the flow of blood into the ventricles during the early part of diastole may persist despite fibrillation. Only the presystolic and summation types vanish.

*Differential Diagnosis.* Mitral stenosis is sometimes difficult to exclude. The diastolic apical murmur of mitral stenosis is brief, low pitched and mid diastolic. Often it closely resembles a third heart sound. An enlarged left atrium may be present because of left ventricular failure.

In cases of continuous bigeminal rhythm caused by extrasystoles occasion ally the first sound of the extrasystole alone is heard while the second sound is absent. This happens particularly when the extrasystoles are very premature and filling of the ventricle is insufficient. Systole is then so weak that the semilunar valves are not even opened and no second sound appears. In these cases three loud sounds are heard which may cause confusion with gallop rhythm.

*Clinical Importance.* Very often gallop rhythm heralds the beginning of myocardial weakness long before other evidence appears. It is notably common in cases of myocardial damage and hypertension with an increased heart rate. It is however not rare in patients with a normal pressure and a normal or slow rate.

Under certain conditions it has no great importance. Thus in rheumatic fever the sinus tachycardia and the prolongation of the P R interval may lead to a summation gallop rhythm which does not necessarily indicate myocardial weakness. In most cases however gallop rhythm is the 'cry of the heart for help' and suggests the administration of digitalis. It is an ominous sign with an acute coronary thrombosis and its importance here is obvious from the fact that among 62 cases observed by Bramwell only 15 survived for more than 18 months.

Gallop rhythm is commonly encountered in patients with intraventricular block (bundle branch block arborization block) (White). This finding is apparently coincidental however since gallop rhythm and intraventricular block are both due to myocardial damage. Splitting of the second heart sound is common in bundle branch block (figure 46).

Gallop rhythm is rarely discovered by those physicians whose attention has not been specifically drawn to this phenomenon at the time of under or post graduate instruction. This finding is more important than the discovery of a murmur. Therefore it is important that those charged with the responsibility of instructing medical students make sure that every student becomes familiar with gallop rhythm.

### *Pulsus Alternans*

Pulsus alternans is another valuable sign of myocardial weakness and myocardial disease. By this term one understands the regular alternation of large and small pulses with rhythmic cardiac actions. Accordingly this phenomenon is absent in atrial fibrillation. Very often it is absent during regular sinus rhythm but immediately follows extrasystoles for a long or short series of beats (figure 50).

*Incidence.* Among the radial pulse tracings of 300 cardiac and cardiovascular patients pulsus alternans was found in 71 (White). The phenomenon appeared temporarily only after extrasystoles in 50.

*Diagnosis.* In outspoken cases it is detected at once by ordinary palpation of the radial artery. Every second pulse is smaller. In a few cases we have been able to count only half as many pulses in a peripheral artery as heart beats heard by auscultation. Thus a patient with 96 rhythmic beats per minute may have a pulse rate of only 48. When pulsus alternans is not immediately obvious by simple palpation it can often be elicited by slight compression of the brachial artery with one hand and simultaneous palpation of the radial pulse in the same arm with the other.

Figure 47 shows a pulsus alternans in a pulse tracing (sphygmogram). The simplest method however for discovering a slight pulsus alternans is sphygmomanometry since the stronger beats also provide higher pressure. Thus one may find that between the pressure of 150 and 160 mm Hg or between 140 and 160 only alternate beats are transmitted below the cuff (discovered by palpation or auscultation). The height of the diastolic blood pressure also alternates.

The phenomenon is often overlooked since in determining the blood pressure the examiner usually does not bother to ascertain whether every beat or every



other beat reaches the periphery just below the upper limit of the systolic blood pressure. If however one searches regularly for this phenomenon while taking blood pressure the incidence of pulsus alternans is surprisingly high particularly in a decompensated nondigitalized patient with hypertension. Although not uncommon with a normal blood pressure it is then a little more unfavorable from a prognostic standpoint. An alternating pulse was found in 33 per cent of decompensated patients.

Occasionally the loudness of the second aortic sound or of a systolic murmur likewise varies in intensity with the alternating beats. In rare instances alternating cardiac action can be observed fluoroscopically in the form of alternating strong and weak contractions. These alternations were recorded by roentgen kymograph (Scherf and Zdravsky).



FIG. 4—Pulsus alternans

Alternation of waves of the electrocardiogram is usually independent from an alternation of the pulse and is due to abnormal (alternating) spread of the excitation wave over the heart (electric alternans).

To differentiate an alternating pulse from a bigeminal pulse it is important to note that in extrasystoles the smaller pulse wave is usually premature whereas in pulsus alternans it is slightly delayed.

The pulsus alternans has been found to disappear or to be greatly diminished when the patient develops congestive heart failure (Paton et al.). This may be connected with the increase of the ventricular diastolic pressure in failure.

*Mechanism.* Since the original description by Traube and Gaskell many attempts have been made to explain this interesting phenomenon which is easily produced in the experimental animal by poisoning the heart with a great variety of substances.

A difference in the excitability of myocardial fibers is generally assumed to be causal. The conception of De Boer is at present widely accepted. If  $V$  represents the whole myocardium and  $V_1$  and  $V_2$  a smaller and larger part of somewhat damaged myocardial fibers, one may assume that in pulsus alternans the heart contracts according to the formula  $V - V_1$ ,  $V - V_2$ ,  $V - V_1$ , and so forth. In other words, with one systole a small part of the myocardium does not participate, with the next beat a larger part does not contract. Certain observations lead to the assumption that the whole ventricular muscle never contracts.

The opinion that pulsus alternans is primarily due to a change of cardiac filling (Wenckebach) has not been completely discarded, however an alternans

can be observed in an empty heart or in a muscle strip indicating that the essential factor is probably in the muscle

**Significance** In a large majority of cases the phenomenon is of serious importance because of its indication of myocardial damage. Often it disappears with digitalization. Patients presenting it rarely survive for more than a few years after its discovery (Windle). In one patient a distinct pulsus alternans was observed by one of us for seven years that is for two years after the paper by the author (Swildens) was concluded.

Pulsus alternans is found in otherwise healthy individuals during an attack of paroxysmal tachycardia with very high ventricular rate. Under these circumstances the phenomenon is without significance and vanishes with the disappearance of the tachycardia.

## Bibliography

- Aalsmeer W C Cardiovascular symptoms of beriberi. *Documenta Neerland et Indonesia morbis tropici* 3 2 1951
- and Wenckebach K F Herz und Kreislauf bei der Beriberi Krankheit. *Wien Arch f inn Med* 16 193 1928
- Adlersberg D Parets A D and Boas E P Genetics of atherosclerosis studies of families with xanthomas and unselected patients with coronary artery disease under the age of fifty years. *J A M A* 141 946 1949
- Stricker J and Himes H Hazard of corticotropin and cortisone therapy in patients with hypercholesterolemia. *J A M A* 159 1731 1955
- Ahrens F H Jr Tsaltas T T Hirsch J and Insull W Jr Effect of dietary fats on the serum lipids of human beings. *J Clin Invest* 14 918 1955
- von Albertini A Pathologie und Therapie der entrundlichen nicht spezifischen Arterienkrankungen. *Helv med acta* 11 233 1944
- and Grumbach A Die experimentelle Streptokokkeninfektion des Kaninchens in ihren Beziehungen zur Herdinfection. *Ergebn d allg path u path Anat* 33 314 1931
- Allan C A Diseases of the coronary arteries. *Brit M J* 2 232 1928
- Altschul R Inhibition of experimental cholesterol arteriosclerosis by ultraviolet irradiation. *New Engl J Med* 249 96 1953
- Hoff r A and Stephen J D Influence of nicotinic acid on serum cholesterol in man. *Arch Biochem* 54 559 1955
- Alwens and Moog Das Verhalten des Herzens bei der akuten Nephritis. *Deutsches Arch f klin Med* 133 364 1950
- Aschoff L Observations concerning the relationship between cholesterol metabolism and vascular disease. *Brit M J* 2 1131 1932
- Über Arteriosklerose. *Ztschr f d ges Neur Psych* 167 214 1939
- Barr D P Russ E M and Eder H A Protein lipid relationship in human plasma. *Am J Med* 11 480 1951
- Becker B J I Chatzidakis C B and van Lingen H Cardiovascular collagenosis with partial endocardial thrombosis. *Circulation* 345 1953
- Bedford E and Konstam C L S Heart failure of unknown etiology in Africans. *Brit Heart J* 3 236 1948
- Beecher C H and Amidon E L Electrocardiographic findings in forty four cases of trichinosis. *Am Heart J* 16 219 1938
- Benchimol A B and Schlesinger I Beriberi heart disease. *Am Heart J* 46 245 1953

- Best M M Duncan C H Van Loon E J and Wathen J D The effects of sitosterol on serum lipids *Am J Med* 19 61 1955
- Bickel G Hypovitaminose B<sub>1</sub> et cardiopathies *Arch d mal du coeur* 32 657 1939
- Black Schaffer B Pathology of anaphylaxis due to sulfonamide drugs *Arch Path* 39 301 1945
- van Bogaert A Beri beri alcoolique *Arch d mal du coeur* 31 1195 1938
- Boikan W S Myocarditis Perniciosa Virchow's *Arch f path Anat* 282 46 1931
- von Bonsdorff B Neurogenic heart lesions Heart disease of unusual or unknown origin *Acta med Scandinav* 100 352 1939
- Bramwell C Gallop rhythm *Quart J Med* 4 149 1935
- Brody H and Smith L W The visceral pathology in scarlet fever and related streptococcus infections *Am J Path* 17 373 1936
- Bronte Stewart B et al Effects of feeding different fats on serum cholesterol level *Lancet* 1 521 1956
- serum cholesterol diet and coronary disease *Lancet* 2 1103 1955
- Brown C E and McNamara D H Acute interstitial myocarditis following administration of arsphenamines *Arch Derm & Syph* 32 312 1940
- Calhoun J A Cullen C E Clarge C and Harrison T R Studies in congestive heart failure VI The effect of overwork and other factors on the potassium content of cardiac muscle *J Clin Investigation* 9 393 1931
- Cameron J D S and Hill I G W Heart block in toxic goiter report of two cases *Edinburg M J* 39 37 1932
- Cannon W H Aub J C and Binger C A L A note on the effect of nicotine injection on adrenal secretion *Am J Physiol* 3 379 1911
- Clark F and Kaplan B I Endocardial arterial and other mesenchymal alterations associated with serum disease in man *Arch Path* 24 458 1937
- Clawson B J Incidence of types of heart disease among 30 26, autopsies with special reference of age and sex *Am Heart J* 22 607 1941
- Cowan D W The creatine content of the myocardium of normal and abnormal human hearts *Am Heart J* 9 378 1934
- Davies J A P Endocardial fibrosis in Africans *East African M J* 10 10 1948
- Davis A C and Smith H L Complete heart block in hyperthyroidism following acute infections a report of six cases with necropsy findings in one case *Am Heart J* 9 81 1933
- Degen J A Jr Visceral pathology in measles *Am J M Sc* 191 104 1937
- de Wind L T and Jones R J Cardiovascular observations in dystrophic myotonia *JAMA* 144 290 1950
- di Sant Agnese P A Anderson D H and Mason H H Glycogen storage disease of the heart *Pediatrics* 6 607 1950
- Dock W Marked cardiac hypertrophy and mural thrombosis in the ventricles in barbiturate heart *Ir A M Physicians* 55 61 1940
- Presbycardia or aging of the myocardium *New York State M J* 45 983 1941
- Duchosal P Nouvelles recherches graphiques sur le bruit de galop *Arch d mal du coeur* 28 345 1935
- Duff G L and McMillan G C The effect of alloxan diabetes on experimental cholesterol atherosclerosis in the rabbit *J Exp Med* 39 611 1949
- and — Pathology of atherosclerosis *Am J Med* 11 92 1951
- Duguid J B Diet and coronary disease *Lancet* 1 891 19 4
- Pathogenesis of atherosclerosis *Lancet* 2 925 1949
- Dunlop D M Are diabetic degenerative complications preventable? *Brit M J* 2 383 1954
- Edholm O G Howarth S and McMichael J Heart failure and bone blood flow in osteitis deformans *Clin Science* 5 249 1945

- Ellis L B and Faulkner J M The heart in anemia *New Engl J Med* 270 943 1939
- Elster S K Horn H and Tuckman L R Cardiac hypertrophy and insufficiency of unknown etiology *Am J Med* 18 900 1955
- English J P Williams F A and Berkson J Tobacco and coronary disease *J A M A* 115 1327 1940
- Enos W F Holmes R H and Beyer J Coronary disease among United States soldiers killed in action in Korea *J A M A* 162 1090 1953
- Evans W Familial cardiomegaly *Brit Heart J* 11 68 1949
- Fawcett R M Myocardium after sulfonamide therapy *Arch Path* 45 25 1948
- Feller A F and Hurevitz H M Acute nephritis with cardiac failure *Am Heart J* 16 568 1938
- Fiedler A Über acute interstitielle Myocarditis *Festschr d Stadtkrankenhauses Dresden Friedrichstadt* 1899
- Fisch C The heart in dystrophia myotonica *Am Heart J* 41 525 1951
- Follis R H Jr Myocardial necroses in rats on a potassium low diet prevented by thiamine insufficiency *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 41 235 1942
- Miller M H Wintrobe M M and Stein H J Development of myocardial necrosis and absence of nerve degeneration in thiamine deficiency in pigs *Am J Path* 19 341 1943
- Keiles E O and McCollum E V The production of cardiac and renal lesions in rats by diet extremely deficient in potassium *Am J Path* 18 29 1942
- French A J and Dock W Fatal coronary arteriosclerosis in young soldiers *J A M A* 124 1233 1944
- Frischknecht W and Zellweger H Liel trokardiogramm bei Polomyelitis *Helvet Paediat Acta* 5 448 1950
- Furman R H Howard R P and Conrad L R The influence of androgen and estrogen on the association of lipids with serum globulins *J Clin Invest* 33 935 1954
- Gallavardin I and Gravier L Myocardite interstitielle subaigue d origine tuberculeuse *Arch d mal du coeur* 21 479 1938
- Gaskell W H On the rhythm of the heart of the frog and on the nature of the action of the vagus nerve *Phil Tr London* 173 993 1887
- Gertler M M Garn S M and Sprague H B Cholesterol cholesterol esters and phospholipids in health and in coronary disease *Circulation* 380 1950
- and Oppenheimer B S The interrelationships of serum lipids in men and women past sixty five and their bearing on atherosclerosis *Circulation* 7 533 1953
- Gillis J G and Walters M B Acute isolated myocarditis simulating coronary occlusion *Am Heart J* 47 117 1954
- Gloyne S R and Shiskin C Mitral stenosis and pulmonary tuberculosis *Tubercle* 18 394 1937
- Gofman J W Jones H B Lindgren F T Lyon T P Elliott H A and Strisower B Blood lipids and human atherosclerosis *Circulation* 2 161 1950 5 110 1952
- Glazier F Tamplin A Strisower B and De Lalla O Lipoproteins coronary heart disease and atherosclerosis *Physiol Rev* 34 589 1954
- Goldbloom A Clinical studies in blood lipid metabolism *Am Practitioner* 3 199 1950
- and Boyd L J Clinical studies in blood lipids *Bull New York M Coll* 15 103 1952
- and Eiber H B Serum lipids lipoproteins and atherogenic index in normal subjects 80—100 years of age *Am Geriatric Soc* 3 367 1955
- Goldfinger D Schreiber W and Wasika P H Permanent heart block following german measles *Am J Med* 9 320 1947
- Core I and Saphir O Myocarditis associated with acute and subacute glomerulonephritis *Am Heart J* 36 390 1948

- Couley H A, McMillan T M and Bellet S. Idiopathic myocardial degeneration associated with pregnancy and especially the puerperium. *Am J M Sc* 194 18, 1937
- Gravier L. L'alternance du coeur. *Paris J H Bailliere & Fils* 1914
- Gray I R. Endocardial fibrosis. *Brit Heart J* 13 387 1951
- Guillain G and Molitorat P. Maladie de Friedreich avec alterations electrocardiographiques progressives et solitaires. *Soc méd hôp Paris* 50 1577 1934
- Hahn I F. Abolishment of alimentary lipemia following injections of heparin. *Science* 98 19 1943
- Hall R J and Sherman J L. Significance of potassium depletion in poliomyelitis. *Am J Med* 14 124 1953
- Hatcher J D. The physiological responses of the circulation to anaemia. *Mod Concepts Cardiovas Dis* 23 235-238 1954
- Hegglin R. Die Klinik der energetisch dynamischen Herzinsuffizienz. *Basel Karger* 1947
- and Kaiser C. Smoking and disease of the coronary arteries. *Schweiz med Wchnschr* 85 53 1955
- Hellerstein H K and Santiago Stevenson D. Atrophy of the heart. *Circulation* 1 93 1950
- Herrmann C, Dechard G and Oliver T. Creatine changes in the heart muscle under various clinical conditions. *Am Heart J* 12 689 1936
- Higginson J, Gillanders A D and Murray J F. The heart in chronic malnutrition. *Brit Heart J* 14 213 1952
- Hirsch B. L'atherome aortique des enfants. *Cardiologia* 5 122 1941
- Hoel J and Berg A H. Persistent diphtheritic heart disorders. *Acta med Scandinav* 145 393 1953
- Holt M. Gallop rhythm. *Am Heart J* 2 453 1927
- Hotz H W and Huber W. Elektrokardiographische Veränderung im Verlaufe akuter Tonsillenerkrankungen. *Cardiologia* 4 40 1940
- Hoyne A L and Welford N T. Diphtheritic myocarditis. *J Pediat* 5 642 1934
- Huesper W C. The etiology and the causative mechanism of arteriosclerosis and atheroma. *tois Medicine* 20 397 1941
- Arteriosclerosis. *Arch Path* 35 162 1944
- Iff W. Über angeborene Verkalkungen besonders der Arterien. *Virchow's Arch f path Anat* 261 377 1931
- Johnson J M and Jason R S. Sarcoidosis of the heart. *Am Heart J* 37 246 1944
- Johnston C. Racial differences in the incidence of coronary sclerosis. *Am Heart J* 12 160 1936
- Johnston F D. Extra sounds occurring in cardiac systole. *Am Heart J* 10 221 1939
- Jokl E and Greenstein J. Fatal coronary sclerosis in a boy of ten years. *Lancet* 2 650 1944
- Jores L. Arterien. in Hencke Lubarsch Handbuch d spez path anat u histol. *Berlin J Springer* 1924
- Joslin F P. Arteriosclerosis in diabetes. *Ann Int Med* 4 54 1930
- Josselson A J, Iruitt P D and Edwards J F. Amyloid localized in the heart. *Arch Pathol* 54 359 1952
- Josseland F and Callavardin L. De l'asthénie progressive des jeunes par myocarditis subaigue primitive. *Arch gen de med* 8 513 1901
- Joyner C R. Essential hyperlipemia. *Ann Int Med* 35 759 1953
- Katz L M and Stamler J. Experimental Atherosclerosis. *Springfield Thomas* 1953
- Keefer C S. The beriberi heart. *Arch Int Med* 45 1 1930
- Keye J D Jr. Death in potassium deficiency. *Circulation* 26 66 1952
- Keye A. Atherosclerosis: a problem of newer public health. *J Mt Sinai Hosp* 90 118 1953

- Keys A Anderson J T and (rande F Essential fatty acids degree of unsaturation effect of corn (maize) oil on the serum cholesterol level in man *Lancet* 1 66 1957
- Kinsell L W et al Effect upon serum cholesterol and phospholipids of diets containing large amounts of vegetable fats *J Clin Nutr* 1 224 1952
- Kissane R W and Fidler R S Congenital medial sclerosis of the coronary artery *Am Heart J* 7 133 1931
- Krayer O Die akute Kreislaufwirkung des Neosalvarsans über die Ursache der Kreislaufwirkung *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 153 60 1930
- Kulka W E Sarcoidosis of the heart *Circulation* 1 72 1950
- Kutschera Aschbergen H Dr Herzmuskel bei Herzschwäche *Verhandl deutsch Gesellsch f inn Med Hong* 40 41, 1928
- La Due J S The role of congestive heart failure in the production of the edema of acute glomerular nephritis *Ann Int Med* 20 405 1944
- Lahey W J Arst D H Silver M Kleeman C R and Kunkel P Physiologic observations on a case of beriberi heart disease with a note on the acute effects of thiamine *Am J Med* 14 248 1953
- Langendorf R and Pick A Elektrokardiogramm bei akuter Nephritis *Acta med Scandinav* 241 1 1938
- Laubry C and Fezzi C Les syndromes cardiaques Les rythmes de galop *Paris G Doin & Cie* 1926
- Leete H M The heart in diphtheria *Lancet* 1 136 1939
- Lenk R Röntgendiagnose der Koronarsklerose in vivo *Fortschr a u Geb d Röntgenstrahlen* 35 126 1927
- Legume J and Denolin H Circulatory dynamics in osteitis deformans *Circulation* 12 215 1955
- Levine S A and Hindle J A Coronary artery disease among physicians *New Engl J Med* 233 657 1945
- Lewis J K and Dock W The origin of heart sounds and their variations in myocardial disease *J A M A* 110 271 1938
- Liebig H Die Beeinflussung der experimentellen Atherosklerose durch Jodbehandlung *Ztschr f exp Med* 159 265 1931
- Lindberg K Zur Frage von den sogenannten isolierten chronischen Myocarditiden *Acta med Scandinav* 55 281 1938
- Lindsay S The heart in primary systemic amyloidosis *Am Heart J* 3 419 1946
- Liverud K Tuberculoma simulating cardiac aneurysm or localized pericardial effusion *Acta radiol* 32 73 1949
- Loeffler W The pathogenetic significance of the so called endocarditis parietalis fibroplastica *Bull schweiz Akad d med Wissensch* 2 287 1946
- Longcope W T and Freeman D G A study of sarcoidosis *Medicine* 31 1 1952
- Ludden T E and Edwards J E Carditis in poliomyelitis *Am J Path* 25 35 1949
- Lyon E *Viral Diseases and the Cardiovascular System* New York Grun & Stratton 1956
- Mallory G K and Keefe C S Tissue reactions in fatal cases of streptococcus hemolyticus infection *Arch Path* 5 334 1941
- Malmros H Relation of nutrition to health *Acta med Scandinav Suppl* 246 137 1950
- and Wigand C Treatment of hypercholesterolemia *Minnesota Med* 38 864 1955
- Manca C Miocardite da parotite epidemica *Arch italiano di Anatomia e fisiologia patolog* 1 70 1932
- Margolies M P Sickie cell anemia *Medicine* 30 35, 1951
- Marcuse I M Nonspecific myocarditis *Arch Path* 43 602 1947
- Martin W J The distribution in England and Wales of mortality from coronary disease *Brit M J* 1 1523 1956

- McAllen P M Myocardial changes occurring in potassium deficiency *Brit Heart J* 17 5 1955
- McGill H C and Holman R L The influence of alloxan diabetes on cholesterol atheromatosis in the rabbit *Proc Soc exp Biol & Med* 72 72 1949
- McKusick V A and Cochrane T H Constrictive endocarditis *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 90 90 1952
- Menten H L and Fetterman G H Coronary sclerosis in infancy report of three autopsied cases two in siblings *Am J Clin Path* 18 805 1948
- Mines C R On pulsus alternans *Proc Cambridge Philosoph Soc* 17 34 1913
- Mois B and Malinow M R Investigaciones sobre la aterosclerosis experimental y su patogenia en el hombre *Rev Arg de la cardiol* 12 315 1955
- Monckenberg J G Über die Atherosklerose der Kombattanten (nach Obduktionsbefunden) *Zentralbl f Herzkrankh* 7 1915
- Anatomische Veränderungen im Kreislaufsystem bei Kriegsteilnehmern *Zentralbl f Herzkrankh* 336 1915
- Morris J N, Heady J A, Raffle P A B, Roberts C G and Parks J W Coronary heart disease and physical activity of work *Lancet* 2 1111 1953
- Moscowitz F Hyperplastic arteriosclerosis versus atherosclerosis *J A M* 1 143 861 1950
- Mueller C Angina pectoris in hereditary xanthomatosis *Arch Int Med* 64 675 1939
- Myers V C and Mangun G H Some chemical observations on the human heart in health and disease *J Lab & Clin Med* 26 199 1950
- Neustadt D H Transient electrocardiographic changes simulating acute myocarditis in serum sickness *Ann Int Med* 39 126 1953
- O'Leary P A and Waisman M Dermatomyositis *Arch Derm & Syph* 41 1001 1940
- Oliver M F and Boyd G S The effect of estrogens on the plasma lipids in coronary artery disease *Am Heart J* 47 348 1954
- Parsons W H Jr, Achor R W P et al Changes in concentration of blood lipids following prolonged administration of large doses of nicotinic acid to persons with hypercholesterolemia *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 31 377 1956
- Paulley J, Jones R, Green W P D and Kane F P Myocardial toxoplasmosis *Lancet* 2 624 1954
- Pearce J M Susceptibility of the heart of the rabbit to infection in viral diseases *Arch Path* 34 319 1942
- Pearce R M Experimental myocarditis a study of the histological changes following intravenous injections of adrenaline *J Exp Med* 8 400 1906
- Pearl R Tobacco smoking and longevity *Science* 87 216 1938
- Peel A A Age and sex factors in coronary artery disease *Brit Heart J* 1 319 1953
- Perlman J G, Petersen A B and Riley J A Renal and cardiac lesions in K deficiency due to chronic diarrhoea *Am J Med* 8 115 1950
- Perrin A, Froment R and Lenegre J Insuffisance cardiaque des jeunes sujets par sclérose myocardique dense et diffuse d'origine tuberculeuse incertaine et inconnue *Cardiologia* 22 333 1953
- Peterson D W Effect of soybean sterols in the diet on plasma and liver cholesterol in chicks *Proc Soc Biol Med* 78 143 1951
- Pezzi C Recherches graphiques sur le bruit de galop *Compt rend Soc de biol* 16 70 1914
- Pic A and Morenas L La Tuberculeuse cardio vasculaire *L'avis Dou et Cie* 1930
- Pick R, Stamler J, Rodbard S and Katz L N Estrogen induced regression of coronary atherosclerosis in cholesterol fed chicks *Circulation* 6 858 1952
- Pollack O J Reduction of blood cholesterol in man *Circulation* 7 702 1953
- Potain Les Bruits de galop *Semanc med* 20 17 1900

- Potts R I and Williams A A Acute myocardial toxoplasmosis *Lancet* *1* 483 1956
- Proger S Obesity and heart disease *Med Clin North America* Sept 1351 1951
- Putschar W Über angeborene Glycolenspeicherkrankheit des Herzens Thesaurismosis glycogenica (Liercke) *Beitr z path Anat u z allg Path* *90* 222 1932
- Raab W Alimentäre Faktoren in der Entstehung von Arteriosklerose und Hypertonie *Med Klin* *38* 521 1932
- Arteriosklerose und innere Sekretion *Klin Wchschr* *18* 611 1939
- and Supplee C C Cardioxic adreno-sympathetic activity in vitamin B deficiencies *Exper Med & Surg* 152 1944
- Rabinowitch I M Prevention of premature arteriosclerosis in diabetes mellitus *Canad Med Ass J* *51* 300 1944
- Reid J A and Humphreys J O N Systolic clicks (so called systolic gallops) *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp J* 177 1950
- Riesman D and Davidson H S Beriberi following drastic voluntary dietary restriction *J A M A* *102* 2000 1934
- Rinshart J F and Greenberg L D Pathogenesis of experimental arteriosclerosis in pyridoxin deficiency *Arch Path* *51* 12 1951
- Roberts J F and Lisa J R The heart in pulmonary tuberculosis *Am Rev Tuberc* *47* 253 1943
- Rosenbaum M R and Moss B Myocarditis cronica chagásica y enfermedades asociadas Primera conferencia nacional de enfermedad de chagas Buenos Aires 1953
- Rubin I and Buchberg A S The heart in progressive muscular dystrophy *Am Heart J* *43* 181 1952
- Russ E M Eder H A and Barr D P Influence of gonadal hormones on protein lipid relationships in human plasma *Am J Med* *19* 4 1955
- Russell D S Myocarditis in Friedreich's ataxia *J Path & Bact* *59* 39 1946
- Ryan J M Schieff J F Hull H B and Oser B M The influence of advanced congestive heart failure on pulsus alternans *Circulation* *19* 60 1958
- Ryle J A and Fussell W T The natural history of coronary disease *Brit Heart J* *11* 310 1949
- Saphir O Isolated myocarditis *Am Heart J* *24* 167 1942
- Myocarditis *Arch Path* *3* 1000 1941 *33* 88 1942
- Visceral lesions in poliomyelitis *Am J Path* *1* 99 1945
- Ohringer L and Silverstone H Coronary arterio-sclerotic heart disease in the younger age group *Am J Med Sc* *31* 494 1956
- W Wile S A and Reingold I M Myocarditis in children *Am J Dis Child* *67* 294 1944
- Scherf D Myocarditis following acute tonsillitis *Bull New York M College Flower & Fifth Ave Hosps* *3* 252 1940
- The short P R interval and its occurrence in hypertension *Bull New York M College Flower & Fifth Ave Hosps* *4* 116 1941
- and Zdansky E Röntgenkymographische Beschreibung von echtem Herzalternans beim Menschen *Fortschr a d Geb d Röntgenstrahlen* *40* 60 1959
- Schmidt E C H Virus myocarditis *Am J Path* *21* 9 1948
- Schroeder H A A practical method for the reduction of plasma cholesterol in man *J Chron Dis* *4* 461 1956
- Schwartz W H Levine H D and Reisman A S The electrocardiogram in potassium depletion *Am J Med* *16* 395 1954
- Sherber D A and Levites M M Hypercholesterolemia *J A M A* *152* 689 1953
- Sikl H Eosinophile Myokarditis als idiosynkrasisch allergische Erkrankung *Frankfurt Ztschr f Path* *49* 983 1936
- Sinclair H M Deficiency of essential fatty acids *Lancet* *1* 381 1956



- Smith H L and Willius F A Adiposity of the heart *Arch Int Med* 52 911 1933
- Smith J J and Furth J Fibrosis of the endocardium and the myocardium with mural thrombosis *Arch Int Med* 71 602 1943
- Sornberger C F and Smedal M I The mechanism and incidence of cardiovascular changes in Iagets disease *Circulation* 6 711 1952
- Steiner A and Domanski B Serum cholesterol level in coronary arteriosclerosis *Arch Int Med* 71 397 1943
- Strom A and Jensen R A Mortality from circulatory diseases in Norway 1940-1945 *Lancet* 1 126 1951
- Swank R L Avian thiamin deficiency a correlation of the pathology and clinical behavior *J Exper Med* 71 683 1940
- Sweeney J A The cardiovascular system in pulmonary tuberculosis *Am Heart J* 20 345 1940
- Swildens J H J Eine oscillomanometrische Untersuchung beim pulsus alternans *Dissert Amsterdam* 1929
- Thannhauser S J The significance of cholesterol in the pathogenesis of vascular lesions *New Engl J Med* 246 695 1952
- Thomas A S et al Prevalence of coronary heart disease in elderly coal workers *Lancet* 1 414 1956
- Thompson W I and Levine S A Systolic gallop rhythm clinical study *New Engl J Med* 215 1021 1935
- Torson W E Diffuse isolated myocarditis associated with dietary deficiency *Arch Int Med* 73 375 1944
- Tung C L and Mu J W The immediate effects of the intravenous administration of neosarsphenamine on the electrocardiogram in cases of syphilitic aortitis *Am Heart J* 19 520 1940
- Volhard F Über den Pulsus alternans und pseudoalternans *Munchen med Wchnschr* 5 590 1905
- Warthin A S The myocardial lesions of diphtheria *J Infect Dis* 35 3<sup>o</sup> 1934
- Watson R F Rothbard S and Swift H F The relationship of postscarlatinal arthritis and carditis to rheumatic fever *J A M A* 175 1145 1945
- Weicker B and Retzlaff L Myokardkrankungen infolge Tonsilleninfektion *Deutsch Arch f klin Med* 184 316 1939
- Weiss S Occidental beriberi with cardiovascular manifestations its relation to thiamine deficiency *J A M A* 115 832 1940
- Weiss S and Winot C R Nutrition in relation to arteriosclerosis In Cowdry F V *Arteriosclerosis* New York: Macmillan 1933
- Weiss S and Wilkins R W Myocardial abscess with perforation of the heart *Am J M Sc* 194 199 1937
- Wenckebach F K Das Beriberi Herz Berlin J Springer 1934
- Wendkos M H and Holl J Jr Myocarditis caused by epidemic parotitis *Am Heart J* 24 414 1944
- White P D Alternation of the pulse a common clinical condition *Am J M Sc* 150 87 1915
- The clinical significance of gallop rhythm *Arch Int Med* 21 1 1928
- Whitehill M R Longcope W T and Williams R The occurrence and significance of myocardial failure in acute hemorrhagic nephritis *Bull Johns Hopkins Ho p* 64 83 1939
- Wilens S L Bearing of general nutritional state on atherosclerosis *Arch Int Med* 79 129 1947
- Wilkinson C F Jr et al Clinical experience with Sitosterols *Tr New York Acad Science* 18 119 1955

- Williams H O'Reilly R V and Williams A Fourteen cases of idiopathic myocarditis in infants and children Arch Dis Child 28 271 1953
- Willius F A and Brown G F Coronary sclerosis an analysis of eighty six necropsies Am J M Sc 169 165 1924
- Windle J D Observations on pulsus alternans Heart 95 1910
- Winsor T and Burch G E The electrocardiogram and cardiac state in active sickle cell anemia Am Heart J 29 684 1945
- Woldow A Chapman J E and Evans J M Fat tolerance in subjects with atherosclerosis Heparin effects upon lipemia lipoproteins and gamma globulin Am Heart J 47 569 1954
- Wolferth C C and Margolies A Systolic gallop rhythm studies on its characteristics and mechanism Am Heart J 19 179 1940
- Wolkoff K Über die Atherosklerose der Coronararterien des Herzens Beitr z path Anat u z allg Path 80 555 1929
- Woolford R M Postpartum myocardosis Ohio State M J 48 924 1959
- Wosika P H and Sosman M C The roentgen demonstration of calcified coronary arteries in living subjects J A M A 102 591 1934
- Wuest J H Jr Dry T J and Edwards J E The degree of coronary atherosclerosis in bilaterally oophorectomized women Circulation 7 801 1953
- Wuhrmann F Die akute Myokarditis Basel S Karger 1939
- Myocarditis Myocardose Myocardie Schweiz med Wchnschr 80 710 1960
- Die Myokardose Basel Schwabe 1956
- Yater H M Traum A H Brown W C Fitzgerald R P Geisler M A and Wilcox B B Coronary disease in man 18 to 35 years of age Am Heart J 36 334 481 and 693 1948
- Zdansky E and Boyd L J Roentgen Diagnosis of Diseases of the Heart and Great Vessels New York Grune & Stratton 1957

## Chapter 14

# Diseases of the Pericardium

**I**SOLATED DISEASE of the pericardium is uncommon but secondary involvement the result of extension of a process from some neighboring organ infection from the blood stream or participation in systemic diseases occurs in a host of disorders Frequently the local pericardial manifestations are submerged in the general symptoms of the primary disease but sometimes they dominate the clinical picture

### ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY

The parietal pericardium resembles an asymmetric cone whose apex extends to the aortic arch and whose base is the diaphragm The interior surface of the pericardium looks somewhat like a right angled triangle since the right side descends almost perpendicularly and the diaphragmatic attachment is more or less horizontal Pleura covers most of the sternocostal surface of the pericardium with the exception of a small uncovered area to the left of the lower sternum Through this triangle of safety pericardiocentesis can be performed without entering the pleura The internal mammary artery is situated 2.5 cm from the left sternal border It escapes injury if paracentesis is performed in the uncovered area at least 3—4 cm to the left of the left sternal border

The parietal pericardium possesses an inner serous and a middle fibrous layer as well as the pericardial connective tissue which unites it to adjacent organs The visceral pericardium is approximately 5—10 microns thick

Since the heart does not entirely fill the pericardial cavity potential spaces exist Normally the cavity contains about 25 ml of viscid fluid whose physicochemical properties approximate those of fluids in other serous lined cavities When a pericardial effusion forms the parietal membrane unfolds and about 150—250 ml the average capacity of the normal adult pericardial cavity can collect in the various pericardial recesses before much pressure is exerted At least this much volume must accumulate before an effusion can be detected by physical examination According to others the diagnosis is often missed if less than 500 ml of fluid are present (Camp and White)

Undue cardiac movements are prevented by the pericardium and its attachments to nearby structures and to the thoracic cage Alterations of these attachments may change the configuration of the heart thus descent of the diaphragm pulls on its pericardial attachment and the heart drops when the diaphragm is

elevated by pregnancy or obesity the heart becomes transverse. The significance of the suspensory function of the pericardium becomes more apparent when external pericardial adhesions angulate or rotate the heart and produce clinical manifestations.

The pericardium also seems to exert a protective influence. The relative rigidity of the fibrous layer is considered an important factor in preventing excessive dilatation of the heart during emergencies. The pericardium is not elastic. Moreover the pericardium may offer some protection against cardiac infection for at times inflammations may involve the outer aspect of the pericardium without penetrating the cavity. Pyopericardium is particularly common in patients with pneumonias of the lower lobe of the left lung; this has been accounted for by the relative thinness of the membrane over the left ventricle.

The pericardial serosa is admirably designed to minimize friction during cardiac contractions. If the pericardium is removed surgically the pleura changes and adapts itself to this function.

Although pericardial diseases are often listed among the painful disorders and special nerve endings can be demonstrated in the membrane, clinical experience teaches that most forms of pericarditis are painless. Experimental studies also indicate that the membrane is rather insensitive. Generally speaking the occurrence of pain in a pericardial disease indicates an involvement of some adjacent structure. Thus pain in the precordial area aggravated by inspiration and pressure is often due to associated anterior mediastinitis. Sharp as well as dull pain in the same area is often noted in an acute myocarditis which regularly accompanies acute pericarditis. Neck pain is felt when a pleuropericarditis extends to the area of the diaphragm innervated by the phrenic nerve. Dorsal pain is often present if the inflammation involves the tissues of the posterior mediastinum (Capps and Coleman). The pericardium is also relatively insensitive to nonpainful stimuli such as touch, rubbing, moderate heat, cold and so forth.

## FIBRINOUS PERICARDITIS

### *Introduction*

Pericarditis is the most common disorder of the pericardium; it was present in 3.7 per cent of 36,743 necropsies compiled by the authors. Possibly this is an underestimation of its incidence since routine microscopic search has not been conducted by many pathologists.

Pericardial inflammation can be classified in a number of ways, for example according to the etiology or pathology. However a discussion of each would entail considerable repetition. Thus streptococci may excite a fibrinous, serous, hemorrhagic or purulent pericarditis. Pyopericardium may be produced by streptococci, staphylococci, pneumococci, etc. For these reasons and in the interest of brevity it has seemed advisable to select certain general forms of pericarditis for discussion and to amplify these remarks briefly in connection with some important clinical entities.

Acute fibrinous pericarditis pericarditis sicca dry pericarditis may be regarded as the mildest form of pericardial inflammation. For cases in which serous fluid collects the term serofibrinous pericarditis is appropriate.

### *Etiology*

An enumeration of all possible causes is pointless since any agent capable of irritating the pericardium may be responsible. Moreover most of the provocative factors can evoke other forms of pericarditis if the stimulus is more intense.

In a vast majority of instances an infection is responsible. The coccal infections — pneumo meningo staphylo and gonococcal — are most common. Bacillary infection is exemplified by tuberculosis leprosy and more rarely by the typhoid colon group of organisms. Higher forms such as actinomyces and even animal parasites (amoeba trichinella and filaria) may also invade the pericardial cavity. Pericarditis occurs in trypanosome infection (Rosenbaum et al.)

Fibrinous pericarditis is relatively infrequent in subacute bacterial endocarditis. In fact the presence of a friction rub has been used as a differential sign between rheumatic carditis and subacute bacterial endocarditis. It should be emphasized however that both of the latter conditions often coexist.

In many of the exanthemata secondary infection causes pericarditis. In some other diseases bacillary dysentery and Asiatic cholera for example dryness of the serosa rather than infection seems responsible for the friction rub since there is no true pericarditis. For unknown reasons syphilis of the pericardium is exceedingly uncommon.

Several other varieties of fibrinous pericarditis will be discussed elsewhere in this book. Traumatic pericarditis is discussed in the chapter on cardiac trauma. Infarction pericarditis pericarditis over cardiac aneurysms the pericarditis in lupus erythematosus and pericarditis in periarteritis nodosa are discussed in the respective chapters. Some of these varieties as well as the pericarditis sometimes seen in Boeck's sarcoid often escape clinical detection.

Pericarditis may be excited by some chemical agents. In this group belong uremic pericarditis and perhaps pericarditis following coronary occlusion with myocardial infarction. The intrapericardial injection of many drugs causes inflammation and has even led to fatal constrictive pericarditis (Beck).

Pericarditis may be induced by physical agents. The introduction of small particles of talcum (Thompson and Raisbeck) bone silica and the like into the pericardial cavity causes fibrinous inflammation and the formation of adhesions. Likewise foreign bodies (bullets) in the pericardial cavity have occasionally been responsible. Neoplasms invading the pericardium may also excite pericarditis. Sometimes substances are intentionally placed in the cavity to excite inflammation in the hope that the newly formed blood vessels will provide an additional blood supply for the myocardium.

Fibrinous pericarditis may follow roentgen therapy to the chest for hyperthyroidism or Hodgkin's disease and the implantation of radium for carcinoma

of the esophagus. The acute mediastino cardiac reaction consists of precordial pain aggravated by movement of the chest, fever, no significant physical signs but electrocardiographic evidence of pericarditis.

Acute pericarditis has been observed in serum sickness (Goldman and Low).

Terminal pericarditis apparently caused by a terminal infection is demonstrable only at necropsy. It is neither a clinical nor pathologic entity. It is common, constituting about 10 per cent of all pericardial diseases. Coincident but unrelated cardiovascular disease is present in about 50 per cent of the patients, hypertensive cardiovascular disease providing the largest contingent. Diabetes mellitus, chronic nephritis and neoplasms may also be associated with terminal pericarditis. Many other patients have an intrathoracic infection.

### *Pathology*

In fibrinous pericarditis the membrane loses its luster, becomes rough and feels sandy. If the amount of fibrin increases, coagulated exudate forms small tufts whose appearance has given rise to many descriptive terms: bread and butter heart, cor villosum, cor hirsutum and the like. If the formation of fluid dominates, it may contain floccules of fibrin while grossly the membranes show less striking changes. Healing is followed by the absorption of exudate by the formation of milk spots or by adhesions between the epicardium and pericardium.

The pathology elsewhere depends upon the primary disease. In nearly half of the cases an intrathoracic infection (pneumonia, empyema, pulmonary abscess, tuberculosis) will be found. Most of the remainder will have some cardiovascular disease (rheumatic fever, coronary thrombosis with myocardial infarction, nephritis or nephrosclerosis with uremia). A small percentage has an extrathoracic infection or one of the wasting diseases mentioned as being present in terminal pericarditis.

### *Symptoms*

As implied above, the clinical picture varies in accordance with the associated disease. If pericarditis complicates some other infectious disease, there may be little to suggest the new complication. Sometimes the general symptoms become worse and the fever is somewhat higher, or delirium appears in a previously lucid individual. Usually, however, the onset is too insidious to be discerned. In some patients with pericarditis the onset may be abrupt, with chills, fever and local pain.

Pure fibrinous pericarditis is often a painless disorder and no distress is felt in uremic pericarditis or in the types associated with many chronic diseases. If, however, neighboring structures are affected — the usual event in the common infectious diseases — there may be pain. Thus, two thirds of the cases presenting clinically demonstrable rheumatic fibrinous pericarditis and many instances of pericarditis associated with pulmonary infection present retrosternal, precordial or left nipple pain. This pain may be very intense.

The local discomfort which is often described as oppression or tension may receive little attention if the patient is preoccupied with the more obvious general illness. While the indefinite precordial sensations contribute to the anxiety they seem too vague for report by the patient. In some patients the pain is sticking boring lancinating or constrictive but in others it is dull and heavy. If intense it may be accentuated by changes of position local pressure breathing and coughing.

Apart from these common variants the distress may be referred mainly to the abdomen and the syndrome may then simulate a ruptured viscus. Operations for acute appendicitis have been mistakenly undertaken in children suffering from acute fibrinous pericarditis. The dorsal pain is confused with a myositis the pain in the neck or diaphragmatic pain may be equally misleading.

If respiration aggravates the distress superficial respiration with inadequate ventilation may cause cyanosis and dyspnea. Cutaneous hyperesthesia may preclude percussion of the precordium.

### *Signs*

If the patient is placed in the proper position and can tolerate the pressure of the hand a fine or rough rub may be palpable. This friction fremitus may be biphasic and may follow the apical impulse.

The most important diagnostic sign a friction rub on auscultation is absent or eludes detection in over 75 per cent of the cases. All gradations are encountered from a mild whisk to rough scraping. The rub may be audible over the entire precordium. Often it is heard only in a limited region over the area of absolute cardiac dullness for example it may appear only when the patient assumes a definite position or in a single phase of respiration.

Since the friction sound is provoked by cardiac movements it may be limited to systole or diastole but ordinarily it is heard in both phases. When typical the rub is tripartite or appears in four phases (locomotive type). In these instances a rub is audible during diastolic inflow of blood and during systole of the atria as well as the ventricles.

The distinction from endocardial murmurs is usually easy for the experienced physician but difficult for the beginner. The friction sound tends to be circumscribed to lack a punctum maximum to be transient to change its location and time to lack a sharp association with systole or diastole to sound superficial to present an uniformly monotonous character without a crescendo or decrescendo phase to change during the respiratory cycle and in different positions and to be accentuated by local pressure or by extension of the head. Pericardial sounds are rare in the area of absolute cardiac dullness and often vanish during a certain phase of respiration.

The friction rub heard over the apical area in patients with marked enlargement of the heart was mentioned on p. 60. It is often associated with the large hearts of hypertensives and in children with an old rheumatic heart lesion when the heart approaches the inner surface of the left chest. The friction rub limited

to the pulmonary conus in patients with hyperthyroidism is discussed in the appropriate section. In all these conditions the friction rub is not due to pericarditis.

In some cases of acute pericarditis the skin over the precordium may be edematous. The temperature of the skin is often elevated (Eliás).

X ray offers no assistance in the diagnosis of fibrinous pericarditis.

### *Electrocardiogram*

Knowledge of the electrocardiographic changes is important if confusion with coronary thrombosis is to be avoided. The major change is in the RS T segment which is displaced upward or shows a high take off in all leads. The QRS complex remains normal. The RS T segment may show a curve with its convexity directed upward. These changes usually last about one week. At this time the ST segment is found again in the base line and the T waves are bifid, disappear or become inverted. Ultimately the electrocardiogram reverts to normal provided no other cardiac disease is present.

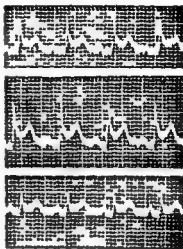


FIG. 48. Typical elevation of the RS T segment in acute pericarditis.

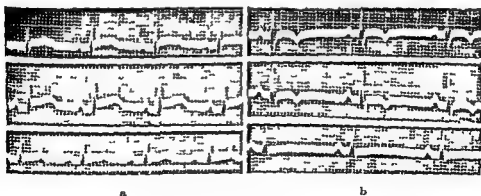


FIG. 49. Electrocardiogram of a patient with active rheumatic pericarditis. (a) Elevation of the RS T segments at the beginning of the illness. (b) Typical inversion of the T waves later.

The electrocardiogram in figure 48 was obtained from a 16 year old boy with active rheumatic fever and acute rheumatic pericarditis. In addition to a sinus tachycardia one sees the marked upward displacement of the RS T segments. This change is usually but not invariably most marked in lead II. It is caused by



the inflammation of the superficial layers of the myocardium which had already been described by Virchow. Experiments show that these changes appear even if a small area of epicardium with the underlying myocardium is damaged in certain places (Boyd and Scherf). The older view according to which these changes were the result of *extensive* alterations of the cardiac surface is incorrect.

Figure 49 shows two electrocardiograms from a 35 year old woman with acute rheumatic pericarditis. In figure 49 a the 'high take off' is visible in leads I and II. Figure 49 b shows the characteristic next stage with the deeply inverted T waves following a normal RS T segment.

### *Prognosis*

Fibrinous pericarditis *per se* is not a cause of death but the development of this complication in the course of another disease tends to make the outlook more grave.

### *Treatment*

Therapy depends upon the nature of the underlying malady.

## SPECIAL FORMS OF FIBRINOUS PERICARDITIS

### *Nonspecific Pericarditis*

This form also known as acute primary idiopathic benign or indeterminate pericarditis aroused considerable interest in recent years although it has been known for a long time.

Nonspecific pericarditis occurs at all ages but is most common in adults. It often follows an upper respiratory infection or pneumonia. Pain occurring suddenly behind the sternum is a very common manifestation and it may be intermittent. It may be aggravated by deep breathing, swallowing or torsion of the thorax. Sometimes the pain is severe enough to lead to shock. In some cases the distress lasts for days. The pain may be precordial and interscapular rather than substernal. When pain is felt in the abdomen an acute abdominal disease may be simulated. Sometimes turning in bed greatly increases the severity of the pain. There is some dyspnea and cough. Moderate fever may persist for weeks. The slightly increased sedimentation rate is associated with a mild leukocytosis (up to 10,000 leukocytes). Sometimes differentiation from an acute coronary occlusion is difficult. In other patients differentiation from rheumatic pericarditis is necessary.

A virus infection was postulated as the etiologic mechanism but this is not established. Dressler suggested the possibility that an active rheumatic process is responsible.

Poentgenologic examination shows a moderate enlargement of the cardiac shadow which may be the consequence of a pericardial effusion or myocardial damage.

For therapy streptomycin chlortetracycline and oxytetracycline have been recommended. The prognosis is excellent but the illness can be prolonged because recurrences (acute relapsing pericarditis) are common. In recent years beneficial results from therapy with cortisone have been reported. Transition of acute non-specific pericarditis into constrictive pericarditis has been reported (Brook).

### *Rheumatic Fibrinous Pericarditis*

Clinical rheumatic pericarditis may occur at any age but is unusual before the age of 5 and after 30. Most patients are between 8 and 20 years old. Pericardial diseases generally speaking are more common in males than in females but no noteworthy differences have been noted in respect to rheumatic pericarditis.

The symptoms have been described above but some points merit brief discussion. Dyspnea is common and difficult to evaluate since nearly 50 per cent of the patients have an associated valvular disease. Palpitation and indigestion may be the predominating symptoms. Delirium is unusual in rheumatic fever but occurs in 12 per cent of those with rheumatic fibrinous pericarditis. Bradycardia is not rare at the onset and is soon replaced by a tachycardia which may be out of proportion to the temperature. The same holds for the very rapid respiration. The white blood cell count and the sedimentation rate usually undergo no further increase as the result of pericardial participation in the general disease. Serial electrocardiography often shows in addition to the features mentioned above prolongation of conduction time or dropped beats; these findings are indicative of the myocardial involvement rather than being proof of a pericarditis.

The outlook in children suffering from acute rheumatic fibrinous pericarditis is grave. Not a few patients die from this complication while many who survive have some cardiac disability; the life expectancy of nearly 25 per cent of those surviving the acute episode is less than five years. The presence of an effusion or the presence or absence of a polyarthritis do not seem to affect the outcome. Therapy with cortisone and ACTH greatly improves the outlook.

An ice bag or cold application to the precordium is generally welcome since it reduces the pain and lessens the sense of palpitation. Analgesics such as acetphenetidin may be tried. Codeine is very useful since it abolishes the associated distressing cough. Usually the salicylates are effective; they may be required to render the general situation more tolerable and at times they add to the local comfort. The value of any particular agent is difficult to assess since the course of the disease is exceedingly variable. Large doses of salicylates particularly in the case of children seem to influence the course of the disease favorably.

### *Uremic Pericarditis*

This form of pericarditis originally described by Bright may occur in any disorder associated with azotemia. The average age of affected patients is 35 to 37 years; uremic pericarditis may be regarded as one of the commonest forms of pericarditis after the age of 30 years. Males are affected more often than females.

the ratio being 77 to 46. While any chronic renal disorder may be provocative chronic glomerular nephritis nephrosclerosis pyelonephritic contracted kidney and polycystic disease of the kidneys are usually responsible.

The precise mechanism responsible for uremic pericarditis is unknown. Culture of the pericardial fluid yields some organism in nearly 50 per cent of the cases but the organism varies from case to case the invasion is due to a terminal infection. The intrapericardial injection of various constituents of the urine double ureteral ligation and double nephrectomy do not provoke pericarditis. Some investigators believe that a failure of the liver to detoxify certain putrefactive products such as the phenols plays a part others stress the rather constant association of the pericarditis with necrotic lesions of the myocardium.

Uremic pericarditis is usually asymptomatic and the diagnosis will often be missed unless a careful search is made for the friction rub whenever this complication is expected. The discovery has prognostic significance — patients usually die within 3 weeks after its appearance although a few are reported to have survived for two or three months.

The friction rub may be expected in approximately 10 per cent of the patients. At first it is evanescent and faint then it becomes louder and more persistent but it may vanish with the appearance of an effusion.

Fall of blood pressure sometimes occurs after the pericarditis becomes manifest. The azotemia hypertension persistent acidosis the tendency to bleed into the skin and mucous membranes together with the abnormal findings in the urine make the origin of the pericarditis clear.

Treatment is unsatisfactory and purely symptomatic.

### *Tuberculous Pericarditis*

The tubercle bacillus is capable of exciting all varieties of pericarditis. Reference will be limited here largely to some points of general interest and a few features of the fibrinous form.

Tuberculous pericarditis is not uncommon. It may be expected once in every 100 necropsies in a general hospital and in approximately 4 per cent of all patients dying from pulmonary tuberculosis. Although the disease occurs at all ages it is uncommon before the third year of life. Approximately one third of the patients are less than 15 years old about one fourth are observed between the ages of 20 and 30 and over one third are observed after the age of 50. It has been estimated that 80 per cent of all cases of pericarditis after the age of 50 are tuberculous. While these figures seem somewhat high to the present writers and seem to neglect the pericarditis following myocardial infarction they serve to emphasize that tuberculous pericarditis is not uncommon in the older age groups. Males outnumber females in all reported series of cases (about 80 per cent of the cases are men). The disease is more common in Negroes and appears at an earlier age in this race. A history of tuberculosis is often missing.

Pericardial invasion is exceedingly common in the course of military tuberculosis and the incidence of pericardial involvement is greater than in other

serous membranes. The rapidly evolving inflammation affects the epicardium principally and isolated tubercles may be seen along the coronary sulci.

In many other cases the infection enters the pericardium by retrograde spread from a mediastinal tuberculous lymphadenitis. At times the exact pathway can be followed along a connecting tuberculous lymphangitis. Some believe that the subepicardial lymph nodes lying on the anterior surface of the aorta and those at the level of the atria and the peritracheal and peribronchial glands are originally affected so that they may be compared to the retro uterine catch basin in pelvic tuberculosis. The existence of primary pericardial tuberculosis is exceedingly dubious.

The exudative form is more common than the purely fibrinous one; this term embraces serous, serofibrinous, hemorrhagic and purulent tuberculous pericarditis. The incidence diminishes in the order named. Often there is only slight inflammation microscopically and the dominant disturbance is the huge hydropericardium. In other cases the fibrin lies in stratified sheets, sometimes with avirulent infections; the organized fibrin is converted into a smooth white coat resembling the frosting on a cake.

Another form is called nodular because of the large masses of granulomatous tissue; when the nodules are numerous the gross picture may resemble that of a new growth.

A rather common variety is termed caseous because a superficial layer of corrugated fibrin and of non-specific granulomatous tissue covers crusting areas. Between the zone of specific and non-specific inflammation there is often a hemorrhagic effusion.

The most common form is adhesive with partial or complete symphysis of the peri- and epicardial membranes. Moreover the outer aspect of the pericardium may become adherent to neighboring structures. Sometimes the tissue becomes sclerotic and dense. White fibrous tissue compresses the heart producing constriction. This type is also called constrictive pericarditis.

The clinical picture is so variegated that only general statements can be made. In children the onset may be abrupt and difficult to interpret. In adults there is often an insidious onset and the few cardiac symptoms are vague: nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, palpitation, headache and similar symptoms may represent the chief complaints. Nocturnal eructations and epigastric fullness are mentioned with some degree of regularity. Fever is an important symptom if the patient is aware of it. Cough is often present but ordinarily is not mentioned unless it happens to be productive. A relatively small number of patients have a sudden hemoptysis or blood streaked sputum owing to the associated pulmonary tuberculosis. In a small number of patients night sweats, loss of weight, dull poorly localized chest pain and precordial distress may suggest the existence of pulmonary tuberculosis.

Many patients fail to seek advice until the chest pain becomes severe. Such pain is aggravated by exertion or deep breathing and is sometimes associated with blood streaked sputum. Exertional dyspnea also often accounts for hospi-

talization. Ultimately the distress becomes constant and a sense of suffocation persists even at rest. The ankles may swell, the abdomen enlarges and the liver may become palpable so that cardiac failure seems a likely diagnosis. This impression is heightened by the pale, slightly swollen face. A mild tachycardia, extrasystoles or atrial fibrillation may be present. Often the heart sounds are weak, muffled and distant, producing a tic-tac kind of rhythm. The friction rub is usually not heard unless paracentesis has been performed recently.

That examination of the lungs frequently fails to disclose any abnormality seems rather surprising, since the patient often seeks relief from the sharp stabbing pain in the region of the manubrium, the supraclavicular region, the neck or shoulder. Physical examination discloses no explanation.

If there are no suggestive features of tuberculosis in other areas, the diagnosis of tuberculous pericarditis may present special difficulties. The syndrome makes heart disease probable and only later will tuberculous pericarditis come under consideration. This holds particularly for those cases in which dyspnea and weakness progress, fever remains irregular or intermittent and evidence of pleural involvement is obtained. Many of the symptoms just mentioned naturally belong to the effusion accompanying the pericarditis and are absent if the large effusion fails to develop.

Four clinical types of tuberculous pericarditis are described in the aged: (1) In the asthenic type the elderly individual rapidly loses weight and strength, the evening temperature rises and the ankles may swell. Syncope is a late symptom and often a precursor of death. (2) In the uremic variety, albuminuria, hypertension and cardiac enlargement suggest chronic nephritis; if a friction rub happens to be present, it is regarded as part of the uremic pericarditis. Necropsy reveals a dry, somewhat adherent tuberculous pericarditis with renal vascular atherosclerosis. (3) In the pleuropulmonary variety, dyspnea and cyanosis dominate; while clinical examination of the heart reveals nothing abnormal, the pulmonary pathology alone seems to explain the picture. (4) In the cardiac form, progressive dyspnea, basal rales, hepatomegaly and increasing edema suggest heart failure; irregularities of the heart may add to the confusion. The course is steadily downward and may be hastened by the development of pulmonary edema or by thrombophlebitis with pulmonary infarction. Examination of the lungs fails to disclose an explanation for the dyspnea or cyanosis, so that unless a friction rub happens to be present, a false diagnosis of myocardial lesion is often made.

The average duration of life in acute forms of tuberculous pericarditis with symptoms and signs of effusion formerly was about nine weeks. There is a subacute variety with predominant cardiac symptoms which evolves at a slower tempo — death may be postponed for two years. In constrictive pericarditis of tuberculous origin, several years may elapse between the onset of symptoms and death. There is no doubt, however, that tuberculous pericarditis may be benign and self-limited. One wonders how many patients with benign 'virus' pericarditis actually have this form.

*Therapy* Great progress has been made in recent years and the mortality has been reduced with the application of streptomycin and isoniazid. Thus the management of tuberculous pericarditis is not unlike that of tuberculosis elsewhere in the body.

The morbidity and mortality rate is definitely reduced since therapy with isoniazid (or an equivalent agent) and streptomycin became available. The ultimate results cannot be evaluated with finality at present but the early results are certainly much better. In addition to isoniazid (300 mg daily) and streptomycin (2 grams every third day) some physicians advocate para-aminosalicylic acid (12 grams daily).

Operative intervention is warranted in the constrictive type. Formerly it was universally agreed that surgery should not be undertaken or if started should be interrupted if evidence of active tuberculosis is discovered. With active infections death had been hastened or multiple fistulas formed after operation. The situation has changed with the new therapeutic agents (streptomycin, isoniazid) and some surgeons recommend pericardiectomy during an active tuberculous pericarditis (Mannix and Dennis). Since adhesions seem to develop much more rapidly under this therapy (Dubourg et al.) early surgery in the form of pericardiectomy has been recommended.

#### PERICARDITIS WITH EFFUSION

The diversity of etiologic factors capable of producing pericardial involvement was mentioned in the preceding section; the same agents may cause pericarditis with effusion. Pericardial effusions without pericarditis will be discussed later.

*Incidence* Pericardial effusion is not rare (2.7 per cent of necropsies). The sexes are equally susceptible until the age of 20 years, after which the incidence in females declines. A vast majority of pericardial effusions occur before the age of 15 years (95 per cent) and a large number (60 per cent) are said to develop before the age of 5 (Blehmann).

*Symptoms* The general symptoms of this condition may be greatly modified by the special causative malady, but the local symptoms are subject to less variation. The speed with which an effusion develops determines part of the symptomatic picture and is also contingent to some extent upon the etiologic agent. A rapidly developing effusion may produce signs of great urgency even if the amount of fluid does not exceed a few hundred cubic centimeters, whereas a slowly developing effusion may be practically asymptomatic despite a high collection of fluid. More than 2000 ml may be found in the pericardial cavity.

Fever is usually but not necessarily present. The temperature curve depends upon the type and intensity of inflammation and precludes the formulation of definite rules. The temperature curve differs in serous and purulent exudates, tuberculous lesions and the like, and there are too many exceptions to permit any generalizations.

Other symptoms are similar to those seen in fibrinous dry pericarditis. Thus pain may appear and may occasionally be of great severity. The acute engorgement of the liver may cause pain in the right hypochondrium. A large effusion may lead to pulmonary atelectasis and dyspnea.

Since the chest wall fails to bulge when the pericardial effusion develops, many of the local symptoms can be explained by the space occupying effect of the exudate.

Inspection may reveal that the patient instinctively adopts a semirecumbent position; often he is apprehensive, obviously distressed, pale or cyanotic. With large effusion the sufferer may sit on the edge of the bed with the left arm elevated on pillows as if to provide extra space; the cyanotic face, the protruding eyes, the cool forehead bathed in sweat, the flaring alae nasi, the extreme dyspnea and the scarcely palpable pulse paint an unforgettable situation.

Bizarre positions were reported in patients with large pericardial effusions. Thus the patient may assume the knee chest position or the posture of a praying Mohammedan.

*Signs.* Compression of the superior vena cava or the right atrium is common since the thin walled veins and atria must readily yield to high intrapericardial pressure. The neck veins may be engorged and may fail to collapse in the upright position or in inspiration. Edema of the face, neck and upper extremities will be observed in patients with compression of the superior vena cava. Inability of the cerebral veins to empty their contents may cause cerebral signs (faintness, syncope).

The abdomen may protrude or the bulge may be limited to the upper abdomen when hepatic enlargement is responsible. The liver becomes large and hard. This event is facilitated by the fact that the wide valveless hepatic veins commonly are subject to direct compression by pericardial effusions owing to the supradiaphragmatic location of their orifices in the inferior vena cava (Elias and Feller). Moreover the liver may give the impression of being greatly enlarged since the pericardial effusion may cause the superior surface of the liver to rotate anteriorly. The patients with large effusions and venous compression appear markedly pale in contrast to the somewhat cyanotic hue noted in superior vena caval compression; the pericardial effusion diminishes the return of blood to the heart, lowers the stroke volume, causes the pulse to become small and frequently lowers the blood pressure.

Palpation often reveals a small, compressible, soft pulse. The heart rate is usually increased. If irregularities are present they are due to the presence of associated myocardial damage. The superficial layers of myocardium are always inflamed. The apical impulse is often weak or impalpable. Cardiac pulsations may be felt, however, even in the presence of a large effusion if it develops for the most part posteriorly. A friction rub may be palpable despite the collection of considerable pericardial exudate. The upper border of the first rib may become palpable; this is called the first rib sign of Fawcett. The findings over the lungs vary

with large effusions which compress or displace the lungs vocal fremitus may disappear from the left paravertebral area.

Percussion yields more important information. Early the area of relative dullness becomes flat and merges with the area of absolute dullness and the transition from the area of dullness to normal pulmonary resonance may be very distinct. Percussion reveals more than the usual dullness found over an enlarged heart. There is absolute flatness which is very characteristic and which often permits the diagnosis even of small amounts of fluid when other methods fail to disclose its presence. In 1761 Auenbrugger described the percussion sound in pericardial effusions as being completely dead, as if percussion were applied to a fleshy limb. We cannot stress strongly enough the importance of this sign.

At one time great emphasis was placed upon the change in the cardiohepatic angle from acute to obtuse. This sign has been proved valueless for x-ray examination shows that an acute cardiohepatic angle may be present with all types of effusion.

The shape of cardiac dullness varies when pericardial effusion is present. If the effusion forms around a heart whose configuration is abnormal owing to some old valvular lesion the pericardial silhouette may retain its configuration. Thus a mitralized heart will remain mitralized, an aortic heart retains its aortic form (Zdarsky). Moderate pericardial effusions often expand cardiac dullness to the right so that the area seems triangular. The symmetrical expansion first into the right and left lung fields with the small vascular band on top (figure 51) causes a shadow that has been compared to a Hottentot's hat or to a water bottle; the right and left cardiac borders just beneath the vascular band may proceed almost horizontally for a few inches.

Dullness in the fifth right intercostal space parasternally, so called Roth's sign, is common. There is also widening to the left, but sometimes this is difficult to determine by percussion when a left pleural effusion coexists. In a few patients the diagnosis is suggested by the demonstration of the apical impulse within the area of cardiac dullness; ordinarily the apical impulse is the most lateral and caudad point of dullness.

Percussion of the posterior aspect of the chest may provide additional information. Frequently there is dullness in the lower left posterior chest; this has been named the posterior patch of pericardial dullness. Frequently this sign is demonstrable in children and may be associated with a small area of tubular breathing and egophony at the angle of the left scapula.

In typical cases the heart sounds are faint and muffled; however a friction sound may be audible despite the presence of a large effusion when the fluid collects posteriorly and presses the heart near the surface of the chest. This also explains why powerful cardiac pulsations may be felt, why the sounds and murmurs may be loud and why the classical silent heart is absent. Under these conditions confusion of a pericardial and myocardial diastole is likely. In some instances the pulse vanishes with inspiration (pulsus paradoxus) (see later).



A vast number of additional signs are present in a few cases they owe their origin to pressure upon various neighboring structures. Since they are encountered in relatively few patients no detailed description is necessary but a few may be mentioned since they may dominate the clinical picture. Dysphagia may be the outstanding symptom when the effusion compresses the esophagus or tormenting cough or hiccough may harass the patient. Involvement of the recurrent laryngeal nerve may produce voice changes and pressure upon the sympathetics may inaugurate a number of eye signs.

*Diagnosis* The above account of the physical signs is not intended to suggest that the diagnosis of a pericardial effusion is always easy. In about 25 per cent of the cases the friction rub is audible from the start so that the evolution from a fibrinous pericarditis can be followed. Often the presence of some symptom complex like a tuberculous polyserositis or tuberculous peritonitis will cause the examiner to pay special attention to the heart. Under these circumstances little difficulty is encountered. On the other hand the effusion may develop insidiously in the course of months or years and subjective complaints are absent or minimal for a long time. In these cases the diagnosis may be missed.

Not rarely the patient seeks relief from upper abdominal pressure produced by the enlarged liver. Pressure on the superior vena cava causes discomfort in the neck and slight dyspnea. A suggestion of the correct diagnosis may be furnished when the patient unconsciously adapts the sitting position with slight inclination to the left or forward and the left arm elevated on pillows. When the heart is examined the physician may be amazed to discover an enormous increase of cardiac diameters. Often the disproportion between the enormous size of the heart and the relatively slight discomfort of the patient leads to the correct diagnosis.

*Röntgen Examination and Electrocardiogram* An x-ray film will show the enlargement of the cardiac shadow mentioned before. With a simple chest plate an enlargement due to a valvular lesion or myocardial lesion cannot be ruled out. Thus the form of the heart shadow in figure 50 a which was obtained from a 53 year old man with tuberculous pericarditis is like the one commonly found in a combined rheumatic mitral and aortic valvular lesion or in a patient with hypertension or coronary sclerosis with left ventricular failure and pulmonary congestion. Figure 50 b was obtained two weeks later and shows the disappearance of the effusion. Pulmonary congestion has also vanished.

The more characteristic water bottle appearance of a very large effusion is visible in figure 51 obtained after a paracentesis with the removal of about 400 ml. of exudate and the injection of some air into the pericardial cavity. This causes a horizontal fluid level and makes the upper left portion of the pericardium visible.

On fluoro copy the complete absence of pulsations at the cardiac borders is often decisive for the diagnosis. To be sure in rare instances pulsation of the cardiac borders is not perceptible in extremely severe myocardial damage. However in the latter instance the patient displays very obvious evidence of advanced



FIG 50 Exudative pericarditis before (a) and following (b) absorption of exudate

decompensation. With effusion the still cardiac borders are surrounded by remarkably light lung fields since the stasis occurs back of the heart so that the lungs are free from congestion. This does not hold when there is additional failure of the left ventricle for then pulmonary congestion may appear.

The diagnostic situation may be complicated by the fact that effusions are sometimes encapsulated. If the residual encapsulated exudate is associated with

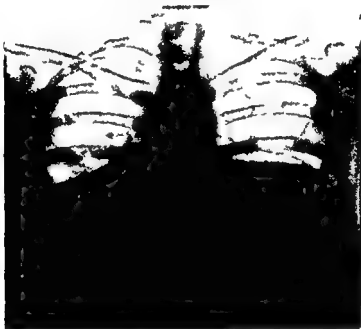


FIG. 51. Pneumohydropericardium.

low grade persistent inflammation and low pressure a chronic inflammatory pericardial diverticulum may form. This encapsulation is prone to occur along the right border of the heart and in contrast to valvular lesions tends to distort the right edge of the cardiac silhouette. One may also observe peculiar globular shadows the size of a plum or larger in this area when they are multiple peculiar hexagonal irregular shadows may be visible.

Fluoroscopy is more important than films because these loculated effusions often change their shape during the different phases of respiration; moreover this method permits the observations of local pulsation in the bulging area. The clinical silence of many of these encapsulated effusions is the reason for their belated discovery.

*Other Tests.* Angiocardiography may be very useful for establishing the diagnosis. The cardiac shadow filled with the opaque agent is seen surrounded by the less opaque shadow caused by the effusion.

The electrocardiogram often but not invariably shows low voltage. The I and II waves may disappear completely.

Great variability prevails in the laboratory findings particularly in respect to the sedimentation rate the white blood cell count and similar findings. Whether or not they are altered and if so to what extent depends upon numerous factors indicated in the discussion of the etiology of pericardial effusions.

**Paracentesis** The diagnosis of a pericardial effusion can be established by a test puncture. This procedure is not recommended in the presence of an encapsulated effusion because of the increased risk of damaging the myocardium in such cases.

Differences of opinion prevail regarding the most suitable place for paracentesis. As with puncture of the pleural cavity it is unwise to adhere to inflexible rules. The special circumstances of the individual case vitally influence the decision. Parasternal puncture should be avoided because of the possibility of injury to the internal mammary artery. Generally speaking any paracentesis to the right of the sternum is dangerous since the thin-walled atrium may be punctured. Paracentesis in the fifth or sixth interspace 5 to 7 cm. lateral to the left border of the sternum is recommended. With large effusions a site of puncture outside of or below these points may be selected. Likewise paracentesis from behind (especially worthy of recommendation for posterior effusion and for simultaneous pleural effusion) and from below (between the xiphoid process and the left costal margin) is often advocated. The latter is frequently called the Marfan method.

It is advisable to employ local anesthesia (novocaine). It is also advisable to insert the needle detached from the syringe since in this way the resistance of the skin and musculature are appreciated more readily and the entry of the needle into free space is recognized more easily. Puncture of the ventricular muscle should be avoided although the dangers of this accident are overemphasized by many. The direction of the needle will vary with the site selected for puncture. At the place recommended left lateral puncture it is inward backward and upward.

The electrocardiogram may be used as an additional safeguard during paracentesis (Bishop et al.). When the needle touches the myocardium an elevation of the ST segment appears in a special lead; the needle serving as one electrode.

The character of the fluid removed may provide some diagnostic hint of the nature of the process although this information is not always reliable. Thus serous fluids are infrequent in infections with pathogenic cocci; bloody fluids are often encountered in tuberculous pericarditis and neoplasms. Sometimes the provocative microorganism may be recovered but it should be borne in mind that the original organism may be overwhelmed by secondary invaders. Apart from the establishment of the diagnosis of an effusion paracentesis has value in eliminating the prospect of a pericardium and in lowering intrapericardial pressure.

**Treatment** The management of these patients depends to a great extent upon the etiology. Therapy of rheumatic or tuberculous pericarditis has been discussed above.

There is justification for the use of sulfonamides in the treatment of pneumococcus pericarditis with effusion since these substances readily diffuse into the pericardial cavity. Formerly the oral administration of these drugs was combined with the intrapericardial injection of specific antisera. Before much experience was obtained on the value of this combination the use of penicillin gained prominence. This method of therapy is indicated in pericarditis evoked by the various pathogenic cocci. Broad spectrum antibiotics are also of value. There is however the danger that a nonpurulent effusion produced by these organisms may become rapidly converted into a pyopericardium. The superiority of surgical intervention over conservative measures in the latter condition makes it necessary to follow the patient very carefully whenever the etiology of the pericardial inflammation suggests the possible development of a pyopericardium. As a general rule the situation calls for very careful evaluation of the microorganisms recovered from the pericardial fluid.

Apart from these etiotropic measures some comfort may be provided by symptomatic treatment. If relief of pain comes under consideration the suggestions made in the section of fibrinous pericarditis are worthy of trial. Digitalis and allied preparations are rarely indicated in pericardial effusions and in the absence of cardiac decompensation may act unfavorably.

The therapeutic program must also be considered from the standpoint of how quickly the effusion developed. If the exudate forms rapidly and causes a marked increase of intrapericardial pressure and severe inflow stasis early puncture and removal of fluid are necessary. In large chronic effusions in which the inflammatory or infectious process stands in the background a more conservative plan may be adopted. Occasionally success is obtained by means of a mercurial diuretic in combination with ammonium chloride at times a jolt with theophyllin may bring about absorption of the effusion. Frequently however these measures are of no avail and paracentesis must be resorted to.

It should be emphasized that the quick removal of a large amount of pericardial fluid may be associated with danger. If the heart has been subjected to the pressure of the effusion for a long time and if the myocardium has been injured by the accompanying myocarditis and the compression rapid release of the pressure and the acute increase of demands on the heart by the suddenly heightened influx of blood may result in acute cardiac dilatation, syncope and the manifestations of severe failure which at times may be fatal. The distended pericardium cannot like the normal pericardium prevent excessive cardiac dilatation. For these reasons we advocate the use of a 20 ml syringe for the removal of large effusions and slow withdrawal of the fluid. Each time the syringe is disconnected for emptying 10 ml of air are reprojected through the needle to prevent an acute reduction of pressure. In rheumatic pericarditis it is often well to postpone paracentesis in the absence of definite indications for fairly large effusions are often absorbed in 3 to 4 weeks.

In many forms of effusion the relief afforded by pericardial paracentesis is only transient as the fluid rapidly reforms. Moreover the effusion may be ab-

sorbed very slowly and the clinical picture may gradually change from one of effusion to that of pericardial adhesions. Very often the myocardium has suffered permanent damage and cardiac failure ultimately develops. Various operative procedures—the drainage of pericardial fluid into the pleural cavity or pericardiectomy—have been suggested but have not found widespread adoption.

The situation may be further complicated particularly in patients with tuberculosis by the development of a polyserositis. Sometimes these patients present obvious evidence of progressive tuberculosis with effusions into the pericardial, pleural and peritoneal cavities—Concato's disease in a strict sense. On the other hand pericardial effusion may be minimal or absent while early ascites (*ascites praecox*), hepatomegaly, or recurrent pleural effusion characterize the clinical picture. These cases are often called pericarditic pseudocirrhosis or Pick's disease and they are discussed in the chapter on pericardial adhesions.

#### SUPPURATIVE PERICARDITIS (PYOPERICARDIUM)

Although the symptoms and signs of purulent pericarditis may depend upon pressure effects and thus may resemble those of nonpurulent pericardial effusion it seems advisable to discuss pyopericardium separately in order to emphasize that the toxic and infectious phenomena may dominate the situation while pressure effects stand far in the background.

*Etiology.* In general acute purulent pericarditis may be considered a more intense response of the pericardium to the same etiologic agents which cause the forms of pericarditis previously discussed. The intensity of the stimulus seems more important than the nature of the pathogenic agent. It must be admitted however that rheumatic pericarditis is rarely purulent (Gerke) whereas pneumococcal pericarditis tends to be suppurative in a large number of cases.

Purulent pericarditis was exceedingly common during the great pandemic of influenza in 1917-18. In one series of patients 14.5 per cent of individuals dying from pneumonia had pyopericardium (Stone). Bacteriologically proven pyopericardium due to the influenza bacillus is rare but a complicating streptococcal pyopericardium in influenzal pneumonia is very common. In most cases of pyopericardium some intrathoracic infection is present; usually this is pneumonia with or (rarely) without empyema. In 77 of 123 cases of purulent pericarditis there was intrathoracic infection. Among these the pneumococcus was provocative in 45, the staphylococcus in 17, and a streptococcus in 3 (Bisgard).

Pericarditis complicating sepsis is usually purulent. This is true almost invariably for the pericarditis following peritonsillar abscess. A major source of pyopericardium is sepsis associated with osteomyelitis. Among 71 cases of acute osteomyelitis 51 came to necropsy and a purulent pericarditis was present in 33. The lungs were affected in 22 and an empyema or pleuritis was present in 10. 18 had abscesses of the kidneys (Pyrak and Pain). Puerperal sepsis furnishes a fair number of examples of pyopericardium.

Most of the pathogenic cocci are capable of producing purulent pericarditis. Apart from purulent pericarditis as a serious incident in the course of pneumo-staphylo- or streptococcic sepsis, some specific diseases may be associated with pyopericardium. Gonococcic pericarditis, though rare, is often purulent and is almost invariably associated with endocarditis of the same origin. Meningococcic pericarditis, which occurs in a dry as well as a purulent form, is more common since patients survive the acute phase because of the use of antibiotics. Bacilli are less prone to produce purulent pericardial lesions. Thus typhoid pericarditis is actually uncommon and other organisms of the same group (colon, paratyphoid, salmonella) are rare causes. Actinomycosis may produce a typical pericarditis which is often purulent in character. Among the higher organisms the amoeba may enter the pericardial cavity. In these cases there is usually a fistulous connection to a liver abscess and examination of the chocolate-colored pericardial fluid usually reveals a mixed infection.

*Incidence.* Pyopericardium is not common. A year may pass without a single example being noted in a large hospital. The incidence of purulent pericarditis mentioned in the literature depends upon the source of the material. If it is stated that purulent pericarditis is twice as common as the combination of all other forms of pericarditis with effusion, the indication is that the material from which the statistics were compiled was predominantly surgical.

A vast majority of cases are observed in older children and young adults. The disease is not common before the age of five and is equally unusual after the age of 25.

*Pathology.* The pathologic picture of purulent pericarditis depends to some extent upon the stage of the process. An early serofibrinous stage is followed by the formation of fibrino-purulent exudate. The surface of the membranes becomes cheesy and soft. Pure odorless pus forms in variable quantities or a hemorrhagic and purulent exudate is found. The inner aspect of the pericardium often resembles a purulent granulating wound with a pyogenic membrane. Cardiac movements usually preclude the formation of many adhesions, although constrictive pericarditis may follow a purulent inflammation. Sometimes the pericardial exudate undergoes considerable organization and massive deposits may attain a diameter of several centimeters. More often the pericardium is damaged with the result that remarkably large amounts of fluid collect.

*Symptoms.* The symptoms vary because of the diversity of etiologic factors. Generally there is an acute illness with swinging temperature, chills, profuse diaphoresis and evidence of toxicity. The diagnosis may be masked because the underlying disease may seem adequate to account for the symptoms; therefore no search is made for a second disease or a complication. Moreover the development of a purulent pericarditis need not change the general symptoms to a great extent. Actually the tendency for pericardial suppuration to remain latent is notorious.

*Signs.* Inspection does not give much assistance. Most patients present signs ordinarily associated with an elevation of temperature, but in rare cases the tem-

perature may be normal. The respiratory rate and dyspnea may be disproportionately great. If the volume of pericardial fluid is large the patient may assume a semi-recumbent posture. Bulging of the precordium is rare even in children.

Palpation, percussion and auscultation reveal the same findings as in non-purulent pericardial effusion. The skin over the precordium is often edematous.

There are all gradations of symptoms and signs. The clinical picture in the patient whose pleural empyema extends to the pericardium will be different from the one in the patient whose purulent pericarditis results from sepsis with hematogenous dissemination of bacteria (e. g. when osteomyelitis causes a small myocardial abscess which subsequently ruptures into the pericardial cavity). If the effusion is large tamponade may result. Under these conditions the neck veins distend, the pulse becomes small, rapid and irregular and other evidence of cardiac compression develops. With small effusions the area of cardiac dullness does not enlarge; although slight edema of the chest wall or of the upper thorax may be seen.

The disease is recognized most often when the possibility of its existence is constantly borne in mind in the presence of a process capable of producing pericardium. Since the existing fever, leukocytosis and sedimentation rate need not undergo further alteration when purulent pericarditis develops, careful repeated examination of the precordial area is of great diagnostic value. If the examiner lacks the necessary experience to detect the flatness in the area of cardiac dullness, serial x-ray films may furnish a guide to the recognition of the malady.

Diagnostic pericardiocentesis is considered unjustified by many competent observers. Much of the adverse judgment arises from a period when such puncture was employed as a therapeutic rather than a diagnostic measure. Pericardial paracentesis in these patients is not entirely devoid of danger although its hazards are frequently overemphasized by its opponents. It is true that the passage of a needle through an infected pleural cavity into a sterile pericardial cavity may be costly, or conversely, that infection of the pleura during paracentesis of a pyopericardium is impossible. The production of a myocardial abscess or a cardiac laceration by an infected needle although rare does occur. On the other hand the pleura is usually adherent over the site of puncture and pleural empyema seems to be a greater theoretical danger than in actual one. However despite these facts we usually perform pericardial paracentesis if there is any doubt about the situation. In this connection it must be admitted that sometimes no pus is recovered even though it is actually present; moreover the pus obtained may be ascribed to a pleural rather than a pericardial empyema. The danger of overlooking a purulent pericarditis is so great that it seems advisable to err on the side of safety and to perform an occasional unnecessary pericardial tap.

*Course.* The course of the disease varies remarkably. If the tempo is fulminating, cardiac tamponade may occur within a few days. On the other hand pyopericardium developing in connection with a foreign body in the pericardial cavity or after a shrapnel wound in the lung may appear late. Transmission of infection through the pericardium is sometimes slow.



*Prognosis* In the past under medical treatment fatalities amounted to almost 100 per cent. After pericardiectomy became popular this figure was lowered to about 42 per cent (Truesdale). Just before the antibiotics became popular the death rate for pneumococcic pyopericardium (37 per cent), streptococcic infections (31—50 per cent) and staphylococcic pyopericardium (25—34 per cent) was still high, at the present time it has however apparently been reduced decidedly although no large statistical series is available for comparison. The antibiotics readily pass into the pericardial cavity in effective concentrations. Still the death rate remains high in pyopericardium especially if surgery comes too late.

*Treatment* If pericardiocentesis is performed several syringes should be available to evacuate a fairly large amount of fluid in the event pus is present. About one half as much air should be reinjected for in addition to the reasons given above the pneumopericardium greatly facilitates the recognition of any encapsulated exudate by x ray and may modify any operative procedure.

Pericardiectomy is indicated even with the modern antibiotics in most cases. A few hours of delay before operation is permissible in order to make proper preparation of the patient but next to nonrecognition of the disease procrastination remains a very large factor in the fatal outcome. Operation is futile if a pleural empyema or encapsulated pericardial pus is overlooked. Momentary reflex stoppage of the heart on incision of the pericardium is a rare but extremely serious occurrence. It can usually be avoided by the application of novocaine to the membrane before incision.

The administration of antibiotics presents no special problems. Many such drugs can be applied locally as well as by other routes.

### GANGRENOUS PERICARDITIS

*Etiology* The entrance of putrefactive organisms into the pericardial cavity through a penetrating wound or after perforation of a bronchogenic carcinoma may produce necrosis of the pericardium. Pyopneumopericardium is a common result.

We have seen gangrenous pericarditis follow the perforation of an esophageal traction diverticulum into the pericardium and similar catastrophes after the implantation of radium into an esophageal carcinoma. More rarely we have observed a tuberculous cavity of the lung penetrate an adherent pericardium. The greatest number of cases however is provided by penetrating wounds of the chest.

*Pathology* Sometimes the parietal pericardium is smooth and shiny but more often it forms a rigid shell which retains its shape after the heart is removed from the cadaver. The visceral layer looks as if tiles had been laid in soft cement. Frequently a fistula can be found leading to a bronchus and the foul pericardial content may have been largely evacuated in this way.

*Symptoms and Signs* Most clinical features are described under the heading Pneumopericardium.

## NONINFLAMMATORY PERICARDIAL EFFUSIONS

*Hydropericardium (Hydrops Pericardii)*

**Congestive Heart Failure** The moderate increase of pericardial fluid often found at necropsy in congestive heart failure is usually devoid of clinical significance. On occasion however for unknown reasons large effusions cause a marked enlargement of the cardiac shadow in some of these cases. Usually they respond readily to treatment with diuretics.

**Beriberi Scurvy** Among 64 cases of oriental beriberi Wenckebach noted a pericardial effusion in 62, hydrothorax in 14 and ascites in 9. Stasis and hypertension in the venous circulation as well as low plasma proteins are considered responsible for the transudation of fluid in this disease. Myocardial damage is also present.

This effusion explains the striking variations in the cardiac size of the affected patients. Hydropericardium does not seem to have been noted in the occidental beriberi heart.

Other vitamin deficiencies do not seem to produce pericardial disturbances. The epidemic pericarditis encountered in war prisoners in 1918 was due to hemopericardium resulting from scurvy and not from an inflammation.

**Myxedema** Another form of hydropericardium of interest to the internist stems from myxedema. This form will be described in the section on endocrine diseases. There is also a form of hydropericardium in which the pericardial fluid contains large amounts of cholesterol in an otherwise clear fluid. It is asserted that despite the absence of other signs of myxedema these patients respond favorably to the administration of thyroid extract. Pericardiectomy has also been recommended (Creech et al.).

Pericardial fluids with a high content of cholesterol are also found in tuberculous pericarditis with effusion but under these conditions the fluid is opaque and often chocolate colored.

In rare cases we have seen a large transudate in the pericardial cavity of otherwise fully compensated patients without any detectable etiology.

*Hemopericardium*

Individual causes of hemopericardium are mentioned in several places in the present book but may be summarized briefly at this time. The normal heart may be ruptured by a crushing thoracic injury or by a fall from a great height; this is frequently observed in fatal airplane crashes. Rupture of a diseased heart is not a rare event after coronary thrombosis with myocardial infarction. In recent years perforation of the atrium by an extension of a bronchogenic carcinoma has been observed with increasing frequency.

Fatal cardiac tamponade has been observed after sternal puncture.

Rupture of the intrapericardial part of the normal aorta occurs in aviation catastrophes and is sometimes seen in steering wheel accidents when an automobile driver is thrown forcibly against the steering wheel. A hemopericardium

developed in a 23 year old man who received a severe blow on the chest during a foot ball game. Four and one half pints of blood were removed and the patient recovered.

The pathologic aorta often ruptures in aneurysms when the intrapericardial portion of the thoracic aorta is affected. Dissecting aneurysm associated with media necrosis is likewise a common cause. A normal coronary artery may be perforated in a stab wound. Similar accidents have happened during paracentesis or intracardiac injections. In a vast number of instances an atherosclerotic coronary artery ruptures into the myocardium rather than into the pericardial cavity. Aneurysms of the coronary artery are uncommon; they occur in the form of congenital saccular aneurysms as well as in periarteritis nodosa. Injuries and rupture of the pulmonary artery with leakage into the pericardial cavity are relatively rare; however hemopericardium may follow stab wounds of the vessel.

Hemopericardium may result from capillary bleeding in scurvy, nephritis, acute leukemia, and many other diseases of the blood forming organs.

Hemorrhagic pericarditis is a term employed to describe rather intense pericardial reactions to an inflammatory stimulus. Ordinarily it represents a more severe reaction than serofibrinous pericarditis and its etiology is equally diversified.

Pericardial tumors are rare (see below) but at times they produce hemopericardium.

The symptoms and signs of hemopericardium depend upon the etiology, the speed with which bleeding occurs, the amount of blood which escapes into the pericardial cavity, and the presence or absence of cardiac tamponade. Uninfected blood in the pericardial cavity is absorbed with considerable speed, whereas infected blood is rapidly converted into a purulent liquid.

### *Chylopericardium*

True chylopericardium is exceedingly uncommon but pseudochylous effusions are frequently encountered in the pericardial cavity. We have noted chylopericardium in conjunction with injuries of the thoracic duct. Granuloma and new growths involving the duct may also be responsible. Experimental chylopericardium can be produced in some animals by ligation of the superior vena cava, but it fails to appear after thrombotic occlusion of the same vessel in man.

Even more rare is *cholopericardium*, the appearance of bile in the pericardial cavity (perforated liver abscess).

### *Pneumopericardium*

**Etiology.** Uncomplicated pneumopericardium is practically unknown for the entrance of air into the pericardial cavity is almost invariably associated with the appearance of blood or some other fluid. Mixed forms rather than pure forms of pyo-hemo-pneumopericardium occur.

The greatest single etiologic factor is trauma (James). In addition to injury in the usual sense (contusion of the chest wall with and without fractures, penet-

tration of the chest wall by foreign bodies wounds) air may enter via a perforated esophagus (splinter of bone fish bone for example) We saw pneumopericardium in a patient who swallowed his dentures They were found in the middle of the esophagus The penetration of a tuberculous pulmonary cavity or inflammation arising in a tuberculous lymphadenitis or a bronchogenic carcinoma represent other mechanisms Equally common however though often unappreciated is the pneumopericardium which follows attempted pleural paracentesis for the induction of pneumothorax Pneumopericardium may follow tracheotomy or pneumomediastinum

*Clinical Picture* The manifestations are variable as might be expected from the multiplicity of etiologic factors The speed with which air enters is a factor in the production of symptoms a tension pneumotamponade may create symptoms whereas a larger but open wound may avert a rise of intrapericardial pressure

Ordinarily inspection reveals little unless the trauma or some other releasing factor produces the symptoms of shock Larger collections of air may cause dyspnea tachycardia and sharp precordial pain but small amounts may not even cause engorgement of the jugular veins Palpation is likewise often uninformative Obliteration of the apical impulse is commonly reported Percussion may yield a tympanitic or metallic note in place of cardiac dullness or flatness The metallic component of the sound is important since it excludes mediastinal emphysema as the provocative factor This tympany may be difficult to detect when it merges imperceptibly with the surrounding resonance of the normal lung Sometimes a classical cracked pot sound (*bruit du pot fele*) is obtained on percussion

Auscultation yields diagnostic information A splashing ringing metallic sound synchronous with the heart is audible This continuous Hippocratic succussion sound is heard in approximately half of the cases The precise characteristics of these sounds will depend upon the amount of air and fluid present the size of the fistulous opening pericardial tension etc

The mull or water wheel murmur (*bruit de roue hydraulique*) is almost pathognomonic This sound is difficult to describe and is usually compared to that of a churn It may be louder on inspiration than on expiration and may vary in intensity from time to time for no apparent reason Stokes described the phenomenon as a large crepitating and gurgling sound to which was added a distinct metallic character Often there is a loud tinkling synchronous with the heart sounds which can also be heard at a distance from the patient The heart sounds as well as the friction rub if present have a metallic character

The clear gas filled space demonstrable around the cardiac shadow and the surrounding bands of pericardium create an unmistakable x ray picture The upper level of the pericardial effusion is clearly demarcated by air The thickness of the pericardium is easily estimated If a productive tuberculosis is responsible for the accident the pericardium is visible as a dense ligamentous curved band on each side just above the pericardial effusion

*Differential Diagnosis* The principal difficulty lies in excluding pneumomediastinum. In addition to the distinguishing signs mentioned above metallic tinkle is important since this is usually absent in pneumomediastinum. Subcutaneous emphysema is often but not invariably present in pneumomediastinum. Fine crackling sounds synchronous with cardiac movements are also suggestive of pneumomediastinum.

In patients with pneumothorax the mediastinal pleura may assume the appearance of an arc and may resemble a pneumopericardium. Usually the extremely active movements of the heart so typical of pneumopericardium under the fluoroscope are absent.

*Prognosis* Most of the patients recover. All forms of pneumopericardium which became secondarily infected were associated with a poor prognosis before the antibiotic era.

*Treatment* Simple collections of air are rapidly absorbed although the patient must be watched carefully. If air causes tamponade paracentesis should be performed; this applies in all forms of tension pneumotamponade. If the air and fluid reform surgical intervention is usually necessary.

### PERICARDIAL ADHESIONS

The epicardium and pericardium may adhere to each other or the outer aspect of the pericardium may become adherent to neighboring structures as the result of acute or chronic pericarditis. Since these events may take place in any form of pericardial inflammation in which repair is associated with fibrosis practically all forms of pericarditis may be causal.

### Nomenclature

Due to the fact that the presenting situation is usually a postinflammatory syndrome rather than an active inflammation the terms *concretio cordis* and *accretio cordis* have become popular. The phrase *adhesive pericarditis* should be discarded since in most cases we are not dealing with an active inflammatory process. In *concretio cordis* the epicardium and pericardium become connected all grades exist between the single fibrous strand bridging the pericardial cavity to the complete obliteration of the sac. The term *accretio cordis* on the other hand emphasizes the adherence of the pericardium to the surrounding structures and is used more or less interchangeably with *mediastinopericarditis*. Important too is a particular form of *concretio cordis* in which the pericardial scar compresses the heart. In some progressive cases usually tuberculous in origin the term *constrictive pericarditis* is justified but in others the inflammatory lesion has long since subsided and the syndrome is due to chronic cardiac compression by the pericardial scar.

### Incidence; Etiology

Pericardial adhesions are found in approximately 5 per cent of routine necropsies; about 48 per cent of patients dying from pericarditis have adhesions.

The etiology as indicated earlier is extremely diverse. For practical purposes one third of the cases are rheumatic in origin but it is rare for the scar of rheumatic pericarditis to produce cicatrices of clinical importance. Many of these patients have no evidence of associated valvular disease. Pericardial adhesions presented by another third of the cases may be considered tuberculous in origin. It has been repeatedly asserted that all instances of chronic cardiac compression by pericardial adhesions are due to tuberculosis. This would appear to be correct if the phrase pericardial adhesions is used synonymously with the syndrome about to be described. To be sure an occasional instance of this syndrome has followed a pyopericardium of streptococcal origin but it is difficult to overemphasize the importance of tuberculosis in the genesis of a symptom producing *concretio cordis*. Its role in the production of mediastinopericarditis is also so great that it scarcely requires discussion. In rare cases the pericarditis followed trauma to the chest.

### *Pathology*

As indicated above the scar may consist of a band or a plaque or it may completely obliterate the pericardial cavity. There is a growing inclination to distinguish the pathologic changes in the constrictive type from those in the nonconstrictive. Thus it is stressed that in the constrictive type the pericardium is thicker, more dense and tougher for the fibrous tissue has undergone complete hyalinization. The closely bound enormously thick individual collagen fibers are swollen structureless of glassy translucent appearance and without internal architecture. The fibers are parallel for the most part but they may form interwoven systems of dense whorls. Apart from a few linear nuclei outside the hyaline fibers the scar is almost acellular. The tissue is strikingly devoid of capillaries although it may contain some large blood vessels.

While this picture is present in many cases others have areas of caseous debris, residual old hemorrhages, spaces formerly filled by collections of cholesterol crystals, calcification of various degrees and extent. Sometimes the old line of cleavage between the two layers of membrane has been preserved by a small collection of pus. Usually no organisms can be demonstrated although they may be recovered by cultures. Sometimes tubercles are found.

### *Pathologic Mechanism*

The existence of a pericardial adhesion or for that matter of obliteration of the pericardial cavity does not necessarily result in symptoms. On the contrary some adhesions at the site of an old myocardial infarction may support the scar and may perhaps provide an important source for a new blood supply. Likewise complete adherence of a thin flexible pericardium to the epicardium may not hamper cardiac movements any more than a thin rubber glove restricts the movements of the fingers. On the other hand a thickened pericardial callus encircling the heart may prevent diastolic relaxation and emptying of the great veins. In the same way adhesions between the pericardium and neighboring structures the anterior chest wall for example may angulate or rotate the heart and thereby

produce symptoms or signs. Systole may also be hampered by the adhesions. Accordingly, no symptom or sign is obligatory in the clinical picture associated with pericardial adhesions; rather it is the total impression that is suggestive. In the following discussion no attempt will be made to distinguish concretion and accretio cordis clinically, since they are usually combined. However, a brief review of the classical constrictive type may serve as an introduction.

Cardiac catheterization has revealed an elevation of arterial pressure in the lesser circuit that disappears after cardiolysis. The right ventricle is hypertrophied. The right heart pressure patterns are characteristic but not pathognomonic. The right atrial pressure curves show an M or W form and the right ventricular curve shows an early dip and a plateau formation because of incomplete diastolic filling. Electrocardiography shows a flat top pattern. Myocarditis or amyloidosis of the heart may lead to similar curves.

Since the encircling pericardial scar prevents diastolic relaxation of the heart and the inflow of blood from the superior and inferior vena cava is drastically affected, the picture presented is one of congestion affecting the tributaries of the superior and inferior vena cava. The engorged neck veins are unable to empty and remain filled even during inspiration. The hepatic veins are unable to discharge their contents so that the liver enlarges and ascites appears early. Since the myocardial fibers undergo considerable atrophy and diastolic relaxation is greatly reduced, the heart tends to be small although the thickness of the callus may make the diameters seem approximately normal on x-ray films. In most patients there has been no antecedent valvular lesion with the result that no murmurs are heard. The heart sounds are often weak, causing the precordium to appear as quiet as a church.

### *Symptoms and Signs*

Dyspnea is a common symptom and occurs only on exertion. Frequently the patient complains of increasing weakness. The enlargement of the liver is so insidious that pain in this area is uncommon, but a sense of fullness or oppression in the upper abdomen develops sooner or later in most patients. Most of those afflicted with constrictive pericardial scars seek relief for noncardiac symptoms and although the situation strongly suggests some form of heart disease, strikingly little is found to confirm this impression. Superimposed on the diagnostic triad—engorgement of the neck veins, enlargement of the abdomen, and a small rather silent heart—there may be a host of signs, some of which are mentioned below.

*Inspection.* This may reveal some edema of the slightly suffused or cyanotic face. The edema, as well as the cyanosis, often stops abruptly at the neck (Stokes collar). The facial edema is most pronounced in the morning and disappears during the day when the patient is up and the inflow of blood from the head into the heart is facilitated. The neck veins are distended and under great tension as shown by measurement of the venous pressure. Other veins may not show obvious engorgement although pictures taken by means of infrared photography also reveal dilated cutaneous veins throughout the body.

In the past great emphasis has been placed upon abnormal movements in the cardiac and other areas. Weakness or absence of the apical impulse was formerly considered an important sign although it is now recognized that the impulse is frequently absent in normal subjects and may persist despite the presence of extensive pericardial adhesions. Systolic apical retraction may occur with properly located adhesions; a forward movement in the same area may be noted in other patients. But both signs also occur without adhesions. Among the thoracic movements which have received great attention is Broadbent's sign, a systolic retraction produced by adhesions in the left axillary line in the vicinity of the eleventh and twelfth ribs; it is supposed to be suggestive of posterior mediastino-pericardial adhesions but is in most cases absent. Moreover it also occurs in other diseases. Suitably located adhesions may produce retractions in other areas usually on the anterior chest wall. Often the systolic retraction of the inter spaces over the precordium commonly seen in right ventricular dilatation are confused with those appearing in pericardial adhesions.

The upper abdomen usually protrudes owing to the massive enlargement of the liver. Sometimes the contrast between the large pear-shaped abdomen and the small extremities is striking. In other patients edema of the lower extremities is a prominent sign although this is less regular than ascites.

Highly suggestive in some patients with fixation of the lower sternum is the reversal of chest movements during respiration when the patient is viewed in profile (Wenckebach). Sometimes the position of the lower sternum in expiration closely approximates the position normally seen in inspiration.

**Palpation.** This method of examination does not afford much assistance. Rarely compression of the pulmonary artery by a scar causes a supraventricular stenosis and a systolic thrill is palpable; occasionally tracheal tug is present.

**Pulsus Paradoxus.** Usually the pulse is regular; rarely atrial fibrillation complicates pericardial adhesions.

There is a periodic inspiratory reduction in the size of the regular pulse called *pulsus paradoxus*. This finding is easily demonstrated with the auscultatory measurement of the blood pressure since the systolic pressure level changes in different phases of respiration. *Pulsus paradoxus* may be noted in a great variety of illnesses and even in healthy people. When the clavicle is thrust back the pulse may disappear in the radial artery because of the compression of the subclavian artery between the clavicle and thoracic cage. This is called *paradoxical pulse of extrathoracic origin*. A physiologic phenomenon is the so-called *dynamic pulsus paradoxus* in which the pulse becomes smaller in inspiration and very large at the beginning of expiration because of the retention of large quantities of blood in the lung during inspiration. With the beginning of expiration this blood is expelled into the left heart. In the paradoxical pulse associated with pericardial adhesions the pulse is smallest in deep inspiration and largest in the pause at the end of expiration because with inspiration fibrotic bands compress the aorta more and more while with expiration this compression diminishes.



Figure 52 shows a pulse tracing obtained from a patient with pericardial adhesions. The pulse becomes smaller in inspiration and the largest pulse waves are visible at the end of expiration.

*Venous Pressure Blood Pressure* The venous pressure is increased to many times the normal value. It is continuously high. The arterial blood pressure tends to be lower than normal and the pulse small. In an attempt to maintain a normal minute volume there is usually a slight but definite tachycardia.

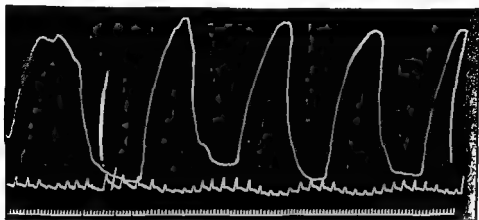


FIG. 52 Pulsus paradoxus in a patient with pericardial adhesions

*Percussion* This may reveal a heart normal in size and shape although some enlargement may be found at necropsy. Often the heart seems remarkably small.

*Auscultation* Often only pure sounds are found. In some cases the heart sounds are dull and split. We would consider a duplication of the second heart sound that is frequently heard over the second left interspace as the most common auscultatory finding in patients with pericardial adhesions. Occasionally the first heart sound is duplicated at the apex. Protodiastolic gallop rhythm appears. Mounsey found an early diastolic sound in 18 of 22 patients with pericardial adhesions. It appears on the average 0.1 second after the beginning of the second heart sound. The abrupt halting of the filling of the right ventricle is apparently responsible.

In pleuropericardial adhesions systolic clicks appear (systolic gallop rhythm) probably caused by systolic tension of adhesive bands.

*Other Signs* Palpation of the abdomen reveals the enormous enlargement of the liver. Congestive cirrhosis of the liver frequently develops. After paracentesis the spleen may also be felt. Despite the venous engorgement a caput medusae is remarkably rare. When large amounts of fibrin are deposited on the surface of the liver friction fremitus is occasionally noted.

Often the legs are edematous; this finding may recede after abdominal paracentesis but once it has developed it rarely vanishes entirely. Clubbed fingers represent an interesting and not too unusual finding.

*Röntgen Examination and Electrocardiogram*

Röntgen examination often reveals normal findings in a simple obliteration of the pericardial cavity. It may add evidence of pleural or pericardial adhesions (tenting at the cardiac borders) and show indications of calcification in the form of radiopaque bands. Frequently the cardiac borders are indistinct. Fluoroscopy often furnishes suggestive evidence of diminished movement of the cardiac borders and absence of lateral displacement of the heart on change of posture.

The electrocardiogram often shows slurring and notching of the QRS complexes and low voltage.

*Differential Diagnosis*

All the symptoms and signs mentioned above may be modified when other conditions are present. Thus a left pleural effusion is frequent and polyserositis is not unusual. Right pleural effusion is often missing due to pleural adhesions. Moreover in accretio cordis the size and shape of the heart may be altered by the presence of some valvular disorder. As a rule however the absence of any right-sided cardiac enlargement stands in sharp contrast to the massive liver and great venous stasis. When the pulmonary artery dilates as the result of increased pressure in the lesser circulation the heart becomes nutralized, the adhesions and obstruction to respiration are responsible. Slight rotation of the heart may also cause the cardiac waist to disappear. These signs in addition to the small pulse and the splitting of the first sound with duplication of the second sound may suggest the erroneous diagnosis of a silent mitral stenosis. Such a mistake is understandable since a duplication of the first sound is often audible at the apex whereas the duplication of the second sound is heard best in the second left interspace. Sometimes the protodiastolic accessory heart sound is associated with a palpable shock. While this is not peculiar to pericardial adhesions it may be unusually distinct when they are present.

*Course*

Patients may be classified into silent types, the stationary forms and the slowly progressive variety. The first may be asymptomatic throughout life. In others a fairly satisfactory equilibrium can be maintained for years, particularly when collaterals form and the constriction of the superior or inferior vena cava is relatively slight. In the third group chronic passive congestion of the liver sooner or later leads to congestive cirrhosis.

*Treatment*

Since powerful mercurial diuretics and ammonium chloride were introduced a very tolerable state can often be maintained for years. Paracentesis for ascites can be almost entirely avoided if the injections are properly spaced. Formerly the loss of protein as the result of a rapid succession of abdominal tapplings soon

created hypoproteinemia and caused marked cachexia. Treatment of the heart itself usually can be omitted because this organ is not primarily affected, as a matter of fact it is not decompensated at all for the disease is extracardiac.

Until recently cardiolysis, the resection of the third, fourth and fifth ribs in the region of the heart, was the method of choice for surgical cases. Despite the doubt cast upon the rationale of the procedure, the liberation of the heart from cicatrices which angulate or rotate the viscus is often followed by considerable improvement. The operation does not seem to help at all in the constrictive variety. For this purpose a cautious decortication may be attempted in properly selected cases. Sometimes the results are miraculous and health is restored. Unfortunately the mortality rate is high (about 20 per cent). This holds particularly for patients with active tuberculosis for the underlying disease is often aggravated by the operation. This will certainly change with the wider use of streptomycin and isoniazid. Naturally surgical intervention is doomed to fail if the great veins are clamped by adhesions since the constricting cords cannot be severed owing to the danger of incising the vessels.

### CALCIFICATION OF THE PERICARDIUM

This condition is clinically unimportant since it is not responsible for any complaint or any cardiac failure which may coexist. Nevertheless its occurrence possesses some importance because calcification of the pericardium may be regarded as unequivocal evidence of the presence of adhesions.

Pericardial calcification, formerly considered very uncommon, is not an especially rare event and may be expected in approximately 10 per cent of all necropsies for pericarditis (Smith and Wilkus). It is encountered at all ages and in both sexes. It has been reported as early as the sixth year of life and as late as the ninetieth year. Males are more often affected than females. In 125 cases compiled by one of us, 84 were discovered between the ages of 30 and 70.

Pericardial calcifications must be differentiated from calcified valves, myocardium or mural thrombi (Klason).

*Symptoms and Signs.* A previous history of pericarditis is rarely obtained. The most remarkable feature about pericardial calcification is the extent of the deposit and its completely asymptomatic nature. If symptoms or signs occur they are not pathognomonic.

Pericardial calcification in our experience is most often discovered accidentally, usually it is found by chance during a gastrointestinal x-ray series since it is seen much more often during fluoroscopy than in the x-ray plate of the chest.

The calcific deposit assumes a variety of shapes in x-ray pictures. When typical crescentic or sickle-shaped shadow is observed when the chest is inspected in several planes. Frequently the calcium deposit is diffuse and merely confers increased density upon the cardiac shadow. Often it is hidden in the abdominal shadow and escapes detection even when a careful search for it is conducted. The deposits are found most often along the coronary sulci.

*Treatment* No therapy is required. However the presence of a calcium deposit may influence the surgical approach for the relief of cardiac constriction. It is extremely dangerous and rather unnecessary to remove calcium plaques over the thin walled atria. Moreover plaques over the ventricles sometimes extend into the muscle and an attempt to remove them has been followed by myocardial laceration and cardiac perforation. The same situation holds true for plaques surrounding the inferior vena cava. Lacerations of this vessel during an attempt to remove an encircling plaque has been in our experience an important factor in the unnecessary mortality during pericardiectomy.

### MALFORMATIONS OF THE PERICARDIUM

Malformations of the pericardium observed in connection with ectopia cordis and monsters have no clinical interest. However there are a series of pericardial defects ranging from complete absence of the pericardium to minor lateral foramina near the root of the left lung which are compatible with life.

In most cases the defect produces no symptoms and has no effect upon the duration of life. Antemortem discovery may be made in the course of an operation for diaphragmatic hernia. The diagnostic criteria consist of a greatly increased motility of the heart, cardiac hypertrophy without ascertainable cause and displacement of the heart to the left.

Among 46 cases compiled by one of us 20 per cent died from pneumonia and 27 per cent had a fresh pleuropericarditis at necropsy. Perhaps the absence of a pericardium renders the heart more susceptible to the extension of an infection from neighboring structures.

No treatment is required.

*Diverticulum* A true diverticulum of the pericardium is rare. Usually it is situated on the right side. It depends upon the protrusion of the serosa through a small defect in the tunica fibrosa. False diverticuli are usually associated with loculated pericardial effusions. The diagnosis depends upon the discovery of a round or polygonal shadow of the same density as that of the heart, more or less pulsating and resting with a broad base on the right anterior cardiac shadow. This unchanging radiologic shadow is unaccompanied by symptoms. Manifestations if present remain stationary. The negative previous history and the latent evolution distinguish the lesion from mediastinal pleurisy and encapsulated effusions of the right interlobar fissure. The absence of symptoms tends to exclude aneurysm while the negative findings in adjacent organs eliminate an extension from a bronchogenic carcinoma or some other pulmonary lesion.

### TUMORS OF THE PERICARDIUM AND HEART

Since tumors of the pericardium and heart often present similar symptoms and signs they may be discussed together at this point. Primary tumors of these structures are exceedingly rare but secondary invasion is relatively common. Usually both types escape detection even when a careful search is made.

*Pathology* The most common tumor of the heart is myxoma. There is some evidence to suggest that many such tumors are actually organized atrial thrombi. According to some investigators, however, we are dealing with a true new growth. The diagnosis is possible as Mahaim points out, when peripheral emboli of fragments of the myxoma are recognized histologically. Typical pictures may be obtained by means of angiocardigraphy. Surgical cure is possible.

A large tumor mass in the left atrium will cause symptoms and signs of congestion in the lesser circuit. The usual clinical diagnosis, as a matter of fact, is that of a mitral stenosis, particularly when the myxoma (or fibromyxoma) develops on a valve leaflet. The mass may even act as a ball thrombus.

Lipoma of the heart is rare and there is an intrathoracic lipoma that develops in the anterior mediastinum and projects toward the base of the neck. This lipoma is often confused with a cardiac tumor. The precise nature of cardiac rhabdomyoma is disputed. Bronchogenic carcinoma occasionally invades the heart and may even cause the syndrome of coronary artery occlusion.

The most frequent new growth of the pericardium is sarcoma, a mixed cell tumor with round and spindle cells predominating. Endothelioma is the second most common primary pericardial tumor.

Lamburner claims that primary tumors of the heart are found in 0.05 per cent of autopsies. Much more common are metastatic tumors from carcinoma of the bronchi, stomach, prostate, breast and esophagus. A third group is created by continuous growth of a bronchogenic or esophageal carcinoma into the heart.

*Symptoms* In a fairly large percentage of the cases, the symptoms are not suggestive of tumor and are referred to the heart. The signs depend upon the size and location of the mass, which may produce mediastinal pressure. In a subgroup of this type, there are terminal symptoms of cardiac embarrassment with acute decompensation, ascites, rapidly enlarging heart, serosanguinous pericardial effusion and cardiac irregularity. Intractable congestive heart failure characterizes the course in many patients, causing the erroneous diagnosis of chronic myocardial disease to be made frequently in this group. Congestive failure involves the major or lesser circulations. Sudden, unexpected death is not rare in cases of tumors of the right heart and is explained by a variety of mechanisms, any of which may operate in individual cases. Metastatic cardiac tumor may occasionally simulate subacute bacterial endocarditis when there are vague cardiac findings and when metastases in the liver and other organs are associated with irregular fever.

The early emphasis on the great frequency of heart block in cardiac tumor is due to the rather frequent association of heart block with rhabdomyoma. In another subgroup, the patient presents a localizing symptom, such as pseudo-thrombosis of the superior vena cava or compression of a large vessel. Constant displacement of the RS-T segment in a patient with metastatic tumor of the heart has been described (Posenbaum et al.). Metastatic cardiac tumor is a diagnostic possibility when dyspnea and edema are out of proportion to the known pulmonary metastasis. Other patients present evidence of cardiac dysfunction.

that cannot be explained. Finally a cardiac tumor and particularly a pericardial new growth may present themselves under the guise of a recurrent accumulation of hemorrhagic pericardial or pleural fluid. This symptom is not as common as many observers have inferred. The discovery of a blood stained pericardial fluid which is not readily explained by some other process has some diagnostic value. In most cases neoplastic cells are not demonstrable in the fluid but an increasing number of positive cases are being reported.

## Bibliography

- Adams E W Jones O R and Sheeren A D Cholesterol pericarditis *J Thoracic Surg* 90 28 1950
- Andrews C F Traumatic intrathoracic rupture of thoracic duct with chylothorax *Nebraska M J* 14 26 1929
- Andrews G W S Pickering C W and Sellors T M Aetiology of constrictive pericarditis with special reference to tuberculous pericarditis *Quart J Med* 11 291 1948
- Barnard H L The functions of the pericardium *Proc Physiol Soc London* 1898 p 43
- Barnes A R and Burchell H B Acute pericarditis simulating acute coronary occlusion report of 14 cases *Am Heart J* 23 247 1942
- Beck C S The effect of surgical solution of chlorinated soda (Dakin's solution) in the pericardial cavity *Arch Surg* 18 1659 1929
- Bisel H F Wróblewski F and LaDue J S Incidence and clinical manifestations of cardiac metastases *JAMA* 166 712 1953
- Bisgard J D Pyopericarditis: an analysis of cases treated by pericardiectomy *Am J Surg* 11 1 1931
- Bishop L H Jr Estes E H Jr and McIntosh H D The electrocardiogram as a safeguard in pericardiocentesis *JAMA* 167 264 1956
- Blechnmann G Les épanchements du péricarde: étude clinique et thérapeutique la ponction épigastrique de Marfan Paris: Bailliere 1913
- Blum J E Zur Frage der Herzpolypen *Cardiologia* 20 193 1951
- Blumenfeld H and Thomas S F Chronic massive pericardial effusion following roentgen therapy for carcinoma of the breast: with a case report *Radiology* 44 335 1945
- Boyd L J and Scherf D El electrocardiograma en las injurias epicardicas endocardicas (y miocardicas subyacentes) localizadas *Rev Argent de cardiol* 7 1 1940
- Brauer L Über chronisch adhesive Mediastinoperikarditis und deren Behandlung *München med Wchnschr* 49 1071 1902
- Breitung cited by Jaccoud *Mediastinite et Péricardite tuberculeuse à début brusque* *Symphysie Cardiac asystolic Benigne Med* 13 21 1893
- Bright Tabular view of the morbid appearances in 100 cases connected with albuminous urine *Guy's Hosp Rep* 1 380 1836
- Broadbent J F H Adherent Pericardium London: Bailliere Tindall & Cox 1895
- Camp P D and White P D Pericardial effusion: a clinical study *Am J M Sc* 184 782 1932
- Capps J A and Coleman G H An Experimental and Clinical Study of Pain in the Pleura Pericardium and Peritoneum New York: Macmillan 1932
- Carter M G and Korones S B Amoebic pericarditis *New Engl J Med* 242 390 1950
- Christ A Die Bedeutung der Perikarditis im Greisenalter Frankfurt *Ztschr Path* 9 47 1923

- Churchill E D Decortication of the heart (Delorme) for adhesive pericarditis *Arch Surg* 10 1457 1929
- Cowan J Harrington A W and Riddell I R On pneumopericardium *Quart J Med* 7 165 1914
- Craddock W L Cysts of the pericardium *Am Heart J* 10 619 1930
- Creech O Jr Hicks W M Jr Snyder H H and Frickson E F Cholesterol pericarditis: successful treatment by pericardiectomy *Circulation* 12 193 1955
- Daniel G and Puder S Pericarditis et Pleuritis Cholesterinea Virchow's *Arch f path Anat* 284 853 1932
- Dornhurst A D Howard I and Leathart G L Pulsus paradoxus *Lancet* 1 746 1952
- Dressler W Idiopathic recurrent pericarditis *Am J Med* 18 591 1955
- Dubourg G Broustet P Costaing R Blanchot I Bricaud H and La Cardie J La constitution rapide des pericardites constrictives apres chimiotherapy anti tuberculeuse *Arch d mal du coeur* 48 497 1955
- Ehrenhaft J L and Taber R E Hemopericardium and constrictive pericarditis *J Thorac Surg* 4 355 1952
- Elias H Zur Kenntnis der Hauttemperatur über dem Herzen *Wien klin Wchnchr* 61 642 1955
- Elias H and Feller A Stauungstypen bei Kreislaufstörungen Mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der exsudativen Perikarditis *Wien & Berlin J Springer* 1926
- Ellman P Tuberculous pericarditis with effusion *Brit Heart J* 7 147 1945
- Evans F Acute nonspecific benign pericarditis *JAMA* 143 934 1950
- Falk A and Ebert R V Tuberculous pericarditis treated with streptomycin *JAMA* 145 310 1951
- Ferke A A Die Aetiologie der Perikarditis *Virchow's Arch f path Anat* 2 81 1930
- Geselschap J H Over de behandeling van serieuze pleuritis en pericarditis met luchtinblazing *Nederl Tijdschr v Geneesk* 46 181 1910
- Gillick F G and Reynolds W F Electrokymographic observations in constrictive pericarditis *Radiology* 55 7 1950
- Glenne E F Traumatic constrictive pericarditis *J Missouri M A* 37 7 1940
- Goldman M J and Lau F Y Acute pericarditis associated with serum sickness *New Engl J Med* 250 278 1954
- Harvey A M and Whitehill M R Tuberculous pericarditis *Medicine* 16 46 1937
- Harvey R M Ferfer M I Cathcart R T Richards D W and Cournand A Mechanical and myocardial factors in chronic constrictive pericarditis *Circulation* 8 693 1953
- Hessmann A and Israelski M Panzerherz *Röntgenpraxis* 4 112 1932
- Hodges R M Idiopathic pericarditis case 4 *Boston M & Surg J* 51 140 1955
- Holman E and Willett F Treatment of active tuberculous pericarditis by pericardiectomy *JAMA* 140 1 1951
- and — Results of radical pericardiectomy for constrictive pericarditis *JAMA* 157 789 1950
- James W R Pneumopericardium *Tr A Am Physicians* 10 351 1904
- Kendall D and Symonds H Epileptiform attacks due to myxoma of the right auricle *Brit Heart J* 14 139 1952
- Kern R A Soloff J A Swope W J and Bello C T Pericardial effusion a constant early and major factor in the cardiac syndrome of hypothyroidism *Am J M S* 17 603 1949
- Kienbock R and Weiss K Über das entzündliche Herzbeutelinvertikel *Fortschr a d Geb d Röntgenstrahlen* 50 44 1934
- Klason T Pericarditis calciosa und Herzverkalkungen *Acta Radiol* 1 16 1911

- Krook H Acute non specific pericarditis *Acta med Scandinav* 201 148 1954
- Lin T K and Anache M Right heart pressure patterns in constrictive pericarditis  
*Am Heart J* 51 340 1956
- Lymburner R M Tumours of the heart *Canad MAJ* 30 398 1934
- Mahaim I Les Tumeurs et les l'otypes du Coeur Paris Masson & Cie 1945
- Mannix F P Jr and Dennis C The surgical treatment of chronic pericardial effusion  
and cardiac tamponade *J Thorac Surg* 29 381 1955
- McKusick V A Chronic constrictive pericarditis *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 70 3 1952
- Merrill A J Cholesterol pericarditis *Am Heart J* 16 505 1938
- Miller H Uricchio J E and Philipps R W Acute pericarditis associated with  
infectious mononucleosis *New Engl J Med* 219 136 1953
- Mounsey P The early diastolic sound of constrictive pericarditis *Brit Heart J* 1: 143  
1955
- Perlstein I Sarcoma of the heart *Am J M Sc* 156 214 1918
- Lisch F Über chronische unter dem Bilde der Lebereirrhose verlaufende Pericarditis  
(pericarditische Pseudolebereirrhose) nebst Bemerkungen über die Zuckergußleber  
(Curschmann) *Ztschr f klin Med* 29 395 1896
- Poynton F J A contribution to the subject of rheumatism based upon a study of 52 cases  
in children under five years of age and on an analysis of 100 cases of fatal suppurative  
pericarditis in childhood *Quart J Med* 1 25 1901
- Prichard R W Tumors of the heart *Arch Path* 51 98 1951
- Pyrah L N and Pain A B Acute pericarditis a review of 215 autopsies *J Path &  
Bact* 3 233 1933
- Rose E and Wolferth C C An acute mediastinocardiac reaction following irradiation  
in hyperthyroidism *JAMA* 117 2048 1941
- Rosenbaum F Johnston F D and Alzamora V V Persistent displacement of the  
RST segment in a case of metastatic tumor of the heart *Am Heart J* 27 687 1944
- Rosenbaum M B Hejman D and Del Zar L E Pericarditis aurohemorrhagica  
en la miocarditis cronica chagastica *Rev Argent Cardiol* 22 278 1955
- Rotch T M Absence of resonance on the fifth right intercostal space diagnostic of pericardial  
effusion *Boston M & Surg J* 29 399 421 1878
- Scannell J C Myers G S and Friedlich A L Significance of pulmonary hypertension  
in constrictive pericarditis *Surgery* 3: 184 1952
- Scherer J H and Howe J S Fatal cardiac tamponade following sternal puncture  
*J Lab & Clin Med* 30 460 1945
- Schorf D Ein elektrokardiographisches Zeichen bei Erguß im Herzbeutel *Wien Klin  
Wchnschr* 13 298 1930
- Schmieden V The technique of catholysis *Surg Gyn & Obst* 43 83 1956
- Schott A Experimentelle und klinische Untersuchungen zur Frage der respiratorischen  
Blutdruckschwankungen (pulsus paradoxus) *Ztschr f d ges exper Med* 84 305  
1932
- Shapiro J B and Weiss W Tuberculous pericarditis with effusion *Am J M Sc*  
25 299 1953
- Shipley A M and Winslow N Purulent pericarditis report of five cases in which  
treatment was by pericardiectomy and review of the literature from April 30 1927 to  
Jan 1 1934 *Arch Surg* 57 375 1935
- Smalley R F and Ruddleck J C Acute pericarditis *Ann Int Med* 2 799 1946
- Smith H L and Williams H A Pericarditis II Calcification of the pericardium *Arch  
Int Med* 50 184 1932
- and — V Germinal pericarditis *Arch Int Med* 50 415 1932
- Smith L B and McHugh W P Intrapericardial use of penicillin *Bull U S Army M  
Dept No 89* 106 1945



- Southworth H and Stevenson C E Congenital defects of the pericardium Arch Int Med 61 223 1938
- Spangenberg J J and Rossi Belgrano C Pericarditis brightica algunas consideraciones sobre frecuencia y patogenia Prensa med argent 22 1139 1935
- Stone W J Pericarditis as a complication in pneumonia based on three hundred necropsies JAMA 73 254 1919
- Tengwall E Die schwierige Perikarditis und ihre operative Behandlung Acta chir Scandinav 81 118 1938 Suppl
- Thompson S A and Raisbeck M J Cardio pericardiopexy the surgical treatment of coronary arterial disease by the establishment of adhesive pericarditis Ann Int Med 16 495 1942
- Truesdale P E Low pericardiotomy for acute suppurative pericarditis report of two cases and twenty four new cases from the literature New Engl J Med 208 671 1933
- Van der Mandele L J Studien zum Problem des Pulvis Paradoxus mit besonderer Berücksichtigung seiner klinischen Bedeutung Wien Springer 1925
- Volhard and Schmieden Über Erkennung und Behandlung der Umklammerung des Herzens durch schwierige Perikarditis Klin Wchnschr 2 5 1923
- Ware G W and Conrad H A Diverticula of the pericardium Am J Surg 88 918 1954
- Wenckebach K F Remarks on some points in the pathology and treatment of adherent pericardium Brit M J 1 63 1907
- Beobachtungen bei exsudativer und adhesiver Perikarditis Ztschr f klin Med 71 402 1910
- Über pathologische Atmungs und Thoraxformen Wien Arch f inn Med 1 1 1920
- White P D Chronic constrictive pericarditis Lancet 2 539 1935
- Winter W M Tumors of the heart and pericardium pathology symptomatology and report of nine cases Arch Int Med 48 627 1931
- Zdarsky E and Boyd L J Roentgen Diagnosis of Diseases of the Heart and Great vessels New York Grune & Stratton 1953

## Chapter 15

# Congenital Cardiovascular Defects

### GENERAL REMARKS

Our knowledge about the congenital heart lesions has increased enormously in the last few years. With the widespread use of angiocardiology and cardiac catheterization the observation of a large number of patients during cardiac surgery and the greater opportunity for postmortem examinations it has been shown that the clinical diagnosis of congenital heart lesions is possible in most instances. The problem is similar to the one that existed more than 30 years ago concerning coronary thrombosis and myocardial infarction. With the discovery of the electrocardiographic signs of that disease the diagnosis was made more often with simple clinical methods and today electrocardiography serves in many patients merely to confirm the diagnosis. Similarly, at present cardiac catheterization and angiocardiology are necessary only in a minority of cases unless surgery is contemplated. In most instances the diagnosis is made on physical examination and evaluation of roentgen findings and electrocardiography.

On the following pages only those congenital heart diseases that are seen in patients over 14 years of age will be discussed.

### *Cardiac Catheterization and Angiocardiography*

Cardiac catheterization was discovered by Forssman and used by him and other physicians for clinical research. Such strong opposition arose to the method however that it was soon abandoned. It was Forssman himself who introduced uroselectin into the heart with the aid of a catheter while O. Klein established measurement of the cardiac output by means of right heart catheterization according to the Fick principle. This method became widely accepted and employed only after the publication of the studies of Cournand and his co-workers.

Catheterization enables one to measure the pressure in the right atrium and ventricle as well as in the pulmonary artery.

Normally the pressure in the right atrium varies from minus 4 to plus 4 mm Hg. Average pressures in the right ventricle are 14–20/0 and in the pulmonary artery 23/5 mm Hg. Catheterization also enables us to analyze the oxygen saturation in these parts of the heart and the venae cavae and to introduce opacifying compounds directly into the heart if necessary. The blood flow can

be calculated by using the Fick principle. Inserting a catheter in a pulmonary arteriole permits the pressure in the pulmonary capillaries to be measured and that in the left atrium to be calculated. In rare cases of septal defects the catheter will be found in the left heart proving by its mere presence the diagnosis of an abnormal direct communication.

It is evident that an increased oxygen saturation in the right atrium if compared to the vena cava superior or inferior speaks in favor of an atrial septal defect while an increased saturation in the right ventricle as compared to the other areas will prove the existence of a ventricular septal defect. Catheterization is rarely necessary for the diagnosis of a Fallot syndrome or a patent ductus arteriosus.

The dangers should not be minimized. Trauma to the veins or the endocardium may result in a thrombus and lethal pulmonary embolism. Air embolism has been observed. The mechanical stimulus of the catheter in the ventricle can cause not only arrhythmias but also on rare occasions ventricular fibrillation and death. The mortality is about 4 per thousand.

For the diagnosis of aortic coarctation translumbar aortography has been performed or a catheter has been inserted into an ulnar or brachial artery and pushed up in the aorta. Damage of the aortic wall or the aortic valve has been described so that this method should be used only rarely. For the diagnosis of an aortic or mitral valvular lesion evaluation of the degree of the individual lesions or evaluation of the degree of left ventricular failure from the diastolic left ventricular pressure catheterization of the left heart has been developed. Transbronchial or percutaneous transthoracic puncture of the left atrium is performed.

Angiocardiography causes death in about 2 per cent of the cases and should be performed only to clarify the picture before surgery. A second injection is particularly dangerous because of hypersensitivity and the method is especially risky in very cyanotic children. Sensitivity tests are of little value. A vein is usually exposed and the agent injected in an amount of 50 ml. within one or two seconds. Local venous thrombosis often occurs.

Details of the value of these methods will be discussed in pertinent sections. It is most useful in cyanotic lesions with right to left shunt.

#### *Other Diagnostic Factors*

**Circulation Time** The determination of the circulation time aids in the diagnosis of some congenital abnormalities namely those with a right to left shunt which permits the injected substance to reach peripheral arteries more quickly than normal. The arm to tongue time and the arm to lung time are determined. A shunt of appreciable dimensions is assumed to exist when both agree within 2 seconds. An arm to tongue time of less than 10 seconds speaks in favor of a venous arterial shunt.

**Clubbing** of the fingers or toes can be familial. In this case it is often asymmetrical. It is unilateral or even limited to one finger if it is caused by a local

disturbance of circulation. In hypertrophic osteoarthropathy in congenital heart lesions the proximal bones are involved in addition to the phalanges. Hyperplasia and hypertrophy appear in the soft tissues, the bones become osteoporotic and patients experience pain. More than 60 years ago Bamberger considered an increased peripheral blood flow as an etiologic factor, but still little is known about the mechanism.

*Pulmonary Plethora and Ischemia.* In addition to the division of congenital heart lesions into cyanotic and acyanotic types, they are also classified into those with pulmonary plethora (patent ductus arteriosus, transposition atrial and ventricular septal defects) and pulmonary ischemia (pulmonary stenosis, Fallot's tetralogy, tricuspid atresia).

*Cyanosis.* The depth of cyanosis depends not only upon the degree of the venous arterial shunt but also on the secondary pulmonary vascular changes and polycythemia.

One should be careful not to confuse congenital heart lesions with congenital and acquired forms of methemoglobinemia; the latter has been observed in children on a formula made with well water containing a high content of nitrites.

Severe cyanosis is seen in transposition of the great vessels, actually in children with large hearts and severe cyanosis one should consider this abnormality first. Here the aorta carries unoxygenated blood and the pulmonary artery returns fully oxygenated blood to the lungs. Life is possible only if septal defects or a patent ductus arteriosus coexist. Severe cyanosis also occurs in tricuspid atresia when all blood is shunted from the right into the left atrium. It is also seen in Eisenmenger's complex in pulmonary atresia with a riding aorta and septal defect and occasionally in pulmonary arteriovenous fistulas.

Slight cyanosis occurs in pulmonary stenosis, Fallot's tetralogy, some atrial septal defects and in truncus aortae communis. In Eisenmenger's syndrome cyanosis appears late (at puberty). In atrial septal defects cyanosis may appear in infants and children during crying and coughing when the shunt reverses due to the changes in pressure and the flow goes from right to left.

*Anoxia.* Attacks of sudden anoxia are not rare, particularly in Fallot's syndrome. Morphine (0.5–1.0 mg. per 10 pounds of body weight) is useful.

*Cardiac Pain.* Cardiac pain is occasionally present owing to hypoxia of the heart muscle. It was found in 4.9 per cent of 480 patients with congenital heart disease (Stuckey).

*Squatting.* Taussig pointed out that some children with congenital heart disease among those with Fallot's tetralogy assume a squatting position. The reason is unknown. A compression of the abdomen whereby a larger amount of blood is forced back to the heart has been considered a factor.

*Marfan's Syndrome.* This abnormality is often found in patients with heart disease. One of the most interesting changes is arachnodactyly, or spider fingers. Patients with this syndrome are often thin and slender with underdeveloped muscles and hyperflexible joints. They may have a high arched or cleft palate, a pectus or funnel chest, prominent supraorbital ridges, large ear

lobes sunken eyes with subluxation of the lens and nystagmus the metacarpal metatarsal and phalangeal bones are abnormally long and the distal parts of the fingers attenuated deformities of the feet and kyphoscoliosis are common. Patients look older than they actually are and often have a sad melancholic expression. All these signs are rarely present simultaneously in a given patient and there are many abortive cases. The syndrome occurs in families. In one instance four siblings were affected. It has been called *dystrophia mesodermalis congenita* and is attributed to a general mesenchymal malformation.

Congenital abnormalities of the heart or aorta are found in one third to one half of these patients. The heart usually shows septal defects while congenital aneurysmal dilatations occur of the aorta or pulmonary artery. Dissecting aneurysms occur in the aorta. The observation of aortic regurgitation has been mentioned in another chapter.

*Other Syndromes.* It is estimated that 25 to 50 per cent of the cases of mongolism harbor a congenital heart lesion. Of great interest is Kartagener's syndrome which consists of chronic sinusitis, bronchiectasis and situs inversus totalis.

### *Etiology*

The cause of congenital heart lesions is not entirely clear. In the past lues was often suspected as was consanguinity of the parents, alcoholism, conception in an elderly mother (with toxation products) or many conceptions at short intervals. There is a definite familial tendency.

A very important recent discovery throws new light on the problem. It has been shown that congenital cataract, congenital deafness, hare lip, cleft palate, microcephaly and congenital heart lesions appear in a high percentage of children borne by mothers who had rubella (German measles) in the first three months of pregnancy. This early date is important because in an embryo of seven weeks the heart already possesses its permanent shape and the septa are formed. Of interest is the observation that the above named abnormalities were observed in mothers who had rubella before conception. Other observations showed the occurrence of these congenital abnormalities when the mothers had the disease in the eighth or even the ninth month of pregnancy. A similar syndrome has been observed following infectious mononucleosis. According to some investigators this infection occurs in 90 per cent of cases with German measles while others found it in only 27 per cent. It is assumed that the virus passes through the placenta into the fetus. The variation in the incidence is understandable since the diagnosis of congenital heart disease is made by some authors solely on the basis of a systolic murmur whereas others use more rigid criteria. Possibly as many as 5 per cent of congenital heart lesions may be attributed to rubella or a similar infection but these diseases may be so mild that they can easily be overlooked by both the physician and the patient.

Because of the high incidence of eye, ear and heart abnormalities following rubella in the early months of pregnancy, the interruption of the pregnancy in such cases has been considered. An evaluation of this problem has been written

by Wessell While some authors are in favor of an interruption others are not entirely convinced of its necessity

In this connection the experiments of Gilman Gilbert and Spence are highly revealing They injected pregnant female rats with trypan blue which is bound to proteins and alters the plasma proteins In 19.2 per cent of the litter gross congenital abnormalities were found If rats were given a diet deficient in pteroylglutamic acid during the gestation period fetuses showed ventricular septal defects persistent ductus arteriosus and other anomalies (Baird et al) Congenital cardiac anomalies can be seen in rats and mice after x ray irradiation or as a consequence of anoxia

The exposure to radiation either in the form of fluoroscopy or radiography should be limited during the early months of pregnancy X ray radiation anoxia insulin injections and vitamin A deficiency in rats and other experimental animals may lead to congenital heart lesions in the offspring

*Secondary Phenomena* In patients with congenital heart lesions with and without cyanosis mental retardation is common Growth is also slow Nosebleed and hemoptysis occur and complications such as arterial thrombosis due to polycythemia are observed Marked atherosclerosis develops in the arteries of the lesser circuit (cerebral abscesses either solitary or multiple are not rare particularly when blood reaches the cerebrum without filtration by the lung (they should be treated surgically and with antibiotics)

*Further Remarks* Owing to the appearance of an abnormality in a developing organ in which the evolution of one part often depends to a great extent upon the proper unfolding of another solitary lesions are less common than combined ones

In embryonic development the heart gradually passes through different stages that closely resemble those of the fish amphibian and bird heart Phylogenesis is repeated in ontogenesis Since the development may stop in any stage the heart (or great vessels) in man occasionally resembles the structures found in lower animals

Congenital heart lesions are not especially uncommon for they are found in more than 1 per cent of routine necropsies Many lesions such as persistent right aortic arch coarctation of the aorta or small defects of the ventricular septum may be recognized late in life and are found accidentally since the patient may feel perfectly well

Owing to the early appearance of some of the changes and the slow development of others and due to the activity of compensatory mechanisms these patients often have surprisingly few complaints This occurs despite the fact that examination of arterial blood reveals a status which would hardly be compatible with life had it developed acutely

Congenital heart lesions have been classified into the cyanotic and acyanotic group Acyanotic lesions are exemplified by coarctation of the aorta most cases of patent ductus arteriosus ventricular and atrial septal defects subaortic stenosis and anomalies of the aortic arch In a large percentage of cases cyanosis is a

late event and often is transient (cyanose tardive late cyanosis). This variety is found in atrial or ventricular septal defects or with patent ductus arteriosus. Blood always flows from areas with high pressure to areas with low pressure in the cases mentioned above this is usually from the arterial to the venous side cyanosis is therefore absent. If however during decompensation or because of arterial spasm in the lesser circuit pressure increases the flow is from the right atrium right ventricle or pulmonary artery to the corresponding structure in the left heart venous blood will then intermix with arterial blood and cyanosis appears.

One of the best known and most common complications of a cardiac malformation is subacute bacterial endocarditis noted in 16.5—19.0 per cent of the cases. It seems more frequent in the acyanotic group and is especially common in interventricular septal defects in patent ductus arteriosus and in some asymptomatic lesions like bicuspid aortic valve.

The mechanical strain (jet action) at an abnormal location of the endocardium or endothelium of blood vessels is the main reason for infection with streptococcus viridans.

So called congenital idiopathic hypertrophy of the heart about which a great deal was formerly written is scarcely diagnosed at present. Most cases are now explained by previous myocarditis hypertension in the lesser circuit von Gierke's disease avitaminosis etc. Myocardial fibrosis is a common postmortem finding.

The electrocardiogram in patients with congenital heart disease rarely has decisive value for the diagnosis. In many lesions with augmented strain on the right heart right axis deviation is found. In atrial septal defects widening slurring and notching of the QRS complex is very common. Sometimes the P waves are higher than normal this happens chiefly in pulmonary stenosis with and without a septal defect.

If the congenital heart lesion produces no murmurs differentiation from a cor pulmonale due to pulmonary pathology may be a difficult problem at times.

Congenital abnormalities of the coronary arteries will be considered in the next chapter.

### ATRIAL SEPTAL DEFECTS

*Embryology.* The primitive heart is a simple tube lined with endocardium folds develop in this tube demarcating the various sections. Accordingly the primitive atrium is a single structure. Early in embryonic life a sickle like fold develops from the upper posterior aspect and passes downward toward the atrioventricular border. At the lower border of this fold an opening (the foramen primum) persists temporarily since the septum does not extend sufficiently far. In the meantime a gap forms in the primitive atrial septum near its point of origin (the foramen ovale primum). A second fold appears near the original septum and develops more or less as a ring. It embraces an oval opening (foramen ovale secundum foramen ovale). Ordinarily the first and second septa fuse and

the foramen ovale secundum closes soon after birth. Within the first twelve weeks of life the foramen ovale is closed in 91 per cent of children.

The foramen primum type of lesion is often combined with valvular deformities of the mitral valve. Sometimes a common atrioventricular canal exists. The clinical differentiation between the two types is very difficult.

*Pathology.* Interatrial communications may be mere slits (probe patency) in the region of the foramen ovale (persistent foramen ovale). This is a very common event and is found in approximately 20 per cent of all necropsies. The opening may be 6 to 8 mm in diameter. Under ordinary conditions it has no great importance, but it may explain some disturbances noted in advanced stages of mitral stenosis or emphysema if pressure in the right atrium rises unduly. The foramen is normally closed by a fold. This is pushed open by high pressure in the right atrium and marked cyanosis appears due to the right to left shunt.

Interatrial communications may also result from a failure of the septum primum to descend normally or because of abnormal regression of the septum primum. In these cases the mitral and tricuspid valves often show abnormalities. Atrial septal defects are also caused by agenesis of some parts of the septa. In this type of septal defect the communication between the two atria may be large. In the extreme cases the atrial septum is absent and one speaks of a cor triloculare biventriculare, a three chambered heart with one atrium and two ventricles.

*Incidence.* Atrial septal defect is one of the most common heart lesions in adults and according to statistics it comprises 7—25 per cent of cardiac malformations. In the past it has been frequently overlooked, its symptoms being considered clinically the result of a mitral lesion. The malformation is more common in women than in men.

*Pathologic Physiology.* The flow through the shunt from left to right has been found in some patients to vary from 1.4 to 16 liters per minute. The output of the right ventricle per minute may be four times larger than that of the left ventricle. In spite of the marked increase of flow through the lesser circuit pressure there need not increase. With larger defects there is also at the same time reversed shunt from right to left which causes a fall in the oxygen saturation in the aorta. Secondary vascular changes (spasms and later sclerosis) in the lungs increase the pulmonary arterial pressure. The greater pressure in the left atrium as compared to the right one is explained by some authors by the greater resistance the thick walled left ventricle offers to the inflow of blood as compared to the thin walled right ventricle.

*Symptoms.* The disturbance may exist for many years without symptoms. Often evidence of decompensation appears in patients beyond the age of 30. However, patients are known who have been active much longer. One of our patients is now 72 years old and still active.

The signs are usually those of right heart failure, i. e., edema and hepatic enlargement. Dyspnea and palpitation occur much earlier but they are moderate. Precordial pain may appear.



*Signs* Cyanosis is absent for a long time appearing only when pressure rises in the right atrium and causes the shunt of venous blood in appreciable amounts into the arterial system. Cyanosis may also be noted as an intermittent phenomenon for example during bronchopneumonia coughing spells in the newborn or infants or physical exertion with increase of pressure in the right atrium. Only in the final stage is cyanosis continuous and deep.



FIG. 33 Characteristic roentgenogram of a woman with an atrial septal defect

Examination reveals a small peripheral pulse and a systolic or sometimes a diastolic thrill over the pulmonary artery. The heart seems nutralized on percussion and there is evidence of dilatation to the right and to a lesser extent to the left. A harsh systolic and sometimes a blowing soft diastolic murmur are audible over the pulmonary area. The systolic murmur may be soft and may be confused with an insignificant (functional) murmur if the defect is small. It appears sometimes after years since following birth the pressure in both atria may be equal. The first apical sound is loud. The systolic murmur is explained by eddies created in the dilated pulmonary artery with increased flow of blood (mechanism of relative pulmonary stenosis). The diastolic murmur over the same artery was observed in 10 of 53 cases (Bedford et al.) whirling of blood caused by the abnormally dilated conus or in the dilated right atrium is assumed to be provocative. A relative pulmonary insufficiency is often present (Craham Steell murmur). On the other hand occasionally no murmurs may be heard. Furthermore it is characteristic for this lesion to have the murmurs come and go with changes of posture.

The second pulmonic sound is accentuated and often split

*Roentgen Examination* The radiologic signs usually permit the diagnosis. The heart is enlarged. The prominent arc of the pulmonary artery is typical. The



FIG. 54. Marked widening of the pulmonary arteries in a patient with an atrial septal defect simulating neoplastic masses in the hilar regions.

descent of the main branch of the right pulmonary artery is clearly visible in the right lung field. Even its bifurcation into individual branches may be seen. The lungs are not congested as is ordinarily seen in a mitral stenosis. The left atrium and the aortic knob seem to be small while the right heart is enlarged. The pulsations of the pulmonary arteries are accentuated and a real "hilar dance" occurs. The right atrial appendix may be visible on top of the right atrium (Kjellberg et al.).

Figure 53 was obtained from a 61 year old woman who complained of shortness of breath on exertion for the past 15 years. There was no history of rheumatic fever. Figure 53 shows the prominent conus of the pulmonary artery and the large right hilus. The main branch of the right pulmonary artery is visible. The

heart is enlarged to the right and to the left due to right ventricular dilatation. On fluoroscopy hilar dance was pronounced. The lung fields are clear. The left atrium was enlarged. There was no evidence of a mitral lesion.

A rough systolic murmur was heard over the pulmonary artery.

In some cases a *cœur en sabot* (Vaquez and Bordet) is found. The dilatation of the right ventricle is so marked that this structure forms all but the middle section of the left cardiac border. In the border between the right and left ventricle a small sharp edge is visible that gives the impression of a wooden shoe.

The shadows of the unusually widened pulmonary artery have been confused with masses caused by bronchogenic carcinoma or Hodgkin's disease (figure 54).

In many cases other congenital abnormalities coexist and may render the diagnosis more difficult. The differentiation from some other lesions causing prominence of the pulmonary arc such as ventricular septal defects, patent ductus arteriosus or pulmonary stenosis is usually possible but may be difficult at times. The features which permit the diagnosis of a persistent common atrioventricular canal in patients with an atrial septal defect are discussed by Wakai et al.

**Electrocardiography** In addition to right ventricular hypertrophy the electrocardiogram shows intraventricular conduction disturbances with slurring and notching of the QRS complexes so that sometimes the picture of right bundle branch block is present. Often the P waves are large and rarely the P-R interval is prolonged.

**Catheterization** This method permits the diagnosis immediately if the catheter passes through the septal defect and reaches the left atrium and ventricle. The oxygen saturation in the right atrium is characteristically greater than in the venae cavae as it is in anomalous pulmonary veins or in ventricular septal defect with tricuspid insufficiency. A difference of at least 2 volumes per cent is decisive. Slight differences are seen normally. This finding is missed when the shunt is reversed from right to left; the shunt is often mixed as was discussed above; this happens particularly when emphysema or secondary pulmonary vascular changes raise the pressure in the right atrium.

**Angiocardiography** This procedure shows a large right atrium that remains opacified abnormally long because of the shunting of left atrial blood back into it (recirculation). In the left oblique position the shunt may be visible. If the above named complications cause a shunt from right to left, angiocardiography shows immediate filling of the left atrium.

**Differential Diagnosis** The differentiation of the lesion from an anomalous venous return, ventricular septal defect and patent ductus arteriosus is possible in most cases because of the syndromes which will be discussed in the following pages. Occasionally, however, the diagnosis is difficult when based on clinical findings alone. In pulmonary stenosis the lungs are oligemic. Primary pulmonary hypertension is easily confused with this lesion as is a silent isolated mitral stenosis. High ventricular septal defect with a communication between the left ventricle and right atrium may be confused with an atrial septal defect on the

basis of catheterization data surgery in such cases may have a fatal outcome (Stahlman et al.)

*Lutembacher's Syndrome* A well known complication is a rheumatic mitral stenosis. The combination of an atrial septal defect and mitral stenosis is known as the Lutembacher syndrome. In one series of 60 cases of atrial septal defects mitral stenosis was found clinically 12 times. Some observers find the combination much more rare and we agree with them. Apical diastolic murmurs can be heard in the absence of mitral stenosis when large quantities of blood rush into the ventricle.

The diagnosis of Lutembacher's syndrome is easy when the typical prolonged diastolic apical murmurs of mitral stenosis are present. It may be impossible in the absence of the murmurs since the symptoms and signs are the same as in an uncomplicated atrial septal defect. The left atrium usually does not enlarge presumably owing to the fact that the communication between the atria prevents great congestion in the left atrium and the rise of pressure is transmitted early to the right atrium.

It is astonishing that the changes in the heart and therefore in the dynamics are the same irrespective of whether the septal defect is complicated by a mitral stenosis or not. It has been pointed out that the flow of blood from the left into the right atrium in atrial septal defects may result from the fact that the left atrium lies cephalad to the right and the septal defect lies in a horizontal plane. Thus the arteriovenous shunt may be due simply to gravitational flow.

*Complications* Paradoxical embolism occurs in atrial septal defects and in open foramen ovale. Atrial septal defects are the only congenital heart lesions in which atrial fibrillation is common. Subacute bacterial endocarditis on the other hand is rare.

*Prognosis* Most of those affected succumb before the fiftieth year. Even when a mitral stenosis is present patients may occasionally reach an old age as the case of the oft quoted 74 year old woman shows. She had 11 pregnancies and 3 abortions (Firket quoted by Abbott). Pregnancies usually are tolerated well.

*Surgery* Several types of operations have been recommended. A plastic button or simple suture has been used (Cross, Hufnagel) and many patients have recovered following such intervention. Operation is indicated when evidence appears that the load for the right heart is too great. A high defect (also called patent ostium secundum) is relatively easily closed. Low defects near the valves are closed with difficulty. Valvular anomalies are common in such patients. The heart is larger and symptoms begin earlier.

Buley et al. treated atrial septal defects by atrioseptopexy. Ninety per cent of the patients survived the operation with marked clinical improvement when a patent ostium secundum deformity existed. However 11 of 16 patients succumbed to surgical correction of an ostium primum. One does not operate when a right to left shunt exists.

## ANOMALOUS PULMONARY VEIN DRAINAGE

This anomaly does not seem to be rare and has become better known only after the wider use of cardiac catheterization. The clinical picture is similar to that seen in atrial septal defect. In this anomaly one or more of the main pulmonary veins do not empty into the left atrium but into the azygos vein, the superior or inferior vena cava, or even the coronary sinus vein, thus connecting back into the right atrium. Often the veins drain into a persistent left vena cava superior. If all pulmonary veins drain abnormally, a septal defect must exist to be compatible with life, and even then these individuals usually die in infancy. In the partial form of the anomaly an atrial septal defect may also coexist. When less than 50 per cent of the pulmonary venous blood drains into the right atrium, cyanosis is absent and patients have been known to reach the age of 80 or more.

There are no characteristic findings on physical examination. A systolic and rarely also a diastolic murmur may be heard over the base of the heart. The second pulmonic sound may be split. There is right ventricular hypertrophy and a widened pulmonary artery is seen similar to that observed in atrial septal defects. The abnormal hemodynamic mechanism is the same. The electrocardiogram shows the same changes as seen in atrial septal defect. The differential diagnosis is impossible on clinical grounds but roentgenologic examination is helpful. Often one sees ovoid masses in the lung running parallel to the cardiac shadow, particularly when a pulmonary vein flows into the vena cava inferior. The upper mediastinum shows bulging. Snellen and his co-workers described a figure of eight mass on the upper cardiac mediastinal area. Tomography permits one to follow these abnormal veins and to see their connections, which were mentioned above.

Often the cardiac catheter is pushed into these abnormal veins and arterial blood is withdrawn. Angiocardiography shows the abnormal veins clearly.

Surgical therapy with transplantation of these abnormal veins into the left atrium has been successfully attempted. It is a difficult operation. If one small vein drains abnormally, the portion of the lung from which it comes can be extirpated. Even total anomalous pulmonary venous connection has been corrected surgically with success (Burroughs).

## PATENT INTERVENTRICULAR SEPTUM

*Pathology.* This congenital defect may appear alone or in combination with other lesions. In its pure form it is not as common as generally believed.

Uncomplicated small patent interventricular septum is often called *maladie de Roger* after one of the first authors to describe it. According to other authors the term Roger's disease should be used only in those cases in which the defect is within the muscular septum. We do not see any reason why all pure ventricular septal defects should not be called Roger's disease.

In lower muscular defects the murmur is in a lower intercostal space. However, in a majority of cases (90 per cent) the defect is situated at the membranous

septum (undefended space) Therefore it lies just beneath the aortic valves and communicates with the right ventricle behind the septal cusp of the tricuspid valve Its diameter varies from 0.2–3 cm in most cases The defect develops if the bulbar septum fails to deslind properly and does not close the foramen inter ventriculare in the interventricular septum The defect becomes relatively smaller when the heart grows

Often the opening is very small and only permits the passage of a small probe while in other instances it may be wide enough to admit a thumb If the interventricular septum fails to develop a cor triloculare biatriatum results Children with this condition rarely live beyond the age of four years Acquired septal defects are discussed in the chapter on coronary thrombosis

*Symptoms* Many patients are fully active and free from complaints for many years This happens particularly in those with a small opening when the lesion is often overlooked There are no characteristic symptoms but dyspnea and palpitation may appear in the late stages Fatigue is one of the earliest symptoms

*Signs* There is no cyanosis for a long time since the blood flows from the left ventricle (with its higher pressure) into the right ventricle In later years complications such as pulmonary emphysema may increase the pressure in the right ventricle so that cyanosis appears at first only on exertion but eventually continuously In large defects the pulmonary resistance is increased very early and a reversed shunt may occur

Physical examination reveals a prolonged systolic thrill over the third or fourth intercostal space to the left of the sternum This is present in only a third of the cases Frequently in the early stages the size of the heart is normal general (right and left ventricular) dilatation may appear later There is no characteristic configuration The pulmonary arc may be prominent and the hilar shadows are increased pulsations of the hilus ( hilar dance ) may also occur The underdevelopment of the aortic knob may be explained by the fact that much of the output of the left ventricle is lost into the right ventricle As much as 50 per cent of the left ventricular output may be forced into the right ventricle

There is a very loud prolonged harsh rasping systolic murmur with a point of maximum intensity in the third fourth or fifth interspaces to the left of the sternum often it is transmitted to the back This murmur as in other stenotic mechanisms may be louder when the defect is small (figure 55) It may be absent when the same pressures prevail in both ventricles The murmur usually is of steady intensity that is neither crescendo nor decrescendo it may become louder when the patient lies in the left lateral position It may or may not be widely transmitted The second pulmonic sound may be accentuated whereas the second aortic sound is often softer than usual A diastolic apical or pulmonary murmur explained by turbulences and eddies in the left ventricle or pulmonary artery may be heard

Figure 55 shows the stethogram of a child with ventricular septal defect The electrocardiogram is often normal and never characteristic

Patients may reach old age despite the defect. Fifty per cent of patients with large septal defects die early in childhood. Open heart surgery with extracorporeal circulation now saves many lives.

*Catheterization and Angiocardiography* Cardiac catheterization reveals a high oxygen saturation in the right ventricle; this saturation is higher in the upper parts of the right ventricle than in the right atrium. Later in the disease if pulmonary resistance and pulmonary pressure rise, a right to left shunt occurs and catheterization is of no help. It also does not yield sufficiently clear cut data when the opening is small. Occasionally the catheter may be pushed into the left ventricle and even into the aorta.



FIG 55 Persistent loud murmur filling all systole over the fourth left intercostal space parasternally in an 8 year old child with a ventricular septal defect.

Angiocardiography is of no help with small openings. With large defects persistent filling or refilling of the right ventricle may be seen. An early filling of the left ventricle is only minimal.

*Differential Diagnosis* Differentiation from other congenital cardiac lesions is difficult but is usually possible. X-ray and fluoroscopy may reveal findings very similar to those in an atrial septal defect (prominent pulmonary arc, enlargement of the hilar vessels and hilar dance). The widening of the pulmonary artery and its branches generally is more pronounced in atrial septal defects. The systolic murmur in cases of a ventricular septal defect is heard best at a more caudal area; it is more prolonged and rougher.

If pulmonary pressure rises a relative pulmonary insufficiency may appear. The differential diagnosis from pulmonary stenosis may be difficult. In this condition the lungs are however oligemic. Septal defects can be confused with mitral lesions. Differentiation usually is easy by means of the location of the points of maximum intensity and the character of the murmurs.

*Complications* Heart block is an occasional finding. This block is usually complete but sometimes only partial. Congenital heart block is not necessarily precipitating and it may occur in the absence of a septal defect. Its presence should be expected more constantly than is actually the case since the bundle of His is situated just behind the undefended space. Perhaps its rarity may be explained by the fact that the bundle develops before the interventricular septum is

formed. Masses of connective tissue often interrupt the path of the atrioventricular conduction system. Since cellular infiltrations of the inflammatory type with excessive growth of connective tissue are commonly found, fetal myocarditis has occasionally been assumed. However the heart block in patients with ventricular septal defects often is not congenital. It develops slowly in the first months or years of life because of thickening and development of fibrotic strands at the edges of the defect.

Subacute bacterial endocarditis which develops in more than one third of the patients represents a more serious complication. The vegetations are usually situated around the interventricular opening in the right ventricle where the blood pressed through the opening impinges on the wall. Therefore pulmonary rather than systemic embolism is more common.

*Surgery.* Open cardiac operation with the use of a mechanical pump oxygenator is promising and is preferable to the closed methods. Sixteen of 20 patients who were operated on survived and there was only one death among the last 13 of the series (Duane et al.). The operation was successful in some patients despite the presence of pulmonary hypertension and the presence of a right to left shunt associated with the left to right shunt.

#### PULMONARY STENOSIS

*Pathology.* *Incidence.* Like congenital aortic stenosis pulmonary stenosis with normal aortic root may involve the infundibulum (conus), the orifice itself or the supraventricular part of the artery. The degree of stenosis varies widely. The opening of the valves may amount to only a few millimeters. Sometimes a dome shaped funnel projects into the pulmonary artery. Isolated pulmonary stenosis is usually valvular. The main right or left pulmonary artery may be absent with a greatly diminished vascularity of one lung.

Pulmonary stenosis is more common than was assumed in the past. Often it has not been recognized. Not rarely the pulmonary valves are bicuspid.

Uncomplicated stenosis of the pulmonary artery is compatible with long life — patients may live to the age of 60 years or more. In combination with a ventricular septal defect the lesion is one of the more common congenital anomalies. Widening of the area just beneath the stenosis is likewise a common finding as is dilatation of the pulmonary artery beyond an incomplete stenosis. In patients with an infundibular stenosis an additional (third) ventricle may seem to be present above the stenosis. In instances of a pronounced stenosis of the pulmonary orifice the left ventricle may seem smaller than normal.

*Symptoms.* Patients complain of dyspnea, fatigue and weakness, anginal pain and syncope. Often however complaints appear late in life since a slight reduction of the pulmonary circulation will not cause oxygen unsaturation and cyanosis. When there is a marked decrease of oxygen saturation squatting occurs.

*Signs.* There is evidence of right ventricular hypertrophy on palpation. Usually a loud systolic murmur is audible over the pulmonary ostium unless there is a complete atresia. It is often accompanied by a thrill. The second pul



monic sound may be absent or weak but in some cases particularly in those with a stenosis of the supra-auricular type it is loud. As in aortic stenosis the systolic murmur may be diamond shaped in the stethogram (figure 56). It is often heard over the back and is often late systolic. If there is infundibular stenosis the murmur is heard lower in the third or fourth intercostal space.

Occasionally a diastolic murmur is also heard since owing to malformation or a relative type of regurgitation the pulmonic valves are incompetent. It is remarkable that this murmur is not heard more regularly with a stenosis of the orifice itself for complete closure of the valves in diastole should be impossible in most cases of stenosis. However in a similar way the diastolic murmur of an aortic insufficiency is often absent in an advanced aortic stenosis of rheumatic or arteriosclerotic origin. The second pulmonic sound is soft or absent.

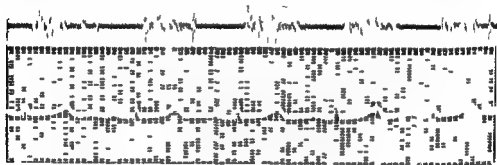


FIG. 56. Diamond shaped murmur over the second left intercostal space parasternally in a patient with pulmonary stenosis.

X-ray examination reveals in patients with an incomplete stenosis of the pulmonary valves a widening of the supra-auricular portion of the pulmonary artery that is missing in infundibular stenosis. This is explained in a similar way as the widening of the aorta above an aortic stenosis. The lungs are oligemic; they are however normally vascularized when the stenosis is mild. The pulmonary vessels are small.

The electrocardiogram shows large P waves and marked right ventricular hypertrophy. The T waves are inverted in V1 and V2.

*Catheterization.* This shows a typical finding. The blood pressure in the right ventricle is high and it suddenly falls when the catheter reaches the pulmonary artery. The lowest pressure gradient is 10 to 15 mm. Hg. The oxygen saturation is the same everywhere. Figure 57 shows the sudden fall of pressure when the catheter leaves the right ventricle and reaches the pulmonary artery in a 42-year-old man with an asymptomatic pulmonary stenosis.

*Angiocardiography.* There is dilatation of the right atrium and ventricle. The stenosis is sometimes visible (20 per cent) but the picture is often misleading. Not much is gained by this test.

Not rarely the high pressure in the right atrium forces the foramen ovale open and marked cyanosis appears suddenly because of a marked right to left shunt. With an open foramen ovale the left atrium fills early. The combination of pulmonary stenosis and open foramen ovale is known as the trilogy of Fallot.

*Differential Diagnosis* In pure cases the differentiation from ventricular septal defect is usually easy because in pulmonary stenosis the point of maximum intensity of the systolic murmur is located higher (in the second intercostal space). But sometimes it may be sufficiently low to cause confusion. The loud systolic murmur over the pulmonary area in atrial septal defects combined with

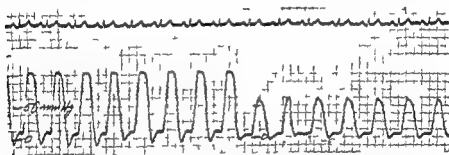


FIG. 5. Forty-two year old man with pulmonary stenosis (see figure 56). The pressure falls suddenly and appreciably when the catheter is moved from the right ventricle into the pulmonary artery.

a prominent pulmonary area may also cause mistakes. Under these circumstances the frequent absence of the second pulmonary sound in pulmonary stenosis may help. In pulmonary stenosis the lungs are oligemic. One must also distinguish the lesion from Fallot's tetralogy and Ebstein's disease.

*Complications* More often than in any other congenital cardiac disease pulmonary tuberculosis develops due to the abnormal blood supply to the lungs. This is somewhat puzzling since the circulation in the bronchial arteries is not directly reduced. Soulie et al. found that pulmonary tuberculosis was 3 to 4 times as common in patients with diminished blood flow to the lungs as in the general population. Moreover the evolution of the illness was more acute.

*Surgery* Mild stenosis of the pulmonary orifice is not treated surgically. Patients may live to the age of 75 years. In advanced infundibular stenosis resection and dilatation is done (Brock). The operation is best performed when the patient is between the ages of 5 and 12 years. Danger increases in older individuals. The mortality averages about 10 per cent. Campbell and Brock report only 3 deaths in 52 consecutive operations. The vast majority of those who survive showed improvement. The approach in Brock's operation is from the right ventricle.

## EISENMENGER'S SYNDROME

In Eisenmenger's triad or complex a large high interventricular septal defect exists causing the aorta to ride over both ventricles. There is marked right ventricular hypertrophy and no pulmonary stenosis. It has been pointed out recently that separation of a large ventricular septal defect from Eisenmenger's syndrome seems impossible clinically and even morphologically. Symptoms and signs are those of a large ventricular septal defect in which a riding aorta must be present.

Cyanosis appears late in these patients since the shunt is initially from the left ventricle to the right one. However, secondary changes in the pulmonary vessels raise the blood pressure in the lesser circuit to a degree that the shunt becomes reversed—that is, from right to left. Sometimes the pressure in the lesser circuit may approximate that in the systemic circulation. In these cases the right ventricle may be markedly dilated and signs of right ventricular hypertrophy appear in the electrocardiogram.

The roentgenologic signs are those discussed earlier in connection with ventricular septal defects.

Catheterization shows an increased pressure in the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery, plus the other findings listed in the preceding chapter. Roentgen examination and catheterization permit the exclusion of a pulmonary stenosis and therefore a tetralogy of Fallot. Angiocardiography shows simultaneous filling of pulmonary artery and aorta. It is difficult to differentiate the lesion from essential pulmonary hypertension.

There is no surgical therapy.

## TETRALOGY OF FALLOT

*Incidence Pathology* This syndrome is found in 75 per cent of adults with congenital heart disease exhibiting clubbing of the fingers and cyanosis. Actually it consists of only two defects. First there is a pulmonary stenosis which is most often infundibular and in a small minority of the cases valvular. Second there is a very large interventricular septal defect which, as discussed in the preceding section, gives the picture of a riding aorta. With the pulmonary stenosis varying from so slight a form that separation from Eisenmenger's triad is impossible to complete atresia, and with variations of the size of the ventricular septal defect, countless variations are seen. Often the foramen ovale is patent.

Sometimes a patent ductus arteriosus coexists and makes the diagnosis more difficult. Then cyanosis may be absent. Large anastomoses exist between the bronchial and pulmonary arteries. In cases with pulmonary atresia, often the lungs are supplied only by the bronchial arteries. A persistent right aortic arch is found in 20 per cent of the cases.

*Symptoms and Signs* Cyanosis appears at birth or after a few years, since the pulmonary stenosis raises the pressure in the right ventricle leading to a right to left shunt. Squatting is said to be very characteristic (Lauzig). Poly-

cytopenia is marked. There is stunting of growth. Attacks of unconsciousness occur. Brain abscesses are a not infrequent complication.

The heart is often a little enlarged and boot shaped (*cœur en sabot*) and the right ventricle forms a large part of the left cardiac border. The lungs are oligemic and the hilar are small. The concavity in the area of the cardiac waist is conspicuous owing to the absence of a pulmonary conus and a small pulmonary artery. The second aortic sound may be loud over the pulmonary area. The second sound is not split. A systolic murmur and thrill may be found over the base of the heart. Often these are absent since the pulmonary orifice is atretic and the rising aorta with a large ventricular septal defect does not cause murmurs. The aortic arch is often on the right side; this is an important finding if surgery is contemplated. The bronchial arteries are enlarged.

**Laboratory Findings:** The electrocardiogram shows large I waves in all standard leads particularly in lead II. Right axis deviation and signs of right ventricular hypertrophy are common. The P waves are very large in V1.

With angiocardiology the pulmonary artery and aorta fill simultaneously with the dye. The picture of the upper left cardiac border will vary in complete pulmonary atresia and in moderate stenosis. In rare cases the degree of pulmonary stenosis can be ascertained. In the left oblique position the aorta may be seen originating from the right ventricle.

With cardiac catheterization the tip of the catheter may be found in the aorta. Pressure in the right ventricle may reach values of 100/5 mm Hg. The pressure in the pulmonary artery has been found low in those subjects in whom the catheter can pass the stenosis. The catheter may be pushed into the aorta and pressure in the aorta and pulmonary artery may be identical. In some cases the localization and the degree of pulmonary stenosis cannot be determined with angiocardiology and catheterization. The oxygen saturation of the blood in the right ventricle is identical with or even higher than that of the right atrium.

**Differential Diagnosis:** This is simple if the patient is over 3 years old for most patients with other severe cyanotic congenital abnormalities have died by this time. Some forms of truncus arteriosus and pseudotruncus cannot be separated earlier. The differentiation from the Eisenmenger syndrome is difficult since those cases of Fallot's syndrome with a slight pulmonary stenosis have very similar findings. A complete transposition of the vessels will also have to be considered. Pulmonary stenosis with atrial septal defect and patent ductus arteriosus with right to left shunt cause similar syndromes.

**Prognosis: Surgery:** Most patients succumb early to the lesion although one man was known to reach the age of 59 years and a woman 64 years (Mirquis). The impact of surgery on the duration of life cannot be estimated at present. In the absence of dyspnea and squatting surgery is not justified. There is no doubt that in patients with marked cyanosis, dyspnea and convulsions marked improvement follows surgery. The convulsions seem to be caused by a sudden marked right to left shunt and are treated by the administration of oxygen and Demerol.

Three types of operation are in use. First there is the Blalock-Taussig operation, now classical, in which an arteriovenous fistula is created. The pulmonary ischemia is improved by the creation of an anastomosis between the subclavian or the innominate artery and the pulmonary artery. The operation is performed when there is evidence that a significant pulmonary circulation directly from the right ventricle is absent. A pulmonary artery and systemic arteries as well must be present for the anastomosis. The necessary pressure gradient must prevail in the arteries. The mortality from this operation was at first about 18 per cent but soon fell to about 3 per cent. In spite of great temporary improvement in individual survivors it should be kept in mind that one creates a large ductus arteriosus which strains the circulation and the heart. A second operation was introduced by Potts and his collaborators in which the aorta is anastomosed side to side with the pulmonary artery. Brock's procedure represents a third operation. In this the pulmonary stenosis is attacked from the right ventricle. This procedure is discussed in the section on pulmonary stenosis and should be the preferred method whenever feasible. Surgery is preferably done when the patient is between the ages of 2 and 15.

A follow-up study by Potts et al. of 100 children six to eight years after operation showed good results in 68 per cent and fair ones in 16 per cent. Direct vision intracardiac surgery employing controlled crossed circulation has been used (Lillehei et al.).

### TRICUSPID ATRESIA

In this lesion a stenosis or atresia of the tricuspid orifice exists. Blood reaches the left heart via a large atrial septal defect. Blood reaches the lungs also with the aid of the bronchial arteries or a patent ductus arteriosus. The right ventricle is very small and often is only rudimentary. Pulmonary atresia or a ventricular septal defect may also be present.

Patients with this lesion show a progressive general cyanosis from birth on. Sometimes a peculiar unexplained paroxysmal dyspnea appears. The heart is larger and a noncharacteristic systolic murmur is audible to the left of the sternum at the base of the heart. A murmur may be missing. Because of the larger left ventricle the apex beat may be heaving. There is no pulmonary cone and the lungs are oligemic.

In the electrocardiogram the P waves are large and there is a fairly characteristic left axis deviation in about 90 per cent of the patients. This finding in cyanotic patients with a congenital heart lesion should arouse suspicion of the presence of a tricuspid atresia. Rarely there is no axis deviation.

Catheterization of the heart reveals that the blood pressure in the right atrium is high and that the oxygen content of the atrium is higher than that of the ventricles because of the presence of an atrial septal defect. The overall shunt of course is from right to left. Angiocardiography shows small pulmonary arteries which are reached by the dye after opacification of the aorta. The catheter

may be inserted into the left atrium and ventricle because of the septal defect

The success of the Blalock-Taussig operation depends upon the size of the atrial septal defect

### EBSTEIN'S DISEASE

This congenital abnormality involves changes of the tricuspid valve. While the anterior leaflet is often normally attached, the rest of the leaflets, particularly the posterior one, is displaced downward toward the right ventricle. The leaflets are usually fused to form a membranous structure which extends down into the right ventricle like a basket. Parts of the leaflets are fused with the septum or the free wall of the ventricle. Thus part of the ventricle is included into the right atrium and the actual right ventricle is small. The ventricular portion proximal to the valves is very thin. An atrial septal defect is usually present. Often the leaflets do not arise from the annulus fibrosus but originate deeper. Signs and symptoms depend to a large degree on the size of the atrial septal defect which is always present.

Both dyspnea on exertion and palpitation appear early.

These patients show cyanosis occasionally even at birth. The heart is enlarged and clubbing is present. However cyanosis may appear late and the circulation need not be changed much with mild deformities. The pulmonary markings are often decreased. Systolic apical murmurs and gallop rhythm over the apical area as well as arrhythmias are common. The P-R interval may be prolonged. Paroxysmal tachycardia may occur (Brown et al). Tall P waves may also be observed. Right bundle branch block is common.

Poentgenography shows rather characteristic findings. The right atrium is very large, the aorta is narrow and the lungs are oligemic.

Catheterization shows equal pressure in both atria and the catheter may be placed in the left atrium. With the catheter in the right ventricle severe arrhythmias occur often.

Angiocardiography shows a small right ventricle and a very large right atrium which empties slowly. This examination is rarely necessary.

Differential diagnosis should consider pulmonary stenosis with atrial right to left shunt, atrial septal defect, patent foramen ovale, tricuspid atresia and Fallot's tetralogy.

Ebstein's disease is not amenable to surgery. One patient with Ebstein's anomaly reached the age of 79 (Adams and Hudson).

### CONGENITAL AORTIC STENOSIS

The occasional discovery of an atresia or stenosis of the aortic valves involving the conus, the valvular area, or the supravalvular part of the aorta was mentioned in the chapter on aortic stenosis. This lesion is often combined with other congenital defects such as atresia of the mitral valve, patent septa, or patent ductus arteriosus.

These rare abnormalities are caused by an abnormal development of the bulbus cordis.

One should consider the possibility of this lesion when a rough systolic murmur is heard over the right second intercostal space in an infant. This murmur may be transmitted to the cardiac apex. The second aortic sound is often normal.

### PATENT DUCTUS ARTERIOSUS

The ductus arteriosus (often named after Botallus although he was not the first to describe it) plays an important role in fetal circulation and usually closes functionally within a few weeks after birth. Only in some cases does an opening remain after the third month of postfetal life. Asphyxia seems to retard early closure (Kjellberg et al.). One is permitted to speak of a 'persistent ductus arteriosus' only if this link between the aorta and pulmonary artery persists for a longer time. This lesion is much more common in females than in males. Delayed closure may take place after the lapse of years.

*Incidence.* Among 89 cases of congenital heart disease discovered in school children the condition was found in 20, i. e. 23 per cent. It has been estimated that at one time 20,000 adults in the United States had a persistent patency of the ductus arteriosus. The incidence is said to be greater in the first born.

*Pathology.* The duct may be so short that there is practically only a fistula between the pulmonary artery and the aorta. In other cases the duct is rather long. It may be patent only for a bristle or wide enough to admit a thumb. In the latter case paradoxical embolism may occur. The diameter of the duct is greater at the aortic end than at the pulmonary end.

*Mechanism.* Owing to the high intra-aortic pressure arterial blood is shunted into the pulmonary artery and therefore is forced to pass through the lungs for a second time. While the flow is ordinarily directed from the aorta to the pulmonary artery it may be reversed. This happens not only in terminal stages but also when infants cry or suckle so that pressure in the lesser circuit rises. A similar situation may arise when the lesion is combined with other defects. The volume of blood shunted may vary from 4 to 10 liters per minute. In spite of the enormous increase of blood flow in the lungs pulmonary arterial pressure may be normal. With the development of an increased peripheral resistance in the lesser circuit and an increase of pulmonary arterial pressure a reversal of flow may occur with marked cyanosis often less pronounced in the head and right arm.

*Symptoms and Signs.* These depend chiefly upon the width of the communication. Patients with a patent ductus arteriosus may lead an active life without any handicap if the opening is small. Complaints may appear early (even in childhood) and the diagnosis is easier when the communication is broad. Cyanosis and polycythemia should arouse the suspicion of a complication. The growth of the patient is delayed. Fatigue, dyspnea, palpitation and chest pain occur. The diagnosis is not always easy and — particularly in cases in early childhood — may present great difficulties.

When regurgitation is considerable it may amount to 75 per cent of the output of the left ventricle. This results in a water hammer pulse, capillary pulse and a low diastolic blood pressure as in aortic regurgitation.

A systolic (rarely a diastolic) thrill is palpable over the pulmonary artery. Cardiac size may be normal unless a large communication causes right and left ventricular dilatation. The pulmonary artery is markedly dilated. If prominent on the left cardiac border it causes "nutrization". This was known in older literature as Gerhardt's ribbon dullness. The conus of the pulmonary artery is not always pronounced. Often the heart is normal in size and the left atrium may be slightly enlarged.

With small communications a systolic murmur is often heard in the second intercostal space to the left of the sternum (Libson's murmur). This is the only auscultatory finding even with broad communications in children up to the fourth or fifth year of life. A diastolic apical murmur may appear even in the first month of life. In persistent right aortic arch a diastolic murmur is heard to the right of the sternum. Later in typical cases there is a continuous systolic and diastolic murmur with systolic accentuation (machinery murmur) due to the fact that blood is shunted from the aorta into the pulmonary artery in systole as well as in diastole. The second pulmonary sound is accentuated and the pulmonary vessels may show evidence of increased pressure. In some cases no murmurs are audible if pressures in the aorta and pulmonary artery are equal.

As in aortic insufficiency, anginal pain may appear.

At times the x-ray picture of the heart is similar to that of a patent atrial septum or an incomplete pulmonary stenosis. The lung fields showing pleonemia or oligemia respectively permit the diagnosis.

The electrocardiogram is often normal since the increased burden is laid upon the right and left ventricles. Hypertrophy of both in a more or less parallel manner may prevent the appearance of an axis deviation.

**Catheterization. Angiocardiography.** The best sign is passage of the catheter through the duct. The oxygen saturation of the blood in the pulmonary artery is greater than in the right ventricle. Angiocardiography sometimes shows a small filling defect in the pulmonary artery because of the mass of arterial blood shunted from the aorta. The dye may be found for an abnormally long time in the left ventricle. The ductus itself may sometimes be observed in the left anterior oblique position. A diverticulum-like dilatation is sometimes seen in the aorta at the orifice of the ductus. Retrograde aortography leads to an early filling of the pulmonary artery.

**Differential Diagnosis.** The distinction from an atrial and ventricular septal defect and from a venous hum in anemia must be considered.

Even if all the characteristic signs seem to be present one must take care not to confuse the lesion with an aortic-pulmonary septal defect, a left ventricle-right atrium shunt in a high interventricular septal defect, or rupture of an aneurysm of the right aortic sinus into the right ventricle or arteriovenous pulmonary fistula.



The diagnosis is more difficult when only a systolic murmur is present

*Complications* About 30 to 40 per cent of the patients used to succumb to subacute bacterial endocarditis. This lesion is usually located around the duct and in the wall of the pulmonary artery where blood from the aorta strikes the vessel. Approximately 15 per cent develop a pulmonary aneurysm which may rupture.

Another large group of patients develops congestive heart failure. Nevertheless these patients may reach the age of 60 without awareness of the lesion and survival to 79 years is known. Congestive heart failure develops early when all signs are distinct. A patent ductus may close spontaneously.

The combination of patency of the ductus arteriosus with other lesions is common. In some cases stenosis of the pulmonary valves for instance patency of the ductus arteriosus is a necessary complication to prolong or even to maintain life. In patients who live beyond childhood uncomplicated ductus arteriosus is however the rule.

Reversed blood flow from the pulmonary artery into the aorta due to pulmonary vascular changes is a serious complication. These changes (fibrous intimal proliferation) are sometimes present at birth.

*Surgery* The diagnosis of patency of the ductus arteriosus has assumed importance since as Gross showed (1930) the duct may be successfully closed by ligation.

The decision to operate on a patient with a patent ductus arteriosus is fraught with difficulty. One must at first rule out the existence of other congenital lesions. Complications during or immediately after the operation create a mortality of about 5 per cent when all cases operated on are included. In experienced hands the operation results in a mortality that is now less than 1 per cent. Some of the earlier patients succumbed to acute infections; this is prevented at present by administration of penicillin. Occasionally the duct is very short and for practical purposes an arteriovenous fistula between the aorta and pulmonary artery exists. In these cases ligation is impossible but successful surgery has been done.

Patients with patent ductus arteriosus should be carefully watched and the operation performed between the ages of 8 and 12 years. If the patient is 35 years or older and in good condition operation is unnecessary. Moreover no surgery should be undertaken in patent ductus arteriosus with a reversed flow since the high pressure in the lesser circuit often leads to acute right heart failure.

The danger of operation on the other hand is opposed by the ever present possibility of the development of subacute bacterial endocarditis and decompensation. Therefore every case must be judged according to its own merits. It is however clear that patients who had subacute bacterial endocarditis impending decompensation or those with marked enlargement of the right and left ventricles need operative intervention. Complete cure has been reported repeatedly following the operation in cases already complicated by subacute bacterial endocarditis. The operation should not be undertaken in children under the age of 6 years since delayed spontaneous closure does occur. The clearer the

evidence is that a wide communication exists with marked shunting of blood (low diastolic blood pressure enlargement of the heart) the more likely a shortened life and the clearer the indication for operation

The persistence of murmurs of a patent ductus arteriosus after its ligation is an interesting problem. Actually ligation does not obliterate the duct and does not prevent the formation of eddies. It is probable however that in patients in whom a diastolic murmur persisted the duct has not been successfully ligated. Recanalization has occurred with simple ligation in 10 per cent of the cases operated on. This reason plus the added fact that a pulmonary aneurysm may be present has made division of the duct and careful suture of both ends the method of choice.

### COARCTATION (ISTHMUS STENOSIS) OF THE AORTA

*Incidence* This interesting anomaly, a narrowing or complete occlusion of the aorta after the departure of the large arteries is not uncommon as many believe. It is said to occur in one of every 1000—1500 necropsies.

The malformation is 4 to 5 times as common in males as in females. Although it is often overlooked the diagnosis is easy if a search for certain signs is made. The lesion has been observed in brothers (Klemola).

*Pathology* Two varieties are recognized. In the infantile type the stenosis involves the aortic isthmus between the origin of the left subclavian artery and the ductus arteriosus. Sometimes this part of the aorta is converted into a fibrous cord. The ductus arteriosus is usually patent, the circulation in utero persists and there is no collateral circulation. Often additional malformations coexist. The lesion is serious and afflicted children die within one year.

The adult type consists of a short narrowing or atresia at or before or just below the insertion of the ductus arteriosus which is usually but not always closed. The amount of stenosis varies considerably and milder grades are compatible with long life. In one oft cited patient death occurred in the ninety second year. A narrowing of the aorta in this area for 1—2 mm. occurs physiologically.

Since the time of Skoda the development of the lesion has been associated with the physiologic closure of the ductus due to an extension of the obliterative process of the ductus into the aorta. Some facts speak against this conception. Thus the ductus may be patent in some cases of coarctation of the aorta. An abnormal junction or abnormal regression of the primitive branchial arteries is responsible.

Not rarely there is complete occlusion (atresia). The lesion may occur far down in the thoracic aorta and even in the abdominal aorta down to the iliac arteries. The aortic valves are bicuspid in 25 to 40 per cent of the cases. In 10 per cent the aorta is hypoplastic. If the ductus arteriosus is patent and brings venous blood into the aorta the oxygen saturation of blood in the head and upper extremities is normal but in the lower extremities it is subnormal. These parts may be cyanotic.

The diagnosis is more difficult when only a systolic murmur is present

*Complications* About 30 to 40 per cent of the patients used to succumb to subacute bacterial endocarditis. This lesion is usually located around the duct and in the wall of the pulmonary artery where blood from the aorta strikes the vessel. Approximately 15 per cent develop a pulmonary aneurysm which may rupture.

Another large group of patients develops congestive heart failure. Nevertheless patients may reach the age of 60 without awareness of the lesion and survival to 79 years is known. Congestive heart failure develops early when all signs are distinct. A patent ductus may close spontaneously.

The combination of patency of the ductus arteriosus with other lesions is common. In some cases of stenosis of the pulmonary valves for instance patency of the ductus arteriosus is a necessary complication to prolong or even to maintain life. In patients who live beyond childhood uncomplicated ductus arteriosus is however the rule.

Reversed blood flow from the pulmonary artery into the aorta due to pulmonary vascular changes is a serious complication. These changes (fibrous intimal proliferation) are sometimes present at birth.

*Surgery* The diagnosis of patency of the ductus arteriosus has assumed importance since as Gross showed (1939) the duct may be successfully closed by ligation.

The decision to operate on a patient with a patent ductus arteriosus is fraught with difficulty. One must at first rule out the existence of other congenital lesions. Complications during or immediately after the operation create a mortality of about 5 per cent when all cases operated on are included. In experienced hands the operation results in a mortality that is now less than 1 per cent. Some of the earlier patients succumbed to acute infections; this is prevented at present by administration of penicillin. Occasionally the duct is very short and for practical purposes an arteriovenous fistula between the aorta and pulmonary artery exists. In these cases ligation is impossible but successful surgery has been done.

Patients with patent ductus arteriosus should be carefully watched and the operation performed between the ages of 8 and 12 years. If the patient is 35 years or older and in good condition operation is unnecessary. Moreover no surgery should be undertaken in patent ductus arteriosus with a reversed flow since the high pressure in the lesser circuit often leads to acute right heart failure.

The danger of operation on the other hand is opposed by the ever present possibility of the development of subacute bacterial endocarditis and decompensation. Therefore every case must be judged according to its own merits. It is however clear that patients who had subacute bacterial endocarditis impending decompensation or those with marked enlargement of the right and left ventricles need operative intervention. Complete cure has been reported repeatedly following the operation in cases already complicated by subacute bacterial endocarditis. The operation should not be undertaken in children under the age of 6 years since delayed spontaneous closure does occur. The clearer the



FIG. 58 Notching of the ribs in a patient with coarctation of the aorta

The mechanism of the hypertension is still disputed. Animal experiments suggest that this is not due to mechanical factors but to an interference with the blood supply to the kidneys which causes the release of pressor substances. If this were the case an increased pressure should also be expected in the lower extremities. There is some evidence that peripheral vasoconstriction is general in these cases. Unknown mechanisms may also interplay. The blood pressure may remain elevated after successful therapy but any elevation of blood pressure may persist even after removal of the cause.

Coarctation of the aorta should always be suspected when high blood pressure is detected in a young individual and is not readily explained by a positive family history of hypertension.

As stated earlier the absence of a femoral pulse should always make one suspicious of an aortic coarctation in an adult. In children however the femoral artery may pulsate (Gruner and Herbst).

The electrocardiogram often shows left axis deviation and evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy.

*Roentgenography.* The diagnosis is usually established by characteristic x-ray findings. In the left anterior oblique position a defect in the aortic outline can be seen.

Very important are the erosions of ribs. As the result of the widening and the strong pulsations of the intercostal arteries erosions appear on the lower part of some of the ribs; these can be easily demonstrated (figure 58). The erosions are absent from the first two ribs and they may be missed in the last three. They are present in about 75 per cent of patients with coarctation. The scalloping is due mainly to the tortuosity of the arteries; actually it is not on the lower border of the ribs but is found at the junction between the main bodies of the ribs and the thin portion that forms the costal groove. Thus abnormality has also been seen unilaterally in other lesions (tetralogy of Fallot). Notching of the ribs on the left side alone occurs when the right subclavian artery arises distal to the coarctation or when this artery is stenotic (Love and Holms). Right sided notching appears with coarctation of the aortic portion between the left carotid and left subclavian arteries. Notching of the ribs develops after division of the subclavian artery after Blalock's operation for pulmonary stenosis (Kent). Rib notching has been seen in a baby five months old (Gruner and Herbst) but usually appears in 5 to 10 year old patients. In neurofibromatosis with participation of the intercostal nerves notching of the ribs may be observed.

Tomography may also show the stenotic area.

The vascular shadow is often deformed. The widened left subclavian artery may cause a bilobate shadow on the upper left cardiac border. The upper lobe is formed by the aorta, the lower lobe by the subclavian artery. The aortic knob may be absent and it may appear bilobate owing to the widening of the post-stenotic aorta. The widened left subclavian artery may be confused with the aortic arch.

Abnormal esophageal patterns due to kinking of the aorta because of post stenotic dilatation occur (Figley). Bruwer describes a notch in the left border of the descending aorta above the level of the pulmonary artery. It occurs in one third of the patients with coarctation. In lateral x-ray pictures the widened mammary arteries are visible (Odmann).



FIG. 59. Retrograde aortogram reveals coarctation of the aorta in a 13 year old woman.

*Further Comments.* In 24 of 40 patients with coarctation Grantstrom found corkscrew tortuosities of the retinal arteries.

When coarctation develops proximal to the ductus arteriosus no adequate collateral circulation develops before birth (Bahn et al.)

The lesion is often combined with other anomalies such as a bicuspid aortic valve and abnormal origin of the left subclavian artery.

By virtue of the impaired blood supply the development of the lower half of the body may be somewhat retarded in contrast to the upper half thereby resulting in a body that is malproportioned. The discrepancy may also be evident in the color and temperature of the two regions.

**Ballistocardiogram** This often shows a decreased length or absence of the K wave which is caused by the impact of the ejected blood into the aorta. This sign however is also found in thrombosis of the abdominal aorta (Leriche syndrome). On the other hand deep K waves have occasionally been found in patients with coarctation.

**Catheterization and Angiocardiography** Cardiac catheterization does not contribute to the diagnosis. Intravenous angiocardiography is also often of little value since the dye has been diluted too much by the time it reaches the aorta. The best method is to inject the contrast medium directly into the pulmonary artery or right ventricle. Retrograde aortography with local deposition of the dye has been attempted. The stenosis is then visualized when the patient is in the left anterior oblique position (figure 59).

**Complications** Many patients die of left ventricular failure. In 40 of 200 cases spontaneous rupture of the heart or aorta above the stenosis caused death. The aorta may rupture directly into the pericardium or a dissecting aneurysm may form. Mycotic endocarditis and cerebral hemorrhage also are common. Aneurysms of the circle of Willis are not rare. Consequently the patient should not perform heavy physical labor.

A mitral stenosis occasionally coexists.

**Prognosis** It has been found that 25 per cent of the patients may attain a fairly old age, 25 per cent develop subacute bacterial endocarditis (aortitis) and 25 per cent have rupture of the aorta. Others die from cerebral hemorrhage or decompensation. It is estimated that 61 per cent die before the age of 40.

**Surgery** Removal of the stenotic area and end to end anastomosis of the aorta was performed for the first time by Crafoord and Gross in 1944. The mortality from this operation is now less than 5 per cent. The operation is not undertaken if the blood pressure is normal. Moreover surgery is seldom performed in patients beyond the age of 30 years since the aorta at this age has lost much of its elasticity so that an end to end anastomosis is not feasible. If the section of the aorta removed is long and the two ends cannot be reunited a graft of homologous aortic tissue is used. The operation is not performed in childhood since the lumen of the operated area will not widen as the patient grows. After a successful operation the blood pressure gradually falls but not always to normal levels. Improvement is slow and does not follow surgery immediately. At times patients 40 years of age have been improved while others only 20 years of age failed to respond to operation (Hallenbeck et al).

#### ABNORMALITIES OF THE AORTIC ARCH AND ITS GREAT ARTERIES

There are a large number of variations of abnormalities in this area (Edwards et al) but they require no description in this book. However since some of them have serious consequences when they compress the trachea and esophagus they will be briefly mentioned at this juncture.

During the development of the aorta and the pulmonary artery with their branches certain arterial arches (branchial arteries, gill arteries) appear and

disappear. There are six arteries of this kind on each side but all are never present at the same time. The aortic arch normally develops from the left fourth branchial artery while the right one undergoes obliteration. If the right fourth branchial artery and the left one persist the aortic arch is double. Usually however a larger part of the left arch vanishes and a persistent right aortic arch results.



FIG. 60. Abnormal esophageal pattern in a patient with persistent right aortic arch (p a picture).

This condition is not rare but since it causes no symptoms in the majority of cases discovery is accidental on occasion of an x ray examination. Other anomalies such as coarctation of the aorta often coexist.

Many variants are known which depend mainly on how much of the left aortic arch persists and on the site of origin of the left subclavian artery. The



persistent right aortic arch rides the right main bronchus and then proceeds forward and to the left usually behind the trachea and the esophagus

The typical x ray picture consists of the absence of the usual aortic knob and its appearance on the right side or bilaterally with the descending aorta at



FIG 61 The esophagus is displaced forward in the right anterior oblique position (persistent right aortic arch)

the right upper cardiac border. If the esophagus is filled with barium, the convexity of the aortic impression in the esophagus in the postero anterior position is directed not to the right which is normal but to the left (figure 60). In the right anterior oblique view, the esophagus and trachea are displaced forward by the aorta which swings behind it from right to left (figure 61). The aorta may be

widened and may form a diverticulum at this place. Compression of the esophagus by the vascular rings may cause dysphagia (dysphagia lusoria). Death has resulted from compression of the trachea and esophagus. In some cases the ductus arteriosus originates on the right side from the aorta and travels behind the esophagus and trachea to the pulmonary artery on the left side. The aortic rings may be patent or fibrotic.

Dysphagia may also be a symptom if the right subclavian artery arises at a point distal to the origin of the left subclavian artery and crosses to the right between the esophagus and the vertebral column.

### TRANSPOSITION OF THE GREAT ARTERIES

If the development of the bulbar part of the ventricles is disturbed and there is an abnormal torsion in this area a transposition of the pulmonary artery and aorta results. This is usually combined with other abnormalities especially with ventricular septal defects. Several subvarieties are recognized.

The defects are interesting because they are not explained by a mere disturbance of development. In ontogenesis no stage is reached in which similar conditions prevail. According to the phylogenetic theory of Spitzer the lesion results from an arrested development in the early phase with the heart adapting itself to this disturbance.

*Type I* The *riding aorta* originates from the right and left ventricle over a large ventricular septal defect. This form has been discussed previously in connection with the Eisenmenger and Fallot syndromes. Since according to Spitzer torsion of the primitive cardiac tube is one of the requirements of the formation of the interventricular septum, abnormal torsion leads to a septal defect.

*Type II* *Simple transposition* is an anomaly in which the pulmonary artery and aorta originate from the right ventricle; a septal deficiency coexists.

*Type III* In *complete transposition* the aorta arises from the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery from the left. These patients must also have a large atrial or ventricular septal defect or a patent ductus arteriosus to live.

The lungs are pleonemic since the pulmonary artery arises from the left ventricle. The ascending aorta is situated anteriorly to the left while the pulmonary artery is posterior to the right. There is pronounced cyanosis from birth. The patient very rarely reaches adult life. There is progressive neonatal cardiac enlargement.

*Type IV* *Mixed transposition* is a term applied when in addition to the changes in type III the right ventricle contains only the aortic orifice while the tricuspid orifice is included in the left ventricle.

In the Taussig Bing syndrome the pulmonary artery rides over both ventricles and the aorta originates in the left ventricle.

In *corrected transposition* the aorta and pulmonary artery originate from the proper ventricle but their position in respect to each other is changed. This aorta is situated ventrad to the pulmonary artery (see next section).

Severe cyanosis and clubbing is the rule. Murmurs may be absent. Deformities of the chest and kyphosis are common.

Attempts have been made to improve the circulation of patients with transposition of the great vessels by surgery.

### DEXTROCARDIA

The heart may be located in the right chest owing to displacement by pulmonary disease, effusions, diaphragmatic hernia, or high position of the left diaphragm (dextroposition of the heart). In true dextrocardia two main groups are differentiated.

(1) *Dextrocardia with complete inversion of the viscera* (situs inversus totalis). In these patients the organs are properly located except they form the mirror image of the normal, the situs solitus. Other congenital anomalies are rare; they may occur just as they do in other individuals. Inversion of all main waves of lead I in the electrocardiogram is characteristic for this lesion. The anomaly is an accidental finding without practical importance.

(2) *Isolated dextrocardia with normal or partly abnormal position of the abdominal viscera*. Usually other congenital abnormalities and variations are present. In some variants the position of the heart chambers is normal but the axis of the heart is changed from left crudad to right crudad (dextroversion of the heart or dextrotorsion after Zdansky). At other times the position of the atria and great vessels seems normal but the ventricles are transposed. If a complete transposition of the aorta and pulmonary artery coexists, the lesion is corrected in an ideal manner (corrected transposition as mentioned in the previous section).

In all these varieties the electrocardiogram may be normal or show atypical alterations.

### ARTERIOVENOUS FISTULA

#### *Systemic Circulation*

*Pathology*: Communications between the peripheral arteries and veins similar to the abnormal connection in persistent ductus arteriosus have been known since William Hunter described the acquired variety. A number of other names have been bestowed upon the lesion, the most popular being arteriovenous aneurysm. In some instances the appearance has led to such descriptive terms as cirroid, cavernous, racemose aneurysm, and the like. The communications are classified into two types, congenital and acquired.

The congenital variety is found in the neck or the extremities. Usually there is a lateral anastomosis due to the presence of small communicating vessels, but sometimes an end-to-end anastomosis exists between arteries and a venous plexus. Often several anastomoses are present.

The acquired arteriovenous fistula is found anywhere in the body where trauma creates a communication between an artery and vein.

*Signs* The general effect is that blood is forced under arterial pressure directly into the venous system. This causes changes in the vessels so that the artery may become venosified and the vein arterialized. If the fistula happens to be located in an extremity extreme engorgement and dilatation of the veins may be seen and ulceration of the skin may occur at times. Occasionally the veins are so dilated that an operation is performed for the supposed varicose veins — with disastrous results. The circumference of the affected extremity may be increased while the bones are so enlarged as the result of increased vascularity that local gigantism develops. Since the resistance to the flow of blood through the fistula is less than to the flow through the capillary bed large volumes of blood may be attracted to the area with consequent dilatation of all nearby vessels as a result a local increase of skin temperature appears as a common sign of increased vascularity.

A characteristic bruit and thrill are often present they are most pronounced over the fistula and are transmitted distally and proximally along the course of the affected vein. Pressure on the site of the fistula as well as on the proximal section of the artery causes the murmur as well as the thrill to vanish. If an intracranial fistula is present the patient as well as the examiner may hear the bruit.

The development of varicose veins at an abnormal location early in life should make the examiner suspicious of the presence of an arteriovenous fistula. Arteriography assists in the diagnosis.

In the acquired type the artery and vein are usually penetrated by a foreign body — a bullet knife splinter of glass and so forth. Usually the original hemorrhage is easily controlled however the arterial pressure produced in the vein may cause enormous edema and gangrene may necessitate early amputation of the extremity. Some patients die immediately due to cerebral or myocardial anoxia. Frequently the attendant shock and acute hypotension preclude the immediate appearance of a bruit and the thrill. These signs become obvious with the improvement in the general condition of the patient. The bruit and thrill are continuous throughout the cardiac cycle and a systolic accentuation often occurs.

The other peripheral signs are the same as in aortic insufficiency and patency of the ductus arteriosus. There is a water hammer pulse and a low diastolic blood pressure. The systolic blood pressure may be elevated presumably owing to the increased cardiac output. The size of the heart is increased for cardiac strain is augmented about one fifth to one half of the output may leak into the veins. The left ventricle dilates for reasons that are not entirely clear some investigators claim it is caused by a reduction of coronary blood flow but we question this explanation. It is also not entirely clear why dilatation of the heart is usually absent in the congenital type of lesion. The early adaptation of the circulation to the lesion may play a role. Decompensation may occur in the acquired type just as it happens in a patent ductus arteriosus.

Fluoroscopy may show that compression of the fistula and the arrest of leakage diminish the size of the heart in the acquired type. During compression

the heart rate diminishes 20 to 30 beats per minute and the blood pressure falls 20 to 30 mm Hg (Brinkman's sign)

*Surgery* If the patient is seen immediately after the development of the fistula suturing with restoration of the vessels may be considered. When some time has elapsed delay in operation is justified since small fistulas may heal spontaneously also procrastination permits the development of some collateral circulation with less likelihood of gangrene if ligation of the main vessel is necessary. However if dilatation of the heart has occurred spontaneous closure is very unlikely and operation is necessary (Holman)

Surgery offers great assistance in restoring normal conditions. In some cases subacute bacterial endarteritis develops at the site of the fistula and can be cured by operative intervention. Subacute bacterial endocarditis may also develop at the usual sites on the cardiac valves (see section on subacute bacterial endocarditis)

The previous discussion is applicable chiefly to the ordinary arteriovenous fistula of an extremity. Naturally the situation is somewhat different when the fistula joins large vessels within the thorax or when the internal carotid artery and cavernous sinus are joined following fracture of the sphenoid.

These problems belong to the domain of surgery and will not be discussed in detail here.

Obviously the clinical picture is modified by the character of the tissue supplied or drained by the involved vessels. Thus in arteriovenous fistula involving the internal carotid artery and cavernous sinus there is stabbing knife like retroorbital pain pulsating exophthalmus an audible bruit and a variety of visual disturbances. In other lesions involving the carotid or vertebral arteries we have observed the gradual development of neurologic and psychiatric syndromes. Whether or not surgery should be undertaken will depend upon the individual circumstances for ligation of a carotid artery for example may be followed by contralateral hemiplegia in a middle aged subject. If the vessel can be compressed for an hour without the appearance of headache or weakness and tingling in the contralateral extremity constriction of the involved vessel by fascial lata may be considered.

### *Lesser Circulation*

Congenital arteriovenous fistula in the lesser circulation is a condition related to familial hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia (Rendu Osler Weber). It is also seen in several members of the same family but the skin and mucous membrane lesions are often missing. Sometimes the lesion is bilateral. It consists of a short dilated afferent artery and several dilated efferent veins with many distended vessels inbetween. Secondary focal degenerative processes take place in the convolution of the vessels and added communications between veins and arteries appear. This abnormality involves males as a rule and is usually recognized before the thirtieth year of life.

*Symptoms* The chief symptoms are dyspnea and hemoptysis. Petrosternal pain and epileptiform attacks occur in some cases. There is dizziness, faintness and attacks of unconsciousness as well as epistaxis and headaches. Some symptoms are due to anoxia and some depend upon the polycythemia.

*Signs* The outstanding sign on physical examination is a murmur that is often continuous from systole to diastole with a systolic accentuation; it becomes louder on deep inspiration and is often heard over the back.

Roentgenography shows an abnormal shadow, most often in a lower lobe. It often enlarges on Mueller's experiment and diminishes in size during a Valsalva experiment. The heart is often normal in size.

Tomography reveals the dilated efferent veins as a wormlike shadow and angiography is rarely necessary. There is marked polycythemia with as many as 11 million red blood cells per cubic millimeter. Often the fingers are clubbed and pulmonary osteoarthropathy may appear. Oxygen saturation of the blood falls to 60 per cent.

*Differential Diagnosis* At times it may be difficult to distinguish the lesion from polycythemia vera. However, the spleen is not enlarged and there is no leukocytosis.

*Therapy* Lobectomy cures the disease. Occasionally this also holds for certain acquired arteriovenous fistulae of the lung. Thus we have occasionally encountered an acquired lesion following ill performed thoracentesis when the lung was entered and an artery and vein transixed. This accident may be reported with increasing frequency if the current popularity of pleural and lung needle biopsy persists.

### ENDOCARDIAL FIBROELASTOSIS

This anomaly is found in newborns and in infants although the lesion has been seen in patients over twenty years old. The children suddenly develop dyspnea, fainting and collapse, cyanosis during crying and tachycardia appear. The patients die suddenly, often within 24 hours. There is terminal cyanosis and the blood pressure is very low. There are no characteristic findings on physical examination and the electrocardiogram often shows abnormal T waves and slurring as well as notching of the QRS complexes. These signs however are not pathognomonic. Complete heart block has been noted. Most patients die before they complete their second year of life. A few patients reach the age of 24 (Panke and Pottino) or older.

Postmortem examination reveals a marked endocardial fibrosis which according to some prevents sufficient cardiac diastole, just as happens with constricting pericarditis.

A variety of factors have been suspected to be etiologic. Inflammation, fetal endocarditis and chronic anoxia have been held responsible. The fact that siblings have suffered from this illness and the concurrence of other congenital abnormalities tends to support the theory that a malformation is responsible for this anomaly.

## THERAPY OF CONGENITAL HEART LESIONS

Treatment has been mentioned in connection with the various lesions.

In addition to the suggestions offered regarding the aforementioned measures the following general remarks may be made. Physical strain should be avoided. Good over all hygiene may prolong life for many years in patients with congenital heart lesions. In the cyanotic group, especially in patients with polycythemia repeated small phlebotomies help.

Great care must be taken to avoid infection of the teeth or tonsils. If present such infections should be treated with antibiotics as a prophylaxis against subacute bacterial endocarditis. Some of these patients die of brain abscesses, an additional indication for antibiotic therapy. For sudden attacks of anoxia, the knee chest position may help.

## Bibliography

- Abbott M E. Congenital Heart Disease. In Osler's Modern Medicine ed 3 4 619 1931
- Abrams H L and Always R H. Tricuspid atresia. *Pediat* 7 660 1951
- Achard A. Arachnodactylie. *Bull et mem Soc méd d hop de Paris* 19 834 1902
- Adams J C L and Hudson J. A case of Ebstein's anomaly surviving to the age of 19. *Brit Heart J* 18 129 1956
- Adams R and Churchill E D. Situs inversus sinusitis and bronchiectasis. *J Thorac Surg* 1 206 1931
- Allanby K D. Circulation times in congenital heart disease. *Brit Heart J* 11 165 1949
- Anderson M and Pratt Thomas H R. Marfan's syndrome. *Am Heart J* 46 911 1953
- Anderson R C. Causative factors underlying congenital heart malformations. *Pediat* 14 143 1954
- Antonius N A, Crecca A D, Murray H A, Richman A R and Izzo I A. The Brock operation for pulmonary stenosis. *J Pediat* 46 51 1955
- Arkin A. Totale Persistenz des rechten Aortenbogens im Röntgenbild. *Wien Arch f inn Med* 12 395 1926
- Double aortic arch with total persistence of the right and isthmus stenosis of the left arch: a new clinical and x-ray picture. *Am Heart J* 11 444 1936
- Aschenbrenner R. Operative Behandlung schwerer Herz und Kreislaufdekompensation. Beitrag zur Klinik der Spätfolgen arteriovenöser Aneurysmen. *Klin Wchnschr* 13 689 1934
- Baer R W, Taussig H B and Oppenheimer E H. Congenital aneurysmal dilatation of the aorta associated with arachnodactyly. *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 72 309 1943
- Bahn R C, Edwards J E and DuShane J W. Coarctation of the aorta as a cause of death in early infancy. *Pediat* 8 191 1911
- Bahnson H T, Cooley R N and Sloan H D. Coarctation of the aorta of unusual sites. *Am Heart J* 38 90, 1949
- Bailey C P et al. Surgical treatment of forty six inter atrial septal defects by atrio-caval pexy. *Ann Surg* 149 805 1954
- Bain C O. Tetralogy of Fallot: survival to seventieth year. *Arch Path* 53 116 1954
- Baird C D C, Nelson M M, Monie I W and Evans H M. Congenital cardiovascular anomalies induced by pteroylglutamic acid deficiency during gestation in the rat. *Circulation Res* 2 544 1954
- Baker L, Brunton W D and Channell L D. Ebstein's disease. *Clin & Hosp Re* 29 246 1950

- Bard L and Curtillet J Contribution a l'etude de la physiologie pathologique de la maladie bleue forme tardive de cette affection *Rev de med* 9 993 1889
- Beavan T E D and Fatti L Ligature of the aortic arch in the neck. *Brit J Surg* 31 414 1948
- Bedford D F Papp C and Iarkinson J Atrial septal defect *Brit Heart J* 3 37 1941
- Berthrong M and Sabiston D C Jr Cerebral lesions in congenital heart disease *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 31 394 1951
- Bing R J Vandam L D and Gray F D Jr Physiological studies in congenital heart disease *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 31 192 1947
- Bjork V O Direct pressure measurement in the left atrium and left ventricle and the aorta *Acta Clin Scand* 10 463 1954
- Malock A and Tausk H B The surgical treatment of malformation of the heart in which there is pulmonary stenosis or pulmonary atresia *IA M A* 128 189 1945
- Blumberg P W and Lyon I A Endocardial sclerosis *Am J Dis Child* 84 231 1954
- Blumenthal S and Davis D B Coarctation of the aorta in childhood *Am J Dis Child* 60 1224 1941
- Boldero H F A and Bedford D F Infective endocarditis in congenital heart disease involving the pulmonary artery *Lancet* 2 47 1954
- Bonnet L M Sur la lésion dite stricose congénitale de l'aorte dans la région de l'isthme *Rev de med* 22 108 235 335 418 491 1903
- Bourne G Changes in renal function and persistence of the murmur after ligature of the patent ductus arteriosus *Brit Heart J* 3 228 1941
- Keala K D and Tubbs O S Ligature and chemotherapy for infection of patent ductus arteriosus *Lancet* 444 1941
- Bramwell C Coarctation of the aorta II *Clinical Features* *Brit Heart J* 9 100 1947
- Broager H and Hertz H Cerebral complications in congenital heart disease *Acta med Scand Suppl* 66 398 1952
- Brock I C and Campbell M Valvulotomy for pulmonary valvular stenosis. *Brit Heart J* 12 377 1950
- Broden B Jönsson C and Karnell I Thoracic aortography in the diagnosis of patent ductus arteriosus totalis *Acta radiol* 34 65 1950
- Brody H Drainage of the pulmonary veins into the right side of the heart *Arch Path* 31 221 1942
- Brofman B L and Feil H The diagnosis of congenital subaortic stenosis *Circulation* 6 81 1952
- Brown H R Jr Hoffman M and de Lalla V Jr Ballistocardiogram in coarctation of the aorta *New Engl J Med* 160 715 1949
- Brown J W Congenital Heart Disease ed 2 London: Staples Press 1950
- Congenital heart disease *Practitioner* 166 436 1951
- Heath D and Whitaker W Cardiorortic fistula a case diagnosed during life and treated surgically *Circulation* 11 819 1955
- — and — Ebstein's disease *Am J Med* 9 32 1956
- Cruver A A neglected roentgenologic sign of coarctation of the aorta *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 377 195
- Bullock L T Jones I C and Dolley F S The diagnosis and the effects of ligation of the patent ductus arteriosus *J Pediat* 15 786 1939
- Burchell H R The selection of patients for catheterization of the left side of the heart *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 1 105 1956
- Taylor B E Knutson J R B and Wood F H Circulatory adjustments to the hypoxemia of congenital heart disease of the cyanotic type *Circulation* 1 404 1950



- Burroughs J T Complete surgical correction of total anomalous pulmonary venous connection Report of three cases Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 31 182 1956
- Campbell M and Brock R The results of valvotomy for simple pulmonary stenosis Brit Heart J 17 229 1955
- and Deuchar D Results of the Blalock Taussig operation in 200 cases of morbus caeruleus Brit Med J 1 349 1953
- and Hills T H Angiocardiography in cyanotic congenital heart disease Brit Heart J 13 65 1950
- and Suzman S Coarctation of the aorta Brit Heart J 9 185 1947
- Carter E P and Howland J A note upon the occurrence of congenital atrioventricular dissociation report of a case of congenital complete heart block Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 31 351 1920
- Castellanos A and Pereiras R Retrograde or counter current aortography Am J Roentgenol 63 559 1950
- — and Garcia A La angiocardioradiografía Arch soc estud clin Habana 31 523 1937
- Christie A Normal closing time of the foramen ovale and the ductus arteriosus Am J Dis Child 40 323 1930
- Collett R W and Edwards J F Persistent truncus arteriosus a classification according to anatomic types Surg Clin North America Aug 1949 p 1245
- Cooley D A Surgical closure of atrial septal defects Surg Gyn & Obst 100 268 1955
- Cossio P and Berconsky I Comunicación interauricular y sinfisis pericardíaca Rev argent de cardiología 3 360 1936
- Costa A Studio sulla morfogenesi e la fisiopatologia dei difetti congeniti del setto interatriale del cuore Cuore e circolaz 15 263 1931
- Crafoord J and Vahlin G Congenital coarctation of the aorta and its surgical treatment J Thoracic Surg 14 347 1945
- DeLoach J E and Haynes J W Secondary tumors of the heart and pericardium Review of subject and report of 137 cases Arch Int Med 91 224 1953
- Deterling R A Jr Direct and retrograde aortography Surgery 31 88 1952
- Dexter L Atrial septal defect Brit Heart J 18 209 1956
- Dow J W Haynes F W Whittenberger J L Ferris B G Goodall W T and Hellems H K Studies of the pulmonary circulation in man at rest J Clin Investigation 29 602 1950
- Dotter C T and Steinberg I Angiocardiographic study of the pulmonary artery J A M A 133 566 1940
- and Steinberg I Clinical angiocardiography Ann Int Med 30 1104 1949
- Drawe C E Hafkenbring F M and Ashman R Children's electrocardiograms II The changes in children's electrocardiograms produced by rheumatic and congenital heart disease Am J Dis Child 53 1470 1937
- Dressler W and Rosler H Vorhofseptumdefekt kombiniert mit Mitralstenose und aurikulärem Leberpuls Ztschr f klin Med 112 421 1970
- Dry T J Present status of surgical treatment for cardiac disease J A M A 170 11 1951
- DuShane J W et al Ventricular septal defects with pulmonary hypertension J A M A 160 950 1956
- Fakin W W and Abbott M J Stenosis of the pulmonary conus at the lower bulbous orifice (conus a separate chamber) and closed interventricular septum with two illustrative cases Am J Med Sc 156 860 1933
- Edmonds H W and Seelye W B Endocardial sclerosis Mediat 651 1951
- Edwards F R Farquhar H C Hay J D and Rees C J Repair of atrial septal defects Brit M J 2 1463 1955

- Edwards J E Dry T J Parker R L Burchell H B Wood E H and Bulbulian A H Congenital Anomalies of the Heart and Great Vessels Springfield Thomas 1954
- Eisenmenger V Die angeborenen Defecte der Kammercheidwand des Herzens Ztschr f klin Med 37 Suppl 1 1891
- Ellis R W B Arachno lactia and ectopia lentis in a father and daughter Arch Dis Child 15 267 1940
- Engle M A Layne T J I Iruins C and Tauszig H B Ebstein's anomaly of the tricuspid valve Circulation 1 146 1950
- and Tauszig H B Valvular pulmonary stenosis with intact interventricular septum and patent foramen oval Circulation 2 481 1950
- Eppinger E C and Burwell C S The mechanical effects of patent ductus arteriosus on the heart and their relation to the x ray signs J A M A 115 1462 1940
- Burwell C S and Gross R E The effects of the patent ductus arteriosus on the circulation J Clin Investigation 10 121 1941
- Erickson C A Rubella early in pregnancy causing congenital malformations of the eyes and heart J Pediat 5 991 1944
- Exalto J Dicke W K and Kalsmeier W C Congenital stricture of the trachea and esophagus by double aortic arch Arch Chirurg Veerl 170 1950
- Fallot A Contribution à l'anatomie pathologique de la maladie bleue (cyanose cardiaque) Marseille med 2, 7<sup>e</sup> 138 207 210 341 403 1899
- Figley M M Accessory roentgen signs of coarctation of the aorta Radiol 6 671 1954
- Fisher D L The use of pressure recordings obtained at transthoracic left heart catheterization in the diagnosis of valvular heart disease J Thorac Surg 30 379 1955
- Freeman N E Miller F R Stephens H H and Oliver M B Retrograde arteriography in the diagnosis of cardiovascular lesions II Coarctation of the aorta Ann Int Med 32 827 1950
- Gardner F and Oram S Persistent left superior vena cava draining the pulmonary veins Brit Heart J 15 305 1953
- Gasul H M Fell F H Mayrakis W and Casas R Diagnosis of tricuspid atresia or stenosis in infants Pediat 6 862 1950
- Gates E M Ebers H M and Edwards J E The syndrome of cerebral abscess and congenital cardiac disease Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 2 401 1947
- Giampalmo A The arteriovenous angiomas of the lung with hypoxaemia Acta med Scand Suppl 248 1950
- Gibson S Lottis W J and Langewiesch W H Aortic pulmonary communication due to localized congenital defect of the aortic septum Pediat 6 35 1950
- Gilchrist A R Patent ductus arteriosus and its surgical treatment Brit Heart J 1 194
- Gillman J Gilbert C Gillman T and Spence I A preliminary report of hydrocephalus spina bifida and other congenital anomalies in the rat produced by trypan blue N African J Med Sc 13 47 1948
- Goldbloom A A The anomalous right umbilical artery and its possible clinical significance Surg Gyn & Obst 1 378 1921
- Goodwin J F Steiner R E Mouna J J P D MacGregor A G and Wayne F J A critical analysis of the clinical value of angiocardiology in congenital heart disease Brit J Radiol 6 161 1953
- Goyette E M and Palmer I W Cardiovascular lesions in arachnoidecty Circulation 7 373 1953
- Grantstrom K O Retinal changes in coarctation of the aorta Brit J Ophth 35 143 1951
- Grech N M Congenital cataract following German measles in mother Trans Ophthalm Soc Australia 3 35 1941

- Grob M and Rossi E Die Diagnostik der angeborenen Angiocardiopathien Helvet Paediat Acta 4 189 1949
- Gross R E Experiences with surgical treatment in ten cases of patent ductus arteriosus J A M A 115 1257 1940
- Surgical treatment for coarctation of the aorta J A M A 139 285 1949
  - Coarctation of the aorta Circulation 1 41 1950 7 75, 1953
  - Surgical closure of interauricular septal defects J A M A 151 705 1953
  - and Hufnagel C A Coarctation of the aorta New Engl J Med 33 287 1945
  - and Longino L A The patent ductus arteriosus Circulation 3 125 1951
- Gruner G and Herbst M Beitrag zum diagnostisch therapeutischen Problem der infantilen Aortenisthmusstenose Klin Wchnschr 33 996 1955
- Guglielmo L D and Guttadauro M Unusual coronary branch in a case of coarctation Acta Radiol 4° 141 1954
- Hallenbeck G A Wood E H Burchell H B and Clagett O T Coarctation of the aorta Surg Gyn & Obst 92 75 1951
- Halliday W R Endomyocardial fibroelastosis a study of 30 cases Dis Chest 26 27 1954
- Hamilton W F and Abbott M E Coarctation of the aorta of the adult type Am Heart J 3 381 1928
- Hamman L and Rienhoff W F Jr Subacute streptococcus viridans septicemia cured by excision of an arteriovenous aneurysm of the external iliac artery and vein Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 57 219 1955
- Handelsman J C Bing R J Campbell J A and Griswold H E Physiological studies in congenital heart disease Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 8° 615 1948
- Haring O M Luisada A A and Gasul H M Phonocardiography in patent ductus arteriosus Circulation 10 501 1954
- Harris J S and Farber S Transposition of the great cardiac vessels with special reference to the phylogenetic theory of Spitzer Arch Path 28 427 1939
- Sealy W C and de Maria W Hypertension and renal dynamics in aortic coarctation Am J Med 9 734 1950
- Harrison W F Congenital heart disease extreme congenital pulmonary stenosis (tetralogy of Fallot) collateral pulmonary circulation massive right sided vegetative endocarditis Am Heart J 5 213 1929
- Hedinger C Hitzig W H and Marmier C Über arteriovenöse Lungenaneurysmen und ihre Beziehungen zur Oslerischen Krankheit Schweiz med Wchnschr 81 367 1951
- Henry Ford Hospital Internat Symposium on Cardiovascular Surgery Philadelphia Saunders 1953
- Holinger P G Johnston K C and Zoss A R Tracheal and bronchial obstruction due to congenital cardiovascular anomalies Ann Otol Rhin & Laryng 57 808 1948
- Holman F Arteriovenous Aneurysm New York Macmillan 1941
- Hufnagel C A and Gillespie J E Closure of interauricular septal defects Bull Georgetown Univ Med Center 1 137 1951
- Jensen G Beitrag zu dem klinisch radiologischen Bild der Transposition großer Gefäße und zu der Theorie Spitzers von ihrer Entstehung, Frankfurt Ztschr f Path 43 445 1937
- Kartagener M Zur Pathogenese der Bronchiektasen bei Situs viscerum inversus Beitr a Klin d Tuberk 83 489 1933
- and Horlacher A Bronchiektasen bei situs viscerum inversus Schweiz med Wchnschr 11 742 1935
- Kent J V The development of rib notching after surgical intervention on congenital heart disease Brit J Radiol 26 346 1953
- Keys A and Shapiro M I Latency of the ductus arteriosus in adults Am Heart J 25 158 1943

- Kjaergaard H. Latent ductus botalli in three sisters. *Acta med Scand* 125 339 1946
- Kjellberg, L R, Mannheimer F, Ruhde V and Johansson R. *Diagnosis of Congenital Heart Disease*. Chicago Year Book Publishers 1953
- Klemola E. Über familiares Auftreten von Isthmusstenose der Aorta. *Acta med Scand* 98 350 1939
- Laplace L B. Observations on the effect of an arteriovenous fistula on the human circulation. *Am J M Sc* 199 497 1935
- Laubry C and Heim de Balzac R. Valeur de erosions costales dans le diagnostic des sténoses isthmiques. *Arch d mal du coeur* 30 963 1937
- and Iezzi C. *Traité des maladies congénitales du coeur*. Paris J B Baillière & Fils 1941
- Leatham A and Gray J. Auscultatory and phonocardiographic signs of atrial septal defect. *Brit Heart J* 15 193 1956
- Lev M and Saphir O. A theory of transposition of the arterial trunks based on the phylogenetic and ontogenetic development of the heart. *Arch Path* 39 172 1945
- Lewis T and Drury A V. Observations relating to arteriovenous aneurysm I. Circulatory manifestations in clinical cases with particular reference to the arterial phenomena of aortic regurgitation. *Heart* 10 301 1913
- Lichtman S S. Isolated congenital dextrocardia. *Arch Int Med* 48 893 866 1931
- Lillohei C W, Bobb J R R and Visscher M B. The occurrence of endocarditis with valvular deformities in dogs with arteriovenous fistulas. *Ann Surg* 132 577 1950
- , Cohen M, Warden E et al. Direct vision intracardiac surgical correction of tetralogy of Fallot, pulmonary of Fallot and pulmonary atresia defects. *Ann Surg* 140 418 1955
- et al. Complete anatomical correction of the tetralogy of Fallot defects. *Arch Surg* 73 506 1956
- Love W S Jr and Holms J H. Coarctation of the aorta with associated stenosis of the right subclavian artery. *Am Heart J* 17 628 1939
- Lutembacher P. De la stenose mitrale avec communication interauriculaire. *Arch d mal du coeur* 9 237 1916
- Macmahon B, McKewen T and Record R G. The incidence and life expectancy of children with congenital heart disease. *Brit Heart J* 10 121 1951
- Marast F, Daley R, Draper A Jr, Heimbecker R, Damman F H, Kiefer R J, King J F, Ferencz I and Bing P J. Physiological studies in congenital heart disease. *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 99 1 1951
- Marquis R M. Ventricular septal defect in early childhood. *Brit Heart J* 12 265 1950
- Longevity and the early history of the tetralogy of Fallot. *Brit Med J* 1 819 1956
- McCord M C and Bavendam F A. Unusual causes of rib notching. *Am J Rontgenol* 6 405 1932
- McKusick V A. Heritable disorders of connective tissue. III. The Marfan syndrome. *J Chronic Dis* 9 603 1955
- and Cooley R V. Drainage of right pulmonary vein into inferior vena cava. *New Engl J Med* 252 291 1955
- Mendlowitz M. Clubbing and hypertrophic osteoarthropathy. *Medicine* 21 203 1942
- Meyer J H and Ackermann A J. Hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia associated with pulmonary arteriovenous fistula in two members of a family. *Ann Int Med* 1 175 1914
- Muir D C and Brown J W. Patent ductus arteriosus. *Arch Dis Child* 7 291 1932
- and —. Patent interventricular septum (maladie de Roger). *Arch Dis Child* 11 27 1934
- Müller H. Zur Klinik und pathologischen Anatomie des unkomplizierten offenen septum ventriculorum. *Deut ches Arch Klin Med* 133 316 1910
- Die unkomplizierte angeborene Pulmonalstenose. *Schweiz med Wchnschr* 56 610 1925

- Muller W H The surgical treatment of transposition of the pulmonary veins *Ann Surg* 134 683 1951
- Mustard W T Chute A L Keith J D Sivek A Rowe R D and Vlad I A surgical approach to transposition of the great vessels with extracorporeal circulation *Surgery* 36 39 1954
- Ödmann P The appearance of the internal mammary arteries in coarctation of the aorta *Acta Paediat* 39 47 1953
- Oppenheimer F H The association of adult type of coarctation of the aorta with endocardial fibroelastosis in infancy *Bull Johns Hopl ins Hosp* 23 309 1953
- Panke W and Rottino A Endocardial fibroelastosis occurring in the adult *Am Heart J* 49 89 1955
- Iatten B M Closure of the foramen ovale *Am J Anatomy* 48 19 1931
- Plachta A and Speer F D Eisenmengers complex in association with congenital tricuspid endocarditis (fetal) *J Pediat* 42 325 1953
- Potts W J Gibson S Berman E White H and Miller R A Surgical correction of tetralogy of Fallot *J A M A* 159 95 1955
- Smith S and Gibson S Anastomosis of the aorta to a pulmonary artery *J A M A* 132 627 1946
- Ponsdomenech F R and Nunez V B Heart puncture in man for contrast visualization of the ventricular chambers and great arteries *Am Heart J* 41 643 1951
- Irior J T and Wyatt T C Endocardial fibroelastosis *Am J Path* 26 989 1950
- Raab W Untersuchungen über einen Fall von kongenitalem Herzvitium I Klinisch rotenologische Diagnostik und Symptomatologie *Wien Arch f inn Med* 7 367 1923
- Rados A Marfan's syndrome *Arch Ophthal* 2, 477 1942
- Railsback O C and Dock W Erosion of the ribs due to stenosis of the isthmus (coarctation) of the aorta *Radiol* 12 88 1929
- Reifenstein G H Levine S A and Gross R L Coarctation of the aorta *Am Heart J* 33 146 1947
- Reynaud A Observation d'une obliteration presque complete de l'aorte *J hebdomed* 1 161 1828
- Rienhoff W F Jr Congenital arteriovenous fistula *Bull Johns Hopkins Ho p* 35 21 1924
- Robbins L and Wyman S M Coarctation of the thoracic aorta *New Engl J Med* 248 747 1953
- Roberts J T A case of congenital aortic atresia with hypoplasia of ascending aorta normal origin of coronary arteries left ventricular hypoplasia and mitral stenosis *Am Heart J* 1 449 1936
- Roesler H Interatrial septal defect *Arch Int Med* 51 339 1934
- Beiträge zur Lehre von den angeborenen Herzfehlern Untersuchungen an zwei Fällen von Isthmusstenose der Aorta *Wien Arch f inn Med* 15 521 1924
- Ross M Mental retardation associated with congenital heart disease *J Pediat* 14 21 1939
- Rossi I Herzerkrankungen im Säuglingsalter Stuttgart Thieme 1954
- Ryland D A The renal factor in arterial hypertension with coarctation of the aorta *J Clin Investigation* 1, 391 1938
- Salveson H A and Marstrand E Arteriovenous fistula of the lung *Acta med Scand* 132 167 1951
- Sanetta S M and Zimmerman H A Congenital heart disease with septal defects in which paradoxical brain abscess causes death *Circulation* 1 93 1950
- Schott A Observations on a case of interatrial septal defect with mitral stenosis (Lutembacher's syndrome) *Cardiol* 13 9, 1948

- Schwartz S I and Greene D Coarctation of the aorta in children the syndrome of constriction of the isthmus of the aorta with involvement of the origin of the left subclavian artery *Am Heart J* 3 99 1949
- Scott H W Jr Tenn V and Sabiston D C Jr Surgical treatment for congenital aortic pulmonary fistula *J Thoracic Surg* 25 76 1953
- Sellors T H Surgery of pulmonary stenosis *Lancet* I 989 1948
- Selzer A Defects of the ventricular septum *Arch Int Med* 83 798 1949
- Defects of the cardiac septums *JAMA* 133 129 1954
- and Lacueur G L The Fontan complex and its relation to the uncomplicated defect of the ventricular septum *Arch Int Med* 83 218 1951
- Shapiro M J and Keys A The prognosis of untreated patent ductus arteriosus and the results of surgical intervention *Am J Med Sc* 66 14 1943
- Siegenthaler W Die cardiovascularen Veränderungen beim Marfan Syndrom (arachnodactyl) *Cardiologia* 23 135 1956
- Silver A W Kirkcaldy J W Ellis F H and Wood F H Regression of pulmonary hypertension after closure of patent ductus arteriosus *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clinic* 29 293 1954
- Sisson J H Murphy C F and Newman E Multiple congenital arteriovenous aneurysms in the pulmonary circulation *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 76 93 1945
- Smith H L and Horton B T Arteriovenous fistula of the lung associated with polycythemia vera *Am Heart J* 13 589 1939
- Smith J C Anomalous pulmonary veins *Am Heart J* 41 561 1951
- Snellen H A and Albers F H The clinical diagnosis of anomalous pulmonary venous drainage *Circulation* 1 801 1950
- Sodi Pallares D and Marsico J The importance of electrocardiographic pattern in congenital heart disease *Am Heart J* 43 402 1955
- Soulier P Cardiopathies congénitales *L'Expansion scientifique française* 1957
- Bouvryain Y di Mateo I and Rey C La tuberculose pulmonaire dans les cardiopathies congénitales *Arch d mal du coeur* 46 1057 1953
- Joly F Carlotti J and Sicot J R Contribution à l'étude des shunts dans les communications inter auriculaires *Arch d mal du coeur* 43 97 1950
- Southworth J L and Dabbs C H Closure of large atrial septal defect by the method of Björk and Crafoord *JAMA* 155 1159 1954
- Spitzer A Über den Bauplan des normalen und mißbildeten Herzens Virchow's Arch f path Anat 243 81 1973
- Stahlman M Kaplan S Himsaworth J A Clark C L and Scott H W Jr Syndrome of left ventricular right atrial shunt resulting from high interventricular septal defects associated with defective septal leaflet of the tricuspid valve *Circulation* 17 813 1955
- Steele J M Evidence for general distribution of peripheral resistance in coarctation of the aorta report of three cases *J Clin Investigation* 20 473 1941
- Steinberg I Dotter C T and Lukas D S Congenital absence of main branch of the pulmonary artery *JAMA* 157 1216 1953
- Steinberg M F Crishman A and Sussman M L Angiocardiography in congenital heart disease *Am J Ro ntgenol* 50 306 1943
- Stuckey D Cardiac pain associated with mitral stenosis and congenital heart disease *Brit Heart J* 14 39 1955
- Congenital heart defects following maternal rubella during pregnancy *Brit Heart J* 18 519 1956
- Swan C Tastevin A L Moore B Mayo H and Black C H B Congenital defects in infants following infectious diseases during pregnancy *M J Australia* 201 1943

- Swan H Surgical closure of interauricular septal defects J A M A 152 1216 1953
- Taussig H B Congenital Malformations of the Heart New York Commonwealth Fund 1947
- Taylor R R and Pollock B E Coarctation of the aorta in three members of a family Am Heart J 45 470 1953
- Tobin J R Jr Bay E B and Humphreys F M Marfan's syndrome in the adult Arch Int Med 80 475 1947
- Touroff A S W The results of surgical treatment of patency of the ductus arteriosus complicated by subacute bacterial endarteritis Am Heart J 25 187 1943
- Uhley M H Lutembacher's syndrome and a new concept of the dynamics of interatrial septal defect Am Heart J 24 315 1942
- Veal J R and McCord W M Congenital abnormal arteriovenous anastomoses of the extremities Arch Surg 33 848 1936
- Wakai C S Swan H J C and Wood E H Hemodynamic data and findings of diagnostic value in nine proved cases of persistent common atrioventricular canal Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin 31 500 1956
- Walker R and Khinck G H Jr Congenital aortic and mitral atresia Am Heart J 24 752 1942
- Walton K and Spencer A G Ebstein's anomaly of the tricuspid valve J Path & Bact 60 387 1948
- Watkins L Jr and Gross R E Experience with surgical repair of atrial septal defects J Thoracic Surg 30 469 1955
- Weinberg T and Himelfarb A G Endocardial fibroelastosis Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 72 299 1943
- Weiss E Congenital ventricular septal defect in a man aged seventy nine Arch Int Med 39 705 1927
- Wesselhoeft C Rubella (German measles) New Engl J Med 236 943 1947
- Weve H Über Arachnodactylie Arch f Augenheilk 104 1 1931
- White P D and Sprague H H The tetralogy of Fallot J A M A 92 787 1929
- Wilson J G and Warkany J Aortic arch and cardiac anomalies in the offspring of vitamin A deficient rats Am J Anatomy 85 113 1949
- Wood P Congenital heart disease Brit M J 2 639 1950
- Water W M Finegan J and Giffin H M Pulmonary arteriovenous fistula (varix) J A M A 141 581 1949
- Lyon J A and McNabb P E Congenital heartblock J A M A 100 1831 1933
- and Shapiro M J Congenital displacement of the tricuspid valve (Ebstein's disease) Ann Int Med 11 1043 1938
- von Zalka E Histologische Untersuchungen des Myokards bei kongenitalen Herzveränderungen Frankf Ztschr f Path 30 44 1924
- Zdarsky E Cor trientriculare biatriatum mit Pulmonalstenose im Roentgenbild Wien klin Wchnschr 63 144 1951
- Die Dextroversion oder Dextrotorsion des Herzens Wien klin Wchnschr 67 650 1955
- and Boyd L J Roentgen Diagnosis of Diseases of the Heart and Great Vessels New York Grune & Stratton 1953
- Ziegler R F The importance of patent ductus arteriosus in infants Am Heart J 43 553 1952

## Chapter 16

# Anginal Pain and its Differential Diagnosis

### NOMENCLATURE

A DISCUSSION OF ANGINA PECTORIS must be preceded by some remarks concerning nomenclature since the latter is rather confusing and needs clarification. The nomenclature of diseases is closely associated with our knowledge of their etiology or mechanism. In the past there has been much confusion with respect to the explanation of angina pectoris. Huchard alone counted 80 theories designed to explain its cause. On the other hand few other subjects in medicine have experienced equally great progress in recent years. It is our impression that nomenclature has not quite kept pace with this progress. Since the classical work of Heberden the term *angina pectoris* was and still is widely used to define a disease entity. Heberden's description of certain sensations was so brilliant that little was added for a long time with the result that *angina pectoris* came to signify the same disease to every physician.

That the basic mechanism underlying the condition probably is always the same — hypoxia of the heart muscle — has been suspected by many clinicians since Parry. Potain compared *angina pectoris* with intermittent claudication. Scientific progress in the last twenty years, however, has demonstrated that hypoxia of the heart muscle may be produced in a number of ways and that these variegated conditions have a different prognosis and require different management. Therefore it seems advisable to use the term *angina pectoris* only to define a *symptom*. The etiologic mechanism causing the *angina pectoris* should always be added.

The classical anginal syndrome, *angina on effort* for which the term *angina pectoris* is widely used at present in the majority of cases derives from a well defined lesion of known etiology, that is an atherosclerotic or syphilitic stenosis of the coronary arteries or their orifices. Therefore the term *atherosclerotic or syphilitic coronary stenosis with angina pectoris* seems more appropriate to us than the unqualified *angina pectoris*.

The term *angina pectoris* is a name for a disease entity need not be retained for historical reasons since Heberden's clinical description also includes attacks which at present would undoubtedly be attributed to coronary occlusion. In describing the pain he states "and I have met with one in whom it continued for several days" and "If it comes on in the night it will last for an hour or two." These patients obviously did not have a simple *angina pectoris*.



In recent years the term : coronary insufficiency has found wide usage. This term is intended by some to designate a situation somewhat between angina on effort and coronary occlusion. The myocardial ischemia is more prolonged than in angina on effort and therefore may lead to slight anatomic changes. Others understand coronary insufficiency to mean a chronic status of diminished blood supply to the heart muscle. Still again others proposed different definitions. We regard the term as a rather unfortunate designation as will be pointed out. To begin with the name is incorrect because it is the coronary blood flow and not the coronary artery which is insufficient. In patients with anemia or carbon monoxide intoxication the flow of blood is not abnormal but all signs of coronary insufficiency are present. It is true that the phrase aortic insufficiency is employed in a similar way when an insufficiency of the aortic valve is meant. This usage is excusable when every one uses this term to define the same condition. Apparently this is not the case in coronary insufficiency or coronary failure for these designations are applied when the heart muscle obtains insufficient amounts of oxygen because of carbon monoxide poisoning, anemia, pulmonary embolism or paroxysmal tachycardia. It cannot be assumed that the same coronary insufficiency is operating in all these conditions. Coronary insufficiency is not a diagnosis.

We shall see that many instances of so called coronary insufficiency actually concern small myocardial infarctions due to occlusion of small vessels. This will be discussed in a later section. In some instances infarctions occur because of a combination of a mere coronary stenosis with overexertion or tachycardia.

We consider the term : coronary insufficiency permissible only if it is used to define a pathophysiologic state and is further qualified e. g. coronary insufficiency due to acute hemorrhage, coronary stenosis caused by a syphilitic aortitis and so forth. It is not a term to indicate a certain illness.

In the following chapters the term angina pectoris or anginal pain will be used to define a pain caused by hypoxia of the heart muscle. The various conditions in which this type of pain may occur will be described. In an endeavor to apply in this field of cardiology a nomenclature based on etiology — a procedure so successfully promoted by the New York Heart Association for other cardiovascular diseases — we will discuss angina pectoris as a symptom occurring in a variety of conditions. The term will not be used to describe a disease entity. The phrase : coronary insufficiency as a diagnosis is not used at all.

## ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY OF THE CORONARY CIRCULATION

### ANATOMY OF THE CORONARY ARTERIES

The right coronary artery, originating in the right sinus of Valvula runs in the atrioventricular sulcus to the posterior aspect of the heart and forms the descending posterior branch in the posterior interventricular sulcus. It supplies two thirds of the posterior aspect of the right ventricle but it does not nourish

the area of the right ventricle near the anterior interventricular sulcus. Further more it supplies the right margin of the heart and the inferior or basal portion of the left ventricle posteriorly. It is also responsible for supplying the right atrium and the posterior third of the interventricular septum. Important branches are sent to the sinus node, the atrioventricular node, the bundle of His and the bundle branches.

The left coronary artery is usually wider than the right. It originates in the left sinus of Valsalva and divides into two main branches. One branch, the left circumflex artery, supplies the left margin of the left ventricle and most of the left atrium. The descending branch of the left coronary artery runs in the anterior interventricular sulcus and supplies the anterior part of the left ventricle as well as adjoining parts of the right ventricle. It also nourishes the anterior two thirds of the interventricular septum. Approximately 40 per cent of people have a branch of the left coronary artery which supplies the sinus node.

While this description of the blood supply holds for nearly 90 per cent of normal subjects, exceptions and variations occur in 10 per cent. They are most common in the circumflex branch of the left main coronary trunk. This vessel occasionally supplies larger parts of the basal and posterior aspects of the left ventricle.

Thickening of the intima of the coronary arteries is a sign of aging. In childhood the intima is already as thick as the media and in the aged the intima is several times as thick as the media.

*Congenital abnormalities of the coronary arteries* such as a single coronary artery for the whole heart, more than two coronary orifices and origin of a coronary artery from a pulmonary artery are frequently observed.

The left, more rarely than the right (or both) coronary arteries can arise from the pulmonary artery (Soloff). This may be compatible with life up to 60 years when sufficient anastomoses between the two coronary arteries exist but it often is associated with sudden death early in childhood. The children show pallor, perspiration, cyanosis or dyspnea. The heart is enlarged and gallop rhythm is often present. The T wave in the electrocardiogram is deeply inverted in lead I and sometimes also in lead II. The T waves in the chest leads are also inverted but this is often seen under normal conditions in children.

A single coronary artery is usually compatible with a normal function but it creates a dangerous situation when coronary occlusion occurs.

Absence of coronary orifices has been seen in a child 14 months old (Grant) where the necropsy revealed blood filled spaces which communicated with the lumen of the ventricles and the coronary vessels.

An interesting instance of an anomalous left coronary artery which communicated directly with the right ventricle and caused a machinery murmur of a patent ductus arteriosus has been reported (Davis et al).

Congenital or mycotic aneurysms of the coronary arteries occur and are often multiple.

Complete obstruction of the coronary sinus vein does not seem to exert an adverse influence on cardiac activity (Grant)

### ANASTOMOSES

Anastomoses between the branches of the two coronary arteries are numerous. Normally they are too small to function satisfactorily if one of the communicating vessels is suddenly occluded. The coronary arteries are therefore called *functional end arteries*. *Hypoxemia, anemia* and the use of nutrites enhance (in the experimental animal) the widening of anastomoses. The normal physiologic anastomoses are not wider than 40 micra. The anastomoses are said to increase with advancing age, but this fact is denied by others. Anastomoses widen with a slowly progressive stenosis of one of the branches.

*Thebesian Vessels* The existence of thebesian veins has often been denied but careful studies have confirmed their existence and provided detailed knowledge of the anatomy. The coronary arteries communicate with the thebesian vessels only through the capillaries. The thebesian vessels are particularly numerous in the right ventricle. This circumstance, together with the more abundant anastomoses between the coronary arteries within the right ventricle contribute to prevent damage in this ventricle in coronary artery diseases. Even if a complete occlusion of a coronary artery supplying the right ventricle occurs it is rarely accompanied by infarction in the right ventricle.

*Arterioluminal and Arteriosinusoid Vessels* Important communications between the coronary arteries and the ventricular cavities are provided by the arterioluminal and arteriosinusoid vessels. The former were noted by Vieussens; they originate from the arterioles and have a diameter up to 1 mm. They are not abundant but provide a short circuit from the arteries direct to the ventricles. The arteriosinusoid vessels also begin in the arterioles but they break into wide tubes of irregular shape; they are very numerous and have a capillary like structure. Not much information has been obtained concerning the function of these communications under normal or abnormal conditions.

*Extracardiac Anastomoses* The coronary arteries also communicate with extracardiac arteries. Most numerous are the anastomoses between the coronary arteries and the vasa vasorum of the aorta and the pulmonary artery. The first portion of the ascending aorta is nourished by vasa vasorum originating from the coronary arteries, particularly from the right coronary artery. These extracardiac vessels may attain remarkable size and they certainly play a great role in nourishing the heart when the main branches of the coronary arteries undergo slow occlusion. Furthermore, the coronary arteries communicate with the pericardial, diaphragmatic, pulmonary and esophageal arteries.

It is possible for aortitis to occlude both coronary orifices completely without impairing cardiac function and without the development of myocardial infarction. This speaks in favor of the functional capacity of the cardiac and extracardiac anastomoses.

## CARDIAC NERVES

Adrenergic sympathetic fibers are found throughout the myocardium. There is, however, no anatomic or experimental proof that inhibitory vagal effects exist in the mammalian ventricles, with the exception of the vasoconstrictor fibers of the coronary arteries. Vagal fibers are found in the atria of all animals and in the ventricular muscle of many lower animals, but have apparently disappeared in the course of evolution in the ventricle of mammals. A teleologic explanation of this fact is obvious. Animals with inhibitory vagal fibers in the ventricle did not long survive the stresses of life.

## CORONARY BLOOD FLOW

*Blood Pressure:* On the basis of experiments with denervated heart lung preparations it was long believed that coronary blood flow depended exclusively on mean aortic pressure. Investigations on hearts with intact nerves and improved technique, however, have shown that this is not the case. A priori sole dependence of coronary blood flow from aortic pressure was unexplainable, for it was known that coronary blood flow can increase multifold on exertion, whereas the blood pressure increases only slightly.

The heart behaves like other organs of the body in regard to its arterial blood flow. It takes the quantity of blood needed from the aorta and does this within limits quite independently of the blood pressure. It is not passively perfused. Under normal conditions about 5 to 10 per cent of the cardiac output is taken by the coronary arteries and this amount increases decidedly during exertion. Widening of the coronary arteries is accomplished mainly by reflexes and partly by the action of local metabolites.

*Autonomic Nerves:* The denervated heart always shows a maximal coronary blood flow. Therefore continuous nerve tonus may be assumed to control the width of the coronary vessels in the heart in situ and to permit changes in accordance with momentary needs. At present there is wide agreement that the vasoconstrictors for the coronary arteries arise in the parasympathetic system and that the adrenergic vasodilators are provided by the sympathetic system. While some investigators conclude from their experiments that an increase or decrease of the tonic vagal innervation is chiefly responsible for alteration of coronary blood flow, others believe that the vasodilating sympathetic nerves which emerge from the eighth cervical and first to sixth dorsal segments and are carried over the stellate ganglion represent the major factor. The problem of the innervation of the coronary arteries is not yet fully solved.

In addition to the aortic pressure and the tonus of the autonomic nerves (at times also the secretion of epinephrine by the adrenals) the coronary circulation is changed by (1) reflexes from various parts of the body and (2) by contraction of the myocardium in every phase of the cardiac cycle.

*REFLEXES:* Reflex changes of coronary blood flow play a very great role in coronary pathology, but experimental data on this subject are scarce. The

reason for this as pointed out before lies in the difficulty of demonstrating autonomic reflexes in experimental work. To a high degree the different reflexes depend on the status of the receptors, the nerve centers and the effector organs and these factors are altered through anesthesia. Sufficient facts are known however to estimate the great part these reflexes play under certain circumstances.

It is a common clinical observation that an attack of angina pectoris is experienced more often or exclusively after a heavy meal. This occurrence is easily explained and will be discussed in one of the following sections. Occasionally however the pain develops with the first few mouthfuls of food when the patient begins to swallow quite independently of the quantity and quality of the meal. This event is explained by the diminution of the coronary blood flow after mechanical distention of the lower esophagus and stomach. This vagovagal reflex disappears after the vagi are severed or after atropine is administered.

There are a fair number of reliable observations regarding the appearance or aggregation of objective cardiac phenomena during gall bladder disease and their disappearance after the removal of the diseased viscus (Fitz Hugh and Wolferth).

Mechanical or chemical stimulation of the nasal mucosa decreases the coronary blood flow. This is due to a reflex inhibition of the sympathetic vasodilators (Gilbert et al).

Some physicians deny the existence of narrowing of the coronary arteries by nervous and humoral influences. The coronary narrowing following an acute hemorrhage which will be discussed later and the marked narrowing following an intravenous injection of Pitressin show that this viewpoint is not justified.

**EFFECT OF SYSTOLE** The phasic changes of blood flow during cardiac activity are a widely disputed topic. Time and again it was assumed that coronary blood flow stops completely during systole while others conclude from their observations that the flow is enhanced by cardiac systole. According to the studies of Wiggers and his co-workers the phasic blood flow in the coronary arteries depends upon two factors (1) the pressure head in the aorta (2) the intramural tension. The increased intramural pressure during the isometric period reduces the coronary blood flow but with the rise of systolic pressure in the ejection period the flow increases again. The flow decreases again in diastole when the blood pressure is low. There is a gradient of pressure from the outer layers of the myocardium to the subendocardial layers. The latter are exposed to the high intraventricular pressure and the arteries are compressed during systole. The outer layers of the myocardium are exposed to the negative pressure within the chest. Increased heart rate reduces the coronary blood flow.

**Adaptation to Work Performed** Under normal conditions the coronary blood flow is adapted to cardiac activity. The arterial blood necessary for the heart for a given amount of work may be inadequate when the activity is increased. It is not the absolute quantity of the coronary blood flow but the relation between the supply and demand that has primary importance.

Increased work by the heart is accomplished in two ways (1) The minute volume may increase mainly by a greater stroke volume while the rate increases but slightly the return of blood to the heart is augmented so that diastolic filling and therefore the systolic output becomes greater (2) The same goal an increased minute volume can also be accomplished by a greater heart rate without marked changes of the stroke volume

The heart like any other engine consumes fuel (nutrient substances and oxygen) The paramount question from an economic standpoint is whether the relation between work performed and fuel consumption remains within a reasonable limit Investigations concerning oxygen consumption and cardiac blood supply during increased activity show that the heart muscle needs much less additional blood (oxygen) if it does the additional work by a larger stroke volume and a slow rate rather than by a small stroke volume and a fast rate Actually the heart of athletes during the training period adapts itself to a low rate and a larger stroke volume (Bainbridge) and therefore to the more economic type of heart action

These facts explain the clinical observation that even a slight increase of rate in certain cases of coronary disease has a detrimental effect If we possessed a remedy which could slow the heart rate and enable the heart to increase its activity only by greater filling we might obtain excellent therapeutic results in many instances of coronary disease

*Epinephrine* The importance of maintaining an increased blood supply when the demands are greater is well illustrated by the observation of the effect of epinephrine and atropine on the heart Epinephrine dilates the coronary arteries and increases the blood supply to the myocardium by as much as 50 per cent The increased rate the increased motility of the muscle and the higher metabolism following the administration of adrenaline however raise the oxygen requirement so much that myocardial ischemia may develop Even healthy young individuals with normal coronary circulation may experience anginal pain after the administration of only 1 ml of a 1:1000 solution (Paab) When the existence of coronary disease is suspected in a patient the administration of epinephrine in any amount is forbidden

*Atropine* Atropine also acts as a dilator of the coronary arteries by inhibiting the tonic vasoconstrictive action of the vagus It has been found that atropine more than amyl nitrite increases coronary blood flow (Rein) Atropine however usually increases the heart rate as well This leads to a greater demand for oxygen Accordingly patients in whom atherosclerosis precludes a dilatation of certain coronary branches or patients with syphilitic stenosis of the coronary ostia in which an increase of blood flow into the coronary arteries is likewise impossible may develop severe attacks of angina pectoris and very pronounced though transient changes in the electrocardiogram after the administration of a therapeutic dose of atropine (Scherf and Schnabel)

It is essential to note that neither an organic disease nor a reflex narrowing of the coronary arteries is the sole cause of ischemia and anginal pain The

failure to develop a necessary dilatation of the arteries in case of increased need for blood may be equally provocative

### CARDIAC PAIN

The heart muscle as well as the epicardium seem to be insensitive to painful stimuli of chemical or mechanical origin. Sensory fibers exist in the adventitia of the coronary arteries and veins and proceed over the *Nervi cardiaci* to the ganglion stellatum on the left side more than the right after leaving the sympathetic chain they enter the spinal cord with the white rami communicantes of the first to fifth dorsal segments. The upper thoracic ganglia also receive direct sensory fibers from the heart. There is no proof to show that pain fibers run in the vagus. Cardiac pain is a true referred pain.

Ischemia of the heart muscle itself does not seem to cause pain. But pain may be produced by ischemia of the sensory nerve fibers running in the adventitia of the coronary vessels. Ischemia causes metabolites to accumulate locally just as in intermittent claudication.

The sensitivity of different individuals to pain especially visceral pain varies to a great extent.

Experiments in which the sensitivity of the nerve fibers in the adventitia of the coronary vessels was found high do not offer enough evidence to prove that ischemia is the real and only cause of pain in coronary disease. Pain came after ligation and mechanical irritation of a coronary vessel (Singer Sutton and Lueth). Furthermore the instantaneous appearance of pain in all experiments speaks against the ischemic mechanism. Ischemia can cause pain only after some time elapses and not instantly. The experiments merely prove the existence of pain fibers in the adventitia of the coronary vessels.

### ANATOMIC CHANGES DUE TO ISCHEMIA

Ischemia of the heart muscle lasting longer than a few minutes results in necrosis of myocardial fibers particularly in the subendocardial layers around the papillary muscles and trabeculae (Buechner). Necrosis in this area appears in all conditions with a diminished oxygen supply to the heart muscle. These necroses were mentioned earlier as a finding in pulmonary embolism. They appear in carbon monoxide poisoning in shock and in advanced anemia particularly if the animal is forced to perform heavy physical work following an acute blood loss.

Similar necroses in the myocardium have been found in patients who died after prolonged epileptic attacks and who showed normal coronary arteries. Presumably they are not caused by coronary spasm but are due to the inability of the patient to breathe during the convulsions and the consequent hypoxia. These necroses are also seen in attacks of angina pectoris of various types even with anatomically normal arteries (aortic stenosis) and of course in cases of coronary stenosis.

## ELECTROCARDIOGRAPHIC CHANGES DUE TO ISCHEMIA

The electrocardiographic changes caused by a moderate hypoxia of the heart muscle consist of a depression of the RS T segment and of the T waves in leads I and II and particularly in the chest leads (V4 V6). The RS T segment in aVP is elevated. The same changes appear in the electrocardiogram if the area around the papillary muscle (which suffers at first in hypoxia of the myocardium) is damaged mechanically (Boyd and Scherf). If more pronounced hypoxia exists in circumscribed areas of the myocardium the alterations in the electrocardiogram differ depending upon the site and extent of the ischemia.

## THE DIFFERENT CAUSES OF ANGINA PECTORIS

A disproportion between the blood supply to the heart muscle and the need for blood can occur

- (1) In organic diseases of the coronary arteries. Maximal ischemia appears in coronary occlusion and slighter grades in coronary diseases with stenosis.
- (2) In functional disturbances of the coronary arteries (spasm or failure of necessary widening in case of need). This disturbance appears in hypertensive crises, in aortic valvular lesions, pulmonary embolism and in acute hemorrhage.
- (3) In alterations of cardiac activity (increased cardiac work at the beginning of strenuous exercise, paroxysmal tachycardias).
- (4) Alterations of the blood (anemia, carbon monoxide poisoning).

In the following sections these conditions, which have one thing in common — a greater or lesser degree of myocardial anoxia — will be described in greater detail. In all of these conditions pain may or may not appear.

## CORONARY OCCLUSION AND MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION

## HISTORY

Knowledge of the great frequency of coronary occlusion is relatively old. A series of excellent monographs was written on the pathologic aspect of this subject and complications such as cardiac aneurysm, myomalacia and the like were elaborately discussed. Some reports even showed the possibility of a clinical diagnosis of the lesion. Most of these papers remained without noticeable influence on the thoughts of clinicians and sometimes even on the thinking of the very authors of the papers. They continued to diagnose attacks of severe angina pectoris or status anginosus in patients who undoubtedly had a coronary occlusion. Herrick, however, disappointed by the lack of response to his first papers, continued to teach and publish on this subject. Medicine is indebted to him for the fact that in the past thirty years coronary thrombosis has become one of the cardiac diseases that is diagnosed with a fair degree of accuracy.



## PATHOLOGY

*Atherosclerosis and Thrombosis* In the majority of cases coronary occlusion is due to atherosclerosis of the coronary arteries. Other etiologic factors which are mentioned later represent rather rare exceptions. In some cases the atherosclerotic process with atheroma formation, fibrosis, and lime salt deposits leads to a progressive stenosis and finally to a fibrotic occlusion of the vessels. In one investigation no coronary occlusion existed in one third of the cases when the autopsy showed the existence of an infarction. Only coronary sclerosis with narrowing of the lumen was found. Added stress because of exertion, paroxysmal tachycardia or increased output of adrenalin (Raab) may lead to an infarction in such subjects.

In a greater number of cases the atherosclerotic process in the intima impedes endothelial nutrition and thrombosis of the artery occurs at this location. Sometimes an atheromatous abscess opens into the lumen of the coronary artery and embolism or thrombosis develops.

In a majority of cases however the occlusion is due to the rupture of giant capillaries in the wall of the atherosclerotic coronary arteries (Paterson). These giant capillaries arise in part directly from the lumen of the artery and in part from the adventitia (Wolkoff). They are numerous and due to their enormous size and thin walls vulnerable. If their wall ruptures and consequent hemorrhage occurs the intima above it may bulge into the lumen. This occludes the artery. Or the rupture may lead to damage of the endothelial lining so that thrombosis develops. Retrograde thrombosis from the ruptured capillary extending into the coronary artery from which it arises also occurs. These mechanisms are certainly responsible for a vast number of occlusions in coronary thrombosis. Nelson found this mechanism in 11 out of 17 instances and according to Horn et al it existed in 62 per cent of hearts with coronary thrombosis. Snow et al frequently found recanalization in a thrombosed artery. They found several infarctions following one occlusion. Contrary to what others found these authors came to the conclusion that almost every coronary occlusion causes an infarction.

*Embolism* Coronary occlusion is occasionally due to embolism. Such cases usually concern instances of acute or subacute bacterial endocarditis during which small thrombi are detached from vegetations on the aortic or (more rarely) the mitral valves. These cases are more frequent than one might suspect from reports since only a small percentage of them are published. We had occasion to observe this occurrence twice in young women under twenty years of age who suffered from subacute bacterial endocarditis. Sometimes emboli are due to detached mural thrombi or to fragments of atherosclerotic plaques.

Following complicated fractures fat embolism of the coronary arteries is rather common and causes a variety of cardiac phenomena which are usually misinterpreted. Even paradoxical embolism into the coronary arteries is known.

*Syphilis* Syphilitic coronary occlusion involves only the orifice of the coronary arteries and is in reality an extension of the aortitis rather than an intrinsic disease of the coronary vessels. Cases of myocardial infarction due to a syphilitic stenosis of the ostia have been described but usually the process evolves slowly and therefore causes a different clinical syndrome which will be described later.

*Other Lesions* Coronary disease in periarteritis nodosa and in thromboangitis obliterans is a rarity. However these lesions as well as dissecting aneurysm may lead to an acute occlusion of a coronary artery and myocardial infarction. Involvement of the coronary arteries in Takayashu's disease has been reported. Myocardial infarction due to calcification of the coronary arteries in an infant (Traisman et al) and myocardial infarction due to serum sickness (Roussak) or sickling disease have been described.

The coronary arteries may be invaded and occluded by primary or secondary neoplasms. Examples of such metastases have been reported from many organs.

Myocardial infarction has been observed following blunt trauma to the chest, electric shock and barbiturate poisoning (Holzmann).

The atherosclerotic process occurs with equal frequency in all three branches of the coronary tree (right and left descending branches and the circumflex branch of the left coronary artery). This point must be stressed because for many years the descending branch of the left coronary artery was claimed to be the site of predilection.

There are certain sites of predilection for occlusion within a branch such as the descending branch of the left coronary artery 1 cm. after its origin.

It is interesting that in cases examined pathologically usually at least two coronary artery branches show occlusion. In many instances a new thrombosis developed in a patient who had an old occlusion of a vessel supplying the same area. Sometimes occlusion occurs in all three large branches (Hoch and Hong).

Necrosis of the myocardium (myocardial infarction) does not necessarily follow occlusion of a main artery. This is especially true when the stenosis of a coronary artery progresses slowly and allows ample time for the collateral circulation to develop. In these cases it may be possible to fill the whole coronary arterial tree by injection of contrast medium into only one artery. The width of the anastomosing vessels may increase fivefold in such instances (Blumgart et al). Gradual occlusion of the coronary arteries in dogs also permits the development of a collateral circulation the latter is adequate to prevent the appearance of myocardial damage when this artery is completely closed.

The activity of collateral vessels may reduce the infarction to an area much smaller than that supplied by the occluded vessel. The infarction may be situated at some distance from the site of the occlusion. In one instance myocardial infarction developed with all coronary arteries patent. There was a marked fibrosis of the media which apparently led to a disturbance of function but the lumina of the coronary arteries were normal in width (Feyrter).

*Healing* A myocardial infarction heals gradually. A reactive inflammation begins at its borders. Connective tissue replaces the necrotic myocardial fibers and gradually a scar forms. This process is completed slowly and requires some months. The necrosis is fully developed after 4 to 6 days and fibrotic tissue appears in increasing amounts in the second week, but the formation of collagen sometimes takes up to three months. The scar becomes denser after three or more months. Small infarctions heal after 5 weeks and larger ones after 2 to 4 months. The size of the infarction, its location, the status of the coronary vascular tree, and other factors may influence the speed of scar formation.

Complications which may endanger the life of the patient will be discussed in the following pages.

### INCIDENCE AGE SEX

*Incidence* The incidence of coronary thrombosis in the general population is difficult to ascertain. In many cases the diagnosis is not made. In many attacks a physician is not called. The disease is said to cause the death of 200,000 individuals yearly in the United States. In a series of 1000 consecutive necropsies of all ages and both sexes, myocardial infarction was found in 4.9 per cent. For unknown reasons the incidence of the disease seems to be on the increase. In recent years a seven fold increase of the number of cases has been reported (Morris). This is denied by others. The disease is said to be rarer in the lower income groups. The incidence of attacks has been found to be greater during the summer months. The familial tendency is marked (40 per cent) (Bean). This is due in part to the frequent occurrence of hypertension in the same family.

Blumgart found complete occlusion or marked narrowing of at least one and often of more coronary artery branches in 40 per cent of men over 40 years of age who died from a noncardiac disease.

*Age* Since atherosclerosis of the coronary arteries occurs even in the newborn, coronary occlusion with myocardial infarction may occur at any age. Coronary thrombosis caused by acute rheumatic arteritis with myocarditis and endocarditis has been observed in an infant five months old. In a 13 year old girl, coronary occlusion with infarction led to the development of a cardiac aneurysm and rupture of the heart (Benda). Coronary thrombosis has also been observed in young men of 18 and 22 years, respectively. We observed myocardial infarction in a 21 year old girl. This event is not remarkably uncommon in diabetics under 20 years of age.

*Sex* Occlusion of a coronary artery is much more common in men than women, the ratio being about 3 to 1 for younger individuals. In old age as well as in hypertension and diabetes the incidence of coronary thrombosis is increased in women.

### OTHER FACTORS

*Tobacco* There is no proof that moderate smoking causes coronary sclerosis and thrombosis, but the incidence seems to be greater in heavy smokers.

**Diabetes** It was noted in a previous chapter that coronary sclerosis is typical of diabetes the same holds true for coronary thrombosis In diabetes coronary thrombosis appears not only more often but usually at an earlier age Among 274 cases in one series diabetes was found in 10.2 per cent (Conner and Holt) In another series of 300 cases diabetes was present in 17.4 per cent (Bean)

In individuals suffering from diabetes for only 5 years the incidence of coronary sclerosis seems to be increased It is believed by some that coronary sclerosis is not a complication of diabetes but an associated sign which appears even in carefully treated patients who scrupulously obey instructions concerning diet (Dolger) Others believe that full cooperation of the patient with regard to diet and insulin may diminish the incidence of vascular complications (Joslin)

**Hypertension** In hypertensives coronary sclerosis and coronary thrombosis occur much more often than in the general population Statistics dealing with the frequency of hypertension in patients with coronary thrombosis vary but estimates suggest that it is present in more than 50 per cent of the cases

**Obesity** Some authors deny that the incidence is greater in the obese (Latter et al) but the majority of investigators found obese patients in greater danger of developing the disease

**Occupation** Coronary thrombosis was found more often in people with sedentary occupations and it has been claimed to occur more frequently in physicians This has not been confirmed Actually Welsh runners were found to exhibit signs of coronary sclerosis in the same percentage as the general population

### PRECIPITATING MECHANISM

In a majority of cases coronary thrombosis occurs without any apparent cause Attacks develop at rest often at night or during the customary daily work The occurrence of a thrombosis following trauma to the chest has been widely discussed and seems established The outstanding part played by the rupture of the giant capillaries in the atherosclerotic intima in the development of coronary occlusion makes trauma and sudden strain possible factors This question has extreme importance in legal medicine Occasionally coronary thrombosis occurs during surgical shock or postoperatively caused by the fall of blood pressure (Wasserman et al) A fatty meal shortens the clotting time and may therefore precipitate an attack

Myocardial infarction has been reported following poisoning with carbon monoxide Vigorous effort in a patient with coronary sclerosis can provoke an attack Fifty per cent of the fatal attacks in soldiers of the U S Army appeared during physical exertion In such cases as pointed out above thrombosis is often absent but the combination of coronary stenosis and effort caused the attack of myocardial infarction Fifty nine per cent of the hearts of these soldiers exhibited old myocardial scars

## SYMPTOMS

Coronary occlusion and myocardial infarction are occasionally asymptomatic and are discovered accidentally. In many cases there are however ample symptoms and signs to permit the diagnosis.

**Pain.** This is an outstanding symptom although figures about its incidence in myocardial infarction vary. While previously believed to be the rule, more recent observations show that pain is absent in 30 to 40 per cent of acute coronary occlusions (Boyd and Werblow). It has been mentioned that pathologists find at least one coronary artery occluded in the heart of patients who die with a simple angina on effort. Not only a fresh occlusion but also an old one of another artery is discovered in those who die after they developed the syndrome of an acute myocardial infarction for the first time. Slow fibrotic occlusion is more often less painful than acute thrombosis. In some subjects this acute pain is absent but coronary occlusion is followed by angina on effort. In other instances pain is intermittent. The beginning of an infarction may antedate the onset of acute symptoms by days. In psychotic patients 82.5 per cent of myocardial infarctions were painless that is patients did not complain of pain.

The pain may be so severe as to develop into the most excruciating agony. In most instances the pain — which may be viselike, choking or burning — appears abruptly and in its full intensity. There is no waxing and waning. While temporary diminution and return to its original intensity occurs, usually the pain is continuous. It can be so savage that repeated injections of morphine may fail to relieve it. Ordinarily the distress is felt behind the upper or middle section of the sternum and it may show typical radiation to the left or right arm, to the neck or jaw and to the back between the shoulders. Occasionally it radiates to the abdomen and it may spread to the left thigh; this with other abdominal manifestations may convince the patient that he is suffering from a stomach disorder. Sometimes the retrosternal pain is missing and the pain is felt only at the left elbow, the ulnar side of the left (or right) arm, or the left (or right) shoulder. It is rare for the pain to last less than 30 minutes; usually it remains for many hours and even days (status anginosus). After it disappears there may be a residual soreness in the area for several days.

The extreme severity of the pain may cause immediate syncope. The concurrence of extreme anxiety and the severe pain often provoke great restlessness. The patient is unable to sit still; he moves around, covers and uncovers himself, alters his position or clutches at his clothing. Complete immobility in an attack with severe pain is exceptional. Severe sweating occurs.

Between the two extremes — most severe pain and complete absence of pain — there are all transitional stages. Pain may be tolerated quite well and the patient may continue work. We have seen affected surgeons finish an operation despite distress. Sometimes there is only pressure or soreness and the existence of pain is emphatically denied.

The severity of pain allows no conclusion as to the size of the occluded vessel the extent of the infarction or the prognosis. Even with the mildest distress indeed even with no discomfort a major branch of a coronary artery may be occluded. As in other visceral diseases the violence of the referred pain shows great individual variation.

Similar pains of equal duration of the same character and with the same radiation occur in other conditions and will be discussed later. Nevertheless every pain of the type described however mild should arouse the suspicion of a coronary occlusion but such pain should never be the sole finding on which the diagnosis is based. It is a serious mistake for the physician to overlook the diagnosis of a coronary occlusion merely because the prolonged pressure behind the sternum or in the epigastrium was not severe and amounted to mere discomfort. But it is also a mistake to make the diagnosis simply because there was a severe pain in the left side of the chest which persisted for some time. Prolongation of the pain or reappearance of it often means propagation of the thrombus and additional infarction.

*Dyspnea* In most cases dyspnea is absent. Its occasional occurrence was however described in early reports (Obrastzow and Strajesco). Even pulmonary edema is encountered. Sometimes dyspnea is severe and the history of burning pain behind the sternum is elicited only by repeated questioning. If sudden pulmonary edema develops in a patient without left ventricular hypertrophy and dilatation coronary occlusion should be suspected.

Sometimes tachypnea is caused by apprehension or pain and may initiate the hyperventilation syndrome.

If cardiac failure supervenes the types of dyspnea due to pulmonary congestion or cardiac asthma and Cheyne Stokes respiration may appear. Hiccough is not rare and if prolonged represents a serious complication.

*Gastrointestinal Complaints* Belching and even diarrhea are frequent symptoms. Vomiting may be associated with nausea. Frequent retching is often noted in patients who are unable to vomit. The emesis is not caused by morphine alone it happens in patients who have not received this drug for the relief of pain or dyspnea. It is explained by the activity of visceral reflexes originating in the heart muscle itself. Severe meteorism may develop quickly this is particularly apt to occur when the blood pressure falls markedly and venous congestion appears.

### SIGNS

Physical examination of the heart often yields negative results.

*Percussion* In many instances the heart is normal in size and shape. This also applies to large and multiple infarctions and is somewhat astonishing in view of the extent and severity of the existing myocardial damage. Absolute bed rest avoidance of heavy meals and fall of blood pressure lighten the load on the heart so that it can cope with its tasks despite almost mortal damage. Under these conditions the destruction of a circumscribed area of the myocardium

could cause only a circumscribed dilatation (aneurysm) of the heart. The heart is usually enlarged in patients in whom coronary occlusion complicates an existing hypertension.

**Auscultation** This occasionally reveals loud and pure heart sounds. In a majority of cases, however, the sounds soon are muffled, distant and indistinct. The first heart sound may be very dull. This phenomenon is particularly important if it develops during observation or in the hours or days following the onset of pain. With progressive recovery and scar formation the sounds regain their loudness and become distinct. This sequence provides a very valuable aid in checking the improvement of the cardiac status. Sometimes months elapse before the heart sounds regain their original character. In other cases the heart sounds are loud despite the development of large infarctions. It has already been emphasized that in the presence of emphysema, obesity or a markedly convex thorax, distant heart sounds should not be regarded as pathologic. Distant heart sounds are of importance only when normal heart sounds had been observed previously.

In many patients, particularly in those who develop a tachycardia, the fact that both sounds are equally intense gives the impression of an embryocardia. Presystolic and — more commonly — protodiastolic and summation gallop rhythm develop. Systolic murmurs may appear but more often they vanish if formerly present, because of cardiac weakness.

**Pericarditis** An inflammation of the pericardium appears if the subepicardial layers of the myocardium are damaged (pericarditis epistenocardia). While pericarditis actually develops in a fairly large number of cases, it is detected clinically in less than 20 per cent. Although it is usually limited to the infarcted area, sometimes it spreads over the entire heart. At first, nothing more than a soft systolic rub is heard, usually at the apex, and this is often confused with a systolic murmur. Later the typical tripartite friction rub appears. Sometimes the friction rub may be audible only for a few hours; in other cases it is easily detected for several days. It is often missed because myocardial contractions are weak, particularly in the infarcted area. The friction rub may be audible as early as six hours after clinical evidence of coronary thrombosis is found or it may appear several days later. In the second group, one may assume a progressive coronary thrombosis and involvement of more branches, so that the infarction extends to the outer layers of the myocardium which previously had escaped.

In rare cases, pericardial effusion accompanies the pericarditis. This is recognized clinically on percussion by the temporary appearance of absolute flatness over the precordium; a flatness of the same intensity does not develop from mere cardiac dilatation.

The pericarditis, in general, represents a desirable complication, for the local inflammation speeds the healing process. The local adhesions which develop as an aftermath increase the strength of the developing scar and may prevent rupture of the heart. In many cases at necropsy the myocardium in the area of

pericardial adhesions is as thin as paper and is translucent. In one observation a hole over 1 cm in diameter was found through a partial aneurysm covered by a pericardial adhesion (Scherf and Erlsbacher). Histologic examination of this section revealed no myocardial fibers at all. In this instance a perforation of the ventricle was closed by the pericardial adhesion and life was prolonged for a time.

**Fever.** Elevation of the temperature has great diagnostic importance. It is one of the more constant signs of coronary thrombosis. Usually it appears after a lapse of fifteen to twenty hours but sometimes not for two to three days. The height of the temperature varies. In one patient it may be slight ( $37.2^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) in another it may reach  $41^{\circ}\text{C}$ . In the absence of complications it subsides by lysis after persisting four to seven days. In some cases a slight elevation exists only for a few hours but we have seen fever persist for many weeks with no demonstrable cause. In some of these patients a large infarction exists with pericarditis and pneumonitis.

Congestive heart failure, pulmonary edema or pulmonary infarction cause sudden increase or reappearance of fever. Additional extension thrombosis or late appearance of pericarditis have the same effect.

The increased temperature in cases without complications is said to depend less on the reactive inflammation developing in the area surrounding the necrotic section of myocardium or on the pericarditis than in the absorption of abnormal protein products from the necrotic infarcted area. Fever occurs in the absence of pericarditis and often too soon for a reactive inflammation. Accordingly the elevation of temperature is equivalent to the fever developing elsewhere in connection with necrotic processes. Its relatively early appearance may be explained by the fact that cardiac contractions continuously expel abnormal substances from the necrotic myocardium into the circulation. There is no explanation available for the fast disappearance of the fever.

Occasionally elevation of temperature is absent. In one series of cases an increased temperature appeared in only 66 per cent (Baer and Frankel). In our experience the incidence is higher.

**Blood Pressure.** The fall of blood pressure constitutes one of the most important signs of myocardial infarction. During the attack of pain and in the early hours after the attack begins the blood pressure is often high, occasionally it is even impressively higher than it was prior to the attack (Scherf). However it soon starts to fall more or less rapidly. This phenomenon represents a very valuable diagnostic sign of myocardial infarction.

The rapidity and extent of the fall are variable and have great prognostic significance. In some cases the drop is immediate and shock appears. Shock is diagnosed by many clinicians when the blood pressure is 90 mm Hg or less and the pulse pressure is 20 mm Hg or less. On the other hand one sees patients with a systolic blood pressure of 80 mm Hg and a pulse pressure of 15 mm Hg persisting for weeks without any manifestation of shock. Often even in the absence of shock the fall may amount to 100 mm Hg — for example the systolic



pressure may fall from 220 to 100 mm Hg. In other cases the slow decline continues for several days and may not exceed 30 mm Hg or the blood pressure may remain unchanged. If levels as low as 70 or 80 mm Hg are reached the situation becomes critical for the blood supply to the vital centers may suffer. In individuals with sclerotic arteries even a moderate fall of blood pressure may appreciably reduce the blood supply to such vital organs as the cerebrum or kidneys. Loss of consciousness, incontinence of urine and stool, facial or limb paralysis or anuria may appear — without evidence of shock — and vanish if the blood pressure again rises. A fall of blood pressure may be lethal *per se*.

The diastolic blood pressure also falls, though less than the systolic. Therefore the pulse pressure may diminish significantly.

The lowered blood pressure may rise within a few hours, days, weeks, months or even years and regain its previous level. Often, however, it remains at a decidedly lower level despite the fact that the patient feels well, shows no signs of decompensation and pursues his occupation normally. This observation in particular makes it difficult to explain the fall in blood pressure by myocardial damage alone. The fall is usually not due to shock for in a majority of cases it is found without severe pain or shock. Experimentally, a fall of blood pressure appears quickly after ligation of the descending anterior coronary artery but the resulting localized myocardial damage is soon compensated by an increased diastolic size of the heart and the blood pressure regains its normal value. Occasionally there is even some overcompensation and a rise of pressure. There is some experimental evidence for a reflex fall of blood pressure following myocardial damage, the vagus representing the afferent path (Bezold-Jarisch reflex). Further work on this important problem is needed.

The marked decline of blood pressure may be accompanied by a desirable lassitude and sleepiness which make it easier to keep the patient quiet. Another advantage of the lowered blood pressure, provided it remains within certain limits, is the reduction of strain on the severely damaged myocardium. Undoubtedly many patients would not survive a large cardiac infarction were it not for the reduction of blood pressure.

**Urine.** Not uncommonly the examination of the urine discloses a slight albuminuria and glycosuria (Levine). In 100 cases investigated personally glycosuria appeared in 10 per cent. The amount of urinary sugar may reach 1 per cent and acetonuria is often present. The glycosuria is accompanied by hyperglycemia (Scherf) and the fasting blood sugar may exceed 300 mg per cent. Originally explained by shock, by renal damage or by a coexisting sclerosis of the pancreatic arteries, it was later attributed to the activity of reflexes regulating blood pressure (Scherf). As in other stress situations the work of the adrenal cortex was found increased. This is proved by the disappearance of eosinophiles from the circulating blood, an increased secretion of catechols, speaks for a greater function of the adrenal medulla (Raab). The 17 ketosteroids in the urine are increased. There is also a distinct creatinuria. The reflexes proceed over the carotid sinus and increase the output of norepinephrine whose

effect in elevating the blood pressure is generally known. In addition fever, hypoxia, hypercapnia and drugs (morphine and caffeine) which are frequently given to these patients may increase the blood sugar level. Hyperglycemia and glycosuria appear in the absence of shock or even pain.

The glycosuria and hyperglycemia are transient and usually vanish within a few days. In many patients all signs of a disturbed carbohydrate metabolism are absent if examinations including the sugar tolerance curve are made after a few days.

If coronary occlusion occurs in a diabetic individual extremely careful observation is necessary since a previously mild diabetic may sink rapidly into coma.

In impending coma occasionally severe pain appears in the upper abdomen and the differential diagnosis between diabetic coma without complication or coma in a case of coronary occlusion will be difficult.

*Nonprotein Nitrogen.* About one third of the patients with myocardial infarction have an elevation of the nonprotein nitrogen content in the blood. This may be due to the injury in patients with shock. In other instances reduced kidney function as occurred with atherosclerosis of the renal vessels and the fall of blood pressure is the initiating factor. A similar increase of the nonprotein nitrogen in the blood may appear in heart failure. It is temporary if the patient recovers.

*Leukocytosis.* This occurs in most cases of coronary thrombosis. It may be found shortly after the beginning of the symptoms and the count may reach 30,000 per cubic millimeter; there is relative and absolute increase of the polymorphonuclear cells and a drop in eosinophiles. It occurs before or during the fever and often lasts only for one or two days. A second rise appears if other vascular occlusions occur in the peripheral arteries or in the lungs. If the white blood cell count surpasses 20,000 the mortality is said to be about 100 per cent. The eosinophiles reappear within 5 to 7 days. Occasionally lymphocytopenia has been reported in acute infarction (Altshul).

*Sedimentation Rate of the Red Blood Cells. Coagulation Test.* Increased sedimentation rate has had great significance in the recognition and management of myocardial infarction ever since its frequent occurrence in these cases was realized. The increase may not be detected until the fourth or sixth day after the occlusion but values exceeding 100 mm. in one hour (Westergren method) are observed. The importance of this finding lies in the fact that these abnormal values may persist for weeks after the infarction—that is they may be present at a time when other clinical signs such as fever, blood pressure changes and leukocytosis have long since disappeared.

Acceleration of the sedimentation rate of the red blood cells is without doubt an extremely ambiguous phenomenon that should not be evaluated alone. In many cases where the suspicion of a myocardial infarction exists, however, this finding without another satisfactory cause supports the diagnosis particularly if the values rise a few days after the attack.

The cause of the accelerated sedimentation rate seems to be the absorption of protein products from the necrotic heart muscle. As a matter of fact the sedimentation rate is increased approximately as long as the healing process in the necrotic portion of the myocardium is incomplete. For this reason determinations of the sedimentation rate are extremely valuable in appraising the progress of the restorative process. The increase of the rate roughly parallels the severity of the lesion. In small infarctions the rate remains normal.

Occasionally abnormal values are obtained even six to eight weeks after the infarction. In these patients if no other cause (latent infection, anemia) is present bed rest may have to be prolonged. In a majority of cases normal values are obtained within four to six weeks. In rare instances the sedimentation rate remains high for many months for no apparent reason. In these cases one should proceed cautiously and permit the patient to be up and about if the clinical findings are satisfactory.

The sero coagulation bond of Weltman has been found a valuable substitute for the sedimentation rate in myocardial infarction.

*Transaminase Test* The serum glutamic and oxalacetic acid transaminase (SGOT) test which seems to be of great value has been developed by La Due and Wroblewski. This test is based on the fact that a tissue enzyme glutamic oxalacetic transaminase has its greatest concentration in the heart muscle. The normal transaminase has a range of between 10 and 40 units. The average peak in myocardial infarction is 164 units per ml (Ostrow et al.) but much greater values are obtained. This serum activity of transaminase is not increased by infections, degenerative neoplastic or other states unless there is acute damage of the heart or skeletal muscle, liver or kidney. The authors worked out a relatively simple spectrophotometric test of the transaminase (aminophorase). False negative tests are rare. Pathologic values are those over 48 units per ml. If only one test is performed it is best to do it 24 hours after the beginning of the attack. Otherwise it is preferable to perform one test about 8 hours after the onset of symptoms and a second test after 24 hours. The transaminase blood levels are normal again five days after the attack. The highest values were seen in patients with hemorrhagic pancreatitis (over 16,500 units).

Pulmonary infarcts may also cause abnormal tests. Abnormal values are also observed in myositis. In patients with bundle branch block where the electrocardiogram so often does not show the characteristic patterns the test often is of great value.

Other enzymes (aldolase, dehydrogenase, malic acid dehydrogenase) are also increased in the blood (Siegel et al.).

*Other Findings* Kroop and Shackman found the C reactive protein test positive in patients with myocardial infarction. Wilhelm found changes in the electrolyte pattern. Feldthusen and Lassen described a diminished serum iron (hypoferrinaemia) after coronary occlusion and cardiac trauma. Serum zinc levels are lowered after myocardial infarction (Wacker et al.).

**X-ray Examination** This has limited value since it is necessary for the patient to remain in bed for several weeks. An elevated position of the left diaphragm has been described (Borak) it appears in the early stages and may be due to the left sided pleurisy following pericarditis. Abnormal excursions and absence of pulsation along the left cardiac border have been described in connection with fluoroscopy and kymography but these findings have only limited value and cannot be used for diagnosis. Due to the multiplicity of cardiac

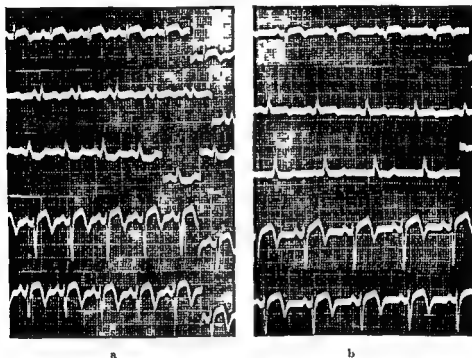


FIG. 62 (a) Typical tracing of an antero lateral wall infarction obtained during the acute clinical picture in a 48 year old man. There is a low QR complex in lead I with a comparatively deep Q wave. The RS T segment is elevated in lead I and depressed in lead III. The R waves are low in V5, there is a peaked deeply inverted T wave in V2 and V5 preceded by an elevated RS T segment. Nine days later figure 62b was obtained. There is a wide slurred Q in lead I followed by a deeply inverted T wave. There is little change in the chest leads.

movements with every systole shortening along the axis widening of some parts in the transverse diameter and rotation; pulsations may be absent normally in local sections of the left cardiac border (Zdinsky)

**Electrocardiogram** The electrocardiogram possesses primary importance in the establishment of the objective diagnosis of coronary occlusion.

Experimental observations show that the alterations in the electrocardiogram may appear within 40 to 60 seconds after ligation of a coronary artery. Clinically

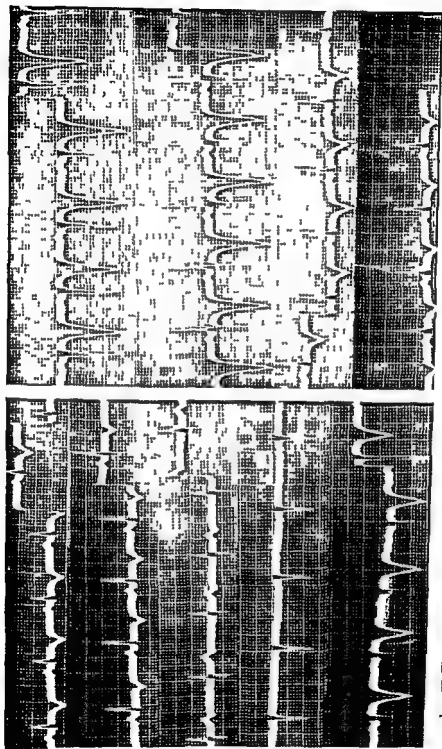


FIG 111 This figure reproduces the standard leads and the six chest leads of a 46-year-old man with an acute myocardial infarction. With the exception of the absence of an R wave in V3, there are no changes of the QRS complex. The T waves are deeply inverted, peaked and asymmetrical in all leads with the exception of leads III, aVL, and V1.

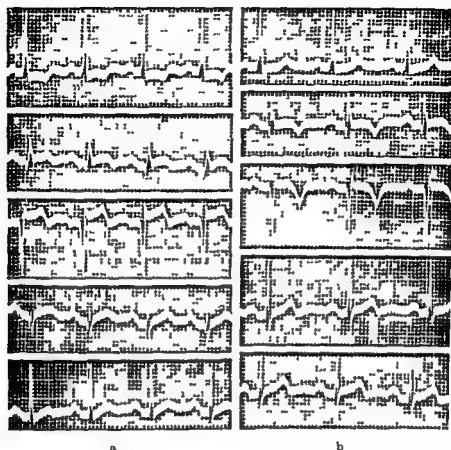


FIG. 64 (a) The pattern of an inferior wall infarction 20 hours after the beginning of the attack. figure 64b was obtained 22 days later

FIGS 65—6 see pages 406 and 407

FIG. 65 This electrocardiogram was obtained from a 3 year old woman suffering from an acute inferior wall myocardial infarction. There is an atrial tachycardia with 2:1 block. The P-R interval is prolonged to 0.24 second. The depression of the R-S-T segment in lead I and the elevation in lead III are clearly seen. In V2-V6 there is a depression of the R-S-T segments which is typical for the acute stage of an inferior wall infarction.

FIG. 66 This is the electrocardiogram of a 56 year old man with clinical signs of an acute myocardial infarction. The standard leads show only abnormal T waves. There are, however, abnormal QRS complexes (no R waves) in lead V2 and V3 and a typical elevation of the R-S-T segment followed by an inversion of T waves in lead V3 and V4. The changes speak in favor of an involvement mainly of the anterior wall of the left ventricle.

FIG. 67 This electrocardiogram was obtained from a 58 year old patient who experienced his second attack of myocardial infarction. Lead I shows a low QRS complex with a relatively deep Q wave. In leads II and III broad Q waves are present. A typical elevation of the R-S-T segments is seen in leads V3-V5. An acute anterior wall infarction was superimposed on an old inferior wall infarction.

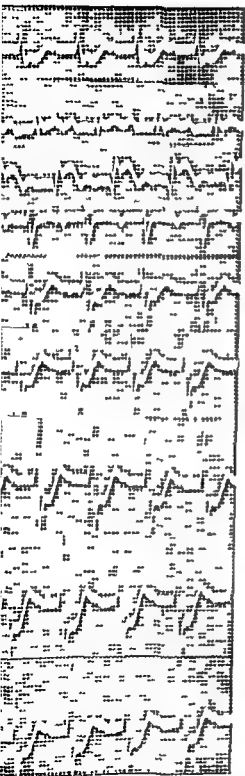


FIG 65

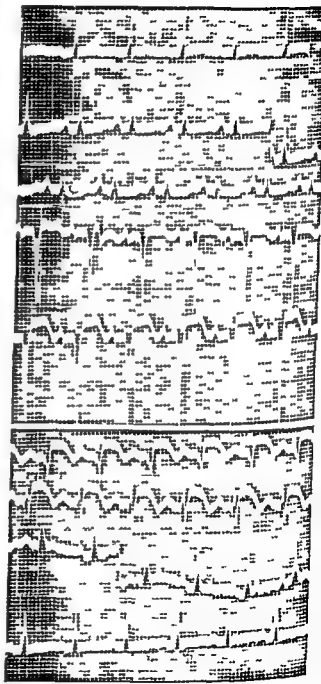


FIG 66

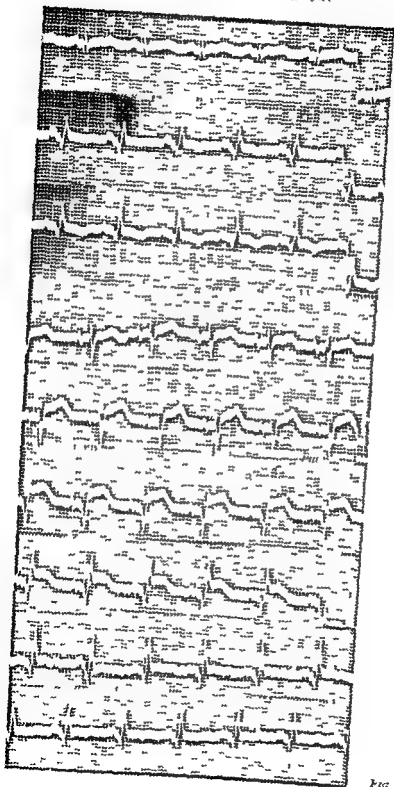


FIG 67



these alterations sometimes last for weeks or months in fact the electrocardiogram may remain abnormal throughout the patient's lifetime

In many cases the changes are characteristic and permit the localization of the infarction. Certain patterns indicate an infarction of the anterolateral area or of the anterior wall of the left ventricle due to an occlusion of the descending branch of the left coronary artery. Other patterns indicate an infarction of the inferior or posterior part of the left ventricle due to an occlusion of the posterior descending branch of the right coronary artery.

In figure 62a the typical tracing of an acute infarction of the anterolateral wall of the left ventricle near the apex is reproduced. The tracing was obtained from a 48 year old man who had suffered from severe pain behind the sternum for 12 hours when the electrocardiogram was taken. The tracings show the typical pattern. There is a high take off of the RST segment from the descending branch of the P wave in lead I and a low take off in lead III. A very pronounced inversion of the T waves is present in the chest leads (V2 and V5).

Figure 62b shows the electrocardiogram of the same patient nine days later. It reveals the typical evolution in the standard leads while the chest leads are almost unchanged.

Figure 63 shows the electrocardiogram of a 46 year old woman who suffered from an acute infarction 12 days previously. There is a deep inversion of the T waves in leads I and II as well as in most chest leads.

In figure 64a and b the typical early and late pattern of an inferior wall infarction are reproduced. The tracings were obtained from a 59 year old woman. The electrocardiogram of figure 64a was taken 20 hours after the beginning of pain due to myocardial infarction. Figure 64b was taken 22 days later.

In figure 64a there is a depression of the RST segment and an inverted T wave in lead I. There is a deep Q wave and a high take off in lead III. The chest leads (CR2 and CR4) show no changes. Figure 64b shows the typical evolution with a return of lead I to normal and the deep abnormal Q waves with inverted T waves in leads II and III.

Figure 65 shows the acute stage of an inferior wall infarction with 2:1 block and a prolongation of the PR interval while figure 66 shows the pattern of an infarction of the anterior wall of the left ventricle. In figure 67 an acute anterior wall infarction was superimposed on an old inferior wall infarction.

For a more detailed discussion of these and other patterns seen in myocardial infarction we refer the reader to our book on electrocardiography.

Frequently other changes such as bundle branch block appear in the electrocardiogram but they are not characteristic. Occasionally alterations are absent for days and sometimes they are missed despite many examinations. Repeated tracings particularly of the six chest leads are necessary if the first records are normal.

In small infarctions situated supra-apically or only in the inner layers of the myocardium no changes in the QRS complex are seen and only T wave

alterations appear (figure 69a) Figure 69b was obtained 3 days later and shows a marked tendency to normalization Four days later a very pronounced inversion of the T waves is visible (figure 69c) The patient a 56 year old woman experienced pain only at admission to the hospital A propagation of the thrombus is a possible explanation for the deterioration in figure 69c However one sees in infarctions temporary normalization in the electrocardiogram (as in figure 69b) for other reasons e g an accompanying pericarditis

No conclusion is permitted with regard to the size of the infarction as is often claimed from the degree of alterations It can be shown that minute

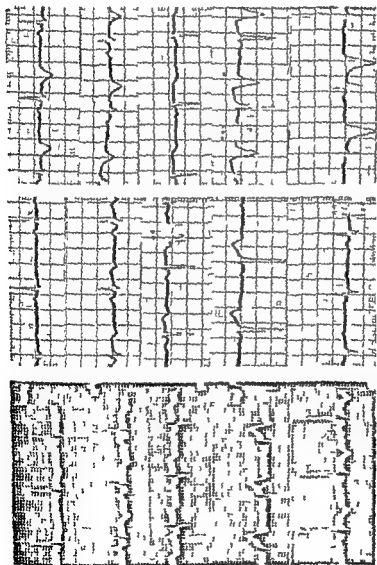


FIG 69 A 56 year old woman, as identified with clinical evidence of an acute myocardial infarction The first electrocardiogram (a) shows the changes seen in left ventricular hypertrophy and also in certain infarctions involving the inner myocardial layer The tracing obtained three days later (b) shows a tendency toward normalization (c) changes which suggest an anterior lateral wall infarction obtained 4 days after (b)

damage of the superficial layers of the myocardium in certain areas where infarctions occur typically (apex or base of the left ventricle) cause marked changes while damage of the deeper layers of the myocardium or damage of areas not in contact with the diaphragm or the long dorsal muscles in front of the spinal column cause slight or noncharacteristic alterations. The extent of the alterations therefore does not give any indication about the size of the infarcted areas.

Since the electrocardiogram may be markedly altered in small infarctions at special locations and may show no or only slight changes in large infarctions at other sites, no conclusion as to the prognosis or the management is permitted from the electrocardiogram.

In cases with bundle branch block or with old previous infarctions or even with a marked hypertrophy pattern typical changes are often missed.

### COMPLICATIONS

In acute myocardial infarction cardiac output falls, the cardiac rate increases, venous pressure often rises and the peripheral resistance increases presumably due to the output of large quantities of pressor amines as a compensatory measure.

In the period immediately following coronary thrombosis certain complications may arise, some endangering the life of the patient. Some are partly or wholly preventable and others demand emergency treatment. An awareness of these complications is indispensable.

*Cardiac Arrhythmias.* These are not uncommon after coronary occlusion and often they represent very serious complications. Some observers noted them in 48 per cent of cases (Rosenbaum and Levine). Disturbances of stimulus formation are usually responsible.

As early as 1881 Cohnheim reported that ligation of a coronary artery may induce cardiac arrhythmias within 30 to 40 seconds and may lead to the condition now known as ventricular fibrillation. The importance of these observations for the explanation of sudden death of patients with coronary diseases was stressed by this observer.

Subsequently these arrhythmias were restudied with the aid of the electrocardiogram on dogs and monkeys with the same result. Following the ligation of a main branch of the coronary arterial tree extrasystoles may appear within a few minutes. Sometimes hours or (rarely) even days elapse before they develop. The extrasystoles are most commonly of ventricular origin but occasionally they originate in the atria. Extrasystoles appear particularly after an occlusion of the right coronary artery. The extrasystoles are often multiform, indicating their origin from different foci. Attacks of ventricular paroxysmal tachycardia appear and ventricular fibrillation suddenly develops. At other times ventricular fibrillation appears suddenly without preliminary extrasystoles. In one series of 50 experiments on dogs ventricular fibrillation appeared in 15 animals (Harris and Hussey). In another series on monkeys ventricular fibrillation occurred in 10 of 32 experiments when the right or left descending coronary artery was

ligated. The first forty minutes are the most dangerous because fatal fibrillation occurs most often during this period. Ventricular fibrillation has been registered electrocardiographically during attacks in man and there is good reason for assuming that sudden death in patients with coronary disease is due to this mechanism. Ventricular extrasystoles and paroxysmal ventricular tachycardias are not rare in patients with myocardial infarctions.

Figure 69 shows the three standard leads of a 42 year old man admitted to the hospital because of severe chest pain. Despite the presence of slurring and

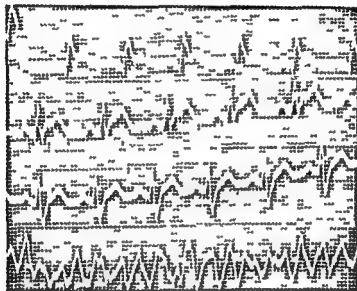


FIG. 69. Acute antero-lateral wall infarction with bundle branch block. Ventricular fibrillation appeared while the electrocardiogram was recorded (lowermost tracing, lead V<sub>2</sub>).

widening of the QRS complexes, the elevation of the RS-T segment characteristic for antero-lateral wall infarction is visible in leads I and II. While the technician switched from lead III to lead V<sub>2</sub> the patient lost consciousness and ventricular fibrillation was registered.

While ventricular fibrillation need not necessarily follow single extrasystoles and while experimental ventricular fibrillation may develop without preliminary extrasystoles, the presence of extrasystoles shows that the patient is in danger. The arrhythmias always represent a serious finding and require immediate treatment.

Among 92 patients with acute myocardial infarction 20 had extrasystoles and of these 4 died (Erdilla and Cosío). All four patients with multiform extrasystoles succumbed. Fourteen out of 17 patients who developed frequent ventricular extrasystoles following myocardial infarction died (Woods and Barne). Other observers believe that the appearance of extrasystoles does not alter the prognosis materially. It is important to realize that the sequence of

extrasystoles, paroxysmal tachycardia and ventricular fibrillation may appear in a few minutes and is usually not observed by the physician. The authors are in complete accord with those who consider the appearance of extrasystoles after a myocardial infarction a serious complication.

During asphyxia of the entire heart, extrasystoles do not appear, probably because there is diminished excitability of the entire myocardium.

In experiments on dogs, prophylactic treatment with quinidine has been found relatively ineffective. In man, however, with the appearance of extrasystoles and to a greater extent of paroxysmal tachycardia, immediate administration of quinidine is very helpful. It is claimed that the routine practice

of giving daily doses of quinidine in a large hospital to all patients in danger of developing ventricular fibrillation reduced the number of sudden deaths remarkably. Apart from the danger of ventricular fibrillation, the damage produced in these hearts by paroxysmal tachycardia with a rapid rate per se is so great that it requires the immediate use of quinidine. Even if large doses of quinidine are necessary, the danger from it is less than that from a persistent tachycardia. This question will be further discussed later in this chapter.

Sometimes atrial fibrillation and flutter appear. In the

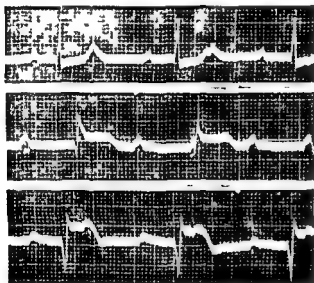


FIG. 10 Complete heart block in a patient with an acute inferior wall myocardial infarction.

first condition immediate digitalization is indicated to slow the rate. The latter disturbance is usually treated with quinidine but digitalis is preferred by many. We often use strophanthin.

It was pointed out earlier that the sinus node usually obtains its blood from the right coronary artery. If the right coronary artery is occluded close to its orifice, disturbances of stimulus formation in the sinus node, such as sinus bradycardia or sinus arrhythmia, may develop. These bradycardias are beneficial because of the greater efficiency of the heart with slow rates. We have seen congestive failure and gallop rhythm develop immediately after this bradycardia vanished.

Since the A-V node and the bundle of His are also supplied from a branch of the right coronary artery in most cases, partial or even complete heart block is not rare when this artery is occluded and inferior wall infarction appears.

Figure 70 shows an electrocardiogram taken from a 69 year old woman with the clinical picture of myocardial infarction. There is a typical pattern of a fresh inferior wall infarction with complete atrioventricular block. Atria and ventricles contract regularly but independently of each other.

A partial heart block in a patient with inferior infarction is seen in figure 71. The atrioventricular rhythm in figure 72 is in all probability caused by non function of the sinus node due to the occlusion of the right coronary artery near

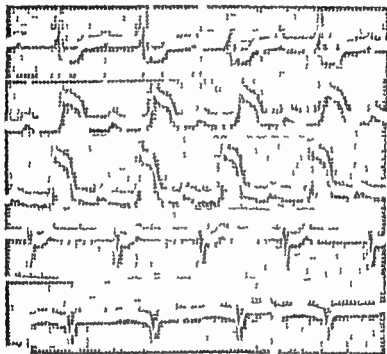


FIG. 1 In a 51 year old man with the clinical signs of an acute myocardial infarction the conduction time is prolonged to 0.40 second and a 1 block exists there is marked elevation of the ST segment in leads II and III indicating an acute inferior wall infarction. The chest leads (V1 and V2) show signs of an old antero-lateral infarction.

its orifice. Auricular flutter in a patient with anterior wall infarction is seen in figure 73.

All types of partial AV block and complete heart block may appear and Stokes Adams attacks may occur. Sometimes the heart block vanishes in a few hours or days. Under these circumstances as mentioned above the condition of the patient may change for the worse as the rate increases and sinus rhythm returns.

**Shock.** A very serious complication of coronary thrombosis with myocardial infarction is the appearance of peripheral circulatory failure or shock. The cause is not clear. The fall of the cardiac output or the overwhelming pain may

be responsible in some patients; in other patients the appearance of arrhythmias with too rapid or too slow rates and in still other patients reflexes of the type of the Bezold-Jarisch variety may be responsible. Thus central (cardiac) and peripheral mechanisms may be determining factors.

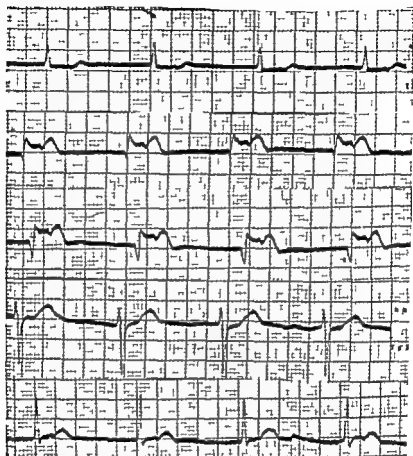


FIG. 72. In a 72 year old woman with clinical signs of an acute myocardial infarction the electrocardiogram shows the pattern of an inferior wall infarction. There is a bradycardia of 60 beats per minute and the sinus rhythm is replaced by an atrioventricular rhythm with a 1 wave (inverted in leads II and III) between the QRS and T waves.

Opinions regarding its incidence vary. Some believe shock occurs in 10 per cent of all myocardial infarctions while others consider it to be more rare. Such diversity of opinion derives from the arbitrary method of diagnosing light shock. Some physicians consider all patients to be in shock whenever the blood pressure is 90 or less while others diagnose shock whenever the pulse pressure is 20 mm. Hg or less. It is a good practical rule to watch the patient carefully and supervise him as constantly as one would a patient in diabetic coma as soon as the systolic blood pressure falls to values around 100 and the pulse pressure threatens to reach values around 20. In our opinion there are patients in shock

with higher blood pressure values, while others have for weeks a systolic blood pressure of 80 and a pulse pressure of 20, without being in shock. It is in the latter group of patients in particular that early energetic therapy may do more harm than good.

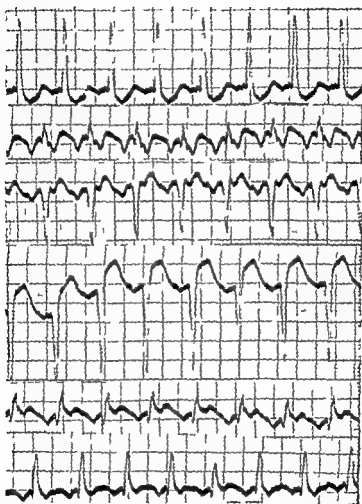


FIG. 13. Atrial flutter with 1 block and signs of an acute anterior wall infarction (lead V 3) in a woman 48 years old.

Shock should be diagnosed by other clinical signs — sinus tachycardia, when grey color, cold perspiration, weakness, and anuria.

The mortality is markedly increased by the appearance of this complication. It seems to amount to 80 to 90 per cent if severe shock is present. Temporary fall of the blood and pulse pressure does occur, but it is often compensated after a short time by regulatory mechanisms. Even overcompensation with a rise of blood pressure may be observed (Orszag). During shock the danger of



intravascular thrombosis (cardiac cerebral mesenteric) is great. It may be followed by the development of lower nephron nephrosis.

The early diagnosis is of importance since statistics indicate that therapy initiated when the shock has lasted more than 3 hours is of very dubious value.

*Perforation of the Ventricular Wall and Cardiac Tamponade.* Originally this event was described by Harvey. Perforation of the ventricular wall in the infarcted area usually occurs in the first two weeks. In one series the earliest appearance was 14 hours after the onset of symptoms and the latest was on the sixteenth day (Bean). Among 7000 autopsies spontaneous rupture of the heart was observed 40 times (0.57 per cent) (Benson et al.). In another series of 25 000 necropsies cardiac rupture was seen 72 times (Edmondson and Hoxie). This tragic complication occurs in 2 to 4 per cent of myocardial infarctions. Often there is no hole in the muscle but the blood oozes slowly from the infarcted area separating the layers of myocardium and cutting a tortuous path from endocardium to epicardium. Rupture occurs very rarely through an old scar. Many of these cases are encountered by medical examiners since the coronary occlusion preceding the cardiac rupture often remains unrecognized and the patient dies suddenly. Rupture usually takes place on the anterior wall of the left ventricle above the apex. The decisive factors are the amount of softening and the height of the blood pressure. Rupture seems more common when hypertension persists.

Rupture of the ventricular wall is usually immediately fatal. Exceptions like the case mentioned above where an adherent pericardium covered the opening created by the perforation are rare.

Rarely patients survive the oozing of blood and cardiac tamponade. The latter is generally treated conservatively (aspiration) but surgery with suture of the involved area should be considered more often.

*Perforation of the Interventricular Septum.* This complication causes a typical clinical syndrome with the sudden appearance of a thrill and a loud systolic murmur over the fourth and fifth interspaces to the left of the sternum. The heart undergoes marked dilatation and evidence of congestive failure soon appears.

The patient may survive this complication for years. One case was observed for four years and ten months with a perforated interventricular septum following coronary thrombosis while one of us had a similar patient under observation for three and one half years.

*Rupture of a papillary muscle* of the left ventricle causes a loud whistling to an fro murmur that is often high pitched. Sometimes there are no murmurs. The clinical diagnosis is difficult. Patients rarely survive more than a few hours.

*Postmyocardial Infarction Syndrome.* Dressler describes a postinfarction syndrome resembling idiopathic pericarditis. Despite absence of hemorrhagic sputum in these patients we believe that the combination of pericarditis with pleurisy and pneumonitis could be explained by pulmonary infarctions. Post

mortem examinations will certainly decide the issue in the future. According to the author cortisone is the preferred therapy.

*Abscess Formation* This is a rare complication in the infarcted area. It appears also in sepsis, pneumonia and pyelitis.

*Dyspnea* This is a common and serious complication. Often it is paroxysmal and in coronary thrombosis pulmonary edema may be the equivalent of an attack of pain. Paroxysmal dyspnea and pulmonary edema may develop at any time after an infarction but they are prone to appear in the first two weeks. If pulmonary congestion predominates there is continuous dyspnea and orthopnea.

Moist and dry rales over the lungs for the most part at the bases are common. The dyspnea is rapidly controlled by morphine which must be given day and night in these cases to afford relief. Moist rales over the bases of the right and left lung are extremely common and bear continuous watching. The advisability of digitalis therapy if pulmonary congestion and right heart failure supervene will be discussed later.

*Pulmonary Effusion* Left pleural effusion is not unusual and is due to irritation of the pleura following the pericarditis. A left-sided pleural effusion of obscure origin in a man over forty years of age should always arouse the suspicion of a myocardial infarction. Too often the infarction is overlooked and the patient is treated symptomatically for the pleural effusion.

*Peripheral Vein Thrombosis and Pulmonary Embolism* This is a very common complication and everything possible must be done to prevent it. The impairment of circulation is one of the more frequent causes of venous thrombosis. All statistics dealing with the incidence of fatal pulmonary embolism stress that most of these cases concern those affected with a cardiovascular disease. In patients with myocardial infarction the combination of a marked fall of blood pressure and enforced prolonged rest in bed is a typical and regular cause of thrombosis in the pelvic veins; this is the usual source of pulmonary emboli. Such emboli may occur as early as 10 to 15 hours after the onset of symptoms.

The discussion of the effects of pulmonary emboli on the heart and circulation in a previous chapter should make it clear that this additional new burden for the severely damaged heart creates serious problems and often causes early death.

The diagnosis many times is missed, the symptoms or signs being attributed to a new myocardial infarction. The differential diagnosis between the two conditions as well as prophylactic measures will be discussed below.

Statistics about the incidence of thromboembolic phenomena in patients with myocardial infarction give figures varying from 5 to 33 per cent.

*Peripheral Embolism* This is produced by mural thrombi from the left ventricle. Since the inner layers of the myocardium are often involved in cardiac infarction, endothelial damage leads to the formation of thrombi. These thrombi are found in almost 50 per cent of fatal myocardial infarctions and have been noted as early as 24 hours after the onset of coronary occlusion. With healing slow fibrosis occurs and only a slight thickening of the endocardium remains.

Occasionally there are lime salt deposits which may be visualized by x ray. In some cases on the other hand the thrombus liquefies and becomes fragmented and multiple peripheral emboli develop. Despite the high incidence of mural thrombosis peripheral embolism fortunately is not very common.

Embolism of the cerebral arteries causes hemiplegia and other forms of paralysis. The spleen, kidneys or mesentery are also frequent sites of embolism. Sometimes the thrombus fragments into multiple emboli which lodge in the viscera and extremities. Occlusion of a leg artery may necessitate embolectomy or amputation.

Mural thrombi also occur in the right ventricle, an event which usually happens when the right side of the interventricular septum is affected. These thrombi may be the source of pulmonary emboli.

The sudden marked fall of blood pressure in patients with severe atherosclerosis of the cerebral and peripheral vessels may lead to the formation of arterial thrombi and may cause syndromes similar to those of embolism. Differential diagnosis is often impossible.

If the myocardial infarction causes no symptoms the only evidence of a cardiac lesion may be one of the embolic syndromes just mentioned. Embolism seems to occur often when the heart is not severely damaged by the infarction and still contracts vigorously. Peripheral embolism is observed as early as 24 hours after the occlusion or as late as many weeks after.

*Neurologic Signs.* Confusion, attacks of unconsciousness and epileptiform convulsions occur even in the absence of heart block or tachycardia. Temporary paralysis of an extremity or the facial muscles may appear.

*Jaundice and Hemoptysis.* These are not uncommon early complications that often follow pulmonary embolism with infarction. Hemoptysis occurs at times in the first 24 hours. Thrombosis or embolism of a pulmonary artery or a reflex vascular spasm in the lesser circuit contribute to the development of these accidents.

*Cardiac Aneurysm.* For centuries marked dilatation of a cardiac chamber has been called an aneurysm. Thus even in recent times the term has been applied to the great dilatation of the left atrium in mitral stenosis. At present however the term cardiac aneurysm or partial cardiac aneurysm is reserved for a bulging of a portion of the wall of one cardiac chamber. Usually the wall has undergone marked change. A cardiac aneurysm may be due to trauma, syphilitic gumma, large tubercle, trypanosomiasis (Moriz et al.), developmental anomalies (Martin), severe focal myocarditis (even in rheumatic fever) or a mycotic abscess but as a rule it is the result of coronary occlusion. Multiple aneurysms have been described.

Statements on its incidence vary. Representative figures are 11 per cent (Parkinson et al.), 14 per cent (Bern) and even 39 per cent (Libman) of myocardial infarctions. In our experience the latter figure more closely approximates the true situation. It seems that aneurysm is common in large infarctions.

Early aneurysm most often develops with a massive necrosis especially if the blood pressure remains high and the patient is too active.

Often the small aneurysmal sac shows a gentle rather than abrupt departure from the normal myocardium. There is no sharp bulge. In other cases the large sac departs abruptly and may measure as much as 16 cm in diameter. Often the aneurysm is partly or completely filled with a thrombus. Fortunately pericardial adhesions over the aneurysm are the rule and help to strengthen the thin myocardial wall. This may be why rupture of the myocardial sac even in large aneurysms of long standing is relatively rare. Most of these aneurysms follow an occlusion of the descending branch of the left coronary artery and are located slightly above the apical region of the left ventricle; they occur however in the posterior basal region after an occlusion of the descending branch of the right coronary artery and in other parts such as the interventricular septum.

The aneurysm itself causes no symptoms. The patient usually has a history of a previous coronary occlusion with infarction although sometimes the occlusion was symptomless. Because they were not kept in bed at the time of greatest softening of the myocardial wall, this is in the first weeks following the myocardial infarction it is precisely these patients who develop aneurysms.

In a large majority the clinical diagnosis of ventricular aneurysms is impossible by all available methods. This is true particularly for those aneurysms which do not show a sharp bulge. In many cases however the diagnosis is easy.

The outstanding sign is an abnormal pulsation usually located slightly above the apex at the left cardiac border or slightly inside it. Sometimes this pulsation on the chest wall (a bulging hemisphere) is very strong and can scarcely be suppressed. In one of our cases the pulsation was seen in an area 4 or 5 cm in diameter on the sixth day after the symptoms and signs of myocardial infarction appeared. Often the pulsation persists throughout the life of the patient but it may diminish in intensity or disappear with the development of thrombi or contraction of scar tissue (Scherf and Erlsbacher).

The location of this pulsation usually distinguishes it from others of cardiac origin. It is too high for an apical pulsation, too low for one from the pulmonary conus and too lateral for a pulsation of the right ventricle (precordial pulsation).

Dysphagia due to compression of the esophagus by an aneurysm of the left ventricle has been observed (Strandell).

Percussion usually reveals cardiac enlargement. The pulse is often small and the systolic blood pressure is often very low.

Auscultation often yields indefinite findings such as muffled heart sounds, gallop rhythm or even pure and loud sounds. Not rarely a systolic murmur is heard and is loudest over the pulsating area. In some cases a high pitched diastolic murmur is audible in the same place. It has the same character as a murmur of aortic insufficiency (Scherf and Brooks) (figure 74). In two patients observed by one of us the diagnosis of aortic insufficiency was made clinically, postmortem examination revealed a cardiac aneurysm. It is interesting to note that one of the first cases of cardiac aneurysm diagnosed antemortem presented

a diastolic murmur. In this case the murmur had a musical character (Remlinger). In our experience the to and fro murmurs heard over cardiac aneurysms are soft and high pitched. The murmurs must be differentiated from extra cardiac murmurs and a pericardial friction rub. This is due possibly to the quality of the murmur which makes it similar to those heard in aortic insufficiency. During systole the weak aneurysmal sac is filled and distended with



FIG 74 Cardiac aneurysm

blood. Backflow of this blood into the left ventricle in diastole may explain the murmur.

X-ray examination, particularly fluoroscopy, is of great diagnostic help. Frequently the bulge of a large aneurysmal sac reveals the diagnosis immediately. Sometimes the sac is visualized only when the patient is slightly rotated. Often the abdominal shadow obscures the aneurysm; in these cases examination after the administration of sodium bicarbonate has been recommended, since this causes a large gas bubble in the stomach with the result that much of the left lower border of the heart becomes visible. Apart from the deformed contour of the left cardiac border, aneurysms are sometimes recognized on fluoroscopy by abnormal pulsations like marked paradoxical outward pulsation during systole. Examination in the right oblique position is often helpful. One must

be careful not to confuse the fat pad on the lower cardiac border with a cardiac aneurysm

Figure 74 shows a typical aneurysm at the left border of the heart. The electrocardiogram of this patient showed the pattern of an antero lateral wall infarction

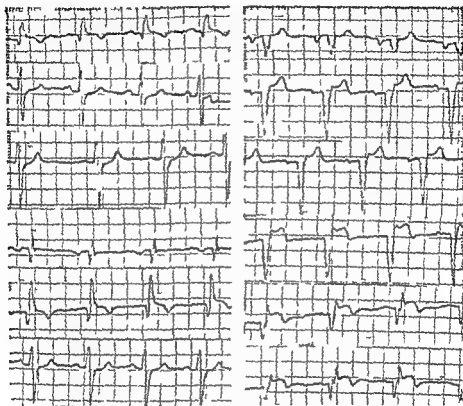


FIG 75 Typical electrocardiogram of an antero lateral wall infarction showing persistent elevation of the RST segments in lead I, aVL, V3, V4, V5 and V6. The aV leads are beneath the standard leads while the chest leads are on the right side

Aneurysm of the basal posterior aspect of the left ventricle may occasionally be visible with a postero anterior chest plate

Often increased rounding of the left ventricle (marked aortic configuration) in a patient who does not have and never had hypertension may point to a cardiac aneurysm (Parkinson et al). If there is a lime salt deposit at an abnormal site along the left cardiac border, an aneurysm may be suspected

Even with large aneurysms the diagnosis is often impossible despite careful x ray studies

The electrocardiogram is not characteristic. It shows evidence of myocardial involvement and often there are signs of an anterior or rarely of a posterior

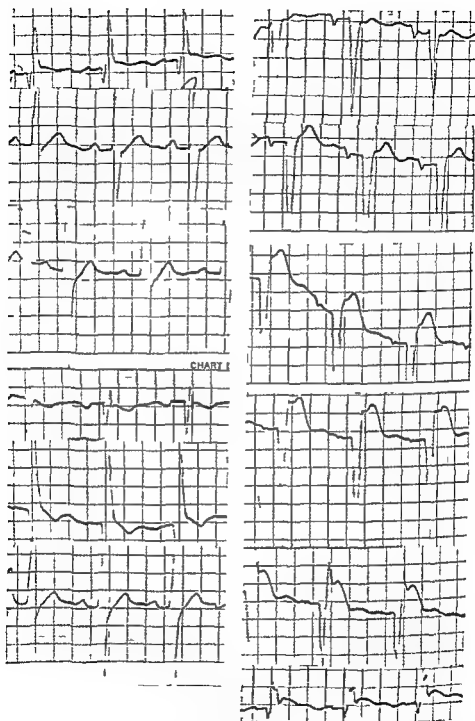


FIG. 6 This electrocardiogram is from the same patient as shown in fig. 7 but was obtained 27 months later. The patient felt well and had resumed medical practice in spite of his cardiac aneurysm. The RS-T segments in lead I and the chest leads are still elevated. In aVL the T wave remains inverted while the inversion in the chest leads has disappeared. The patient died 3 years later.

wall infarction. In some of our cases a bundle branch block or some of the other changes encountered in coronary disease has been found. Many of our patients, however, showed an unusual persistence of elevation of the RST segment so that in lead I and in the chest leads one might be inclined to diagnose a recent anterior wall infarction. The electrocardiogram shows these features:

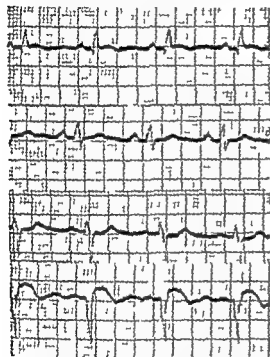
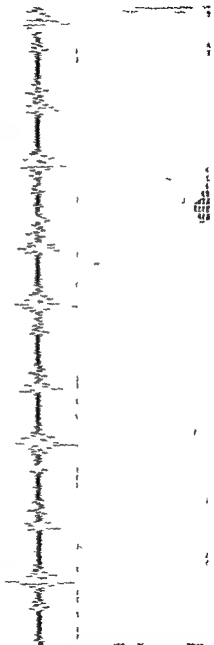


FIG. 7. The three standard leads and V5 of a 70-year-old patient with a cardiac aneurysm. The clinical diagnosis was confirmed at necropsy. Persistent elevation of the RST segment imitating the pattern of an acute infarction is visible in lead I and V5. (Courtesy of Dr. C. Borneman.)

FIG. 18. Stethogram of the same patient from whom the electrocardiogram of figure 7 was taken. A soft systolic and a louder diastolic murmur are visible. (Courtesy of Dr. C. Borneman.)



for many years without further change. In our experience, if there is a permanent RST elevation in the electrocardiogram of patients who once had a myocardial infarction, the suspicion of a cardiac aneurysm is justified. Although this



electrocardiographic pattern is found only in a minority of cardiac aneurysms it is by no means rare

In figures 75 and 76 an electrocardiographic pattern typical for a cardiac aneurysm is reproduced. The tracings were obtained from a 56 year old man with a large cardiac aneurysm. They show the abnormally deep Q wave with the slight elevation of the RS T segment in lead I and the chest leads.

Figure 77 shows the electrocardiogram and figure 78 the stethogram of a patient with a cardiac aneurysm. The 70 year old woman showed the typical circumscribed pulsation 16 days after the attack. A typical systolic diastolic murmur was heard. Postmortem examination revealed an antero lateral wall infarction. The wall of the aneurysm was remarkably thin and formed by white translucent fibrous tissue (courtesy Dr C Borneman).

There may be survival of 10 years or more despite a huge cardiac aneurysm. One of our patients is active and still free from complaints more than eighteen years after his cardiac aneurysm was recognized. Another patient with a cardiac aneurysm which has been present for fourteen years flew over the Atlantic 48 times without any discomfort. These patients may lead active lives free from symptoms; nevertheless, it is clear that physical activities must be curtailed.

In many reported cases and in 3 personal observations paroxysmal ventricular tachycardias developed shortly before sudden death in patients with cardiac aneurysms so that one may assume death was the result of ventricular fibrillation.

In a patient with a large ventricular aneurysm after infarction the aneurysm has been successfully removed by surgery (Lakoff and Bailey).

*The Shoulder Hand Syndrome and Dupuytren's Contracture.* These complications are not infrequent following myocardial infarction. They were noted in 17 out of 133 consecutive cases of myocardial infarction (Frustene and Kinell). They occur most often on the left side that is the side to which pain most often radiates. Dystrophy of muscles and a tendency to fibrotic changes appear.

Not rarely a patient is alarmed by the development of shoulder pain which he takes to be a sign of a recurrence of angina pectoris. But because this pain is independent of physical effort and occurs when the arm is moved distinction is easy. Early hyperemia and edema of the hand may appear and last as long as six months. This hyperemia like that following trauma leads to osteoporosis. Abduction and external rotation of the arm are reduced and tenderness is found on pressure on the periarthicular tissues of the shoulder. The handicapped patient is unable to use the arm freely. The syndrome may appear in patients with exertional angina pectoris or even in asymptomatic coronary sclerosis some time before a myocardial infarction occurs. It is occasionally seen 3 to 12 weeks after an infarction in other cases months and even years elapse before it appears. Naturally the disturbance is not characteristic of coronary occlusion or an acute infarction. It is a common occurrence in coronary sclerosis without angina pectoris and without any evidence of infarction.

Many attempts have been made to explain these changes. Viscero visceral reflexes, reflex vascular spasm in the periarticular tissue and resultant nutritional disturbances have been suspected to be determining factors.

At the present time it is assumed that afferent stimuli from the heart bombard the internuncial pool, which is a network of interconnecting neurons in the central gray matter extending over several segments in the spinal cord. From here outgoing stimuli influence autonomic pathways.

The disability and pain may last for six months and may recur at any time.

It is claimed by some investigators that this syndrome appears particularly in subjects with a certain type of personality—that is, in those who tolerate pain poorly (Coventry). The process is said to progress faster if the arm is not used.

If procaine is injected into the stellate ganglion in the early stages of the syndrome, rapid recovery may occur or progression is prevented. Cortisone has also proved useful. A dose of 75 mg is given daily and with the appearance of improvement the amount is reduced to 50 and then 25 mg. Hydrocortisone, 50 mg, injected into a trigger zone only once is said to help many patients (Berger).

Combined with or independent of these shoulder affections, changes may also be noticed in the left (rarely the right) hand. The skin is glossy and the hand as well as the fingers become stiff; the patient is unable to bend the hand or to make a fist. A slight red discoloration appears and the fingers are cold. The ulnar side is affected more than the rest of the hand. Atrophy of the skin follows. These changes were noted in 39 (21.8 per cent) out of 178 consecutive cases of myocardial infarction (Johnson). They may develop as early as three weeks after the infarction. Gradually the picture of Dupuytren's contracture develops. The lesion may be symmetrical and independent of the site of radiation of the pain.

Dupuytren's contracture does not seem to be an entity, but may follow any irritation of the sympathetic nervous system. It occurs in diverse visceral diseases. Here also the possibility of reflex vasoconstriction has been discussed.

There is no sharp distinction between these conditions and Sudeck's atrophy and causalgia.

### DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

In the preceding sections it has been pointed out that coronary occlusion with myocardial infarction may cause a series of symptoms and signs which readily permit the diagnosis in a vast majority of cases. Occasionally, however, as the result of absence of pain or of abnormal radiation of the pain or due to the fact that pain similar to that observed in coronary occlusion occurs in other diseases, the diagnosis is missed. In addition, certain signs arise due to complications, thereby further confusing the clinical picture. Moreover, now that physicians are more coronary conscious, the diagnosis of occlusion with infarction is made at times when the condition is not present.

At this juncture it must be re-emphasized that the diagnosis should never be made on the basis of the pain alone. Even if the pain is 'typical' lasts for hours is overwhelming in intensity or radiates to the left arm and hand another condition may be present. The diagnosis should always be confirmed by one of the signs mentioned previously — elevated temperature fall of blood pressure increased sedimentation rate and so forth. On the other hand every complaint of pressure or tension behind the sternum irrespective of how slight it is should arouse the suspicion of the presence of a myocardial infarction when the distress lasts for longer than a few minutes.

*Epilepsy* In patients with many successive attacks of epileptic convulsions or status epilepticus the violent effort caused by tonic and clonic convulsions without adequate breathing causes hypoxia of the heart muscle and myocardial necrosis. Neuberger found such necroses in 14 of 34 patients.

One must remember on the other hand that patients with myocardial infarction may develop Stokes Adams attacks resembling epileptic convulsions. The differential diagnosis must be considered and will usually be possible.

*Cardiac Neurosis* Pain in the cardiac region is common in cardiac neuroses (see neurocirculatory asthenia). In contradistinction to coronary thrombosis the pain is often shortlasting and stabbing although it may be prolonged and severe. In this instance it is usually located at the cardiac apex and not behind the sternum. The patient indicates the painful area by pointing with the tip of a finger rather than the palm of the hand as in anginal pain of any etiology. Occasionally a circumscribed area at the apex will be sensitive to pressure. The frequent recurrence of this pain its relation to certain emotional disturbances the absence of organic findings and the presence of the signs of a cardiac neurosis usually permit the diagnosis. Occasionally a cardiac neurosis of this type develops after a friend or relative suddenly and unexpectedly died in my arms from a coronary attack.

Sensations of an unpleasant character are often noted in the cardiac area by healthy people who may recognize the relation to emotions anxiety and the like. While they rarely gain importance and are not associated with heart disease by the average healthy person they may become major problems in anyone who is apprehensive and readily alarmed.

It does not seem amiss to stress that very careful examination and observation are necessary before a patient is labeled neurotic. The information some patients obtain from pseudoscientific publications in magazines and newspapers occasionally makes it difficult to secure an unbiased history.

*The Thoracic Cage and Spondylarthritis* Osteoarthritis of the upper dorsal vertebra causes distress that is frequently confused with the pain of coronary disease. The pain may last for seconds or hours it has the typical radiation to the left or right arm and it may be very distressing. Usually there are no objective findings the movements of the upper dorsal vertebrae are sometimes restricted. The spinous processes of the first dorsal vertebrae are occasionally sensitive to percussion and a segmental cutaneous hyperesthesia is sometimes

demonstrable. An x-ray demonstration of a hypertrophic spondylitis is diagnostically indecisive since such evidence is secured very often in adults without symptoms. On the other hand there may be an extensive hypertrophic osteoarthritis with negative x-ray findings.

Similar attacks of pain with the same radiation occur in myositis and fibromyositis of the long dorsal muscles in the other thoracic segments.

Radiculitis of the upper dorsal spine may cause pain which contrary to some statements may be retrosternal. It appears particularly when the patient assumes a certain position in bed and is relieved when the position is altered. It also occurs with coughing, straining at stool, and sneezing. At times it appears while the patient is walking and swinging his body. Here the differential diagnosis from an exertional angina is especially difficult. Pressure on the spine or percussion of the spinous processes may reproduce the pain. It is noted particularly often in patients with deformities of the spine. Certain trigger points release the pain. Cases have been observed in which nitroglycerin afforded relief, thus making the diagnosis even more difficult.

The occurrence of pain that radiates into the left or right arm in these lesions has been clarified by the important work of Lewis and Kellgren. By injection of a hypertonic saline solution into the interspinous ligaments and adjacent muscles they produced in the corresponding segments the same type of pain with similar referred phenomena as found in visceral disease. If such injections are made into the upper thoracic segments in patients who had a myocardial infarction at some earlier date they produce pain indistinguishable from that of an angina pectoris in myocardial infarction. Even the upper chest may feel constricted; the retrosternal pain, however, is missed in such experiments.

The differential diagnosis often is very difficult, particularly in early stages, and problems arise when the pain is so severe that respiration is rendered difficult. The situation becomes more apparent after the symptoms have existed for a time and cardiac findings remain negative. In this instance, as with the cardiac neuroses, careful examination and observation over a period are necessary before a positive diagnosis can be made.

It is important to note that in some cases of spondylarthritis the pain may be retrosternal and increases or appears on exertion owing to abnormal strain on the somatic structures involved. In these cases injection of novocaine into the interspinous ligaments and adjacent structures provides immediate relief. X-ray radiation of the spine is helpful and most beneficial in chronic cases.

In patients with intercostal neuralgia, herpes zoster neuralgia of the brachial plexus, or a myositis in the corresponding segments, the history may be somewhat similar to that of a coronary occlusion, but a careful examination usually permits differentiation. In the first hours before the herpetic eruption appears, however, the diagnosis may be difficult since negative cardiac findings can be encountered in cases of coronary occlusion. An important and common

type of pain in women with endocrine disturbances will be discussed in the appropriate section

*Pulmonary Embolism* As pointed out before this event occasionally provokes a syndrome very similar to that of myocardial infarction. In both conditions there may be the same prolonged pain, the same radiation and localization. Fall of blood pressure, leukocytosis, fever, increased sedimentation rate, hemoptysis, pericarditis and even similar electrocardiographic alterations are observed in some patients. The differential diagnosis may be difficult or impossible. The task of distinction is rendered harder by the fact that many patients with myocardial infarction develop a peripheral venous thrombosis owing to the enforced rest in bed and the disturbance of circulation. The so called "second attack" which develops a few days or weeks after coronary occlusion is due in many cases to a pulmonary embolus although the symptoms may be almost identical to those experienced during the development of the myocardial infarction. In all attacks of this type that appear in bedridden patients, pulmonary embolism should be suspected. The differentiation is easier if the electrocardiogram shows the typical pattern of myocardial infarction or pulmonary embolism respectively. In both conditions however occasionally only indefinite changes appear. The absence of an increase of transaminase in the blood speaks for pulmonary embolism. But positive tests in pulmonary infarction have been reported.

*Pneumonia* If the patient does not have much anginal pain but dyspnea, fever and rales over circumscribed areas of the lungs are present, the diagnosis of pneumonia is sometimes made. Formerly this happened frequently but now the mistake is unusual. In a similar way a left sided pleuritis was often diagnosed and the provocative infarction overlooked.

*Spontaneous Pneumothorax* This and spontaneous mediastinal emphysema may cause prolonged severe retrosternal pain with radiation toward the shoulders but the differential diagnosis is easy.

*Gastrointestinal Disease* Many disturbances of the gastrointestinal tract may simulate coronary occlusion. Esophageal spasm may cause excruciating pains, often situated behind the lower sternum. It may spread to the jaw or into the arms, lasting for hours. Some patients report benefit from nitroglycerin. In others only a dull ache is experienced. Retrosternal pain occurring at night and often sufficiently severe to require demerol or morphine for relief is sometimes noted in carcinoma of the esophagus. Since dysphagia may be minimal or absent in these cases and the attack does not occur in connection with eating, prolonged episodes may lead to the erroneous diagnosis of actual or impending coronary occlusion.

It is very common to note severe pain radiating to or perceived only in the left chest or shoulder in colonic spasm. Distention of the splenic colon can cause precordial pain and pain spreading into the left arm. The pain noted in connection with these colonic disturbances may be severe and prolonged. Peptic ulcer, cholelithiasis and cholecystitis occasionally present pain that is located exclusively

in the chest if this pain happens to be felt only on the left side the diagnosis of a possible coronary disease may arise

*Gallbladder Disease* The incidence of gallbladder attacks is greater in patients with coronary sclerosis than in the general population The fact that gallbladder disease and myocardial infarction may coexist creates a difficult diagnostic problem in some patients An attack may begin as a typical gallstone colic and in the convalescence or following surgery myocardial infarction may follow

In gallstone colic the pain may be substernal and may radiate into both arms

Damage to the heart from gallbladder disease has frequently been mentioned The disappearance of arrhythmias following removal of the gallbladder has been reported but such statements must be accepted with considerable reservation

Jaundice temperature leukocytosis and tenderness in the region of the gallbladder (liver) follow a gallstone attack as well as myocardial infarction

Of greater importance on the other hand is the fact that a variety of gastrointestinal symptoms appears in patients with myocardial infarction If the anginal pain happens to be slight or absent mistakes are possible

It is common knowledge that a cardiac infarction may simulate an acute abdominal condition This was clearly demonstrated in early clinical observations on this condition when the occurrence of a status gastralgicus was emphasized The pain in coronary occlusion may be exclusively abdominal If it is so intolerable that the patient is unable to move — if the abdominal muscles are rigid and there is associated shock and vomiting — the diagnosis of a perforated peptic ulcer or pancreatic necrosis is comprehensible Physical examination of the heart may disclose nothing abnormal despite a large myocardial infarction other methods of investigation such as the electrocardiogram or x ray (to detect a bubble of gas beneath the diaphragm) may not be available and such patients have undergone surgery

Sometimes laparotomy appears necessary but physicians refuse to operate because the patient reported some cardiac symptoms of long duration and because positive cardiac findings were present accordingly the diagnosis of coronary occlusion with abdominal symptoms seems logical At necropsy peritonitis associated with a perforated peptic ulcer was found We have seen single cases of a combined coronary occlusion and perforated ulcer and one of coronary occlusion and acute hemorrhagic pancreatitis

As an aid to differential diagnosis it may sometimes be helpful to remember that cardiac infarction with abdominal pain does not cause the boardlike rigidity of the patient with a perforated viscus on the other hand a closed perforation may also fail to present this rigidity

If pain is experienced only in the right upper abdominal quadrant cholelithiasis may be suspected if fever leukocytosis hepatic enlargement and jaundice develop cholecystitis is often diagnosed

Confusion with acute gastritis or gastroenteritis is less common than even fifteen years ago If pain was absent or slight and localized in the epigastrium

while nausea vomiting and diarrhea (due to visceral reflexes) were in the foreground acute indigestion was a common diagnosis Sudden death due to overeating or to acute dilatation of the stomach so often described in older literature was usually due to coronary occlusion

*Esophageal Hiatus Hernia* This abnormality causes a syndrome that is easily confused with coronary disease and coronary occlusion Three forms of this disturbance which is most common in obese women who are stocky in build and who have had several children are known First the congenitally short esophagus formerly considered common and now regarded as rare if indeed existing at all Second para esophageal hernia which is a true hernia Here the anterior part of the fundus rolls into the chest in front of and lateral to the esophagus (rolling hernia) The sphincter action of the esophagus is intact Third the sliding hernia or esophago gastric hernia, which represents the most common type In this instance perhaps owing to a defect of the diaphragm reflux of food and acid from the stomach occurs Esophagitis appears with easy bleeding from the inflamed mucosa Shrinking of the connective tissue and scar formation make the esophagus appear shorter and part of the cardiac portion of the stomach appears in the chest

Nuzum found a hiatus hernia in 12.27 per cent of 957 persons examined He found it in 25 per cent of patients with true angina pectoris Thus the two conditions may and often do coexist

There are all variations between no complaints at all and excruciating crippling pain not rarely retrosternally and spreading to the jaw or both arms Pains occur at night

Symptoms may appear at any age but most patients are beyond 40 years Fullness during or shortly after meals regurgitation belching hiccough nausea and vomiting are common All these complaints however are also found in coronary disease and myocardial infarctions

About one third of the patients complain of substernal pain This pain may radiate into the left shoulder and even into the left arm Belching may give immediate relief Considerable anxiety and distress may be present Sometimes the pain appears on exertion and is relieved by nitrates (Jones) According to Donnelly contraction of the abdominal muscles on walking increases intra esophageal pressure and this leads to pain in patients with esophagitis Pain on stooping is common for similar reasons The patient may feel particularly uncomfortable at night and often experiences the nocturnal distress while lying in bed immediate relief is secured by standing This point in the history is rather characteristic

The diagnosis is often confirmed by x-ray examination which should be made in the Trendelenburg position Often however the hernia does not appear on tilting but is demonstrated when the patient bends forward Roentgen examination may be temporarily negative

Electrocardiographic changes appear (Covino and Fustinoni Kaiser) which like the pain have been explained by reflex changes in the coronary blood flow

or have been initiated by mechanical irritation of the vagal fibers in the esophageal hiatus. However, since the lower esophagus derives its sensory innervation from the fourth to sixth thoracic segments, the pain may be truly referred. The rapid response to nitroglycerin and the changes in the electrocardiogram seem to favor the first explanation.

Treatment is surgical in some cases. The administration of alkalis and the use of frequent small feedings of a bland nature are usually recommended and sometimes help. Phrenic crush may give relief.

Peptic ulcer frequently develops at the level of the esophageal hiatus; if it bleeds, the patient may suffer from severe anemia.

**Internal Hemorrhage.** Patients with an acute and profuse hemorrhage from a peptic ulcer or cirrhosis of the liver may present a syndrome of prolonged sudden severe anginal pain with radiation to the left arm, shock, and collapse. In 16 out of 18 such cases, very distinct changes were demonstrable in the electrocardiogram (Scherf et al.); therefore, the differentiation from coronary diseases may be difficult. Mistakes are particularly liable to occur when there is no hematemesis and when the appearance of tarry stools is delayed for two or three days. A marked anemia also need not be present, since the acuity of blood loss rather than its quantity causes the symptoms and the electrocardiographic changes.

General vasoconstriction occurs following blood loss and involves the arteries as well as the veins; there is an adjustment of the vascular bed to the diminished amount of blood (Bazett).

This seems to be effected by carotid sinus reflexes when the arterial blood pressure shows a tendency to fall and by reflexes from the veins. There is

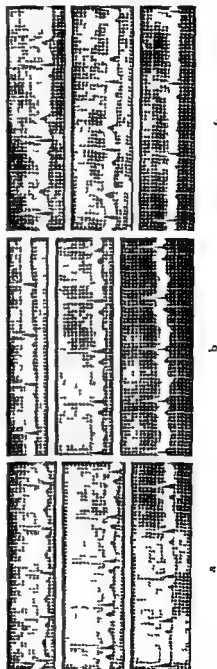


FIG. 9. A series of tracings from a patient with an acute, profuse internal hemorrhage (the three standard leads are beneath each other).



a general vasoconstriction following a fall in venous pressure (McDowall reflex)

For a long time it was believed that this homeostasis was necessary to protect vital organs like the heart from a reduced blood supply. The frequent finding of electrocardiographic changes after an acute blood loss shows however that the coronary arteries participate in the general vasoconstriction. The anginal pain disappears in a few hours and the changes in the electrocardiogram vanish in a few days even if there is no improvement in the status of the red blood cell count.

In figure 79 electrocardiograms in the three limb leads are reproduced. These were taken from a 32 year old male who was admitted for an acute hematemesis from a duodenal ulcer. Figure 79a shows the electrocardiogram obtained immediately after admission i. e. about six hours after hemorrhage. It shows only a sinus tachycardia. The second electrocardiogram registered about 20 hours after the hemorrhage shows abnormal T waves in each lead. The third tracing was obtained five days after the first one and is normal.

It seems that the changes appear not earlier than 6 or 7 hours before and not later than 16 to 20 hours after the hemorrhage. They disappear in a week to 10 days.

If the myocardium of an animal is examined following an acute blood loss necrosis in the subendocardial layers is found which is typical of a diminished blood (oxygen) supply to the heart.

The occurrence of coronary thrombosis in patients with coronary sclerosis has been observed following an acute internal hemorrhage.

Blindness following hematemesis or other forms of hemorrhage may also be explained by the reflex vasoconstriction (Black, Levatin).

*Acute Pericarditis.* It was noted earlier that this lesion is sometimes associated with severe precordial pain which lasts for hours. Since the epicardium and a great part of the parietal pericardium are insensitive to painful stimuli some have assumed that irritation of the sensory fibers at the base of the heart where the epicardium reflects into the pericardium accounts for the pain. Mediastinitis is a more probable cause. If this pain is present in a patient with pericarditis it may be difficult to decide whether a tuberculous, rheumatic or pneumococcal pericarditis is present or a pericarditis following myocardial infarction. The electrocardiogram often but not invariably offers assistance in the differentiation.

*Other Causes.* Frequently severe pain occurs in an attack of paroxysmal tachycardia during a hypertensive crisis and in women with disturbances of ovarian function as will be discussed later. These conditions may also be confused with the pain of myocardial infarction.

The difficulty of differentiation between myocardial infarction and dissection of the aorta will be discussed later in the book.

### PRODROMAL SYMPTOMS

In a large percentage of patients there are no symptoms before the appearance of coronary occlusion and myocardial infarction. The first attack strikes like lightning.

Some patients have had an angina on effort for years. These patients may develop the prolonged pain due to myocardial infarction suddenly and without premonitory signs. In others, however, the imminent threat of coronary occlusion can be predicted; in this group attacks begin to appear at rest; they last longer, are more severe, and nitroglycerin affords progressively less relief. Under these circumstances it is wise to keep the patient quiet and to take the necessary steps for the imminent emergency (administration of vasodilators). Patients with prodromal symptoms are not rare. The classic picture of myocardial infarction need not develop, however, because a slow and painless fibrotic occlusion may develop or collateral circulation may become active and prevent an infarction, even in the presence of a coronary occlusion.

Some patients who develop a myocardial infarction describe some minor attacks they had — a few days prior to the major episode — that lasted for only a few minutes; these attacks were so slight they were disregarded.

### PROGNOSIS

If a coronary thrombosis has occurred, sudden death may follow at any given subsequent moment. Sudden death is also common in coronary sclerosis and coronary involvement secondary to aortitis. In a series of 198 instances of sudden death, coronary disease was demonstrable in 104 at necropsy; valvular diseases and various kinds of aneurysms were next in order (Bedford).

Formerly, the immediate mortality of the first attack was regarded as much higher (53.3 per cent) (Levine and Brown) than at present (10 to 15 per cent). Some authors report an immediate mortality of only 10 per cent, which would agree with our experience in patients who survive the first few hours. Statistics of this kind necessarily depend upon the material; patients who die suddenly before a physician is called or even before uttering a complaint are not included in statistics. Statistics also depend upon a definition of the word immediate. Among U.S. soldiers under 40 years of age, Yater et al. found an immediate death in 16 per cent, death in 15 minutes in 10 per cent; an additional 5 per cent of the patients died within 2 hours. Among the patients who reached the hospital 15 per cent died within 24 hours and 12.5 per cent later.

The causes of death are ventricular fibrillation, shock, cerebral emboli, congestive heart failure and cardiac rupture. The first three weeks are particularly precarious.

The prognosis is worse, as pointed out earlier, if extrasystoles or paroxysmal tachycardia appear, if the systolic blood pressure falls below 80 mm Hg, if there is severe dyspnea and pulmonary congestion or early shock. The mortality in the first attack seems to be greater if the patients were previously hypertensive.

and the prognosis in the second or third attack of myocardial infarction is worse than in the first one

On the other hand a patient often recovers to such an extent that he leads a normal life for years without complaints. The average duration of life in a series of 161 cases (Rosenbaum and Levine) was 41 months. One fourth of these patients died within a year, one half within two years, and three fourths within five years. The status of the other coronary arteries is decisive for the outcome. We believe that the figures would be more encouraging if all infarctions occurring in practice were included.

In one observation a patient had his first attack of coronary thrombosis when 40 years old and the second when 75 years old. A third attack occurred in his seventy eighth year. The patient died at 80, nearly 40 years after the first attack (Drake).

Instances of myocardial infarction in pregnancy with successful delivery are known (Antonius et al). However many patients succumb.

Sooner or later a large number of patients develop left ventricular failure and pulmonary engorgement. A large percentage of patients who do not have exertional anginal pain prior to the attack have pain even in bed after the episode and are particularly apt to complain of anginal pain on effort.

It seems advisable to stress once again that patients with coronary disease even if their condition seems satisfactory may present very serious complications or may succumb suddenly at any moment, but there are cases on the other hand in which the patients were unconscious with unbelievably low blood pressures and almost inaudible heart sounds who recovered and lived normally for many years.

Accordingly the prognosis should never be regarded as good even when the patient has a very light attack and seems well off, on the other hand it should never be absolutely hopeless. There are few cardiac conditions in which the unexpected happens more often. Surprises are encountered in both directions.

## TREATMENT

*General Measures.* Not only physical but also mental rest is important. The patient is put at ease and is reassured. He is told that he had a vascular spasm in the heart (the word thrombosis is avoided). From the beginning he is examined and controlled constantly, as if he were in a diabetic coma. A simple light case might become an emergency at any moment. Later he is examined at least twice and then once daily. Even the excitement of ward rounds may cause a fatal accident (Järvinen).

*Pain.* The severe anginal pain accompanying an acute coronary thrombosis requires demerol or morphine (or pantopon). The initial dose of morphine should be 0.015–0.02 Gm. and it is well to add some atropine (0.5 mg.) to the first injection of morphine sulfate. In many cases it will be necessary to follow the first injection after 30 minutes with a second or even third, occasionally even

this fails to relieve pain. We have seen patients toss restlessly and complain bitterly about excruciating pain after having received more than 0.06 Gm. of morphine within three hours. Demerol causes less side effects and less respiratory depression and is preferred. In these cases phenobarbital affords little relief. Infiltration of the skin in the area to which the pain is referred has been recommended but provides no relief in our experience. Paravertebral anesthesia helps immediately but is rarely done because one always hopes that the pain will disappear in the next hour. The distress may persist however with unabated intensity for 24 hours or more and may exhaust the patient completely.

**Oxygen.** Persistent pain threatening shock, arrhythmias and even marked fall of blood pressure are indications for the administration of oxygen. With a nasal catheter and a flow of 5 to 6 liters per minute the concentration reached is only 30 per cent. With a tent and a flow of 12 to 13 liters the concentration is 40 to 50 per cent. It reaches 70 per cent with a mask and is given for 5 to 6 hours and then removed for short intervals. The patient who is frightened by the suggestion of oxygen is reassured and told that it takes the load off the heart. It is wise not to wait until complications develop but to administer oxygen for the first few days in every patient when the evidence speaks for the presence of a larger infarction.

**Anticoagulants.** The use, dosage, indications and contraindications of anticoagulants have been discussed in a preceding chapter. At this point it is appropriate to discuss their use in patients with myocardial infarctions.

In myocardial infarction danger arises from both intracardiac thrombi which may cause systemic embolism and thrombi formed in the peripheral veins which produce pulmonary embolism during the period of rest. Because of the high incidence of these complications and the discovery of hypercoagulability of the blood after an infarction, the Committee of the American Heart Association under the Chairmanship of I. S. Wright has recommended treatment with anticoagulants in all cases of coronary thrombosis with infarction unless such therapy is contraindicated. This recommendation is based upon the experience gained from over 1000 observations. It was found that thromboembolic phenomena appeared in 41.5 per cent of the control (untreated) subjects while they appeared in only 13.1 per cent of the treated cases. Among the controls 23.4 per cent died within 6 weeks while in the treated group only 16 per cent died. These differences are statistically significant even if one considers that an occasional patient may die from consequences of therapy and that the percentage of cardiac rupture and pericardial hemorrhage is 2 per cent of untreated cases and 4 per cent of treated ones. The value of anticoagulants was particularly evident in obese patients and those with congestive heart failure.

Lately it has been recommended that only the severely ill (poor risk) patient be treated with anticoagulants and that these compounds be omitted in the mild (satisfactory) cases. This seems to be the current attitude of most cardiologists in this country. In our opinion however this attitude is not justified. As stated earlier a clinically mild case may suddenly turn into a severe one.

the appearance of thromboembolism in mild cases can never be predicted. Actually, those who have seen a mild case recovering nicely suddenly develop cerebral embolism resulting in a permanent hemiplegia or a peripheral embolism necessitating amputation of one leg will be hesitant to treat only severely sick patients with anticoagulants. Good risk patients exist only in retrospect (Gilchrist and Tulloch). One must always keep in mind that the administration of anticoagulants does not abolish but merely reduces the danger of thromboembolism while at the same time adding new dangers, the possibility of hemorrhage and cardiac rupture with hemopericardium.

It has been claimed that in patients with myocardial infarction treated with anticoagulants, cardiac failure is less common and recovery from shock occurs more readily.

One of the disadvantages of therapy with Dicumarol or similar compounds is that according to the investigations of Wright's Committee no satisfactory preventive effect is accomplished unless the prothrombin time is kept at levels between 25 and 30 seconds. This is difficult to establish; prothrombin times of over 30 often lead to bleeding. We try to keep the patient's prothrombin time at double the control value.

The treatment is not applicable to patients with blood dyscrasias, bleeding ulcers, hypoprothrombinemia (vitamin K deficiencies, liver damage), renal damage and insufficiency, anemias of various etiologies, late pregnancy, open wounds, subacute bacterial endocarditis, and postoperative drainage of viscera.

Most physicians do not give heparin at the beginning. Therefore the patient often remains unprotected for the first few days in which most thrombi form. The administration of heparin should start immediately after the diagnosis is made if the patient is to be protected as far as possible. If future investigations show that injection of concentrated heparin (1 ml containing 100 mg) every 12 hours protects the patient from thrombus formation even during the period when the coagulation time returns to normal before the next injection is due, a relatively safe method will be available. We prefer this procedure at the present time.

It is often stated that anticoagulant therapy should be given for 21 to 30 days. In our opinion such treatment should be continued until the patient is fully ambulatory. In order that rebound phenomena be prevented the dose is gradually diminished over a few days instead of therapy being discontinued abruptly.

Nichols used anticoagulants as a prophylactic measure over a period of years in patients who had recovered from one attack and it was recommended in patients with the premonitory syndrome when an attack threatened. Our experience concurs with that of others—we believe that this therapy should not be used. Since rupture of giant capillaries in the atherosclerotic area of the coronary artery is a frequent cause of coronary thrombosis, this treatment may be harmful. In four patients with the premonitory syndrome we observed coronary occlusion following soon after such therapy. Nicotinic acid itself is very

cautious in his conclusions. In some publications in which this treatment is recommended as a good prophylaxis the published electrocardiograms show that the patients had infarctions during the therapy that had not been recognized by the authors. It has been found however that the mortality rate of those patients in whom preventive long term anticoagulant therapy was used is lower (Suzmann et al.)

Of all investigators pleading against therapy with anticoagulants no one is more articulate than Evans. Let it go now before remorse weighs too heavily on those who may continue for a little longer to advocate its use.

**Shock.** When shock is impending the patient should be hospitalized. He should be placed in the horizontal position and administered oxygen. One should examine the patient carefully for evidence of cardiac failure (pulmonary congestion, engorged neck veins) which may be present simultaneously and which needs special therapy. Demerol should be administered. It is evident that in the presence of or with impending pulmonary edema the intravenous administration of blood or plasma may be injurious.

Success has been reported from the intravenous or intraarterial infusion of blood plasma or plasma substitutes. When shock occurs because of a diminished cardiac output that results from direct cardiac damage success should not be expected; indeed often harm will be done. It is recommended that more than 300 ml of plasma or blood not be administered despite the fact that some authors advocate as much as 1000 ml. The rate of infusion also varies; some recommend not more than 2 ml per minute while others permit 100 ml per minute. For the intraarterial infusion the exposed radial artery is used.

The best plasma substitute is dextran recommended by Swedish workers. It is a polysaccharide obtained through enzymatic action with a molecular size similar to that of plasma proteins. Dextran has little pyrogenic or antigenic action and is very slowly excreted without being metabolized; therefore it circulates in the body for days.

Pressor amines have been used for years; especially neosynephrine which has the advantage of creating fewer arrhythmias than epinephrine. It is given hypodermically or intramuscularly (10–15 mg) and is repeated as often as necessary; that is, whenever the blood pressure falls. In recent years the effect of norepinephrine has been widely studied. Most authors advise its use since in small doses it has predominate effect on the peripheral vessels while the cardiac effect is minimal. Norepinephrine also raises cardiac oxygen consumption much less than epinephrine and it causes fewer dangerous ventricular arrhythmias than epinephrine although this action is not completely absent as some claim. In some animals norepinephrine widens the coronary arteries; its action in man is unknown. The disadvantage of the substance is that it must be given in an infusion; one ampule (4 mg) is diluted with 100 cc of saline or 5 per cent glucose. First administration is 10 drops per minute; the dose is then regulated according to the blood pressure and the appearance of arrhythmias. In recent years isopropylar enol (Isuprel) has been used (10 mg). For quick action

linguets are available Wyamine (mephenteramine) is given in doses of 15—30 mg intramuscularly as often as necessary

In one patient 402 mg of Levophed were given during a period of 14 days The patient recovered (Siglin)

*Dehydration* This condition with all its attendant dangers is common and results from the vomiting and profuse perspiration The physician in charge must avoid the administration of large amounts of fluid because of the danger of pulmonary edema Hypodermoclysis is often necessary

*Vasodilators* It is useful to administer vasodilators early because the fate of patients depends to a great extent on the function of the collateral circulation We prefer slowly released nitroglycerin e g Nitroglyn (gr 1/10) The experiments of Zoll and Normann demonstrated the significant effects of nitrites in the creation of functioning interarterial coronary anastomoses Papaverine hydrochloride and aminophylline are also recommended Neither drug should however be given intravenously to patients with acute coronary thrombosis In therapeutic doses papaverine is harmless for a healthy and even a slightly damaged myocardium but the effects are quite different if large doses are given intravenously to a patient with a damaged heart Experimental studies on the cardiac action of papaverine in patients with damaged hearts are scarce Our clinical experience with intravenous injections of papaverine in patients with a fresh coronary occlusion is not satisfactory but there is no objection to an intramuscular injection of 0.04 to 0.06 Gm Likewise aminophylline should not be given intravenously to patients whose blood pressure shows a tendency to fall Since intramuscular injections are usually painful a rectal suppository of 0.5 Gm of aminophylline should be inserted twice daily

While we consider aminophylline to be one of the most effective vasodilators available it should be pointed out at this juncture that on the basis of experimental studies purine bodies (caffeine theobromine) particularly theophylline increase the coagulability of the blood The coagulation time may be shortened by 50 per cent Lately it has been found that these substances in a dosage equivalent to that given in man cause hyperthrombinemia Since clinical investigations confirm these results serious objections must arise against the use of theobromine caffeine and theophylline in patients in whom the danger of thrombus formation exists For a time our results were not confirmed Recently in Seegers laboratory it was found that Ac globulin which tremendously enhances the conversion of prothrombin into thrombin is increased in the dog by more than 100 per cent by aminophylline The dose however is large — 0.1 Gm per Kg Seegers also reports that larger doses of Dicumarol are necessary if aminophylline is given simultaneously (McCormick and Young) In a few cases of coronary sclerosis with angina pectoris we observed coronary thrombosis following intravenous injections of aminophylline

*Quinidine* Another emergency measure is the administration of quinidine We give 0.2 Gm every four hours routinely to all patients with a fresh coronary occlusion to prevent dangerous extrasystolic disturbances of rhythm If extra

systoles occur in spite of this regimen the dose may have to be increased (figure 80) If a paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia complicates coronary thrombosis doses up to 2.0 Gm. of quinidine sulfate daily may be necessary. The danger of a tachycardia in a case of recent myocardial infarction is greater than the possible harm which might be caused by larger doses of quinidine.

The present custom not to treat prophylactically with quinidine but to use the drug only immediately when extrasystoles appear is strange. It is based

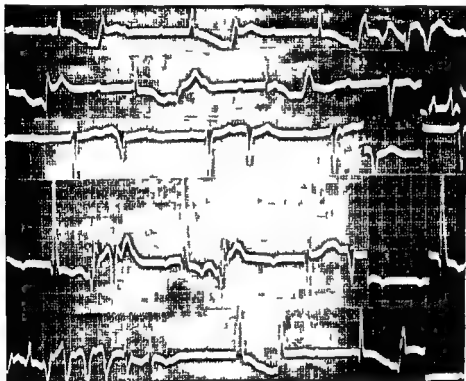


FIG. 80 In a 59 year old man with a myocardial infarction complete heart block appeared with massive inversion of the T waves. Multiple multiform ventricular extrasystoles appeared. These are the extrasystoles which often precede ventricular fibrillation. Occasionally abnormal ectopic idioventricular beats are also visible.

mostly on experiments on animals which are not comparable to clinical cases of coronary thrombosis for two reasons. One is the fact that dogs (on which many experiments were done) develop ventricular fibrillation in 30 per cent of the cases after ligation of the coronary arteries. When quinidine therapy that is started prior to ligation in such animals fails to diminish the incidence of fibrillation it may be because of overwhelming impulses. Man may respond differently. Actually extrasystoles that appear following coronary occlusion disappear in man quickly if quinidine is given in most instances.



A second reason for the lack of correlation between animal experiments and clinical cases of coronary thrombosis is that in most experiments quinidine was given intravenously in such doses that apnea and diastolic cardiac standstill occurred. This explains why in some statistics the mortality in animals who received quinidine before ligation of the coronary arteries was even higher than in the controls.

In a clinical investigation Boone and Pappas found a mortality of 16 per cent in patients with myocardial infarction who received 0.2 Gm. of quinidine every 4 hours while awake. The mortality in 127 untreated subjects was 35 per cent.

*Other Measures:* Nitroglycerin is given if temporary attacks of anginal pain recur.

For patients with heart block, temporary cardiac standstill and attacks of Stokes-Adams syndrome, the administration of aminophylline in the form of suppositories usually suffices. Occasionally, 30 mg. of ephedrine must also be given three times a day in this group of cases to prevent new attacks of Stokes-Adams syndrome. Linguets of isoprel are also useful.

*Bed Rest:* Often absolute rest cannot be enforced during the acute pain for the patient may feel compelled to move by anxiety and restlessness. When the pain eases and patients have less pain from the start, strict bed rest is ordered. The patient is told to lie quietly on his back and to avoid turning from side to side. The main objective is to relieve every possible strain on the heart, since movement may increase cardiac activity. Even during the period of strict bed rest the patient is advised to wriggle the toes (venous thrombosis often begins in the sole of the foot) and to bend the knees slowly from time to time and keep them bent for a while. If the condition forbids active movements, the attendant should perform passive exercises by bending the lower extremities at the hip and knee joints. This should be repeated often during the day and should begin immediately after bed rest is enforced in order to lessen the incidence of thrombosis in the lower extremities and the pelvic veins. Slight elevation of the lower end of the bed is useful, and the application of an elastic bandage on the lower legs is indicated in order to speed up blood flow in the deeper veins.

All these measures warrant careful consideration if the common and serious complication, pulmonary embolism, is to be averted.

Recently, chair treatment was recommended by Levine. In this therapy the patient is permitted to sit in a chair within the first few days after an attack. While the procedure need not be harmful in cases of little infarctions, it is certainly dangerous with large ones. It must be pointed out that among 115 consecutive necropsies performed on patients in a mental institution, 16 of 22 cases with myocardial infarction died of cardiac rupture (Jetter and White). This is the type of patient who does not rest in bed after an infarction.

The risk of thrombosis of the veins of the leg and pulmonary embolism is increased when patients sit quietly in the chair for hours. This danger threatens even if anticoagulants are given.

In other investigations it was recommended that a commode be used instead of a bedpan. The oxygen consumption with the use of a commode was found to be less than with a bedpan from this it was concluded that with the former less energy is expended. Patients who used the bedpan however were advised to perform the Valsalva experiment (i.e. to force) a procedure which no patient with an acute or old infarction should ever be permitted to do this effort increases the oxygen consumption.

In patients with prostatic hypertrophy bed rest may lead to urinary retention which should be taken care of.

Mental rest must also be enforced. Telephone calls, visitors and other disturbing influences should not be permitted.

The period of absolute bed rest should last at least three weeks for patients with a marked fall of blood pressure, distant heart sounds, pulmonary congestion, gallop rhythm or tachycardia. If clinical findings are satisfactory, strict rest is enforced for only 10 days. After this period permission is granted for the patient to turn slowly on one side or the other. Not until five weeks pass however do we allow the patient to sit up in bed and in severe cases the period of continuous recumbent position is prolonged until the clinical findings are satisfactory. Sometimes low blood pressure, muffled almost inaudible heart sounds, tachycardia and the tendency to congestive heart failure compel one to insist on a much longer period of bed rest. We have repeatedly seen patients whose condition during a period of six to eight months did not justify granting permission to leave the bed. In one of our patients bed rest for 11 months was necessary before improvement was regarded as sufficient. This patient has been active despite the development of a cardiac aneurysm and has been free from symptoms for ten and one half years.

If however in patients who suffered even from severe pain the fall of blood pressure later is only moderate, the heart sounds remain loud and the sedimentation rate is only moderately accelerated the bed rest may be shortened to about three weeks. This is common in anterior wall infarction or infarctions without changes of the QRS complex in the electrocardiogram. In little infarctions to be discussed below bed rest of 7 to 10 days suffices and bathroom privileges are permitted from the beginning of convalescence.

It should be stressed once more that the clinical impression is more important than the laboratory findings in making the decision with regard to the maintenance of bed rest. While connective tissue appears in the necrotic area in a few days, firm healing requires at least eight weeks (Karsner and Dwyer, Mallory et al.). The electrocardiogram may show progressive improvement even four to eight months after the attack.

In a large infarction when the time for bed rest is over the patient is permitted to sit up in bed at first only for a few minutes but gradually for longer periods. After a week he is allowed to dangle the legs. About two weeks from the day he first sat up in bed the patient may sit in an easy chair near his bed. Another week elapses before the patient may walk freely about his apartment.

or room. With the gradual restoration to normal activities under continuous observation highly satisfactory results are obtained.

Permission for the patient to resume his usual occupation subsequently depends upon the progress of his recovery and on the occupation. Obviously a patient with a sedentary occupation may return to work earlier than one who does manual labor; the latter must usually seek a new type of work.

Since the pain disappears within a few hours or days after the onset of the attack and the succeeding soreness is equally transient, it is often difficult to convince patients that rest in bed is necessary. In this instance it is advisable to explain that a wound in the heart must heal just as a fractured leg, and this takes time. Phenobarbital and the new tranquilizers will prevent patients from becoming too restless.

**Food.** At the same time the intake of food is restricted. The vomiting that occurs on the first day often makes it impossible for the patient to take any food. Later tea, fruit juices, consommé and milk are given. Solid food may be added on the third or fourth day if the patient's condition permits it. However the patient must be warned against heavy meals even in the future. Frequent small feedings represent the method of choice. About 1500 to 1800 calories usually suffice for the bedridden patient and care must be taken to have the food easily digestible and appealing to the patient.

**Bowel Movements.** It is safe to allow three days to pass without the patient having a bowel movement. On the evening of the third day, a mild cathartic — milk of magnesia, cascara sagrada or mineral oil — may be given if necessary. For patients in a serious condition this is much better than an enema. Straining and forcing at stool should never be permitted. The patient is advised never again to strain in order to evacuate the bowels. Against meteorism a rectal tube is inserted and heat is applied to the abdomen.

**Sexual Intercourse.** **Smoking.** The former is forbidden for a variable time but at least for four months. The exact period will depend upon the condition of the patient. Smoking is forbidden but moderate amounts of alcohol are allowed.

**Insulin.** In diabetics with coronary sclerosis and anginal pain, particularly in those with a recent myocardial infarction, the use of insulin should be avoided as long as possible. Even a blood sugar of 200 mg. per cent need not constitute an indication for the administration of insulin. Acidosis uncontrolled by diet or preparation of a patient for operation may necessitate its use.

While large doses of insulin often do not influence the heart directly and diabetics with coronary sclerosis take insulin without harm for years, there are indisputable observations which indicate that even small doses of insulin may aggravate the cardiovascular situation in some individuals and may even occasion anginal attacks. This may be explained by the increased secretion of adrenalin causing tachycardia and hypermotility of the heart when the blood sugar falls. If insulin is necessary hypoglycemia should be carefully avoided and vasodilators should be administered at the same time.

**Digitalis** A very important and frequently disputed question involves the permissibility of prescribing digitalis to patients recovering from a recent attack of coronary thrombosis. It has been argued that digitalis is harmful because it narrows the coronary arteries; furthermore, it increases the vigor of contractions, thus bringing the danger of cardiac rupture or of embolism from mural thrombi. In the first acute phase of myocardial infarction, rales at the bases of the lungs or a moderate enlargement of the liver are very frequent. This alone is not sufficient to indicate digitalis therapy. Even if the rales increase and dyspnea with cough appears, it is possible in a vast majority of cases to provide subjective relief to prevent the appearance of pulmonary edema and to diminish the rales by small doses of morphine or pantopon (0.01–0.015 Gm.). Within a short time, as late as eight or ten days, the rales usually disappear under the treatment outlined above without resort to digitalis.

When cardiac failure progresses despite rest and the administration of morphine, digitalis must be given, since no other therapy corrects the situation. This will be necessary more often when the blood pressure has been high before the occlusion and does not fall appreciably in the attack. In patients with a hypertrophic and dilated left ventricle, digitalis gives better results than in congestive failure of a patient with a left ventricle which is normal size for a circumscribed necrosis due to myocardial infarction.

Not rarely, patients who had a myocardial infarction and began to walk around or start working develop congestive heart failure or attacks of pulmonary edema. They respond readily to digitalis, which is required for several months. Gradually, with the consolidation of the myocardial scar, the doses of digitalis can be diminished and one day omitted. Rarely more than 0.2 gram of digitalis leaves daily are needed.

**Surgery** Elective surgery will be postponed until four months after the attack. In general, surgery is tolerated well in coronary heart disease with judicious and cautious use of anesthesia (Keys et al.).

**Air Travel** We permit patients who have had a myocardial infarction of average severity and who have fully recovered to fly four months after the attack. It is clear that no patient who has congestive heart failure, tachycardia, or hypotension should be permitted to fly.

At levels over 7,000 feet, patients with coronary sclerosis should be given oxygen. This is the level at which most pressurized airplanes fly.

## CORONARY STENOSIS AND ANGINA ON EFFORT

Atherosclerotic stenosis of the branches of the coronary arteries or stenosis of the orifices secondary to syphilitic aortitis are responsible for the classical angina on effort so admirably described by Heberden.

If an angina on effort begins suddenly, the occurrence of an asymptomatic occlusion of a coronary artery should be considered. At post mortem, in patients with angina on effort, at least 1 and often 3 coronary arteries will be found occluded.

## INCIDENCE

In this condition the history is of paramount importance. An advanced stenosis of the coronary orifices or arteries may exist with no abnormal findings. Therefore knowledge of the typical subjective complaints is necessary and a detailed history must be obtained. The statement so often recorded on charts — patient has anginal pain or pain in the precordial area — does not suffice.

The pain is definitely related to effort. At first it may occur only on great effort such as climbing several flights of stairs, running after a train or walking uphill. However, sooner or later, even walking on level ground induces the distress. Commonly the pain is located in a very characteristic manner behind the sternum. It may spread to the left or right chest, to the left or right side of the neck, the shoulder or the arm. If severe it may reach the jaw or the ulnar aspect of the left or right hand. In unusual cases it spreads downward and then radiates more often to the upper right side than to the left side of the abdomen. Sometimes the retrosternal pain is absent and in its place there is only pain in the left elbow or hand or even the jaw. Very rarely the distress may extend into the left leg down to the knee.

The pain is usually described as a viselike constriction or a choking compressing sensation.

Not uncommonly the presence of pain is denied, a sensation of choking pressure or burning may exist or the patient may even disclaim these sensations to complain merely of a weakness of one or both arms. As in coronary thrombosis painful sensations may be absent despite coronary stenosis and the intensity of pain permits no conclusion with respect either to the extent of the lesion or to the prognosis.

The pain may force the patient to stop walking or working. If this is done the typical pain subsides in a few minutes. If the patient resumes walking the distress may recur, but occasionally it does not return even if the walk is prolonged. Rarely the pain disappears even when the patient does not stop, an observation noted by Heberden. The patient walks off the pain.

This is explained in the same way as the pain experienced by young healthy people at the beginning of strenuous exercise (mountain climbing, cycling, rowing). The coronary circulation does not adapt itself immediately to the increased demands from exercise and a myocardial hypoxia appears in the first minutes of physical activity. With adequate dilatation of the coronary arteries due to reflexes and action of local metabolites, an increased blood supply to the myocardium is obtained in the following minutes, the pain disappears and the patient gets his 'second wind'. This mechanism also explains the common phenomenon that walking in the morning elicits the pain quickly while walking much longer distances later in the day fails to elicit unpleasant sensations (first effort pain).

It is also typical for these patients to note no pain when walking in their apartment or building for a long time. Walking one block in the open air elicits it.

Exertional pain appears more often and with greater regularity and in some patients even exclusively if they walk after a meal or if they walk in cold and windy weather. After a heavy meal the cardiac output increases almost 50 per cent; this higher level is maintained for one to three hours (Grollman). If patients take a postprandial walk the work of the heart is further increased and the demands for blood may become sufficiently large to cause ischemia of the heart muscle if coronary stenosis is present. The exercise tolerance of patients with angina pectoris following a meal is reduced on the average 25 per cent (Wayne and Graybiel). Walking against the wind increases work; the cardiac output is also increased when cold air is blown on the skin of an experimental animal. Cold leads to an increased output of adrenalin.

In some cases anginal pain appears at the beginning of a meal and even when the patient swallows. In this instance reflexes from the lower esophagus and stomach are obviously responsible as discussed before. A similar mechanism may explain attacks appearing at rest and disappearing with the eructation of gas or the passage of flatus. Experimental distention of the abdomen by gas also causes a reflex coronary vasoconstriction (Gilbert et al.).

Anginal pain also appears on excitement. Under these conditions the output of adrenalin may increase the blood pressure and heart rate and precipitate the pain (Paab).

Thus in coronary stenosis any mental or physical strain anything that increases the work of the heart and therefore its need for oxygen causes pain. Great apprehension and anxiety (fear of impending death) often accompany the pain. The mechanism responsible for this anxiety is unknown.

#### SIGNS

Physical examination discloses no signs characteristic for angina pectoris due to coronary stenosis. The physical findings are often normal. This was stressed in the discussion of coronary sclerosis and it will be mentioned again in regard to luetic stenosis of the coronary orifices and aortitis. Many surveys reveal that approximately 20 per cent of patients with exertional angina yield normal physical findings including x ray and electrocardiograms. Therefore reliance must be placed mainly on the history.

Many patients however do have abnormal findings. An elevated systolic and diastolic blood pressure, a dilated aorta, an abnormally accentuated second aortic sound, a rough systolic apical or aortic murmur caused by an atherosclerotic thickening of the mitral or aortic valves may be present. The electrocardiogram may show T wave changes or wide, slurred and notched QRS complexes. While these findings may aid in a doubtful case because they show that myocardial involvement is present they do not conclusively prove that a coronary artery stenosis exists and is the cause of anginal pain.

The desire to obtain compensation, the information obtained from newspapers or from friends who suffer from angina pectoris may influence the history on which the physician relies for the diagnosis. This coupled with the fact

that pain on effort occasionally occurs in conditions other than coronary stenosis makes understandable the desire to confirm the diagnosis by objective findings

Such confirmation is possible if the electrocardiogram is taken after exertion (Scherf et al)

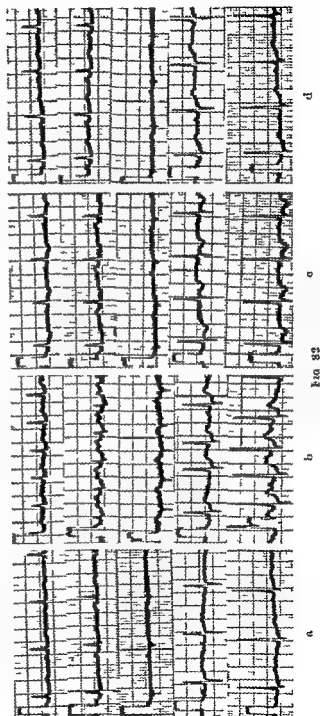
*Exercise Test* At rest these patients often have a normal electrocardiogram despite marked coronary stenosis since the blood supply to the heart may still be adequate. For the same reason they offer no symptoms or abnormal signs at rest. On exertion however the oxygen requirements of the heart muscle increase but a larger blood supply to some areas is impossible owing to the existing stenosis. Therefore pain as well as electrocardiographic changes may appear after exertion.

Alterations in the electrocardiogram after effort have been known to occur in patients with angina pectoris (Wood and Wolferth). This procedure however was not recommended as a diagnostic test because the clinical observations are more likely to be significant from a diagnostic standpoint than the electrocardiographic phenomena. Since the physical findings are often negative and — if present — are by no means typical the study of the electrocardiogram following exercise has been recommended in order to diagnose coronary stenosis (Goldhammer and Scherf).

The changes which appear after exercise in coronary stenosis consist of an abnormal depression of the RS T segment and the disappearance or inversion of the T waves in leads I and II and the precordial leads V<sub>1</sub> & V<sub>2</sub>. Great caution must be used not to confuse normal changes which appear in the electrocardiogram after physical exertion with those due to coronary stenosis. The error committed most frequently is to declare a physiologic depression of the RS T segment after exercise to be pathologic. Thus many normal postexercise electrocardiograms are called abnormal (false positive tests). In order to avoid this one should never interpret a depression of the RS T segment of less than 2 mm as abnormal. The T of the P wave is markedly depressed after exercise and because of its long duration it depresses the RS T segment so that the reference point for the evaluation of the position of the RS T segment should be the position of the string at the beginning of the QRS complex and not the zero line. The changes described above as pathologic are not observed in healthy subjects after light or even after strenuous exercise. Only after unusual strain (e.g.

FIG 81 The electrocardiogram of a patient with coronary stenosis caused by atherosclerosis and angina on effort before (a) and after (b, c, d) exercise

FIG 82 The three standard leads are followed by V<sub>2</sub> and V<sub>5</sub>. The tracings were obtained from a 60 year old man with angina on effort due to coronary atherosclerosis. At rest (a) the T waves are low but positive. Two minutes after exercise (b) there is a borderline depression of the RS T segments and atrial extrasystoles appear (V<sub>3</sub> and V<sub>5</sub>). Six minutes later (c) there is a definite inversion of the T waves which are abnormal. Fifteen minutes after the exercise (d) the T waves are higher than prior to undertaking the exercise. This is a common phenomenon (Scherf and Goldhammer).





marathon running) have similar changes been reported as a rare occurrence in the normal heart. Patients without coronary stenosis (myocardial or other types of heart lesions) likewise do not show the changes mentioned. They are characteristic of coronary stenosis. They have been observed in myocarditis although rarely.

The series in figure 81 was obtained from a 56 year old man with coronary stenosis and angina on effort. Physical examination gave normal results. The first tracing (figure 81a) was taken at rest and shows only low T waves in the three limb leads. The second tracing taken immediately after the patient walked up and down two flights of stairs shows depression of the RS T segments and of the T waves (figure 81b). In figure 81c and figure 81d recorded five and ten minutes after the exercise the changes are still very marked although the exercise had stopped.

If patients are asked to do no more exercise than they perform repeatedly during their daily occupation this test involves no risk. In some cases the exercise test is normal before but positive after a meal. The test shows abnormal changes in 80 per cent of patients with coronary stenosis. The alterations are independent of the presence of pain and depend solely upon the amount of the coronary blood flow. They are sometimes absent if nitroglycerin or theophylline are given immediately before the test is done. The changes in the electrocardiogram sometimes persist for 50 minutes after the exercise and therefore are scarcely the result of hypoxia alone (Scherf 1935).

Figure 82a shows the three standard leads as well as the leads V2 and V5 from a 65 year old man with angina on effort. The only abnormality consists in low T waves in all leads. The electrocardiogram obtained immediately after exercise (figure 82b) shows a depression of the RS T segment which is borderline. An inversion of the T waves followed in figure 82c which was registered 6 minutes after the exercise. In figure 82d obtained 15 minutes after the exercise the electrocardiogram is again normal. Actually the T waves are higher than before the exercise which is a common phenomenon (Scherf).

We are opposed to Master's modification of the test since we do not think that the amount of work performed by the patient should depend upon the age, sex, and weight. The condition of the coronary artery should dictate the amount of work as we originally recommended. Work undertaken in accord with Master's tables is too much for one and too little for the second patient. This is why work must be done twice or three times (double treble tests). But then we are no longer dealing with a standard test. Since a given amount of work will mean a different load for the heart whether the work is done by a person in good or bad physical training before or after a meal slow or fast relaxed or with tension a 'standard' performance is from the beginning impossible.

**Anoxemia Test.** The tests in which hypoxemia is produced by breathing from a bag (Pothschild and Kassin) or by breathing a mixture containing reduced amounts of oxygen (Dietrich and Schwiegl) have the disadvantage of requiring additional apparatus. Also they are less useful because abnormal changes are

occasionally seen in healthy subjects in anemia and in other conditions (Larsen) they are not specific for coronary stenosis.

**Ballistocardiogram** Even in patients who do not show any abnormality in the electrocardiogram and who exhibit normal clinical findings the ballistocardiogram may reveal abnormalities. An early M form appears, the I wave becomes smaller or the J wave is M shaped. The waves are abnormally low and abnormal respiratory changes appear. However patients with typical angina pectoris may have a normal ballistocardiogram. Probably it is abnormal only in those who have small necroses and fibroses. Results must be evaluated with caution. Thus one must keep in mind that an abnormal ballistocardiogram is found in only 80 per cent of patients with a healed myocardial infarction.

### DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

The differential diagnosis between angina pectoris due to coronary stenosis and the pain of coronary occlusion usually is easy. The tables used in older books in order to illustrate this are therefore unnecessary today. In coronary stenosis pain typically follows the provocative factors mentioned previously whereas in coronary thrombosis the pain appears without visible cause. In coronary stenosis the patient soon learns the relation between certain acts and the pain and tries to avoid precipitating an attack. In coronary occlusion the pain usually lasts for hours, certainly longer than a few minutes. In angina on effort due to coronary stenosis the pain disappears quickly if the patient stops walking or if the reason for the excitement passes. One may safely state that whenever the pain lasts longer than five minutes a simple uncomplicated coronary stenosis is no longer responsible. The pain in coronary stenosis is regularly relieved by nitrites which do not help in coronary occlusion.

The benefit afforded by nitroglycerin in coronary stenosis is so regular that this fact is utilized with great advantage as a therapeutic test. Whenever the history is atypical or unreliable it is advisable to administer one tablet of nitroglycerin during the pain. If this brings relief within one minute anginal pain is most probably present. One must make sure that relief comes within a minute since patients often state that nitroglycerin helped even though further inquiry reveals that five or six minutes were required for the pain to vanish. The effect of nitroglycerin is prompt and remarkable even with marked luetic narrowing of the coronary ostia in which instances an increase of blood flow in the coronary arteries due to the drug is impossible. It is believed that an increased capillarization, the widening of the peripheral sections of the coronary tree helps in these instances. An antiadrenergic effect of nitroglycerin has been assumed to exist (Parb and Lepeschkin). The tablets used for this test must be fresh since nitroglycerin deteriorates with time.

Apart from the above mentioned characteristics some negative evidence also aids in ruling out coronary occlusion. Thus fever, leukocytosis and fall of blood pressure are absent in simple coronary stenosis.

If patients state that their attacks are increasing in frequency and that the episodes tend to occur more often during rest that they are becoming more prolonged or that nitrates are less effective the danger of an occlusion is imminent. As pointed out earlier in some cases of coronary thrombosis pain lasting from five to fifteen minutes occurs at rest for a few days before the attack.

In spondylarthritis in cardiac neurosis and in hiatus hernia it is occasionally reported that pain occurs on exertion after meals or excitement but careful interrogation discloses that there is not always an immediate and direct relation between the alleged releasing factor and the pain moreover in neurosis the pain is too brief (stabbing) or too long to permit the diagnosis of coronary stenosis. In spondylarthritis the pain is often elicited by a certain posture and in hiatus hernia belching brings relief. The latter phenomenon however often also appears in true angina due to coronary stenosis.

We have had the opportunity to observe a patient who complained of pain only while lying on his left side. Physical examination gave negative results but the T wave in lead I was low. The patient was put to bed and died suddenly five days later when he turned to his left side on the order of his nurse.

It is particularly important to obtain a very careful history when the examination reveals no abnormal findings. Sometimes especially at the beginning when an abnormal sensation has appeared but once or twice a differential diagnosis is difficult or impossible. Some of these patients turn out to have only a harmless spondylarthritis or fibrositis while others soon develop a coronary thrombosis and may die a few hours after the examination which did not reveal any abnormal findings. Therefore great caution must be exercised before making a diagnosis as ominous as coronary artery disease or before the patient is dismissed as suffering from a harmless condition.

*Decubitus Angina.* A small percentage of patients with coronary stenosis have their attacks of angina at rest particularly at night for months and years (decubital angina). This type is associated in most instances with a remarkable rise of blood pressure in the attack. The hypertension is often attributed to an exciting dream but usually there is no apparent cause. This type of anginal pain will be discussed at greater length in the chapter on hypertensive crises.

Even if the history of pain is atypical a positive result of an exercise test or the presence of abnormal findings such as aortitis hypertension or cardiac enlargement should make the physician strongly suspect coronary disease.

#### CLINICAL COURSE AND PROGNOSIS

It is extremely difficult to predict the course of the disease and to prognosticate its duration. A patient with a moderate exertional angina due to coronary sclerosis may show no further change for many years. One of us saw a patient with an angina on effort in whom the attacks were unchanged over a period of 24 years. The process may be arrested at any stage. Funic stenosis of the coronary ostia has a poorer prognosis since progression is typical for this lesion.

In these patients as in all other coronary artery diseases, sudden death may occur at any time. While patients with many attacks on the least provocation are in greater danger than those who develop distress only after severe strain such as climbing stairs after a heavy meal, accidents happen in both groups.

Attacks of angina pectoris may disappear. This happens if a narrowed coronary artery becomes occluded by an acute thrombosis or if a slow fibrotic occlusion occurs without the acute signs of myocardial infarction. If the other main coronary vessels are patent and the blood supply to the heart is sufficient on exertion as well as at rest, the patient may feel perfectly well for years. Anginal pain often disappears with the onset of fibrillation or congestive heart failure. In our experience this occurs particularly in groups of patients with angina on effort as a consequence of syphilitic coronary stenosis. When the liver enlarges or edema appears, if digitalis successfully controls these symptoms, the angina recurs, although there is no change in physical activity during the interim. This phenomenon has not been satisfactorily explained, although it has been known to clinicians for a long time.

The intensity of the pain on effort has no prognostic significance; the electrocardiogram may show marked hypoxia of the heart muscle without much pain in the attack, or the pain may be severe while the electrocardiogram shows only trifling changes.

Obviously the patient should always be encouraged as to the outlook, however. In discussing the situation with relatives, the physician should not neglect to mention the possibility of accidents that may occur at any time.

### THE THERAPY

*General Management.* It is vitally important in the treatment of angina due to coronary stenosis to reassure the patient. The term angina pectoris should not be used in his presence. Nowadays every patient knows the ominous significance of this diagnosis. If the pain is explained as a vascular spasm or a disturbance of the cardiac arteries which prevents a normal blood supply to the heart, the patient accepts this with much less alarm than the diagnosis of angina pectoris.

The patient must avoid as far as possible all factors that tend to precipitate an attack. He must avoid great exertion such as is inevitable in climbing stairs or hills. Often walking on the level produces no pain, whereas walking up a very slight incline immediately releases it. An attempt must be made to avoid undue excitement and the patient should have frequent but small meals. Protection against cold is important and it is wise to avoid walking against the wind. If these rules are observed, by a simple alteration of the mode of living and without other therapy, one occasionally succeeds in rendering the patient free from attacks.

*Treatment of Coronary Artery Disease.* Unfortunately, very little can be done to influence the underlying basic illness in angina on effort, syphilitic

aortitis or atherosclerosis. In aortitis leading to coronary stenosis and angina on effort specific therapy will be of little avail. The disease is however less common in recent years. It will be discussed in a later chapter.

In atherosclerosis all measures hitherto recommended are of dubious value. Choline seemed to help in experimental atherosclerosis but this was not confirmed. The same holds for methionine and inositol. There is no sound basis for the use of these compounds. The effect of the commercially available capsules containing unsaturated fatty acids with nicotinic acid and pyridoxin is still under investigation. While experimentally the estrogens reduce the degree of atherosclerosis in chicks there is no justification as yet for the therapeutic use of these substances in man because of the side effects.

Heparin was found to clear the lipemic plasma and it was recommended to treat coronary atherosclerosis by injections of 50–100 mg of heparin once or twice weekly. Fantastic results have been reported but not confirmed.

Usually weight loss should be advised. Following a marked loss of weight a significant decrease of serum Sf 12–20 lipids was observed (Walker et al). A fat poor and cholesterol poor diet is recommended. No cream soups, glandular organs, tongue, fish roe, cake, fried food, cream or butter are permitted. Cheese may be eaten only if made from skimmed milk. At the most two eggs per week are permitted. No nuts or avocados are allowed. Not more than 20 grams of fat and 75 mg of cholesterol should be ingested per diem. While thyroid hormone diminishes the cholesterol content of the blood rarely can it be given to these patients for reasons that are obvious.

**Bed Rest.** There is no rationale for continuous rest in bed. Often we see patients who were advised to go to bed for four weeks or more because of their angina on effort. When they get up the old complaints are present as before. The tolerance to exercise is not increased by bed rest. When patients live under great strain separation from the sources of anxiety will help.

**Nitroglycerin.** The best remedy in an attack is nitroglycerin. It is far better than amyl nitrite, which has been prescribed since Sir Lauder Brunton's recommendation. Not only does amyl nitrite cause a disagreeable odor in the room but the marked cardiac acceleration and the decided fall of blood pressure induced by it are disadvantageous. The tachycardia may increase the oxygen requirements of the heart without the possibility of providing an adequate supply so that more pain and marked electrocardiographic alterations result.

One starts with the smallest available dose of nitroglycerin usually 1/200 gr in the form of the easily soluble hypodermic tablets. The pharmacist must provide the patient with a fresh preparation which should be stored in a glass bottle or vial; it deteriorates readily and loses strength if exposed to air.

If the administration is associated with pronounced untoward symptoms such as flushes, dizziness, headache and the like the patient may take half a tablet. In this way the dosage is more easily adapted to the needs of the patient. In rare cases sweating, syncope and other symptoms are provoked by a sudden drop of blood pressure following the administration of one tablet of nitroglycerin.

It is therefore advisable to have the patient take his first tablet while at home in bed in order to familiarize himself with its action. In very rare cases nitroglycerin aggravates the pain.

Some patients are afraid to take nitroglycerin freely. This fear is based partly on a misconception arising from the name of the compound and partly because it helps so much that patients are afraid its effect will wear off and will not be available when needed. It is well to point out that the untoward reactions disappear if the remedy is used more often while the therapeutic effect remains. Moreover there is no danger of a diminished response for the average case if the remedy is taken often. It should *always* be within reach of the patient and be taken whenever needed. Even if the patient is in doubt whether a particular pain is due to his heart or is of different origin a tablet should be taken. Not rarely physicians advise the patient to take tablets only when the pain is severe; this is positively incorrect. It is better to take 10 tablets too many than one too few. Tablets of nitroglycerin need not be put under the tongue. Keeping them in the mouth will suffice to obtain a satisfactory effect.

Of great importance is the prophylactic use of nitroglycerin which was recommended by Murrell and subsequently by others. If ascending an unavoidable flight of stairs or walking up a sloping street regularly induces pain the patient should prevent an attack by taking a tablet of nitroglycerin about a minute before the pain is expected. In a similar way nitroglycerin should be taken for preventive purposes before business meetings, conferences, sexual intercourse, etc. in order to avoid the anginal pain caused by excitement. This advice may make most patients cooperate and may free them from distress despite a continuation of their activity. Concerning this prophylactic treatment with nitroglycerin it should be remembered that the prophylactic action rarely lasts longer than 10 minutes.

Treatment with nitroglycerin in small doses ( $1/200$  gr.) given every two to four hours may help patients with many attacks of angina pectoris at rest.

We are very satisfied with the slowly absorbable nitroglycerin preparations (Nitroglyn gr  $1/10$  or  $1/25$  1 tablet every 12 hours). In some patients headache appears and they are told to take  $3/4$  or  $1/2$  a tablet morning and night. In more than 60 per cent of the patients much less nitroglycerin is necessary while these tablets are taken since less pain is experienced. In order to avoid tolerance this medication is interrupted for one week every 4 or 5 weeks.

*Other Vasodilators.* The value of other drugs in angina pectoris due to coronary stenosis is a disputed issue. Empirically and on the basis of animal experiments several drugs have been advised for dilating the coronary vascular tree as much as possible thereby enhancing the formation of a collateral circulation.

There have been a few series of carefully controlled investigations on ambulatory patients who suffered from angina on effort. These patients received different drugs recommended for this condition as well as a placebo. The same percentage of improvement was found in those taking the various drugs as

in those who were treated with a placebo (Evans and Hoyle). This result is the basis for the great pessimism that prevails with respect to the possibility of influencing the course of the disease or the condition of the patient by means of vasodilators many physicians stopped prescribing anything but nitroglycerin to patients with angina on effort.

We are personally convinced that treatment with coronary vasodilators is useful. We have often seen patients ask for a certain prescription because they felt better as long as it was taken. It is equally true that certain patients fail to respond to all forms of therapy for the process in the coronary arteries is too advanced. Nevertheless, every patient deserves the benefit of a trial.

It is often stated that vasodilators cannot help in cases with advanced coronary sclerosis because the arteries are too profoundly altered. The following observation argues against this point. At autopsy we repeatedly found the orifices of both coronary arteries almost completely occluded by a syphilitic process although the coronary arteries themselves could not admit a larger amount of blood nevertheless nitroglycerin aided greatly during the anginal attacks of the patient. The dilatation of the extracardiac and intracardiac anastomoses of the coronary system or an unknown specific action of nitroglycerin (Parb and Lepeschkin) may cause this improvement. One may therefore assume that the vasodilators help even in extreme coronary narrowing.

Among the compounds related to nitroglycerin erythrol tetranitrate is the best for prolonged and regular administration. Its chief drawback is the headache which often occurs even if small tablets (0.005 Gm) are taken three times a day. Accordingly, not more than 0.003 Gm should be given as a single dose. The advantage of erythrol tetranitrate consists in its more prolonged action perhaps the result of slower absorption.

Headaches also follow the administration of mannitol hexanitrate in a dose of 0.06 Gm three times daily. We have not observed any improvement from penta erythrol tetranitrate (Pertrate) and dioxelene phosphate (Papaveril phosphate).

Purine bodies such as theobromine sodium salicylate (Diuretin) pure theobromine, theobromine calcium salicylate (theocalcin) and particularly theophylline have been used as coronary dilators for many years. A stimulating effect on cardiac contraction is combined with definite coronary dilatation. Pure theophylline often irritates the stomach and produces nausea. In combination with ethylenediamine which acts as a solvent theophylline is tolerated better. The new drug is called aminophylline (euphylin, metaphyllin) and is given in tablets of 0.2 Gm three times a day. The enteric coated tablets are tolerated much better but their absorption is slower. Our experience with the latter type of tablet is much more satisfactory than with plain tablets.

A preferable method of administering aminophylline because of more pronounced effect is by rectal suppositories. We give 0.5 Gm of the product in each suppository and advise the patient to insert one or two suppositories daily. Sometimes the administration of 0.5 Gm of theophylline ethylenediamine

(aminophylline) in 30 ml of water as a retention enema is more rapid and more complete. Rarely intolerance to the drug is encountered. This is manifested by excitement, irritability, headache or local rectal irritation. These events are exceptional as a rule the remedy is well tolerated.

Strongest vasodilatation is accomplished by the intravenous use of theophylline. The injection of theophylline ethylenediamine must be done very slowly to avoid marked vasodilatation with vertigo and fall of blood pressure. The injection should take at least five minutes and it may be repeated daily in the same amount.

If an intravenous injection comes under consideration we prefer the soluble theophylline sodium acetate. This salt is tolerated much better and does not cause untoward reactions. Usually a 1 per cent solution is employed and 5 ml are given as the first dose. This amount may be increased by 1 ml daily until the full dose of 10 ml (0.5 Gm of theophylline sodium acetate) is given with each injection. In a very small fraction of the cases a sensation of irritability and excitement may limit the physician to giving no more than 5-6 ml daily. A total of 12 to 15 injections constitutes a series. With these injections more is accomplished than with any other therapeutic procedure as the coronary dilating effect is pronounced. Unfortunately improvement often lasts only for the period of administration of the drug.

It has been possible to show the therapeutic value of theophylline objectively; the electrocardiographic alterations appearing regularly after exertion fail to develop if the same exertion is repeated shortly after an intravenous injection of the drug (Scherf).

The administration of papaverine hydrochloride 0.05 Gm by mouth or 0.02-0.04 Gm intravenously has often been recommended. There is no doubt that papaverine is a powerful coronary vasodilator and it should be used more frequently but its price is often prohibitive and in our experience theophylline injections have a better and a more prolonged effect.

Atropine has been frequently mentioned as a useful drug for angina pectoris and formerly was often prescribed. Since the vagus acts as a constrictor of the coronary arteries and the tonic innervation permits a maximal coronary blood flow only after atropinization some result should be expected. On the other hand the amount of atropine permissible is one which does not appreciably affect the heart rate.

Since large and effective quantities of all these remedies cannot be given over a long period it seems best to proceed in a manner that allows a combination of several agents having partly different points of action. Although this combination recalls the polypharmacy of former times results are obtained with this combination that are not approximated by the use of single ingredient. We cannot understand why the administration of these drugs in a mixture made in the pharmacy should do harm while the simultaneous ingestion of the same ingredients from different bottles should be useful.



The prescription is as follows

	<i>Gm</i>
Erythrol tetranitrate	0 003
Papaverine hydrochloride	0 05
Phenobarbital	0 01
Atropine sulfate	0 0002
Quinidine sulfate	0 1
Acetphenetidin	0 1
Theobromine pure	0 15—0 20

The relatively small dose of erythrol tetranitrate does not cause headache phenobarbital is a central sedative and acetphenetidin advocated already by Huchard is an analgesic. In the dose prescribed atropine accomplishes no more than a reduction of vagal tonus. Quinidine is a powerful vasodilator and a depressant of the tonus of the autonomic nerves.

From this mixture one capsule is prepared; such capsules are given three times a day, one after each meal. Rarely hypersensitivity to phenobarbital quinidine or theobromine is encountered and these drugs must then be omitted from the mixture. The capsules are given for 3 to 4 weeks and in many cases there is a definite improvement with regard to the severity, frequency and duration of the attacks. Naturally, refractory cases are encountered since all therapy is ineffective when alterations are advanced. Occasionally the symptoms recur if the capsule is stopped; under these circumstances there is no objection to another course of administration.

The occurrence of spontaneous improvement in patients with coronary stenosis compels one to exercise caution in the appraisal of all therapeutic measures. With the capsules just mentioned with nitroglyn with aminophylline suppositories and with intravenous injections of theophylline we possess a powerful therapeutic armamentarium to improve the patient's condition and we have a real basis for hope and encouragement although we cannot alter the course of the disease or influence the dubious outcome.

Administration of pressor amines should be avoided. Parenteral therapy with Priscoline and Pitresquin may lead to severe attacks of angina pectoris.

*Akhellin*. Promising results have been obtained with khellin preparations obtained from *ammi visnaga*, a wild plant from the Eastern Mediterranean. Used widely in Egypt for the treatment of kidney stones and bronchial asthma it has a coronary vasodilating effect that surpasses that of papaverine and aminophylline as was demonstrated by Anrep and his co-workers. In those patients who tolerate the drug good effects may be obtained; we do not agree with those who claim that khellin is of doubtful value. In several of our patients the complaints recurred a few days after the drug was withdrawn. The dosage is different with different preparations on the market. One gives advisedly the smallest dose of a preparation which is on the market once daily and gradually increases the number of tablets to as many as are tolerated. Unfortunately side effects

such as severe nausea vomiting diarrhea excitation or abnormal sedation weakness confusion depression and fever appear in about 60 per cent of those who take the drug

*Propylthiouracil Radioactive Iodine* Surgical thyroidectomy is now abandoned in favor of the chemical blocking of the formation of thyroid hormone with propylthiouracil or similar compounds or with radioactive iodine This therapy sponsored mostly by Parb and Blumgart brings a slow improvement since all thyroxin already formed by the gland must be first exhausted a process which may require weeks Patients with angina pectoris seem to do best with a basal metabolic rate of minus 15—20 per cent Clinical observation is a better guide One administers 20—100 millicuries of radioactive iodine in three divided doses Against the objection of a possibility of enhancement of atherosclerosis by the myxedematous state Blumgart has emphasized that in a very limited number of subjects who were examined at necropsy years after thyroidectomy no evidence of advanced coronary sclerosis was observed

*Tobacco* Smoking should be discontinued Although there is no proof that smoking alone causes coronary sclerosis it is equally indisputable that the angina pectoris of coronary stenosis may be aggravated by smoking It is a common observation that heavy smoking in healthy youngsters causes precordial pain which gradually disappears if the smoking is discontinued Tobacco angina is however rare In patients with and without organic heart disease temporary changes in the electrocardiogram have been observed following smoking of a single cigarette Patients with angina pectoris may improve when they stop smoking Whether the detrimental effect of smoking is due to vasoconstriction or the increase of heart rate and blood pressure is not decided

In young men angina pectoris seems to occur more often among heavy smokers than non smokers In elderly people no differences were observed in the incidence between both groups

*Nitrothionium* We lack experience in the therapy of angina pectoris in hypertensives with methionium Doyle and Kilpatrick treated 50 patients As to be expected spontaneous pains appeared in some and the treatment had to be terminated Many patients however showed improvement and in one third anginal pain disappeared We saw improvement with rauwolfia

*Alcohol* The moderate use of alcohol is permissible indeed it had been regarded as a beneficial agent owing to its vasodilating effect and was recommended by Heberden There is no proof that alcohol dilates the coronary arteries Beer and champagne like other carbonated drinks should be avoided because of the resulting elevation of the diaphragm which is not well tolerated

*Spa Treatment* Spending a few weeks at a health resort has the advantage of rest and relaxation but it has the disadvantage that the patient may learn too much about the symptoms and complications of his disease from fellow patients Naturally it is beneficial to spend the winter in a southern climate however while this adds to the well being of the patient he should be informed that this will not cure his condition

*Irradiation of Adrenals* Starting from the theory that attacks of angina pectoris in cases of coronary stenosis occur after physical exertion, exposure to cold weather or emotional factors — conditions in which, according to Cannon, large amounts of adrenalin are discharged from the adrenal medulla — irradiation of the adrenals with roentgen rays has been recommended (Parr). Six single treatments are given on consecutive days. Three treatments are applied to the left side and three to the right, each side being treated on alternate days. Two hundred roentgen units are given at each treatment. The size of the field is  $15 \times 17$  cm. 200 kv. 20 ma. 50 cm. target-skin distance. 1.5 mm. Cu. plus 1.0 mm. Al filter.

In more than 20 personally observed cases, the results were satisfactory and seemed to go definitely beyond the individual variations in the course of the disease and psychic effects inherent in any therapeutic procedure.

*Surgery* When the attacks cannot be controlled medically and occur with such frequency that life is intolerable to the patient, surgical measures may bring relief. Some patients suffer such agony that they are willing to undergo any surgical intervention which promises help.

Candidates for any surgical procedure must be carefully selected and one fact should be constantly kept in mind, namely, that spontaneous improvement may occur at any time, irrespective of the intensity of subjective sensations or objective findings. The surgical procedures may be divided into three groups:

- (1) Operations aimed at interrupting pain fibers on their way to the centers. This is a purely symptomatic measure without influence on the pathologic process.
- (2) Thyroidectomy, which does not influence coronary blood supply directly.
- (3) Operative procedures designed to increase the blood supply to the heart by creating anastomoses.

*INTERRUPTION OF PAIN FIBERS* Since Francois Franck's demonstration that sensory fibers from the heart pass over the sympathetics, operations on the cervical and dorsal sympathetics have been recommended. Many of the original procedures proved useless or were not compatible with anatomic facts. The mortality was over 10 per cent. Extirpation of the stellate ganglion afforded relief in a fair number of cases, although sensory fibers also run from the heart directly to the upper thoracic ganglia. Extirpation of these ganglia bilaterally and section of the upper five dorsal roots are very formidable operations. No improvement is obtained in 8 per cent of the patients. Intercostal neuralgia appears in 10 per cent. Pleural effusion, radiculitis and even transverse myelitis have been reported. Therefore, paravertebral anesthesia with a mixture of novocaine and alcohol is preferred at present. When done by a competent physician, the risk of complications is small and the percentage of patients benefited is great. However, in over 50 per cent neuritic complaints result which may be very troublesome. Relief from the angina may last for a month or it may be permanent. Instead of pain, patients receive other warning signals, such as sensations in the jaw, behind the sternum, or choking.

**TOTAL THYROIDECTOMY** This has been abandoned since the advent of the thyroid drugs and radioactive iodine which were discussed above.

**OPERATIONS FOR INCREASING THE BLOOD SUPPLY TO THE HEART** Opinions about the value of operations intended to increase the blood supply of the heart by creating anastomoses with the extracardiac circulation are divided. A definite indication for such an operation would be the progressive narrowing of the coronary ostia by syphilis. This condition can be diagnosed clinically, and since all other therapeutic procedures are useless, an operation may be justified once the diagnosis is established. In patients with coronary sclerosis we hesitate to advise surgery. When attacks increase in intensity and occur more frequently, even at rest, often a coronary occlusion threatens. Therefore the mortality of these operations is so high, signs of a myocardial infarction appear often during surgery or immediately afterward.

Among the operations reported there are several which have become well known. Grafting a part of the left pectoralis muscle on the heart, grafting omentum on the exposed heart (cardio omentopexy) and the creation of pericardial adhesions by talcum powder (cardiopericardiopexy) (Thompson) or by bone dust (Beck) represent the chief methods recommended. Vein grafts between the systemic arteries and the coronary sinus veins were performed (Beck et al.). Creation of this type of arteriovenous fistula is attended by a high mortality. The De epicardialization operation with a 90 per cent phenol solution (Harken et al.) seems promising. No proof has been given that following a surgically induced pericarditis sufficient anastomoses form between pericardial and coronary vessels.

Even implantation of mammary arteries into the left ventricular myocardium (Vaneberg), occlusion of the coronary sinus vein and pericoronary neurectomy (Fautoux) have been recommended. There is as yet too little experience available to evaluate the effect of the ligation of both mammary arteries in the second intercostal space.

### CORONARY INSUFFICIENCY (CORONARY FAILURE, THE INTERMEDIATE SYNDROME) AND LITTLE INFARCTIONS

The fact that the currently fashionable diagnosis of coronary insufficiency indicates only a physiologic state and not a clinical entity has been stressed in the introduction to this chapter. The term is widely used to indicate a great variety of conditions. Danielopolu employed it early to indicate the occurrence of angina pectoris without coronary disease during strenuous exercise. Physiologists then used it to describe a blood supply to the heart which does not fulfill the need, i. e. the oxygen requirements. Some of them spoke rather vaguely of a coronary insufficiency when there was an anemia or carbon monoxide intoxication. Under these circumstances the coronary arteries are normal but the supply of oxygen to the heart alone suffers. Great confusion was created subsequently. Katz describes coronary thrombosis with myocardial infarction

under the heading of coronary insufficiency Master described necrosis or infarction of the heart muscle without complete occlusion of a coronary artery as coronary insufficiency and later interpreted this term to mean attacks of pain in between angina pectoris and myocardial infarction without or with very little fall of blood pressure elevation of the sedimentation rate and no QPS changes in the electrocardiogram Shock is rare Nitroglycerin helps little or not at all A similar syndrome was described by Freedberg et al as coronary failure and by Graybiel as the intermediate syndrome

In our opinion most of these patients have sustained *little infarctions* an extremely common but little recognized condition

A very odd situation prevails at the present time large classical infarctions are readily diagnosed while little infarctions (like the little strokes emphasized by Alvarez) are not recognized We have seen such infarctions occur repeatedly in some individuals over a period of years Contrary to the statements of some authors these little infarctions like the (larger) rudimentary infarctions of Holzmänn may be accompanied by extremely severe pain which lasts for hours There may be a very slight rise of temperature but usually there is none at all The blood pressure remains unchanged or falls a little and only temporarily the sedimentation rate rarely becomes abnormal very often the electrocardiogram is normal since the lesion is intramural not reaching the subepicardial or subendocardial layers occasionally it shows flattening or a transient inversion of the T waves in some leads for the most part the V leads of the chest The tracings described by East and Oram belong here

The attacks are rarely caused by thrombosis of a coronary vessel Usually a fibrotic occlusion of a small tertiary branch is responsible (Wolkoff) The fibrotic occlusion of tertiary branches of the coronary arteries caused by coronary sclerosis is particularly common in hypertension It will not of course be prevented by the administration of anticoagulants It is in our opinion a frequent cause of little infarctions

The patient may have only one such attack if all findings are normal or if he remains healthy over a period of years the diagnosis of coronary disease is often not made In other patients such attacks occur almost daily for weeks or months and require repeated injections of morphine In some cases a series of such attacks leads to myocardial fibrosis without a large area of necrosis but causing heart failure There are countless variations of the clinical picture At any time the attacks may subside A large infarction may appear after years of well being

Such patients require rest only for a few days They may have bathroom privileges Treatment is symptomatic

In our opinion the diagnosis of coronary insufficiency coronary failure or intermediate syndrome (Graybiel) is less exact in these cases than the recognition that we are dealing with little infarctions caused by occlusion of small branches of the coronary arteries

The term coronary insufficiency is justified only with a qualification indicating a particular pathophysiologic state such as coronary insufficiency due to coronary stenosis (syphilitic) or paroxysmal tachycardia aortic stenosis acute hemorrhage and so forth. We prefer however to speak of a myocardial hypoxia in these conditions — thus indicating the etiologic mechanism — rather than a coronary insufficiency.

### ANGINA PECTORIS DUE TO AORTIC AND MITRAL VALVE LESIONS

Anginal and precordial pain is not rare in rheumatic mitral lesions and in rheumatic or syphilitic aortic valve lesions. Such cases frequently are appraised incorrectly because the radiation of the pain its constant appearance duration and occurrence at rest are atypical.

**Mitral Stenosis.** The association of this type of pain with mitral valve lesions especially when stenosis is preponderant has been known for a long time and different theories have been advanced to explain the relationship (p. 197). Exertional pain is uncommon in this lesion since dyspnea prevents great exertion and difficult breathing together with palpitation dominate the picture. If anginal pain appears at rest the electrocardiogram taken during the pain shows evidence of myocardial ischemia (Scherf and Goldhammer). Therefore an insufficient blood supply to the heart must be assumed. This might be caused by higher intraventricular pressure in the right ventricle which increases resistance in the peripheral coronary vascular tree. The appearance of anginal pain in cor pulmonale (see later) makes it probable that some of these pains originate in the pulmonary artery when the pulmonary arterial pressure is increased. In favor of this assumption is the fact that successful mitral surgery causes this most annoying symptom to disappear.

**Aortic Stenosis.** In aortic stenosis a similar mechanism seems active to some extent in the left ventricle. This lesion is associated with anginal pain more often than are mitral lesions because the patients are able to perform physical work without dyspnea even when the aortic stenosis is rather advanced. In this lesion pain is also common during complete rest. The electrocardiogram in these cases if taken during an attack of pain repeatedly shows the same alterations as in coronary stenosis (Scherf 1935). A suction effect exerted on the coronary ostia has also been held partly responsible for the causation of the pain. It is more probable that the unusual hypertrophy of the left ventricle encountered in this lesion and the increased intraventricular systolic pressure lead to myocardial hypoxia.

Sometimes in aortic stenosis pain recurs so frequently that the patient is unable to take more than a few steps without pain or is awakened nightly from sleep. Since there is no dyspnea pain is the only complaint although this pain is so distressing that the morale of patients is shattered and they may contemplate suicide.

*Aortic Insufficiency* In the presence of a syphilitic aortic insufficiency anginal pain is often due to a stenosis of the coronary ostia in the course of the aortitis. Anginal pain occurs however in all types of aortic regurgitation without coronary involvement.

The combination of aortic insufficiency and angina pectoris has been known for almost a century. In some cases of aortic insufficiency of rheumatic or syphilitic origin the anginal pain is unusually severe, although the coronary arteries are normal; this is not rare in children and young adults or in older patients. This anginal pain was found to occur in 9 per cent of patients presenting aortic insufficiency (Laplace). The pain has been explained by the low diastolic blood pressure (White and Mudd) — an explanation which seemed logical when the coronary blood supply was believed to depend exclusively on the height of the blood pressure; the fact that the attacks occurred mostly at night was explained by the particularly low blood pressure levels existing at that time. On the other hand patients with aortic insufficiency and very low diastolic blood pressure have no more attacks than those with somewhat higher pressures (Laplace). Furthermore it is easy to find that the blood pressure values during the attack are far from low. In our opinion patients with aortic insufficiency and angina pectoris in the absence of a syphilitic stenosis of the coronary ostia belong to the group discussed in the next section — patients with hypertensive crises. In the same group may be placed some patients with aortic stenosis and anginal pain.

*Treatment* Nitroglycerin invariably gives relief from the anginal pain in all these patients with mitral and aortic lesions. Our measures for preventing the recurrence of attacks are limited. We have noted beneficial effects from theophylline given intravenously. This alone may procure a restful night without anginal pain, particularly when the injection is given in the evening. The relief is only temporary, however, and recurrences tend to follow the discontinuance of injections. In some cases rectal suppositories of aminophylline in a dose of 0.5 Gm. help if they are inserted in the evening. The oral administration of aminophylline is useless.

These patients are often willing to undertake any treatment suggested by physicians to obtain relief. Surgical intervention may be indicated. One of our patients secured immediate and lasting relief by total thyroidectomy. Chemical thyroidectomy with thiouracil is of great help (Scherf and Terranova). Further therapeutic measures will be discussed in the following section.

## ANGINA PECTORIS IN HYPERTENSIVE CRISES

Since the classical description by Paul of paroxysmal and transient rise of blood pressure is called a hypertensive crisis. Such crises occur in a variety of conditions. Paul described them in acute nephritis, in the toxemias of pregnancy, uremia, and in lead poisoning. We shall limit the description of hypertensive crises to the types encountered in cardiovascular disorders. We are dealing

with a rather well known clinical syndrome which is often associated with angina pectoris. Hypertensive crisis associated with pheochromocytoma will be discussed in the section on hypertension.

### *Hypertensive Crises in the Absence of Pheochromocytoma*

For many years it has been known that the blood pressure rises during an attack of angina pectoris. This increase is so regular that Pal called angina pectoris an angiospastic crisis. In more than 100 cases the blood pressure was regularly taken by one of us during an attack of anginal pain appearing at rest and the rise of blood pressure (which involved both the systolic and diastolic pressures) was never missed in decubital angina with the exception of certain special cases (attacks due to paroxysmal tachycardia, pulmonary embolism, etc.).

**Incidence.** Attacks of paroxysmal hypertension with anginal pain are very common in patients with aortic insufficiency at any age including childhood. The same syndrome occurs in aortic stenosis, aortitis, moderate hypertension, coronary sclerosis, and occasionally in women with climacteric symptoms.

**Symptoms and Signs.** The symptoms closely approximate those observed in patients with a pheochromocytoma. The patients suddenly and unexpectedly develop palpitation with some oppression which often develops into agonizing retrosternal pain with the typical radiations noted in angina pectoris. There is profuse perspiration and the initial pallor is followed by a strong facial flush. The systolic pressure often rises more than 100 per cent and values over 300 mm Hg are frequently recorded during the attack even when the systolic blood pressure does not exceed 130 mm Hg in the interval. The diastolic blood pressure also rises but rarely more than 20–40 mm Hg. Sometimes the anginal pain is absent and an unusually severe headache is present.

A 14-year-old boy had a slight insufficiency of the aortic valve after rheumatic fever. He developed severe headache for many weeks and the distress recurred every afternoon at about five o'clock. The blood pressure values were always found around 110/40 except during the attack when they rose to 220/70. The episodes disappeared suddenly without treatment and did not recur (Scherf, 1935). There was no decompensation. A similar severe headache with paroxysmal hypertension and no anginal pain was observed by one of us in a patient with coarctation of the aorta.

The attacks may last for a few minutes or several hours. Very often they recur nocturnally and then with extreme punctuality at exactly the same hour. They may also be diurnal. In some cases, as in pheochromocytoma, it is possible to reproduce an attack by having the patient immerse the hands in cold water or by mental or physical strain. In most cases the attacks come and go without apparent reason. The attacks disappear during a febrile episode.

Whereas the attacks associated with pheochromocytoma usually occur with increasing frequency, severity and duration unless the tumor is removed, the attacks reported in this section may disappear at any time and may never recur. In several patients with this syndrome who succumbed we searched



very carefully for evidence of the chromaffin tissue or the presence of a chromaffin cell tumor but without success

Hyperadrenalinemia and hyperglycemia have been found during a crisis of this kind (Bernal Kugelman) but this is not significant since every stimulation of the sympathetic system is accompanied by an increased outpouring of adrenalin like substances into the blood

That these attacks are not due to an increased output of adrenalin alone is shown by the observation that in some of these patients a local vascular spasm appears during the attack. In two of our patients marked pallor of the left arm appeared simultaneously with an increase of blood pressure and anginal pain

These local crises may involve the meningeal vessels causing the headache or the cerebral vessels may be affected causing transient paralysis (cerebral crisis) in rare cases local arterial retinal spasm (retinal crisis) was observed causing amaurosis (Pal)

In acute and chronic nephritis and in the malignant phase of hypertension similar general and cerebral vascular crises occur causing increased blood pressure headache vomiting tonic and clonic convulsions coma temporary paralysis and even transient amaurosis. Local vascular spasm is responsible

Very rare are depressor crises during which entirely without premonition and without visible cause a considerable fall of blood pressure occurs with weakness general sweating and nausea. These attacks last for minutes or hours. Their mechanism is unknown. Careful observation fails to detect evidence of coronary thrombosis. One of our patients with coronary sclerosis who survived two attacks of this type succumbed during a third more than two years after the second

The hypertensive crises are often unrecognized because in the interim examination yields negative results even if a slight aortic insufficiency is found in a young boy or girl the examining physician who does not see the patient in an attack fails to consider the possibility that a quite different syndrome is present when complaints occur. Women after the menopause who do not show any abnormality when examined between attacks are considered to be neurotics. All gradations between very severe pain and moderate retrosternal pressure are observed. Frequently the symptoms are disregarded or considered nervous and sedatives are prescribed

**Mechanism** The developmental mechanism of this pain is not clear. Equally obscure is the problem of why the crisis occurs so often in connection with aortic insufficiency and why only a few patients with this lesion present it. Most of the patients originally observed by Pal had an aortic insufficiency and since some of them also suffered from tabetic crises the application of the term crisis for a proximal rise of blood pressure seemed indicated

Examination of the blood pressure during an attack makes it clear that the anginal pain develops when the pressure level reaches a certain point. Lewis speaks of a vasomotor storm in the splanchnic sympathetic system the cause

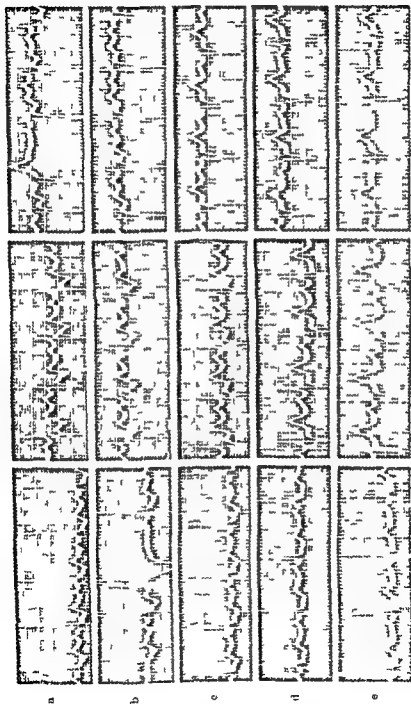


FIG. 83 A series of electrocardiograms obtained during a hypertensive crisis with arterial pain

of the abnormal sympathetic vasoconstrictor impulses, the reason why they appear and vanish is unknown.

If a patient with syphilitic or atherosclerotic coronary stenosis develops this paroxysmal hypertension, the occurrence of pain is understandable. The sudden rise of blood pressure and the higher heart rate usually associated with it increase the demand for blood; if due to coronary disease, an adequate supply is not forthcoming, pain will result. If an electrocardiogram is registered in such a patient during a hypertensive crisis and compared to the electrocardiogram obtained during the anginal pain after physical exertion, the two are seen to be exactly the same (Hausner and Scherf); this was noted in 47 cases.

Figure 83 was obtained from a 39 year old woman with syphilitic aortitis; narrowing of the orifices of both coronary ostia was found at necropsy. The patient had angina on effort and severe attacks of angina pectoris at rest with good response to nitroglycerin. During the attacks appearing at rest the blood pressure rose considerably.

The electrocardiogram showed only left axis deviation. On exertion marked changes appeared in the T waves. The same changes developed during attacks of angina pectoris occurring at rest.

The tracing in figure 83a was taken during an attack of severe anginal pain. It shows a sinus tachycardia, a single ventricular extrasystole in lead III and deeply inverted T waves in each lead. The same changes were visible in figure 83b which was registered five minutes later. The pain had disappeared in the meantime following the administration of nitroglycerin. Figure 83c and figure 83d, taken 10 and 15 minutes after figure 83a, show gradual improvement. The last tracing (figure 83e), obtained 20 minutes after the first one, shows almost complete recovery. There is still a slight depression of the RS-T segment in lead I.

These tracings prove the existence of a marked hypoxia of the heart muscle during these attacks, persisting even after the pain had disappeared.

Patients with an aortic insufficiency may suffer from severe attacks of angina pectoris, but the coronary arteries are found normal at necropsy (Lewis). In one case of this kind among our observations the coronary arteries were normal at necropsy, but the electrocardiograms recorded during the attacks were always markedly altered and showed evidence of hypoxia of the heart muscle.

One must therefore assume that the pain in these patients probably results from a participation of the coronary arteries with the same narrowing which involves the splanchnic vessels, whereby the blood supply to the myocardium becomes insufficient. Paroxysmal hypertension also was said to cause narrowing of the coronary arterial tree via the carotid sinus reflexes (Stellwag). Bilateral denervation of the carotid sinus in two patients with hypertensive crises, however, failed to alter the clinical picture (Scherf 1937).

**Therapy.** Amyl nitrite and nitroglycerin relieve the anginal pain and the headache, but the relief is transient; within a few minutes the pain recurs. The blood pressure may remain high. The amount of nitroglycerin which some of these patients take in a twenty-four hour period is sometimes staggering. As

early as 1905 Pal noted success from only one agent sodium thiocyanate Papaverine is recommended by this author in our experience is rarely of help

When the attacks recur too often and patients are incapacitated by them paravertebral injections of procaine alcohol are indicated

In three patients with a combined aortic insufficiency and stenosis who suffered from hypertensive crises and severe angina pectoris marked relief was obtained by the administration of thiouracil Four tablets of 0.1 Gm were given daily (Scherf and Terranova 1945) Within 4 to 7 days the patients claimed that they were able to sleep for the first time in weeks the symptoms recurred soon after the thiouracil was replaced by a placebo of the same size taste and appearance The patients felt better again when treatment with thiouracil was reinstituted

## ANGINA PECTORIS IN OTHER CONDITIONS

### SEVERE ANEMIA

Severe chronic anemias may be associated with serious changes in cardiac function and also with exertional angina pectoris (Herrick and Nuzum) The increased heart rate the greater output the acceleration of blood flow and better oxygen utilization compensate to a large extent for the lack of hemoglobin in advanced anemia This compensation is not ideal for sooner or later the heart suffers

#### *The Heart in Chronic Anemia*

Anatomically a fatty degeneration of the myocardium develops particularly in the area around the papillary muscles the area most sensitive to the lack of blood supply This combined with the increased activity of the heart is responsible for cardiac dilatation and hypertrophy Patients with marked dilatation of the heart secondary to anemia are rare nowadays but it still happens that patients with a severe chronic anemia are treated for a long time as cardiacs

Examination of these patients may yield a host of findings The peripheral arteries show a collapsible pulse Duroziez's murmur and a pistol shot sound a capillary pulse may be found Palpation of the precordium discloses cardiac hypermotility Percussion and x-ray examination show enlargement of the right and left ventricles with mitralization the result of dilatation of the pulmonary artery and of the left atrium The enlargement does not parallel the degree of anemia and disappears after successful treatment It is absent despite a chronic advanced anemia in bedridden and cachectic patients (Zdansky) The pulsations of the heart are often found accentuated during fluoroscopic examination

A variety of abnormal findings are found on auscultation Tachycardia is usually present Splitting of the first heart sound imitating a presystolic murmur is followed by a loud first sound as in mitral stenosis This presystolic murmur is never drawn out it is very short and probably owes its appearance to the

activity of hyperactive atria. It has been pointed out before that the atrial contraction causes a split sound to appear. This may be confused with a pre-systolic murmur. Systolic murmurs over all orifices are the rule and occur mainly because of the increased speed of blood flow. Over the apex there may be another loud systolic murmur when the left ventricle undergoes progressive dilatation and a relative mitral regurgitation appears. An expansile liver pulse and a positive venous pulse in the neck indicate the presence of a relative tricuspid insufficiency. In a few cases high pitched diastolic murmurs are heard at the base of the heart. Sometimes they are due to a relative aortic insufficiency sometimes to the speed of blood flow in the veins. In this instance the murmurs create a continuous hum with diastolic accentuation. The latter is produced by the rapid flow of blood in the large veins close to the heart during diastole.

Edema and hepatic enlargement appear in such patients and the misinterpretation of these cases as examples of rheumatic mitral or aortic lesions formerly was a common occurrence.

### *Angina Pectoris in Chronic Anemia*

Not rarely these patients complain of anginal pain on exertion. However this distress is rarely of sufficient severity for the patient to mention it spontaneously. Usually it is necessary to ask direct questions about it. In one series of 1560 cases of pernicious anemia, angina on effort was recorded in 27 per cent (Willus and Griffin); while in another series of 25 cases with a hemoglobin under 50 who were asked directly about angina pectoris on effort, the symptom was present in eight (Pickering and Wayne).

In a large percentage of patients with anemia and angina on effort it is not the anemia alone but its combination with coronary sclerosis that causes the pain. It is understandable that a coronary sclerosis insufficiently advanced by itself to provoke effort angina may do so when a severe anemia is superimposed. Nevertheless instances are known in which an effort angina and severe anemia were associated although necropsy revealed normal coronary arteries.

### PAROXYSMAL TACHYCARDIA

It has been known for a long time that pain appears in the cardiac region or behind the sternum and radiates to the left arm in patients with paroxysmal tachycardia. This pain is not always a minor symptom accompanying paroxysmal tachycardia or paroxysmal fibrillation with a high ventricular rate. At times pain is so prominent that the false diagnosis of coronary thrombosis is made. This mistake is understandable if the patient relates that he suffered from excruciating retrosternal pain lasting for several hours that radiated to the left shoulder and into the left arm. The pain usually lasts as long as the tachycardia. The relief afforded by nitroglycerin is temporary. Since the increased heart rate is often not felt by the patient during the paroxysmal tachycardia, pain alone is mentioned.

If the paroxysmal tachycardia recurs pain reappears. In one case of paroxysmal atrial fibrillation precipitated by reflexes whenever the patient took a deep breath (Burak and Scherf) pain developed for the duration of the fibrillation which was a few seconds or minutes; this patient was treated as an effort angina until the nature of the pain was discovered. Quinidine prevented the attacks of fibrillation and the anginal pain did not recur.

The absence of the usual signs of a coronary occlusion and myocardial infarction following a prolonged attack of pain permits the differential diagnosis. There will be no progressive fall of blood pressure and no increase of sedimentation rate. It is necessary however to stress that a slight rise of temperature for a few hours, hemoptysis and vomiting occur during some attacks of paroxysmal tachycardia.

The great reduction of the minute volume during an attack of tachycardia and the decided fall of blood pressure coinciding with the remarkable increase of demand for blood by the heart explains the pain in patients with healthy hearts. In patients who already have coronary sclerosis — that is in the majority of those beyond the age of 50 and in those who have syphilitic stenosis of the coronary artery — pain is more common during a paroxysmal tachycardia. It may be agonizing. In one case of syphilitic aortitis which came to necropsy shortly afterward there was narrowing of one and occlusion of the other coronary orifice. This patient had to be given injections of morphine whenever a paroxysm of atrial fibrillation appeared with a ventricular rate of 190.

Immediately after the onset of a paroxysmal tachycardia evidence of myocardial anoxia may be visible in the electrocardiogram for a short while after the tachycardia subsides. Abnormal T waves indicate the myocardial damage created by the increased rate (Burak and Scherf). This phenomenon has been named post tachycardia syndrome. It was mentioned previously that mere acceleration of the cardiac rate by an injection of atropine in a patient with coronary stenosis may lead to marked alterations in the electrocardiogram.

The differential diagnosis between paroxysmal tachycardia and coronary occlusion will be especially difficult if the patient is examined only after the tachycardia has disappeared. At that time it may be impossible to ascertain the true cause of the pain. Despite the negativity of all findings coronary occlusion with myocardial infarction cannot be completely ruled out.

Obviously the prognosis and treatment of this type of angina pectoris is quite different from that of other forms. The administration of sufficient doses of quinidine will effect a cure.

#### HYPER AND HYPOTHYROIDISM

It is not unusual to encounter the typical pain of angina pectoris in hyperthyroidism. Usually the pain occurs on exertion or excitement but it is reported to have occurred at rest and during the night. The combination of anginal pain

cardiac disease and hyperthyroidism is uncommon before the age of fifty years (Lev and Hamburger). Presumably these patients have coronary sclerosis which alone would not cause angina pectoris. When it is associated with the tachycardia and cardiac hypermotility dependent upon hyperthyroidism, however, the anginal pain appears on effort or excitement.

Subtotal thyroidectomy or treatment with thiouracil or radioactive iodine usually affords excellent results.

Coronary sclerosis is a common event in myxedema. Many patients without previous symptoms develop anginal pain shortly after taking thyroid preparation. Sometimes treatment with thyroid is impossible because pain recurs even when very small doses are used.

### PULMONARY EMBOLISM

Reference was made to the occurrence of angina pectoris in pulmonary embolism in previous sections.

Pulmonary embolism may produce many of the symptoms and signs of coronary thrombosis. Both may present pain lasting for hours, fall of blood pressure and leukocytosis. Fever, increased sedimentation rate, and alteration of the electrocardiogram follow, so that the differential diagnosis between the two conditions is fraught with difficulty or may even be impossible. Naturally pulmonary embolism rather than coronary thrombosis should receive primary consideration in a bedridden or postoperative patient unless cardiac symptoms suggestive of coronary disease have long been conspicuous. To be sure both coronary thrombosis and pulmonary embolism may occur in seemingly healthy individuals without premonitory symptoms. An earlier venous thrombosis may have entirely escaped recognition. This situation prevails particularly when a traumatic thrombosis develops asymptotically in a vein of the lower extremities some time after a slight and forgotten trauma.

Attention has been previously directed to the fact that the pain associated with pulmonary embolism may last only for a few minutes and it may respond quickly to nitroglycerin. The pain may recur repeatedly.

### CHEST PAINS IN CLIMACTERIC WOMEN

A precordial pain which occasionally radiates into the left arm is a common complaint in patients in the climacterium. The symptom is described with great vivacity and is associated with considerable anxiety, but it is not related to effort or other ascertainable extrinsic factors.

Since objective findings such as hypertension, tachycardia, and electrocardiographic findings coexist, confusion with the angina pectoris of coronary sclerosis occurs. This subject will be discussed in a later chapter.

## Bibliography

- Allison I R. Efflux esophagitis: sliding hiatal hernia and the anatomy of repair. *Surg Gyn & Obst J* 410 1951.
- Altschul R. Lymphocytopenia in heart disease. *Am Heart J* 43 653 1952.
- Altschule M D and Rosenfeld F M. Increased catabolism following acute myocardial infarction. *Arch Int Med* 50 74 1947.
- Anderson W W, Christensen N J and Edwards J F. Hemopericardium complicating myocardial infarction in the absence of cardiac rupture. *Arch Int Med* 49 634 1952.
- Anrep C V. Therapeutic uses of khellin. *Lancet* I 557 1941.
- Barsoum C S, Kenawy M R and Wisnahn C. Ammoniac in the treatment of the anginal syndrome. *Brit Heart J* 5 171 1946.
- Kenawy M R and Barsoum C S. The coronary vasodilating action of khellin. *Am Heart J* 3 531 1949.
- and Segall H N. The regulation of the coronary circulation. *Heart* 13 239 1926.
- Antonius N A, Izzo P A, Hayes C W and Walsh C R. Myocardial infarction in pregnancy. *Am Heart J* 49 113 1955.
- Arzt L P, Martin M and McClure R N. Disadvantages of dicumarol with special reference to therapeutic inadequacies. *Am J Surg* 47 1949.
- Askey J M. The syndrome of painful disability of the shoulder and hand complicating coronary occlusion. *Am Heart J* 2 1 1941.
- and Cherry C B. Rupture of the heart muscle in association with myocardial infarction. *Am Pract & Dig Treat* 1 463 1950.
- Ask Upmark E and Adner L. Coronary infarction and gout. *Acta med Scandinav* 139 1 1950.
- Aumann K W and Youmans W H. Differential sensitization of adrenergic neuroeffector systems by thyroid hormone. *Am J Physiol* 131 394 1940.
- Baer S and Frankel H. Studies in acute myocardial infarction. *Ann Int Med* 20 108 1944.
- Heine W I and Krasnoff S O. The mortality of acute myocardial infarction in private practice. *Am J Med Sci* 2 500 1951.
- Barley C I, Czekeler C D, Truex H C, Likoff W, Antonius N A, Angulo A W, Ramirez H and Neptune W. Artificialization of the coronary sinus. *JAMA* 151 441 1953.
- Bainbridge F A. The physiology of Muscular Exercise. ed 3 London: Longmans Green, 1931.
- Barcroft J, Boik A V and Roaghton F J. Observations on the circulation and respiration in a case of paroxysmal tachycardia. *Heart* 9 7 1911.
- Barnes A R and Willis F A. Cardiac pain in paroxysmal tachycardia. *Am Heart J* 2 490 1952.
- Barr D I. Some chemical factors in the pathogenesis of atherosclerosis. *Circulation* 8 641 1953.
- Barrett N R. Hiatus hernia. *Proc Roy Soc Med* 45 279 1952.
- Baurle W. Der Koronaraderse bei Hypertonie. *Beitr path Anat* 111 108 1950.
- Bazett H C. Blood volume and cardiovascular adjustments. *Am Heart J* 21 493 1941.
- Bean W H. Infarction of the heart. III. Clinical course and morphological findings. *Ann Int Med* 17 1 1938.
- Infarction of the heart. *Am Heart J* 14 684 1937.
- Beaumont J L, Chevalier H and Lencgre J. Studies on spontaneous variations in blood coagulability immediately following myocardial infarction. *Am Heart J* 47 556 1953.



cardiac disease and hyperthyroidism is uncommon before the age of fifty years (Lev and Hamburger). Presumably these patients have coronary sclerosis which alone would not cause angina pectoris. When it is associated with the tachycardia and cardiac hypermotility dependent upon hyperthyroidism, however, the anginal pain appears on effort or excitement.

Subtotal thyroidectomy or treatment with thiouracil or radioactive iodine usually affords excellent results.

Coronary sclerosis is a common event in myxedema. Many patients without previous symptoms develop anginal pain shortly after taking thyroid preparations. Sometimes treatment with thyroid is impossible because pain recurs even when very small doses are used.

### PULMONARY EMBOLISM

Reference was made to the occurrence of angina pectoris in pulmonary embolism in previous sections.

Pulmonary embolism may produce many of the symptoms and signs of coronary thrombosis. Both may present pain lasting for hours, fall of blood pressure and leukocytosis. Fever, increased sedimentation rate and alteration of the electrocardiogram follow, so that the differential diagnosis between the two conditions is fraught with difficulty or may even be impossible. Naturally, pulmonary embolism rather than coronary thrombosis should receive primary consideration in a bedridden or postoperative patient unless cardiac symptoms suggestive of coronary disease have long been conspicuous. To be sure, both coronary thrombosis and pulmonary embolism may occur in seemingly healthy individuals without premonitory symptoms. An earlier venous thrombosis may have entirely escaped recognition. This situation prevails particularly when a traumatic thrombosis develops asymptotically in a vein of the lower extremities some time after a slight and forgotten trauma.

Attention has been previously directed to the fact that the pain associated with pulmonary embolism may last only for a few minutes and it may respond quickly to nitroglycerin. The pain may recur repeatedly.

### CHEST PAINS IN CLIMACTERIC WOMEN

A precordial pain which occasionally radiates into the left arm is a common complaint in patients in the climacterium. The symptom is described with great vivacity and is associated with considerable anxiety, but it is not related to effort or other ascertainable extrinsic factors.

Since objective findings such as hypertension, tachycardia and electrocardiographic findings coexist, confusion with the angina pectoris of coronary sclerosis occurs. This subject will be discussed in a later chapter.

# Bibliography

- Allison P R R flux esophagitis sliding hiatal hernia and the anatomy of repair *Surg, Gyn & Obst* 9 419 1951
- Altschul R Lymphocytopenia in heart disease *Am Heart J* 43 603 1952
- Altshul M D and Rosenfeld E M Increased catabolism following acute myocardial infarction *Arch Int Med* 50 74 1944
- Anderson M W Christensen N A and Edward J J Hemopericardium complicating myocardial infarction in the absence of cardiac rupture *Arch Int Med* 90 634 1952
- Anrep G V Therapeutic uses of Khellin *Lancet* 1 7 1947
- Barsoum C S Kenawy M R and Mistry C Immunosensitization in the treatment of the anginal syndrome *Brit Heart J* 9 11 1946
- Kenawy M J and Barsoum C S The coronary vasodilating action of Khellin *Am Heart J* 3 531 1949
- and Segall H N The regulation of the coronary circulation *Heart* 13 235 1926
- Antonius N A Izzo I A Hayes C W and Walsh C I Myocardial infarction in pregnancy *Am Heart J* 49 83 1955
- Artz C I Martin M and McCleary P N Disadvantages of dicumarol with special reference to therapeutic inadequacies *Am J Surg* 77 47 1949
- Ashley J M The syndrome of painful disability of the shoulder and hand complicating coronary occlusion *Am Heart J* 9 1 1941
- and Cherry C B Rupture of the heart muscle in association with myocardial infarction *Am Pract & Dig Tr* 1 465 1950
- Ask Upmark F and Idner L Coronary infarction and gout *Acta med Scandinav* 139 1 1950
- Aumann, K W and Youmans W B Differential sensitization of adrenergic neuro effector systems by thyroid hormone *Am J Physiol* 131 394 1940
- Baer S and Frankel H Studies in a late myocardial infarction *Ann Int Med* 20 108 1944
- Hoine W I and Krasnoff S O The mortality of acute myocardial infarction in private practice *Am J M Sc* 2 500 1951
- Bailey C I Cecheter C D Trues I C Likoff W Antonius N A Angulo A W Ramirez H and Neptune W Arterialization of the coronary sinus *JAMA* 157 441 1953
- Bainbridge F A The Physiology of Muscular Exercise ed 3 London Longmans Green 1931
- Barcroft J Bock A V and Roughton F J Observations on the circulation and respiration in a case of paroxysmal tachycardia *Heart J* 7 1921
- Barnes A R and Williams F A Cardiac pain in paroxysmal tachycardia *Am Heart J* 2 490 1927
- Barr D I Some chemical factors in the pathogenesis of atherosclerosis *Circulation* 8 641 1953
- Barrett N R Hiatus hernia *Proc Roy Soc Med* 45 249 1952
- Baurle W De Koronarslerose bei Hypertonie *Leit path Anat* 111 103 1950
- Bazett H C Blood volume and cardiovascular adjustments *Am Heart J* 21 423 1941
- Bean W B Infarction of the heart III Clinical course and morphological findings *Ann Int Med* 12 71 1938
- Infarction of the heart *Am Heart J* 14 684 1937
- Beaumont J L Chevalier H and Lendegre J Studies on spontaneous variations in blood coagulability immediately following myocardial infarction *Am Heart J* 47 756 1953

- Beck C S Hahn R S Leighninger D S and McAllister F F Operation for coronary artery disease *JAMA* 147 1726 1951
- Bedford D E Prognosis in coronary thrombosis *Lancet* 1 223 1935
- Bedford T H II The pathology of sudden death *J Path & Bact* 36 333 1933
- Behrmann J H Hipp H R and Hoyer H E Pain patterns in acute myocardial infarction *Am J Med* 9 156 1950
- Benda C Über einen Fall von schwerer infantiler Koronararteriosklerose als Todesursache Virchows Arch f path Anat 254 600 1925
- Benson R L Hunter W C and Manlove C H Spontaneous rupture of the heart *Am J Path* 2 295 1933
- Benton J G Brown H and Rusk H A Energy expended by patients on the bedpan and bedside commode *JAMA* 144 1443 1950
- Berger H The treatment of postmyocardial infarction shoulderhand syndrome *Postgrad Med* 15 508 1954
- von Bergmann G Das epiphrenale Syndrom seine Beziehung zur Angina pectoris und zum Kardiospasmus *Deutsche med Wchnschr* 58 605 1932
- Berman E F and Akman L C Intra arterial infusion in the treatment of shock resulting from coronary occlusion *Am Heart J* 43 264 1952
- Bernal P Crises hypertensives etude clinique pathogenique et therapeutique Paris G Doin & Cie 1933
- Black J Blindness following hematemesis *Brit Med J* 2 920 1943
- Bland E F White I D and Garland J Congenital anomalies of the coronary arteries *Am Heart J* 8 787 1933
- Blaustein A \ Shnaverson \ and Wallach P Clinical use of a new anticoagulant Phenylindanedione *Am J Med* 14 704 1953
- Bledsoe A Myocardial infarction *JAMA* 153 50 1953
- Blum L Schauer C and Caley B Gradual occlusion of a coronary artery *Am Heart J* 16 189 1938
- Blumgart H L The relation of effort to attacks of acute myocardial infarction *JAMA* 143 775 1945
- Coronary disease *Bull N Y Acad Med* 27 693 1951
  - and Altschule M D Clinical significance of cardiac and respiratory adjustments in chronic anemia *Blood* 3 329 1948
  - Freedberg A S and Kurland G S Hypothyroidism produced by radioactive iodine (I 131) in the treatment of euthyroid patients with angina pectoris and congestive heart failure *Circulation* 1 1105 1950
  - Freedberg A S and Kurland G S Hypercholesterolemia myxedema and atherosclerosis *Am J Med* 14 665 1953
  - Levine S A and Berlin D D Congestive heart failure and angina pectoris the therapeutic effect of thyroidectomy on patients without clinical or pathological evidence of thyroid toxicity *Arch Int Med* 51 866 1933
  - Schlesinger M J and Davis D Studies on the relation of the clinical manifestations of angina pectoris coronary thrombosis and myocardial infarction to the pathological findings with particular reference to the significance of collateral circulation *Am Heart J* 19 1 1940
  - Schlesinger M J and Zoll I M Multiple fresh coronary occlusions in patients with antecedent shock *Arch Int Med* 63 181 1941
- Boas E P Iarets A D and Adlersberg H Hereditary disturbance of cholesterol metabolism *Am Heart J* 35 611 1948
- Boone J A and Iappas A Trophylactic use of quinidine following myocardial infarction *South M J* 49 169 1956

- Borak J. Zwerchfellveränderungen bei Coronarverschluss. *Wien klin Wchnschr* 11 399 1930
- Bourne G. and Ross J. I. Thyroidotomy for the relief of cardiac pain. *Lancet* 2 815 1938
- Boyd L. J. and Scherf D. The electrocardiogram after mechanical injury of the inner surface of the heart. *Bull New York Med Coll Flower & 5th Ave Hosp* 3 1 1940
- and —. Fl electrocardiogramas en las injurias epicardicas endocardicas (y miocardicas subyacentes) localizadas. *Rev argent de cardiol* 7 1 1940
- and Werblow S. C. Coronary thrombosis without pain. *Am J Med* 194 814 1937
- Boyer A. H. Aminophylline and related xanthine derivatives. *J A.M.A.* 122 306 1943
- Cardogenic shock. *New Engl J Med* 230 256 1944
- Brandt K. and Katz G. Über den Nachweis von Adrenalinsekretion beim Menschen die akuten Gefäßkrise. *Ztschr f klin Med* 121 40 1933
- Brejtogle H. S. The frequency of coexisting gall bladder and coronary artery disease. *J.A.M.A.* 114 1434 1940
- Brosman B. L. Hellerstein H. H. and Caskey W. H. Mephenteramine — an effective pressor amine. *Am Heart J* 34 396 1952
- Brown H. I. Jr Hoffman M. J. and de Lalla V. Jr. Ballistocardiographic findings in patients with symptoms of angina pectoris. *Circulation* 1 132 1950
- Brunn H. C. Syphilitic disease of the coronary arteries. *Am Heart J* 9 421 1934
- Brunn F. Zur Diagnostik der erworbenen Ruptur der Kammer bei Lewand des Herzens. *Wien Arch f inn Med* 6 533 1923
- and Mandl F. Die paravertebral Injektion zur Bekämpfung visceraler Schmerzen. *Wien klin Wchnschr* 3 511 1924
- Bryant J. M. Mich A. A. and Wood J. E. Jr. Tobaccoangina. *Am Heart J* 34 20 1947
- Buechner F. Die Koronarinsuffizienz. Dresden Steinkopf 1939
- Bull J. I. Ricketts C. Squire J. R. Maycock W. D. A. Spooner S. J. L. Moilison A. L. and Patterson J. E. Dextran as plasma substitute. *Lancet* 1 134 1949
- Burak M. and Scherf D. Angina Pectoris und paroxysmale Tachykardie. *Wien Arch f inn Med* 23 475 1933
- Burch C. E. and Winsor T. Syphilitic coronary stenosis with myocardial infarction. *Am Heart J* 24 740 1942
- Cannon W. B. McIver M. A. and Bliss S. W. Studies on the conditions of activity in endocrine glands. VIII. A sympathetic and adrenal mechanism for mobilizing sugar in hypoglycemia. *Am J Physiol* 63 46 1924
- Chambers W. A. Aortic myocardial infarction: a study of 100 consecutive cases. *New Engl J Med* 231 347 1946
- Chandler H. L. and Mann G. V. Heparin treatment of patients with angina pectoris. Failure to influence either the course or the serum lipids. *New Engl J Med* 249 1045 1953
- Cohen P. P. and Helkhuus G. L. Rate of transamination in normal tissues. *J Biol Chem* 140 711 1941
- Cohnheim J. and von Schulthess-Rechberg A. Über die Folgen der Kranzarterienverschließung für das Herz. *Arch f path Anat* 34 503 1881
- Conner L. A. and Holt E. The subsequent course and prognosis in coronary thrombosis: an analysis of 287 cases. *Am Heart J* 5 705 1930
- Cook C. D. Smith H. L. Gussen C. W. and Berdez G. L. Xanthoma tuberosum aortic stenosis: coronary sclerosis and angina pectoris: report of a case in a boy thirty years of age. *Am J Dis Child* 73 376 1947
- Cossio P. and Berconsky I. Absceso parietal del corazon e infarto del miocardio. *Semana Med* 2 1691 1933
- and Fustinoni O. Angina de pecho y hernia diafragmatica. *Rev argent de cardiol* 11 217 1942

- Coventry M B Problem of painful shoulder *J A M A* 151 177 1953
- Crainiceanu A Anatomische Studien über die Coronararterien und experimentelle Untersuchungen über ihre Durchgängigkeit *Virchows Arch f path Anat* 238 1 1922
- Cutler F C and Hoerr S O Total thyroidectomy for heart disease *Ann Surg* 113 945 1941
- Cutts F B and Rappaport B The routine use of quinidine in acute myocardial infarction *New Engl J Med* 247 81 1952
- Danielopolu The pathology and surgical treatment of angina pectoris *Brit M J* 2 553 1924
- Davis C Jr Dillon R F Fell F H and Gasul B M Anomalous coronary artery simulating patent ductus arteriosus *J A M A* 160 1047 1946
- Davis D and Ritvo M Osteoarthritis of the cervicodorsal spine (radiculitis) simulating coronary artery disease *New Engl J Med* 238 857 1948
- Davidson S Spontaneous rupture of a papillary muscle of the heart *J Mt Sinai Hosp* 14 241 1948
- Delaney J H and Keyes J W The Weltmann serocoagulation band in myocardial infarction *Am Heart J* 24 607 1942
- Detrick J E Whedon G D and Shan E Effects of immobilization upon various metabolic and physiologic functions of normal men *Am J Med* 4 3 1948
- Dewar H A and Grimson T A Khellin in the treatment of angina of effort *Brit Heart J* 12 54 1950
- Dietrich S and Schwiagh H Angina pectoris und Anoxie des Herzmuskels *Ztschr f klin Med* 125 195 1933
- Doel W Mandelbaum H and Mandelbaum R A Ballistocardiography St Louis Mosby 1953
- Dolger H Vascular complication of diabetes mellitus *Bull New York Acad Med* 40 770 1950
- Donald D E and Kirklin J W Experimental procedures designed to increase the blood supply to the myocardium *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 27 341 1950
- Donnelly B Gastro oesophageal regurgitation and oesophageal hiatus hernia *Brit J Radiol* 26 441 1953
- Douglas A S and Brown A Effect of vitamin K preparations on hypotherbinemia induced by dicumarol and tromexan *Brit Med J* 1 412 1952
- Doyle A and Kilpatrick J Methonium compounds in the angina of hypertension *Lancet* 1 904 1941
- Drake F H Long survival following coronary thrombosis *Am Heart J* 20 634 1940
- Dressler W A post myocardial infarction syndrome *J A M A* 160 1319 1956
- and Pfeiffer R Cardiac aneurysm *Ann Int Med* 14 100 1940
- East C F T Bain C W C and Cary F L Cardiac infarction without pain *Lancet* 2 60 1928
- East T and Oram S Cardiac pain with recovery of the T wave *Brit Heart J* 10 63 1948
- and — The cardiogram of the ventricular aneurysm following cardiac infarction *Brit Heart J* 14 124 1952
- Eckerstrom S Clinical and prognostic aspects of acute coronary occlusion *Acta med Scandinav Suppl* 240 1951
- Edmondson H A and Hoxie H J Hypertension and cardiac rupture *Am Heart J* 24 719 1942
- Elkin D C and Campbell R F Cardiac tamponade treatment by aspiration *Ann Surg* 133 623 1951
- Ellestad M H and Reed J Circulating eosinophils in cardiovascular stress *Ann Int Med* 30 541 1942

- Elliott A H Anemia as the cause of angina pectoris in the presence of healthy coronary arteries and aorta report of case *Am J M Sc* 18 185 1934
- English J P Willis F A and Berkson J Tobacco and coronary disease *J A M A* 115 1327 1940
- Ernstone A C and Kinell J Pain in the shoulder as a sequel to myocardial infarction *Arch Int Med* 66 800 1940
- Evans J A Sympathectomy for reflex sympathetic dystrophy *J A M A* 139 620 1946
- Evans W Anticoagulants in coronary occlusion *Proc Royal Soc Med* 47 318 1924  
— and Hoyle C The comparative value of drugs used in the continuous treatment of angina pectoris *Quart J Med* 2 311 1933
- Fauteux M Treatment of coronary disease with angina by pericoronary neurotomy combined with ligation of the great cardiac vein *Am Heart J* 31 260 1946  
— and Palmer J H Treatment of angina pectoris of atheromatous origin by ligation of the great cardiac vein *Canad M A J* 45 295 1941
- Feil M et al The Beck operations for coronary heart disease *Ann Int Med* 41 271 1956
- Feldthausen U and Lassen N A Serum iron after coronary occlusion and traumatic injuries *Acta med Scandinav* 150 53 1954
- Feyrter F Fineig nartiger Fall von Myomalacia cordis *Frankf Ztschr f Path* 33 1 1925
- Field J B Larsen E G Spero L and Link K P Studies on the hemorrhagic sweet clover disease *Am J Biol Chem* 156 725 1944
- Fitz Hugh T Jr and Wolferth C C Cardiac improvement following gall bladder surgery *Ann Surg* 101 478 1935
- Flaum M and Possler R Über die Herzwirkung der Purinkörper *Klin Wchnschr* 12 1480 1933
- Flory C M Arterial occlusions produced by emboli from eroded aortic atheromatous plaques *Am J Path* 21 419 1945
- Foley W T and Wright J S Long term anticoagulant therapy for cardiovascular diseases *Am J M Sc* 217 136 1949
- Forsman O Hanssen G and Jensen C C The adrenal function in coronary thrombosis *Acta med Scandinav* 14 441 1950
- Freedberg A S Blumgart H L Zoll P M and Schlesinger M J Coronary failure *J A M A* 138 107 1948
- Freis E D Schnaper H W Johnson H L and Schreiner G E Hemodynamic alterations in acute myocardial infarction *J Clin Investigation* 31 131 1952
- French A J and Dock W Fatal coronary arteriosclerosis in young soldiers *J A M A* 124 1233 1944
- Frisk A R and Lindgren I Methylthiouracil in the treatment of congestive heart failure and angina pectoris *Acta med Scandinav* 139 69 1948
- Fujinami A Über die Beziehungen der Myocarditis zu den Erkrankungen der Arterien wandungen *Virchows Arch f path Anat* 159 447 1900
- Gallavardin L Les angines de poitrine Masson Paris 1925
- Gans R H Acute myocardial infarction with rupture of the ventricle *Am Heart J* 41 332 1951
- Garvin C F Mural thrombi in the heart *Am Heart J* 21 713 1941
- Gilbert N C LeRoy G V and Fenn G K The effect of distention of abdominal viscera on the blood flow in the circumflex branch of the left coronary artery of the dog *Am Heart J* 40 519 1940
- Gilchrist A R Coronary thrombosis and its response to treatment *Brit M J* 351 1957  
— and Tulloch J A Anticoagulants in coronary disease *Brit M J* 2 740 1944
- Goldenberg M Apgar J Deterling P and Pines K L Norepinephrine (arterenol sympathin N) as a pressor drug *J A M A* 140 776 1919

- Goldhammer S and Scherf D Elektrokardiographische Untersuchungen bei Kranken mit Angina pectoris (ambulatorischer Typus) *Ztschr f Klin Med* 199 134 1937
- Gollwitzer Meier K and Kruger E Der Einfluß des Sympathicus auf die Coronargefäße *Arch f d ges Physiol* 236 594 1935
- Gorham L W and Martin S J Coronary occlusion with and without pain analysis of one hundred cases in which autopsy was done with reference to the tension factor in cardiac pain *Arch Int Med* 62 821 1938
- Grant R T An unusual anomaly of the coronary vessels in the malformed heart of a child *Brit M J* 2 351 1952
- and Jones T D A case of obstruction to the cardiac coronary sinus *Heart* 14 941 1928
- and Viko L E Observation on the anatomy of the thebesian vessels of the heart *Heart* 15 103 1929
- Graybiel A The intermediate coronary syndrome *U S Armed Forces M J* 11 1955
- Starr R S and White P D Electrocardiographic changes following the inhalation of tobacco smoke *Am Heart J* 15 89 1938
- Green H D The coronary blood flow in aortic stenosis in aortic insufficiency and in arterio venous fistula *Am J Physiol* 115 94 1936
- Gregg D D and Wiggers C J The phasic changes in coronary flow established by differential pressure curves *Am J Physiol* 112 627 1935
- Greene C W The reflex nervous regulation of the coronary circulation (Soc Proc) *Am J Physiol* 90 368 1929
- Gregg D F and Shipley R L Augmentation of left coronary inflow with elevation of left ventricular pressure and observations on the mechanism for increased coronary inflow with increased cardiac load *Am J Physiol* 112 44 1944
- Grollman A Physiological variations in the cardiac output of man III The effect of the ingestion of food on the cardiac output pulse rate blood pressure and oxygen consumption of man *Am J Physiol* 89 366 1929
- Gross L The Blood Supply of the Heart in its Anatomical and Clinical Aspects New York Hoeber 1921
- Gruher C B and Lanz H F Ischämische Herzmuskelnekrose bei einem Epileptiker nach Tod im Anfall *Arch f Psychiat* 61 98 1919
- Gubner R S Rodstein M and Ungerleider H E Ballistocardiography *Circulation* 7 268 1953
- Gunther L and Kerr W J The radicular syndrome in hypertrophic osteoarthritis of the spine *Arch Int Med* 43 212 1929
- Hadorn W and Tillman A Über Beziehungen zwischen Epilepsie und Angina pectoris *Klin Wchnschr* 14 1309 1935
- Hahn P F Abolishment of alimentary lipemia following injection of heparin *Science* 98 19 1943
- Hälonen P I and Aho A The role of thebesian drainage in the dynamics of coronary flow in cases with or without coronary sclerosis *Acta path microbiol Scand* 25 567 1948
- Hamman L Spontaneous mediastinal emphysema *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 64 1 1939
- Coronary embolism *Am Heart J* 21 401 1941
- Hammer A 1 in Fall von thrombotischem Verschuß einer der Kranzarterien des Herzens *Wien med Wchnschr* 28 97 1878
- Harken D F Black H Dickson J F III and Wilson H I III Decapicalization a simple effective surgical treatment for angina pectoris *Circulation* 19 96 1959
- Harkönen P and Konttinen Y On lymphopenia in myocardial infarction and acute pancreatitis *Acta med Scandinav* 155 253 1956

- Harrington E W Esophageal hiatal diaphragmatic hernia Surg Gyn & Obst 100 277 1955
- Hauser F and Scherf D Über Angina pectoris Probleme Ztschr f klin Med 176 1933
- Hellerstein H K Brufman B L and Caskey W H Shock accompanying myocardial infarction Am Heart J 44 407 1952
- Herrick J B Clinical features of sudden obstruction of the coronary arteries J.A.M.A. 59 2015 191.
- and Nuzum F R Angina pectoris clinical experience with two hundred cases J.A.M.A. 70 67 1918
- Hetenji G Angina pectoris während Insulinbehandlung Wien Arch f inn Med 13 95 1916
- Heyer H E Teng H C and Barris W The increased frequency of acute myocardial infarction during summer months in a warm climate Am Heart J 45 741 1953
- Hilton R and Fickholtz F The influence of chemical factors on the coronary circulation J Physiol 69 413 1975
- Holzmann M Erkennung und Behandlung des drohenden Herzinfarktes Cardiologia 13 177 1948
- Experiences with the rudimentary anterior wall infarction Am Heart J 50 407 1955
- Horn H and Finkelstein L E Arteriosclerosis of the coronary arteries and the mechanism of their occlusion Am Heart J 19 650 1940
- Hudson C L Moritz A R and Wearn J T The extracardiac anastomoses of the coronary arteries J Exper Med 56 919 1932
- Hultgren H N Robertson H S and Stevens L E Clinical and experimental study of use of khellin in the treatment of angina pectoris J.A.M.A. 143 465 1950
- Huppert V and Boyd L J Sustained action of nitroglycerin (Nitroglyn) in angina pectoris due to coronary stenosis Bull New York Med Coll 18 53 1956
- Imboden L E and Newton C B Myocardial infarction following electric shock U S Armed Forces M J 3 497 1952
- Jacobi M Kenler M and Silverman I Paradoxical embolism of the coronary artery Am Heart J 11 414 1934
- Jarisch A and Henze C Über Blutdrucksenkung durch chemische Erregung des prämotorischen Nerven Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol 18 108 1937
- Jarisch A and Liljestrand G Über das Verhalten des Kreislaufes bei Muskelarbeit nach dem Essen und bei Flüssigkeitszufuhr Skandinarv Arch f Physiol 51 200 1927
- Jarvinen K A J Can ward rounds be a danger to patients with myocardial infarction? Brit M J 1 318 1950
- Jetter W W and White P D Rupture of the heart in patients in mental institutions Ann Int Med 41 783 1944
- Johnson A C Disabling changes in the hands resembling sclerodactylia following myocardial infarction Ann Int Med 19 433 1943
- Johnson J R and Di Palma J R Intramyocardial pressure and its relations to aortic blood pressure Am J Physiol 125 234 1939
- Jones C M Hiatus esophageal hernia with special reference to a comparison of its symptom with those of angina pectoris New Engl J Med 2 963 1941
- Jones E W Radiographic study of the coronary arteries in health and disease Quart J Med 24 199 1931
- Jones F A Diagnosis of hiatus hernia Proc Roy Soc Med 45 217 1952
- Jonescu D and Epachescu M Untersuchungen bei Säugetieren und beim Menschen über die aus dem Brustgrenzstrang des Sympathicus unterhalb des Ganglion stellatum entspringenden Herznerven Nervi cardiaci thoracales Ztschr f l ges Anat Ent wklgesch 85 476 1929



- Jordan R J A Miller D Edwards J E and Parker R L Thromboembolism in acute and healed myocardial infarctions *Circulation* 6 1 1952
- Josev A I and Murphey I Ruptured intervertebral disk simulating angina pectoris *J A M A* 131 581 1946
- Julian D C Epiphrenic oesophageal diverticulum with cardiac pain *Lancet* 9 915 1953
- Kahlmeter G A form of onarthrosis accompanied by vasomotor disturbances in corresponding hand and anxiety neurosis *Acta Rheumatol* 2 20 1930
- Kaiser G Das klinische Bild der Hiatushernie *Arch f Verdauungskr* 60 51 1936
- Karsner H T and Dwyer J E Jr Studies in infarction IV. Experimental bland infarction of the myocardium myocardial regeneration and cicatrization *J M Pe search* 34 21 1916
- Katz L H Rhodes G J George R S and Moses C Total serum cholesterol cholesterol lipid phosphorus ratio and S<sub>f</sub> 12-20 concentration in hypertension diabetes and coronary artery disease *Am J M Sc* 225 120 1953
- Katz L V and Mintz S S An analysis of immediate mortality in 572 cases of recent myocardial infarction *J Lab & Clin Med* 32 325 1947
- Kaunitz P F Origin of left coronary artery from pulmonary artery *Am Heart J* 33 189 1947
- Keefers C S and Resnik W H Angina pectoris a syndrome caused by anoxemia of the myocardium *Arch Int Med* 41 769 1928
- Kehl H C Dupuytren's contracture as a sequel to coronary artery disease and myocardial infarction *Ann Int Med* 19 213 1940
- Keiser G Statistische Untersuchungen über den Einfluß des Rauchens auf die Angina pectoris *Cardiologia* 24 285 1954
- Kellgren J H Somatic simulating visceral pain *Clin Sc* 4 303 1940
- Keyes J W Drake E H and Smith F J Survival rates after myocardial infarction with long term anticoagulant therapy *Circulation* 14 254 1950
- Keys A Cholesterol giant molecules and atherosclerosis *J A M A* 144 1514 1951
- Obesity and heart disease *J Chron Dis* 1 456 1955
- Keys J R et al Cholecystectomy in patients with coronary heart disease *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 25 597 1955
- Kinney T D and Mallory G K Cardiac failure associated with acute anemia *New Engl J Med* 232 215 1945
- Kjaergaard H Cerebral symptoms in acute myocardial infarction *Acta med Scandinav* 53 196 1936
- Koch W and Kong L C Über die Formen des Coronarverschlusses die Änderung im Coronarkreislauf und die Beziehungen zur Angina pectoris *Beitr z path Anat u z allg Path* 30 21 1932
- Kretz J Über die Bedeutung der Venae minimae Thebesii für die Blutversorgung des Herzmuskels Virchows *Arch f path Anat* 266 647 1928
- Kroetz C Herzschädigungen nach Kohlenoxydvergiftungen (zugleich Bemerkungen zur Pathogenese der Koronarthrombose) *Deutsche med Wchnschr* 62 136 1936
- Kroop I G and Shackman N H The C reactive protein determination as an index of myocardial necrosis in coronary artery disease *Am J Med* 22 90 1956
- Krumbhaar F B and Crowell C Spontaneous rupture of the heart *Am J M Sc* 10 848 1925
- Kugelmann B Zur Frage der Adrenalausschüttung bei der Insulinhypoglykämie und bei labilen Gefäßkrisen *Klin Wchnschr* 12 1493 1933
- Kurland C S and Malach M The clinical use of nor-pinephrine in the treatment of shock accompanying myocardial infarction and other conditions *New Engl J Med* 241 383 1955

- LaDus J S, Wróblewski F and Karmen A. Serum glutamic oxaloacetic transaminase activity in human acute transmural myocardial infarction. *Science* 1049<sup>th</sup> 1954
- Lampesis I T, Crandall W D and King S J. Ruptured myocardial infarct with survival for three weeks. *New Engl J Med* 248:455 1953
- Laplace L B. The relationship of angina pectoris to aortic valvular disease. *Am Heart J* 8:810 1933
- Larsen K H. Om forandringer i Elektrokardiogrammet hos synde og syge under experimental Iltmangel. Copenhagen Munksgaard 1939
- Laubry C and Soulié I. Les maladies des coronaires 2 ed Paris Masson 1950
- Soulié P and Thivier H. Les anastomoses septales. *Arch d mal du coeur* 41:1 1949
- Lawson F F. Gallbladder = dye (Iodophthalein sodium) effect of intravenous injections on coronary flow, blood pressure and blood coagulation. *Arch Int Med* 6:143 1945
- Leary T and Wearn J T. Two cases of complete occlusion of both coronary orifices. *Am Heart J* 5:412 1930
- Leech D J. Pharmacological action and therapeutic uses of the nitrites and allied compounds. *Lancet* 1:3 1893
- Lev M W and Hamburger W W. Studies in thyroid heart disease II Angina pectoris and hyperthyroidism. *Am Heart J* 8:109 1932
- Levatin I. Atrophy of optic nerve following hemorrhage. *Arch Ophthalmol* 3:18 1947
- Levine S A. The myth of strict bed rest in the treatment of heart disease. *Am Heart J* 4:408 1951
- and Brown C L. Coronary occlusion: its various clinical features. *Medicine* 5:240 1939
- Cutler E C and Eppinger F C. Thrombectomy in the treatment of advanced congestive heart failure and angina pectoris. *New Engl J Med* 60:667 1933
- and Lown B. Armchair treatment of acute coronary thrombosis. *J A M A* 148:1366 1952
- and Stevens W B. The therapeutic value of quinidine in coronary thrombosis complicated by ventricular tachycardia. *Am Heart J* 1:263 1928
- Livy R L and Barach A L. The therapeutic use of oxygen in coronary thrombosis. *J A M A* 41:1363 1930
- Lewis T. Angina pectoris associated with high blood pressure and its relief by amyl nitrite, with a note on Nothnagel's syndrome. *Heart* 15:300 1931
- The experimental production of paroxysmal tachycardia and the effects of ligation of the coronary arteries. *Heart* 198 1909
- Ischemic muscular ischemia: its relation to anginal pain. *Arch Int Med* 44:13 1932
- and Kellgren J H. Observations relating to referred pain, visceromotor reflexes and other associated phenomena. *Clin Sci* 4:4<sup>th</sup> 1939
- Litman E and Sachs B. A case illustrating the leukocytosis of progressive myocardial necrosis following coronary artery thrombosis. *Am Heart J* 2:3 1927
- Liebow I M and Hellerstein H K. Cardiac complications of diabetes mellitus. *Am J Med* 6:60 1949
- Lickoff W and Hixley C P. Ventriculoplasty: excision of myocardial aneurysm. *J A M A* 163:81 1950
- Lindgren I. Angina pectoris. *Acta med Scandinav Suppl* 243 1950
- Littman D. The prevention of thromboembolism in acute coronary artery disease. *New Engl J Med* 24:200 1951
- Lodge Patch I. The aging of cardiac infarcts and its influence on cardiac rupture. *Brit Heart J* 13:31 1951
- Losner S and Visk B M. Plasma fibrinogen and serum albumin in acute myocardial infarction. *Angiology* 7:44 1956
- Louison I S L, Peasat J C and Cooke A M. Anticoagulants in myocardial infarction. *Brit M J* 1:911 1953

- Lu F C and Melville K I Effects of nor adrenaline on coronary flow and heart contraction as recorded concurrently in the isolated rabbit heart *J Physiol* 113 365 1951
- Mahaim I Les maladies organiques du faisceau de His Tawara les syndromes coronaires l'endocardite septale l'infarctus septale (Etude clinique et anatomique) Paris Masson 1931
- Hatt P Y and Rivier J L L'infarctus septal et les lésions du tissu spécifique ventriculaire *Arch d mal du coeur* 47 465 1954
- Maldonado Allende L La influencia del tabaco en la hipertensión arterial clinica Actas y trabajos VI congreso med Cordoba Argentina 1941
- Mallory G K White P D and Salsedo Salgar J The speed of healing myocardial infarction *Am Heart J* 18 647 1939
- Marchand W F Occurrence of painless myocardial infarction in psychotic patients. *New Engl J Med* 253 51 1955
- Martin N H An intramural cardiac aneurysm *J Path & Bact* 58 297 1946
- Mason G A Myocardial ischemia and its surgical relief *Lancet* 1 359 1951
- Mattioli M L'infarto del miocardio Naples Edu Scient Ital 1946
- McCormick H M and Young I I Effect of aminophylline on plasma thrombin and Ac globulin in dogs *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 70 501 1949
- Meissner R Zur Beschleunigung der Blutgerinnung durch Euphyllin *Biochem Ztschr* 120 197 1931
- Menten M L and Fetterman G H Coronary sclerosis in infancy *Am J Clin Path* 13 80 1948
- Middleton W S and Oatway W H Jr Insulin shock and the myocardium *Am J M Sc* 181 39 1931
- Miller H Ventricular fibrillation as the mechanism of sudden death in patients with coronary occlusion *New Engl J Med* 221 564 1939
- Moia H El síndrome premonitor del infarto de miocardio y el infarto inminente *Rev argent d Cardiol* 11 387 1945
- Rosenbaum M B and Hojman D Aneurismas ventriculares en la miocarditis crónica chagásica *Rev argent d Cardiol* 22 113 1955
- Morawitz P and Hochrein M Zur Verhütung des akuten Herzodes München med Wchnschr 76 1075 1929
- Moritz A R Hudson C L and Orgain E S Augmentation of the extracardiac anastomoses of the coronary arteries through pericardial adhesions *J Exper Med* 56 927 1932
- Morris J N Recent history of coronary disease *Lancet* 1 69 1951
- Heady J A Laffie P A B Roberts C J and Iarka J W Coronary heart disease and physical activity of work *Lancet* 2 1111 1953
- Murrell W Nitroglycerine as a remedy for angina pectoris *Lancet* 1 80 113 1915
- Musser J H Theophylline-ethylenediamine in heart disease associated with pain *JAMA* 91 1242 1928
- Nathanson M H and Miller H The action of nor epinephrine epinephrine and iso propyl nor epinephrine on the rhythmic function of the heart *Circulation* 6 234 1952
- Nay R M and Barnes A R Incidence of embolic or thrombotic processes during the immediate convalescence from acute myocardial infarction *Am Heart J* 30 6 1945
- Nelson M C Intimal coronary artery hemorrhage as a factor in the causation of coronary occlusion *J Path & Bact* 63 105 1941
- Neuberger K Über die Herzmuskeleränderungen bei Epileptikern und ihre Beziehungen zur Angina pectoris *Frankf Ztschr f Path* 46 14 1933

- Nichol F S and Borg J E Long term dicumarol therapy to prevent recurrent coronary artery thrombosis *Circulation* 1 109: 1950
- and Page S W Jr Dicumarol therapy in acute coronary thrombosis *J Florida M A* 33 36: 1946
- Nonnenbruch and Szyszka W Über einige neuartige Mittel (Euphyllin und andere Amine) zur Beschleunigung der Blutgerinnung *Deutsche Arch f klin Med* 134 174 1920
- Nordenfelt O The electrocardiogram in chronic aneurysm of the heart *Acta med Scandinav* 103 101 1939
- Nuzum R Relation of esophageal hiatus hernia to angina pectoris *J A M A* 118 1174 1952
- Obrasczow W I and Straszko N D Zur Kenntnis der Thrombose der Koronararterien des Herzens *Ztschr f klin Med* 74 116 1910
- Ogata J H Kotter N R Bienenkorn M A and Glueck H I Changes in blood coagulation following coronary thrombosis measured by the heparin retarded clotting test *J Clin Investigation* 25 586 1946
- Oria O The dynamic changes in the ventricle following ligation of the Ramus Descendens Anterior *Am J Physiol* 100 629 1932
- Obhaughnessy L Surgical treatment of cardiac ischemia *Lancet* 1 185 1937
- Ostrow B et al Serum transaminase *Abstr of 28th scient session of Am Heart Assn* New Orleans 1955
- Overman R S and Wright I S Prothrombin time determinations on patients with myocardial infarction *J A M A* 147 227 1951
- Padilla T and Coscio P Pronostico del infarto de miocardio *Rev argent de Cardiol* 1 181 1934
- Pal J *Gefäßkranke* Leipzig b Hirzel 1909
- Klinisches und Therapeutisches über Angina pectoris *Wien Arch f inn Med* 6 153 1923
- Pardee H F B An electrocardiographic sign of coronary artery obstruction *Arch Int Med* 26 244 1920
- Parker R L and Barker N W The effect of anticoagulants on the incidence of thromboembolic complications in acute myocardial infarction *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 23 307 1948
- Parkinson J and Bedford D E Successive changes in the electrocardiogram after cardiac infarction (coronary thrombosis) *Heart* 14 195 1928
- Bedford D E and Thomson W A R Cardiac Aneurysm *Quart J Med* 7 455 1938
- Parry C H An inquiry into the symptoms and causes of the syndrome angina commonly called angina pectoris London Cadell & Davis 1 99
- Peterson J C Vascularization and hemorrhage of the intima of arteriosclerotic coronary arteries *Arch Path* 2 313 1936
- Capillary rupture with intimal hemorrhage as a causative factor in coronary thrombosis *Arch Path* 2 474 1938
- Relation of physical exertion and emotion to precipitation of coronary thrombosis *J A M A* 11 895 1939
- Pedley F G Coronary disease and occupation *Canad M A J* 46 147 1942
- Perlman A A study of the therapeutic action and toxicity of pentathylol tetranitrate *Angiology* 3 16 1952
- Phillips J Coronary thrombosis *Proc Inter State post graduate Assembly* 1928 p 518
- Lick R Stamler J Rodbard S and Katz L N Estrogen induced repression of coronary atherosclerosis in cholesterol fed chicks *Circulation* 2 858 1952
- Pickering G W and Wayne E J Observations on angina pectoris and intermittent claudication in anemia *Clin Sc* 1 30: 1934

- Plachta A and Speer F D Congenital absence of right coronary artery *Am J Clin Path* 24 1035 1954
- Thompson S A and Speer F D Pericardial and myocardial vascularization following cardiopericardiopexy *Arch Path* 59 151 1955
- Powers H Dupuytren's contracture one hundred years after Dupuytren its interpretation *J Nerv & Ment Dis* 80 386 1934
- Pratt F H The nutrition of the heart through the vessel of Thebesius and the coronary veins *Am J Physiol* 1 86 1898
- Price R K First effort angina *Brit Heart J* 13 197 1951
- Prodger S H and Ayman D Harmful effects of nitroglycerin With special reference to coronary thrombosis *Am J M Sc* 194 480 1932
- Puddu V La prova del lavoro nella diagnostica elettrocardiografica dell'angina pectoris *Cuore e circolaz* 20 411 1936
- Raab W Thiouracil treatment of angina pectoris *JAMA* 128 249 1945
- Nebennieren und Angina pectoris *Ztschr f Kreislaufforschg* 1 255 1931
- and Soulie A H Jr Rational and results of roentgen treatment of the adrenal glands in angina pectoris *Am J Roentgenol* 51 364 1944
- and Lopeschlin E Antiadrenergic effect of nitroglycerine on the heart *Circulation* 1 73 1950 6 373 1952
- Rau H Zur Bedeutung der chronischen Blutdruckerhöhung für die Entstehung und schwere der Arteriosklerose *Klin Wchnschr* 34 167 1956
- Ravich R M and Rosenblatt P Myocardial infarction in a newborn infant *J Pediatrics* 31 266 1947
- Rein H Die Physiologie der Herz Kranz Gefäße *Ztschr f Biol* 22 101 116 1931
- Rein H Über zureichende Blutversorgung von Skelett und Herzmuskel *München med Wchnschr* 1933 p 374
- Reitman M Greenwood W R and Kler J H Coronary thrombosis in a young diabetic *Am J M Sc* 203 792 1942
- Remlinger I Sclerose de l'artere coronaire anterieure. Degenerescence consecutive d ventricule gauche. Aneurysme du coeur diagnostique pendant la vie *Bull de l'academe med* 10 483 1896
- Reveno W S Thiouracil in angina pectoris *Am J Med* 1 607 1946
- Roantree R J and Rantz L A Clinical experience with the C reactive protein test *Arch Int Med* 96 674 1950
- Roberts J T and Loube S D Congenital single coronary artery in man *Am Heart J* 34 188 1947
- and Wearn J T Quantitative changes in the capillary muscle relationship in human hearts during normal growth and hypertrophy *Am Heart J* 21 617 1941
- Robinson C C and Herrmann G R Paroxysmal tachycardia of ventricular origin and its relation to coronary occlusion *Heart* 8 59 1921
- Rosler R Über experimentelle Herzscheidigung durch Koronargefäßverengung, und ihre Beeinflussung durch Itharmaka *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 103 1 1930
- Rosenbaum F F and Levine S A Prognostic value of various clinical and electrocardiographic features of acute myocardial infarction I Immediate prognosis *Arch Int Med* 65 913 1941
- Ross I H and Ivy A C Tobacco smoking and coronary artery disease *Quart Bull Northwestern M School* 20 424 1946
- Roth G M Tobacco and the Cardiovascular System Springfield Thomas 1951
- Rothberger C I and Scherf D Wirkt der Vagus auf die Kontraktionsstärke der Kamern des Säugetierherzens? *Ztschr f d ges exp Med* 71 274 1930
- Rothschild M A and Kassir M Inhaled general anoxia causing S T deviation in the electrocardiogram *Am Heart J* 8 74, 1933

- Roussak N J Myocardial infarction during serum sickness Brit Heart J 16 218 1954
- Ruhstinet G J Multiple aneurysm of the right coronary artery J.A.M.A. 149 1129 1952
- Pytand D A Anticoagulants in coronary thrombosis with myocardial infarction Arch Int Med 85 207 1951
- Sagall E L and Lewenstein H J Prolonged cardiac pain following the intra arterial injection of priscoline New Engl J Med 213 273 1953
- Sampson J J and Singer I M Plasma and blood infusion following myocardial infarction Am Heart J 38 54 1949
- and Zipser A Nor epinephrine in shock following myocardial infarction Circulation 9 38 1954
- Saphir O and Gore J Evidence for an inflammatory basis of coronary arteriosclerosis in the young Arch Path 49 419 1949
- Priest W S Hamburger W W and Katz L V Coronary arteriosclerosis coronary thrombosis and the resulting myocardial changes Am. Heart J 10 587 1935
- Scarborough W M Mason R E Davis F W Jr Dingwald M L Baker B M Jr and Lore S A A ballistocardiographic and electrocardiographic study of 328 patients with coronary disease Am Heart J 41 645 1952
- Scherf D Ein Fall von Angina pectoris Ztschr f klin Med 120 715 1932
- Hyperglykämie und Glykosurie bei Coronarthrombose Wien klin Wchnschr 46 58 1933
- Koronarerkrankungen Ergebn d ges Med 90 23, 1935
- Über Beziehungen der Sinus caroticus Reflexe zur Pathologie des Kreislaufes und der Atmung Wien klin Wchnschr 50 874 1937
- Totale Thyroidektomie bei Herzkrankheiten Med klin 33 1126 1931
- La conduccion de las corrientes d injuria desde el corazon observaciones clinicas y experimentales Rev arg nt d cardiol 8 87 1941
- Exercise test in coronary stenosis Bull New York Med Coll Flower & Fifth Ave Hosp 5 2 1942
- and Boyd L J Cardiac aneurysm M Clin North America 26 919 1942
- and Brooks A M The murmurs of cardiac aneurysm Am J M Sc 218 389 1949
- and Frlsbacher O Zur Symptomatologie des partiellen Herzaneurysmas Med klin 30 1687 1934
- Goklen M F and Morgenbesser L J Amidopyrine in acute myocardial infarction Bull N Y Med College 12 102 1949
- and Golbey M An evaluation of the term coronary insufficiency Am Heart J 4 928 1954
- and Goldhammer S Zur Frühdiagnose der Angina pectoris mit Hilfe des Electrocardiogramms Ztschr f klin Med 111 111 1933
- and — Zur Frühdiagnose der Angina pectoris Wien med Wchnschr 61 836 1933
- and Klotz S D Electrocardiographic changes after acute loss of blood Ann Int Med 90 439 1944
- Reinstein H and Klotz S D Electrocardiographic changes following hematemesis in peptic ulcer Rev Gastroenterol 8 343 1941
- and Schaffer A I The electrocardiographic exercise test Am Heart J 33 97 1952
- and Schiachman M The effect of methyl xanthines on the prothrombin time and the coagulation of the blood Am J M Sc 91L 83 1946
- and Schrabel I Atropin bei Angina pectoris Klin Wchnschr 33 139 1934
- and Terranova A Thiouracil for angina pectoris in aortic insufficiency and stenosis Rev argent d cardiol 1 901 1945
- Seegers W H Blood coagulation and the practical significance of recent advances in knowledge of prothrombin and Ac globulin Circulation 19 1950

- Weber M L Perforation of the interventricular septum following infarction intra vitam diagnosis *Ann Int Med* 19 973 1943
- Weinstein A A Davis D Berlin D D Blumgart H L The mechanism of early relief of pain in patients with angina pectoris and congestive failure after total ablation of the normal thyroid gland *Am J M Sc* 187 753 1934
- Wenckebach K F Toter Punkt second wind und Angina Pectoris *Wien klin Wchnschr* 41 1 1928
- Wessler S Zoll P M and Schlesinger M J The pathogenesis of spontaneous cardiac rupture *Circulation* 6 334 1952
- White J C and Bland E F The surgical relief of severe angina pectoris *Medicine* 27 1 1948
- Garrey W E and Atkins J A Cardiac innervation *Arch Surg* 26 185 1933
- White M S Coronary thrombosis occurring in a pilot while in flight in a single seat aircraft *J A M A* 115 447 1940
- White P D and Camp P D The status anginosus induced by paroxysmal auricular fibrillation and paroxysmal tachycardia *Am Heart J* 7 581 1932
- and Mudd S C Angina pectoris in young people *Am Heart J* 3 1 1927
- Wiggers C J Physiology in Health and Disease Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1935
- Wilhelm S K Alterations in serum potassium and sodium in acute myocardial infarction *Am J Clin Path* 21 146 1951
- Willius F A and Griffin H Z The anginal syndrome in pernicious anemia *Am J M Sc* 174 30 1927
- Winbury M M and Green D M Studies on the nervous and humoral control of coronary circulation *Am J Physiol* 170 555 1952
- Wolferth C C and Wood I C The electrocardiographic diagnosis of coronary occlusion by the use of chest leads *Am J M Sc* 183 30 1932
- Wolkoff K Über die Atherosklerose der Coronararterien des Herzens *Beitr z path Anat u z allg Iath* 82 555 1929
- Wollheim E Herzinfarkt und Angina Pectoris *Deutsche med Wchnschr* 51 61 1931
- Wood F C and Livezey M M Five year survival after perforation of interventricular septum caused by coronary occlusion histologic study of kidneys after 350 injections of mercurial diuretics *Am Heart J* 24 807 1942
- Wolferth C C and Livezey M M Angina pectoris *Arch Int Med* 47 330 1931
- Woods R M and Barnes A R Factors influencing immediate mortality after acute coronary occlusion *Am Heart J* 24 4 1942
- Woollard H H The innervation of the heart *J Anat* 60 345 1926
- Wright I S An evaluation of anticoagulant therapy *Am J Med* 14 770 1953
- Marple C D and Beck D F Myocardial Infarction New York Grune & Stratton 1954
- Wróblewski F Ruesssegger P and LaDue J S Serum lactic dehydrogenase activity in acute transmural myocardial infarction *Science* 123 1129 1956
- Yater W M et al Coronary artery disease in men eighteen to thirty nine years of age *Am Heart J* 37 334 1948
- Young D and Schwedel J B Longevity in ventricular aneurysm report of a case followed over a ten year period *Ann Int Med* 21 141 1944
- Zdansky F and Boyd L J Roentgen Diagnosis of Diseases of the Heart and Great Vessels New York Grune & Stratton 1953
- Zoll P M and Normann L R The effects of vasomotor drugs and of anemia upon interarterial coronary anastomoses *Circulation* 6 832 1952
- Wessler S and Blumgart H L Angina pectoris *Am J Med* 11 331 1951

## Chapter 17

# Cardiac Changes due to Non-penetrating Trauma

THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE AUTOMOBILE increased expansion of industry and the simultaneous improvement of methods of clinical examination have contributed to the increasingly frequent occurrence and discovery of cardiac changes due to blunt trauma. Abundant crissistic material that reaches back over a long period has been summarized by Warburg. Experimental work on this subject was performed many years ago (Kulbs) but the important results were neglected until interest was revived by new contributions.

One speaks of cardiac commotion when a patient dies after an accident involving a blow to the chest in the region of the heart and at necropsy not even a microscopic sign is found. In contusion of the heart pathologic changes are visible.

### *Etiology*

The accidents responsible for cardiac changes are diverse. Stumbling against a sharp object or a fall from a great height, partial burial in sand during an excavation, steering wheel accidents, and chest injury caused by a blow from a rapidly moving object (baseball, stone) exemplify some common occurrences. It is important to note that cardiac trauma need not necessarily require a precordial injury (Bright and Beck) for the heart can rupture when the lower half of the body is exposed to severe pressure in a sandpit. When the abdomen and lower extremities are compressed, large quantities of blood may be pressed toward the heart and may overfill the chambers; the right atrium is commonly ruptured although this may happen to any cardiac chamber. Infarction of the posterior wall of the left ventricle has followed fracture of the sternum (contre coup force). Posterior wall lesions as a consequence of blows against the anterior chest wall are frequent in experiments. If the elastic chest wall is pushed in by an accident, the heart may be pressed between the anterior chest wall and the spinal column.

### *Pathology*

*Pericardium.* All three layers of the heart may be injured. The most common gross change is the presence of petechiae and hemorrhages in the epicardium. Frequently the pericardium is ruptured even when the compressing force was



applied to the abdomen or lower extremities. Traumatic pericarditis is not rare and in non penetrating myocardial injuries it appears as a consequence of sub epicardial myocardial damage with necrosis and reactive inflammation. Thus it parallels the pericarditis observed after myocardial infarction. Hemorrhagic pericardial effusion results from cardiac trauma. Secondary calcification occurs.

*Myocardium* The myocardial hemorrhages may extend over a large area. Necrosis and softening may appear and perforation of the cardiac wall may follow immediately or after several days. In experiments the conus area of the right ventricle is often involved (Scherf and Terranova).

The necrotic areas are often multiple and may be found in all parts of both ventricles. A rupture caused by necrosis of the right atrium is most common but any chamber or the interventricular septum may be involved. In the injured area edema and disorganization of the muscle bundles with migration of polymorphonuclear leukocytes can be observed within twenty four hours (Montz and Atkins).

It is important however to emphasize that in a large percentage of acute experiments with a fatal outcome no changes were found at post mortem. In experiments on 25 cats anatomic changes were missed in 15 animals despite a fatal ending and the presence of marked electrocardiographic changes. Ventricular fibrillation did not occur (Scherf and Terranova). In the hospital wards the same observation may be made. A 26 year old man died immediately following a blow over the cardiac area during boxing, no abnormality was found at post mortem (Deutsch).

*Endocardium* Subendocardial petechiae are often seen. Rupture of the valves due to direct or indirect trauma has been described frequently. The aortic valve is affected more often than the mitral. Valvular rupture following slight trauma is prone to occur when the valve is already diseased. This is illustrated by the rupture of an aortic cusp and traumatic aortic regurgitation in syphilitic aortitis, an accident that is not particularly rare following unusual strain. The diastolic murmur appearing in these traumatic aortic insufficiencies is usually musical.

### *Symptoms and Signs*

Sudden death may follow blunt trauma of the heart immediately or several weeks after the accident. Often patients faint or have severe pain or palpitation. Extreme weakness may be present. Pain may not appear for several hours or even days after the accident, however, and when late it is often due to the appearance of pericarditis. The frequent statement that symptoms must appear instantly or very soon after the accident in order to connect the cardiac damage to the trauma is certainly true in a majority of cases but it is not invariably applicable.

In clinical cases and in experiments a marked drop in blood pressure, acute dilatation of the heart, gallop rhythm and embryocardia (tic tac rhythm) may follow an accident.

Since large areas of the heart muscle may become necrotic symptoms and signs may closely resemble those of coronary thrombosis with myocardial infarction. Fever, fall of blood pressure, leukocytosis and an increased sedimentation rate are present. There is collapse, shock, pallor, sweating. The heart sounds may be faint. Mural thrombi and emboli may develop. In other cases few symptoms are present. In many instances, particularly with rest, complete recovery takes place. Perforation of the septum has been reported. Sudden death may occur several weeks after the accident.

The myocardial necrosis following blunt trauma may lead to chronic heart disease in the same way that myocardial infarction following coronary occlusion

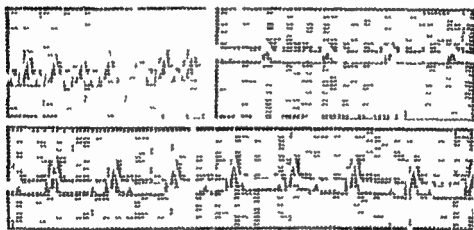


FIG. 84. An experiment on a cat. A heavy blow was struck on the anterior chest wall. Immediately the normal electrocardiogram changes to one with complete A-V block and monophasic QRS complexes (high take off). Four minutes later the lowermost tracing was obtained: the monophasic electrocardiogram has given place to normal QRS complexes but the heart block persists. The first upper (normal) tracing is lead II, the other two are lead III (Sherf and Terranova).

lead to chronic heart disease. Chronic ventricular aneurysm may appear. An existing heart disease may be aggravated.

It is important to re-emphasize that serious damage, and even rupture of the heart, sometimes follows blunt trauma in the absence of a visible external injury (Hamilton, Kellert).

**Arrhythmias.** Various arrhythmias are very common. They are often observed clinically and experimentally. The simplest and most common type consists of extrasystoles which may arise in any part of the heart. Sinus bradycardia and atrioventricular rhythm also occur. Atrial and ventricular fibrillation, paroxysmal atrial and ventricular tachycardia, and any type of partial as well as complete heart block have been observed (figure 84). These changes stem partly from hemorrhages and necrosis, but temporary mechanical irritation of the muscle fibers also plays a great part.

*Electrocardiogram* Electrocardiographic changes are very common an electrocardiogram should be taken in every accident in which cardiac involvement might be present

In addition to arrhythmias the electrocardiogram may show changes due to pericardial and to myocardial damage. The alterations of the QRS complex and T waves resemble those of other myocardial lesions. Even a high take off similar to the one of coronary thrombosis has been observed. This was ascribed to coronary spasm induced by the mechanical irritation of the coronary arteries (Schlomka) but the high and low take off appears with the first beat after the trauma much too soon to be explained by coronary artery spasm. Such changes are better explained by a direct mechanical derangement (depolarization) of the superficial muscle layers resulting from the blunt trauma (Scherf and Ter rano). Similar transient changes are encountered after mechanical irritation of the exposed heart. They disappear within minutes (Boyd and Scherf). Since mechanical irritation of the coronary vessels as in the case of other arteries may be followed by local vasoconstriction (Drury and Smith) a local coronary spasm is not impossible in some cases. This can only cause secondary changes appearing 40 to 60 seconds following the trauma.

The physician should always think of the possibility of a laceration of the heart particularly of the right atrium in direct compression of the abdomen. Lives are saved by the correct diagnosis and successful suture of the atrium (Desforges et al.)

### CORONARY THROMBOSIS AND TRAUMA

A question of great interest and importance is the possible appearance of coronary thrombosis following non penetrating trauma. Clinical cases in which coronary thrombosis developed after an accident have been reported in increasing numbers in recent years. Possibly such accidents result from rupture of a giant capillary in a sclerotic coronary artery or a rupture of an atheromatous abscess. Exact data to prove this occurrence do not exist. Usually a relation is assumed if the symptoms and signs of a coronary occlusion appear immediately after or shortly after a trauma but as mentioned earlier symptoms and signs may not develop for hours. Since trauma causes myocardial necrosis at times over a large area without involvement of the coronary arteries it is difficult to differentiate between myocardial infarction due to coronary occlusion and myocardial necrosis resulting from contusion of the heart. As pointed out before most of the signs may be identical in both instances.

The history has paramount importance in establishing the connection between an accident and the cardiac involvement. While the appearance of a coronary occlusion following precordial trauma and compression of the chest wall in the antero posterior direction in cases with coronary sclerosis is very probable although not established beyond all doubt the occurrence of a coronary occlusion from abdominal trauma or after lifting heavy objects is dubious although not impossible.

On the other hand a case has been observed in which a helper on a truck suffering an attack signalled the driver to stop and then collapsed on the floor of the truck. The driver swung out of traffic but in so doing dislodged part of the load which fell upon the already stricken helper.

### X RAY THERAPY ELECTRICAL ACCIDENTS

Very serious myocardial damage is frequently observed following deep x ray therapy (or radium implantation) in the cardiac area. We saw repeated evidence of cardiac failure with tachycardia gallop rhythm and pulmonary congestion develop following deep x ray therapy for Hodgkins disease or mediastinal malignancy.

Pericardial irritation due to x ray irradiation has been mentioned.

A voluminous literature exists on experimental and clinical observations of atrial and ventricular fibrillation in connection with electrical accidents.

### Therapy

Treatment consists of bed rest symptomatic measures and in the case of cardiac rupture surgery. Since many cases of serious myocardial lesions are reported to follow comparatively minor trauma and since persistent searching more and more frequently turns up evidence of traumatic cardiac lesions it seems advisable to examine electrocardiographically and by x ray every patient involved in such an accident. Bed rest should be continued until cardiac involvement can be definitely eliminated. Early signs of cardiac tamponade should be looked for.

While recoveries were rare in cases reported by the original investigators their number increases with careful observation. Originally only very serious cases with cardiac rupture traumatic aneurysm and the like were reported but at present milder injury is often described. Chronic heart disease with long invalidism does occur.

## Bibliography

- Barber H. Contusion of the myocardium. *Brit M J* 570 1940  
 — The effect of trauma direct or indirect on the heart. *Quart J Med* 13 137 1944  
 Beck C S. Contusions of the heart. *JAMA* 109 109 1935  
 — and Bright E F. Changes in the heart and pericardium brought about by compression of the legs and abdomen. *J Thoracic Surg* 17 616 1933  
 Boas E P. Some immediate causes of cardiac infarction. *Am Heart J* 23 1 1947  
 Boyd L J and Scherff D. The electrocardiogram in experimental pericardial (epicardial) injury. *Bull New York Med College Flower & Fifth Ave Hosp* 3 1 1940  
 Boyd W. Coronary occlusion. *Bull Acad Med Toronto* 15 173 1945  
 Bright E F and Beck C S. Nonpenetrating wounds of the heart. *Am Heart J* 10 293 1935  
 Burckhardt H. Über das Versagen des Herzens im Anschluß an Rippenfrakturen durch stumpfe Gewaltwirkung auf den Thorax. *Schweiz med Wchnschr* 70 480 1940

- Crynes S F and Hunter W C Traumatic rupture of the pericardium *Arch Int Med* 64 719 1939
- Desforges G Ridder W P and Lenoci R J Successful suture of the ruptured myocardium after nonpenetrating injury *New England J Med* 252 567 1955
- Desjardins A U Action of roentgen rays and radium on the heart and lungs *Am J Roentgenol* 2 149 1932
- Deutsch I Sekundenherztod im Boxkampf durch Commotio cordis *Wien Arch f inn Med* 20 279 1930
- Drury A N and Smith F M Nerve supply of coronary artery of tortoise I Direct observations of the artery *Heart* 11 71 1924
- Hamilton J A Traumatic rupture of the heart without external injuries *Brit M J* 2 1101 1934
- Husten Defekt des Septum ventriculorum auf traumatischer Grundlage *Zbl f Herz u Gefäß* 18 474 1926
- Kahn M H and Kahn S Cardiovascular lesions following injury to the chest *Ann Int Med* 2 1013 1929
- Kellert E Traumatic rupture of the heart report of a case with an uninjured chest wall *J Lab & Clin Med* 2 726 1917
- Kissane R W Fidler R S and Koons R A Electrocardiographic changes following external chest injury to dog *Ann Int Med* 11 907 1937
- Kohn H Angina pectoris und Unfall *Klin Wchnschr* 8 795 843 1929
- Kulbs Experimentelle Untersuchungen über Herz und Trauma *Mitt a d Grenzgeb d Med u Chir* 19 678 1909
- Leinoff H D Acute coronary thrombosis in industry I Direct nonpenetrating injuries with report of cases *Arch Int Med* 70 33 1942
- Levy H Traumatic coronary thrombosis with myocardial infarction *Arch Int Med* 84 261 1949
- McGill R J Cardiac contusion *Lancet* 1 997 1952
- Moritz A R Trauma stress and coronary thrombosis *J A M A* 156 1306 1954
- and Atkins J P Cardiac contusion an experimental and pathologic study *Arch Path* 25 445 1938
- O Farrell I T Traumatic aneurysm of the left ventricle *Brit Heart J* 1 172 1939
- Saphir O Rupture of the heart by indirect trauma in a four year old boy *Am J M Sc* 113 353 1927
- Scherf D and Boyd L J Clinical Electrocardiography ed 4 New York Crane & Stratton 1953
- and Terranova R Estudio electrocardiografico de las desviaciones del segmento II Ten las contusiones toracicas experimentales *Rev argent de cardiol* 9 157 1949
- Schlomka C Commotio cordis und ihre Folgen (Die Einwirkung stumpfer Brustwandtraumen auf das Herz) *Ergebn d inn Med u Kinderh* 47 1 1934
- Schrade W Angina pectoris und Coronarinfarkt nach stumpfen Brustwandtraumen *Med Welt* 12 992 1938
- Sigler L H Trauma of the heart due to nonpenetrating chest injuries *J A M A* 119 855 1942
- Smith L B and McKewen H J Contusion of the heart *Am Heart J* 1 561 1939
- Spuhler O Zur Frage der Commotio cordis *Schweiz med Wchnschr* 61 511 1937
- Stephens C A Three thoracic emergencies *Lancet* 2 1392 1952
- Veith C Herzverletzung durch stumpfe Gewaltanwendung *Verh d ges Kreisfsg* 15 13 1950
- Warburg F Subacute and Chronic Pericardial and Myocardial Lesions due to Non Penetrating Injuries London Oxford University Press 1938

## Chapter 18

# The Heart in Endocrine Disorders

### HYPERTHYROIDISM

**H**YPERTHYROIDISM CAN DISTURB CARDIAC ACTION very profoundly but the alterations are not invariable nor when present do they always develop with the same speed and to the same degree. Sometimes patients manifest all features of hyperthyroidism but display no evidence of cardiac involvement save for an insignificant tachycardia. Even this may be absent. On the other hand patients with an apparently mild hyperthyroidism may develop cardiac dilatation and evidence of congestive heart failure within a short time.

#### *Incidence*

The affection is more common in women than in men. Its incidence varies considerably in different localities, being most frequent in the Great Lakes basin of the United States and in the Alpine regions of Europe. It occurs at all ages; we have encountered it in children of five years and in people beyond seventy.

#### *Pathology Pathophysiology*

At necropsy, about 50 per cent of patients dying from hyperthyroidism show cardiac hypertrophy and dilatation. These changes may be absent even in very toxic cases and they are uncommon in elderly cachectic patients who have lost much weight. There is no parallelism between cardiac size and degree of hyperthyroidism.

The mechanism of cardiac enlargement is obscure. In some cases it may be explained by the presence of a coronary atherosclerosis, a complicating hypertension or atrial fibrillation that was untreated or that failed to respond to treatment. It occurs, however, without these complications.

The increased rate hardly contributes to the changes but the increased motility, which seems to result from a direct action of thyroxin on the myocardial fibers, and the increased load on the heart may tire the muscle and lead to dilatation. Histologic examination fails to reveal characteristic or consistent lesions; physico-chemical changes that are not revealed by histologic examination may be responsible. Contrary to the frequently expressed opinion, it is noteworthy that cardiac enlargement and failure may be found in young people or even adolescents with pure hyperthyroidism without other demonstrable compli-

cations Naturally a patient with a slight rheumatic lesion, coronary sclerosis or syphilitic heart disease tends to develop decompensation earlier if hyperthyroidism coexists. In 176 fatal cases, congestive heart failure existed 21 times in a majority of these complications such as coronary sclerosis, rheumatic heart disease and syphilis were found (Kepler and Barnes).

### *Symptoms*

The symptoms of thyroid hyperfunction will not be discussed here. The dyspnea is partly due to increased metabolism and rarely to pulmonary congestion. Sighing respiration is often responsible. Palpitation is a very common complaint and is evoked by the marked cardiac hypermotility or paroxysmal fibrillation. Attacks of paroxysmal atrial fibrillation are often observed. Angina pectoris occurs as was mentioned before, it is found only in elderly patients who in addition to hyperthyroidism also suffer from coronary disease.

### *Signs*

The description of the signs will be limited to those of the cardiovascular system.

*Palpation* Extremely powerful, quick pulsations over the precordium may shake the whole thorax and suggest a much larger heart than actually exists. These pulsations are most easily palpable near the conus of the right ventricle.

While an increased pulse rate is usually present, it is not rare for a normal sinus rate or even bradycardia to occur. Often the pulse has all the characteristics of a water hammer pulse as in aortic insufficiency.

*Blood Pressure* The pulse pressure occasionally shows a marked increase since the systolic pressure may rise to 180 mm Hg or more and the diastolic pressure often drops to below 50 mm Hg. This thyrotoxic systolic hypertension is caused by the hypermotility of the heart.

*Percussion and X-ray Examination* Percussion reveals a normal or a nutralized heart, dilated to the right and left. The incidence of dilatation is higher in patients with old and advanced hyperthyroidism and with other complications. Therefore the figures vary with the clinical material. It is least common in areas where the diagnosis is made early and therapy is employed quickly.

Fluoroscopy reveals marked hypermotility of the heart and pulsus celer of the aorta. The pulmonary artery is dilated in one third of the patients. This is probably not due to constitutional factors as has been stated, nor to persistence of juvenile conditions, but rather to a dynamic dilatation caused by the hypermotility of the right ventricle. The aorta may also show dynamic dilatation. In hyperthyroidism with heart failure the lung fields are clear as the right ventricle dilates and fails from the start.

*Auscultation* Often the heart sounds are abnormally loud. A short pre-systolic click caused by the contraction of the hyperactive atrium may cause

confusion with mitral stenosis. Systolic murmurs are very common over the pulmonary artery and aorta and are due to the increased speed of blood flow. Extracardiac venous murmurs like those present in anemia are frequently heard. If they appear in diastole and the peripheral pulse is of the Corrigan type the erroneous diagnosis of aortic insufficiency may be made. In a patient with hyperthyroidism seen by one of us a large adenomatous nodule that compressed the left subclavian artery produced a double Duroziez murmur at the left sternal border imitating an aortic insufficiency. The increased speed of the circulation causes a diastolic venous hum over the large veins. A pericardial friction rub is not rare over the prominent conus of the pulmonary artery. It results from the friction between normal epicardium and normal pericardium and should not be mistaken for a real pericarditis. Relative aortic insufficiency has been described but it is possible that a diastolic murmur in these cases was evoked by one of the mechanisms just mentioned.

*Electrocardiogram* The electrocardiogram does not help in the diagnosis. It is normal or shows only sinus tachycardia. Abnormalities of the T waves are rare. Depression of the RST segments is noted occasionally.

*Laboratory Tests* The serum protein bound iodine permits an estimation of the level of the circulating thyroid hormone. Also useful is the determination of the level of radioactive iodine uptake with tracer doses of  $I^{131}$ .

### Complications

Hepatic enlargement and edema appear late. Atrial fibrillation is a common complication but its appearance in hyperthyroidism has not as yet been fully explained. It often occurs in short paroxysmal attacks but soon becomes constant unless abolished by successful treatment of the hyperthyroidism. Due to the high sympathetic tone the ventricular rate is rapid and characteristically the rate does not slow quickly under treatment with digitalis. Extrasystoles are not very common, an astonishing fact in view of the great frequency of fibrillation.

### Differential Diagnosis

The diagnosis is very easy in typical cases but may be difficult in others. In mild cases the presence of low fever, cardiac symptoms and signs may lead to the diagnosis of rheumatic heart disease or subacute bacterial endocarditis. In very advanced cases the cardiac enlargement and right ventricular failure suggest the diagnosis of a decompensated mitral lesion. In the latter condition the left atrium usually is markedly dilated whereas it is normal or only slightly enlarged in hyperthyroidism. The differentiation is sometimes difficult. The situation is rendered more confusing since in cardiac lesions an increased basal metabolic rate of 50 per cent or more is not rare and other signs of hyperthyroidism such as wasting, excitability and tremor may also appear. Finally it may be difficult to distinguish between mild hyperthyroidism and cardiac neurosis.



Physicians must always be on the alert not to overlook, masked hyperthyroidism appearing as atrial fibrillation of the chronic or paroxysmal type heart failure and the like

In many cases the evidence of cardiac involvement is so much in the foreground that the attending physician overlooks the hyperthyroidism which is the etiologic factor and treats the patient symptomatically only for his cardiac complaints. With more careful examination and with consideration of the hyperactivity of the patient his nervousness his inclination to perspire easily and so forth the correct diagnosis will be made

### *Treatment*

As soon as hyperthyroidism is recognized specific therapy should be started. This may be accomplished with the methods of bloodless surgery that became available in recent years. Propylthiouracil is given daily (400 mg) in 100 mg doses with continuous supervision of the white blood cell count. As soon as improvement is noted the dose is reduced to 50–100 mg daily. Tapazole (mercaptoimidazole) may be given initially in doses of 40 mg daily and later 5–20 mg daily. Skin irritation and fall of the leukocyte count occasionally preclude continuation of the treatment.

Within three months after the discontinuance of this therapy a relapse may be expected in 23 per cent of the patients. In another 20 per cent relapses occur later. A lasting effect is accomplished in only about 50 per cent of the cases with one series of treatments.

Therapy with radioiodine has a much larger percentage of permanent success. It is the method of choice in the elderly patient.

Surgery is indicated for hyperthyroidism alone if for certain reasons the patient cannot undergo medical therapy.

Signs of hyperthyroidism are not rare in the chmacterium and they complicate the picture (see below)

### **HYPOTHYROIDISM**

Just as the cardiac alterations may be surprisingly slight despite marked hyperfunction of the thyroid there are instances of marked hypothyroidism with a basal metabolism more than 30 per cent below normal with normal circulatory findings. It is unknown why cardiac abnormalities appear early in one case and are absent in another. The infrequency of cardiac abnormalities in a fair percentage of cases was the chief reason the existence of a myxedema heart was often denied in the past.

### *Symptoms*

In an uncomplicated case of myxedema with marked cardiac involvement there are no typical cardiac complaints. The lassitude and general weakness are not characteristic and it is uncommon for the patient to seek advice for dyspnea.

or edema. However, a complicating angina pectoris due to coronary sclerosis often causes the patient to ask for medical assistance.

### *Signs*

The heart may be enlarged to the right and left. Marked flusness is often percussed over the precordium. On fluoroscopy the pulsations of the cardiac borders are sluggish and in some patients the borders scarcely move. The heart sounds are muffled and distant. Rough systolic murmurs over the aortic or mitral valve when present are due to atherosclerotic changes. The blood pressure is normal or moderately elevated. Bilateral or right-sided hydrothorax is common.

In a typical uncomplicated case the electrocardiogram shows low voltage of all waves in each lead; the P and T waves may disappear completely and the QRS complexes are often only a few millimeters in height.

### *Differential Diagnosis*

Few diseases are so often overlooked as myxedema. Errors occur even in fully developed forms with typical alterations in the skin, puffiness of the face, the deep, harsh voice, sensitivity to cold, slow motor and psychic reactions in which the diagnosis should be apparent at a mere glance. Most often some intrinsic cardiac disease is diagnosed because of the finding of cardiac enlargement, edema, hepatic enlargement and electrocardiographic abnormalities. Very often these patients have been subjected to long courses of digitalis which afforded no relief. The albuminuria and facial edema may lead to a diagnosis of nephritis. The accompanying anemia leads to liver and iron therapy and often the headache and constipation are treated symptomatically without the basic malady being recognized.

### *Pathology*

Formerly the cardiac alterations were ascribed to myxedematous swelling of the myocardial fibers. Histologic examination often shows fibrosis or degeneration of these fibers but in many cases this is due to the coexisting coronary sclerosis; in any event these changes are not pathognomonic. In recent years an increasing number of observations indicate that a pericardial effusion is present in a large percentage of cases. Pericardial effusions are observed after thyroidectomy in sheep, goats and rabbits. The diagnosis of a pericardial effusion was confirmed by paracentesis in eleven patients seen by us in recent years. The flatness over the precordium, the sluggish contractions of the heart on fluoroscopy and the low voltage in the electrocardiogram are easily explained by a pericardial effusion. To be sure, sluggish contractions also occur in myocardial lesions but rarely to an equal degree unless the heart muscle has suffered unusually severe damage. Moreover, a pericardial effusion more readily explains the rapid restoration of normal cardiac diameters following the administration

of thyroid substance. In a myocardial disease it is rare for one to observe a markedly enlarged heart return to normal size with equal speed and to a similar extent.

Pericardial effusions with a very high content of cholesterol in the pericardial fluid occur in the absence of myxedema and with a normal blood cholesterol level. Their origin is still unexplained.

To what extent the cardiac enlargement must be attributed to a pericardial effusion in a given case of myxedema is often difficult to ascertain.

### *Complications*

The most common and most important complication of myxedema is coronary sclerosis. This is a regular event in chronic cases and is presumably connected with the hypercholesterolemia. Some electrocardiographic findings in myxedema such as abnormal T waves and a prolonged P-P interval as well as the cardiac enlargement and fibrosis on histologic examination are due to coronary sclerosis and not to myxedema. Owing to this complication patients with myxedema often develop angina pectoris. Coma as well as muscular excitement occur (Summers).

### *Treatment*

Great care is necessary in therapy with thyroid substance or thyroxin. Often the doses used are excessive and much harm can be done. One tablet of 0.01 Gm. thyroid given daily often suffices; sometimes smaller doses must be given. The patient should be watched continuously since the cardiac situation may become worse as the metabolism reverses to normal although the myxedema is improved. The increased heart rate and increased oxygen consumption of the heart may be injurious in the presence of coronary sclerosis. Frequently it will be found more advantageous to allow the patient to retain a low metabolic rate than to treat the myxedema and initiate severe attacks of angina pectoris. Occasionally we have seen angina pectoris on effort disappear following the administration of thyroid extract.

Like hyperthyroidism myxedema may develop during the endocrine imbalance of the climacterium.

## OVARIAN HYPOFUNCTION AND THE FEMALE CLIMACTERIUM

### *Incidence*

Few women are entirely free from complaints during the climacterium. An inquiry among 1000 women of all ages revealed that only 15.3 per cent went through the critical age without annoying symptoms (Council). In another series of 1000 cases symptoms were found in 85 per cent (Hawkinson). Many suffer from a host of disturbances and not a few are even incapacitated (10.3 per cent).

Among the diversified symptoms cardiovascular complaints are very common. In 1000 women tachycardia, palpitation and dyspnea occurred in 70 per cent (Hawkinson). Another observer found the same symptoms in 68.8 per cent of his patients (Werner). About 22 per cent of all women coming to a cardiologist for advice have complaints referable to disturbances of the activity of the ovaries. Substitution therapy affords complete relief.

### Symptoms

*General.* Emotional instability, irritability and exhaustion are the chief symptoms in many cases and mental disturbances similar to those of involuntional melancholia may occur. In other patients gastrointestinal or cardiac complaints are in the foreground. Still others have rheumatic pains; complaints due to osteoporosis, sleeplessness and dizziness.

*Hot Flashes.* The outstanding complaint in about 60-85 per cent of the patients is the flush. Sometimes after a slight aura consisting of nausea the patient feels a wave of heat ascend to the face and arms immediately followed by a chill and cold sweat. The developmental mechanism of this complaint which is not found in any other condition is not as yet fully explained.

*Dyspnea.* Many women suffer from the three classical complaints of cardiac patients: dyspnea, palpitation and cardiac pain. The dyspnea may be very pronounced. Detailed questioning soon reveals that it consists of a peculiar inability to get the breath through, the sighing respiration discussed in the first chapter. Only after obtaining information from the doctor does the patient recognize the sighing respiration as the reason for her breathlessness. A few explanatory words will go very far to relieve the patient from the extreme apprehension connected with this sensation.

*Palpitation.* The palpitation of the patients is independent of exertion and excitement and lacks the characteristic features of the palpitation of a paroxysmal tachycardia, that is, of sudden onset and ending. Often it occurs together with the hot flashes; the association is particularly common at night.

*Pain.* Pain in the cardiac area is the third important symptom to make the patient heart conscious and apprehensive. The pain appears over the precordium (not behind the sternum) and sometimes spreads to the left shoulder and left arm. It is not provoked by exertion or excitement and it may last for hours. In a majority of these patients examination reveals an area of exquisite tenderness at the fourth (more rarely fifth) rib to the left of the sternum at the costochondral junction (Scherf and Klotz). Rarely the tenderness is found at the fourth and fifth rib of the same patient. Infiltration of this small spot with procain affords immediate relief. It is possible that local arthritic (osteoarthritic) or arthralgic changes account for this complaint as is the case in other menopausal arthralgias. According to Staehelin inflammatory processes of the cartilages of the ribs are not rare. The connection with ovarian dysfunction is proved by the disappearance of the pain in a few weeks following the administra-

tion of sufficient doses of estrogen. These complaints are easily separated from those in Tietze's syndrome with marked swellings of the cartilages.

*Other Symptoms.* In addition, patients often complain about paraesthesias such as numbness and tingling in the fingers and toes as well as headaches. Vertigo is common. Insomnia, abnormal worrying, weeping, edema of the face, foot and calf are not rare.

### *Signs*

Sometimes examination reveals nothing abnormal save the sighing respiration and the circumscribed tenderness over the fourth rib. In other patients, however, objective findings are present.

The heart may show a marked hypermotility even when there is no evidence of hyperthyroidism. A sinus tachycardia up to 120 may be present. There may be a moderate hypertension and the electrocardiogram occasionally shows changes of the RS-T segments and abnormal T waves (Scherf). Estrogens disappear from the urine and the amount of gonadotropic hormone increases.

*Hypertension.* The question of a climacteric hypertension has vexed workers and the subject is controversial. Some authorities find the blood pressure elevated in as many as 50 per cent of the cases, while others regard any increases of the blood pressure during the climacterium only as a coincidental and unrelated finding (Pal). Since most of the women concerned are at an age in which the blood pressure is often elevated, a decision is difficult. On the other hand, patients with the syndrome described and hypertension so often have the blood pressure fall to normal levels during treatment with estrogen that a relation cannot be denied. Such patients are seen more often in private practice than in the hospital. In many cases, hypertension disappears within a few weeks following the administration of estrogens, while in others prolonged treatment is necessary. Marked fluctuation of the blood pressure is common. In this and other types of hypertension, if the blood pressure stays at a high level for some time, it becomes fixed and estrogen treatment will not lower it but will only alleviate some symptoms.

Taylor et al. examined 170 castrated women and 21 with a natural menopause and found that within a three year period hypertension occurred in the same incidence as in the general population. This merely emphasizes a fact known for a long time, namely, that the lack of the estrogenic hormone per se does not cause hypertension. The imbalance of the endocrine glands (hypophysis, adrenals) may cause hypertension years afterward. This occurs sometimes more than three years after panhysterectomy.

Women in whom panhysterectomy was done 5–10 years previously occasionally suffer from fixed hypertension. Due to the absence of symptoms, these patients reach the physician too late. In our opinion, the blood pressure of women after panhysterectomy should be checked at regular short intervals for at least 10 years after the operation and estrogenic treatment should be administered as soon as it is indicated. Borgstroem reports excellent results of treatment with estrogenic and androgenic hormones in essential hypertension.

**Electrocardiogram** The electrocardiographic changes do not depend upon the presence of hypertension and are independent from an existing hyperthyroidism. They do appear promptly after the administration of estrogens in sufficient doses.

Figure 85a shows the electrocardiogram of a 54 year old woman who developed flushes, paraesthesia, palpitation and precordial pain. The heart showed a marked hypermotility and the blood pressure was 160/90 mm Hg. The electro

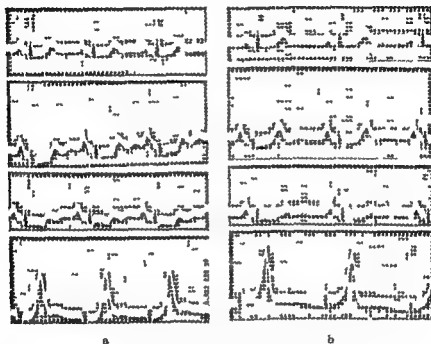


FIG. 85. A 54 year old woman presenting the climacteric syndrome before (a) and after (b) treatment.

cardiogram shows a depression of the ST segments in each standard lead and in CR4. The heart rate is 94 beats per minute.

Following the daily administration of 0.5 mg of diethylstilbestrol for four weeks the electrocardiogram of figure 95b was obtained. It shows a heart rate of 70 and normal RS T segments. The symptoms disappeared and the blood pressure was 138/65.

**Atherosclerosis** The more common occurrence of atherosclerosis in man as compared to woman has been known for many years. Lately clinical and experimental observations speak for a protective action of the estrogenic hormone. Women following natural or artificial menopause show atherosclerosis more frequently than women who are normally menstruating. Experimental results were mentioned in a previous chapter. Oliver and Boyd found that small doses of ethinyl estradiol depressed plasma ester cholesterol in men. This compound has an antiatherogenic action.

### *Pathogenesis*

**Vascular Effect** It is still impossible to explain how these changes originate. Since female sex hormones seem to be vasodilators, since paraesthesias and acrocyanosis appear in these patients, and since vasodilators help the changes, they may rest on a vascular basis.

**Electrolytes** It is also known that sex hormones, like other steroids, have a great influence on the electrolyte metabolism, particularly on sodium and calcium metabolism. It is thus possible that the electrocardiographic alterations can be explained by tissue changes induced by an abnormal electrolyte balance. The arthralgias as well as other manifestations of the climacterium may also be caused by one or both of these mechanisms.

**Hormonal** It seems generally agreed that diminution or cessation of normal ovarian function leads to overactivity of the anterior hypophysis; the dissenting opinions are in the minority. The response of the pituitary leads to oversecretion of the thyrotropic and adrenotropic hormone and results in abnormal function of these glands. The resulting clinical pattern as well as the complaints of the patient depend upon the balance of the endocrine system and the status of the patient's autonomic nervous system. There is suggestive evidence of a hypersensitivity of the sympathetic nervous system in the menopause.

Estrogen deficiency alone is not responsible. Panhysterectomy in young women is often unassociated with symptoms. Sometimes manifestations occur years later. Flushes and other symptoms may be present despite remarkably high amounts of estrogens in the urine. Estrogens may be found in women of 70 and more. On the other hand, flushes and other complaints may appear while menstruation is normal. Probably the imbalance of the endocrine system causes the syndrome in a way which is still obscure.

### *Diagnosis*

Naturally, in women with complaints referable to the heart, with edema, hypertension and electrocardiographic changes, organic heart disease is often diagnosed. We have observed such women put to bed for several weeks with a diagnosis of coronary occlusion or myocarditis; sometimes digitalis is used because it is thought the patient is decompensated.

It is necessary to emphasize that the climacterium and the menopause are not synonymous. The characteristic flushes as well as other symptoms and signs mentioned previously may appear years before or after the cessation of menses. They are not very unusual in girls 16 to 18 years of age if they have hypothyroidism, and they may be noted for the first time in women at the age of 40.

If the physician attributes the complaints to a change of life, the young patient may indignantly explain that she is still menstruating normally, while the elderly one may find the diagnosis ridiculous because she has not menstruated for years.

*Organic Heart Disease and the Climacterium*

It has long been the experience of clinicians that patients with an old fully compensated rheumatic valvular lesion or hypertension may develop decompensation during the climacterium. In view of the alteration found in women with healthy hearts during the climacterium—the increase of blood pressure and the tachycardia—these events are understandable. All these patients deserve careful supervision during this period and estrogens should be administered in sufficient dosage. If this is done, full compensation may be preserved for many years without other measures.

*Myoma (Fibroid) Heart*

For many years the status of the heart in patients with uterine fibroids, so called myoma heart, was widely discussed in medical circles. Time and time again changes were described and then challenged. Some attributed the changes to the anemia, to toxic or mechanical factors acting on the circulation while others found evidence of cardiac damage in the absence of these complications. The diagnosis of myoma heart as a clinical entity was rightly abandoned. In all probability, most of the changes found in these patients are due to the mechanisms mentioned above, since such tumors often develop or produce symptoms at the menopause or later.

*Treatment*

The administration of estrogens usually affords striking improvement of the cardiac symptoms in a short time and causes the irritability of the patient to disappear. The effect on the tachycardia, hypermotility, as well as on the hyperthyroidism and hypertension of these patients is equally satisfactory. The help given to this group of patients is great.

Oral medication usually will suffice. Treatment must be persistent, often for months, occasionally for years. In some patients a full therapeutic effect is attained with small amounts orally administered; in others, particularly those with marked hypertension, parenteral therapy with large doses is necessary. Inadequate dosage is a very common cause for therapeutic failures. If treatment with estrogens becomes necessary in women who are still menstruating, the preparations are best given for the first two weeks after the menstrual flow. At a later period in the menstrual cycle, estrogens may delay the onset of menstruation; overdosage may prevent its appearance. Often estrogen plus androgen mixtures are useful.

The beneficial effect of estrogenic therapy has done a great deal to cause abandonment of the conception of a climacteric neurosis as the cause of complaints.

The administration of nonhormonal estrogenic substances such as diethyl stilbestrol has the advantage of inexpensiveness. While the action is satisfactory, toxic effects occur.



Before estrogens were available in large effective doses x ray radiation of the hypophysis was recommended in these patients; this method has value in selected cases. Sedatives like phenobarbital and chloral hydrate support estrogenic therapy in the early stages.

Peripheral vasodilation has been reported following the administration of estrogenic substances and this led to their use in peripheral vascular diseases and angina pectoris. Available evidence is still insufficient to establish their value in these patients. However the effect of estrogens on the development of atherosclerosis is apparently established.

### *Male Climacterium*

In males cessation of gonadal function does not occur as suddenly as in females; therefore the endocrine and autonomic nervous system have more time for adaptation to the new situation. Many authorities deny the existence of climacteric symptoms in men. We are convinced they do occur even to the extent of typical flushes with chills and sweating. They are however rare. Paraesthesias, irritability, sleeplessness and chest pain of the anginal type are observed. The 17 ketosteroids in the urine tend to be low. In these patients improvement has been observed after the administration of androgens (McGavack). Usually 25 mg per intramuscular injection twice weekly and a total of 10 or 12 injections are advised. Normalization of the electrocardiogram of such patients follows. The altered electrocardiogram of female patients with the syndrome discussed above may revert to normal also when male hormones or desoxy corticosterone is given (Scherf and McGavack). For the differentiation from neuroses Heller recommends a therapeutic test with androgens. These bring about a rapid improvement in patients with the male climacterium.

### OTHER ENDOCRINE DISEASES

In this section brief reference will be made to cardiac and circulatory disorders in other endocrine disturbances. Some of these changes have great theoretical interest but they are of minor clinical importance because other manifestations of the endocrine disorder are in the foreground. Some of the lesions were or will be discussed in other chapters.

In patients with an eosinophilic adenoma of the pituitary and acromegaly enlargement of the heart and cardiac failure is reported.

In patients with basophilic adenoma of the pituitary and adrenal cortical tumor (Cushing's syndrome) hypertension and atherosclerosis are common.

Diseases of the hypophysis or hypothalamus occasionally cause orthostatic hypotension.

The syndrome caused by benign pheochromocytoma of the adrenals is discussed in the section on hypertension. In Addison's disease an astonishing reduction of cardiac size is observed during the crisis due to a diminished quantity

of circulating blood (McGavack) Marked changes are found in the electrocardiogram as a consequence of the disturbances of electrolyte metabolism In hyperaldosteronism hypertension is the rule

Administration of excessive amounts of desoxycorticosterone may lead to cardiac enlargement and to evidence of pulmonary congestion (Paab)

In hyper and hypoparathyroidism alterations of a characteristic nature appear in the electrocardiogram and concern the length of the RST segments caused by the altered calcium metabolism

Hyperfunction of the Langerhans islands due to adenoma or malignant tumor may lead to attacks of hypoglycemia which closely imitate attacks of coronary occlusion with anginal pain (Ernstene and Altschule) It has been pointed out that hyperadrenalemia as the consequence of hyperinsulinism may be responsible for this Hypofunction of the islands of Langerhans with hyperglycemia does not cause cardiac changes

## Bibliography

- Albright F Smith P H and Richardson V M Postmenopausal osteoporosis *JAMA* 116 466 1941
- Andrus A C The heart in hyperthyroidism clinical and experimental study *Am Heart J* 5 66 1932
- Ask Upmark E The medicine of today and the physiology of tomorrow *Acta med Scandinav Suppl* 246 23 1950
- Bauer J and Helm F Über Röntgenbefunde bei Kropfherzen *Deut ches Arch f klin Med* 109 73 1912
- Bayley R H Dynamic dilatation of the thoracic aorta *Am Heart J* 8 585 1933
- Borak J Die Röntgentherapie bei klimakterischen Beschwerden *Strahlentherapie* 33 142 1939
- Borgström A Endocrine treatment of essential hypertension *Acta med Scandinav Suppl* 290 1954
- Council of the Medical Women's Federation An investigation of the menopause in one thousand women *Lancet* 1 106 1933
- Courville C and Mason V R The heart in acromegaly *Arch Int Med* 61 704 1938
- Cramer W The sex hormones and the endocrine balance *Bull New York Acad Med* 17 3 1941
- Donald H R Treatment of the female climacteric by follicular hormone *Brit M J* 2 899 193
- The female climacteric and the menopause *Brit M J* 1 727 1938
- Editorial Climacteric in ageing men *JAMA* 115 458 1940
- Erstene A C and Altschule M D The effect of insulin hypoglycemia on the circulation *J Clin Investigation* 10 521 1931
- Fetter F J and Schnabel T C Heart disease in patients with uterine myoma *Arch Int Med* 55 609 1935
- Freeman F H Chronic pericardial effusion in myxedema report of a case *Ann Int Med* 7 1070 1934
- Geist S H and Mintz M Pituitary radiation for the relief of menopausal symptoms *Am J Obst & Gyn* 33 643 1934
- Gober O B Christians J J Bain G P and Ware W P Cardiovascular manifestations of endocrine disease *M Clin North America* July p 1143 1955

- Goldberg S A Changes in the organs of thyroidectomized sheep and goats *Quart J Exper Physiol* 17 15 1927
- Goodall J S The heart in Graves disease *Practitioner* 105 37 1920
- Gordon A H Some clinical aspects of hypothyroidism *Canad MAJ* 0 7 1929
- Hall I C Menopause arthralgia a study of seventy one women at artificial menopause *New England J Med* 219 1015 1938
- Hannan J H On certain adrenaline effects at the menopause and their significance *Brit MJ* 2 14 1927
- Harrell G T and Johnston C Pericardial effusion in myxedema *Am Heart J* 50 50 1933
- Hawkinson L I The menopausal syndrome one thousand consecutive patients treated with estrogen *JAMA* 111 390 1938
- Hejtmancik M R Bradfield J L and Herrmann G R Acromegaly and the heart *Ann Int Med* 34 1145 1951
- Heller C G and Meyers G B The male climacteric *JAMA* 126 472 1944
- Kepler E J and Barnes A R Congestive heart failure and hypertrophy in hyperthyroidism a clinical and pathological study of 178 fatal cases *Am Heart J* 9 107 1937
- McGavack T H Changes in heart volume in Addison's disease and their significance *Am Heart J* 21 1 1928
- Angina like pain a manifestation of the male climacterium *J Clin Endocrinol* 3 71 1943
- The Thyroid St Louis Mosby 1951
- Mannaberg J Artzieller Hochdruck und gesteigerter Grundumsatz *Wien klin Wchnschr* 3 84 1924
- Maranon G The Climacteric St Louis Mosby 1929
- May F Bloch Michel H and Prin A Menopause et cardiopathies mitrales les accidents climatero cardiaques *Ann d'endocrinol* 1 267 1939
- Myers W K and King J T Jr Observations on the menopause *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 4 23 1930
- Oliver M F and Boyd G S The effect of estrogens on the plasma lipids in coronary heart disease *Am Heart J* 47 348 1954
- Pal J Hypertonic und Klimakterium *Wien med Wchnschr* 84 593 1934
- Parkinson J and Cookson H The size and shape of the heart in goitre *Quart J Med* 4 499 1931
- Parkinson J and Hoyle C Thyrotoxic hypertension *Lancet* 2 913 1934
- Reel A A F Anginal pain in myxedema *Brit Heart J* 5 89 1943
- Rizzi F Ricerche di elettrocardiografia nei disturbi cardiaci della menopausa *Clin med ital* 70 411 1939
- Turk W K Dynamic dilatation of the thoracic aorta *Am Heart J* 9 655 1934
- Raab W Hormonal and Neurogenic Cardiovascular Disorders Baltimore William & Wilkins 1953
- Reynolds S R M and Foster F I Peripheral vascular action of estrogen observed in the ear of the rabbit *J Pharmacol & Exper Therap* 69 173 1940
- Rickman D Hypertension in women *JAMA* 73 330 1919
- Rösler H Das Röntgenbild des Herzens beim Hyperthyroidismus *Wien Arch f inn Med* 11 39 1928
- Schaefer R L Menopausal hypertension *Endocrinology* 19 70 1935
- Scherf D The respiratory and the circulatory system in females with ovarian dysfunction *Ann Int Med* 13 1414 1940
- and Klotz S D Unpublished data
- and McGavack T H The estrogen like action of desoxyaceticosterone at the upon the altered electrocardiogram seen in various hypovarian states *Am J Med Sc* 91 41 1941

- Stachelin R. Über Affektionen der Rippenknorpel als Ursache von Brustschmerzen. Schweiz Med Wchnschr p 592 1940
- Summers V A. Mixed macoma. Brit M J ~ 366 1953
- Taylor R D, Corcoran A C and Page I H. Menopause. Am J M Sc 213 475 1944
- Tietze A. Über eine eigenartige Häufung von Fällen mit Dystrophie der Rippenknorpel. Berl Klin Wchnschr 58 829 1921
- Thorn G W and Harrop G A. Sodium retaining effect of the sex hormones. Science 86 40 1937
- Vega Diaz F. Alternating orthostatic hypotension and hyperthyroidism of probable hypophyseal hypothalamic origin. Brit M J 2 366 1953
- Walker T C. Use of testosterone propionate and estrogenic substance in treatment of essential hypertension, angina pectoris and peripheral vascular disease. J Clin Endocrinol 2 600 1942
- Webster H and Cooke C. Morphologic changes in the heart in experimental myxedema. Arch Int Med 68 269 1936
- Weller C I, Wanstrom R C, Gordon H and Bugher J C. Cardiac histopathology in thyroid disease. Am Heart J 8 8 1932
- Werner A A. The male climacteric. J A M A 72 60 1945
- Zdarsky F and Boyd L J. Roentgen Diagnosis of Diseases of the Heart and Great Vessels. New York: Grune & Stratton 1953
- Zwarsenstein H. The endocrine glands and calcium metabolism. Biol Rev 9 299 1934

## Chapter 19

# Cor Pulmonale

**C**OR PULMONALE IS NOT A DISEASE SUI GENESIS but a symptom complex always encountered when the right ventricle is subjected to increased demands because of hypertension in the lesser circuit. The latter is caused by pulmonary vascular disease or deformities of the chest. Increased pressure due to mitral valvular lesions or left ventricular failure is not included in this chapter. Chronic emphysema with chronic bronchitis is the most common cause.

A distinction is made between acute, subacute, and chronic cor pulmonale. The acute form has been discussed with the syndrome of pulmonary embolism. The subacute form is seen in status asthmaticus, in chronic pulmonary embolization, and in pulmonary carcinomatosis (lymphogenous or hematogenous spread). The chronic form is seen in a variety of lung diseases and abnormalities of the thoracic cage.

Cor pulmonale is found to be a common condition if a careful search is made for it. Clinical statistics showing its incidence are unreliable because the diagnosis is difficult. The pulmonary disease is often overlooked and the patient is treated as a primary cardiac.

### *Incidence and Pathology*

Cor pulmonale occurs in conjunction with three groups of pathologic conditions:

(1) Cor pulmonale may be present in subacute or chronic diseases of the pulmonary parenchyma. Chronic bronchial asthma or chronic bronchitis, emphysema, and pulmonary fibrosis due to pulmonary tuberculosis, pneumoconiosis, and even bronchiectasis with recurrent pneumonias and infection often present the picture of cor pulmonale. It may be seen in Boeck's sarcoid, in sickling disease, and in schistosomiasis. Arvidson et al. described four patients with pulmonary hypertension caused by malformation and stenosis of the branches of the pulmonary arteries.

In addition to the well known forms of pulmonary fibrosis and pneumoconiosis, the idiopathic interstitial acute diffuse fibrosis (Hammann-Rich disease) should be mentioned. Here, extreme dyspnea and cyanosis with marked hyper-

trophy of the right ventricle develop quickly within a few weeks. There is slight fever and a moderate leukocytosis. Hemoptysis and cough appear. Postmortem examination reveals an inflammatory nonspecific process of unknown origin. There is necrosis of alveolar epithelium with fibrin in the alveolar wall. A virus infection has been suspected as an etiologic factor.

(2) The picture of cor pulmonale develops in the rare type of essential (idiopathic primary) pulmonary hypertension. Syncope occurs and sudden death is common. Essential pulmonary hypertension for the most part is a syndrome encountered in women between the age of 20 and 30 years. They complain of dyspnea upon exertion, palpitation, fainting on effort and cyanosis. There is evidence of marked right ventricular hypertrophy and dilation; the second pulmonic sound is very loud and there is no intrinsic pulmonary disease. It is possible that in some of these patients minute pulmonary emboli that go unrecognized over years are responsible (Owen et al., Burnard). Patients with essential pulmonary hypertension often die suddenly.

(3) The same syndrome develops when respiration is disturbed by chest deformities. Kyphosis does not lead to cor pulmonale. On the other hand scoliosis does because of the emphysema and local infections leading to hypoxia. In patients with a funnel chest the heart usually escapes compression by shifting to the left half of the chest, and surgical intervention is rarely needed. Right bundle branch block not rarely appears in the electrocardiogram. Chronic bronchial or tracheal stenosis — the latter for example resulting from a nodular goiter — may also cause right ventricular hypertrophy, the mechanical goiter heart. In these patients the abnormal respiration alters the negative pressure within the chest and thus disturbs the chief factor aiding the return of blood to the heart. Atelectasis and collateral emphysema appear and increase the pressure in the lesser circuit. Disturbances of respiration also lead to an abnormal blood flow within the lung from the right ventricle to the left atrium.

In emphysema it is not the loss of elasticity of the tissue and the closure of capillaries that leads to hypertension in the lesser circuit and to cor pulmonale. Rather, in all probability it is the narrowing of the vessels due to local foci of anoxia (as pointed out below); this explains why in many patients with emphysema the pulmonary pressure was found with catheterization to be normal. Therefore all infections which lead to the secretion of mucus and occlude small air passages must be treated early with antibiotics. Such infections need not cause fever (Flint). The precipitating cause of heart failure was in acute respiratory infection in 74 out of 76 patients with cor pulmonale. Penicillin is given by injection and by aerosols; in addition terpin hydrate, aminophyllin, potassium Vaponephrine (5–8 drops three times a day) and Isuprel (1:200 aerosol inhalation) are used. The great fatigue is often caused by a relatively too small cardiac output. A supporting lower abdominal belt is used and better movement of the diaphragm is accomplished by pneumoperitoneum. In those patients who develop polycythemia phlebotomy is performed.

### Physiology

Normal pulmonary arterial systolic blood pressure varies between 15 and 25 mm Hg and the diastolic pressure is between 8 and 10 mm Hg. The blood pressure in the lesser circuit does not rise even when more than 50 per cent of the pulmonary arteries are ligated.

Anoxia causes an increase of blood pressure in the systemic as well as in the lesser circuit. This is explained in part by an increase of the stroke volume (Cournand, Wiggers et al.) but an increase of peripheral resistance plays an important role. This is mediated according to von Euler and Liljestrand by the oxygen content of the blood acting directly on the arterioles without participation of the autonomic nerves. Others assume that anoxia of the carotid sinus and aortic body leads to vasoconstriction in the lesser circuit via reflexes (Ariado et al.). Little is known about the effect of carbon dioxide retention on pulmonary arterial blood pressure.

Since pulmonary infections do cause local anoxia, this can result in widespread vascular spasm and an increase of pressure provided it involves large areas of the lung.

Even larger pulmonary arteries become narrowed according to von Euler and Liljestrand. Thus a local chemical self regulation exists in the lesser circuit which may explain many of the clinical data that defied explanation up to the present. The sudden appearance of cardiac failure in a patient with chronic emphysema may be due not only to hypoventilation but also to a sudden rise of pressure because bronchitis with infection causes the formation of mucous bronchiolar obstruction and local hypoxia. Actually the old explanation of the *cor pulmonale* in emphysema was never satisfactory in its assumption of widespread destruction of capillaries and consequent diminution of the vascular bed. Against this was the experience just mentioned that too much of the vascular bed must be destroyed before pressure in the lesser circuit rises. *Cor pulmonale* does not appear if the surgeon removes the right or left lung. If we assume that a patient with chronic emphysema develops local anoxia because of bronchitis or local hypoventilation such experiences are now explainable. This acute rise of pressure in the lesser circuit causes not only right heart failure but also death.

Chronic anoxia and oxygen undersaturation of the arterial blood in the systemic circulation may lead particularly in emphysema with bronchitis or pneumonia to a syndrome of lassitude, weakness, stupor and coma caused by respiratory acidosis. Positive pressure breathing, cortisone and the administration of oxygen are helpful but with oxygen administration extreme caution is in order. With chronic hypoxia the respiratory centers become insensitive to the stimulus of carbon dioxide and the hypoxia per se regulates breathing. If it is abolished by the administration of oxygen respiration becomes too superficial and death results.

Carbon dioxide narcosis causes confusion, maniacal states, drowsiness and coma. Headaches and muscular twitching occur (Westlake et al.).

*Symptoms*

There are no characteristic symptoms. Only late when edema and hepatic enlargement appear is the attention of the patient and the physician directed to the heart. Usually in the early stages such symptoms as dyspnea and palpitation seem fully explained by the basic pathology in the lungs, the lesser circuit or chest wall. Most of these patients die before the right ventricle fails owing to the underlying disease. This holds not only for patients with emphysema, fibrotic tuberculosis and so forth, but also for those with kyphoscoliosis (respiratory failure).

*Anginal Pain.* Patients with cor pulmonale have two complaints which are of great interest. One is pain of an anginal character with typical radiation into the arms which may sometimes be relieved by nitroglycerin. This pain occurs in mitral lesions, pulmonary embolism, asthma and emphysema. In one of our patients a 58 year old man with this type of pain often excruciating death occurred in a paroxysm; necropsy revealed rupture of the main stem of the left pulmonary artery, presumably the result of paroxysmal hypertension in the lesser circuit. The rupture extended to the adventitia and was  $1\frac{1}{2}$  cm long. An hematoma was found in the pulmonary hilus.

*Fainting.* Another complaint is the appearance of effort syncope or tussive syncope, that is, attacks of fainting during exertion or paroxysms of cough. This event is also seen in congenital heart disease, particularly in primary pulmonary hypertension. The incidence in the latter group was 20 per cent (Dressler). Before fainting the patient experiences dizziness, epigastric fullness, a tight sensation over the heart and choking. The systemic blood pressure falls and sinus bradycardia appears. The patient loses consciousness when the blood pressure reaches a particularly low level. In older literature similar syndromes were known as *ictus laryngeus* and in 1876 Charcot described laryngeal vertigo (laryngeal epilepsy). For many years epilepsy was assumed to exist in such cases since tonic clonic convulsions occur during this syncope. One of the explanations available is the assumption of a high intrathoracic pressure during paroxysms of coughing whereby the cardiac inflow and output are diminished to such a degree that fainting occurs. Intrathoracic pressures of 200–300 mm Hg have been measured during violent coughing. Laughter, choking and the Valsalva experiment cause similar fainting. According to McIntosh et al. cough syncope is the consequence of the markedly increased intrathoracic and intraabdominal pressure which is transmitted to the cerebrospinal fluid so that blood is squeezed out of the cranium. It seems that in certain localities eliciting this type of fainting is a game in which students indulge (Howard et al.). Lethal accidents during this type of fainting have been reported and are said to occur in one to two per cent of the cases. Sudden death in patients with cor pulmonale is known to occur often.



### *Signs*

A regular sinus tachycardia of 100–120 beats per minute is common. Arrhythmias are rare. While right ventricular hypertrophy is invariable its existence usually cannot be proven by means of physical examination because the underlying pulmonary pathology often causes superimposition of the lungs over the heart (emphysema). For the same reason the heart sounds are distant and sometimes scarcely audible. The point of maximum intensity of the heart sounds is often near the xiphoid because the whole heart is covered by the lungs. Murmurs are more often absent than heard. A high pitched diastolic murmur over the pulmonary artery is occasionally audible and derives from a relative pulmonary insufficiency (Graham Steell murmur). A gallop rhythm may be audible over the right ventricle.

In view of these difficulties x-ray examination is indispensable for diagnosis, although here also difficulties are encountered. The form of the heart often cannot be determined in patients with chest deformities (e.g. kyphosis) and it may be equally hard to judge its size. Mitral configuration is common due to displacement and rotation. The displacement of the diaphragm likewise makes difficult any estimation of the size and shape of the heart.

The section of the right ventricle that is chiefly and in many cases exclusively altered is the outflow tract. The axis of this portion of the right ventricle runs almost perpendicular. Therefore dilation of the outflow tract leads to prominence of the conus at the left cardiac border and to filling of the cardiac waist. One reason for this is the resistance offered by the diaphragm whereby the outflow tract of the right ventricle finds it easier to dilate upward. If the diaphragm is low this resistance below is not encountered and enlargement of the conus therefore appears much later if at all (Zdarsky). The mitralization is accentuated by rotation of the heart around its axis to the left a typical event in any right ventricular dilatation. The hypertrophy and dilatation of the outflow tract of the right ventricle even if considerable do not cause an enlargement of the cardiac shadow in the transverse diameter visible in the posteroanterior view. It is easily seen however in the left anterior oblique position.

Only late when the inflow tract of the right ventricle also dilates does the transverse diameter of the heart increase to make the heart seem enlarged. Since the right ventricle lies mainly in the left chest and in these cases forms a considerable part of the left cardiac border the heart appears enlarged to the left instead of the right even in advanced stages.

In pulmonary hypertension a systolic click may be heard over the pulmonary artery explained by the systolic tension of the wall of the pulmonary artery.

The systemic blood pressure is often low. A systolic blood pressure under 100 mm Hg is not unusual. No explanation of this finding is available at present. While its occurrence in tuberculosis has been attributed to a toxemia undoubt

edly some other mechanism is at work. Spinal fluid pressure is often increased in emphysema and papilledema occurs (Flint)

Clubbing of the fingers and polycythemia are not rare

The electrocardiogram shows right axis deviation and later evidence of right ventricular strain. Characteristic changes are found in the P waves—they are very low in lead I and abnormally high but not widened in leads II and III (figure 8b). The reason for these changes and the relation to cor pulmonale is not fully explored at present but the pattern is very common in this syndrome and is typical of it.

The pulmonary artery and its main branches are usually dilated. Although cyanosis and dyspnea are often present in most cases they are due to the underlying lung pathology. The cyanosis is marked and may reach an unusual depth if a secondary pulmonary sclerosis develops or an open foramen ovale exists. In advanced stages of pulmonary pathology there is decided anoxemia and often hypercapnia. The patient may have an overwhelming desire for sleep. Not uncommonly the patient becomes continuously drowsy and may die in semi coma which has lasted for days. Convulsions may appear terminally.

The liver enlarges slowly and therefore is not tender. The edema rarely reaches the degree encountered in the valvular and myocardial diseases. These patients usually develop a form of high output failure.

### *Differential Diagnosis*

As a rule this is not difficult. Clubbing of the fingers and toes, marked cyanosis, and the presence of a systolic murmur over the heart may suggest a congenital heart lesion in some cases. Therefore the distinction is not always as easy as one might guess. Characteristic murmurs like other pathognomonic signs may be absent in congenital anomalies. A secondary emphysema may be found in any cardiac patient. A careful examination and evaluation of all findings make possible a correct diagnosis in most cases.

The most frequently overlooked cause for chronic cor pulmonale is chronic pulmonary embolization. If this picture lasts over many months without pulmonary infarctions and hemoptysis, patients develop evidence of congestive heart failure (edema, liver enlargement, venous congestion) and are treated as instances of coronary disease with failure. Anticoagulants or ligation of the vena cava inferior saved lives in several of our patients. The diagnosis is missed since the lower extremities need not show any evidence of abnormality, the emboli coming from deep thrombi of the legs or from the pelvic veins.

### *Treatment*

The therapy is that of the underlying disease. Only symptomatic treatment is available for the cor pulmonale syndrome itself. Once full decompensation with hepatic enlargement and edema occurs, compensation can rarely be re-established by therapy.

The hypoxemia resulting from the pulmonary disease contributes to this futility of treatment. Oxygen under pressure may be life saving. In recent years since antibiotic therapy and aerosols have been available considerable help can be given to patients with chronic bronchitis and even to patients with right heart failure — they may become compensated again if careful attention is paid to the treatment of the lung thus abolishing the hypoxia and high pulmonary arterial pressure. It has also been pointed out (Moe and Visscher) that the increased load on the right ventricle increases intraventricular tension and that this impairs the blood supply to the right ventricle via the coronary arteries. This could also disturb the blood flow through the thebesian veins. Moreover increased intra atrial pressure hampers the outflow of blood from the coronary sinus vein.

Diamox can be of help in patients with cor pulmonale and retention of carbon dioxide.

Sudden death without apparent cause is frequent in these cases as mentioned above. Often cardiac decompensation begins insidiously and progresses slowly so that death is the result of the underlying pulmonary disease or secondary infections.

In view of the respiratory disturbances so common in these patients breathing exercises with particular reference to the use of the diaphragm are of primary importance in the prolongation of life (Hofbauer, Schutz, Barach). As mentioned above many of these patients die a pulmonary death (respiratory insufficiency).

While digitalis should be given in the presence of decompensation its results are rarely spectacular unless the other measures mentioned above are used.

The injection of morphine is absolutely contraindicated and may lead to sudden death (see last chapter). Demerol is permissible if given cautiously.

## Bibliography

- Arrillaga D C. Sclerose de l'artere pulmonaire secondaire a certains états pulmonaire chroniques (cardiaques noirs). *Arch il mal du coeur* 8 518 1913
- Arvidson H et al. Multiple stenosis of the pulmonary arteries associated with pulmonary hypertension diagnosed by selective angiocardiology. *Acta rad* 44 209 1955
- Austrian R, McClement J H, Rengetti A D Jr, Donald K W, Reilly R L and Cournand A. Clinical and physiologic features of some types of pulmonary diseases with impairment of alveolar capillary diffusion. *Am J Med* 11 667 1951
- Aviado D M Jr, Ling J S L, Quimby C W Jr and Schmidt C F. Additional role of reflex pulmonary vasoconstriction during anoxia. *Feder Proc* 13 4 1954
- Ayerza I, Solari L A and Berenson I. Cyanose par hypoventilation alveolaire chez un cardiaque noir d'Ayerza. *Arch il mal du coeur* 24 209 1931
- Baker C. The cough syndrome. *Clin Hosp Rep* 35 132 1949
- Baldwin F de F, Cournand A and Richards D W Jr. Pulmonary insufficiency. *Medicine* 27 243 1948 28 1 1949
- Barach A L, Bickerman H A and Beck C. Advances in the treatment of non tuberculous pulmonary disease. *Bull New York Acad Med* 29 3 3 1953

- Barnard P J: Pulmonary arteriosclerosis and cor pulmonale due to recurrent thromboembolization *Circulation* 10 343 1954
- Bickerman H A and Beck G J: Physiologic factors in the treatment of chronic hypertrophic pulmonary emphysema *Ann Int Med* 36 607 1952
- Bloomfield R A, Lanson H D, Courmand A, Breed E S and Richards D W Jr: Recording of right heart pressure in normal subjects and in patients with chronic pulmonary disease *J Clin Investigation* 25 639 1946
- Callaway J J and McKusick V A: Carbon dioxide intoxication in emphysema *New Engl J Med* 245 9 1951
- Chapman F M, Dill D B and Graybiel A: The decrease in functional capacity of the lungs and heart resulting from deformities of the chest: pulmonocardiac failure *Medicine* 18 161 1939
- Coggins C H, Griggs D F and Stilson W L: The heart in pneumoconiosis *Am Heart J* 17 411 1938
- Cohn J F, Carroll D G and Riley H L: Respiratory acidosis in patients with emphysema *Am J Med* 17 447 1954
- Comroe J H Jr, Bahnon P R and Coates E O Jr: Mental changes occurring in chronically anoxic patients during oxygen therapy *JAMA* 143 1044 1950
- Cournand A: The mysterious influence of unilateral pulmonary hypoxia upon the circulation in man *Acta Cardiol* 10 420 1955
- Davies C F and Mackinnon J: Neurological effects of oxygen in chronic cor pulmonale *Lancet* 2 837 1949
- Dirken M N J and Heemstra H: Alveolar oxygen tension and lung circulation *Quart J Exper Physiol* 34 103 1948
- Dresdale D T, Schultz M and Nishtom R J: Primary pulmonary hypertension *Am J Med* 11 686 1951
- Dressler W: Effort syncope as an early manifestation of primary pulmonary hypertension *Am J Med Sc* 271 131 1952
- Edeiken J: The effect of spinal deformities on the heart *Am J Med Sc* 180 99 1933
- von Euler U S and Liljestrand G: Observations on the pulmonary arterial blood pressure in cat *Acta physiol Scandinau* 12 301 1946
- Flint F J: Cor pulmonale: incidence and etiology in an industrial city *Lancet* 2 51 1954
- Fulton R M: The heart in chronic pulmonary disease *Quart J Med* 2 43 1953
- Grosse-Brockhoff K: Hemodynamik der Lungenkreislaufstörungen *Verh d ges Kreislaufg* 17 34 1951
- Hamman R and Rich A R: Acute diffuse interstitial fibrosis of the lungs *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 41 171 1944
- Hofbauer L: *Atmungs-pathologie und Therapie* Berlin J Springer 1951
- Howard I, Leathart D L, Darnbass A C and Sharpey-Schafer E H: The Valsalva trick and the fainting lark *Brit M J* 2 382 1951
- Howarth S and Lowe L B: The mechanism of effort syncope in primary pulmonary hypertension and cyanotic congenital heart disease *Brit Heart J* 15 47 1953
- Hurlimann A and Wiggers C J: The effects of progressive general anoxia on the pulmonary circulation *Circulation Res* 1 236 1953
- Kerr A J and Derbes V J: The syndrome of cough syncope *Ann Int Med* 39 1240 1953
- Kerwin A J: Pulmonocardiac failure as a result of spinal deformity *Arch Int Med* 69 560 1947
- Laubry C, Chaperon R and Thomas M: Etude radiologique du hile et des vaisseaux pulmonaires à l'état normal et pathologique *Ann Med* 70 21 1926
- Leatham A and Vogelbeel: The early systolic sound in dilatation of the pulmonary artery *Brit Heart J* 16 21 1954

- Liljestrand G Regulation of the pulmonary arterial blood pressure *Arch Int Med* 81 162 1948
- McCann W E Bruce R A Lovejoy F W Jr Yu P N G and Pearson H Tussive syncope *Arch Int Med* 84 845 1949
- Lovejoy F W and Yu P N G The failing lung, New York State J Med 57 1983 1952
- McIntosh H B Estes E H and Warren J V The mechanism of cough syncope *Am Heart J* 52 70 1956
- Moe G K and Viascher M B The distribution of coronary blood flow *Publ A A Adv Sc* 13 100 1940
- Motley H L Cournand A Werko L Himmelstein A and Dresdale D The influence of short periods of induced acute anoxia upon pulmonary pressures in man *Am J Physiol* 150 315 1947
- Owen W R Thomas W A Castleman B and Bland E F Unrecognized emboli to the lungs with subsequent cor pulmonale *New Engl J Med* 249 919 1953
- Parkinson J and Hoyle C The heart in emphysema *Quart J Med* 5 59 1937
- Puddu V Il cuore polmonare Reggio Emilia Poligrafica Reggiano 1952
- Reich L Der Einfluß des Pneumoperitoneums auf das Lungenemphysem *Wien Arch f inn Med* 8 245 1924
- Schutz K Muscular exercise in the treatment of bronchial asthma, New York State J Med 55 635 1955
- Sharpey Schafer E P The mechanism of syncope after coughing *Brit M J* 2 860 1953
- Sulger H Experimentelle Untersuchungen über den Einfluß der Trachealstenose auf Herz und Kreislauf *Deutsche Ztschr f Chir* 201 21 1927
- Viar W N and Harrison T R Chest pain in association with pulmonary hypertension *Circulation* 5 1 1952
- West J R and Baldwin E deF Cournand A Richards D W Jr Physiopathologic aspects of chronic pulmonary emphysema *Am J Med* 10 481 1951
- Westlake E K Simpson T and Kaye M Carbon dioxide narcosis in emphysema *Quart J Med* 24 155 1955
- Whitty C W M On the so called laryngeal epilepsy *Brain* 66 43 1943
- Wood P Pulmonary hypertension *Brit M Bull* 8 348 1952
- Zdansky E Die Röntgendiagnostik der Insuffizienz des Cor Pulmonale und Cor hypertonicum *Nauheimer Fortbildungs Lehrgänge* 16 37 1951

## Chapter 20

# Hypertension

### GENERAL REMARKS

#### *Definition*

IN ONE OF THE FIRST CLINICAL STUDIES on blood pressure von Basch considered a systolic blood pressure of 150 to represent the upper limit of the normal level. A diastolic blood pressure of 100 has been considered as the upper normal diastolic blood pressure.

A study by the Joint Committee of the Association of Life Insurance Medical Directors of America showed, however, that values above 140/90 mm Hg are definitely abnormal at any age (Daley et al). The frequently expressed opinion that higher values may be expected in elderly people and that they lack significance is not valid. The blood pressure of a normal individual does not necessarily increase with age to a degree that it becomes higher than 140/90 mm Hg. Papers with a dissenting opinion appear from time to time, but the life expectancy of patients with a blood pressure above 140/90 is decidedly shorter than in those with lower pressures. Sometimes, particularly in younger subjects, there is an elevation only of the diastolic blood pressure, the systolic remaining within normal limits. The diagnosis of hypertension in such cases is justified.

A temporary moderate rise of blood pressure is observed in juveniles. An examination of 6000 male university freshmen disclosed a blood pressure in excess of 140 mm Hg in 22 per cent (Alvarez et al). This elevation of the blood pressure in juveniles is best explained by an endocrine imbalance.

#### *Significance*

Arterial hypertension ranks high among the causes of death, more than any other disease; it is responsible for cardiac symptoms and signs.

Hypertension directly accounts for 15 per cent of deaths in patients over 60 years of age. It is estimated that between the ages of 40 and 49 a blood pressure of 150/90 mm Hg or higher occurs in more than one fourth of males and one third of females. Fifty per cent of the population over 50 have hypertension.

An increase of the blood pressure with age has been repeatedly reported (Master et al, Hamilton et al) but this does not prove that a pressure over 150/90 is not abnormal at any age. According to Master, in men between the

ages of 50 and 54 the blood pressure may vary between 115/70 and 160/98 normally. In men between 60 and 64 it is 190/110.

Pickering found the mean systolic and diastolic blood pressures of males between 15 and 19 years old to be 117 2/68 2 while it was 117 2/70 8 in females of the same age. Between the ages of 35 and 39 it was 125 2/77 8 and 127 5/93 respectively. Between 65 and 69 it was 152 1/85 2 in man and 172 9/94 1 in women. These figures illustrate the well established fact that with advancing age the incidence of hypertension is greater particularly in women. To conclude that a blood pressure of 172/94 in an elderly subject is normal because it is a common finding is in our opinion wrong. With increasing age pyorrhea is more common. Should we therefore conclude that pyorrhea is normal?

About 140 000 deaths occur annually from hypertension and its consequences in the United States (G. Fahr). The great incidence of hypertension in young men examined by the Army draft boards made it the second most common cause for rejection and this has raised questions about the evaluation and prognostic significance of a moderate elevation of blood pressure.

#### TECHNIQUE OF BLOOD PRESSURE DETERMINATION

The blood pressure should always be determined by auscultation and by palpation. In view of the many disagreements regarding the correct method for measuring the blood pressure a Committee of the American Heart Association and the Cardiac Society of Great Britain and Ireland made joint recommendations on this subject.

The blood pressure should be obtained with the patient lying (British Committee) or seated (American Committee). The arm on which the pressure is taken should be flexed and should be supported at heart level on a smooth surface. No constriction of the arm by clothing is permitted. The blood pressure may be obtained by an aneroid instrument which must be calibrated annually but a mercurial instrument is more reliable. The air vent in the mercurial instrument must not be permitted to clog. The mercury at rest should reach exactly the zero mark and in the aneroid instrument the needle should stand exactly at zero. The standard cuff should have a width of 15 cm and should have a rubber bag 12 to 13 cm in width and 30 cm in length. Decompression should proceed at a speed of 2-3 mm per second. The cuff should not bulge on inflation and the rubber bag should be applied to the inner side of the arm. If possible smaller cuffs should be used for children and wider ones for measuring the blood pressure in the lower extremities. The blood pressure should always be taken in both arms. Several readings should be taken and the cuff inflated and deflated several times.

The systolic blood pressure obtained with the auscultatory method is about 10 points higher than that obtained by the palpatory method. It varies at different times of day and is higher after a meal or following excitement. The blood pressure may be higher or lower in the right arm than in the left. Differences between

the right and left arms are found in 76 per cent of normal subjects. Usually the blood pressure is higher on the right side. In 8 per cent of normal people the blood pressure was 20–30 mm Hg higher in the right arm (Amsterdam and Amsterdam). Greater differences are due to syphilitic changes at the mouths of the large arteries originating from the aorta to mechanical compression by a cervical rib to the scalenus anticus syndrome or to the pulsless disease. Arterio-sclerotic changes are rarely etiologic.

The level of the diastolic blood pressure is the point at which the sounds suddenly become muffled and dull. In cases of aortic insufficiency and other conditions with a large pulse amplitude the exact estimation of the diastolic blood pressure may become impossible. The values obtained usually are too low. According to Gallavardin the determination of the exact diastolic blood pressure is impossible in about 10 per cent of the cases.

When the readings of the systolic pressure by the auscultatory and palpatory method differ widely the Committee recommends accepting the palpatory reading as more nearly correct.

In arrhythmias particularly in atrial fibrillation the estimation of the systolic blood pressure is difficult and it is almost impossible to obtain correct values for the diastolic blood pressure.

In hyperactive hearts the pulse wave may strike the cuff with such force that sounds are audible distal from the cuff in the cubital artery and too high values of the blood pressure are obtained by the auscultatory method.

With small arms and the use of standard cuffs the values of the systolic blood pressure are usually too low. With large arms they are usually too high.

Like the temperature the blood pressure in normal subjects varies constantly. It is lowest during sleep and in the morning. Transient rises are often forerunners of persistent hypertension.

### *Auscultatory Gap*

A very important but little known source of error in the determination of the blood pressure with the auscultatory method is the so called silent zone or auscultatory gap.

With gradual deflation the sounds or murmurs (in the second phase of Korotkow) suddenly disappear and with continued deflation they reappear and permit the estimation of the diastolic blood pressure. One may find for example that the sounds appear at 200 mm Hg vanish at 180 then reappear at 130 and disappear completely at 100. The blood pressure of this patient is 200/100 but between 180 and 130 no sounds or murmurs are audible over the cubital artery. If the cuff had been accidentally inflated only to 160 and then the pressure slowly released sounds would have appeared at 130 and disappeared at 100 so that the blood pressure would have been considered 130/100 mm Hg. Serious errors are avoided if the systolic blood pressure is always determined by the palpatory method as well as by auscultation. The auscultatory gap is more



distinct or may appear only when the cuff is held under pressure for some time (Pines and Scherf)

That the level of the venous pressure has some importance for the occurrence of this phenomenon is revealed by another experiment. The gap may be found if the blood pressure is obtained with the arm hanging down and disappears if the arm is elevated (Berry). It may exist only in the right or only in the left arm. In some patients it is transient while in others it is observed for weeks. The auscultatory gap has been found in 10 per cent of hypertensives (Amsterdam and Amsterdam). Apart from those with hypertension it is frequently encountered in connection with stenosis of the aortic valve (Gallavardin and Trier). It occurs, however, in nonhypertensives and also in the absence of aortic valve lesions.

In some cases of hypertension and particularly when the cuff remains inflated for a while, auscultatory phenomena above the gap disappear completely or are present only for a few millimeters so that the physician who deflates the cuff quickly overlooks this phase completely.

### *Cold Pressor Test*

The cold pressor test recommended by Hines serves to find an abnormal response of the blood pressure to an external stimulus. At first the basal blood pressure is measured with the patient resting in the supine position for 20 to 60 minutes. While the cuff is still on one arm the opposite hand is immersed in ice water ( $4^{\circ}$  Celsius) up to the wrist and the blood pressure is again measured 30 to 60 seconds later. The higher reading is recorded as the response. The hand is then removed from the ice water and the blood pressure is taken every two minutes until it returns to the basal level. No vasodilator or sedative drugs are permitted for 24 hours before the test.

Elevation above the basal level of more than 20 mm Hg of the systolic pressure and more than 15 mm Hg of the diastolic pressure indicates a hyperreactor. Such a hyperreactor is in greater danger of developing hypertension than normoreactors. In normoreactors the blood pressure values return to normal within two minutes after the hand is removed from ice water. This is delayed in hypertensives or in patients who are hyperreactors. Pickering denies the clinical value of this test.

### TYPES OF HYPERTENSION

The blood pressure may be increased in a great variety of conditions, some of which were mentioned in previous chapters. The cause of the abnormal blood pressure is known in approximately 5 per cent of patients with hypertension. In the remaining 95 per cent the blood pressure is high without any visible cause or known reason. This type of hypertension is called *essential hypertension*, a common but extremely unsatisfactory term that reveals actually an ignorance of the etiology. It is probable that the group of patients to whom this phrase is applied will decrease steadily in coming years.

Theoretically, hypertension may appear (1) with changes of cardiac dynamics (increased contractility) (2) with changes of conditions of the large vessels (aorta) (3) with increased volume of circulating blood (4) with increased viscosity of the blood (polycythemia) or (5) with a narrowing of the peripheral vessels (arterioles). We shall see that instances exemplifying most of these mechanisms are known but that the last mentioned narrowing of the arterioles is present in an overwhelming number of cases.

Hypertension is known to occur in certain endocrine disorders, in certain disturbances of cardiac action, in nervous disorders, and in renal diseases and some affections of the urinary passages.

### *1 Hypertension in Endocrine Disorders*

*Hypo ovarianism*. The most common cause of hypertension in this group, the natural or artificial menopause, has been discussed earlier. Preference was made to the markedly fluctuating and, in later stages, even fixed hypertension in women with disturbed estrogen formation; it is not a lack of estrogen but the endocrine imbalance in connection with it that seems to elevate the blood pressure in these cases. The syndrome of hypertension and tachycardia in women between the ages of 40 and 50 years certainly is often due to this imbalance. We have mentioned earlier that many authors consider hypertension in women of this age group as coincidental, but this does not concur in our experience.

*Adrenals*. Primary aldosteronism with adrenocortical hyperplasia, hypokalemia and hypernatremia causes hypertension. The frequency and pathogenesis of this complication is not clear (Conn, Chalmers et al). Patients with potassium losing nephritis seem to belong in this group. According to Genest, hypertensive patients secrete larger amounts of aldosterone than normals. In primary aldosteronism, in addition to the hypertension, hypokalemia, alkalosis and a tendency to hypernatremia exists. Attacks of muscular weakness (intermittent paralysis) are presumably due to the hypokalemia. Diarrhea is common.

*Enteramine, Serotonin*. These hormones, secreted by the argentophile cells of the large intestines, play an important but not yet fully analyzed part in the genesis of hypertension. While the effect of 5-hydroxytryptamine on the blood pressure is erratic, tryptamine without the hydroxy group causes hypertension. The 5-hydroxytryptamine seems to regulate vascular tone and constricts the afferent glomerular blood vessels (Erspamer).

### *Pheochromocytoma*

**PATHOLOGY** While this lesion was occasionally observed by pathologists, no clinical description was available until 1922. The lesion consists of a usually benign, rarely bilateral, tumor composed of mature chromaffin cells of the adrenal medulla or other chromaffin bodies. The new growth is encapsulated and may be malignant; functioning metastases occur. The tumor may weigh a few grams or as much as three kilograms and may also occur in the chest or cranium.

**INCIDENCE** The tumors occur with equal frequency in both sexes and may develop in several members of the same family. Poth et al saw them in two sisters and one brother. They are most common in younger individuals.

**SYMPTOMS AND SIGNS** In many patients the symptoms are typical. The complaints consist of sudden attacks of palpitation with tremor, dizziness and chest pain. Anginal pain is present in almost 50 per cent of the patients during an attack of hypertension. Severe headache and epigastric pain are also common. Nausea is often present. The systolic blood pressure may rise from 110 to 300 or more and the diastolic from 60 to 140 or more. Often with the rise of blood pressure bradycardia or arrhythmias develop. Glycosuria and albuminuria frequently develop during an attack. Circumoral pallor and pallor of the cold and mottled extremities may be found, although in many patients the face is flushed.

The diagnosis is often possible on the basis of the history. One of the most common complaints is a very severe, definitely pathologic headache. There may be also abdominal pain, particularly in the epigastrium, so that an acute abdomen may be simulated. There is tingling in the hands and feet, occasionally violent palpitation with strong pulsation of the vessels in the neck and anxiety. Vomiting, blurring of vision or even amaurosis appear. The skin is often cold and covered with perspiration after the attack. Great fatigue and lassitude may occur. Pulmonary edema may appear causing collapse and even death. In some patients it produces a complaint of a sinking sensation. Patients may develop a cerebral vascular accident during the attack.

Permanent hypertension may be found without a history of attacks. The incidence of this picture is not definitely known, for statistical data vary. According to Organ, it is responsible for 0.47 per cent of hypertension. Other authors, considering only patients in whom tumors were found, give a much higher incidence. This syndrome should be particularly suspected when there is hypertension, glycosuria and a marked increase of the basal metabolic rate. One should bear in mind that hypertension of any etiology persisting for a time may become permanent, either experimentally or clinically.

The hypermotility of the heart resembles that seen in hyperthyroidism. The differential diagnosis from the latter condition is often difficult, since these patients often have a markedly increased basal metabolic rate. Like hyperthyroidism, patients of this kind also have an intolerance to heat, slight glycosuria after a prolonged attack may enable the physician to diagnose diabetes. In prolonged attacks the temperature is increased. The electrocardiogram during the attack may show marked abnormalities of the T waves, ventricular extrasystoles and even tachycardias. Sometimes the attacks cause so little distress that the patient does not seek medical advice; other times the episodes are so incapacitating that medical counsel is a necessity.

Since the investigations of Coldenberg and his associates were published it is now established that not only epinephrine but also norepinephrine (in some tumors only this substance) are excreted by the tumor into the circulation.

In patients with large tumors bending forward suffices to expel these compounds into the circulation and to provoke an attack. This secretion of noradrenaline causes changes in the potassium content of the blood which in turn may be responsible for the cardiac arrhythmias observed during the attack. The clinical symptoms and signs vary since in some patients more epinephrine while in others more norepinephrine is secreted.

The attacks may last for minutes or hours. They may occur at any moment but they are prone to develop at a fixed time, often at night. Years, months or hours may pass between single crises. Sometimes it may be possible to provoke an attack by pressure on a palpable tumor which is most often situated on the right side. Squatting, exposure to cold or excitement may also provoke an attack. Attacks may appear after exercise. Sometimes there is a time relation to the previous meal or excitement.

**LABORATORY TESTS** In addition to the old diagnostic tests — intravenous pyelography and perirenal or better presacral air insufflation, now improved by the replacement of air by oxygen laminography and the like — new tests are available. Occasionally they may lead to false positive results, but in general they are reliable and facilitate the diagnosis. False positive results are obtained most often when one tries to provoke an attack by an intravenous injection of 0.025–0.05 mg of histamine. In the presence of a pheochromocytoma this causes a marked rise of blood pressure in a few minutes. The histamine test may be used when the resting blood pressure is not over 150/110. False negative tests do occur. A rise of systolic blood pressure by 60 mm Hg or more and of the diastolic by 30 mm Hg or more is significant.

Goldenberg's benzodioxane test is performed by the intravenous injection of 10–15 mg of this substance for the regitine (phentolamine) test 5 mg of regitine are used. These substances counteracting the action of epinephrine and norepinephrine cause a definite fall of pressure in a few minutes after the injection in all subjects who have a blood pressure elevation due to pheochromocytoma. False positive tests appear after sedation with barbiturates and Paulowit's drugs and in uremia. At the present time it is assumed that regitine causes fewer side effects than benzodioxane and should be preferred for the test. In patients with hypertension in the absence of a pheochromocytoma, benzodioxane may cause a marked rise of pressure (Fremont).

At present the excessive urinary excretion of catechol amines determined by photometric methods seems to be the most reliable test. A 24 hour specimen is assayed.

Operative procedure of any type, particularly removal of the pheochromocytoma, may cause shock. Postoperative patients require careful supervision. Metastases may be functionally active.

**Cushing's Syndrome** Hypertension appears in the adrenal cortical syndrome which is characterized by marked obesity, particularly of the abdomen, hirsutism, purplish striae, hyperglycemia and osteoporosis. This syndrome formerly attributed to basophilic adenoma of the anterior hypophysis (Cushing's

spaces in which blood could potentially be stored) are not available in patients with generalized edema because the edema compresses peripheral veins. The circulating blood volume being markedly augmented leads to an overfilling of the large veins and an increased cardiac filling and to an increase of the systolic and diastolic blood pressure. With a marked diuresis (often following only one injection of a mercurial diuretic) the peripheral blood depots become available, blood is again stored, the amount of circulating blood decreases and the blood pressure falls (Goldhammer et al.)

It is not always possible to restore compensation fully and therefore this hypertension may not be reversible and the blood pressure may remain high despite therapy.

Since patients with congestion of the kidneys may show marked albuminuria and casts in the urine, mistakes in diagnosis are common. It should therefore always be remembered that hypertension occurs in congestive heart failure and is often the consequence of decompensation; it does not always mean a renal or vascular disorder.

### *3 Hypertension in Nervous Disorders*

The influence of the central nervous system on blood pressure was widely discussed at one time but had been somewhat neglected until recently. In the last few years this question has again attracted considerable attention (Raab) particularly since the discovery of the carotid sinus reflexes demonstrated the importance of a nervous regulatory mechanism for the blood pressure level.

This form of hypertension is accompanied by an increase of rate. The increase in cardiac output is claimed to be the chief reason for the hypertension.

An increase of intracranial pressure may lead to hypertension most probably because the intracranial vessels are compressed and the centers rendered anemic. Prolonged hypertension can be produced experimentally by the injection of kaolin into the subarachnoid space (Dixon and Heller) when it spreads to the cerebral ventricles and by experimental creation of cerebral ischemia. Clinically, hypertension is observed in brain tumors and in vascular disease causing cerebral ischemia.

Hypertension also results when all four moderator nerves (right and left carotid sinus nerves and right and left aortic depressor nerves) are severed; this is due to the disturbance of homeostasis and the release of vasoconstrictor centers which are normally inhibited.

Cases of encephalitis, bulbar poliomyelitis, and concussion of the brain and trauma to the midbrain with paroxysmal hypertension have been observed.

The importance of fear, anxiety, and apprehension in the causation of hypertension is also well known. This increase of blood pressure stems from the release of adrenalin and noradrenalin and stimuli running from the emotional to the vasoconstrictor centers. The importance of these factors in the development of essential hypertension will be discussed later.

*The Hypertensive Diencephalic Syndrome* This form of hypertension described by Page is most often found in middle aged women. Such subjects exhibit great emotional instability, blush in spots, and show red patches on the neck and chest. The extremities are cold, pale, and clammy. The neck vessels pulsate strongly. The blood pressure is labile and may temporarily reach high values. The heart is normal in size and shape for many years, and the electrocardiogram does not show any change, demonstrating that the blood pressure is not fixed and often reaches normal levels. The syndrome resembles attacks seen in connection with organic diseases of the hypothalamus. An increased response to 0.25 ml. of a standard histamine acid phosphate solution was described in this condition. Dermographism is common.

#### *4. Hypertension in Renal Disease and in Diseases of the Urinary Passages*

The occurrence of hypertension in renal disorders is so common that an increase of blood pressure has been considered by some authorities of the past (and is considered even today) to mean an involvement of the kidneys.

*Humoral Mechanism* The mechanism of increased blood pressure appears to have been greatly clarified by recent investigations but is, however, much more complicated than it seemed at first. It must be stressed that the mechanism of hypertension of renal diseases is still unknown. There is no proof that a humoral mechanism is responsible.

A humoral mechanism in the production of hypertension was suggested by Tigerstedt and Bergmann, who isolated a pressor substance from the kidneys. Although confirmed, these experiments rarely received correct evaluation until Goldblatt demonstrated that constriction of the renal arteries in dogs, under certain conditions, causes persistent hypertension. This hypertension may lead to renal changes identical to those seen in human malignant hypertension. The kidney whose artery is clamped does not show these changes, indicating that they are secondary to the hypertension. Complete sympathectomy does not prevent this hypertension, nor is normal blood pressure restored by the operation if hypertension existed (Freeman and Page). Removal of both adrenals causes the blood pressure to return to a normal level (Goldblatt). It was suspected (Hartwich) and later demonstrated that the ischemic kidney releases a substance identical with rennin. *Rennin* is an enzyme that unites with blood globulins to form a peptide, *hypertensin* or *angiotonin*. *Rennin* is probably formed by the cells of the proximal convoluted tubules. Another enzyme is present in blood and tissues (*hypertensinase*) which quickly destroys *hypertensin*. The normal kidney is able to counteract the pressor effect of the pressor substance formed by an ischemic kidney.

*Deamination* According to others, the pressor amines formed during normal metabolic processes are not deaminized by the ischemic (anoxic) kidney, and these circulating amines cause hypertension.

*Kidney Diseases* In acute and chronic nephritis, pyelonephritis, periarteritis nodosa, and polycystic kidney, hypertension is common but not obligatory, so

long as no nitrogen retention exists. The reason for the hypertension is unknown. Even the hypertension in coarction of the aorta has been explained by a diminution of renal blood supply.

It has long been known that hypertension appears in obstruction of the urinary passages and may disappear if the obstruction is removed. Hypertension occurs in prostatic hypertrophy, in hydronephrosis and in ureteral stone. A diminished renal blood supply due to attenuation of the renal vessels is produced by stretch and compression in such cases.

Hypertension appears in unilateral compression of the main renal artery by a tumor, glands or an abnormality of the vessel. It appears in unilateral pyelonephritis or renal embolism. In many instances of unilateral kidney pathology removal of the affected kidney abolished the existing hypertension (Howard). As might be expected, these operations are not always successful, since experimental studies show that a hypertension persisting for a long time leads to secondary vascular changes in the other kidney; therefore the hypertension is maintained even if the initiating factor is abolished. There is a greater probability of a fall of blood pressure following nephrectomy in these cases if the hypertension is less than two years old. Poutasse et al. report on hypertension caused by bilateral stenosis of the renal arteries in three patients, fourteen, fifteen and twenty-five years old. In one of these patients homografting of both renal arteries abolished the hypertension. According to Schaffer and Markowitz, nephrectomy in patients with unilateral kidney disease brings a cure in  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the patients and does not cause any improvement in another third.

Despite the fact that urologic hypertension is not common, a careful history must be taken and intravenous pyelography should be performed in every patient with hypertension of unknown etiology (negative family history) in order to rule out kidney pathology. If this is done, urologic hypertension will be discovered in patients whose history and physical examination arouse no suspicion of the presence of this condition.

The fact that dorso-lumbar sympathectomy may diminish hypertension markedly in patients with renal diseases is not compatible with the assumption of a purely humoral mechanism in these cases.

**Eclampsia** (and pre-eclampsia). This combination of edema (gain in weight!), hypertension and albuminuria with convulsions, coma and death has an unexplained pathogenesis. Penning has however been found in the blood. Hyperadrenalism was considered possible. Toxemia of pregnancy — a term still in use today even if somewhat out of order and inaccurate — appears more readily in patients with renal disease. The syndrome appears in primiparas in the seventh and eighth month but if hypertension already existed it appears earlier more frequently and is more severe. Headache, nausea and drowsiness often precede eclampsia. These attacks like attacks of hypertensive encephalopathy are elicited by the high blood pressure (Byrom).

Sometimes hypertension does not increase during pregnancy but this is not common.

*Kimmelstiel Wilson Syndrome* This syndrome is found in diabetics. It consists of albuminuria, retinopathy, a nephrotic type of edema, hypertension — and later azotemia. Some of these signs are missing at times. The diabetes is often mild. The syndrome may also be found in juvenile diabetics. It appears after the diabetes is present for 8 to 10 years. Death usually occurs in 6 or 7 years. A characteristic finding is the presence of hyaline deposits in the glomeruli. The urine shows double refractory lipid droplets. There is no specific therapy. The mechanism of the hypertension is unknown.

## ESSENTIAL HYPERTENSION

### Definition

As pointed out before, essential idiopathic hypertension is diagnosed when all known causes of hypertension are excluded. Since the introduction of pyelography with contrast media, cases of hypertension are discovered to result from otherwise unsuspected kidney pathology. Progress in endocrinology has helped to explain other instances of hypertension. All these and the other types of hypertension mentioned, however, represent the exceptional case — about 95 per cent of patients under 50 years of age with an increased blood pressure belong to the essential type. It is undetermined whether we are confronted with a disease entity, and it is hoped that more types of hypertension with known mechanisms will be separated from this large group. Until the different forms are recognizable, we are in favor of retaining this useful term.

Inconsistencies in the concept of essential hypertension were pointed out by Raab (1955). According to Pickering (1955), essential hypertension represents the upper end of the distribution curve of blood pressures observed in our population. Essential hypertension is not qualitatively different from normal pressure. Patients with a blood pressure higher than an arbitrarily selected level are separated as a group with essential hypertension.

### Incidence

*Sex.* Age. Essential hypertension seems to be slightly more common in women than in men. Possibly the figures would be different if all hypertension due to previous toxemia of pregnancy and to the menopause were excluded. It occurs at all ages. It has been described in a two year old boy in whom it caused progressive heart failure. It is not rarely encountered in juveniles or adolescents with essential hypertension in their families, particularly with both mother and father suffering from the disease. The temporary moderate increase of blood pressure in juveniles which has been mentioned earlier must be kept in mind.

The great incidence of hypertension of all types in the general population was discussed above. The figures given are also important for evaluating the incidence of essential hypertension if the relation of this form to other types of high blood pressure is remembered.



*Race* It seems established that Negroes living in Africa and Chinese in China rarely have hypertension although they do develop it in the United States with the same frequency seen in the white population (Schwab and Schulze). This difference is significant for it shows that it is not the race but the mode of living and perhaps the type of food which is important.

*Heredity* The frequent occurrence of essential hypertension in several members of the same family is established. Essential hypertension is inherited as a dominant characteristic. In families whose members have an absolutely normal blood pressure the incidence of an elevated arterial pressure in the offspring is 3.1 per cent. If one of the parents has hypertension the incidence rises to 28.3 per cent and in families in which both parents are so affected the incidence is 45.5 per cent. In securing the family history it does not suffice to ask whether hypertension or heart disease have occurred in close relatives. Since most of the patients do not know that a stroke, dropsy, angina pectoris or cardiac failure are often consequences of hypertension they answer in the negative. For this reason it is better to seek the actual causes of death in the previous generation.

It seems that the increase of blood pressure is observed in a progressively younger age group with each generation of a hypertensive family.

*Constitution* The role of constitutional factors has often been discussed. Males suffering from hypertension often present the athenic habitus; they are short, stocky individuals with a short, thick neck and a deep chest. On the other hand, females often appear frail. Exceptions to this rule are however not uncommon. Patients of both sexes are frequently obese and diabetes is common in their families.

### *Pathology*

In early stages of the disease no abnormal findings are discovered in spite of complete postmortem examination. Previous reports dealt with single cases because patients do not often die from this disease at an early stage. These observations were confirmed by many biopsies obtained during sympathectomy for the treatment of essential hypertension. Hypertension antedates the renal vascular changes (Castleman and Smithwick). In 28 per cent of the cases in which a surgical procedure seemed necessary, no changes or only insignificant ones were found in the kidneys.

With longer duration of the hypertension the number of patients with abnormal vascular findings increases. In persistent hypertension arteriole sclerosis is a more regular finding. The kidneys show an irregular granular surface and are contracted. There is a focal arteriosclerotic atrophy with hyalinization of the glomeruli and atrophy of the tubules. Similar arteriosclerotic changes are seen in the spleen, liver, heart and pancreas.

Whether arteriolar sclerosis is a necessary sequel in every hypertension has not been established beyond doubt. It does not occur in cases of coarctation of the aorta or in experimental neurogenic hypertension.

### *Etiology and Pathophysiology*

The mechanism underlying the development of hypertension of the essential type is unknown. It is possible that many factors contribute and that there is more than one etiologic agent.

A small minority of physicians still believes that humoral mechanisms are responsible. But hypertension has not been found in the blood even in the renal vein of hypertensives; it was found only in eclampsia and in hypertensive crises. There is no proof that other pressor amines are responsible. This holds in particular for norepinephrine which more than any other substance when injected intravenously imitates the clinical picture of essential hypertension since the cardiac output and cardiac rate is not increased. Actually only one pressor substance has been found increased, namely pherentisin (Schroeder) which has been isolated from the arterial blood of hypertensives. Its importance as a responsible agent is undecided. The same holds for the vasoexcitator material (VEM) discovered by Shorr and his collaborators. It has been isolated in humans and is found in increased amounts in hypertensives. Its composition is unknown. It is formed in the kidney under anoxic ischemic conditions. Simultaneously a vasodepressor material (VDM) which has been recognized to be the protein ferritin is formed in the liver. Like rennin — from which VEM can be differentiated — it does not cause hypertension directly but is said to sensitize the vessels to epinephrine.

During the administration of desoxycorticosterone, ACTH and cortisone hypertension may occur. Abnormal adrenal function may be responsible in other unknown ways. In this connection the occurrence of hypertension in aldosteronism is of interest.

Selye considers hypertension to be a disease of adaptation. During stress large amounts of corticotropic and corticoid hormones are discharged. Stress may cause hypertension and renal changes similar to nephrosclerosis. An excessive adaptation mechanism is said to lead to the clinical picture of hypertension. The hypertension in Cushing's syndrome, the necessity of the function of the adrenal glands for the maintenance of experimental hypertension and the hypotension of Addison's disease show the importance of the adrenals. Details cannot be evaluated as yet.

According to some authors the kidney maintains a normal blood pressure by inhibiting extrarenal pressor mechanisms. Nephrectomy therefore increases the blood pressure. This extrarenal pressure mechanism may be located in the adrenal cortex.

According to Volhard hypertension is caused by a decreased distensibility of the aorta and carotid arteries leading to an excitation of the receptors of the depressor nerves with higher pressure levels. A similar mechanism is discussed by Kedzi who found the excitability of the receptors of the depressor nerves and the depressor reflex to be normal. Nervous tension causes a rise of blood pressure which in turn produces less stimulation of the pressure regulating nerves in those with a hereditary tendency to degenerative processes in the arterial wall and

changes of the elastic fibers Heymans also considers a decrease of tonus and resistance to stretch of the supraortic arterial wall as the primary mechanism of hypertension

It seems certain that *nervous tension* causes a rise of blood pressure Thus Graham found 187 subjects with hypertension among 685 soldiers in an armored brigade during the last war who had experienced at least one year of desert warfare with great excitement and stress The mean blood pressure was 178/114 mm Hg In 38 per cent a systolic blood pressure of 160 or more was found and in 26.9 per cent the diastolic pressure was 100 or over Out of 33 patients with hypertension the pressure returned to normal in 28 within two months after the excitement ceased

In the Texas City Disaster in 1947 Ruskin found hypertension in 103 out of 180 patients examined Injury of the hypothalamus causes hypertension hypertension was provoked in rats by audiogenic stimuli (Medoff and Bongiovanni)

The frequency of nervous hypertension (anxiety hypertension) is indicated by its presence in 14 per cent of 1574 applicants at a military procurement office

The fact that many emotions great mental strain, rage and anxiety cause a temporary hypertension is further evidence of the role of a nervous mechanism in the development of essential hypertension A hyperexcitable sympathetic system an abnormal vascular response to physiologic stimuli or an abnormality of the vasomotor centers (Raab) may be responsible Spinal anesthesia may cause a fall of blood pressure to almost normal levels in hypertension

The incidence of persistent hypertension seems greater in those who have had a transitory elevation of blood pressure in their youth

A certain type of personality is said to be common in patients with hypertension Such patients are very active great planners very dynamic and quick in every action They talk fast and give an excellent history They undress quickly for examination eat rapidly never walk but run One must concede however that at times patients with essential hypertension belong to the quiet slow deliberate type and seem exactly the opposite to the patients just described

Certain other personal traits have been found to be common There is great perfectionism and a subnormal assertiveness Emotional instability and compulsive tendencies exist There is often maladjustment Schroeder considers essential hypertension to be a psychosomatic disease

A combination of several of the above mentioned mechanisms is possible and even probable

An abnormal or individually exaggerated response of the autonomic nervous system to the normal excitements of daily life leads to a temporary slight narrowing of the peripheral arterioles and to transient hypertension Narrowing of the vessels in the central nervous system may prolong and accentuate this hypertension since the reduction of the cerebral blood supply causes chronic hypertension Constriction of the renal vessels and stimulation of the adrenal cortex accentuates and prolongs the bouts of hypertension by the formation of pressor substances and production of pressor hormones A vicious cycle develops (Wilson and Barry)

Thus the following formula may be real: nerve stimuli act on the hypothalamus which in turn increases the tonus of the sympathetic system. This leads to renal ischemia and to greater peripheral resistance because of vasoconstriction which is in part humoral. Sooner or later there are anatomic vascular changes in the arterioles since this part of the circulatory system offering the chief resistance is subject to the greatest stress in hypertension. It causes a drop of blood pressure from the high level in the arteries to the low one in the capillaries.

### *Symptoms*

In most of these cases hypertension even when marked causes no symptoms whatever. The increased blood pressure is discovered accidentally on the occasion of a life insurance examination or a similar situation. Many patients aware of a high blood pressure for many years deny any discomfort. Understandably many patients particularly the more sensitive and alert type develop symptoms from the time they are informed of the existence of a hypertension. They have symptoms because they know that they have hypertension. Patients are known to have had a systolic blood pressure of around 200 mm Hg for more than 20 years without any complaints.

*Fatigue* Some patients seek help because of increased irritability, sleeplessness and fatigue. The last mentioned symptom is not rare but its mechanism is unexplained. This fatigue is very distressing and is unrelieved by rest. The same symptom is also common in arteriosclerosis. We are not aware of any simple reliable therapeutic agent for its relief. Fortunately the fatigue which plagues many patients may disappear spontaneously for some time but sooner or later it reappears. It often occurs without any evidence of cardiac failure.

*Irritability and Tenseness* Many patients are tense they feel driven and despite an effort to do things more slowly and with less expenditure of energy they are unable to put the brakes on. This makes one believe that the great irritability and restlessness are not the cause of hypertension but a feature of its clinical picture.

*Epistaxis Vertigo* Occasionally epistaxis is of sufficient severity to necessitate hospitalization. It is explained by changes in the capillaries of the nasal mucosa. Tinnitus and attacks of vertigo are not rare. Vertigo occurs on change of posture and is sometimes so severe that the patient is unable to lift his head from the pillow or to change position in bed.

*Headache* This is one of the most common symptoms. Often it is present on awakening or early in the morning and vanishes after an hour or more. It may be occipital or frontal and tends to be symmetrical rather than unilateral. It may have a migrainous character. Strong pulsations of the meningeal arteries are probably responsible. In most cases there is no parallelism between the height of the blood pressure and the severity of the headache. Sometimes however the headache is decidedly more severe when the blood pressure rises and therapy which lowers arterial pressure abolishes the headache. In malignant hypertension the headache may be due to cerebral edema and then is relieved by lumbar puncture. Nausea

and vomiting may occur. Sudden appearance of exceedingly severe headache is ominous.

**Loss of Weight** In advanced stages of hypertension especially in patients with generalized arteriosclerosis a sudden inexplicable loss of weight often impels the patient to seek medical advice. While it is generally believed that hypertension is more common in the obese the idea is by no means unanimous (Proger). However undernutrition as it existed during the siege of Leningrad in the last war does cause a fall of pressure. In patients with hypertension obesity may aggravate the cardiac burden. In patients without hypertension or cardiac disease a syndrome has been described consisting of obesity, alveolar hypoventilation, arterial hypoxemia with secondary polycythemia and pulmonary hypertension causing right heart failure. Reduction of weight causes marked improvement (Kerr and Lagen Weil).

**Other Complaints** In the late stages when such complications as cardiac failure, coronary atherosclerosis, angina pectoris or cerebral vascular sclerosis develop the symptoms peculiar to these disorders appear.

Pounding and palpitation on effort or at rest are common complaints. With the onset of left ventricular failure nocturnal dyspnea and cough begin.

### *Signs*

**Blood Pressure** The chief sign is elevated blood pressure. The blood pressure should be taken repeatedly with the patient in the recumbent position and the highest as well as the lowest values should be recorded. The auscultatory values should be checked against those obtained by palpation and estimation should be made in both arms.

If hypertension is found the physician should try to obtain the reading with the patient relaxed — for example after a good night's rest or after the administration of a barbiturate (0.2 Gm. of sodium amytal) or a similar sedative.

In essential hypertension the systolic and diastolic blood pressure are both elevated. The value of the diastolic pressure is more important than that of the systolic. Every value above 95–100 mm Hg is very suggestive. The systolic level may exceed 300 mm Hg and the diastolic may be higher than 180 but usually the systolic pressure is near 200 and the diastolic near 100 mm Hg.

**Palpation** Physical examination starts with palpation of the peripheral arteries. Hypertonus of the vessels may make the pulse scarcely palpable despite the hypertension. With medial calcification the vessels assume a pipestem character.

Palpation of the chest and the precordial area in particular reveals no characteristic signs in benign hypertension. Marked hypermotility is palpated in malignant hypertension; this may be due to the activity of pressor substances.

**Percussion and X-ray Examination** The heart may be of normal size and shape for many years. It has been correctly pointed out (Raub) that hypertrophy and dilatation do not parallel the height of the blood pressure. Other perhaps hormonal factors may play a role. The left ventricle responds to increased aortic pressure with greater residual filling and therefore higher initial tension of the

muscle fibers causing secondary hypertrophy. These changes involve the outflow tract of the left ventricle and cause downward displacement of the apex without enlargement of the transverse diameter. Since the lower part of the elongated ventricle is hidden in the abdominal shadow, negative x-ray findings, particularly with films taken in the postero-anterior view in a patient known to have hypertension for many years, are not rare. In the course of the disease, sometimes even



FIG. 86. Aortic configuration of the heart and widened aorta in a 50-year-old patient with hypertension.

20 years after the onset, the left ventricle also dilates in a transverse diameter and an aortic configuration appears (figure 86). Cardiac hypertrophy and dilatation may assume great proportions and, with the exception of patients with aortic insufficiency, the hypertensive heart may be the largest and heaviest encountered. If the patient has a *cor bovinum* but no aortic insufficiency or hypertension, it is probable that he once had hypertension which has since vanished.

The development of pulmonary congestion coincides with the mitralization of the heart.

The aorta is dilated in the early stages but it is a dynamic dilatation which is not demonstrable at necropsy. Later, with the appearance of atheromatosis,

the dilatation becomes permanent. This dilatation is diffuse but in the ascending aorta it fails to reach the degree usually seen in aortitis. The descending aorta is also dilated in contrast to the situation usually observed in aortitis.

The elongation of the aorta sometimes causes a pulsation that is palpable in the jugular notch. The elongation also displaces the right subclavian and the innominate arteries upward in the neck so that abnormally strong pulsations may be found on the right side of the neck above the clavicles which may be mistaken for those of an aneurysm. The upward displacement of the aorta and innominate artery shortens the distance between the orifices of the right carotid artery at the innominate and its entrance into the skull. This leads to an abnormal course and even kinking of the right carotid (Brown and Rowntree). A similar kink may also produce an aneurysm like pulsating mass in the left side of the neck when the elongated sclerotic left carotid artery pursues an abnormal course (Parkinson et al).

**Auscultation.** The heart rate is usually normal or slightly increased. The first heart sound is accentuated at the apex and the second sound is abnormally loud over the aorta. This accentuation is absent however in many cases even if obesity or emphysema; the usual reasons for the absence of the second sound are not present. The second aortic sound was found normal in 46 per cent of hypertensives (Cossio et al). With the increased fibrosis and the appearance of lime salt deposits in the aorta the second sound may assume a metallic, ringing character.

A systolic murmur is often audible over the apex and the aorta. Sometimes both murmurs originate in the aortic area and the systolic apical murmur is merely transmitted. In patients with emphysema the aortic murmur may disappear when the aorta is covered by lung; in this instance the murmur is audible only at the apex.

Most often the aortic murmur is due to dilatation of the left ventricle and the widening of the aorta in the absence of dilatation of the aortic orifice. A relative stenosis mechanism exists. Later especially in elderly patients sclerosis of the aortic valves may be responsible. The apical murmur may also be created by sclerosis of the mitral valve particularly its aortic leaflet. Naturally both of these murmurs the result of valvular sclerosis also occur in elderly patients without hypertension. The murmur due to atheromatosis is often mid systolic and accordingly is easily separated from the first heart sound.

With the development of a more pronounced dilatation of the left ventricle a relative mitral insufficiency appears and with it a new loud blowing systolic murmur may be heard at the apex.

Gallop rhythm and pulsus alternans are common findings in hypertensive patients with the onset of myocardial failure.

A diastolic aortic murmur due to a relative aortic insufficiency is in our opinion extremely rare.

**Fundus Examination.** Examination of the fundi shows many abnormalities. This examination has fundamental significance in establishing the degree of

vascular changes. It should be done frequently to watch the progress of alterations. The earliest change consists in a contraction (narrowing) of the arteries but often even this is missed in early stages so that the fundi are considered normal. With the development of arteriosclerotic changes new phenomena appear. The vessels become tortuous, the light reflex is wider, copper or silver wire patterns occur, the lumen of the arteries becomes irregular and venous compression is visible at crossings.

Hyaline deposits in the narrowed arterial walls cause the silver wire appearance. Even in the early stage acute constriction of the arterioles may lead to exudates (cotton wool patches) and hemorrhages; these disappear readily when vasospasm (acute angiopathic retinopathy) relieves. All atherosclerotic changes are occasionally found without elevation of the blood pressure.

With the development of very marked vasoconstriction and higher spinal fluid pressure the optic disc swells and papilledema appears.

#### *Importance of Retinal Findings*

There have been repeated endeavors to differentiate several stages or grades of the disease. One method is based upon the retinal findings (Wagener and Keith). In the first grade the retinal findings are normal. This large group embraces those who have a normal blood pressure at rest and during sleep; moreover they have few symptoms or signs. In the second grade some evidence of retinal vascular sclerosis is present but none of hemorrhages or exudates. In the third grade mild vasospastic retinopathy with hemorrhages and exudates exists but no papilledema. In the fourth grade because of an increased spinal fluid pressure papilledema is present in addition to the other changes. This hypertensive neuroretinopathy is always symmetrical. While this differentiation of the retinal changes is a great aid in evaluating the

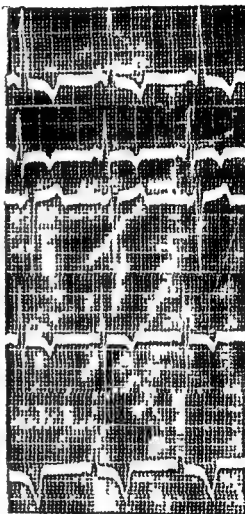


FIG. 8. Pattern of left ventricular strain in a 53 year old woman with hypertension.



status of the patient the prognosis depends upon many factors such as the status of the heart and brain

*Leg Ulcers* Ischemic ulcers of the legs are rare but do occur in hypertension (Martorell) they develop in the lateral supramalleolar region For the most part they appear in women between 50 and 70 who have had hypertension for many years Intimal proliferation is found in the arteries There is no specific therapy and the ulcers are slow to heal

*Laboratory Findings* In many cases the urine shows no albumin but in others albuminuria is very pronounced from the start Granular and hyaline casts also appear Sometimes the albuminuria is due to congestive heart failure

Examination of the blood urea nonprotein nitrogen and creatinin shows normal findings until there is destruction of the kidney parenchyma and renal ischemia The cholesterol level of the blood is occasionally slightly elevated The basal metabolic rate is frequently abnormal and even excessively high without any demonstrable thyroid involvement or existing cardiac failure

*Electrocardiogram* The electrocardiogram shows often left axis deviation this is however common in healthy subjects In late stages with the development of left ventricular hypertrophy and dilatation the RS T segment and T waves are displaced below the zero line in lead I (and often in lead II) while they are displaced upward in lead III This pattern of left ventricular strain is the same as that seen in aortic insufficiency (figure 87) The chest leads reveal more diagnostic changes In V2 leads the R waves may be absent and the S is deep in V5 there is a tall R wave, rarely followed by an S and the RS T as well as the T are depressed below the isoelectric line

In many cases of hypertension particularly in the advanced type with hypermotility of the heart a very short P R interval is found (Scherf) Thus in figure 87 in addition to the pattern of left ventricular strain a P R interval of 0.12 is present The conduction time often is even shorter This tracing was obtained from a 58 year old woman with a blood pressure of 210/120 mm Hg This shortening of the P R interval is by no means characteristic It is common in thiamin deficiency

### Course

The tempo of the disease is subject to great variation Progress may be slow and a patient seen ten years after the first examination may still show the same findings At other times the course is stormy and the changes progress rapidly

*Importance of Fixation of Blood Pressure* From a purely clinical standpoint for many years two stages have been differentiated in patients with essential hypertension The first is the stage of fluctuating blood pressure values The examining physician finds a systolic blood pressure of 200 mm Hg in the first measurement If the determination is repeated in a few minutes after the patient has become adjusted and quiet the systolic blood pressure may be 160 mm Hg In this stage any excitement mental or physical exertion causes

a remarkable rise of blood pressure. The innumerable impressions of daily life furnish sufficient occasion for maintaining the hypertension continually during the day. During sleep or after the administration of sedatives after prolonged rest in bed the blood pressure is normal.

After a variable period the stage of fixed blood pressure is reached. Additional rise from excitement still occurs but neither sleep nor sedatives reduce the blood pressure to a normal level.

By this time arteriosclerosis may develop and the clinical picture as well as the course, complications and prognosis depend on the degree of vascular changes in the different organs. Circulatory complications are the most common. renal complications are rare.

*Circulatory Complications.* These are manifold. At least 50 per cent of the cases develop heart failure. The progressive coronary sclerosis damages the myocardium which works under the heavy strain imposed by the hypertension. This soon results in congestive heart failure. In many patients, coronary sclerosis leads to angina pectoris on effort and myocardial infarction as the consequence of coronary occlusion. It was noted earlier that hypertension is a common finding in patients with exertional angina and coronary thrombosis. A small percentage of patients show evidence of obstructive atherosclerosis of the peripheral vessels of the lower extremities. The early appearance of vascular complications does not depend on the height of the arterial blood pressure.

The electrocardiogram may be very helpful in evaluating the progress of coronary sclerosis. In addition to the left ventricular strain mentioned before slurring and widening of the QRS complexes (intraventricular block) and T wave changes may indicate the presence of coronary sclerosis. The fact must be stressed however that marked coronary sclerosis need not cause any electrocardiographic changes under certain circumstances.

*Cerebral Complications.* Paralysis, hemiplegia, aphasia occur in 13 per cent of hypertensive patients. In some cases these accidents are due to embolism from mural thrombi in the left ventricle. More often they result from arterial thrombosis or hemorrhage or are due to cerebral edema. Local vascular spasm (cerebral crises) are responsible for many temporary lesions (Byrom). The same mechanism causes the so called hypertensive encephalopathy.

Headache and vertigo often precede cerebral vascular accidents for some time.

In all probability cerebral hemorrhage is not the result of a simple rupture of an artery. Experiments on cadavers show that a tremendous pressure (1520 mm Hg) is necessary to rupture a cerebral artery. Angiospasm causing local ischemia and therefore damage of vessels or damage of brain tissue seems to be the responsible cause. Congenital anomalies are also possible factors.

*Other Complications.* Sclerosis of the renal and cerebral vessels may produce or increase an existing hypertension as pointed out earlier.

Sclerosis of the splenic or hepatic arteries in this stage does not lead to complications. A coexistent nephrosclerosis does not cause complications for

some time because an impairment of renal function can be found only by very sensitive special tests

Not rarely, diabetes appears in this stage and is attributed to a sclerosis of the pancreatic arteries. Glycosuria is found frequently and should be looked for particularly after a meal rich in carbohydrates. Nephrosclerosis however increases the renal threshold and may prevent glycosuria despite a markedly elevated blood sugar. The blood sugar level is therefore much more important than the amount of urinary sugar in the appraisal of these cases.

With rapid failure of the heart or following coronary thrombosis with myocardial infarction or because of slowly developing myocardial fibrosis the systolic blood pressure may fall while the diastolic remains at a high level. Thus the pulse pressure is reduced markedly. In some cases the diastolic blood pressure also falls to a normal level then the diagnosis of a former hypertension is suggested only by the discovery of an unusually large left ventricle. We would like to stress again the frequent occurrence of fibrotic occlusion of secondary and tertiary branches of the coronary arteries in middle aged and elderly patients particularly in the presence of hypertension (Baurle, Rau). This event receives too little consideration by clinicians.

**Renal Complications.** Only a small percentage of patients (7—10 per cent) reach the stage of renal insufficiency and die from uremia. This event occurs most often in the group of patients who develop the syndrome of malignant hypertension.

### MALIGNANT HYPERTENSION

This is not a disease entity but rather a syndrome that appears in different diseases which lead to hypertension — essential hypertension, chronic nephritis and pyelonephritis. Therefore the term malignant phase or accelerated phase of hypertension seems to be more appropriate. The pathogenesis is unknown but it seems to occur when the diastolic blood pressure is very high.

Clinically the disease is said to have entered the malignant phase when the course is rapidly downhill when the diastolic blood pressure is elevated to values about 130 mm Hg and remains fixed at that level and the fundal changes (mentioned below) appear.

Histologically the condition is characterized by the appearance of necrosis of the afferent arterioles in the kidney, focal necrosis of the tufts, a proliferative response of the glomeruli and diffuse endarteritis (proliferative capsulitis).

Malignant hypertension often appears in relatively young people. In one series 67 per cent of patients were between 35 and 55 years of age, one subject was only 17 (Ellis).

In principle the symptoms are those of essential hypertension but more accentuated. Headache is common and progressive. Papilledema and retinal hemorrhages are rarely missed. The higher diastolic pressure causes a higher spinal fluid pressure leading to papilledema. However Perera found papilledema when the blood pressure was low. Renal function is impaired, the specific

gravity becomes fixed and the blood contains an increase of nonprotein nitrogen and creatinine. Albuminuria may be missed for some time but red blood cells appear in the urine early. The differentiation from chronic nephritis is very difficult. The outlook is always very bad and the disease runs a downhill course ending within a few years. Death may occur within one year after symptoms appear.

One of the best clinical signs is the elevation of the diastolic blood pressure to values above 130; even values of 160–180 are observed. The marked narrowing of the arterioles responsible for this sign leads to renal insufficiency, vascular wall necrosis and cerebral edema. However the accelerated phase does not depend on the height of the blood pressure (Perera). It may occur even when the blood pressure is considerably lowered by cardiac accidents. Palpitation often shows a marked hypermotility of the heart as in hyperthyroidism and the whole precordium may pulsate. The P-R interval in the electrocardiogram is often shortened and unusual values of less than 12 hundredths of a second often are observed. The serum of patients with renal insufficiency contains cardiotoxic substances which may be responsible (Prab).

The picture of malignant hypertension can be produced experimentally by the Goldblatt mechanism but not by neurogenic factors.

In general the prognosis is very poor but spontaneous improvements do occur. Fortunately improvement is more common with modern therapeutic measures. The average survival time in the group observed by Schottstaedt and Sokolow was 9 months. The two year mortality was reduced from 90 to 50 per cent by sympathectomy and currently is even lower with hexamethonium and apresoline. The rice diet alone or any diet containing 20 grams of protein daily may abolish this syndrome and the azotemia may disappear with it. Page found that therapy with pyrogens may be successful. The patient receives bacterial pyrogens intravenously daily for one month so that the temperature is raised to about 34° Celsius after each injection.

### Prognosis

The prognosis of essential hypertension is difficult to ascertain since even a very mild form may suddenly assume a malignant course particularly in young people; moreover complications like coronary thrombosis may appear unexpectedly and change the whole picture. The mode of life, the habits of the patient in regard to the quantity of food taken, alcoholism and the like are important in the ultimate prognosis. The prognosis also depends upon the sex of the patient, women having in general a better prognosis.

If patients have electrocardiographic changes indicative of myocardial damage and usually caused by coronary sclerosis or if gallop rhythm exists or if attacks of cardiac asthma have appeared the prognosis is dubious. An elevation of the diastolic blood pressure above 120 mm. Hg is significant — this may lead to progressive changes. On the other hand patients may have a diastolic blood pressure of 130 mm. Hg for years without developing evidence of the malig-

nant phase. Observations are on record in which a blood pressure of 220/120 was observed for 20 years or 225/140 for 16 years (Perera) and milder forms of hypertension for 50 years (Pratt). Women in particular sometimes tolerate excessive blood pressure well for many years. The average duration of hypertension according to Perera is 19 years. The height of the blood pressure is not the only factor important for the prognosis nor for the size of the heart or the changes in the electrocardiogram. An improvement of the fundus or the disappearance of hypertrophy patterns in the electrocardiogram have been observed without change of blood pressure. Burgess stressed the chances of a normal or nearly normal life expectancy in patients over 50 with hypertension in the absence of cardiac, cerebral or renal damage.

### *Therapy*

In discussing the therapy of essential hypertension it is necessary to stress from the beginning that no rational therapy is available because we lack knowledge of the developmental mechanism of this condition. Great progress has been made in symptomatic management however and therapeutic nihilism is unjustified.

Five types of therapeutic measures will be discussed: (1) general measures (2) diet (3) drugs (4) surgery and (5) symptomatic treatment.

*General Management.* The attitude of the physician when hypertension is found has primary importance. Unfortunately too many physicians still frown and look very serious when they find a hypertension. Advice is often given which convinces the patient that the situation is extremely grave. Actually the patient must be told that the blood pressure is elevated, for without this information certain measures that require his cooperation are impossible. On the other hand the exact readings need not be given despite the possibility that some patients will go from one physician to another until one is found who will unhesitatingly reveal the height of the blood pressure. The patient attaches too much importance to the different levels of pressure found on different occasions: a rise of 5 mm. for example may mean impending disaster to him.

After discovery of the hypertension it is advisable to do a general examination including (in advanced stages) tests of renal function (of which Volhard's concentration test or a modification thereof is still the most reliable), a roentgen examination of the chest, an electrocardiogram and an intravenous pyelography. If all these findings are negative it is important to stress that it is possible for the patient to live a symptom free active life and to live for a long time. The hypertension need not cause complaints for 30 years. It is important to stress that there is no danger of a stroke (the complication most dreaded by the patient) and that while there is need for continuous medical observation frequent visits are not required. The patient should not become blood pressure conscious.

A frank discussion of the mode of life should follow. Sources of apprehension, fear and anxiety should be abolished if possible. Excessive mental strain should be avoided as well as physical overwork. Excessive responsibilities extracurricular

ular activities and emotional conflicts should be avoided. If hypertension is discovered in young individuals a profession should be suggested in which mental and physical strain are minimal. Rest periods, vacations and long sleep at night should be secured. The patient must avoid overeating. The quantity of food is not less important than the quality. The time is past when red meats or meat in general were forbidden. Foodstuffs with a high content of fat such as eggs, tongue, liver, cream and all fats are not permitted. There is no proof that normal quantities of spices are harmful. There is no objection to small quantities of alcohol in early phases but smoking should be forbidden since there are patients in whom the blood pressure always rises after smoking. Sex problems must be discussed frankly and any undue excitement or apprehension in this question should be avoided. Cystitis and pyelitis if present particularly in women must be treated by specific measures.

The blood pressure may fall if obese people reduce their weight; therefore a low caloric diet is warranted in such patients.

**Diet.** In recent years the diet in patients with hypertension has received increasing attention. For years this was neglected and — in spite of the pioneer work of Allen in addition to that of Ambard, Strauss and Volhard — was considered to be a peculiarity of Continental Medicine. It is to the credit of Kempner that with the publication of his work on the rice diet the attention of physicians was again drawn to the importance of diet in hypertensive patients.

At the present time one often sees as usual exaggerations of dietetic therapy. Patients with a blood pressure of 150/100 mm Hg are put on a salt free diet and patients with coarctation of the aorta or old people with a purely systolic hypertension from atheroma and loss of elasticity of the ascending aorta are tortured by a strict salt free diet which of course is useless in such patients.

A strictly salt free diet that is a diet containing not more than 200 mg of sodium leads to a fall of blood pressure in about 40 per cent of the patients. Often it is not tolerated. A salt poor diet containing around 500 mg of sodium only rarely helps. The salt free diet is built on lard, baked potatoes, sugar and oleomargarine and is gradually amplified with the aid of diet prescriptions such as those made available by the American Heart Association. In the first edition of this book we mentioned that the loss of sodium by the body is accelerated by a few injections of a mercurial diuretic but this measure is rarely necessary.

**RICE DIET.** On the basis of studies of the metabolism of isolated kidney cells, Kempner introduced the rice diet initially only for renal hypertension guided by the idea that it would diminish the load on the kidneys just as the load on the heart is diminished in patients with cardiac damage by the avoidance of exertion. Later the diet was employed in other forms of hypertension as well and with results that were startling.

The diet consists of 250–300 grams of rice of any type duly with fruits and orange juice. It contains about 2000 calories, only 5 grams of fat, 20 grams of protein duly, 200 mg of chloride and 150 mg of sodium. One banana duly is permitted. Avocados, nuts and dates are avoided. Fluids are given only in the form

of fruit juices and the amount should not exceed 1000 ml daily. The rice is boiled or steamed; the fruit and juices are fresh and canned ones are permitted only if no sodium salts were used to preserve them.

Vitamin A (5000 U) Vitamin D (1000 U) thiamin chloride (5 mg) riboflavin (5 mg) and calcium pantothenate (2 mg) are given daily. A little iron should be added. After a few months some green (non leguminous) vegetables may be added and later lean meat broiled or boiled. Weak coffee is also permissible.

During treatment particularly in the first three weeks the serum sodium and urea should be watched because of the possibility of the patient losing large amounts of salt by the kidneys and developing hyponatremia and azotemia. If mild azotemia is present it is not a contraindication to the diet.

The diet is easy to explain but hard to follow. It is monotonous and only a small percentage of patients have the will power to go through with it. In those who do, success with a considerable fall of blood pressure (in 70 per cent) and of cholesterol (in 40 per cent) will be accomplished. The heart becomes markedly smaller, the electrocardiogram becomes normalized and abnormal changes in the fundi disappear. Headache and palpitation disappear. Azotemia diminishes and the patient feels better.

The method of action of this diet is not clear. At first any effect was denied on the basis of brief observations of only a few patients. Actually the diet must be followed for many months (for a year in one of our patients) until some effect is observed. In others a fall of blood pressure is seen after four or five days. Later investigations — by the Medical Research Council in Great Britain for example — yielded the same result: that is a beneficial effect in 70 per cent. Even in patients with pyroledema astonishing results have been reported (Nowborg and Kempner).

In spite of these results and the experiences of others, one still finds remarks in the literature that the beneficial effect is obtained because of the fanaticism of the supervisors of the diet, their influence on the psyche of the patient and similar effects. But no fanaticism could abolish the pyroledema of 23 out of 28 cases before the rice diet was introduced.

The consensus at the present time apparently is that the diet's efficacy stems from its low content of sodium, the chief argument being that patients who experience a fall of pressure during the diet show a rise as soon as salt is added. We do not consider this a convincing argument since with other modes of therapy as well addition of salt may cause the pressure to rise. The rice diet is poorer in fat and proteins than any other diet and the influence of these factors has had little study. An action through the adrenals is one of the possibilities. In the first three months the patient is in a negative nitrogen balance but soon particularly because of the protein sparing action of carbohydrates equilibrium is reached. It has been stated that the rice diet should not be any better than one of barley or macaroni. To this one must answer that rice is a staple food which contains more than any other the necessary amino acids, only methionine and histidine are said to be lacking.

It is astonishing that even on hot summer days the patients never develop a low salt syndrome provided salt does not leak from the kidneys. Appearance of great lassitude, headaches, apathy, anorexia and muscle spasm point to the presence of salt depletion.

How long this diet can be continued without harm has not been established as yet.

In patients who because of their occupation are not forced to eat in restaurants and who have the will power we consider the rice diet a measure that if followed certainly prolongs life.

Here as in the salt free diet half measures are of no use. Only strict adherence to the diet brings help. It should not be abandoned before strict observance for a year has failed to bring about success.

**RESINS** Resins will be discussed in further detail in the section on diuretics. They are of help but are not a substitute for a salt poor diet. In patients on a normal diet with reference to salt, resins absorb only a small quantity. With the use of resins certain risks are involved and the question of whether the slight increase of the salt intake possible with their employment helps sufficiently to take the risks and unpleasantness involved must be answered in the negative.

In general the resins are disappointing in patients with hypertension. In patients with hyperkalemia they may be useful in diminishing the potassium content of the serum and tissues.

**Drug Treatment** Sedatives particularly phenobarbital and chloral hydrate with bromides have great value as an adjuvant to induce relaxation.

Almost all of the drugs recommended during the years such as iodides, preparations of garlic, bismuth subnitrate and many others seem to be useless. There is no proof that the frequently used purine derivatives have a beneficial effect. We wish to reemphasize however that experimental atherosclerosis caused by cholesterol feeding can be prevented in rabbits by the simultaneous administration of iodine.

**SULPHOCYANATES** Treatment with sodium or potassium sulphocyanate may have an appreciable effect in lowering blood pressure and in relieving head ache. Due to their great toxicity however these substances were soon abandoned although treatment involving their use has been revived repeatedly. To reduce the incidence of toxic manifestations it has been recommended that the blood level of the thiocyanates be checked frequently.

No explanation of the mechanism of the fall of the blood pressure during the administration of potassium thiocyanate is available. An action through the adrenal cortex has been assumed.

Administration of the drug is contraindicated in patients with kidney lesions because here even a single dose may elevate the blood level for 2 to 3 weeks. Severe atherosclerosis, cerebral complications, congestive heart failure or angina pectoris are also considered contraindications.

The single dose is 0.2 Gm. The dose for different patients must vary because the individual excretion of the thiocyanates varies greatly. Usually three tablets



of 0.2 Gm. are given daily for three days and then two a day until a blood level of 8–12 mg. per cent is reached. The headaches disappear even with a level of 3–6 mg. per cent. With higher levels toxic manifestations are common. They occur however even with lower levels. Maintenance may be kept with one tablet a day or 3 to 5 tablets a week. Continuous treatment for many months or years has been reported without complications or untoward signs. On the other hand early toxic manifestations are frequent and develop in approximately 20 to 30 per cent of those treated. Fatalities have been reported despite biweekly determination of the blood level which never exceeded 10 mg. per cent. The plasma level may suddenly rise without apparent cause.

The earliest signs of toxicity are weakness and nausea. Dizziness, hallucinations, confusion and other psychotic manifestations with illusions, depression, convulsions and coma, pains in the jaw, thrombophlebitis, purpura and dermatitis (Cheyne Stokes breathing, abdominal pain and fever) may follow. Signs of toxicity may persist for 3 or 4 weeks despite immediate cessation of treatment. Often death is not preventable. Therefore several observers oppose the general use of these dangerous drugs. Our personal experience is in complete agreement with this attitude. The blood pressure is appreciably reduced in about 30 to 40 per cent of the cases treated and symptoms such as headache may be greatly relieved. But the dangers intrinsic to this method of treatment are great and no proof is available to show that it prolongs life. The blood pressure rises soon after treatment is interrupted. As with many other drugs the use of which yields occasional success but also dangerous complications, many authorities are enthusiastic until they encounter the first fatality despite every precaution. In rare cases however with an unusual rise of blood pressure and headache and the impossibility of giving relief by other methods, potassium thiocyanate may be tried. Its use in hypertensive crises was mentioned earlier. It has been recommended (St. Pierre) that sodium thiocyanate be injected intravenously in subjects with headache. Twenty cubic centimeters of a solution containing 1.390 Gm. of sodium thiocyanate is injected. This amount does not cause toxic blood levels.

Since therapy with thiocyanates diminished the blood pressure decidedly in some cases, the question arises whether this reduction is not associated with danger. As soon as organic changes develop in the arterioles it is argued hypertension is a necessary compensatory mechanism to insure tissue nutrition. If the blood pressure falls less blood is forced through the narrowed vessels into the tissues and their nutrition suffers. Urea clearance tests however reveal no diminution of kidney efficiency in hypertensives following marked reduction of blood pressure with thiocyanates. On the other hand it is a common observation that a slight reduction of blood pressure following coronary occlusion may be associated with evidence of disturbed cerebral blood supply or an increase of blood nonprotein nitrogen and creatinine. These signs promptly disappear when the blood pressure rises again.

**RAUWOLFIA SERIENATA.** This climbing shrub from the foothills of the Himalayas and the Malayan peninsula was known for centuries in India as a

remedy for hysteria some forms of insanity for snake bite and as a vermifuge. In recent years Indian physicians first became aware of the beneficial effects observed when this drug was used in hypertensives. The crude extract from the root leaves or a purified fraction (alseroxylon) of the plant or a purified alkaloid (reserpine) are used. Actually a fall of the blood pressure occurred according to one observer in 60 per cent of patients treated. A good effect is obtained from this tranquilizing agent particularly in nervous irritable patients with mild hypertension but remarkable improvement was also observed in malignant hypertension. In those patients in whom *Pauwolfia* preparations do not help the administration of veratrine or Apresoline in addition often brings improvement. In rare cases there was an orthostatic hypotension without collapse. The blood pressure begins to fall in some individuals after 3 to 12 weeks. Following intravenous injections there is a latent period of an hour. While originally larger doses were used the Food and Drug Administration now recommends that only the equivalent of 0.25 mg. of Serpasil or reserpamine be administered daily. Larger doses may depress the blood pressure more but the side effects increase too much. The hypotensive effect may persist after the drug has been discontinued for four weeks.

The relative harmlessness of reserpine is illustrated by the following episode: a 20 month old boy ingested 260 mg. of reserpine (Serpasil). He slept during most of the succeeding twenty four hours; his face was flushed and the temperature was 101.4° F. There was a tachycardia. The sleep was not deep and the child could be awakened at any time for feedings. There were no after effects.

In patients with rheumatic valvular lesions or coronary sclerosis on the verge of decompensation the appearance of severe edema and hepatic enlargement is noted when *Pauwolfia* preparations are given.

Some of the side effects — which are few — are useful. One is bradycardia or at least a reduction of the pulse rate by 10 per cent. This seems to be caused by a central inhibition of sympathetic tone. Another is the disappearance of constipation. Loose bowel movements, slight light headedness, diminished libido at the beginning of therapy, muscle and joint pains, bronchitis, stuffiness of the nose, rarely epistaxis or bloody discharge, otitis, restlessness, anxiety, nightmares, gain in weight, fatigue, buzzing in the ears and even Horner's syndrome are observed. Diminished activity leads to gain in weight. No tolerance develops and the therapy can be continued for years.

A more serious and not extremely rare complication, especially when larger doses are used, is marked mental depression. Some authors found mental depression in 10 per cent of their patients treated with the alkaloid reserpine. Some report a similar effect on the blood pressure but no mental depression when another alkaloid — reserpamine — was used. The mental depression particularly occurs in patients with depressive tendencies or maladjustment earlier in their lives. After cessation of the drug the depression may persist for 4 to 6 weeks. Suicidal tendencies, agitation and insomnia occur particularly with larger doses.

Parkinsonism appears often if larger doses are used Epistaxis diminished mental activity inability to concentrate and impaired judgment have been reported Exacerbation of ulcerative colitis occurs It is still undecided whether peptic ulcer is a contraindication Hemorrhages are observed during medication Gastric hypersecretion is common

It seems that there is a greater fall of the diastolic pressure with the administration of preparations made from the crude root than with reserpine The differences are however small The Rauwolfia alkaloid rescinnamine is as effective as the alkaloid reserpine It causes the same side effects however often with less severity There are patients who exhibit with reserpine on the other hand a lesser degree of some side effects than rescinnamine

Achor et al found nasal stuffiness in 83 per cent of their patients dreaming or nightmares in 42 per cent depressive effects in 17 per cent laxative effects in 28 per cent muscle aches or cramps in 9 per cent dizziness in 6 per cent and urinary urgency in 4 per cent It has been recommended to omit the drug in one week of four when very marked untoward effects appear Since administration of only 0.5 mg of reserpine for two weeks often caused massive gastric hemorrhage or perforation of a gastric ulcer it has been recommended not to give larger doses than 0.25 mg daily Great caution is also indicated in persons with a history of ulcerative colitis

In patients on Rauwolfia therapy undergoing surgery significant hypotension marked bradycardia have been observed during the anesthesia It has therefore been recommended that treatment with these drugs be omitted at least 2 weeks before elective surgery (Coakley et al)

Rauwolfia preparations have the advantage of normalizing the blood pressure and not causing subnormal pressures Many patients experience a pleasant sensation of calmness and well being during the use of these compounds while an exceptional patient must stop using them because of unpleasant side effects particularly increased excitability

The mode of action is for the most part central (hypothalamic) but stuffiness of the nose and other observations point to an action on the autonomic nervous system Interaction between reserpine and serotonin has been reported (Shore et al) Reserpine increases the discharge of metabolites of serotonin which act as antiserotonins It is said to antagonize the blood pressure rise due to serotonin under certain experimental conditions (Schneider and Pinchard) or to displace serotonin in the central nervous system

In most cases 0.25 mg of reserpine daily or 100 mg of the root extract daily suffice Combination of Rauwolfia with chlorpromazine (Thorazine) has been recommended Of the latter drug 15 mg was given three times a day (Fiber) Reserpine given intramuscularly in the amount of 2.5 mg causes a marked predictable hypotensive effect which begins after 3 hours The fall of the blood pressure is smooth In crises 2.5 mg are injected every 12 hours

**HYDRALAZINE (APRFSOLINE)** This phthalazine derivative has a chemical structure that is new in therapy (Bein et al) It is remarkable because it brings

about a fall of blood pressure in 50 per cent of patients but side reactions are seen with relatively small doses in about 70 per cent of those treated. Johnson and associates saw the blood pressure fall to normal limits in 42 per cent of their patients. It was lowered in an additional 23 per cent. Despite the fall of blood pressure the blood flow through the kidneys is increased. There is a tachycardia apparently caused by direct stimulation of the heart.

The side effects consist of headaches, flushing, peripheral edema, hemorrhages in the gastrointestinal tract, palpitation, giddiness, anorexia, hiccups, a grippe-like syndrome with fever, anginal pain (the drug is contraindicated in coronary sclerosis but how can one be sure of its absence?), nasal congestion, lacrimation, tachycardia, skin rashes, periorbital edema, drowsiness or over stimulation, myalgia, pancytopenia, tingling of the extremities, nausea and vomiting.

When large doses are given for a while (over 600—800 mg) rheumatoid arthritis and syndromes like those of the collagen diseases appear. Occasionally a picture similar to the one of lupus erythematosus is observed even with L. F. cells in the blood. There is a rash, fever, arthritis, anemia, hematuria, an enlargement of spleen and lymph nodes. One observer saw this syndrome in 13 out of 139 patients who were treated with doses over 800 mg daily. Lee found the lupus erythematosus syndrome in 12 per cent of the patients receiving more than 300 mg of hydralazine daily.

One begins with doses of 20 mg four times a day by mouth and gradually raises this amount after 4 to 6 days until a desired effect is obtained or some of the numerous side effects force discontinuance of the therapy. Some side effects disappear when an antihistaminic drug and aspirin are given with every dose of hydralazine. Many side effects disappear with continued treatment. Following an intravenous injection of 2.5 mg the blood pressure falls within a few minutes and returns to the original level after 4 to 8 hours.

In many cases another drug capable of lowering blood pressure must be added to obtain success. Some patients develop tolerance. In some daily doses of even 600 mg have no useful effect.

The mode of action of the drug is not established and seems to be complex. There is certainly a depressant effect on the vasopressor center and a slight sympatholytic and adrenolytic action. The chief effect is relaxation of smooth muscles. Some of the pressor substances (pherentasin) circulating in the blood are inhibited.

In hypertensive crises an intravenous injection of 20—40 mg causes a fall of blood pressure for several hours.

**ERGOT PREPARATIONS** Ergotamine tartrate and dihydroergotamine 45 have a peripheral vasoconstrictive action. The three compounds dihydroergocristine, dihydroergokryptine and dihydroergocornine given in equal parts (manufactured under the name of Hydergine) lower the blood pressure. In acute rises of blood pressure the amount of 0.3 mg given intravenously after dilution with saline causes an appreciable fall of blood pressure but the oral adminis-

tration of this adrenergic blocking agent is disappointing although favorable reports have appeared in the literature. Mild effects are counterbalanced by resistance which appears early. Nasal stuffiness and bradycardia are noted.

**DIBENAMINE AND RELATED COMPOUNDS** Dibenzamine belongs to the alkyl amines and is a peripherally acting adrenergic blocking agent. It causes severe toxic effects and cannot be given orally. It was soon abandoned. The slightly modified but similar compound Dibenzylamine is given in doses of 20 mg in the form of gelatin capsules. Its side effects are gastrointestinal irritation, syncope on standing, drowsiness, nasal stuffiness and weakness. Because these side effects exist it is rarely recommended.

*Priscoline*, an imidazoline, may cause marked rise of blood pressure, angina pectoris, exacerbation of a peptic ulcer and has been abandoned for the treatment of essential hypertension.

**VERATRINES** Veratrine has been used for almost a century in eclampsia, toxemia of pregnancy and hypertensive encephalopathy. In recent years some of the alkaloids have been isolated, particularly protoveratrine which has the advantage that the dose is regulated according to the weight and not by bioassay.

Veratrines (Verloid for instance in the form of tablets containing 2 or 3 mg each) is given 3 to 8 times daily, cause a fall of blood pressure via the Bezold-Jarisch reflex, that is increasing the centripetal stimuli from cardiac receptors and carotid sinus receptors via vagal nerves leading to lowering of the vasoconstrictor tonus. Other preparations are Unitesen and Vergitryl. A pronounced bradycardia accompanies the fall of blood pressure. If excessive atropine abolishes it, Provelmaleto or Veralba are purified protoveratrine preparations which can be obtained as tablets of 0.2–0.5 mg. Up to 6 mg have been given daily. Initially one gives 0.5 mg three times daily.

Hoobler et al. advise giving 0.50 to 1.5 mg after breakfast orally. A dose of 0.25 mg is given at 10 a.m. and the same dose is repeated after lunch.

In acute emergencies (hypertensive crises) protoveratrine has been given intravenously (1.5–1.9 micrograms per kilogram) slowly over a two minute period and later 20 micrograms every ten minutes until an effect is obtained. Orally, subcutaneously and intramuscularly doses of 0.5–0.7 mg four times a day have been used. The substance acts within 30 minutes for 1 to 3 hours. In general the individual dose varies so much that with all veratrine preparations the trial and error method must be used. Thus one begins with the doses mentioned and gradually increases them. The disadvantage of therapy with veratrine lies mostly in the fact that effective doses usually cause gastrointestinal symptoms, i.e. nausea and vomiting. The nausea appears in some individuals even with the smallest doses.

Other side effects consist of substernal and epigastric oppression, lethargy and giddiness, palpitation, salivation and rhinorrhoea. Postural hypotension is usually not observed.

**METHONIUM COMPOUNDS** Penta and hexamethonium are quaternary ammonium compounds with a curare like action and are therefore autonomic

ganglion blocking agents. Hexamethonium salts are stronger and hexamethonium chloride is preferred to the bromides and iodides owing to the side effects of these ions. The ganglion blocking effect is similar to that of tetraethylammonium chloride which also has been recommended but which has been abandoned. Most of the effects caused by blocking sympathetic ganglia are useful because peripheral arteriolar resistance is reduced while blockade of the parasympathetic ganglia causes unpleasant side effects.

Hexamethonium is a very potent drug which initially should be given only in a hospital with constant supervision. The patient should be informed about its side effects (which are mentioned below) in order that he may obtain help in time and avoid apprehension.

With oral administration only about 5 per cent of the hexamethonium administered is absorbed by many individuals and therefore the effect is not satisfactory in the majority of patients unless large doses at least 125 mg are given four times a day at the beginning. This dose is increased every 5 or 6 days until the desired effects are obtained. Not more than 3 grams are given daily. For intravenous administration we recommend not more than 25 mg as the first dose since we observed precipitous fall of the blood pressure with the usually recommended amount of 5 mg. Patients who are on a salt free diet and those who have had a sympathectomy respond with special speed. The doses are varied as necessary according to the response of the patient and must be increased after a while since tolerance is very common and a great handicap. In the progress of therapy sometimes the ultimate dose has been ten times as large as the initial and very effective ones. The intravenous injection acts within a minute the intramuscular within 5 to 15 minutes and the hypodermic within 30 minutes. The effect following subcutaneous injection is maximal after one hour. Three to six injections a day are given.

Success is obtained in about 60 per cent of the patients.

The therapy is contraindicated in patients with azotemia, glucoma, marked prostatic hypertrophy, severe cerebral and coronary sclerosis, severe constipation and marked renal damage.

Because the autonomic ganglia are blocked to a different degree the side effects vary considerably in different patients. Some of the effects deserve careful attention by the physician and require special therapy.

One of the first side effects is constipation. The patient should not go for more than 48 hours without a bowel movement. Paralytic ileus has been reported. During constipation larger amount of the compound are absorbed. One gives milk of magnesia at the beginning and cascara later. The action of hexamethonium on vagal ganglia is counteracted by compounds like urecholine (urethan or beta methylcholine) given in doses of 5-10 mg daily. It is not always effective. Five milligrams of pilocarpine nitrate or 15 milligrams of prostigmine bromide 1 to 3 times daily may help.

Another great danger is urinary retention which is at times very annoying. Complete and irreversible sympathetic paralysis with hypotension has been

observed fortunately it is only rarely that it cannot be corrected with neosynephrine or other pressor amines. Disappearance of libido and diminished potency is observed but omission of one dose of the compound often corrects this. Because of the curare like action general muscular weakness is often noted. One of the most common side effects is the orthostatic hypotension which is seen with this compound more than with any other. It appears particularly after a heavy meal consumption of alcohol and in hot weather (the patients cannot sweat). Often the blood pressure in the supine position must be kept at a higher level than desirable in order to avoid marked fall when the patient is erect. Blurring of vision due to paresis of accommodation is common. Interstitial pneumonia has been seen particularly in azotemia (Golden and Bronk). Pulmonary edema and fibrosis develop causing death from asphyxiation (Viersma). Some patients complain of dryness of the mouth due to decreased salivation. Otitis media may be seen because of dryness of the Eustachian tube. A greater incidence of dissecting aneurysm in hypertensives treated with methonium or pentolinium has been reported.

As with Rauwolfia congestive cardiac failure may develop. Permanent bilateral blindness following a fall of blood pressure from 246/136 to 180/110 mm Hg in a 34 year old woman has been described (Bruce).

Because of the danger of severe orthostatic hypotension it is important to determine the blood pressure with the patient standing.

**PENTAPYRROLIDINE (PENTOLINIUM TARTRATE)** Pentolinium (Ansolysen) is a synthetic ganglion blocking agent which is apparently superior to hexamethonium and has replaced it. It has been estimated to be about five times as strong as hexamethonium and the average duration of its action is longer. This claim has been denied by others. It is alleged that its action is less variable and the dose necessary to elicit an effect varied between 135—630 mg a day (Freis et al). Some patients need more than 1000 mg per day. Side effects are claimed to be less common than with hexamethonium but are the same in nature and strict supervision of the patient especially in regard to the blood pressure in the erect position and bowel movements is equally necessary. Heart failure with retention of salt and water caused by therapy with pentapyrrolidine has been described.

One gives 10 mg three times a day (every 8 hours) starting one hour before breakfast. The dose is increased by 10 mg every second day until dizziness appears in the erect posture. The ideal dose is about 20 mg less than that which produces vertigo and fainting. The maximal effect appears one to one and a half hours after the administration and lasts for 6 to 8 hours. Some authors recommend giving twice the single daytime dose just before bedtime. If hypodermic injections are employed one starts with 5 mg three times a day (every 8 hours). The amount is increased if necessary by 0.5 mg every second day.

All these ganglion blocking agents are administered at first in the hospital for 2 weeks. For the first 3 days it is best to take the standing blood pressure every 20 minutes after each dose omitting only night tests.

Heavy meals and alcohol influence absorption. An ideal blood pressure is 120 mm Hg systolic; this is easily accomplished in the erect patient.

Ecolid (chlornisondamine) is another ganglion blocking agent effective orally and requiring smaller doses. It has a longer action than hexamethonium. The orthostatic blood pressure must be checked. In the study of Grimson the average effective dose varied between 50–100 mg given twice a day. This is recommended because of the long action of the drug (12 to 20 hours). One begins with 25 mg per dose. Blurring of vision is often disturbing.

Inversine hydrochloride (mecamylamine) is considered superior as a ganglion blocking agent because it is completely absorbed after oral administration and acts for 8 to 36 hours. Inversine is not a quaternary ammonium compound like the other ganglion blocking substances but a secondary amine.

One gives initially 2.5 mg once or twice daily by mouth. This dose is increased by 2.5 mg every second day until the necessary dose is reached. Side effects are very common. Seven out of 35 patients who were treated with this substance showed an unusual neuromuscular disorder with tremor, anxiety and convulsions (Schneekloth et al). The average dose to which patients respond with a significant fall of blood pressure is 25 to 30 mg. Like other similar agents it is given at first only to cooperating patients in hospitals. The side effects and dangers are the same as with hexamethonium. Psychoses were observed.

**COMBINATION THERAPY WITH HEXAMETHONIUM AND HYDRALAZINE.** This method (Hyphex therapy) is warmly recommended by Schroeder and is said to reduce the blood pressure to normal values in almost 100 per cent of the patients.

In the following paragraphs we shall follow the rules elaborated by Schroeder. In view of the side effects, sometimes dangerous and sometimes very annoying, treatment with these two compounds should be started only in a hospital where the patient is observed for at least three weeks. Treatment is never started with both drugs simultaneously. One should be aware that in severe coronary stenosis with angina pectoris a fall of blood pressure may induce a myocardial infarction. Renal function should be satisfactory (phenol red test). Even an encephalogram should be done to rule out a dysrhythmia which, with a decided fall of blood pressure, may change to a cerebral accident.

With the patient seated the blood pressure is taken every four hours day and night.

On the first day one starts with the administration of 125 mg of hexamethonium every four hours by mouth. If the blood pressure falls to values below 150 mm Hg a dose is omitted. Care is taken to ensure bowel movements by means of milk of magnesia or cascara. On the second day 250 mg of hexamethonium are given in tablet form every 4 hours with the same precautions, and on the third day 375 mg at the same intervals. On the fourth the dose is increased to 500 mg every four hours, always omitting the dose if the blood pressure falls to below 150. On the fifth day for the first time Apresoline (hydralazine) is given in addition, using 20 mg every four hours by mouth. On the sixth day the amount of Apresoline is doubled, the amount of hexamethonium remaining



the same. On the seventh day the dose of Apresoline is increased to 75 mg every four hours. By this time the patient usually has side effects and must be persuaded to continue the treatment. On the eighth day 100 mg of Apresoline are added to the hexamethonium every four hours. If low pressure is attained on one of the preceding days the doses are not increased.

It is claimed that with this method a reduction of the blood pressure to normal levels is accomplished in almost every patient. After prolonged therapy after the diastolic blood pressure becomes normal the dosage of these drugs can often be diminished (Perry and Schroeder). The same authors had remarkable success in the therapy of malignant hypertension with renal azotemia with the use of ganglionic blockade combined with hydralazine. Of 46 patients with a nonprotein nitrogen of 30–60 mg per cent 27 were alive and working after almost two years.

The effects of the compounds and the accidents caused by the reduction of blood pressure are the same as mentioned above.

**SUGGESTIONS ON DRUG MANAGEMENT OF HYPERTENSIVES** At the present time it is recommended that all patients with hypertension except those with an excessively high systolic blood pressure and with a diastolic above 120 mm Hg be started with Rauwolfia therapy. If this method does not bring success within two months we suggest the addition of veratrine or hydralazine. For this purpose the mixtures of the latter two drugs which are prepared by the manufacturers are not used. Pather. Veratrine or hydralazine are given in increasing individual amounts. Ready made tablets do not permit individualization of the treatment.

Ganglion blocking agents are necessary only in excessively high systolic and diastolic blood pressures. If possible one starts with a Rauwolfia preparation here also and adds Inversin in increasing amounts. This is preferable since Rauwolfia in combination with other drugs shows not only an additive but also a synergistic action.

A salt poor diet is advised. A salt free diet is not recommended since it can rarely be maintained for several years and is of help only in some patients. The treatment with the modern drugs makes this palatable diet unnecessary. If the patient who comes for advice already is on a salt free diet there is no reason to tell him to discontinue it.

**Surgical Therapy** At first performed by Pieri for the treatment of hypertension sympathectomy was developed interestingly enough at a time when knowledge of the renal factor in the genesis of hypertension was in the process of investigation and when many clinicians thought that the Goldblatt mechanism was an adequate explanation of the pathogenesis of essential hypertension. There is general agreement that the experimental renal hypertension is humoral and is uninfluenced by sympathectomy.

The methods of sympathectomy devised are diverse but one fact gradually emerges: operations with most extensive severing of the sympathetic system provide the greatest chance for success.

A report of 330 cases in which a *supradiaphragmatic* sympathectomy was done (Peet et al) revealed a significant reduction of blood pressure in 51.4 per cent and a relief of major symptoms in 96.1 per cent.

With a *subdiaphragmatic* extraperitoneal sympathectomy with resection of the splanchnic nerves, a part of the coeliac ganglion and the upper lumbar sympathetic trunk (Allen and Adson) 13 per cent of 224 postoperative cases responded well and 18 per cent to a fair extent. In 39 per cent the fall of blood pressure was only temporary and the operative result was poor in 30 per cent. There was no mortality.

With the *combined approach* that is lumbo-dorsal sympathectomy the operation is performed on one side and after about 10 days on the other side. Recently both sides have been operated on simultaneously (Smithwick). The sympathetic trunk from the ninth dorsal to the second lumbar ganglion is removed and the great splanchnic nerves are severed.

At present sympathectomy is considered to be indicated when the course is progressively downhill when the patient develops papilledema despite medical therapy when the diastolic blood pressure rises to values above 130 in spite of all medical measures when such measures do not improve very severe headache and when the mode of living of the patient or his occupation make adherence to the diet or medical therapy under supervision impossible.

The operation is not performed in patients beyond 55 or 60 with renal insufficiency (urine concentration not over 1010 or  $\Delta P_{12}$  not below 40) cardiac failure not improved by therapy or very advanced coronary or cerebral vascular sclerosis. One should not operate in the presence of an active peptic ulcer.

The mortality is 1 to 3 per cent. Complications are atelectasis, pleural effusion, pneumothorax and disturbed ejaculation. Operation on a pregnant woman did not prevent normal termination of pregnancy. Hospitalization for 4 to 8 weeks is necessary but is appreciably shorter when both sides are operated on at the same session.

The prognosis and results of the operation seem better in females. With more extensive sympathectomy postural hypotension develops and may persist for weeks and even months. The resultant disability is of variable intensity. Anhidrosis of the lower extremities develops and ejaculation is lost if the second lumbar ganglion is removed. In spite of all the difficulties and handicaps surgical therapy has more to offer in certain patients than any medical measure now available.

For the postoperative orthostatic hypotension it is necessary to bandage the legs.

The mode of action of the operation is not clear. The pooling of blood in the lower part of the body in the erect posture is one of the possible reasons for the fall of blood pressure. The operation does not and cannot bring about a cure; it can only improve the condition.

It is impossible by means of any test to predict the result of the operation in advance. In mild cases the success may be meager; in advanced cases even

in malignant hypertension the success may be astonishing. Unfortunately in many patients the success is only temporary and after a while the blood pressure rises again.

Among 275 postoperative patients in the literature Gerbaux noted a very good result in 25 per cent and only moderate improvement in 15 per cent. In 28.9 per cent Ray found a normal or almost normal blood pressure postoperatively and in a further 31.6 per cent a significant reduction. There was complete failure in 10 per cent. According to others good results were seen in 21 per cent but they persisted only in 10 per cent. The life expectancy is increased according to Hammarstroem. Others have found no change in the lighter milder cases. The survival time was increased only in very sick patients. Similar results were obtained by Longland and Gibb but better ones by Zintel et al. Many of the contradictory results stem from the fact that different methods were employed in selecting patients for operation.

A precipitous fall of blood pressure may lead to the appearance of anginal pain and intermittent claudication.

**UNILATERAL KIDNEY DISEASE** The question whether the hypertension disappears following removal of the diseased kidney in unilateral kidney disease has been much debated. Since this is not the case in some instances some authors deny the possibility of any cure of hypertension by such a procedure. There are however an increasing number of reports in which blood pressure fell when the diseased kidney was removed and particularly in children with hypertension resulting from unilateral pyelonephritis the elevated blood pressure returns to normal following operation (Gasul). In some cases — as in experiments — secondary changes in the other kidney and the entire vascular system preclude a fall of blood pressure even if the obviously damaged kidney is removed.

**ADRENALECTOMY** The newest surgical procedure is adrenalectomy first recommended by Crile and later employed by Wolferth and Thorn and their associates. This operation is logical because much work proves the necessity of the adrenals for the maintenance of various forms of experimental hypertension. In man if adrenal insufficiency develops hypertension if present disappears and hypotension develops. Experimental hypertension does not appear when adrenalectomy has been performed previously. Adrenalectomy in man became possible since the adrenocortical hormones became available. Thorn et al removed both adrenals completely. Wolferth et al reported subtotal adrenalectomy with and without splanchnectomy. Patients should be under 50 years of age without azotemia and without advanced cardiac damage or encephalopathy. When cortisone therapy is interrupted patients collapse within 24 to 48 hours. In extremely hot weather under various conditions of stress the dose of cortisone (3—60 mg daily) which is often astonishingly small must be increased. Sudden death occurs after the operation. Even total adrenalectomy does not bring success in some patients. While it is too early to state definitely whether the operation should be performed more often it is certain that it allows many

patients with advanced malignant hypertension to survive and they may recover from a very critical situation

Adrenalectomy is done in uncontrollable hypertension without renal damage when without the operation death can soon be expected. Usually the operation is performed in two stages

The measure is still in an experimental stage

*Symptomatic Therapy* The treatment of the individual symptoms of essential hypertension does not require detailed discussion. Cardiac decompensation and angina pectoris are treated in the usual manner. If vascular crisis and encephalopathy appear the administration of chloral hydrate and the intravenous injection of hypertonic glucose solution and of magnesium sulfate (20 cc of a 10 per cent solution slowly injected) has been recommended. An intravenous injection of protoveratrin is given as rapidly as possible. We prefer this compound to Serpasil or hexamethonium.

In cerebral vascular accidents the least possible treatment is the most satisfactory one. Morphine should be avoided in order not to depress the respiratory centers and not to raise the spinal fluid pressure. The value of stellate ganglion block is still under discussion. Venesection has the disadvantage of being followed by an additional rise of blood pressure. Magnesium sulfate is given for convulsions and cerebral edema.

Massage as well as passive and active movement should start early.

Despite remarkable results in some cases — the disappearance of papilledema in the malignant syndrome, normalization of the blood pressure in a long established hypertension through the rice diet or sympathectomy — there are still those who claim that the game is not worth the candle (Leonard). It is true that often no relief or improvement can be effected as a matter of fact the above mentioned measures have the effect of calling the patient's attention every day to his blood pressure, thus making his life truly miserable. On the other hand do not patients with diabetes also have to be constantly aware of their illness? And is the result not worth the disadvantages? If future statistics show that treatment initiated sufficiently early stops the further development of the illness, that life is prolonged and that complications develop more rarely, then a great victory will have been won in the battle against a condition the best advice for which in the past was: Take as easy and swallow some phenobarbitol.

## Bibliography

- Abrams R W P, Hanson A O and Gifford R W Jr. Hypertension treated with Rauwolfia serpentina (whole root) and with Reserpine. JAMA 159 841 1955  
 Allen W. Heredity in hypertension: a statistical study. Arch. Int. Med. 59 954 1933  
 Allen E J and Adson A W. The treatment of hypertension: medical versus surgical. Ann. Int. Med. 14 298 1940  
 Alaric W C, Walzen R, Mahoney L J. Blood pressure in fifteen thousand university freshmen. Arch. Int. Med. 39 17 1953

7/15-74

in malignant hypertension the success may be astonishing. Unfortunately in many patients the success is only temporary and after a while the blood pressure rises again.

Among 275 postoperative patients in the literature Gerbault noted a very good result in 25 per cent and only moderate improvement in 15 per cent. In 28.9 per cent Ray found a normal or almost normal blood pressure postoperatively and in a further 31.6 per cent a significant reduction. There was complete failure in 10 per cent. According to others good results were seen in 21 per cent but they persisted only in 10 per cent. The life expectancy is increased according to Hammarstrom. Others have found no change in the lighter milder cases. The survival time was increased only in very sick patients. Similar results were obtained by Longland and Cribb but better ones by Zintel et al. Many of the contradictory results stem from the fact that different methods were employed in selecting patients for operation.

A precipitous fall of blood pressure may lead to the appearance of anginal pain and intermittent claudication.

**UNILATERAL KIDNEY DISEASE.** The question whether the hypertension disappears following removal of the diseased kidney in unilateral kidney disease has been much debated. Since this is not the case in some instances some authors deny the possibility of any cure of hypertension by such a procedure. There are however an increasing number of reports in which blood pressure fell when the diseased kidney was removed and particularly in children with hypertension resulting from unilateral pyelonephritis: the elevated blood pressure returns to normal following operation (Gasul). In some cases — as in experiments — secondary changes in the other kidney and the entire vascular system preclude a fall of blood pressure even if the obviously damaged kidney is removed.

**ADRENALECTOMY.** The newest surgical procedure is adrenalectomy first recommended by Crile and later employed by Wolferth and Thorn and their associates. This operation is logical because much work proves the necessity of the adrenals for the maintenance of various forms of experimental hypertension. In man if adrenal insufficiency develops hypertension if present disappears and hypotension develops. Experimental hypertension does not appear when adrenalectomy has been performed previously. Adrenalectomy in man became possible since the adrenocortical hormones became available. Thorn et al removed both adrenals completely. Wolferth et al reported subtotal adrenalectomy with and without splanchicectomy. Patients should be under 50 years of age without azotemia and without advanced cardiac damage or encephalopathy. When cortisone therapy is interrupted patients collapse within 24 to 48 hours. In extremely hot weather under various conditions of stress the dose of cortisone (3–60 mg daily) which is often astonishingly small must be increased. Sudden death occurs after the operation. Even total adrenalectomy does not bring success in some patients! While it is too early to state definitely whether the operation should be performed more often it is certain that it allows many

patients with advanced malignant hypertension to survive and they may recover from a very critical situation

Adrenalectomy is done in uncontrollable hypertension without renal damage when without the operation death can soon be expected. Usually the operation is performed in two stages

The measure is still in an experimental stage

*Symptomatic Therapy* The treatment of the individual symptoms of essential hypertension does not require detailed discussion. Cardiac decompensation and angina pectoris are treated in the usual manner. If vascular crisis and encephalopathy appear the administration of chloral hydrate and the intravenous injection of hypertonic glucose solution and of magnesium sulfate (20 cc of a 10 per cent solution slowly injected) has been recommended. An intravenous injection of protoveratrin is given as rapidly as possible. We prefer this compound to Serpasil or hexamethonium.

In cerebral vascular accidents the least possible treatment is the most satisfactory one. Morphine should be avoided in order not to depress the respiratory centers and not to raise the spinal fluid pressure. The value of stellate ganglion block is still under discussion. Venesection has the disadvantage of being followed by an additional rise of blood pressure. Magnesium sulfate is given for convulsions and cerebral edema.

Massage as well as passive and active movement should start early.

Despite remarkable results in some cases — the disappearance of papilledema in the malignant syndrome, normalization of the blood pressure in a long established hypertension through the rice diet or sympathectomy — there are still those who claim that the game is not worth the candle (Leonard). It is true that often no relief or improvement can be effected as a matter of fact the above mentioned measures have the effect of calling the patient's attention every day to his blood pressure, thus making his life truly miserable. On the other hand do not patients with diabetes also have to be constantly aware of their illness? And is the result not worth the disadvantages? If future statistics show that treatment initiated sufficiently early stops the further development of the illness, that life is prolonged and that complications develop more rarely, then a great victory will have been won in the battle against a condition the best advice for which in the past was: Take as every and swallow some phenobarbital.

## Bibliography

- Achor R W P, Hanson N O and Gifford R W Jr. Hypertension treated with Rauwolfia serjentina (whole root) and with Reserpine. JAMA 159 841 1955  
 Allen W. Heredity in hypertension: a statistical study. Arch Int Med 5: 954 1933  
 Allen F J and Adson A W. The treatment of hypertension: medical versus surgical. Ann Int Med 14 288 1940  
 Alvarez W C, Wulzen P, Mahoney L J. Blood pressure in fifteen thousand university freshmen. Arch Int Med 32 17 1953

7/16-74

- Ambard I and Beauyard E La retention chlorurée sèche *Sem Med* 25 133 1906
- American Heart Association Committee for the Standardization of Blood Pressure Readings  
Standard method for taking and recording blood pressure readings *JAMA* 113 294 1939
- Amsterdam B and Amsterdam A L Disparity in blood pressures in both arms in normals and hypertensives and its clinical significance *New York State J Med* 43 2294 1943
- Avman D An evaluation of therapeutic results in essential hypertension *JAMA* 76 246 1930
- The personality type of patients with arteriolar essential hypertension *Ann J M Sc* 186 213 1933
- Heredity in arteriolar (essential) hypertension *Arch Int Med* 53 792 1934
- Barker M H The blood cyanates in the treatment of hypertension *JAMA* 106 169 1936
- Barker N W and Walters W Hypertension associated with unilateral chronic atrophic pyelonephritis treatment by nephrectomy *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 13 118 1938
- von Basch R Über latente Arteriosklerose und deren Beziehung zur Fettleibigkeit Herz erkrankungen und anderen Begleiterscheinungen *Wien Urban & Schwarzenberg* 1893
- Battro A Braun Menendez E Lanari A and Leloir L F Accion presora en el hombro de la rinina y de la hipertensine *Rev Soc argent biol* 16 376 1940
- Baurle W Die Coronarsklerose by Hypertonie *Beitr path Anat* 111 108 1950
- Beaven D W and Murphy C A Dissecting aneurysm during methonium therapy A report on nine cases treated for hypertension *Brit M J* 1 77 1946
- Bechgaard P Arterial hypertension *Acta med Scandinav Suppl* 172 1946
- Bein H J The pharmacology of Pauwolfia *Pharm Rev* 3 435 1956
- Gross F Tripod J and Meier H Experimentelle Untersuchungen über die Kreislaufwirkung der blutdrucksenkenden Hydrazino phthalazinederivate Apresolin und Nepresol *Schweiz Med Wchnschr* 83 336 1953
- Berry M J Jr The mechanism and prevention of impairment of auscultatory sounds during determination of blood pressure of standing patients *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 15 699 1940
- Bickel H Über die normale und pathologische Reaktion des Blutkreislaufs auf psychische Vorgänge *Neurol Centralbl* 33 90 1914
- Bing R J The formation of hydroxytyramine by extracts of renal cortex and by perfused kidneys *Am J Physiol* 132 497 1941
- Thomas C B and Waples F C The circulation in experimental neurogenic hypertension *J Clin Investigation* 24 513 1945
- Bingel A and Strauß P Über die Blutdrucksteigernde Substanz der Niere *Dtsch Arch f klin Med* 96 476 1909
- Boas E I and Shapiro S Diastolic hypertension with increased metabolic rate *JAMA* 84 1553 1925
- Bordley J III and Baker B M Jr A consideration of arteriosclerosis of the cerebral vessels and the pathogenesis of hypertension *Bull John Hopkins Hosp* 39 21 1926
- Borst J C C Protein catabolism in uræmia *Lancet* 1 824 1948
- Bowers R F Adrenalectomy for hypertension *Surgery* 34 664 1953
- Brozek J Chapman C B and Keys A Drastic food restriction *JAMA* 134 1561 1948
- Braun Menendez F Fasciolo J C Leloir L F and Munoz J M The substance causing renal hypertension *J Physiol* 95 293 1940

- Brown G E and Rowntree L G Right sided carotid pulsations in cases of severe hypertension JAMA 34 1016 1935
- Bruce G M Permanent bilateral blindness following the use of hexamethonium chloride Arch Ophthalm 53 422 1955
- Bruger M and Hollander V P Extrathyroidal hypermetabolism Ann Int Med 35 1260 1950
- Burgess A M Excessive hypertension of long duration New England J Med 33 75 1948
- Benign essential hypertension Ann Int Med 43 40 1955
- van Buchem F S P The hypertensive diencephalic syndrome Acta med Scandinav 170 575 1947
- et al Primary aldosteronism due to adrenocortical hyperplasia Lancet 2 335 1956
- Byrom F B The pathogenesis of hypertensive encephalopathy and its relationship to the malignant phase of hypertension Lancet 2 201 1954
- Castleman D and Smithwick R H The relation of vascular disease to the hypertensive state JAMA 121 1256 1943
- Chalmers T M Fitzgerald M G James V M and Scarborough H Conn's syndrome with severe hypertension Lancet 1 127 1956
- Chopra R N Gupta J C and Mukherjee B The pharmacological action of an alkaloid obtained from Rauwolfia Serpentina Indian J Med Research 21 61 1933
- Clawson H J Incidence of types of heart disease among 30 065 autopsies with special reference to age and sex Am Heart J 29 607 1941
- Coakley C S Alpert S and Boling J S Circulatory responses during anesthesia of patients on Rauwolfia therapy JAMA 161 1343 1956
- Conn J W Primary aldosteronism a new clinical syndrome J Lab & Clin Med 45 3 1955
- Cook J F and Taussig A F Auscultatory blood pressure determination a source of possible error JAMA 63 1088 1917
- Cossio J Moia B Fustinoni O and Battle F F Estudios clinicos sobre la hipertension arterial caracteres del segundo ruido cardiaco Rev arg nt de cardiol 3 336 1938
- Currency J H Myers G S and White P D The use of protoveratrine in the treatment of hypertensive vascular disease Am Heart J 46 516 1953
- Davis D and Klatner M J Studies in hypertensive heart disease Am Heart J 19 193 1940
- Derow H A and Altshuler M D Malignant hypertension New England J Med 24 951 1935
- Diehl H S and Sutherland K H Systolic blood pressures in young men including a longitudinal study of those with hypertension Arch Int Med 36 151 1935
- Dixon W E and Heller H Experimentelle Hypertonie durch Erhöhung des intra-kranialen Druckes Arch f exper Lath u Pharmacol 111 155 193
- Dixon H I Taylor R D Corrigan A C and Page J H Pneumatic and fibrinolytic effects during prolonged intracranial treatment JAMA 751 3 1954
- Ferber H B Combination of chlorazepate and Rauwolfia Serpentina therapy in essential hypertension JAMA 193 30 1955
- Flinn L W Horwath S M and Bean W B Toxicity and orthostatic hypertension Am J Med Sci 17 641 1947
- Fletcher J Malignant hypertension Lancet 1 91 1938
- Natural history of Bright's disease Lancet 1 1 1941
- Flower H Changes in the fundus of the eye in various forms of arterial hypertension Arch Ophthalm 31 376 1944
- Emmett J R Crumpton K S Bell D M and Orgain F S Use of piperoxan and 1-regitin as routine tests in patients with hypertension JAMA 146 1383 1951



- Engel A and von Euler U S Diagnostic value of increased urinary output of nor adrenaline and adrenaline in pheochromocytoma *Lancet* 2 387 1947
- Enger R Gerstner H and Sarre H Die Abhängigkeit der Nierendurchblutung vom Ureterndruck *Zentralbl f inn Med* 58 865 1937
- Erspamer V Pharmacology of indolalkyl amines *Pharm Rev* 6 495 1954
- von Euler U S and Hellner S Excretion of nor adrenaline adrenaline and hypoxytamine in urine *Acta physiol Scandinav* 22 161 1951
- Evelyn K A Alexander F and Cooper S R Effect of sympathectomy on blood pressure in hypertension *JAMA* 140 692 1949
- Fahr G Handbuch d spec pathol Anat u Hist Hencke F und Lubarsch O J Springer Berlin 1920 Vol 6
- Fahr T Maligne Hypertonie oder maligne Nephrosklerose? *Klin Wchnschr* 18 1541 1939
- Fasciver J C Houssay B A and Taquini A C The blood pressure raising secretion of the ischemic kidney *J Physiol* 94 281 1938
- Findley T Two kinds of renal hypertension *Am J M Sc* 231 121 1956
- Fishberg A M Hypertension and Nephritis ed 5 Philadelphia Lea & Febiger 1954
- Sympathectomy for essential hypertension *JAMA* 137 670 1948
- Fletcher A P Effect of weight reduction upon the blood pressure of hypertensive women *Quart J Med* 28 331 1954
- Floyer M A The effect of nephrectomy and adrenalectomy upon the blood pressure in hypertensive and normotensive rats *Clin Science* 10 405 1951 14 163 1955
- Freeman N E and Page I H Hypertension produced by constriction of the renal artery in sympathectomized dogs *Am Heart J* 14 405 1937
- Freis E D Partenope E A Lilienfeld L E and Rosen J C A clinical appraisal of pentapyrrolidinium (N&B 2000) in hypertensive patients *Circulation* 9 540 1954
- Fremont R E Hypertensive crises and severe myocardial ischemia induced by piperoxan with comments on the differential diagnosis and treatment of hypertensive crises *Angiology* 5 381 1954
- Calambos A Essential hypertension and the treatment with Rauwolfia serpentina benth *Angiology* 5 449 1954
- Gallavardin L La tension arterielle en clinique 2nd Ed Masson et Cie Paris 1951
- and Tixier L Dissociation sphygmomanometrique oscillatoire et vibro auscultatoire dans un cas de rétrécissement aortique serré et insuffisance aortique avec pulsus tardus et anacrotisme *Arch d mal du coeur* 19 447 1919
- Casul B M Glasser J M and Crossman A Extreme hypertension in a child cured by nephrectomy *JAMA* 139 305 1949
- Genest J The present status of aldosterone in clinical medicine *Canad M A J* 3 9, 1955 and 75 625 1956
- Gerbaux A L hypertension arterielle d'origine renale curable par nephrectomie chez l'homme *Semaine hôp d Paris* 26 710 1950
- Gilchrist A R The hypertensions *Edinburgh M J* 48 752 1941
- Gilliland I C and Daniel O Pheochromocytoma presenting as an abdominal emergency *Brit M J* 2 275 1951
- Coetz R H The effect of sympatholytic drugs on the cardiovascular system in man with special reference to hypertension *Angiology* 2 1 1951
- Goldblatt H Experimental hypertension induced by renal ischemia *Bull New York Acad Med* 14 523 1939
- Lynch J Hanzal R F and Summerville W W Studies on experimental hypertension I The production of persistent elevation of systolic blood pressure by means of renal ischemia *J Exper Med* 59 347 1934
- Colden A and Bronk T T Diffuse interstitial fibrosis of the lungs *Arch Int Med* 92 606 1953

- Goldenberg M, Schneider C H and Aranow H Jr New test for hypertension due to circulating epinephrine *JAMA* 135 9:1 1947
- and Aranow H Jr Diagnosis of pheochromocytoma by the adrenergic blocking action of benzodioxane *JAMA* 143 1139 1950
  - Serlin D, Edwards T and Rapport M M Chemical screening methods for the diagnosis of pheochromocytoma *Am J Med* 16 310 1954
  - Pines K L, Baldwin E de F, Green D G and Rob C E The hemodynamic response in man to nor epinephrine and epinephrine and its relation to the problem of hypertension *Am J Med* 9 1948
- Goldhammer S, Leiner C and Scherf D Über die zirkulierende Blutmenge vor und nach der Quecksilberdiurese *Klin Wchnschr* 14 1109 1935
- Goodyer A V N, Rosenthal E and Jaeger C A The clinical evaluation and management of hypertension *Yale J Biol Med* 2: 451 1955
- Graham D P High blood pressure after battle *Lancet* 1 239 1945
- Grossel G C, Shobe F O, Soslow C, Dubois P H and Schweder H A Personality factors in arterial hypertension *JAMA* 140 265 1949
- Griffin P W, Stoven J W and Ford R V Treatment of hypertensive emergencies *New Engl J Med* 264 593 1950
- Grimson K S The sympathetic nervous system in neurogenic and renal hypertension *Arch Surg* 43 284 1941
- Drugs recently introduced for hypertension *JAMA* 153 359 1955
- Grollman A Experimental chronic hypertension in the rabbit *Am J Physiol* 142 666 1944
- Hafkenschiel J H Renal function studies in hypertension *Trans Am Coll Cardiol* 6 1955
- Hamilton M, Pickering G W, Fraser J A, Roberts G and Sower G S The etiology of essential hypertension *Clin Science* 13 11 1954
- Hammarstrom S Arterial hypertension *Acta med Scandinav Supp* 192 1947
- Harrison T R, Blalock A and Mason M F Effects on blood pressure of injection of kidney extracts of dogs with renal hypertension *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 35 38 1936
- Hartwich A Der Blutdruck bei experimenteller Uramie und partieller Nierenausscheidung *Ztschr f d ges exper Med* 69 467 1930
- Hershberger R L, Dennis E W and Moyer J M The response to reserpamine administered parenterally and orally for the treatment of hypertension *Am J Med* 23: 542 1956
- Hessel G and Maier Huser H Über das Renin einen körpereigenen Kreislaufwirksamen Stoff *Verhandl d deutsch Gesellsch f inn Med Hong* 40 347 1934
- Heymans C Introduction to the Regulation of Blood Pressure and Heart Rate *Springfield Thomas* 1950
- Experimental arterial hypertension *New England J Med* 219 154 1938
  - Some new aspects of reflex blood pressure regulation and hypertension *Ciba Symposium on Hypertension* 1954 31
  - and van den Heuvel Heymans G New aspects of blood pressure regulation *Circulation* 1 591 1951
- Hines E A Jr The significance of vascular hyperreflexia as measured by the cold pressor test *Am Heart J* 19 409 1940
- The hereditary factor and subsequent development of hypertension *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 15 145 1940
- Holtz P and Heise P Fermentativer Abbau von 1-Dioxyphenylalanin (Dopa) durch Niere *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 191 87 1938

- Hoobler S W The drug treatment of severe hypertensive disease with particular reference to hydralazine and pentapyrrolidine *Trans Am Coll Cardiol* 5 101 1955
- Carley R W Kalza F C and Loyke H F Treatment of hypertension with oral protoveratrine *Ann Int Med* 37 465 1952
- Houssay B A Fasciolo J C and Taquini A C Mecanismo de la hipertension arterial de origen renal *Rev argent de cardiol* 5 291 1938
- Howard J P and Barker W H Paroxysmal hypertension and other clinical manifestations associated with benign chromaffin tumors *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 61 371 1937
- Berthrong M Gould D W and Yendt E R Hypertension resulting from unilateral renal vascular disease and its relief by nephrectomy *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 91 51 1954
- Hueber E F Observations on the regional circulation during pharmacologically induced hypotension *Am J Med Sc* 229 613 1955
- Jeffers W A Zintel H A Hafkenschiel G H Hills A G Sellers A M and Wolferth C C Evaluation of adrenal resection and sympathectomy in ninety nine persons with hypertension *JAMA* 153 1502 1953
- Johnson R I The treatment of hypertension with 1 hydrazinophthalazine (apresoline) *Am Heart J* 46 593 1953
- Kaufman M Iancu-top na following use of hydralazine (apresoline) *JAMA* 151 1498 1953
- Kcith N M Wagoner H I and Barker N W Some different types of essential hypertension their course and prognosis *Am J M Sc* 197 332 1939
- Kempner W Treatment of kidney disease and hypertensive vascular disease with rice diet *JAMA* 125 60 1944 *North Carolina Med J* 5 213 1944
- Treatment of hypertensive vascular disease with rice diet *Am J Med* 4 45 1948
- Kennedy R L J Barker N W and Walters W Malignant hypertension cure following nephrectomy follow up report of the case of a child *Am J Dis Child* 69 180 1945
- Kerr W J and Lagen J B Isotural syndrome related to obesity leading to pulmonary emphysema and cardiorespiratory failure *Ann Int Med* 10 569 1936
- Kert M J Rosenberg M J Coodley I L Murdock L J Hoffman S H Brotman E J and Johnston W L Treatment of hypertension *JAMA* 142 721 1950
- Kerdi I Sinoaortic regulatory system *Arch Int Med* 91 26 1953
- Kimmelstiel I and Wilson C Benign and malignant hypertension and nephrosclerosis *Am J Path* 12 45 1936
- Kohlstaedt K C Helmer O M and Lage I H Activation of renin by blood colloid *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 39 214 1938
- Kolff W J Forced high caloric low protein diet in the treatment of uremia *Am J Med* 12 66 1952
- Kossman C I Relative importance of certain variables in the clinical determination of blood pressure *Am J Med* 1 464 1916
- Laforet F G Malignant hypertension associated with unilateral renal artery occlusion *Ann Int Med* 38 66 1953
- Lampert H and Muller W Bei welchen Druck kommt es zu einer Ruptur der Nierengefäße *Frankfurt Ztschr f Path* 33 471 1926
- Lee R F Reserpine hydralazine combination therapy of hypertensive disease with hydralazine in doses generally below the toxic range *Ann Int Med* 44 456 1956
- Leonard J C The treatment of hypertension a fifteen year follow up *Anal J Biol Med* 4 506 1957
- Lian C and Blondel A L hypotension arterielle orthostatique *Lancet* 1 111 1913

- Locket S Oral preparations of Rauwolfia Serpentina in treatment of essential hypertension  
Brit M J 1 809 1955
- Longland C J and Cobb W E Sympathotomy in the treatment of benign and malignant hypertension Brit J Surg 41 382 1953
- Lorber A and Visscher M B The action of angiotonin on the completely isolated mammalian heart (see Proc) Am J Physiol 133 365 1941
- Loufbaourow D G Callahan D and Pulmer R S The rice diet in ambulatory patients with essential hypertension New England J Med 215 1 1951
- Mackintosh I Adrenal sympathetia syndrome Brit Heart J 6 1 1944
- Maier C C and Wosika I H Urologic hypertension J Urol 41 893 1939
- Marley E and Fare C M B Cardiac failure with reserpine Brit M J 1 267 1956
- Martin L Effect of weight reduction on normal and raised blood pressures in obesity  
Lancet 2 1951 19 2
- Martin R H and Bonamy M Extended sympathectomy in arterial hypertension  
Arch mal du coeur 49 40 1955
- Martorelli E Hypertensive ulcer of the leg Angiology 1 133 1950
- Master A M Goldstein J and Walters M B New and old definitions of normal blood pressure clinical significance of the newly established limits Bull New York Acad Med 45 1951
- Medical Research Council The rice diet in the treatment of hypertension Lancet 2 503 1950
- Medoff H S and Bongiovanni A M Blood pressure in rats subjected to audiogenic stimulation Am J Physiol 143 500 1945
- Meilman F The management of hypertensive cardiovascular disease Circulation 13 596 1956
- and Krajer O Clinical studies on veratrum alkaloids Circulation 1 204 1950
- Mile B F The clinical significance of gallop rhythm in hypertension Brit Heart J 13 327 1951
- Miller S I Ford P V and Moyer J H Dibenzylamine results of therapy in patients with hypertension New England J Med 213 816 1953
- Moia B and Quesada R El tratamiento de la hipertensión arterial por los rodantes  
Rev argent de cardiología 41 1949
- von Monakow P and Mayer F Über den Einfluß der Erweichung des Harnabflusses auf die Nierenfunktion Deutsches Arch f klin Med 128 90 1918
- Morrison D M Brookes V S and Cooke W T Sympathectomy in the treatment of hypertension Lancet 1 403 1953
- Morrow J D Schwedler H A and Perry H M Jr Studies on the control of hypertension by hypox Circulation 8 820 1953
- Moser M Walters M Master A M Taymar R C and Metraux J Chemical blockade of the sympathetic nervous system in essential hypertension Arch Int Med 89 708 1955
- Mountain C I Miller E V and Haines S F The basal metabolic rate in essential hypertension Am Heart J 26 513 1943
- Newborn B and Kempner W Analysis of 177 cases of hypertensive vascular disease with papilledema Am J Med 19 33 1955
- Nich J B The pharmacologic and therapeutic properties of thiocyanates Am J Med Sci 110 35 1925
- Nickerson M Role of sympathetic blockade in the therapy of hypertension Am J Med 8 34 1950
- Nuzum F I and Dalton T W Isovolumic and persistent hypertension in association with lesions of the adrenal gland Am Heart J 16 643 1938
- Elliot A H and Evans R D A clinical and pathological study of coronary atherosclerosis in hypertension in an angina pectoris Am Heart J 10 367 1935

- Ogden E The physiological significance of the renal pressor mechanism *Texas Rep Biol & Med* 2 345 1944
- O'Hare J P and Holden R B Longevity in benign essential hypertension *JAMA* 149 1453 1952
- Orgain E S Pheochromocytoma The value of certain tests used routinely in diagnosis *Ann Int Med* 43 1178 1955
- Osler W Transient attacks of aphasia and paralysis in states of high blood pressure and arterio sclerosis *Canad MAJ* 1 919 1911
- Page I H A syndrome simulating diencephalic stimulation occurring in patients with essential hypertension *Am J M Sc* 190 9 1935
- Treatment of essential and malignant hypertension *JAMA* 14, 1311 1951
- Palmer R S Medical evaluation of the surgical treatment of hypertension *JAMA* 134 0 1947
- Parkinson J Bedford D E and Almond S Kinked carotid artery that simulates aneurysm *Brit Heart J* 1 345 1939
- Paton W D M and Zaimes E J Methonium compounds *Pharmacol Rev* 4 219 1950
- Pauli W Über Ionenwirkungen und ihre therapeutische Verwendung *München med Wehnschr* 50 153 1903
- Peet M M Woods W W and Braden S The surgical treatment of hypertension *JAMA* 115 1875 1940
- Perera G A The life history of one hundred patients with hypertensive vascular disease *Am Heart J* 42 421 1951
- Hypertensive disease *Ciba Symposium* 1954 46
- Hypertensive vascular disease *J Chron Disease* 1 33 1955
- Edema and congestive failure related to administration of Rauwolfia Serpentina *JAMA* 159 439 1955
- Primary hypertension *Circulation* 13 321 1956
- Perry H M Jr and Schroeder H A Syndrome simulating collagen disease caused by hydralazine (Apresoline) *JAMA* 154 670 1954 *Circulation* 13 523 1956
- and — Studies on the control of hypertension VII Effects of ganglionic blockade combined with hydralazine on the malignant stage complicated by renal azotemia *Circulation* 14 105 1956
- Peschel E and Peschel R L Electrolyte metabolism during rice diet *Arch Int Med* 91 296 1953
- Pickering G W High Blood Pressure New York Grune & Stratton 1955
- The pathogenesis of malignant hypertension *Circulation* 11 599 1952
- Transient cerebral paralysis in hypertension and in cerebral embolism *JAMA* 137 342 1948
- and Kissin M The effects of adrenaline and of cold on the blood pressure in human hypertension *Clin Science* 2 201 1936
- Pieri G Tentativi di cura chirurgica dell'ipertensione arteriosa essenziale *Riforma med* 48 1173 1932
- Pines L and Scherf D Über die auskultorische Lucke *Klin Wehnschr* 13 1721 1934
- Poppen J L and Lemmon C The surgical treatment of essential hypertension *JAMA* 134 1 1947
- Poutasse F F Humphrey A W McCormack L J and Coreoran A C Bilateral stenosis of renal arteries and hypertension *JAMA* 161 419 1956
- Pratt J H Fifty year blood pressure record in a case of benign hypertension *Bull New Engl M Cent* 15 156 1913
- Proger S Obesity and heart disease *M Clin North America* Sept 1951 1 1351
- Raab W Die Beziehungen zwischen CO<sub>2</sub> Spannung und Blutdruck bei Normalen und Hypertonikern *Ztschr f d ges exp Med* 68 337 1929

- Raab W Central vasomotor irritability contribution to the problem of essential hypertension Arch Int Med 47 727 1931
- Alimentäre Faktoren in der Entstehung von Arteriosklerose und Hypertension Med Klin 28 487 521 1932
  - Die zentrogenen Formen des arteriellen Hochdruckes Ergebn d inn Med u Kinderh 46 45<sup>o</sup> 1934
  - Anfälle von Fieber Hochdruck und Tachykardie nach Gehirnerschütterung Ztschr f klin Med 136 382 1939
  - Cardiotoxic substances in the blood and heart muscle in uremia (their nature and action) J Lab & Clin Med 29 715 1944
  - Neurohormonal factors in the origin and treatment of cardiovascular disease Bull New Engl M Cent 7 125 1945
  - Hypertension and tachycardia due to concussion of the brain Am Heart J 37 231 1949
  - Die koordinierte Rolle von Nerven Hormonen und Elektrolyten in der Pathophysiologie des Blutdruckes Acta neuroveget 11 52 1953
  - Hypertensive heart disease a confusing term Trans Am Coll Cardiol 5 36 1955
  - Humphreys R J Mahons N Degrandpré R and Gigue W Pressor effects of epinephrine norepinephrine and deoxycorticosterone acetate (DCA) weakened by sodium withdrawal Circulation 6 373 1952
- Ragan C and Bordley J III The accuracy of clinical measurements of arterial blood pressure Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 69 504 1941
- Rasolt H Über den Einfluß der Hammerfrequenz auf den Blutdruck bei einem Falle von Instabilem Block Wien Arch f inn Med 17 357 1929
- Rau H Zur Bedeutung der chronischen Blutdruckerhöhung für die Entstehung und Schwere der Arteriosklerose Klin Wchnschr 34 167 1936
- Ray H b The surgical treatment of hypertensive vascular disease M Clin North America 1949 p 30
- Reserpine Letter to the Editor J A M A 147 468 1955
- Robinson S D Hypotension the ideal normal blood pressure New England J Med 221 407 1940
- Robinson S C and Bruceer M Range of normal blood pressure Arch Int Med 61 409 1939
- Rogan A b Paroxysmal hypertension Lancet 1 103 1947
- Ronno Jessen V Heart failure from retention of salt and water caused by treatment with pentapyrrolidinium bisulfate Lancet 1 123 1955
- Rosenheim M L and Kauntz R Discussion on the medical treatment of hypertension Proc Roy Soc Med 45 269 1940
- Roth C M Hightower N C Parker N W and Priestley J T Familial pheochromocytoma Arch Surg 67 100 1933
- Rothermich N O An unusual case of pheochromocytoma with fatal outcome Ann Int Med 37 157 1952
- Ruakin A and Beard O W The Texas City Disaster Tex Rep Biol & Med 6 234 1948
- Sahl H Herzmittel und Vasomotorenmittel Verh d Kongr inn Med 19 45 1901
- Saint Pierre H S Corcoran A C Taylor R B and Dugan H P Relief of hypertensive headache by intravenous injection of thioriganate J A M A 152 493 1953
- Salus F Zur Frage des bulbaren Hochdruckes Klin Wchnschr 11 142 1932
- Schaefer R I Menopausal hypertension Endocrinology 13 705 1935
- Schaffer A J Neonatal blood pressure studies Am J Dis Child 89 204 1955
- Schaffer A J and Markowitz M Hypertension treated by nephrectomy Am J M Sc 417 1954

- Scheie H G Evaluation of ophthalmoscopic changes of hypertensive arteriolar sclerosis Arch Ophth 49 117 1953
- Scherf D The short P R interval and its occurrence in hypertension Bull New York M Coll Flower & 5th Ave Hosp 4 116 1941
- Schoenleoth R E Corcoran A C Dunstan H I and Page I H Mecamylamine in treatment of hypertensive disease JAMA 162 868 1956
- Schneider J A and Rinehart R V Circulatory interactions of serotonin and reserpine (serpasil) in dogs Arch Int Pharmacodyn 105 253 1956
- Schonemann Die Veränderungen der Nasenschleimhautgefäße bei Nephritis Arch f Laryngol u Rhinol 12 437 1902
- Schott A Spontaneous fluctuations of blood pressure Guy's Hosp Rep 89 69 1936
- Schottstaedt M F and Solow M The natural history and course of hypertension with papilledema (malignant hypertension) Am Heart J 45 331 1953
- Schroeder H A Pathogenesis of hypertension Am J Med 10 189 1951
- The control of hypertension by hexamethonium and hydrazinophthalazine Arch Int Med 89 623 1952
  - Hypertensive Disease Philadelphia Lea & Febinger 1953
  - and Coleman M L Test for the presence of the hypertensive diencephalic syndrome Am J Med 6 163 1949
  - and Morrow J D The control of arterial hypertension by hyphox M Clin North America 37 991 1953
  - and Steele J M Studies on essential hypertension II The association of hypertension with organic renal disease Arch Int Med 69 361 1941
- Schwab T H and Schulze V J Heart disease in the American Negro of the South Am Heart J 7 710 1932
- Selye H The general adaptation syndrome J Clin Endocrinol 6 117 1946
- The alarm reaction and diseases of adaptation Ann Int Med 29 403 1948
- Shapiro S Report of a case of essential hypertension of more than twenty five years duration showing no renal arteriolar changes on autopsy J Lab & Clin Med 21 66 1938
- Shore P A Silver S L and Brodie B B Interaction of reserpine serotonin and lysergic acid diethylamide in the brain Science 125 285 1955
- Shorr E Participation of hepatorenal vasotropic factor in experimental renal hypertension Am J Med 4 120 1948
- Smirni F H Action of a new methonium compound in arterial hypertension Lancet 1 45 1953
- Pathogenesis of essential hypertension Brit M J 1 791 1949
- Smith H W Hypertension and urologic disease Am J Med 1 24 1948
- Smithwick R H A technique for splanchnic resection for hypertension Surgery 1 1 1946
- Surgical treatment of hypertension the effect of radical (lumbodorsal) splanchnicectomy on the hypertensive state of one hundred and fifty six patients followed up to five years Arch Surg 79 180 1941
  - Hypertensive vascular disease J Chron Dis 1 477 1952
- Stein I Transient O diastolic blood pressure (indirect) in the upper extremities Ann Int Med 50 615 1949
- Strisower R Über Bedeutende Blutdruck sinkung nach Arbeit und bei Anstrengung der Körperliche bei Tuberculosis Ztschr f klin Med 117 384 1931
- Tandowsky I M Clinical evaluation of combined hydrocortisone and alkali (hydroxide) in arterial hypertension Circulation 9 48 1954
- Tauszig H B and Remick D B Essential hypertension in a boy two years of age Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 57 183 1955
- Tenney B Hypertension and pregnancy New Engl J Med 152 1104 1955

- Thomas C B What is the mode of action of thiocyanate compounds in essential hypertension? *Ann Int Med* 218 96 1952
- Threefoot S A Hypotension *Am J M Sc* 218 86 1949
- Thorn G W Harrison J H Merrill J P Cristitiello M G Frawley T F and Finkenstaedt J T Clinical studies on bilateral complete adrenalectomy *Ann Int Med* 37 9:2 1952
- Tigerstedt R and Bergman P G Niere und Kreislauf Skand Arch Physiol 8 2 3 1898
- Trout K W Bertrand C A and Williams M H Measurement of blood pressure in obese persons *JAMA* 162 970 1956
- Vakil R J A clinical trial of Rauwolfia serpentina in essential hypertension *Brit Heart J* 1949
- Rauwolfia serpentina in the treatment of high blood pressure *Circulation* 12 270 1955
- Viersma H J Pulmonary edema and pulmonary fibrosis in malignant hypertension during treatment with ganglion blocking agents *Nederl Tijdschr geneesk* 11 3593 1955
- Vollhard F Die doppelstrigen hamotogenen Nierenerkrankungen (Mohr Stahelin) *Handbuch inn Med* Berlin 1918 and 1931
- Über die Pathogenese des roten (essentiellen) arteriellen Hochdrucks und der malignen Sklerose Schweiz med Wchschr 75 1189 1949
- Wagener H P and Keith N M Diffuse arteriolar disease with hypertension and the associated retinal lesions *Medicine* 18 317 1939
- Wald M H Fierro M L and Keeton H H Toxic effects of hydralazine in ambulatory patients *Am Heart J* 47 861 1953
- Walter C W and Pijouan M J Persistent hypertension due to hypothalamic injury *Surgery* 1 292 1953
- Weil M H Polycythemia associated with obesity *JAMA* 162 160 1950
- Weiss S and Parker F Jr Pyelonephritis its relation to vascular lesions and to arterial hypertension *Medicine* 18 921 1939
- Weitz W Zur Ätiologie der genuinen oder vasculären Hypertonien *Ztschr f klin Med* 96 151 1923
- Welln I Specific toxemia essential hypertension and glomerulonephritis associated with pregnancy *Am J Obst & Gyn* 39 16 1940
- Wiplash K and Bar I Über die Entstehung des Schlaganfalls *Deutsches Arch f klin Med* 161 1 1926
- and Blum I I Holanthérapie des genuinen arteriellen Hochdrucks und ihr therapeutische Begründung *Deutsch Arch f klin Med* 157 331 1926
- Wilbrandt R Treatment of hypertension with hydergine *Angiology* 4 183 1953
- Wilburn C M Transient diastolic brachial pressure (in direct) associated with normal or elevated systolic pressure tachycardia and nervous tension *Am Heart J* 30 381 1945
- Wilkins W and Julson W F The use of Rauwolfia serpentina in hypertension *New Engl J Med* 18 48 1953
- Wilson C Experimental hypertension *Brit M Bull* 8 316 1952
- Renal factors in the production of hypertension *Lancet* 2 63 1953
- and Byrom F B The vicious circle in chronic Bright's disease *Quart J Med* 10 65 1941
- Zintel H A Sellere A M Jeffers W A Mackie J A Hafkenschiel J H and Lin Laur M A A three to seven years postoperative evaluation of 76 patients with severe hypertension treated with thoracolumbar sympathectomy *Surg Gynec & Obst* 101 48 1955



## Chapter 21

# Hypotension

NO GENERAL AGREEMENT has been reached regarding the level of the blood pressure at which hypotension may be diagnosed. Most observers concur that a systolic blood pressure of 100 mm Hg or less permits the diagnosis of hypotension but some place the upper level at 110.

In the new born the systolic blood pressure varies between 50 and 60 mm Hg. It gradually rises to values just under 100 mm Hg in children up to the tenth year. At puberty the normal blood pressure level for the individuals is reached. At this period of life temporary periods of mild hypertension are observed; they seem to be caused by an endocrine imbalance.

One may distinguish between (1) symptomatic hypotension, (2) constitutional permanent hypotension, and (3) orthostatic hypotension.

### *Symptomatic Hypotension*

This is encountered in the course of various diseases. It is common in Addison's disease and in Simmonds's hypophyseal cachexia. It occurs in shock, collapse, and during many infectious diseases. Hypotension is a common sign of myocardial infarction. Pulmonary emphysema, bronchial asthma, and pulmonary tuberculosis are often associated with a low blood pressure. Various forms of neurogenic and hormonal hypotension are discussed by Rab.

### *Permanent Constitutional Hypotension*

**Incidence.** This condition was formerly known as essential hypotension and is a common phenomenon. It appears in about 3 per cent of otherwise healthy adults. Like hypertension, it is often familial.

**Symptoms.** In a vast number of cases the condition is devoid of symptoms and its discovery is accidental. In this instance the physician errs grievously if he informs the patient about the finding. Laymen are soon convinced that a serious disease is present and many patients date the beginning of their complaints to the time they were told their blood pressure was too low. As a matter of fact, this type of hypotension never leads to alarming symptoms; it is an anomaly rather than a disease.

The associated symptoms are increased lassitude, fatigability, palpitation, cold clammy hands and feet, inability to concentrate, and giddiness, particularly on any change of posture. Patients may suffer from headache and they always

feel chilly. The responsibility for all these symptoms in a given case is hard to establish. The condition is more common in females than in males.

*Prognosis* The prognosis is excellent. Statistics show that the mortality of these individuals is far below that of the general population and the history often reveals longevity in many members of the patient's family.

*Treatment* As a rule medical therapy can be omitted. It usually suffices to inform the patient about the nature of his condition, its harmlessness and excellent prognosis. Physical exercises, massage, sponge baths followed by brisk rubbing, the application of an abdominal support for patients with enteroptosis and the administration of sedatives for the irritable nervous individual are often helpful. A gain in weight is beneficial for these patients but this is extremely difficult to achieve in many instances.

It is a mistake to administer drugs in order to elevate the blood pressure. Ephedrine, parendrine, sympathol and adrenocortical extracts have been recommended and are still prescribed too often. With these drugs it is impossible to maintain the blood pressure at a higher level for decades and furthermore this is entirely unnecessary. If the patient can learn not to focus attention on the level of the blood pressure, the symptoms soon disappear in most cases.

### *Orthostatic Hypotension*

In the third group, low blood pressure appears transiently on changing from the horizontal to the erect position.

Unless certain reflexes were active, such change of position always would immediately be followed by syncope. In the erect position, the vascular bed of the lower part of the body is dilated by increased hydrostatic pressure and plasma is lost by increased filtration pressure. Cerebral anemia, so called orthostatic arterial anemia, would appear if certain vasoconstrictive reflexes and an increased heart rate did not act as compensatory and adaptive factors.

Therefore, under normal conditions, when the individual changes from the recumbent to the erect position, only minor changes of blood pressure occur. The systolic blood pressure falls slightly, the diastolic rises a little and the heart beats a little faster.

After prolonged recumbency, in patients with varicose veins in males and in women in the first month of pregnancy, this orthostatic hypotension with fainting occurs.

In young and healthy individuals, vigorous exercise may lead to orthostatic hypotension and even syncope because of pooling of blood in the lower extremities.

In normal subjects under great nervous tension, a temporary 0 diastolic pressure has been observed in the brachial artery while it was normal in the popliteal artery. There is usually a tachycardia. The phenomenon may last from a few minutes up to an hour and a half.

As will be shown in the next chapter the normal adaptive mechanisms are greatly disturbed at times in such a way as to produce syncope when the posture is changed

## Bibliography

(For additional references see chapter on Hypertension)

Friedlander A Hypotension *Medicine* 6 143 1927

Kisch F Der arterielle Tiefdruck (Hypotonic) *Ergebn Inn Med u Kinderh* 38 96 1930

Raab W Neurogenic and hormonal hypotension *Anesthesiology* 16 781 1955

## Chapter 22

# Fainting; Morgagni-Stokes-Adams Attacks

### FAINING

#### *Introduction*

THE FUNCTIONS OF THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM and the preservation of consciousness depend upon an adequate blood supply. Accordingly attacks of syncope are a natural consequence of certain disorders of circulation.

The laity frequently attributes syncopal attacks whether accompanied by convulsions or not to organic heart disease. As a matter of fact fainting and convulsions are more common in cardiac patients than in the general population. Many patients with these symptoms do not however suffer from any circulatory disorder.

Formerly fits (syncope with convulsions) were sharply distinguished from syncope (simple fainting). The latter was considered to lack an aura to appear only when the patient was erect and to display no motor phenomena such as twitching or convulsions. At present it is generally agreed that the two conditions merge imperceptibly and the appearance of one or the other is determined only by the degree and duration of the circulatory disturbance.

Syncope accompanied or unaccompanied by convulsions is frequently confused with epilepsy. Mistakes also occur in the other direction since epilepsy (petit mal) may manifest itself by simple syncope. Some of the circulatory disturbances discussed below may be preceded by an aura and may be accompanied by tonic clonic convulsions and loss of sphincter control. Possible confusion is enhanced by the fact that patients whose attacks originate in circulatory disturbances may present normal findings if a routine examination is done in the interval between attacks. Therefore it is not astonishing that many patients who suffer from syncope of circulatory origin are referred by the neurologist sometimes only after considerable delay. The confusion has found expression in the term *epilepsie cardiaque* which often appears in French literature.

Some types of syncopal attacks — fainting spells of patients with mitral stenosis especially in those with a ball thrombus in the left atrium and the fainting observed in patients with aortic stenosis or high pressure in the lesser circuit — were mentioned in previous chapters. The overwhelming agony in coronary occlusion and in aortic dissection may cause syncope. Unconsciousness appears in aortic dissection when it occludes the orifice of the innominate artery.

and the left carotid artery. Attacks of syncope due to a congenital anomaly of the carotid artery have been described (de Meyer Smith and Hinshaw). Fainting caused by thrombosis of the internal carotid artery or in pulseless disease will be discussed in the chapter on peripheral vascular disease.

### *Vaso Vagal Syncope*

Attacks of unconsciousness can occur in patients without circulatory or cardiac disease merely from sudden excitement and emotions. Some patients (mostly women) faint whenever they see a funeral procession or at the sight of an open wound or blood. An overcrowded or overheated room may cause fainting in others. The sight of instruments may make the patient faint in the dentist's office; others swoon upon receiving news of vital importance or on witnessing an accident. Anxiety, fear and pain are responsible.

The attacks are particularly prone to occur on recovery from an acute infectious disease and in the course of an acute gastroenteritis. They are not unusual in the menstrual period. The syndrome is also encountered fairly often in tall rapidly growing individuals especially when they are compelled to stand quiet for a while. Occasionally they may even occur when the patient is seated or lying.

Pallor appears quickly; the patient experiences great weakness and an unpleasant sensation in the epigastrium; yawning is common. At first the pulse is rapid and almost imperceptible. The blood pressure may fall to below 80 mm Hg. The patient may be drenched with perspiration. On recovery a marked bradycardia sets in which may reach 30 beats per minute or less. This bradycardia led to the introduction of the term 'vaso-vagal syncope' (Lewis) but this expression should not be confused with the vaso-vagal attacks described by Gowers. In the latter the patients (also for the most part women) do not lose consciousness but are overwhelmed by an inexplicable fear of impending death. In the vaso-vagal attacks, sighing as well as yawning are common and nausea with vomiting are frequently noted. Great weakness and headache may persist for hours. Some uncertainty or dizziness are premonitory signs. The attacks may last for seconds or minutes. During the periods of unconsciousness, spasmodic movements of the head and arms occur.

The mechanism of these attacks is not adequately explained. The suggestion that they are of vagal origin (Cotton and Lewis) or are due to abnormal carotid sinus reflexes (Lewis) is not fully substantiated. The bradycardia and hypotension seem to develop *after* the onset of unconsciousness and are therefore not initiating factors.

The syndrome consisting of the unconsciousness with nausea, profuse sweating and bradycardia but otherwise normal findings is readily recognized.

Complete assurance of the patient is entirely justified. The condition is embarrassing but harmless.

### *Postural Hypotension*

This syndrome has special features (Bradbury and Eggleston) and therefore is separated from orthostatic hypotension. The systolic and diastolic blood pressure in patients with this disturbance rapidly fall to low levels when the erect position is adopted. The attacks are also apt to occur with the beginning of slight exertion such as walking on level ground when the lower part of the body receives more blood.

Whereas symptoms usually occur in other types of hypotension when the systolic blood pressure declines to 80 or 90 mm Hg on change of position in this syndrome the systolic blood pressure may fall to 50 mm Hg without the appearance of symptoms. There is no nausea, sweating, or marked change of heart rate. Unconsciousness is the sole symptom.

It is important that patients with this syndrome usually have some organic nervous disease. This happened in the first three observations; later this syndrome was described in patients with insufficiency of the anterior lobe of the hypophysis and in those with tabes or bulbar paralysis. A similar disturbance was observed in Addison's disease but here the pulse rate increases markedly on standing. This syndrome was ascribed to a paralysis of the visomotor nerves but a central hypothalamic lesion or a peripheral disorder of the sympathetic nervous system leading to a disturbance of the regulating reflexes mentioned above seems more probable. Sympathectomy for the treatment of hypertension provokes a similar syndrome.

Two patients with postural hypotension had a deficiency in release of norepinephrine and epinephrine (Luft and Euler). Perhaps this was secondary to a lesion of the sympathetic nerves.

Banding the legs, epinephrine, paredrine, prostigmine, methyl sulfate and preparations of the anterior lobe of the hypophysis have been recommended. Bandaging and paredrine are more effective than the others.

### *Carotid Sinus Syndrome*

It has been known for a long time that pressure at a certain area in the neck may cause syncope. The pressure may be exerted manually by a tumor by instruments during an operation or by certain positions of the head. This event was clarified by Hering's discovery of the carotid sinus reflexes. Several instances of this type of fainting were published and the syndrome received general recognition after the studies of Weiss and his co-workers were published.

In some individuals increased sensitivity of the receptors in the carotid artery, of the central synapses, the efferent neurons or an abnormal condition of the effector organ, the heart, may produce an abnormal effect consisting of syncope following slight mechanical pressure on the carotid sinus. In patients with this affection stimulation of the carotid sinus receptors may be evoked by holding the head in certain positions or by turning the head. Even pressure of the collar may suffice to produce syncope. Similar attacks can be readily elicited

by the examining physician when he exerts pressure on the carotid sinus. The attack develops after pressure is applied for 4 to 40 seconds on the right or the left carotid sinus. Spontaneous attacks last for one half to three minutes and are sometimes preceded by an aura consisting of dizziness, epigastric pain or weakness. Later pallor appears with loss of consciousness and convulsions which may be generalized. The tongue is not bitten and sphincter control is retained. Mental confusion, hallucinations and amnesia are common temporary after effects.

Analysis of the cardiac and blood pressure phenomena during the syncope led to the separation of three groups of cases (Ferris et al.)

(1) Syncope due to cardiac standstill caused by inhibition of impulse formation.

(2) Syncope due to an abnormal vascular reaction which causes the blood pressure to fall to an abnormally low level. This and the preceding type were anticipated on the basis of facts known about the physiology of the carotid sinus. Of great interest, however, is the third variety, the so-called 'cerebral group'.

(3) Syncope that appears with normal or almost normal blood pressure and a normal heart rate. In this type unconsciousness occurs as early as four seconds after stimulation of the carotid sinus. Originally these attacks were ascribed to focal cerebral vasoconstriction but proof to support this conception could not be obtained. The existence of an area for the maintenance of the conscious state which can be influenced by reflexes from the carotid sinus was suggested as a possible explanation.

An abnormally functioning circle of Willis is probable; the cerebral circulation becoming insufficient when one carotid artery is occluded.

Denervation of the carotid sinus by operation, the infiltration with novocaine or irradiation of a tumor pressing on the carotid sinus may abolish the attacks for a time. Recurrences are not rare and it is difficult to explain them after the carotid sinus nerves have been severed.

It should be stressed that many patients with the carotid sinus syndrome either have evidence of a myocardial lesion or else are of an age (over 60 years) when such a lesion could be expected. This might be anticipated for two reasons:

a. Vagus effects on the heart, i.e., vagus inhibition, are more pronounced in a damaged heart than in a healthy one. A fact repeatedly confirmed since Wenckebach's original report. Experimental corroboration is easily secured and the event has become thoroughly comprehensible since the chemical mediation of vagal effects was discovered by Loewi. A heart already in a poor metabolic state will respond longer and more strongly to released acetylcholine than a normal one.

b. In many cases, however, the stronger effect of vagus stimulation is apparent rather than real. In the normal heart the higher atrial centers are inhibited by vagal stimulation while the lower ventricular centers are not influenced. Therefore these low centers immediately form stimuli if the higher centers are restrained and thus a serious ventricular standstill is prevented. Accordingly healthy people have only a slight slowing of the heart rate during carotid sinus pressure.

If an electrocardiogram is taken simultaneously it reveals that the sinus node action is completely inhibited and that ventricular centers beyond the reach of the vagus form stimuli for the ventricle. In cases of a myocardial lesion however the deeper centers are damaged they do not escape immediately and prolonged cardiac standstill results.

It is therefore a mistake to designate every marked effect of carotid pressure as a carotid sinus syndrome and as evidence of hypersensitivity of the receptors in the carotid sinus or hyperexcitability of some other part of the reflex arc. Abnormality of ventricular centers may be responsible.

### *Fainting due to Various Other Mechanisms*

In another group of patients cardiac standstill results from other nervous reflexes and disorders. While these patients have often been considered to have a nervous type of Stokes Adams syndrome in a majority of cases the modern cardiologist would undoubtedly discover an intrinsic heart lesion as the etiologic factor. In many reported cases the examination during life and after death was superficial. Thus in a case of a seventy two year old man the attacks of unconsciousness were attributed to a bronchogenic carcinoma which encased the vagus nerve. Electrocardiograms disclosed a sino atrial block and Stokes Adams attacks due to sino atrial block is a more probable explanation. The attacks produced by reflexes from other parts of the body for instance cardiac standstill on swallowing also belong to this group. They have been discussed in a preceding chapter.

## MORGAGNI STOKES ADAMS SYNDROME

### *Nomenclature*

The occurrence of epileptiform attacks with a slow (radial) pulse was reported by Morgagni (1761) Adams (1827) and other observers. Since the paper of Stokes (1846) on this subject was of major importance and had the greatest influence it has repeatedly been proposed to call the syndrome Stokes Adams attacks.

Some authors apply this term only to attacks occurring in patients with heart block. Cases of circulatory standstill without block e.g. paroxysmal tachycardia or ventricular fibrillation must have a separate designation. In the present volume the term Morgagni Stokes Adams attacks will apply to all types resulting from a change of cardiac activity regardless whether they are due to cardiac standstill or tachycardia. Attacks in which cardiac standstill is not the result of an abnormal intrinsic cardiac mechanism (abnormal carotid sinus reflex or instances of abnormal vagal reflexes) are excluded. We deal with a syndrome and not a disease entity.

### *Symptoms and Signs*

The syndrome occurs if the cerebral circulation is arrested for a certain period. If the standstill of cerebral circulation lasts only a few seconds the patient is unaware of any disturbance. It requires an arrest of longer duration at least



6 to 8 seconds to provoke the sensation of darkness in front of the eyes. After the standstill lasts for approximately 10 seconds the patient loses consciousness, he becomes pale, his eyes turn upward and with continued arrest of cerebral blood flow twitching of the arms and legs begins, culminating finally in tonic clonic convulsions. Urine and stool are evacuated involuntarily. An arrest of circulation lasting more than four minutes is often fatal. With the resumption of the normal blood supply the face becomes red and a short period of dyspnea develops. A respiratory disturbance similar to Cheyne Stokes breathing occurs if one attack quickly follows another.

The attack may occur once and never recur or there may be hundreds of them every day. If the attacks are brief the patient may be unaware of them and he may continue a conversation from the point reached when fainting occurred. After a long attack with convulsions extreme weakness may follow for a few hours. Vomiting is not unusual. If one attack succeeds another at short intervals the patient may remain semi-conscious or somewhat hazy.

#### *Mechanism of the Attacks*

The syndrome may be produced by two radically different events whose distinction is important with respect to therapy.

*Ventricular Standstill ( Cardiac Arrest )* In this form there is actual ventricular standstill. Various subgroups are known. Most frequently ventricular standstill occurs in disturbances of atrioventricular conduction when the atrial stimuli fail to reach the ventricle. If the lower centers are normal they immediately start functioning when the conduction of stimuli to the ventricle stops. As pointed out earlier however these lower centers are also affected in many patients and a certain time elapses before they can develop their automatic activity. The clinical manifestations depend upon the duration of the pre automatic pause or stoppage of the ventricles until the activity of the lower centers begins. Therefore in order for this form of Stokes Adams to appear two disturbances are necessary: failure of the atrioventricular conduction and failure or retarded development of ventricular automatism.

In a majority of patients who develop atrioventricular block the automaticity of the ventricular centers is normal and therefore cardiac arrest appears only in a small percentage of patients with heart block.

Since complete heart block is usually transient at first and conduction is temporarily reinstituted only to fail again such attacks often recur. If the history of patients with heart block is carefully recorded one notes that for some time the patient has suffered from attacks of vertigo and fainting. It may safely be assumed that heart block developed precisely at that time.

*Rapid Ventricular Activity* This form of Morgagni Stokes Adams syndrome formerly regarded as rare but actually common is caused by attacks of tachycardia. The faster the cardiac rate the shorter diastole and the smaller the stroke volume. If the rate of the heart exceeds a certain limit the period available for cardiac filling becomes too brief and the ventricles expel so little blood

with such feeble force that the circulation for practical purposes is at a standstill or at least is reduced to a minimum. With a good cardiac muscle and healthy vessels young people tolerate an extremely rapid ventricular rate even more than 300 per minute very well. Older people with sclerotic vessels or patients with myocardial disease or a valvular lesion with predominating stenosis — the latter resulting in a small stroke volume from the start — may exhibit disturbances of cerebral circulation with a tachycardia of much lower rate. These disturbances may cause temporary vertigo or hemianopsia (Barnes). Prolonged unconsciousness without convulsions may be noted when some cerebral circulation is maintained. Hemiparesis which vanishes promptly when the tachycardia stops is also observed. In short the cerebrum like the heart responds to a tachycardia according to the state of its vessels.

Very often the tachycardia evoking this syndrome is due to paroxysmal atrial fibrillation a common event in patients with coronary sclerosis. If transient attacks of ventricular fibrillation are not lethal the effect on the circulation is identical with that of complete cardiac standstill. Scott and Sincetta observed Morgagni Stokes Adams attacks caused by ventricular tachycardia in a patient with A V block they were elicited by mechanical rectal irritation.

Syncope de effort (Callaghan) is usually caused by ectopic arrhythmias.

### *Differential Diagnosis*

This is difficult for many reasons. Examination of the patient between the attacks may not permit a decision in both major varieties. Differentiation may be impossible even when the patient is seen in an attack. The patient may be pulseless and may show a cadaveric pallor in complete ventricular standstill as well as in ventricular fibrillation. The heart sounds are often inaudible in patients with rapid ventricular activity or ventricular fibrillation. On the other hand rapid rhythmic sounds caused by the contraction of the atria may be audible during ventricular standstill. For this reason an electrocardiogram of the patient during the attack is indispensable in many cases to establish the diagnosis. If the attacks recur at irregular intervals and without warning this may be impossible.

Moreover the presence of some irregularity of rhythm between the attacks does not aid in differentiation. One might expect that the first form (ventricular standstill) would occur in patients who exhibit atrioventricular block between the attacks whereas the presence of extrasystoles would be a sign that the attacks are due to a disturbance of stimulus formation (paroxysmal tachycardia or fibrillation). Recent experience has taught however that the combination of both forms often occurs and even during the same attack patients may have ventricular tachycardia or ventricular fibrillation and complete ventricular standstill.

Three causes are known for such an event. The tachycardia may follow standstill because ventricular inactivity leads to an accumulation of metabolites

in the centers this stimulates them and evokes a tachycardia. At other times cardiac standstill follows a tachycardia because overactivity fatigues the centers and inhibits their automaticity. Finally attacks of ventricular fibrillation and polyfocal ventricular extrasystoles are particularly common in patients with complete heart block presumably because the same lesion usually coronary sclerosis which causes the block also produces irritation of the specific fibers and leads to abnormal stimulus formation. A bilateral bundle branch block is often present.

Figure 88 was obtained from a patient with coronary sclerosis and complete heart block. The patient suffered from typical Stokes Adams attacks with convulsions. The electrocardiogram registered repeatedly during the attacks showed that they were due to ventricular fibrillation. In figure 89 the complete heart block is interrupted by a group of 13 multiform ventricular extrasystoles. Such short attacks often preceded or followed typical ventricular fibrillation in this patient.



FIG. 88 Complete atrioventricular block and brief ventricular tachycardia with various ventricular complexes.

The differentiation of these attacks from epilepsy, hysteria and the attacks of syncope discussed in the preceding section is not always easy. Many patients with Stokes Adams syndrome whom we have had an opportunity to see originally consulted a neurologist for epilepsy and some of them were treated for this disease. If in the midst of seemingly perfect health a patient suddenly becomes unconscious and his convulsions such an erroneous diagnosis is comprehensible.

### Prognosis

The outcome depends upon the underlying disease and the mechanism responsible for the attack. In a majority of cases the attacks are due to coronary sclerosis. We are dealing with a serious complication and sudden death is common. Patients who have these attacks may recover and lead a useful life for many years with or without complete heart block. In one personally observed case in which Stokes Adams attacks followed coronary occlusion hundreds of such attacks appeared daily for many days but the patient was seen alive and well four years later. When the attacks are due to ventricular fibrillation the prognosis is much worse than it is in ventricular standstill.

### *Treatment*

Therapy should not be started until it has been determined whether the attacks are caused predominately by tachycardia (or fibrillation) or ventricular standstill. Treatment without a conclusive diagnosis may result in a serious and even fatal outcome (Scherf). The remedies required in one form possess actions that are injurious in the other. If cardiac standstill is present stimulants must be given which would be fatal in the tachycardia and in ventricular fibrillation. On the other hand depressants like quinidine so effective in the tachycardiac form can induce serious injury if the attacks occur because of standstill. Furthermore it seems that quinidine enhances the development of ventricular fibrillation in these cases (Schwartz). Since both types may appear successively in the same patient it is often safer to withhold treatment.

In the therapeutic program a distinction should be made between measures indicated in the attack and measures aimed at the prevention of recurrences.

**Cardiac Standstill** If the attacks are due to cardiac standstill and the patient is seen during an episode an immediate attempt to excite ventricular automatism should be made. Many times this can be accomplished simply and rapidly by means of sharp blows or slaps to the cardiac area. In animal experiments when the heart is exposed a quick blow on the heart with a blunt instrument almost always leads to the desired effect and automaticity starts anew.

The intracardiac injection of epinephrine may be life-saving but often the effect is too violent and there is considerable danger that ventricular fibrillation will replace cardiac standstill. For this reason caffeine sodium benzoate is more worthy of recommendation for intracardiac injection. Often pricking of the heart with the needle suffices to awaken automatism. For prevention if one attack succeeds another at short intervals epinephrine may be given (0.2 ml. of the standard solution) subcutaneously with good results. Ephedrine in tablets of 30—60 mg. three times daily is often useful in preventing attacks caused by ventricular standstill. Norepinephrine like epinephrine creates ectopic rhythms and its administration in form of infusions is difficult. Isuprel which can be given in the form of linguets (10 mg.) is in our experience a useful agent (Nathanson and Miller).

Atropine formerly employed without discrimination in all cases of heart block is effective only when the attacks are caused by abnormal vagal reflexes.

Barium chloride has also been recommended for the treatment of attacks of cardiac standstill. This usage is based on the experimental observation that the compound actually increases the automaticity of the cardiac centers in a very remarkable manner and causes abnormal impulse formation. The dose is 40—60 mg. of barium chloride that is 20 drops of a 5 per cent solution by mouth three times a day. This therapy is not devoid of danger. Barium chloride is absorbed from the intestine with great variability in different individuals and the borderline between the effective and the toxic dose is very sharp. Accordingly no reaction occurs in some cases until a ventricular tachycardia suddenly appears. We do

in the centers this stimulates them and evokes a tachycardia. At other times cardiac standstill follows a tachycardia because overactivity fatigues the centers and inhibits their automaticity. Finally attacks of ventricular fibrillation and multifocal ventricular extrasystoles are particularly common in patients with complete heart block presumably because the same lesion—usually coronary sclerosis—which causes the block also produces irritation of the specific fibers and leads to abnormal stimulus formation. A bilateral bundle branch block is often present.

Figure 88 was obtained from a patient with coronary sclerosis and complete heart block. The patient suffered from typical Stokes Adams attacks with convulsions. The electrocardiogram registered repeatedly during the attack showed that they were due to ventricular fibrillation. In figure 88 the complete heart block is interrupted by a group of 13 multiform ventricular extrasystoles. Such short attacks often preceded or followed typical ventricular fibrillation in this patient.



FIG. 88 Complete atrioventricular block and brief ventricular tachycardia with various ventricular complexes.

The differentiation of these attacks from epilepsy, hysteria, and the attacks of syncope discussed in the preceding section is not always easy. Many patients with Stokes Adams syndrome whom we have had an opportunity to see originally consulted a neurologist for epilepsy, and some of them were treated for this disease. If in the midst of seemingly perfect health a patient suddenly becomes unconscious and has convulsions such an erroneous diagnosis is comprehensible.

### Prognosis

The outcome depends upon the underlying disease and the mechanism responsible for the attack. In a majority of cases the attacks are due to coronary sclerosis. We are dealing with a serious complication and sudden death is common. Patients who have these attacks may recover and lead a useful life for many years with or without complete heart block. In one personally observed case in which Stokes Adams attacks followed coronary occlusion hundreds of such attacks appeared daily for many days but the patient was seen alive and well four years later. When the attacks are due to ventricular fibrillation the prognosis is much worse than it is in ventricular standstill.

*Cardiac Resuscitation* In recent years cardiac accidents during anesthesia and surgery have become more common. This is partly explained by the increased number of chest and cardiac operations. Cardiac standstill occurs when the pleura or the pericardium is opened or when a bronchus or a large blood vessel is ligated. In the section on vago-vagal reflexes other instances are mentioned. Cardiac standstill is observed with increased frequency also because of the pre-anesthetic medication used in many institutions in ever increasing amounts. Quinidine, atropine, barbiturates and procaine amide have been recommended. They all depress automaticity of the ventricular centers so that they do not develop their own rhythm when the higher centers are inhibited. The depressed automaticity of the deeper centers is presumably the chief reason that cardiac arrest occurs five times more often in patients with cardiac disease.

Ventricular contraction may stop because of intrinsic heart disease or as a consequence of inhibiting vagal reflexes. Cardiac standstill has been seen in patients with glossopharyngeal neuralgia. It has been observed during swallowing (Adamson et al.).

The same effect (standstill of the circulation) is observed when ventricular fibrillation sets in. The treatment is of course very different from that of cardiac standstill.

Cooley found it necessary to employ cardiac resuscitation in 48 of 878 patients operated on for pulmonary stenosis. Circulation was restored in 33 with normal cardiac action but only 12 survived. It is estimated that in 90 per cent of these patients we are dealing with cardiac asystole and in 10 per cent with ventricular fibrillation. Others estimate an incidence of cardiac arrest once in 1000—5000 anesthetics (Singleton and DeLoach).

A differentiation between the two forms is possible only with electrocardiogram or inspection of the exposed heart. The latter must be employed in practically all cases unless the electrocardiogram is observed continuously during surgery, as too much valuable time would be lost in setting up and taking the electrocardiogram. Heart sounds are heard on auscultation in both conditions because of the continuous activity of the atria.

The immediate therapy consists of two measures and is the same in both conditions: first, exposure of the heart (if it is not already exposed) to permit massage; second, artificial respiration and supplying oxygen, which the anesthetic does best with an intratracheal catheter.

The chief principle is the restoration of circulation by massage within 3 minutes. Any delay beyond this time may save the patient but the damage to cortical centers may make them vegetating mental cripples with multiple neurologic manifestations, no longer useful members of society. In cyanotic or decompensated patients damage to the centers has been observed after a standstill of the circulation lasting only 60 seconds.

The anatomist Tandler stated in connection with another emergency operation that three things are necessary for it: courage, a sharp knife and some anatomic knowledge. Without regard to asepsis or bleeding, a deep cut is made in

the fourth intercostal space and the hand of the physician is forced through it massage of the heart — which is placed between the thumb and other fingers — is started and performed 50 to 60 times a minute. The finger readily detects the presence of either cardiac standstill or the characteristic sensation noted when a fibrillating ventricle is massaged the sensation of thousands of worms continuously wriggling. Simultaneously, 100 per cent oxygen is supplied by a respiratory or tracheal tube or as an emergency by mouth to mouth breathing.

In vagal standstill the heart often beats immediately after the massage is begun. Atropine may be given in small doses. Calcium recommended by Block has the danger of inducing ventricular fibrillation as has bromium suggested by Fautoux. Adrenaline also often leads to fibrillation but caffeine sodium benzoate or Isuprel sublingually may be used with advantage.

A new method is electric shock treatment (Zoll) which may cause unpleasant burning and twitching of the skin but otherwise is useful.

When fibrillation of the ventricles is present the administration of quinidine or Pronestyl has disadvantages since these drugs depress ventricular automaticity so that the end of fibrillation may be followed by standstill. The instillation of Pronestyl into the pericardial cavity causes the same effect as an intravenous injection since the compound is absorbed with amazing speed. The best success is accomplished with the electrical devices designed for defibrillation. An alternating current of 110–135 volts with a current flow of one or more amperes is used repeatedly for less than 0.5 second. Often higher voltage is necessary but it may cause burns. Voltage of less than 100 may cause fibrillation. Electric countershock applied externally helped 11 times in 4 patients (Zoll).

## Bibliography

- Adamsen C, A. Fikstrand T, Hock O and Lindblom U. A contribution to the treatment of the carotid sinus syndrome. *Acta med Scand* 153 355 1956.
- Allan C. A. Paroxysmal tachycardia of ventricular origin with Stokes Adams syndrome exhibiting retrograde conduction with partial heart block. *Circulation* 10 440 1926.
- Barcroft H, Edholm D G, McMichael J and Sharpey Schaefer F. I. I. themorrhagic fainting. *Lancet* 1 459 1944.
- Barnes A R. Cerebral manifestations of paroxysmal tachycardia. *Am J Med Sci* 11 489 1926.
- Beck C S, Ritchard W H and Feil H S. Ventricular fibrillation of long duration abolished by electric shock. *JAMA* 129 94 1947.
- Bellotti S, Wasserman F and Brody J I. Treatment of cardiac arrest and low ventricular rates in complete A-V block. *Circulation* 11 64, 1955.
- Berte S J and Smith A F. Adams Stokes syndrome due to ventricular fibrillation and tachycardia. *New England J Med* 248 282 1953.
- Bodachtel C. Zur Klinik der zerebralen Kreislaufstörungen. *Verh d Ges D h f Klin lauffes* 11 109 1953.
- Bradbury S and Eggleston C. Postural hypotension. *Am Heart J* 11 3 19.
- Briggs B D, Sheldon D B and Beecher H K. Cardiac arrest. *JAMA* 100 143 1936.

- Caude M A Tumour of the neck associated with syncope attacks Proc Roy Soc Med 21 762 1897-29
- Cohn A E and Levine S A The beneficial effects of barium chloride on Adams Stokes disease Arch Int Med 30 1 1925
- Cooler D A Cardiac resuscitation during operations for pulmonary stenosis Ann Surg 73 930 1950
- Cotton T F and Lewis T Observations upon fainting attacks due to inhibitory cardiac myoides Heart 23 1919
- Douglas A H and Wagner W I Ventricular control by artificial pacemaker for days with recovery JAMA 17 444 1955
- Edithrial Cardiac arrest Lancet 2 121 1954
- Ellis L B and Haynes F W Postural hypotension with particular reference to its occurrence in disease of the central nervous system Arch Int Med 35 173 1936
- Engel C L Fainting Springfield Thomas 1950
- Ferris F B Jr Capps R B and Weiss S Carotid sinus syncope and its bearing on the mechanism of the unconscious state and convulsions Medicine 11 3 1932
- Friedberg C H and Fiedelman M H The mechanism of syncope associated with chronic auricular fibrillation without evidence of organic heart disease New England J Med 249 10 1953
- Gallavardin M L Les syncopes de l'effort Lyon med 151 21 1933
- and Bernard A Un cas de fibrillation ventriculaire au cours d'accidents syncopaux du Stokes Adams Arch d mal du coeur 1 18 1924
- Gritz C Kaplan H A Kaplan L and Weinstein W Cardiac syncope due to paroxysms of ventricular fibrillation and asystole in a patient with varying degrees of A V block and intraventricular block Am Heart J 16 25 1938
- Gulcher A R Lecture on faints and fits Brit M J 1 201 1933
- Gulch B Elektrokarthographische Beobachtungen bei Morgagni Adams Störschen Symptomen Komplex Ztschr f Kreislaufforschg 4 61 193
- von Henselin H Kammerwühlen und Adams Störscher Symptomenkomplex Klin Wochenschr 4 6 1935
- Hawthorn S and Sharkey Schaefer F E Low blood pressure phases following hemorrhage Lancet 1 14 1947
- Johnson J and Kirby C K Prevention and treatment of cardiac arrest JAMA 154 91 1954
- Kasli H and Blalock A The use of calcium chloride in the treatment of cardiac arrest Surg Gyn & Obst 33 9 1941
- Levine S A Cardiac resuscitation JAMA 15 1409 1933
- Levine S A and Martin M Observations on a case of Adams Stokes syndrome showing ventricular fibrillation and asystole lasting five minutes with recovery following the intracardiac injection of adrenalin Heart 1 2 1926
- Levis T Lesoreux et al. asystole brève au cours d'athérosclérose coronaire Brit M J 1 9 1932
- Lin C De l'épilepsie cardiaque Bull et mem Soc d hop de Paris 4 81 1930
- Lof R and Fulton L S Two cases of postural hypotension showing a deficiency in release of nor epinephrine and epinephrine J Clin Investigation 3 106 1953
- Mearns R and Allen L V Orthostatic hypotension and orthostatic tachycardia treatment with head up bed JAMA 176 216 1940
- Meyer J A prodromes d'un mi-cérébral (hypotrophie d'une carotide) Arch d mal du coeur 11 11 1911
- Mitchell F Nervous and mental phenomena associated with paroxysmal tachycardia Brain 31 44 1930
- Nathanson M H and Miller H The action of nor epinephrine epinephrine and isopropyl nor epinephrine in the rhythmic function of the heart Circulation 2 238 1950



- Parkinson J Iapp C and Evans W The electrocardiogram of the Stokes Adams attack Brit Heart J 3 171 1941
- Ihear A G and Parkinson J Adrenalin in the Stokes Adams syndrome Lancet 1 933 1922
- Price F W and Nisse B S The treatment of Adams Stokes syndrome due to auriculoventricular block Am Heart J 5 197 1929
- Richberg P L and Kern C E Glossopharyngeal neuralgia with syncope and convulsions JAMA 162 703 1953
- Rose L B and Wartonick W Treatment of a case of Stokes Adams disease by external electric stimulation JAMA 159 1015 1955
- Rothberger C J and Winterberg H Über die experimentelle Erzeugung extrasystolischer ventrikulärer Tachykardie durch Acceleransreizung Arch f d ges Physiol 142 461 1911
- Schellong F Störung der Kreislaufregulation ein neues Symptom bei Insuffizienz des Hypophysenvorderlappens Klin Wchnschr 10 100 1931
- Scherf D Über die Wirkung von Säure und Alkalinfusionen auf die Extrareizbildung im Säugetierherzen Z ges exp M 73 382 1930
- Der Morgagni Adams Stokes Symptomkomplex und seine Behandlung Wien klin Wchnschr 49 83 1936
- Cardiac reflexes originating in the respiratory tract New York State M J 45 164 1945
- and Boyd L J Clinical Electrocardiography ed 3 New York Grune & Stratton 1953
- Schur M Zur Frage der endokrinen nervösen Blutdruckregulierung im Stehen und nach Arbeit Wien Arch f inn Med 29 271 1936
- Schwartz S P Transient ventricular fibrillation a study of the electrocardiograms obtained from a patient with auriculoventricular dissociation and recurrent syncopeal attacks Arch Int Med 49 282 1932
- Scott R W and Lancetta S M Stokes Adams attacks induced by rectal stimulation in a patient with complete heart block Circulation 2 886 1950
- Singleton A O and DeLoach A W Cardiac arrest Texas Rep Biol Med 13 1027 1955
- Smith H L and Hinshaw H C Syncopeal attacks due to a congenital anomaly of the right common carotid artery Am Heart J 11 619 1936
- Spuhler O Zum Symptomkomplex Adams Stokes Ztschr f klin Med 179 693 1936
- Starr I Jr and Collins L H Jr Studies of cardiac output in normal men Am J Physiol 66 228 1931
- Stead E A Jr and Ebert R V Postural hypotension a disease of the sympathetic nervous system Arch Int Med 67 546 1941
- Strisower R Pharmakologische Beeinflussung des Pulses bei einem Fall von Herzblock Wien klin Wchnschr 33 269 1920
- Über bedeutende Blutdrucksenkung nach Arbeit und bei Änderung der Körperlage bei Tabes dorsalis Ztschr f klin Med 117 384 1931
- Weiss S and Baker J I The carotid sinus reflex in health and disease its role in the causation of fainting, and convulsions Medicine 12 297 1933
- Wenckebach K F and Winterberg H Die unregelmäßige Herzstätigkeit Leipzig Engelmann 1927
- Wiggin S C Saunders I and Small C A Resuscitation New England J Med 174 370 1949
- Zoll I M Resuscitation of the heart in ventricular standstill by external electric stimulation New England J Med 247 768 1952
- Termination of ventricular fibrillation in man by externally applied electric counter shock New England J Med 254 727 1956
- et al External electric stimulation of the heart in cardiac arrest Arch Int Med 106 639 1955

## Chapter 23

# Aortitis

DESCRIBED FOR THE FIRST TIME more than 80 years ago (Welch Dohle) aortitis has been recognized for many years as one of the more common cardiovascular lesions. For a long time atherosclerosis which so often accompanies aortitis obscured the diagnosis of the latter even at necropsy. Careful histologic examinations disclosed that many museum specimens of atheroma and atherosclerotic aortic regurgitation represented in fact cases of syphilis and syphilitic aortitis.

### *Incidence*

Figures concerning the incidence of syphilitic aortitis vary in accordance with many factors the chief of which is the prevalence of syphilis in the community. As might be expected the condition is more common in metropolitan areas than in some rural areas. More cases will be seen in seaports and in cities with a large colored population. The incidence of the disease has been markedly diminished with better treatment of early syphilis and some complications like aortic aneurysm are decidedly less common than they were about 20 years ago as is seen in the following statistical data.

In several series of more than one thousand consecutive autopsies before the introduction of penicillin the incidence of aortitis in different parts of the world was found to be 3.6, 4.93, 6.5, 6.89, and 7 per cent.

It has been estimated that aortitis was present in 70 to 80 per cent of all syphilitic bodies coming to autopsy. However, Carter found an incidence of only 22.2 per cent. It was estimated that 30,000 to 40,000 persons died each year in the United States from aortitis before the introduction of the antibiotics. In untreated syphilis the cardiovascular system was involved in 13.6 per cent of the men and 7.6 per cent of the women (Clark and Dinkel).

The incidence of syphilitic cardiovascular lesions among patients with organic heart disease has been found in some hospitals to amount to 5 to 15 per cent. After arteriosclerosis, hypertensive heart disease and rheumatic fever, syphilis was the most common etiologic factor for cardiovascular disease.

In the colored population its incidence is about three times as great as in the white. The lesion occurs in women as often as in men.

### Pathology

The process begins in the adventitia and media as an endarteritis of the vasorum. It involves chiefly the first 5—8 cm. of the ascending aorta and usually but not invariably ends sharply where the descending aorta begins. There is perivascular infiltration with round cells and plasma cells; necrotic areas appear in the media. Primary involvement of the intima is rare. The small necrotic areas weaken the media and may lead to aortic dilatation and the formation of an aneurysm. The inflammatory process in the adventitia leads to adhesion between the ascending aorta and neighboring tissues which permit the diagnosis even before the aorta is opened. The destructive medial process causes intimal depressions which are characteristic in the earlier stages. Later with the development of fibrosis and secondary lime salt deposits it is sometimes difficult to make the correct diagnosis without histologic examination.

Adhesions between the lateral parts of the aortic leaflets and the intima of the aorta cause the commissures to widen and the leaflets to separate from each other. This leads to aortic insufficiency. The process in the aorta around the coronary orifices often narrows the ostia and even causes their complete occlusion although the coronary arteries themselves are not involved.

There is no proof that atherosclerosis of the coronary arteries occurs more frequently in patients with syphilitic cardiovascular disease than in others. Arteriolar changes, however, have been described in syphilitic infection (Lowe and Warner). They consist in thickening of the media and intima. A high incidence of marked peripheral vascular sclerosis in colored patients with aortitis has been noted (Cannon). The formation of a gumma in the myocardium is not common and syphilitic myocarditis is a great rarity.

### Symptoms

Aortitis is often described as an asymptomatic disease. As a matter of fact the process often becomes very advanced without the patient having any symptoms. Frequently the lesion is discovered only on the occasion of a routine examination. Heart failure in connection with a syphilitic aortic regurgitation, angina pectoris, syphilitic coronary stenosis, or pressure phenomena due to an aneurysm often provide the first evidence of the disease. With one possible exception, which is discussed below (aortalgia), the symptoms depend upon the complications of aortitis and not on the aortitis itself.

Many patients are surprised by an attack of nocturnal dyspnea or exertional dyspnea. In other instances peripheral edema and swelling of the liver force the patient to seek medical aid. In a third group the typical anginal pain on effort is the outstanding symptom.

*Aortalgia.* Still a subject of dispute as a more or less characteristic symptom of aortitis is aortalgia, or aortic pain. Pain of an anginal type may originate in the sensory fibers of the ascending aorta. This explanation seems particularly adequate for the continuous burning sensation behind the sternum occasionally

encountered in cases of aortitis when inflammatory processes exist in the adventitia. This sensation lasts for months and is slightly aggravated by effort. It usually disappears as the lesion progresses for presumably the sensory nerve fibers are destroyed. We have found this sensation in a small percentage of patients with aortitis but its existence or the existence of any painful sensation in aortitis without coronary involvement is denied by others (Cierlsen, Mattman and Moore).

In cases of aortitis with attacks of paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea the complaint of substernal pain at the time of the attack is very common. This complaint is so typical that the suspicion of aortitis is justified in patients who complain of dyspnea and substernal pain at the same time provided a coronary occlusion can be ruled out. The rise of blood pressure during the attack of paroxysmal dyspnea may in some way be responsible for the simultaneous pain.

### Signs

The diagnosis in a typical case is easy because a characteristic syndrome may be present. No sign, however, is pathognomonic and none is invariable. Any single sign occurs only in a certain percentage of cases so that great difficulties may arise concerning the diagnosis of the lesion and its differentiation from other processes. In many instances the diagnosis is presumptive rather than established.

*Abnormal Pulsations:* The enlargement of the aorta leads to an increased dullness over the manubrium sterni if the aorta approaches this site over a greater area than normal. The aorta frequently elongates as well as dilates leading to the appearance of strong pulsations in the jugular notch. The innominate artery now originates higher than normally; the course of the right subclavian artery is higher and the right carotid artery undergoes some kinking. These pulsations are often confused with aneurysms. They are also found without aortitis if atherosclerosis is present.

Often the closure of the aortic valves is palpable slightly to the right of the sternum in the second or third interspace. This pulsation naturally is found not at the site of the aortic valves but where the ascending aorta approaches the chest wall. While not characteristic of aortitis this phenomenon otherwise is rarely encountered since marked aortic dilatation with accentuation of the second aortic sound are necessary for its appearance. It is very rare therefore in simple hypertension. If the phenomenon is found in patients under 50 years of age aortitis should be suspected.

The frequent narrowing of the orifice of the large arteries originating from the ascending aorta (innominate, left carotid and left subclavian artery) by the syphilitic process leads to marked difference in the pulses of the right and left sides. Complete or almost complete disappearance of one carotid pulse or one brachial pulse with a difference in blood pressure is not rare and allows the diagnosis. These signs often are mistakenly considered to be evidence of aneurysm. Actually they are common in uncomplicated aortitis.

**Percussion** In many cases percussion reveals no cardiac enlargement while in others marked dilatation to the right and left with an aortic configuration or mitralization of an aortic heart appears. This occurs if hypertension, aortic regurgitation or narrowing of the coronary orifices complicates aortitis.

**Auscultation** The second aortic sound is often changed. It is accentuated and ringing (tambour like, drumlike, tympanitic, hollow). This change is presumably the result of anatomic changes in the aortic wall, is not peculiar to aortitis, for it may be encountered in patients with atheromatosis of the aorta and hypertension with sclerotic changes of the aortic wall. In pure hypertension there is only an accentuation of the second aortic sound without a tympanitic or bell like character. If discovered in patients under 50 without hypertension the sign is a very strong argument in favor of the diagnosis of aortitis.

Usually a systolic murmur due to eddies caused by the dilatation of the vessel is audible over the aorta. Often this systolic murmur is also heard at the apex and should not be confused with a mitral murmur.

**Blood Pressure** The blood pressure is often increased. Systolic blood pressure values over 150 are found very often in patients with aortitis (Boyd and Scherf). We would estimate that hypertension is present in about 50 per cent of the fully developed cases in the white race. In the colored group the percentage is higher. This elevation of blood pressure is interesting since no relation between syphilis and essential hypertension seems to exist. The systolic hypertension is usually the consequence of lost elasticity of the ascending aorta. The diastolic pressure is also increased in a majority of cases. An explanation for the diastolic hypertension in aortitis is still lacking.

**Other Findings** Evidence of neurosyphilis is often found. In some observations it was present in 26 per cent of the cases.

The serologic reactions are positive in about 80 per cent of cases. Percentages of positive reactions of 86 per cent (Beckh) and even 92.6 per cent (Carter and Baker) have been reported. The spinal fluid is abnormal in almost 50 per cent. The treponema immobilization test may be positive when the Wassermann reaction is negative.

In youthful patients with severe rapidly progressing aortitis, elevation of the temperature to over 38° C has been observed. If an aortic regurgitation coexists the erroneous diagnosis of subacute bacterial endocarditis is often made.

The erythrocyte sedimentation rate is often accelerated but this finding is rarely of diagnostic value.

Frequently in aortitis — as in aneurysm — sensitivity to percussion is elicited over the spinous processes of the second to fourth thoracic vertebrae.

**Röntgen Examination and Fluoroscopy** These examinations greatly aid in the diagnosis. One of the earliest signs is a dilatation of the ascending aorta, particularly in its first portion. Prominence of the aortic arch at the upper right cardiac border, if found in a person under 40 years of age without a high diaphragm or coarctation, is a very suggestive and helpful finding. Dilatation of the

aorta may however be absent or may be missed since the supra-vascular part of the vessel is hidden in the cardiac shadow

It is important to stress that even in patients with fully developed aortitis or syphilitic aortic insufficiency, evidence of aortic dilatation and elongation is not necessarily present if the process involves only the portion of the aorta situated around the valves and the orifices of the coronary artery without spreading upward

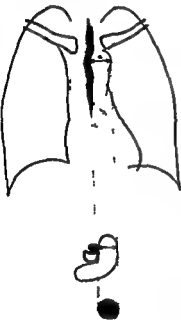


FIG 89



FIG 90

FIG 89 Measurement of the diameter of the arch of the aorta by the Kreuzfuchs method (Zilansky)

FIG 90 Calcification of the ascending aorta and aortic arch in a patient with syphilitic aortitis

The diagnosis of an aortic dilatation should never be based on measurements of the vascular band in the postero-anterior projection. Examination in the oblique positions is necessary and very informative. Unfortunately, exact measurements of the width of the aorta in its different portions is not possible. The most reliable method is that of Kreuzfuchs, by which the width of the part of the aortic arc forming the aortic knob can be estimated. This method is based on the fact that one part of the aortic arc takes a purely sagittal course and lies close to the sternum, even causing a slight impression on it with a displacement from left to right (figure 89). This indentation is easily seen if a contrast medium of barium is swallowed by the patient. First the point of the aortic knob which

is the farthest to the left during systole is found and marked orthodiagraphically on the screen then the deepest point of the 'aortic bed' of the esophagus is found while the patient swallows the barium

The diameter of the healthy aorta ascertained in this way is 1.8–2.5 cm. Patients over 60 years of age may have values up to 3 cm. Some authors recommend the deduction of 2–3 mm for the thickness of the esophageal wall per esophageal connective tissue, mediastinal pleura and the double thickness of the aortic wall. Since all these values are relatively constant it has been proposed that the deduction be omitted.

In addition to the aortic dilatation the discovery of lime salt deposits in the aortic knob is common (figure 90). The frequent appearance of these calcified plaques in aortitis is ascribed to the great incidence of secondary calcification in the involved tissue of the aortic wall. The appearance of this sign in patients under 50 years of age is also a strong argument in favor of the diagnosis of aortitis.

*Angiocardiography* In some instances this has revealed an irregularity of the lumen, variations of thickness of the wall of the aorta and tortuosity.

*Electrocardiogram* While the electrocardiogram furnishes no diagnostic help it is significant for prognosis since it aids in establishing the diagnosis of a complicating coronary stenosis. The discovery of a simple left axis deviation or of a normal electrocardiogram may indicate a healthy myocardium while in many patients with few complaints and scanty objective findings abnormal T waves in each lead and widening and slurring of the QRS complexes indicate a serious myocardial involvement and a bad prognosis. Often coronary stenosis can be diagnosed from the alterations of the electrocardiogram after exercise in patients who show a normal electrocardiogram at rest (Scherf).

### Complications

*Aortic Regurgitation* One of the most common complications of simple aortitis is insufficiency of the aortic valves; its symptomatology was discussed in connection with rheumatic aortic regurgitation. Most of the findings are common to both lesions and the differentiation may be very difficult in some cases when a history of rheumatic fever or syphilitic infection is absent. Furthermore the serologic reactions may be negative in syphilis and may be positive in patients with rheumatic aortic regurgitation. The presence of narrowed orifices of the large arteries (differences in the pulsations of both carotid or both brachial arteries) is evidence of aortitis.

It should be remembered that a rheumatic and syphilitic involvement of the aortic valves may coexist.

Of great help is the old rule that the marked dilatation of the aorta in syphilitic aortic regurgitation permits the diastolic murmur in this lesion to be conducted better to the second right intercostal space while in rheumatic aortic regurgitation it is heard better at the lower left sternal border. Although exceptions do occur the rule has clinical value.

*Aneurysms* Aortic aneurysm another complication of aortitis will be discussed under a separate heading

*Stenosis of the Coronary Ostia* The third and most dreaded complication narrowing of the orifices of the coronary arteries is also of great importance It is a common event for it was found at postmortem examination in every third or fourth case of aortitis (Clawson) Often both orifices are involved sometimes one orifice is completely occluded and the other is just patent for a head of a pin or merely for a bristle Aortitis was presumably present in one of the oldest published cases of this type (Crooke) In a series of 1000 consecutive necropsies aortitis was present in 69 instances (Pincoffs and Love) In 15 of these 69 observations coronary stenosis was found Eight times both coronary arteries were involved in six instances only the right and in one case only the left was narrowed It is significant that 10 of these 15 patients died suddenly Woodruff found coronary stenosis in 27 per cent of aortitis discovered incidentally It was present in 57 per cent of those cases in which aortitis was diagnosed clinically because of symptoms In 39 per cent of these stenosis of both ostia was found

Stenosis of a coronary orifice or even its complete occlusion due to syphilitic aortitis is often tolerated without symptoms These changes are found accidentally at post mortem and were never suspected during life They must have existed for some time since the occlusion is created by old scar tissue The slow development of the coronary occlusion permits sufficient widening of a collateral circulation

The frequent occurrence of pain (decubital angina) in some cases may be considered as a sign indicative of coronary involvement In the majority of cases only pain on exertion i. e. typical effort angina exists and in these cases if aortitis is present one is permitted to assume a narrowing of the coronary ostia without further evidence Infarction of the heart muscle in cases of aortitis and coronary stenosis or occlusion is rare It is interesting that in these cases cardiac hypertrophy rarely develops (Cannon) presumably because of the diminished blood supply Furthermore dilatation of the heart and conduction disturbances in the electrocardiogram may be absent showing that the slow development of a syphilitic coronary obstruction allows ample time for the development of a collateral circulation and to provide sufficient blood supply to the specific tissue of the heart (Scherf and Boyd)

Syndromes have been described which may lead to the diagnosis of coronary stenosis in aortitis The rapid course of the lesion from the beginning of symptoms the lack of response to treatment the prominence and high incidence of anginal pain and the frequency of sudden death often permit the diagnosis of coronary stenosis In another group the diagnosis of marked stenosis of the coronary ostia confirmed at necropsy was made in four cases on the basis of the following syndrome (as in Muijden and Scherf) An aortitis was present with or without aortic regurgitation The heart was normal in size or moderately enlarged The patients complained of pain behind the sternum and between the shoulders or



upper abdomen occurring on slightest exertion or excitement as well as frequently at rest and without apparent reason. There was great anxiety and apprehension. This anxiety may be the chief complaint in the absence of all other symptoms. The anxiety was associated with an inexplicable restlessness. All these complaints were immediately abolished by nitroglycerin. In these cases the blood pressure rose only slightly during an attack of anginal pain; in more advanced stages it fell sometimes to very low values. This fall of blood pressure may precipitate a state of anxiety. The slightest exertion leads to marked changes of the RS T segments and the T waves in the electrocardiogram.

In patients with complete occlusion of only one coronary orifice and normal width in the other a normal electrocardiogram may be obtained even after exercise (Scherf).

### *Congenital Syphilis and Aortitis*

Aortitis is rare in cases of congenital syphilis but many verified instances have been reported. The affection of the aorta with the typical inflammatory changes in the media and adventitia was described long ago. It seems that in most cases reparative processes take place if the child survives the first year and only exceptionally is there a progressive lesion with aneurysmal formation, coronary stenosis or the development of an aortic regurgitation. The lesion has been observed in a brother and sister with congenital syphilis (McDonald). In spite of the great tendency to spontaneous recovery the possibility of aortitis due to congenital syphilis must be considered in children and juveniles when the symptoms and signs discussed above are present.

### *Course and Prognosis*

The aorta seems to be infected within 12 months whenever treatment is insufficient (Coombs). Some evidence of an aortic lesion has been described as early as six to seven months after the infection (Carter and Byker-Wile) but in a majority of cases years and even decades elapse before definite evidence of aortic disease appears. In 10 per cent of a large series of cases the infection dated back less than five years (Cole and Usilton). An interval of 16 or even 20 years between infection and discovery of the first evidence of the disease is not rare but an aortitis might have existed for a long time before it was discovered.

Of paramount importance is the fact that very benign cases exist and the disease may cease to progress at any stage. It may remain asymptomatic or may run a very rapid course within a few weeks. We have seen patients who claimed they felt normal until two or three weeks prior to the first examination yet who developed congestive heart failure, did not respond to treatment and died a few weeks later. Very often aortitis is an accidental finding at necropsy. In patients who die from extracardiac causes a few suspicious spots may be seen in the aorta at necropsy on gross examination and only histologic examination confirms the diagnosis of syphilitic aortitis. In many statistics compiled by pathologists the cases are included.

The condition of the myocardium and of the orifices of the coronary arteries is of major importance for the prognosis. If the orifices of the coronary arteries are narrowed sudden death frequently occurs. Even if there is no history of anginal pain and the electrocardiogram is normal the tracings obtained after an exercise test may reveal a marked coronary stenosis.

Because of modern therapy the statement that aortitis is ubiquitous, insidious and disastrous is perhaps no longer correct. The prognosis is said to be worse in colored patients and in those who are engaged in hard manual labor.

### *Differential Diagnosis*

In typical cases the diagnosis is easy. For example a forty year old man or woman has a history of a syphilitic infection the serologic reactions are positive and the patient complains of anginal pain on effort. Examination reveals a markedly widened aorta, prominence of the ascending aorta to the right on x-ray examination, a tympanic second aortic sound, a rough systolic murmur over the aorta and scarcely palpable pulsations of the left carotid artery whereas the right pulsates strongly.

However it has been stressed earlier that none of these signs is obligatory in aortitis. Typical cases such as the one indicated above are exceptional. The history and serologic tests may be negative and most of the signs mentioned may be absent. Often the condition is oligosymptomatic and the positive diagnosis is difficult.

In many patients under 50 (the younger the more surely) a dilatation of the ascending aorta, calcification of the aortic knob, a suspicious accentuation of the second aortic sound, a systolic murmur over the aorta, evidence of left ventricular hypertrophy and dilatation in the absence of hypertension lead to the correct diagnosis.

Difficulties arise from the fact that hypertension is common in aortitis and practically all signs found can be attributed to the increased blood pressure alone. This frequent combination of hypertension with aortitis makes it obligatory to consider aortitis in every hypertensive patient in whom no cause for the hypertension is found and in whose family there is no history of hypertensive disease. However even if the possibility of an aortitis is considered it may be difficult or impossible to prove.

Another problem arises in patients over 50 since we must differentiate between aortitis and atheroma. If one realizes how difficult it often is even for the experienced pathologist to state on examination of the opened aorta whether a pure atheromatosis or a combination of atheromatosis and aortitis exists one will appreciate the problem the clinician faces. In some cases the differentiation is possible only by histologic examination. It is because of this frequent combination of aortitis with atheromatosis that the clinical and even the pathologic picture of aortitis described so many years ago found general recognition relatively late. The widened aorta, lime salt deposits in the aortic knob and the systolic

murmur in this area can be fully explained by the atheromatosis. The same is also true of the elevated blood pressure in certain cases.

Figure 90 shows calcium deposits in the ascending aorta and in the aortic knob in a 52 year old patient with syphilitic aortitis and an aortic regurgitation.

All this leads to great diagnostic difficulties. certainly in many cases the diagnosis is impossible. But the number of correct diagnoses increases in many institutions whenever the rules discussed in the previous paragraphs are heeded. On the other hand there are some investigators who assert that the diagnosis of uncomplicated aortitis is for practical purposes impossible (Kampmeier et al.).

Midway between those who maintain that it is impossible to diagnose the lesion and those who risk making the diagnosis in patients with a simple atheromatosis there are authors who think the diagnosis is permissible only if (1) syphilis exists beyond any doubt (2) the aorta is definitely dilated (3) no other reason for aortic dilatation exists and (4) the patient is not over 40 years of age. It is clear from the preceding discussion that the number of patients who fulfill these conditions is limited.

If the results of recent investigations prove correct namely that efficient early treatment improves the prognosis prevents complications and prolongs life it is better to make an erroneous diagnosis of the lesion now and then than to overlook it completely because of too rigid criteria.

### *Treatment*

Prevention of aortitis in syphilitics seems possible with adequate treatment of the early stages. In a large series of syphilitic patients it was found that a satisfactory treatment in the early stages was followed by aortitis in only 1 per cent of cases (Cole and Usilton). In another series (Vonderlehr and Usilton) no patient with cardiovascular syphilis was detected among those well treated and re-examined 10 to 20 years after the infection. The incidence of aortitis seems to increase in proportion to the inadequacy of the treatment in the earlier stages.

Most cardiologists agree that patients with aortitis should receive antisyphilitic treatment. If patients exhibiting evidence of aortitis are treated energetically the progress of the lesion seems to be prevented or at least the incidence of aortic regurgitation and aneurysm appears reduced. However it is important to consider certain contraindications to treatment. One of these is severe cardiac failure. In such cases mercurial diuretics which also have an antisyphilitic action may be given. In some of our patients an injection was administered weekly for three to five years for its diuretic action with much benefit and without untoward effects. We would therefore suggest the consideration of this form of mild antiluetic treatment which also improves the circulation of the patient. There are authors however who as soon as evidence of cardiac failure disappears use energetic therapy with penicillin.

A very important contraindication is presented by the group of patients with angina pectoris. It is assumed that the stenosis of the coronary orifice that exists in these cases will be increased by the treatment because the connective tis-

sue will shrink. Furthermore hyperemia of the inflamed tissue due to a Jarisch Herxheimer reaction at the beginning of the treatment may also increase the frequency and duration of the attacks. Not rarely severe attacks of angina pectoris actually appear for the first time following therapy. Observations have been reported, however, of disappearance of anginal pain during therapy.

At present treatment with penicillin has superseded all the other previous therapeutic methods (salvarsin, iodine, bismuth). Procaine penicillin (1,200,000 units) is given daily until the patient has received six to nine million units. Therapy is carried out in the hospital. Herxheimer and paradoxical therapeutic reactions are observed regardless of the size of the initial doses. No antecedent treatment with iodine is necessary. Fever may be observed for a few days. Slight decompensation is not considered a contraindication. In several cases disappearance of slight anginal pain has been observed. Only one series of treatment suffices. Every patient with this disease who has not had penicillin before should receive this treatment once.

There are no reliable statistics available as yet to prove that the dosage mentioned above suffices or that it stops progress of the illness.

Heavy physical labor should be forbidden to patients with aortitis.

## Bibliography

- Barnett C W and Small A A: The effect of treatment on the prognosis of cardiovascular syphilis. *Am J Syph & Vener Dis* 34: 301 1950.
- Beckh W: The serologic reaction in cardiovascular syphilis. *Am Heart J* 5: 30 1943.
- Boyd L J and Scherf D: Hypertension in aortitis. *Urologic & Gynecol Rev* 40: 161 1949.
- Butterly J M and Fishman L: Jarisch Herxheimer reaction following penicillin therapy in a case of syphilitic aortitis. *J A M A* 118: 10 1942.
- Cannon J H: Syphilitic coronary occlusion in aortic insufficiency. *Am Heart J* 5: 93 1907.
- Carter F P and Baker B M Jr: Certain aspect of syphilitic cardiac disease. *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 45: 310 1931.
- Clark F C and Danbolt N: The Oslo study of the natural history of untreated syphilis. *J Chron Dis* 2: 311 1945.
- Clawson B J: Incidence of types of heart disease among 30,000 autopsies with special reference to age and sex. *Am Heart J* 29: 607 1945.
- Cole H N and Usilton L J: *Co-operative clinical studies in the treatment of cardiovascular uncomplicated syphilitic aortitis. Its symptomatology, diagnosis, prognosis and treatment*. *Arch Int Med* 57: 893 1936.
- Coombs C F: Diagnosis and treatment of syphilis of the aorta and heart. *Quart J Med* 1: 19 1932.
- Cowan J and Faulds J N: Syphilis of the heart and aorta. *Brit M J* 2: 285 1929.
- Crooke E: Über exzessive und aussergewöhnlichen Ursachen entstandene Fälle von rascher Herzlahmung. *Arch f path Anat* 179: 186 1892.
- Dohle: Über Aortenkrankung bei Syphilitischen und deren Beziehung zur Aneurysmenbildung. *D Arch f Klin Med* 55: 190 1923.
- Dressler M and Silverman M: Cardiovascular syphilis: an approach to early clinical recognition and early treatment. *Ann Int Med* 19: 224 1943.
- Edeknöf Falk M S and Steiger H P: Observation on penicillin treated cardiovascular syphilis. *Am J M Sc* 71: 475 1949.

- Giertsen C A paper on syphilis with special regard to syphilitic aortitis *Acta med Scandinav* 86 22 1935
- Jaffe R H Über die Häufigkeit der Aortenlues mit besonderer Berücksichtigung ihres Vorkommen bei der weißen und farbigen Rasse *Klin Wchnschr* 10 981 1931
- Jones F and Beford D E Syphilitic angina pectoris *Brit Heart J* 5 107 1943
- Kampmeier R H and Combs S R The prognosis in syphilitic aortic insufficiency *Am J Syph* 24 578 1940
- Glass R M and Fleming F E Uncomplicated syphilitic aortitis — can it be diagnosed? *Ven Dis Inform* 23 254 1942
- Kemp J E and Cochems K D Studies in cardiovascular syphilis IV The influence of the treatment of early syphilis upon the incidence of cardiovascular syphilis *Am J Syph* 21 625 1937
- Kreuzfuchs S Über eine neue Methode der Aortenmessung *Med klin* 16 30 1920
- Langer E Die Häufigkeit derluetischen Organveränderungen insbesondere der Aortitis luetica München *med Wchnschr* 73 1782 1926
- Laszlo T Die Syphilis der Aorta als Ursache fieberhafter Zustände *Wien Arch f inn Med* 30 97 1937
- Love W S Jr and Warner C G Observations upon syphilis of the heart coronary ostia and coronary arteries with special reference to myocardial lesions noted in stenosis of the coronary ostia *Am J Syph & Neurol* 18 154 1934
- McDonald S Jr Syphilitic aortitis in young adults with special reference to a congenital etiology *Brit J Ven Dis* 10 183 1934
- Maresch R Über Aortenlues *Wien med Wchnschr* 81 971 1931
- Mattman O F and Moore J E The clinical diagnosis of uncomplicated syphilitic aortitis *Am J Syph* 21 711 1943
- Maynard F I Curran J A Rosen I J Williamson C I and Lingg C Cardiovascular syphilis early diagnosis and clinical course of aortitis in three hundred and forty six cases of syphilis *Arch Int Med* 55 873 1935
- van Muijden N H and Scherf D Über ein durch hochgradige luetische Verengung der Coronarostien hervorgerufenenes Krankheitsbild *Wien klin Wchnschr* 4, 746 1934
- Norris R F Syphilitic aortitis in childhood and youth *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 57 98 1935
- Pincoffs M C and Love W S Jr Observations upon syphilis of the heart coronary ostia and coronary arteries with special reference to the clinical picture presented by syphilitic stenosis of the coronary ostia *Am J Syph* 18 146 1934
- Scherf D Koronarerkrankungen *Ergebn d ges inn Med* 10 277 1935
- and Boyd L J Clinical Electrocardiography ed 3 Crune & Stratton New York 1933
- Schulte K Über juvenile Mesaortitis luca *Ztschr f Kreislaufforsch* 22 153 1930
- Steinberg I Doherty C Teabody G Reader C Heinoff L and Webster B The angiocardigraphic diagnosis of syphilitic aortitis *Am J Roentgenol* 67 655 1949
- Stokes J H Herrman H and Ingraham N R Modern Clinical Syphilology Philadelphia Saunders 1944
- Stokes J H Wolfert C C Fdeiken G Falk and Ford W F Treatment of cardiovascular syphilis *J A M A* 14, 944 1931
- Furner T B Race and sex distributions of lesions of syphilis in 10 000 cases *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 10 159 1930
- Vonderlehr R A and Usilton L J The change of acquiring syphilis and the frequency of its disastrous outcome *Ven Dis Inform* 19 390 1934
- Welch F H On aortic aneurysm in the army and the conditions associated with it *M J Chir Tr London* 11 9 1876

- Wiesner R. Über Erkrankung der großen Gefäße bei Lues congenita. *Centralbl f allg Path* 18 322 1905
- Wile U J. The principles underlying the treatment of cardiovascular syphilis. *Ann Int Med* 15 817 1941
- Woodruff O. Cardiovascular syphilis. *Am J of Med* 4 248 1948
- Yampolsky J. and Powell C C. Syphilitic aortitis of congenital origin in young children. *Am J Dis Child* 61 371 1949
- Zdarsky E. and Boyd L J. Roentgen Diagnosis of Diseases of the Heart and Great Vessels. New York: Crane & Stratton 1953

## Chapter 24

# Aneurysms

THE EXISTENCE OF ANEURYSMS has been known since the early description by Cullen. An aneurysm is a local widening of an artery with partial destruction of its wall; there is proliferation of connective tissue from the adventitia and neighboring structures. These features separate aneurysms from ectasia and dilatation of the arteries. A distinction is also made between saccular aneurysms which are sharply demarcated from the normal part of the vessel and cylindrical or fusiform aneurysms in which the separation is gradual although a large segment of the artery is usually involved.

Arteriovenous aneurysms are not actual aneurysms and should be called arteriovenous fistulas. Dissection of the aortic wall is still often incorrectly called an aneurysm.

### THORACIC ANEURYSMS

#### *Etiology*

The cause for aneurysms varies in different locations. Most thoracic aneurysms are undoubtedly the result of syphilis but atherosclerosis, bacterial infections (mycotic aneurysm), congenital malformations and trauma also play an etiologic role. In recent years syphilitic aneurysms have become rarer while those caused by atherosclerosis are more common. Formerly, when the histologic changes in the thoracic aorta were studied, the syphilitic variety was found in a majority of cases and nonsyphilitic thoracic aortic aneurysms were rather exceptional. The incidence of syphilitic aneurysms has diminished in recent years.

Aneurysms have been reported in patients with congenital syphilis. In acquired syphilis the average time elapsing between the infection and discovery of the aneurysm is about 20 years, but cases have been reported in which aneurysms were noted two years (Sinford) after the infection. It was pointed out in the chapter on aortitis that syphilitic invasion of the aorta always begins within the first two years after infection.

#### *Incidence*

In a study of 5000 cases reported in the literature, thoracic aneurysm was found to be the cause of death in 0.13 per cent of individuals in large American cities. This figure must be amended, however, since many statistics were compiled by coroners who investigated death under unusual circumstances (Lloyd). In

spective of its former incidence there is no doubt that energetic treatment of the early stages of syphilis has made the condition much rarer at present.

*Aneurysm of the thoracic aorta* occurs about five times more often in males than in females. In Negroes the incidence is about five times higher than in the white population.

Aneurysms occur at all ages. Examples have been reported in children as well as in men over 90 years of age (Willson and Marc). The maximum incidence, however, is between 36 and 40 years in males, while in women the peak occurs in a group about 10 years older (Boyd). In Negro patients aneurysms appear in younger age groups.

### *Pathology*

Usually aneurysms are single but multiple aneurysms are not rare. In one series two to five aneurysms were found in 20 per cent of the affected patients (Lucke and Per). In another series, however, multiple thoracic aneurysms were seen only 23 times in 633 cases (Kampmeier).

Syphilitic aortitis mainly involves the media. Destruction of the muscle cells and elastic fibers weakens the wall so that intra aortic pressure causes bulging. The original wall may be completely destroyed and reactive inflammation in the adventitia plus pressure on neighboring tissues causes new layers of fibrotic tissue to form. Thrombi develop within the aneurysmal sac and may fill it completely. Secondary deposits of calcium in the thrombotic mass and in the remaining parts of the aorta are common.

If the thoracic aorta is divided into the ascending aorta, the arc, the border between the arc and the descending aorta, and the descending aorta proper, the incidence of aneurysms is 10 to 7 to 3 to 1, respectively. Another aid to the understanding of the development of aneurysms in the thoracic aorta is furnished by the so-called "surge line" which connects the sites at which the impact of the blood on the aortic wall is strongest. Directly above the valves this area is situated on the anterior wall of the aorta. As the aorta ascends this line moves laterally to the right; in the arc it is approximately in the center of the vessel, passing from here to the left posterior aspect of the wall where the descending portion of the aorta begins. In the lower part of the descending aorta it lies in the middle of the posterior wall. Although exceptions are not rare, this line connects the favorite locations of thoracic aneurysms.

*Aneurysms of the sinus of Valsalva.* Aneurysms of the intrapericardial portion of the aorta may originate from the sinus of Valsalva. Often they are very small. These aneurysms may be situated in any of the sinuses but involve the right sinus most frequently; they are usually the result of a congenital anomaly. Occasionally these aneurysms are of syphilitic origin, the result of atherosclerosis, or a complication of subacute bacterial endocarditis, particularly with bicuspid aortic valves. They are more common in men.

Aneurysms of the right sinus develop anteriorly and may cause erosions of the sternum and ribs. They may cause a shadow to the right of the aorta and



occasionally are distinguished from aneurysms of the ascending portion of the aorta radiologically by the very small base which connects the shadow with the aorta. Occasionally these aneurysms are so small that roentgen findings may be normal. They develop often within the cardiac shadow. These aneurysms may rupture into the right atrium or ventricle. Aneurysms of the left sinus of Valvula may be visible on the left side at the area of the pulmonic artery and may penetrate the left ventricle. Rupture into the pericardial cavity and into the venae cavae also occurs. The latter event causes the sudden appearance of cardiac murmurs over the base, cyanosis and edema. An aneurysm of the anterior sinus can cause pulmonary stenosis or tricuspid stenosis because of compression. An aneurysm of the right lateral sinus can bulge into the right or left atrium.

The murmurs in this lesion are continuous like those of patent ductus arteriosus. Before perforation takes place the diagnosis is difficult.

### *Symptoms*

Aneurysms of the thoracic aorta were divided into aneurysms of symptoms and aneurysms of signs because according to location symptoms appear very early in one group while only objective signs without symptoms tend to occur in the other. The former type occurs more often in the ascending aorta, the latter in aneurysms of the transverse portion.

The most common symptom is pain. Often it is an angina on effort because stenosis of the coronary orifices is present. Erosion of the ribs, sternum and vertebra causes rest pain which may be excruciating particularly at night. The site of this pain necessarily varies with the structures involved. When pressure is exerted on nerve trunks intractable neuralgia appears. Sometimes pain is referred and when noted in the left shoulder it is mistaken for an arthritis, bursitis and the like.

Second in frequency among the symptoms is dyspnea caused by pressure on the trachea or large bronchi. It is usually of the inspiratory type similar to dyspnea caused by an obstruction of the upper air passages.

If myocardial disease causes left ventricular failure paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea occurs.

Cough is common and represents the first and chief complaint in about 20 per cent of cases. In many instances the history relates a series of colds, the last one of which persisted. Sometimes — with paralysis of the recurrent laryngeal nerve — the cough is hoarse. Often it is non-productive. Pressure of the aneurysm upon a large bronchus may however result in broncho-stenosis and may cause distal bronchiectasis so that a profuse bronchorrhea and productive cough develop. Secondary infections may alter the character of the sputum.

Dysphonia (hoarseness) and dysphagia aid in locating the site of an aneurysm (transverse portion of the aorta). Dysphagia is not common since the esophagus is very mobile and easily escapes pressure. In order for this symptom to appear, the aneurysm must bulge posteriorly just beneath the bifurcation of the

trachea Dysphagia usually does not occur in aneurysms of the lower descending thoracic aorta even if the aneurysm ultimately ruptures into the esophagus

Hemoptysis may occur early in the form of blood streaked sputum It may precede rupture of an aneurysm into a bronchus by several months

Palpitation is an infrequent symptom and too vague to aid in the diagnosis of aneurysm

In a relatively small number of cases the patient notices a mass bulging through the anterior chest wall Profuse perspiration due to pressure upon the sympathetic nerves herpes zoster and hiccough are sometimes early and non characteristic complaints If blood is aspirated into the lung and secondary infection develops fever and signs of bronchopneumonia may appear

### Signs

Inspection may reveal edema of the face neck and upper extremities with appropriately located aneurysms Sometimes congestion of the veins in the same areas and a marked diffuse cyanosis also exist These signs are caused by compression of the superior vena cava Cyanosis is particularly marked when an aneurysm ruptures into the superior vena cava Compression of a single vein such as the right or left innominate vein may cause cyanosis limited to a circumscribed area

Sometimes a large tumor bulges on the upper right parasternal area through the sternum or to the left of it Classical expansile pulsations are not always present in this mass Secondary reactive inflammation of the tissue may cause a local increase of temperature in this area if as often happens the overlying skin is red and the aneurysm points like a boil the aneurysmal mass may be mistaken for an abscess an error by no means uncommon in the pre-roentgenologic era

Tracheal tug may be found in connection with aneurysms of the transverse portion of the aorta but it is by no means pathognomonic The neck veins may be markedly engorged A thrill or abnormal pulsation may be detected over the site of the aneurysm and abnormal dullness is also a common finding in this location A systolic murmur may be heard particularly in aneurysms of the ascending aorta this murmur is heard far to the right of the sternum Diastolic murmurs are also found without intrinsic involvement of the aortic valve owing to aortic regurgitation from distortion of the valvular ring Asymmetry in the pulsations of the carotid and brachial arteries and delayed pulses are often advanced as evidence of aneurysm It was pointed out however in the preceding chapter that aortitis without aneurysmal dilatation also produces this sign It is common in aneurysms since aortitis is always present when syphilis is provocative

Examination of the heart may yield normal findings despite a huge aneurysm This holds particularly for aneurysms at some distance above the supra valvular portion of the aorta for the aortic valves and coronary ostia are usually normal in these cases Pressure upon the azygos vein may cause marked right pleural effusion

Unilateral exophthalmus and mydriasis or enophthalmus with miosis (Horner's syndrome) appear with irritation or paralysis of the sympathetic nerves

Aneurysms may cause a paralysis of the right phrenic nerve with elevation and immobility of the right half of the diaphragm

Some of the symptoms and signs enumerated will lead to an x ray examination which usually provides positive evidence of an aneurysm. It must be stressed however that the differential diagnosis from other mediastinal tumors may be difficult particularly when the clinician must rely upon physical signs alone. Pulsations may be found in nonaneurysmal structures while a true aneurysm containing a large thrombus in its sac need not pulsate. A small aneurysm that develops dorsad is especially likely to escape detection.

In many cases the diagnosis of an aneurysm can be made only by an expert radiologist after prolonged observation. Usually fluoroscopy is more satisfactory than roentgenograms. The finding of calcium deposits in the tumor mass often facilitates the x ray diagnosis. No fluoroscopy is complete without examination of the esophagus filled with a suspension of barium. The trachea is often displaced to the left and a main bronchus may be visibly compressed. Secondary pulmonary changes are discovered on x ray examination. Careful study of the thoracic cage may reveal early evidence of bony erosion particularly of the vertebra in aneurysms of the descending aorta.

The electrocardiogram is normal or — with stenosis or occlusion of the coronary ostia — altered as in other forms of coronary disease.

### *Differential Diagnosis*

While easy or obvious in some cases the diagnosis of the lesion presents great difficulties in others. The clinical picture is extremely variegated. Confusion with other conditions was frequent before the roentgenologic era and occurs even today.

Rheumatism, arthritis, asthma and chronic bronchitis are the most common diagnostic errors in these cases. The lesion is also confused with bronchogenic carcinoma from which it can sometimes be differentiated only with great difficulty. Angiocardiography may be necessary. A carcinoma of the esophagus may be wrongly diagnosed if the aneurysm is too small to be seen but causes esophageal symptoms. It occasionally happens that patients are treated for a simple laryngitis if they complain only of hoarseness.

### *Course of the Disease and Mode of Death*

Aneurysms are a severe affliction and the prognosis is poor. Patients with huge aneurysms may lead an active life for years but such cases are exceptional. Statistics on the duration of the disease are limited only to the estimated duration after the appearance of symptoms. Usually the lesion has existed for a much longer time. In the majority of cases death occurs within two years after the onset of symptoms but patients are known whose aneurysms were observed for 20 or 30 years (Boyd). Instances of healing of the aneurysm by spontaneous obliteration of the sac through organization of the thrombus are so rare that they are listed among the curiosities of medicine.

About half of the aneurysms of the thoracic aorta terminate by rupture. Most of the remaining cases die from the mechanical effects of pressure on various organs. Only a small percentage of patients die from unrelated disease.

External rupture of the aneurysm is uncommon even when there is a large protruding mass. In a series of 1197 cases of rupture of a thoracic aneurysm external rupture occurred only 61 times (Boyd). In aneurysms of the ascending aorta intrapericardial rupture occurred in one third; next in frequency was rupture into the left pleura, the left bronchus, and into the esophagus. Rupture may also occur into the right pleura, right main bronchus, the pulmonary artery, or the superior vena cava (causing a sudden and marked increase of cyanosis). Aneurysms of the arc often rupture into the trachea, a bronchus, or the esophagus. Aneurysms of the descending aorta usually rupture into the left pleural cavity, left bronchus, or esophagus. For a more detailed description of all possibilities reference should be made to reviews of the literature on this subject.

Rupture into the pulmonary artery causes sudden collapse, shock, progressive dyspnea, a constant murmur and thrill in systole and diastole in the second or third left intercostal space parasternally, pulsus celer, and right ventricular failure.

Rupture into the superior vena cava causes a jugular thrill and murmur to the right of the sternum and signs of superior vena cava obstruction.

Rupture through a serous surface (pleura, pericardium) occurs without warning and causes sudden death. Rupture through a mucous membrane (esophagus, trachea) may give warning in the form of slow bleeding or oozing. Sometimes bleeding, even if rather profuse, is not immediately fatal, but a lethal hemorrhage may occur a few days afterward.

## ANEURYSMS IN OTHER LOCATIONS

### *Aneurysm of the Innominate Artery*

These aneurysms develop near the right sternoclavicular articulation. Pain and throbbing in the neck constitute the chief symptoms. The aneurysmal sac is usually palpable and a thrill is found. The right jugular vein may be distended and edema of the right side of the face may appear. The right carotid and right brachial pulse are smaller.

It has been pointed out that elongation of the aorta with high position of the innominate and right subclavian artery, and kinking of the carotid artery are often confused with these aneurysms.

### *Aneurysm of the Pulmonary Artery*

This is a rare lesion. In two thirds of the observed cases the common trunk of the pulmonary artery was affected (Boyd and McGraw). In nearly one half of the cases reported, one or more congenital abnormalities, such as patent ductus arteriosus, stenosis of the pulmonary orifice, and atrial septal defects, were present. Syphilis is an etiologic factor in the acquired variety.

arteriosclerotic, mycotic and traumatic aneurysms though well known are less common

There are no characteristic symptoms. Palpitation is present early while cyanosis and dyspnea appear later. The diagnosis can be made if a pulsation and a systolic thrill are found on the left side parasternally in the area of the second or third intercostal spaces with a loud systolic murmur, and if x ray examination shows a marked and circumscribed dilatation of the pulmonary artery.

Even with x ray examination differentiation from an aneurysm of the aorta is sometimes impossible since aneurysms of the ascending aorta may develop on the right side and simulate dilatation of the pulmonary artery. The presence of hilar pulsation may help in the differentiation.

Undoubtedly many patients in whom the diagnosis of aneurysm of the pulmonary artery has been made without postmortem confirmation in reality had an atrial septal defect.

### *Aneurysms of the Abdominal Aorta*

These aneurysms are about as common as those of the descending portion of the thoracic aorta. They appear however in an older age group than in patients over 50. Arteriosclerosis is the most common cause. Syphilis is not rarely responsible for these aneurysms whereas other infections such as tuberculosis are exceptional etiologic factors. In one series (Mills and Horton) evidence of syphilis was found in 88 per cent while the incidence of syphilis in another series was placed as high as 58 per cent (Scott). In abdominal aneurysms lesions are multiple in 18 to 20 per cent of the cases. Trauma is rarely responsible.

The aneurysmal sac is often located in the anterior aortic wall just below the diaphragm particularly in aneurysms of syphilitic origin. Arteriosclerotic aneurysms lie at the celiac axis for the most part.

The chief symptom is abdominal pain which may be overwhelming and which may appear in paroxysms lasting minutes or hours. The pain is throbbing and appears particularly at night or after a meal. The pain may spread to the thigh, the scrotum or the labia as in a kidney stone. In addition to the pain nausea and vomiting often occur. Obstipation and meteorism are common. Reactive inflammation of the surrounding tissue may cause peritoneal irritation. The aneurysm may compress the stomach, a part of the intestines or a ureter causing corresponding symptoms. Erosion of the vertebrae and compression of the spinal cord may produce hemiparesis or paraplegia.

A pulsating tumor the size of an orange or even larger is often found on palpation. It must be emphasized that the mere fact a tumor pulsates does not by itself confirm the diagnosis. The pulsating mass must be wider than the normal aorta. Evidence of expansile pulsation in all directions is necessary because the pulsation may be transmitted. The tumor is often tender on palpation. Occasionally a murmur is heard and a thrill is felt over the aneurysm.

Flat x ray plates of the abdomen are a great diagnostic help. The aneurysm is often outlined by the deposits of calcium present in the aneurysmal wall. Erosion of the vertebrae is occasionally noted in lateral plates. With tomography one may find a soft tissue mass.

The duration of the lesion depends upon its size and location. Usually rupture takes place in six to twelve months after the appearance of symptoms but cases of much longer duration are known. In one group of statistics 20 per cent of abdominal aneurysms without complaints survived for five years.

At times the rupture occurs into the duodenum or the abdominal cavity. Not rarely the rupture is retroperitoneal. Patients may survive this type of rupture for a few days, often in a deepening coma. In not a few patients the course of the disease is interrupted by episodes simulating peritonism or ileus which subside after several days.

One must make sure not to confuse an abdominal aneurysm with a strongly pulsating normal abdominal aorta which is easily felt in patients with enteroptosis.

### *Aneurysms of Peripheral Arteries*

The majority of these aneurysms are of embolic mycotic origin. The etiology is usually a bacteremia in the course of subacute bacterial endocarditis, chronic empyema, or osteomyelitis. The infected emboli lodge in the vasa vasorum. Small mycotic aneurysms that occur in the aorta are usually not diagnosed clinically; they are more often found in the peripheral arteries. Rupture is a common event before these aneurysms reach large dimensions. Nearly one third of these patients are under 20 years of age. The lesion is often overlooked if it occurs in a peripheral artery; it is often confused with phlebitis.

Fraction of an artery by an extrinsic process leads to the formation of an aneurysm in rare cases.

Syphilitic aneurysms also occur at times in peripheral arteries. Thus aneurysm of the popliteal artery was rather common and was perhaps next in frequency to aneurysm of the aorta. We observed a syphilitic aneurysm in the radial artery.

Congenital aneurysms, especially common in the cerebral arteries, stem from malformations of the arterial wall. They are most often situated at the circle of Willis. They may cause sudden hemiplegia with xanthochromic spinal fluid and severe occipital headache. These accidents need not occur until adult life is reached. Some patients are over 40 years of age when symptoms appear. The dramatic picture of a subarachnoid hemorrhage may also be the result of a rupture of a congenital cerebral aneurysm.

Similar congenital müllerian aneurysms have been observed in the coronary arteries, otherwise an uncommon site of aneurysm. Coronary artery aneurysm may be due to periarthritis nodosa. In unusual instances it follows stab wounds. Congenital aneurysms of the coronary arteries are often multiple, sometimes rupturing or becoming thrombosed.

arteriosclerotic, mycotic and traumatic aneurysms though well known are less common.

There are no characteristic symptoms. Palpitation is present early while cyanosis and dyspnea appear later. The diagnosis can be made if a pulsation and a systolic thrill are found on the left side parasternally in the area of the second or third intercostal spaces with a loud systolic murmur and if x-ray examination shows a marked and circumscribed dilatation of the pulmonary artery.

Even with x-ray examination differentiation from an aneurysm of the aorta is sometimes impossible since aneurysms of the ascending aorta may develop on the right side and simulate dilatation of the pulmonary artery. The presence of hilar pulsation may help in the differentiation.

Undoubtedly many patients in whom the diagnosis of aneurysm of the pulmonary artery has been made without postmortem confirmation in reality had an atrial septal defect.

### *Aneurysms of the Abdominal Aorta*

These aneurysms are about as common as those of the descending portion of the thoracic aorta. They appear however in an older age group than in patients over 50. Arteriosclerosis is the most common cause. Syphilis is not rarely responsible for these aneurysms whereas other infections such as tuberculosis are exceptional etiologic factors. In one series (Wills and Horton) evidence of syphilis was found in 18 per cent while the incidence of syphilis in another series was placed as high as 54 per cent (Scott). In abdominal aneurysms lesions are multiple in 18 to 20 per cent of the cases. Trauma is rarely responsible.

The aneurysmal sac is often located in the anterior aortic wall just below the diaphragm particularly in aneurysms of syphilitic origin. Arteriosclerotic aneurysms lie at the celiac axis for the most part.

The chief symptom is abdominal pain which may be overwhelming and which may appear in paroxysms lasting minutes or hours. The pain is throbbing and appears particularly at night or after a meal. The pain may spread to the thigh, the scrotum or the labia as in a kidney stone. In addition to the pain nausea and vomiting often occur. Obstipation and meteorism are common. Reactive inflammation of the surrounding tissue may cause peritoneal irritation. The aneurysm may compress the stomach, a part of the intestines or a ureter causing corresponding symptoms. Friction of the vertebrae and compression of the spinal cord may produce hemiparesis or paraplegia.

A pulsating tumor the size of an orange or even larger is often found on palpation. It must be emphasized that the mere fact a tumor pulsates does not by itself confirm the diagnosis. The pulsating mass must be wider than the normal aorta. Evidence of expansile pulsation in all directions is necessary because the pulsation may be transmitted. The tumor is often tender on palpation. Occasionally a murmur is heard and a thrill is felt over the aneurysm.

## DISSECTION OF THE AORTA AND CYSTIC MEDIONECROSIS

Separation of the coats of the aorta or dissecting aneurysm was observed by Morgagni and was well known to Laennec. In the past the diagnosis was made only at postmortem examination. The number of cases in which correct clinical diagnosis is made has increased since Shennan's excellent monograph was published. The term dissection of the aorta is preferable to dissecting aneurysm.

*Incidence*

It has been estimated that the lesion occurs once in about 400 necropsies (Sailer) or once in 480 autopsies of patients over 20 (Gouley and Anderson). In another series of 3129 autopsies 12 dissecting aneurysms were found. Therefore the condition is not extremely rare. While it has been seen in an infant of 14 months and in a 100 year old woman it is most common in males after the age of 60. It is more common in hypertensive patients than in those with normal pressure although this has been denied by some.

In young women dissection of the aorta has been observed particularly during pregnancy and in the presence of coarctation of the aorta. It was observed in a 34 year old woman and her 14 year old son. Eighty per cent of the patients are beyond 60 years of age and 65 per cent are males.

*Pathology*

Hemorrhage between the layers of the aorta may occasionally follow trauma erosion of the aorta by an abscess tumor or arteriosclerotic changes (atheromatous ulcer) but the most common cause is medionecrosis cystica of the aorta (Erdheim Gsell).

This lesion is recognized as the outstanding cause of spontaneous rupture of the aorta and of the dissecting aneurysm. It is usually limited to the ascending aorta. Small areas of degeneration develop in the inner part of the media without any sign of inflammation. According to some investigators the change involves primarily the elastic fibers and the connective tissue; according to others the muscle fibers are affected first. Later an over production of mucoid material and the formation of cysts may be seen. These focal mucoid changes and necroses in the aorta were described before but their relation to the dissecting aneurysm remained unknown until the publication of more recent pathologic investigations (Erdheim). The absence of evidence of inflammation distinguishes the lesion from aortitis while the localization in the media with the intima remaining intact separates it from atherosclerosis. On gross examination the lesion often resembles syphilitic aortitis.

The etiology of the process is unknown. It possesses some similarity to experimental necrosis of the media of the aorta seen in rabbits following injections of epinephrine. Therefore excessive strain and stress have been alleged as causative. Others think that infectious diseases such as scarlet fever or typhoid fever are responsible. Marked damage of the arteries in infectious diseases has



is presented when the descending aortic arteries are involved or the dissection extends to the upper extremities. Ruptures of the descending aorta are common.

Ischemia of the lower extremities and diminished blood supply in the lower extremities may be found if the femoral arteries and their branches are affected. A bruit and thrill may appear over the femoral artery (Logue). The local picture may resemble that of a peripheral embolism or thrombosis. In addition to the clinical features already mentioned, a pleural effusion, vomiting, nausea and a rapid pulse may be present.

Examination of the heart often reveals a systolic and a diastolic murmur. The latter is aortic regurgitation, a feature in patients with a typical evolution of the syndrome. It is due to the displacement of the aortic valves when the dissection involves the aortic root, an event which occurs in more than 70 per cent of the cases.

Rupture of the trachea causes aphonia and dysphagia. Hemiparesis is a common complication of a dissection.

Recent x-ray examinations have been made repeatedly but external only in the patients who survive for a while. Widening of the aortic knob and its contour in the upper and abnormal shadows along the large vessels of the chest by aortic dissection. Sometimes these shadows pulsate. X-ray examination of the chest helps to establish the diagnosis.

### Differential Diagnosis

The picture of the condition is protean and presents great diagnostic difficulties; the number of cases in which the diagnosis is reached into myocardial infarction is large but still is not large.

The excruciating pain presented by patients is usually confused with the pain of coronary occlusion and myocardial infarction. It is pointed out by various authors that the pain in dissecting aneurysms is more knife-like than coronary artery disease. The wandering of the pain down the back may help in the differentiation but this symptom is often missing or late in appearance.

The elevated temperature, leukocytosis, pericardial involvement, electrocardiographic changes and fall of blood pressure are found in both conditions. The blood pressure however usually remains high in dissecting aneurysms. The fact together with the appearance of a diastolic aortic murmur and the absence of pulsation in one carotid or brachial artery will help in the diagnosis. The absence of electrocardiographic changes in coronary occlusion is rare; the presence of changes that indicate a myocardial infarction in dissecting aneurysms is unusual. The differentiation may be easier if the patient survives for several hours but often is impossible at the onset of symptoms. Since the immediate treatment consists of an injection of morphine in both conditions nothing is lost from a therapeutic standpoint. The differentiation is however important for prognosis.

The possibility of confusion with pericardial involvement was already mentioned. In one series of 12 cases the rupture took place into the pericardium in 7 instances (Logue). In chronic dissections seen in patients surviving for some

## DISSECTION OF THE AORTA AND CYSTIC MEDIONECROSIS

Separation of the coats of the aorta or dissecting aneurysm was observed by Morgagni and was well known to Laennec. In the past the diagnosis was made only at postmortem examination. The number of cases in which correct clinical diagnosis is made has increased since Sherman's excellent monograph was published. The term dissection of the aorta is preferable to dissecting aneurysm.

*Incidence*

It has been estimated that the lesion occurs once in about 400 necropsies (Sailer) or once in 480 autopsies of patients over 20 (Gouley and Anderson). In another series of 3129 autopsies 12 dissecting aneurysms were found. Therefore the condition is not extremely rare. While it has been seen in an infant of 14 months and in a 100 year old woman, it is most common in males after the age of 60. It is more common in hypertensive patients than in those with normal pressure, although this has been denied by some.

In young women dissection of the aorta has been observed particularly during pregnancy and in the presence of coarctation of the aorta. It was observed in a 34 year old woman and her 14 year old son. Eighty per cent of the patients are beyond 60 years of age and 65 per cent are males.

*Pathology*

Hemorrhage between the layers of the aorta may occasionally follow trauma, erosion of the aorta by an abscess tumor or arteriosclerotic changes (atheromatous ulcer) but the most common cause is medionecrosis cystica of the aorta (Erdheim-Gsell).

This lesion is recognized as the outstanding cause of spontaneous rupture of the aorta and of the dissecting aneurysm. It is usually limited to the ascending aorta. Small areas of degeneration develop in the inner part of the media without any sign of inflammation. According to some investigators the change involves primarily the elastic fibers and the connective tissue; according to others the muscle fibers are affected first. Later an overproduction of mucoid material and the formation of cysts may be seen. These focal mucoid changes and necroses in the aorta were described before, but their relation to the dissecting aneurysm remained unknown until the publication of more recent pathologic investigations (Erdheim). The absence of evidence of inflammation distinguishes the lesion from aortitis, while the localization in the media with the intima remaining intact separates it from arteriosclerosis. On gross examination the lesion often resembles syphilitic aortitis.

The etiology of the process is unknown. It possesses some similarity to experimental necrosis of the media of the aorta seen in rabbits following injections of epinephrine. Therefore excessive strain and stress have been alleged as causative. Others think that infectious diseases such as scarlet fever or typhoid fever are responsible. Marked damage of the arteries in infectious diseases has

been described (Wiesel). The frequent occurrence of vascular lesions in rheumatic fever has been pointed out before but these lesions are of a different type. Both the excessive use of tobacco and the occasional presence of syphilis were considered etiologic factors. Toxins of unknown character are also supposed to be causal.

Medionecrosis is common. It has been seen in 95 cases among 210 routine necropsies (Rottino). The incidence is higher with increasing age and with increasing blood pressure.

The vasa vasorum in the aorta suffer in this process. It seems probable that rupture of the vasa vasorum leads to a hemorrhage between the layers of the media. If this hemorrhage extends it may lead to complete rupture of the weakened aortic wall. More often the tears run up and down the aorta causing the dissection. The intimal tear is thus a point of emergence and not, as it was believed for many years, a point of entrance and the beginning of the dissection (Sailer). In favor of this conception is the fact that dissecting aneurysms have been seen in which the intima was intact. Core and Seiwert report 23 instances in which there was no intimal break. The tear has two points of predilection explained easily by the anatomic situation. One is just above the aortic valves that is 2 to 4 cm. above the sinus of Valsalva. The other is in the area of the aortic isthmus. In continuation of the aorta dissection is not rare. The tear in the ascending aorta is usually transverse.

The separation of tissue of the media (which takes place chiefly in the outer layers) may proceed centrally toward the heart and occlude the coronary arteries. Usually the dissection burrows peripherally and all arterial branches originating from the aorta can be involved. At first they remain connected with the main stem of the aorta by the thin intima alone but soon the vessel is occluded and severed at its origin. This may happen to the innominate artery, the left carotid artery and left subclavian artery, to the intercostal and lumbar arteries, the renal and mesenteric arteries and so forth. The dissection may proceed down to the femoral and even to the popliteal vessels. In a 15 year old boy the dissection reached the posterior tibial artery on one side and the popliteal artery on the other. There was also some dissection of the pulmonary artery (Cordner et al). Since the dissection rarely involves the whole circumference of the wall of the aorta, not all aortic vessels are involved during the progress of the lesion.

The dissection may re-enter the lumen of the aorta at any point or rupture into the surrounding area. If the blood re-enters the aorta the patient occasionally survives and an endothelial lining forms in the new path. These patients have a double barrelled aorta. If the entire circumference of the aorta is involved in the whole path of the aneurysm the inner part of the aorta may be carried down toward the periphery as an embolus. If the dissection breaks outward — a common event — severe hemorrhage may occur into the pericardium, the mediastinum, the pleura or abdomen resulting in sudden death.

Incomplete rupture of the aorta (as well as complete rupture) has a similar underlying pathology. Incomplete rupture may also cause the sudden appearance

of an aortic diastolic murmur (Peery). Of great interest is the production of the lesion in rats fed lathyrus odoratus (sweet pea seeds) (Bachhuber and Lalich) or aminonitriles (Wawzonek et al). The toxic substance is beta aminopropionitrile (Bean and Ponsetti). Kyphoscoliosis and hernias may coexist showing a tendency to a connective tissue injury.

### *Symptoms and Signs*

The most outstanding symptom is the sudden and overwhelming pain which strikes the patient with full force and without premonitory symptoms often beginning during physical work. Some believe that a sudden rise of blood pressure may be an initiating factor responsible for dissection. The pain is knifelike and often spreads to the shoulder or is felt only between the scapula. Sometimes it wanders down with the progress of the dissection. Occasionally it extends into the right or left arm. At times it is intermittent sometimes it is mild or even completely absent. Bier et al missed the pain in 20 out of 44 cases. Usually there is no compressive sensation as exists in inguinal pain due to myocardial infarction. If the pain is felt only in the back or in the abdomen confusion with other lesions may arise. In general the location of the pain depends upon the site of the aortic lesion.

Vomiting and nausea as well as profound shock occur often. The clammy skin is covered with sweat. Dizziness appears and the patient may lose consciousness; this happens particularly when one carotid artery is involved and suddenly becomes occluded. Convulsions occur as well as disorientation and dyspnea.

The blood pressure may fall the temperature rise and there is a marked leukocytosis which may reach 30 000 white cells with more than 90 per cent polymorphonuclear cells.

Most of the other symptoms and signs naturally depend to a great extent on the location and spread of the dissection and the vessels involved.

Dissection toward the heart may cause occlusion of coronary arteries with myocardial infarction and all its consequences. The electrocardiogram then shows the changes expected in a myocardial infarction and a pericardial friction rub may appear. Rupture of the dissection is particularly common and may cause the clinical syndrome of cardiac tamponade; it soon proves fatal.

The innominate artery may escape but the left subclavian and left carotid arteries are often compressed or occluded. This may lead to hemiplegia hemiparesis or paralysis of one limb and other neurologic phenomena. The left arm may become pale and bloodless and the pulsation of its arteries disappears.

Dissection of the intercostal and lumbar arteries may lead not only to pain that gradually wanders down the back but also to such segmental neurologic findings as hyperesthesia or anesthesia. Paraplegia is also observed. The dissection of the intercostal arteries and occlusion of branches supplying the anterior aspect of the spinal cord may account for the overwhelming weakness of the legs a common and major complaint.

Involvement of the renal arteries leads to renal infarction renal hemorrhage anuria and uremia. Bloody stools may appear and the picture of an acute abdomen

is presented when the mesenteric arteries are involved or the dissecting aneurysm ruptures into the abdomen.

Evidence of a disturbed blood supply in the lower extremities may be found if the femoral arteries and their branches are affected. A bruit and thrill may appear over the femoral artery (Logue). The local picture may resemble that of a peripheral arterial embolism or thrombosis. In addition to the clinical findings already mentioned are blood in the pleural cavity, vomiting, nausea and gallop rhythm.

Examination of the heart often reveals a systolic and a diastolic murmur. The latter a characteristic feature in patients with a typical evolution of the syndrome results from displacement of the aortic valves when the dissection involves the ascending aorta, an event which occurs in more than 70 per cent of the cases.

Rupture into the mediastinum causes aphonia and dysphagia. Hemoptysis is common and not well explained.

Röntgenologic examinations have been made repeatedly but naturally only in those patients who survive for a while. Widening of the aortic knob, a double contour in this area and abnormal shadows along the large vessel of the cardiac base may be seen. Sometimes these shadows put the X-ray examination rarely helps to establish the diagnosis.

### *Differential Diagnosis*

The picture of the condition is protean and presents great diagnostic difficulties. The number of cases in which the diagnosis is reached ante mortem is increasing but still is not large.

The excruciating pain presented by patients is usually confused with the pain of coronary occlusion and myocardial infarction. It is pointed out by various authors that the pain in dissecting aneurysms is more knife-like than compressive or viselike. The wandering of the pain down the back may help in the differentiation but this symptom is often missing or late in appearance.

The elevated temperature, leukocytosis, pericardial involvement, electrocardiographic changes and fall of blood pressure are found in both conditions. The blood pressure, however, usually remains high in dissecting aneurysm. This fact together with the appearance of a diastolic aortic murmur and the absence of pulsation in one carotid or brachial artery will help in the diagnosis. The absence of electrocardiographic changes in coronary occlusion is rare. The presence of changes that indicate a myocardial infarction in dissecting aneurysms is unusual. The differentiation may be easier if the patient survives for several hours but often is impossible at the onset of symptoms. Since the immediate treatment consists of an injection of morphine in both conditions, nothing is lost from a therapeutic standpoint. The differentiation is, however, important for prognosis.

The possibility of confusion with pericardial involvement was already mentioned. In one series of 12 cases the rupture took place into the pericardium in 7 instances (Logue). In chronic dissections, i. e. in patients surviving for some

time the presence of a Corrigan pulse = an increased pulse pressure and a diastolic aortic murmur in the second right intercostal space parasternally may cause confusion with syphilitic aortic regurgitation

For obvious reasons the disorder may be mistaken for a cerebral accident a pleural effusion renal disease an abdominal lesion and particularly a surgical emergency

The differentiation is especially difficult if there is no pain or if the pain is not felt within the chest If patients complain only of weakness in the legs or abdominal colic with diarrhea or pain in the back the diagnosis will be possible only for those who are thoroughly familiar with the picture and think of it The disappearance of peripheral pulses the wandering of the pain down along the aorta and the appearance of a diastolic aortic murmur are the best diagnostic signs

### Prognosis

The prognosis is very bad Only 7 per cent of Shennan's patients lived for 1 to 5 weeks Herled cases usually with a double balled aorta are rare but survival for several years is observed (Hoskin and Gardner) In some of these patients no history could be elicited pointing to the date of dissection Apparently it proceeded without pain and did not make the patient sufficiently ill to require rest in bed In most patients even when they survive for a time the dissection resumes its course and causes perforation and death

### Treatment

As pointed out before morphine is indicated to relieve the pain Complete rest is advised and enforced with the administration of barbiturates and other sedatives Oxygen has been repeatedly recommended but its value is dubious An operation designed to relieve pressure from a compressed femoral artery was attempted (Gurin et al) and an attempt was made apparently successful to operate on some patients in the hope of diverting the blood and causing its re entry into the aorta (de Bakey et al) It is in this way that self healing occurs in aortic dissection — spontaneous re entry

## Bibliography

- Abbott O A Clinical experiences with the application of polythene cellophane upon aneurysms of the thoracic vessels *J Thorac Surg* 13 435 1943  
 Albrecht H U Zur Röntgenagnostik der Aneurysmen der Sinus Valsalvae der Aorta *Fortschr a d Geb d Röntgenstrahlen* 19 1936  
 Alexander J and Byron F A Aortectomy for thoracic aneurysm *Univ Hosp Bull Ann Arbor* 9 101 1943  
 Bachhuber T E and Lulich J J Induction of dissecting aneurysm in rats fed lathyrus odoratus *Science* 70 712 1954  
 Baer S and Clidburgh H L The varied clinical syndrome produced by dissecting aneurysms *Am Heart J* 33 199 1947

- Baer R W, Lumsig H B and Oppenheimer I H Congenital aneurysmal dilatation of the aorta associated with atherosclerosis Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 309 1947
- Babson H T Considerations in the excision of aortic aneurysms Ann Surg 133 3 1953
- Bean W H and Foustett L A Dissecting aneurysm produced by diet Circulation 19 189 1959
- Blackmer A H Progressive constrictive occlusion of the abdominal aorta with waxy and electrothermic coagulation Ann Surg 133 447 1951
- and King B C Electrothermic coagulation of aortic aneurysm J A M A 177 181 1958
- Bourne C and Willis T J Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta with cardiograms suggestive of cardiac infarction Brit Heart J 5 180 1946
- Boyle E J A study of four thousand peritoneal sacs of aneurysms of the thoracic aorta Am J Med Sci 175 654 1954
- and McNamara J H Aneurysm of the pulmonary artery Am Heart J 18 561 1939
- and Wroblewski S C Occlusion of the aorta dissecting aneurysm and aneurysmal dilatation of the left ventricular artery report of a case Ann Int Med 22 845 1953
- Burchell H B Aortic dissection (dissecting hematoma dissecting aneurysm of the aorta) Circulation 19 1069 1959
- D Baker M F and Coley D A Successful resection of an aneurysm of distal aortic arch in replacement by graft J A M A 122 1798 1957
- and Coley D A Surgical treatment of an aneurysm of abdominal aorta by resection and restoration of continuity with homograft Surg Gyn & Obst 155 1953
- Coley D A and Crutchfield O Jr Surgical considerations of dissecting aneurysm of the aorta Ann Surg 114 586 1951
- and Crutchfield O Jr Treatment of aneurysm and occlusive disease of the aorta by resection J A M A 122 203 1954
- Last T Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta Lancet 1017 1939
- Friedheim J and Mehlner H aorta idiopathica Virchows Arch f path Anat 3 454 1959
- C 187 1930
- Gardner E Calbraith A J and Hardwick S W Aortic dissecting aneurysm Lancet 1010 1959
- Cornell and Schwartz V J Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta Arch Path 53 151 1952
- Coulter B A and Anderson E Chronic dissecting aneurysm of the aorta simulating syphilitic aortitis aortic dissection notes in the associated aortic murmur Ann Int Med 14 978 1940
- Criffith C J Hayhurst A L and Whitehead R Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta in mother and child Brit Heart J 13 364 1951
- Csch O Wandlungen der Aorta als gleichzeitige Erkrankung und ihre Beziehung zur Spontanruptur Virchows Arch f path Anat 10 1 1924
- Gurin D Bulmer J W and Derby I Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta New York State J Med 35 1200 1935
- Hall J M Healed dissecting aneurysm of the aorta Arch Path & Lab Med 41 1956
- Holzmann M Aneurysma disicans der Brustorta im Röntgenbild Acta radiol 13 1 1932
- Hoslin J and Gardner E Silent dissection of the aorta Brit Heart J 8 141 1946
- Hufnagel C A and Gillespie J F The treatment of aneurysms of the aorta Bull Georgetown Univ Med Center 4 124 1951
- Jennings C H Four cases of abdominal aneurysm Lancet 1 719 1941

- Jones A M and Langley F A Aortic sinus aneurysms *Brit Heart J* 11 300 1949
- Julian O C Grove W J Dye W S Oliver J and Sadove M S Direct surgery of arteriosclerosis *Ann Surg* 148 347 1953
- Kampmeier R H An aneurysm of the abdominal aorta a study of 73 cases *Am J M Sc* 19 97 1936
- Sacular aneurysm of the thoracic aorta A clinical study of 633 cases *Ann Int Med* 17 624 1938
- Kienbo L R Zur Differentialdiagnose der recht istigen extrakardialen Sinus aneurysmen der Aorta und ihr abge setzten zystischen Perikardialexsudate *Wien med Wchnschr* 77 558 1927
- Klinefelter E W Significance of calcification for roentgen diagnosis of aneurysm of the abdominal aorta *Radiology* 4 59 1946
- Laubry C Sur le diagnostic adioscopique des aneurysmes de laorta abdominale *Bull et mém Soc méd d hop de Paris* 44 193 1920
- Lian C Marchal M and Deparez M Le diagnostic clinique et radiologique des aneurysmes aortiques intrapericrdaux *Bull et mém Soc méd d hop de Paris* 47 52 1933
- Linton R R and Hardy I B Jr Treatment of thoracic aortic aneurysms by the lach method of intravascular wiring *New England J M d* 16 847 1962
- Logue R B Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta *Am J M Sc* 206 54 1943
- and Sikes A new sign of dissecting aneurysm of the aorta *J A M A* 148 1200 1957
- Lucke B and Res M H Studies on aneurysm I General statistical data on aneurysm *J A M A* 73 1021 1921
- McKusick V A The cardiovascular aspects of Marfan's syndrome A heritable disorder of connective tissue *Circulation* 11 321 1955
- Heritable disorders of connective tissue III The Marfan syndrome *J Chron Dis* 2 608 1955
- Nicks R H Congenital aneurysms of all three sinuses of Valvula *Brit Heart J* 4 63 1940
- Mills J H and Horton M T Clinical aspects of aneurysm *Arch Int Med* 6 949 1938
- McNahan D T Ligation of the aorta and both common iliacs for aneurysm report of a case and review of seven operative survivals of aortic ligation *Surveys* 10 519 1944
- Nissim J A Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta a new sign *Brit Heart J* 8 203 1946
- Oram S and East T Rupture of aneurysm of aortic sinus of Valvula into the right side of heart *Brit Heart J* 17 541 1955
- Ostrum H W Robinson M D Nichols C F and Weidmann B I Aneurysms of the sinuses of Valvula *Am J Roentgenol* 10 878 1939
- Quens J N Jr and Bass A D Tuberculous aneurysm of the abdominal aorta *Arch Int Med* 74 413 1944
- Leery T M Incomplete rupture of the aorta *Arch Int Med* 10 693 1942
- Triveteri C A and Gay B B Jr Aneurysm of the pulmonary artery *Radiol* 10 247 1950
- Rizzo M and Votta I J Clinical and roentgen manifestations of dissecting aneurysm of the aorta *Am J Roentgenol* 57 543 1944
- Rottin A Medial degeneration of the aorta *Arch Path* 25 3 1979
- Sailer S Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta *Arch Path* 33 04 1942
- Sarford S I An unusual case of aortic aneurysm *Ann Int M d* 599 1945
- Scott D H Aneurysms of the coronary arteries *Am Heart J* 37 403 1948
- Scott V Abdominal aneurysms a report of 96 cases *Am J Syph* 25 68 1944
- Shennan T Dissecting aneurysms M Research Council Spec R p No 197 1934



- Stengel A and Wolfarth C C. Mycotic (bacterial) aneurysms of intravascular origin. *Arch Int Med* 71: 27, 1923.
- Yenning C B. Aneurysms of the sinus Valsalva. *Am Heart J* 1: 57, 1931.
- Wainwright C W. Dissecting aneurysm producing coronary occlusion by dissection of the coronary artery. *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 76: 81, 1944.
- Wawzonick S, Tonetti I V, Shepard H S, and Weidenmann L C. Epiphyseal plate lesions, degenerative arthritis and dissecting aneurysm of the aorta produced by aminonitroso. *Science* 77: 63, 1955.
- Weiss S. Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta. *New England J Med* 78: 512, 1938.
- Weiss I F. Die Erkrankungen der Herzgefäße im Verlauf akuter Infektionen. *Ztschr f Heilk* 262, 1906.
- Willson B N, and Marcy A Jr. Rupture of an aortic aneurysm in a child of few years. *J A M A* 42: 1, 1907.
- Wood F C, Fendergrens E I, and Ostrum H W. Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta. *Am J Roentgenol* 29: 477, 1937.

## Chapter 25

# Atheroma of the Aorta and Atherosclerosis of Smaller Arteries

**A**RTERIOSCLEROSIS APPEARS in three main forms as atherosclerosis in the aorta and many large arteries as the harmless media sclerosis and as arteriosclerosis of the small arterioles in hypertension

*Atheroma of the Aorta* This lesion begins early in childhood it becomes well developed in the fifth decade and varies only in degree in different individuals It is not however a physiologic phenomenon As in other forms of atherosclerosis the etiology is unknown although a disturbance of lipid metabolism is frequently assumed In this purely degenerative process lipid infiltration degeneration with necrosis and intimal proliferation are combined secondary calcification takes place The aorta or any involved artery becomes elongated and tortuous If an atheromatous plaque ruptures debris is sent toward the periphery and causes embolism Sometimes an aneurysm forms an event observed particularly in the abdominal aorta

Pure atheroma causes no symptoms and the condition may progress very gradually without any important disturbance of the circulation Often it is an incidental finding

With advancing age the elasticity of the aorta diminishes The normal aorta has a storage function It receives the output from the left ventricle and moves it slowly toward the periphery with the aid of its elastic and smooth muscle fibers In this way the blood flow which receives rhythmic impulses by the contraction of the left ventricle becomes steadier The ascending aorta acts as a compression chamber With increasing age diminished elasticity of the aorta and atherosclerosis this function of the ascending aorta disappears and with it the systolic blood pressure rises while the diastolic tends to fall The size and shape of the heart remains normal A systolic murmur is audible over the aorta and is often transmitted to the apex as are all systolic aortic murmurs In elderly patients with emphysema the basal murmur at the second right interspace disappears while the systolic murmur over the apex remains and may cause confusion with other murmurs Often the systolic apical murmur is created by a sclerosis of the mitral valves while the systolic aortic and apical murmurs may be caused by atherosclerosis of the aortic valves The systolic aortic murmur is often mid-systolic that is sharply separated from the first sound by an interval It may appear at the end of systole (figure 91) The second aortic sound is accentuated and may even be metallic or ringing as in aortitis

- Stengel A and Wolferth C C Mycotic (bacterial) aneurysms of intravascular origin  
Arch Int Med 31 527 1923
- Venning G R Aneurysms of the sinus Valsalva Am Heart J 42 57 1951
- Wainwright C W Dissecting aneurysm producing coronary occlusion by dissection of the coronary artery Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 75 81 1944
- Wawzonek S Ponsetti I V Shepard R S and Weidenmann L G Epiphyseal plate lesions degenerative arthritis and dissecting aneurysm of the aorta produced by aminonitriles Science 121 63 1955
- Weiss S Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta New England J Med 218 512 1938
- Wiesel J Die Erkrankungen arterieller Gefäße im Verlaufe akuter Infektionen Ztschr f Heilk 7 262 1906
- Willson R N and Marcy A Jr Rupture of an aortic aneurysm in a child of four years J A M A 44 15 1907
- Wood F C Fendergras F P and Ostrum H W Dissecting aneurysm of the aorta Am J Roentgenol 23 427 1932

Atherosclerosis of the larger renal arteries may cause contraction (athero-sclerotic contracted kidney) and scars but it rarely disturbs renal function. It is asymptomatic. Albuminuria is a common sign.

Aneurysms due to atherosclerosis have been discussed in the preceding chapter.

*Therapy.* No treatment is known. A well regulated life may add to the patient's comfort and lessen the opportunity for various vascular accidents. The individual should adapt himself to a slow pace — avoidance of excesses of food and drink, elimination of sudden strains, either physical or mental, and so on. The amount of fat in the food should be small. Eggs, cream, butter and margarine are forbidden.

The time honored prescription of iodides is still widely used in some countries. As a rule such drugs are harmless and often beneficial, especially in cerebral vascular sclerosis. Since arterial changes following the feeding of cholesterol to rabbits can be prevented by the administration of iodides, the empirical use of this drug may have some rationale.

## Chapter 26

# The Cardiovascular Neuroses and Neurocirculatory Asthenia

IT IS DOUBTFUL whether a sharp line of demarcation can be drawn between cardiovascular neurosis and neurocirculatory asthenia. We prefer to discuss the two conditions as separate entities even though there are many strong arguments against the appropriateness of such a division.

### CARDIAC NEUROSIS

The cardiac neuroses are among the problems rarely encountered in the hospital but often met in private practice. An extremely variegated picture is involved. Recognition of the condition is often difficult and treatment requires much experience, tact and knowledge of human nature. Undoubtedly many cases were formerly included which did not belong in this group. In old treatises on this subject extrasystoles, paroxysmal tachycardia and even angina pectoris were diagnosed and discussed as cardiac neuroses. Until recently several disturbances found in women and connected with ovarian dysfunction that are now quickly and successfully treated with estrogens were attributed to a neurosis.

The complaints are diverse. Palpitation, dyspnea and precordial pain stand in the foreground as they do in many organic heart diseases. The experienced physician however will discover by a few questions that the palpitation and pain are independent of effort; they appear on excitement or without any external reason and they may last for hours. The respiration may be completely irregular; if dyspnea is present it may be purely subjective and without discernible change of rate or depth of the respiration. Insomnia, inability to concentrate or work, a tendency to perspire readily, anxiety and restlessness supplement the picture. Outwardly these patients may seem very quiet; many of them do not present the picture designated by laymen as nervousness. The pain rarely radiates to the arm and it is equally unusual for it to be retrosternal. More often it is inframammary or near the apex.

The signs and differential diagnosis will be discussed in connection with neurocirculatory asthenia since in this condition similar complaints are offered and the same signs are found.

Patients with cardiac neuroses with any neurosis for that matter are *patients* and must be treated as such. They suffer from their distress and their families suffer with them. For this reason it is entirely wrong to tell the patient that his complaints are only imaginary. An unpleasant situation is created

when the patient is told there is nothing wrong with him that all complaints are purely nervous and the family is informed by the physician that the patient is hysterical. It is much better to explain to the patient and to his relatives in keeping with the facts that no organic heart disease is present the disturbance is not dangerous nor will it lead to complications rather an alteration of the cardiac nerves and of the nervous regulation of the heart is present which merits careful consideration and requires careful treatment however *it is definitely curable and will have no consequences*. Many neuroses vanish as soon as the relatives adopt a different attitude toward the patient upon the advice of the physician.

In treating this type of patient it is not advisable to rely chiefly on medicinal therapy. Bromides chloral hydrate preparations of valerian and the modern tranquilizers are excellent supportive agents but they have little value by themselves. Psychotherapy is much more important. For this purpose much experience is necessary but special training is not indispensable. Careful interrogation and detailed inquiry into the symptoms should establish a close contact between physician and patient. Often one will succeed in discovering domestic strife professional dissension or maternal or sexual preoccupations as the source of irritating factors in the neurosis. Corresponding counsel explanation and encouragement will aid remarkably. Hardly ever does one have the satisfaction of having helped so much and hardly ever does one acquire so thankful a patient as in this oft neglected group.

### NEUROCIRCULATORY ASTHENIA

This condition is also known as Da Costa's syndrome irritable heart soldier's heart and autonomic imbalance. As indicated earlier we are dealing here with a syndrome that cannot be distinguished from a cardiac neurosis.

#### *Occurrence Frequency*

While the disorder is occasionally encountered in times of peace it seems to be particularly prevalent during wartime and when people are under stress and strain. Da Costa originally described the condition during the Civil War. About 44,000 cases became pensioners because of this disease in Great Britain during the First World War (Parkinson). Out of every 10 patients admitted to a hospital allocated for the care of cardiac patients in the period 1914—1918 nine suffered from neurocirculatory asthenia or D. A. H. (disordered action of the heart as it was called by the British Army) (Lewis). There is evidence to show that more than 1.5 per cent of the rejections by draft boards in the United States during the recent war were due to neurocirculatory asthenia. In the Second World War one out of every ten soldiers admitted to hospitals for cardiac complaints had neurocirculatory asthenia.

Naturally men are more often affected in time of war when the ratio seems to be 3 to 2 in favor of males. This figure may be reversed in times of peace. About 30 per cent of the patients are engaged in hard labor (Hill and Dewar).

### *Symptoms*

*Fatigue* A regular and outstanding symptom is great fatigue. Characteristically the patients complain of it when awakening in the morning after a long sound sleep. This profound exhaustion makes the patient dread any activity. In mild cases, as in all neurotics, the feeling of fatigue may vanish during the day. If the patient is active, he tires easily.

*Dyspnea* This is a common complaint. It is described as the sensation as if the breath would not go through, and has been discussed in the first chapter. The hyperventilation syndrome is common.

*Pain* Sometimes stabbing pain is felt in the inframammary region or more rarely behind the sternum. It may radiate to the left arm and thus may be very misleading. Like the pain in other cardiac neuroses, it bears no relation to effort; it does not come during the excitement but hours afterward. The area over the left breast or the apex is sore to touch. This symptom is very difficult to explain. The pain may also be dull.

*Palpitation* This complaint is also very common and of the same type as that discussed in the other neuroses. Like the dyspnea and pain, it occurs often at rest and is particularly annoying. The cardiac rate may be slow. Many patients are distressed by palpitation and precordial pain when lying on the left side. Since the same complaint occurs in about 30 per cent of normal people, it is usually easy to reassure the patient as to its benign nature.

Wood found dyspnea in 93 per cent, fatigue in 88 per cent, and sweating in 80 per cent of the subjects. Nervousness was noted in 79 per cent and dizziness as well as pain in 76 per cent.

*Additional Complaints* Many patients tend to perspire profusely. This is very annoying if the hands are affected, for these parts feel cold and clammy. Some patients perspire on the least mental or physical effort. Headache, dizziness, trembling, and irritability are added complaints. Some patients also mention blurring of vision, numbness of the extremities, loss of memory, and inability to reach decisions.

### *Signs*

The hands are often blue (stagnant anoxemia); there is hyperpnea and the knee jerks are exaggerated.

Cardiac hypermotility is easily found on palpation of the precordial area. The heart beat is often accelerated and rates exceeding 120 at rest may be found. Usually the heart slows during sleep. Physiologic systolic murmurs may be heard. The first heart sound is loud at the apex. Sometimes the blood pressure is elevated to 150/90 mm. Hg or more (anxiety hypertension), presumably as the result of cardiac hypermotility. The diastolic blood pressure may be normal even if the systolic pressure is markedly elevated (Hill and DeWar). The heart is always normal in size and shape if no unrelated complications exist. Often a very examination discloses a moderately dilated aorta. This is a dynamic dilatation as in hyperthyroidism and the hypermotility of the left ventricle which explains it.

stroke volume with greater force into the ascending aorta is largely responsible for this finding

Electrocardiographic findings have been described but they are equivocal and do not aid in the diagnosis

Many of these patients have a spastic colon and gastric hyperacidity. A mild elevation of temperature is common and may be misleading

### *Etiology*

The cause of the syndrome is unknown. Stress is often a precipitating factor. In some cases great nervous strain, physical overexertion, an exhausting illness or an infectious disease antedate the onset of neurocirculatory asthenia. Emotional conflicts play a great role and explain the increased frequency of this syndrome in wartime. It is found not only in cowards but also in men with a keen sense of duty. Heredity is important for the family history is positive in approximately 50 per cent of the occurrence of psychiatric cases. The imbalance of the autonomic nervous system is attributed by some to a central disorder. The hypothalamic region has been suspected as the possible site of the lesion.

According to Wood the symptoms resemble those of fear more than those of effort. The mechanism is one of central stimulation. The symptoms are the same as those observed in situations provoking anxiety and alarm. It is an emotional reaction pattern peculiar to psychopathic personalities and subjects with almost any type of psychoneurosis.

### *Prognosis*

The syndrome is never dangerous to life and there are no serious complications. Temporarily hyperventilation may cause tetany and even a condition like shock (hyperventilation syndrome). The extreme prostration may incapacitate the patient so much that months are spent in bed. The outlook in respect to the duration of the syndrome depends upon many factors, not the least of which is the correct management of the patient. In the First World War 20 per cent of the patients recovered sufficiently for re-entrance into general service, 20 per cent were permanently unfit and the rest improved sufficiently to do light work. The outlook for very advanced (stretcher) cases is poor. A follow up study of more than 600 cases of the war of 1914-1918 revealed that 16.3 per cent of the patients recovered entirely, 56.2 per cent remained stationary, 3.2 per cent became worse and the rest improved (Grant). The death rate in these cases was no greater than in the general population but a remarkable number (22 cases) developed pulmonary tuberculosis.

### *Differential Diagnosis*

The distinction between neurocirculatory asthenia or cardiac neurosis and organic disease or extracardiac lesions sometimes offers great difficulties.

A history of dyspnea, a loud first sound over the apex and a systolic apical murmur may lead to the diagnosis of a rheumatic mitral disease. It is easy to



rule out an advanced mitral lesion by x-ray examination in the right oblique position this rule is not valid for early cases of mitral stenosis because in this instance the left atrium need not be enlarged

The increase of blood pressure the systolic murmur and the history of pain with typical radiation may suggest coronary disease with angina pectoris. The differentiation between neurotic pain and atypical angina pectoris in coronary disease may meet with unsurmountable obstacles with the result that the final decision may have to be deferred for a while. The appearance of pain with no relation to effort or excitement its prolonged duration or short stabbing character and the absence of any favorable response to nitroglycerin (therapeutic test) speak in favor of the neurotic pain and help in the differentiation. It is noteworthy on the other hand that in coronary sclerosis a few hours or days before the full picture of coronary occlusion and myocardial infarction appears the attacks may also be atypical and may not even respond to nitroglycerin.

In view of the paucity of objective signs, *mylimering* is not easily excluded.

Hyperthyroidism is often suggested in these cases by virtue of the tremor the profuse perspiration the tachycardia and the cardiac hypermotility. In the neurocirculatory asthenia however there are no eye symptoms the basal metabolic rate is normal and the tachycardia disappears during sleep. In both conditions the hands are moist but they are cold in neurocirculatory asthenia and warm in hyperthyroidism. The condition may also be confused with *bru cellosis*.

The presence of slight temperature loss of weight and tachycardia may seem to indicate a beginning pulmonary tuberculosis. Therefore a complete physical examination should be followed by roentgen examination of the lungs. In this connection it should be recalled that temperatures of organic origin such as those of rheumatic fever tuberculosis and so forth are easily abolished by small doses (2 Gm daily) of aminopyrine (Pyramidon). The fever found in neurocirculatory asthenia or in hyperthyroidism is not modified by this drug but is lowered by opium derivatives.

Experience during the recent war in particular has taught the importance of ruling out an early hypertension in these cases. Blood pressures exceeding 150/90 mm Hg are common in neurocirculatory asthenia and only careful observation and the presence of hypertensive heart disease in one or both parents may permit the differentiation.

### *Therapy*

Not much help can be expected from drugs. Small doses of chloral hydrate bromides or phenobarbital are useful and benzedrine has been recommended for the asthenia. Tranquilizing agents seem to help. Vitamins are given as tonics. However medication prescribed is only for symptomatic treatment and does not cure the patient. The less attention paid to the pulse rate and the heart once the diagnosis is established the easier it is to handle the situation.

Of primary importance is psychotherapy with firm reassurance of the patient. Fear should be removed if possible and the patient should be taught to readjust himself to his environment. He should be taught to have a more philosophical attitude towards situations at home and in business. Sometimes the help of a psychiatrist is needed but often the patient resists this advice for obvious reasons. Much patience and much listening to the patient's complaints are necessary. One often finds difficult life situations that cause emotional tension and here advice may be helpful. The word neurosis is avoided. The physician should never forget that a cardiac neurosis may have been initiated by an injudicious statement of a colleague. Explanation of the nonorganic nature of the complaints does more good than mere reassurance. Graduated exercises were in vogue for patients of this group during the First World War.

## Bibliography

- Badal D W. Psychiatric observations in neurocirculatory asthenia. *JAMA* 154 1004 1954
- Canner L A. The psychic factors in cardiac disorders. *JAMA* 94 441 1930
- Dunn M and Lewis A. Effort syndrome. *Lancet* 1 813 1941
- Friedman M. Etiology and pathogenesis of neurocirculatory asthenia. *Am Heart J* 30 557 1945. *War Med* 6 21 1944
- Grant R T. Observations on the after histories of men suffering from effort syndrome. *Heart* 12 121 1905
- Hart A D. Iatrogenic and cardiac neuroses: a critique. *JAMA* 106 1153 1934
- Hill I G W and Dewar H A. Effort syndrome. *Lancet* 2 161 1945
- Jones M and Lewis A. Effort syndrome. *Lancet* 1 813 1941
- Lewis T. *The Soldier's Heart and the Effort Syndrome* ed 2. London: Shaw & Sons 1940
- Oppenheimer B S. Neurocirculatory asthenia and related problems in military medicine. *Bull New York Acad Med* 18 36 1942
- Parkinson J. Effort syndrome in soldiers. *Brit M J* 1 545 1941
- Walker W J. The patient with functional cardiovascular disorders. *Am Heart J* 42 94 1951
- Wittkower F, Reigier T F and Wilson A T M. Effort syndrome. *Lancet* 1 531 1941
- Wolfe D. De Costa's syndrome (or effort syndrome). *Brit Med J* 1 767 845 1943

## Chapter 27

# Cardiac Diseases and Pregnancy

THE MOST COMMON HEART DISEASES of women in the childbearing age are rheumatic fever and hypertension. Congenital heart disease, *cor pulmonale* (particularly in kyphoscoliosis) or arteriosclerotic heart disease are less frequent.

The attitude of different physicians in many problems arising in these patients depends upon their background, experience and education. Thus the gynecologist invariably speaks of pregnancy complicated by cardiac involvement while the cardiologist talks about a cardiac disease complicated by pregnancy.

The responsibility a physician assumes in every decision is very great. He should never rely upon statistical results alone but should individualize each case on its own merits after thorough examination and observation. Statistics, however, as compiled in two monographs (Jones, Hamilton and Thomson) make the task easier and offer help in making the final decision. Unfortunately the attitude of many physicians confronted with the problems we are about to discuss often depends neither upon the experiences of others nor the known facts but upon single recent personal observations.

*Incidence.* The incidence of rheumatic fever in pregnant women varies in different parts of the world but some idea of the importance of the problem can be obtained from the following figures:

In New England the incidence of rheumatic heart disease among pregnant women is 1.5 per cent (Kellogg). In the Boston Lying In Hospital 1.7 per cent of pregnant women were cardiacs (Hamilton and Thomson). In New York rheumatic heart disease was found in 2.6 per cent of pregnancies while in Great Britain 0.25 per cent of cardiac cases were detected among 20,306 deliveries (Donovan). Similar figures were recently obtained by Abramson and Tenney despite the lower incidence of rheumatic fever in the last few years. In all hospital statistics the number of cardiac patients is naturally higher than in the general population since women with heart disease fortunately are referred to hospitals for observation and delivery in ever increasing numbers.

Heart disease ranks among the five most important causes of maternal death. It accounts for about 7 per cent of all fatalities and claims close to 1000 pregnant women a year in the United States.

*Pathophysiology.* Pregnancy increases the load for the heart, diminishes its reserve power and may cause decompensation in patients with organic heart disease. The work of labor magnifies this strain.

The circulating blood volume increases during pregnancy by 45 per cent beginning early in pregnancy and gradually reaching a maximum in the ninth lunar month. There is a progressive increase in the plasma and total volume by 30 to 50 per cent. A definite decrease occurs in the tenth lunar month and after delivery. The red cell count, hemoglobin percentage and hematocrit increase. Because of the relatively greater increase of the plasma a relative anemia appears to be present. The cardiac output is also increased about 50 per cent above normal in the latter stage of pregnancy. It has been claimed that the placenta acts like an arteriovenous leak and that the circulatory adjustments in pregnancy may therefore be compared to those of patients with an arteriovenous fistula. This is not proved. The velocity of blood flow is increased. The basal metabolic rate may rise up to 25 per cent (increased oxygen consumption of the fetus). Often the blood pressure rises slightly (Jensen) but more frequently it remains normal. There is a marked retention of sodium, probably due to a hypersecretion of aldosterone. A peculiar disease of the myocardium which appears in the puerperium was described in the chapter on myocardial diseases (Sodeman).

The added demands of the placenta, the greater weight of the patient, the increased basal metabolic rate, difficulties in respiration and certainly many other factors, for the most part unknown at present, increase the minute volume and the load on the heart. The heart is anatomically larger during pregnancy (Tandler). The adverse effect of many aggravating factors gradually diminishes toward the end of pregnancy when lightening appears. No available explanation is satisfactory for this phenomenon. The circulatory disturbances mentioned begin to appear at about the twelfth week of pregnancy.

**Contraindications.** Frequently a certain valvular lesion is regarded as a contraindication to pregnancy. Thus, for many years mitral stenosis in any stage was considered particularly dangerous and few physicians hesitated to interrupt pregnancy in the presence of this lesion. No less an observer than Mackenzie pointed out that mitral stenosis constituted a very common source of peril and most physicians of his time accepted the same view. According to modern experience patients with mitral stenosis actually seem to offer a greater danger than those with other valvular lesions. We are heartily in accord with this opinion. Many other observers, however, regard aortic lesions as contraindications despite the fact that it is precisely in this lesion that full compensation is often maintained for many years.

The presence of atrial fibrillation is considered by some authorities to be a bar to pregnancy while others emphasize correctly that it is not an added burden per se.

The important question it seems to us is not which valvular lesion is present but how marked it is, the extent of compensation, the degree of functional capacity of the patient and the condition of the myocardium are of importance. In this connection the four classes of functional capacity defined by the New York Heart Association according to the condition of the patient

are of great value in providing a better guide for the management of an individual case

*Clinical Findings* Cardiac examination of patients late in pregnancy reveals displacement of the heart due to the high position of the diaphragm. This may lead to an erroneous diagnosis of cardiac dilatation. A systolic murmur is audible (50 per cent) over the pulmonary artery and is explained by the kinking of this vessel (Landt and Benjamin). It disappears during deep inspiration. The second pulmonic sound is often accentuated when the elevated diaphragm pushes the conus of the right ventricle closer to the chest wall. The same mechanism may force the ascending aorta toward the chest wall in other cases and lead to an accentuation of the second aortic sound. As a consequence of the cardiac displacement the electrocardiogram shows a deep Q wave in lead III in about 30 per cent of the cases.

According to Mackenzie extrasystoles are very common and appear in about 50 per cent of healthy women during pregnancy. Attacks of paroxysmal tachycardia in this period also have been repeatedly described. These arrhythmias usually disappear shortly after delivery. They are indicative of some change in the myocardium but the precise mechanism is unknown.

Albuminuria is common and ankle edema due to pressure of the enlarged uterus on the iliac veins is also found often. There is a low oncotic pressure. A loud physiologic murmur in the presence of these findings may make it difficult to exclude an organic heart disease. It is even harder to rule out beginning decompensation in a patient who is known to have an organic heart lesion. In the presence of edema the status of the liver is important in excluding right ventricular failure but examination of this organ may be difficult in advanced pregnancy. It is easy to diagnose left ventricular failure (pulmonary congestion) by the appearance of basal rales and a prolonged circulation time.

*Prognosis and Complications* The heart disease may be so trifling that one need expect no risk from a pregnancy. On the other hand it may be of such a degree that complications will develop with certainty. The heart disease may be prohibitive. In women over 35 years of age the danger of complications is particularly great.

Dissecting aneurysms occur in pregnant women. Spontaneous abortions are rare in cardiac patients. Irregular menstruation and early menopause are common.

The greatest strain on the heart occurs when the pregnancy is 28 weeks old and for 24 hours after delivery.

According to older observations one out of every five pregnant women with chronic rheumatic heart disease develops congestive heart failure for the most part in the seventh or eighth month of pregnancy. If decompensation appears there is an even chance of going through the term without difficulty. There is no doubt that the danger of pregnancy in chronic heart disease was often over emphasized and that modern methods afford a much greater opportunity for cardiac patients to deliver a healthy baby without endangering their lives. According to Hamilton the mortality of patients with compensated cardiac

lesions is 25 per cent. Those which he places in his unfavorable group have a mortality of 16.7 per cent, and the mortality in patients with atrial fibrillation is 33 per cent. The death rate in patients with pregnancy and heart disease has fallen in recent years from 8—10 per cent to 2—3 per cent (Jensen-Gordon). There is, however, always a great deal of uncertainty which precludes any dogmatism. One of us observed a patient with a moderately advanced but compensated mitral stenosis who went through 12 normal deliveries without medical supervision. We have also seen other patients with so mild a mitral stenosis that they were unaware of its existence and yet died immediately after delivery from a fulminating pulmonary edema.

It is always helpful to know how previous pregnancies were tolerated. If decompensation developed in a previous pregnancy, in all probability a second pregnancy will lead to serious complications.

Pulmonary edema may appear at any stage of pregnancy in mitral stenosis although the valvular lesion seems slight. Help may come too late even if expert therapy is prescribed.

The development of pulmonary edema during delivery or a few hours post partum is a dramatic and very serious complication, particularly in patients with mitral stenosis. Acute pulmonary congestion caused by strain during delivery and overfilling of the lesser circuit with blood returning in huge quantities from the pelvic veins are responsible for this dangerous complication. We have not encountered it since we advised the obstetrician to administer morphine for the first 12 hours post partum to every woman with heart disease and suggested a phlebotomy in those patients whose delivery is more or less bloodless.

Prolonged labor should be avoided by all available means.

Another serious complication is the development of subacute bacterial endocarditis following delivery. One per cent of cardiac patients in a large series of carefully observed cases developed this complication. To avoid this tragic event we advise 600,000 units of procaine penicillin daily for five days following delivery. Some authors recommend also the intramuscular injection of streptomycin.

It has often been maintained that cardiac patients whose pregnancy goes to term without complication and ends in a normal delivery afterward do not feel as well and their ability to work diminishes. Some statistics show, however, that one or two pregnancies are often tolerated well without detriment to health and without shortening life. Frequent pregnancies at intervals of one or two years are however dangerous. Here also an evaluation of each patient is necessary in determining the course.

*Medical Advice.* In the evaluation of every case, the age of the patient, the degree of the lesion, the status of the myocardium, the functional capacity of the heart, the reserve power, and the history of previous failure must be considered.

If a woman with organic cardiac disease asks whether she dare take the risk of pregnancy, the answer must be no in the presence of congestive heart

failure even if earlier congestive heart failure was present and is now prevented by continuous medication. There are patients in this group who reach term and contrary to all expectations have a normal delivery but they are exceptional. The statement that delivery is shortened in decompensated patients owing to edema of the tissues remains unconfirmed.

In the presence of a fully compensated valvular lesion the patient must be informed about the increased risk involved in pregnancy but in most instances she is willing to undertake it. Continuous observation during the pregnancy is necessary beginning with the sixth lunar month the patient must be examined weekly for evidence of heart failure. Activities must be reduced periods of rest must be prolonged the nutrition must be adequate and an ample supply of thiamine chloride and iron should be given. Lack of thiamine is a common reason for cardiac symptoms and signs in pregnant women. Sodium intake may have to be restricted.

Valvulotomy in mitral stenosis has been performed successfully during pregnancy. Often the operation is better performed after pregnancy terminates.

There is no need for and no help can be expected from the prophylactic administration of digitals before decompensation occurs. At term the safe method of delivery is elected and strain should be avoided. Until recently caesarian section under ether anesthesia was considered advantageous. The patient was thus spared the work of delivery the danger of subacute bacterial endocarditis was reduced to a minimum the most favorable moment for the termination of pregnancy with the patient in the optimal state could be chosen if necessary the duration of the pregnancy could be shortened and sterilization could easily be included in the operation if this were desirable. In patients with coronary sclerosis caesarian section is still preferred. Many obstetricians are now against a caesarian section in rheumatic heart disease since the mortality of patients in whom surgery has been performed is a little greater but the cases usually have been more seriously ill. It has been shown in a large series of observations that the dangers of delivery at term for the well prepared patient were grossly exaggerated. This trend away from caesarian section may change however with new methods of preventing complications (antibiotics and anticoagulants which prevent infection thrombosis and pulmonary embolism).

Pitressin and ergotamine preparations are best avoided.

How great the accomplishments of modern management of pregnancy in cardiac patients can be is illustrated by the following two sets of statistics collected in the pre penicillin era.

In a series of 1089 patients in whom pregnancy was complicated by rheumatic heart disease the total mortality was 1 per cent and the cardiac mortality was only 0.17 per cent (Mendelson). In a series of 43 cases in which there was cardiac involvement but a spontaneous delivery and 18 cases of caesarian section there was no mortality (Frey and Lard).

If the patient is seen for the first time in the early weeks of pregnancy (the first three lunar months) with signs of decompensation therapeutic abortion is indicated. Peligous principles must be considered; the situation must be explained to the patient and her family and the decision must be made by them. It has also been recommended that the patient be sterilized at the same time if decompensation begins in the first five months of pregnancy. These operations are of course performed after the cardiac status is improved as far as possible by the usual treatment.

If decompensation starts after the fifth month it is advisable to wait for delivery at term and to keep the patient under continuous close observation and treatment. Physical and mental rest and sodium free diet are usually required. Digitalis and mercurial diuretics are not harmful. Lactation is permitted if no congestive failure exists. Often a marked improvement occurs in the last weeks of pregnancy when the load on the heart is reduced and the risks are no greater than with an operative procedure. In the opinion of many obstetricians section is indicated only when there are definite obstetric indications for it. The first stage of delivery is shortened and the use of an analgesic or other low spinal caudal anesthesia is recommended; whereas at full dilation the application of a low forceps shortens the second stage.

While the blood pressure in the healthy woman scarcely changes during pregnancy, patients with essential hypertension show an increase of pressure. There is also evidence of impairment of kidney function. Persistent increase of blood pressure to values over 200 mm Hg from the beginning are indications for an interruption of pregnancy. For some a diastolic blood pressure over 100 mm Hg is an indication for interruption of an early pregnancy. Infant mortality is high in these cases. The danger of toxemia of pregnancy is great with papilledema, albuminuria and headache. According to Browne and Dodd a blood pressure of 150/100 mm Hg at the beginning of pregnancy gives little likelihood of a successful pregnancy; for birth of a viable child the chances are no better than 32 per cent. Gain in weight, albuminuria, edema and increase of blood pressure are early signs of toxemia, usually occurring after the twenty-fourth week of pregnancy. Patients with essential hypertension before pregnancy are often worse off after pregnancy.

According to others, patients with moderate hypertension and even chronic nephritis tolerate pregnancy well when azotemia is absent. Myocardial infarction is compatible with a normal course of the pregnancy provided it does not occur at the end of the term.

Patients with a noncyanotic congenital heart lesion seem to tolerate pregnancy relatively well. In patients with patent septa or a patent ductus arteriosus as well as pulmonary stenosis pregnancy is as a rule tolerated well. In patients with mitral stenosis hemoptysis or pulmonary edema may occur only during pregnancy and disappear completely afterward.

Patients with atrial septal defects usually stand pregnancy very well. In patients with aortic coarctation the danger of aortic dissection is great.



A marked bradycardia often appears normally for the first few days following delivery

If paroxysmal tachycardia appears therapy with quinidine and procaine amide is permissible in spite of the pregnancy

## Bibliography

- Abramson J and Tenney B Cardiac disease and pregnancy *New England J Med* 263 270 1955
- Andros G J Blood pressure in normal pregnancy *Am J Obst & Gynec* 50 300 1945
- Boyer A H and Nadas A S The ultimate effect of pregnancy on rheumatic heart disease *Ann Int Med* 45 130 1954
- Brown E Sampson J J Wheeler E O Gundelfinger B F and Giansirama J E Physiologic changes in the circulation during and after obstetric labor *Am Heart J* 34 311 1947
- Browne F J and Dodds G H Pregnancy in the patient with chronic hypertension *J Obst & Gynec* 39 1 1942
- Bunim J J and Appel S B A principle for determining prognosis of pregnancy in rheumatic heart disease *JAMA* 142 90 1950
- and Ribricius J The determination of the prognosis of pregnancy in rheumatic heart disease *Am Heart J* 35 282 1948
- Burwell C S The placenta as a modified arteriovenous fistula considered in relation to the circulatory adjustments to pregnancy *Am J M Sc* 195 1 1938
- The management of heart disease in pregnant women *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 95 130 1954
- Cohen M E and Thomson K J Studies on the circulation in pregnancy *JAMA* 112 1556 1939
- Correll H L and Rosenbaum F F Multiple pregnancies in patients with rheumatic or congenital heart disease *Am Heart J* 39 283 1950
- Corwin J Herrick W W Valentine M and Wilson J W Pregnancy and heart disease a statistical report and summary of 100 cases *Am J Obst & Gynec* 13 617 1927
- Donovan H C E Heart disease complicating pregnancy *Brit M J* 1 104 1936
- Frey E and Lardi F Herzfehler und Schwangerschaft und die abdominale Schnittentbindung in Lokalanästhesie bei Herzfehler *Ztschr f Geburts u Gynak* 93 1 1948
- Frey W Herz und Schwangerschaft Leipzig G Thieme 1923
- Gilchrist A R and Murray Lyon R M Does pregnancy hasten the fatal termination in rheumatic heart disease? *Edinburgh M J* 40 587 1933
- Gordon C A Heart disease as a cause for maternal death *Am J Obst & Gynec* 69 101 1955
- Gorenberg H and McCleary J Rheumatic heart disease in pregnancy *Am J Obst & Gynec* 41 44 1941
- Hamilton H I Rheumatic heart disease in pregnancy *New England M Cent* 8 96 1946
- Cardiovascular problems in pregnancy *Circulation* 9 972 1954
- and Thomson K J The Heart in Pregnancy and the Childbearing Age Boston Little Brown 1941
- Henderson D N The obstetric management of pregnancy complicated by heart disease *Am J Obst & Gynec* 53 494 1947
- Hueber E F and Thaler H Herz und Schwangerschaft Wien Klin Wchnschr 67 339 1955

- Hay J and Hunt E Record of fifty consecutive cases of pregnancy and parturition in patients with crippled hearts *Lancet* 1 271 1928
- Jensen J The Heart in Pregnancy St Louis Mosby 1938
- Jones A M Heart Disease in Pregnancy New York Grune & Stratton 1951
- Kellogg F S Chronic valvular heart disease in pregnancy and labor Boston W & S J 17 398 1917
- Landt H and Benjamin J F Cardiodynamic and electrocardiographic changes in normal pregnancy *Am Heart J* 1 597 1936
- Laake H Heart disease and pregnancy *Acta med Scandinav* 146 146 1954
- Mackenzie J Heart Disease and Pregnancy London Oxford Medical Publications 1192
- Mendelson C L The management of delivery in pregnancy complicated by serious rheumatic heart disease *Am J Obst & Gynec* 48 329 1944
- Moia B Cardiopatías y embarazo estudio clínico *Rev argent de cardiol* 11 127 1944
- Pardee H E Cardiac conditions indicating therapeutic abortions *J.A.M.A.* 103 1899 1934
- Sharkey J A and Hays C B The effect of essential hypertension in pregnancy *Am J Obst & Gynec* 58 6 2 1946
- Sodeman W A Cardiac changes in pregnancy unrelated to the usual etiological types of heart disease *Am Heart J* 19 385 1940
- Tandler J Anatomie des Herzens Jena G Fischer 1913
- Thomson K J Hirshheimer A Gibson J G II and Evans W A Jr Studies on the circulation in pregnancy III Blood volume changes in normal pregnant women *Am J Obst & Gynec* 36 48 1938

## Chapter 28

# Cardiac Disease and Surgery

PATIENTS AS A RULE tolerate major surgical procedures strikingly well despite the presence of advanced cardiac alterations. This is particularly true if congestive heart failure is absent. Anxiety about patients in this group often turns out to be unjustified.

Since there are dangers inherent in every operation and the hazards of pulmonary embolism in particular are greater in patients with a disturbed circulatory system, operations should be restricted to those absolutely indicated. If for example roentgen therapy promises the same success one should not operate. A repair of a hernia or the replacement of a prolapsed uterus may be omitted and conservative treatment advocated.

While the operative mortality was 1.9 per cent in patients without heart disease who underwent a prostatectomy, it was three times as great in cardiac patients (Iversen et al). Others found that in coronary sclerosis the mortality increased four times. In such patients it has been recommended that nitroglycerin tablets be inserted sublingually several times during the operation (Morrison).

In 257 patients whose ages varied from 35 to 83, 12.4 per cent of whom had survived a previous coronary thrombosis, the postoperative mortality from cardiac accidents was 4.3 per cent (11 cases). Among the 11 mortalities coronary thrombosis occurred postoperatively in seven (Bramm and Williams). Lisen and Proger found in 517 patients with coronary disease a postoperative mortality from all causes of 2.9 per cent. The mortality was only 2 per cent in 4154 patients without clinical evidence of heart disease. Two of 11 patients with acute myocardial infarction who needed emergency operations died. In such case the mortality seems to be definitely higher.

With skillful operation and expert anesthesia cardiac strain is not increased (Marvin). Selection of the wrong anesthetic, anoxia or otherwise badly conducted anesthesia, poor postoperative management as exemplified by the intravenous administration of excessive amounts of fluid may do great harm.

In coronary sclerosis the danger of coronary thrombosis is great and the danger is augmented by fall of blood pressure or shock. Shock irrespective of its origin is often responsible for multiple arterial occlusions in elderly patients with coronary sclerosis. According to some statistics the mortality in patients with healed myocardial infarction is higher than in other cardiacs (Butler et al). On the other hand experience shows that such patients tolerated thyroidectomy astonishingly well when this operation was frequently performed in cardiac

patients. The same situation prevails in patients requiring a prostatectomy. The heart is strained by hemorrhage, large intravenous infusions, hypoxia and tachycardia. Deliberate lowering of blood pressure by the anesthetist should be avoided.

Patients with valvular lesions tolerate surgery very well. Atrial fibrillation is no contraindication, especially when it accompanies a valvular lesion and not coronary sclerosis. Digitalization is important in these patients.

Myocardial lesions undoubtedly increase the danger but fortunately primary myocardial lesions are uncommon.

The selection of the correct anesthetic is very important. Inhalation anesthesia with ether seems most preferable. Ether does not damage the heart muscle and has no appreciable influence on blood pressure. It practically never causes arrhythmias. It paralyzes the peripheral vagus apparatus and thus diminishes the danger of asystole. Oxygen should be admixed in ample amounts. It is well, however, to avoid ether if pulmonary complications are present.

Ethylene and nitrous oxide are permissible if care is taken to supply sufficient oxygen. Ethyl chloride is however known to provoke ventricular fibrillation. Cyclopropane anesthesia, otherwise very satisfactory, should be used in cardiac patients only with great caution since the heart dilates markedly during its administration (Brace et al). Cyclopropane also causes multiple extrasystoles although they are less dangerous than those encountered in chloroform anesthesia. While some investigators have noted extrasystolic arrhythmias and tachycardias in 10 per cent of anesthetics with cyclopropane, ventricular fibrillation is rare. Opinions about the origin of these arrhythmias vary and no explanation is completely satisfactory.

Spinal anesthesia invites the danger of a sudden fall of blood pressure particularly in hypertensive patients. The anesthetist must do everything to prevent hypoxia and a fall of blood pressure and must avoid the administration of adrenalin or pituitary extracts.

Loss of electrolytes (potassium) is an important reason for post-operative heart failure.

Intravenous administration of barbiturates is to be avoided in patients with a damaged or overdistended heart muscle. Barbiturates serve in the animal experiment as preferred compounds for inducing myocardial damage.

Because of the presence of hypoxia, nitrous oxide should be avoided in patients with coronary disease.

Consideration should be given to the fact that excessively rapid absorption of local anesthetics may be dangerous for the heart. The admixture of epinephrine to prevent rapid absorption should be avoided in patients with organic heart disease. It may be replaced by preparations of the pituitary.

The question of cardiac preparation preliminary to operation has been widely discussed. Water retention should be abolished as much as possible and anemia corrected. Positive evidence of the advantage of a prophylactic digitalization is not available and preparation of the patient by this method has been abandoned. If a patient requires an emergency operation and shows evidence of

decompensation or a very fast ventricular rate with atrial fibrillation much can be accomplished with an injection of strophanthin or one of the pure glycosides (digoxin cedilanid) while preparations for the operation are completed. Emergency operations must be performed regardless of the cardiac status of the patient.

Cardiac arrest (via reflexes) is an operative complication which is reported more frequently at present. Immediate opening of the chest (fourth intercostal space) and cardiac massage are necessary within three minutes (p. 581). External electrical stimulation of the heart may suffice.

At present, surgeons are generally inclined to favor early postoperative ambulation. We agree with this measure but believe it should be done with care since newly formed thrombi are easily dislodged. Blodgett and Beattie found the incidence of deep vein thrombosis even somewhat higher in patients who were made active at an early stage.

## Bibliography

- Bolinkoff S. The choice of anesthesia in cardiac disease. *Anesthesiology* 7: 268, 1946.
- Black H. and Harken D. E. Safe conduct of the patient through cardiac surgery. *New England J. Med.* 251: 45, 1954.
- Blodgett J. B. and Beattie E. J. Early post operative rising. *Surg. Gynec. & Obst.* 82: 485, 1946.
- Brace D. E., Scherf D. and Spire L. J. The effect of cyclopropane on the blood pressure, stroke volume and heart size of the dog. *Anesthesiology* 2: 261, 1941.
- Brumm H. J. and Willis F. A. The surgical risk in patients with coronary disease. *J. A. M. A.* 112: 2377, 1939.
- Butler M., Feeney N. and Levine S. A. The patient with heart disease as a surgical risk. *J. A. M. A.* 95: 85, 1930.
- Dripps R. D. and Vandam L. D. The anesthetic management of patients with heart disease. *Circulation* 5: 927, 1952.
- Frustene A. C. The risk of anesthesia and surgical operation in patients with heart disease. *Cleveland Clin. Quart.* 13: 189, 1946.
- Ftson M. and Proger S. Operative risk in patients with coronary heart disease. *J. A. M. A.* 159: 845, 1955.
- Finkbeiner J. A., Wróblewski F. and Ladue J. S. Major surgery in patients with chronic auricular fibrillation. *New York State J. Med.* 54: 1175, 1954.
- Gibbon J. H. Jr. and Stayman J. W. Jr. The physiology of cardiac surgery. *S. Clin. North Amer.* 29: 1731, 1949.
- Iverson M., Jorgensen S. and Polvsen O. Prostatectomy in patients with heart disease. *J. Urol.* 73: 1075, 1955.
- Kock W. The value of preoperative heart examination. *Acta chirurg. Scandinav.* 96: 199, 1947.
- Marvin H. M. The heart during anesthesia and operative procedures. *New England J. Med.* 199: 547, 1928.
- Morrison D. R. The risk of surgery in heart disease. *Surgery* 23: 561, 1948.
- Scherf D. Evaluation of cardiac patients for surgery. *New York State J. Med.* 46: 1915, 1946.
- Smith R. M. Circulatory factors affecting anesthesia in surgery for congenital heart disease. *Anesthesiology* 13: 38, 1952.
- Volpitto P. P. and Brown J. M. Choice of anesthesia for patients with pulmonary emphysema. *J. A. M. A.* 142: 897, 1950.
- Wasmuth C. F. Anesthesia with mitral commissurotomy. *Cleveland Clin. Quart.* 20: 116, 1953.

## Chapter 29

# Disturbances of Cardiac Rhythm

### CLINICAL ASPECTS OF EXTRASYSTOLES

THE DISTURBANCE OF CARDIAC RHYTHM caused by extrasystoles (premature beats) has been known ever since the human pulse was felt. Until the end of the last century, however, the chief cause of the intermittent pulse was unrecognized despite the fact that after the work of Marey extrasystoles were induced very often experimentally to aid in the study of fundamental questions of cardiac physiology. After the similarity between premature contractions caused in animals by mechanical or electrical stimuli and those appearing in man was recognized by Wenckebach and Cushny, this disturbance was found to be the most common cause of cardiac irregularity.

*Definition* Extrasystoles are premature contractions interrupting cardiac rhythm caused by the preceding beat; they are coupled to this beat by an interval which is usually short and constant for a given case. By this definition premature beats caused by other mechanisms (parasyctole or interference dissociation) are excluded.

*Origin and Appearance* While they may originate in any part of the heart, two main groups are distinguished: atrial and ventricular extrasystoles. In rare cases extrasystoles originate in the sinus or in the atrioventricular node. For practical clinical purposes it is immaterial from what part of the atrium or ventricle the extrasystole emerges.

Extrasystoles may appear singly with a long chain of normal beats between them, or they may occur frequently after every few beats or even after every sinus beat. In the last case we speak of bigeminal rhythm; if two extrasystoles follow each normal beat regularly a trigeminal rhythm exists. Many authors incorrectly call the appearance of one extrasystole after two normal beats a trigemismus.

All variations and combinations occur. If several extrasystoles follow each other we speak of groups of extrasystoles; if the chain is longer we may call it a short paroxysmal tachycardia.

*Electrocardiogram* Figure 92 shows three premature atrial contractions which interrupt a regular sinus rhythm. They are represented in the electrocardiogram by premature and slightly different looking P waves; the atrial extrasystoles are conducted normally to the ventricle.

A ventricular bigeminal rhythm is present in figure 93. This tracing was obtained from a 50 year old man who had no evidence of cardiac disease. Each normal beat is followed by a ventricular extrasystole.

In figure 94 series of ventricular extrasystoles are visible. These extrasystoles appeared in a case of rheumatic fever. The atrioventricular conduction time in this case is prolonged to 0.26 second.



FIG. 92 Three atrial extrasystoles

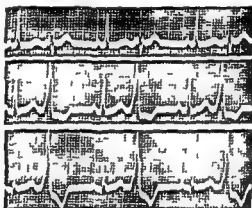


FIG. 93 Ventricular extrasystoles in the form of a bigeminal rhythm

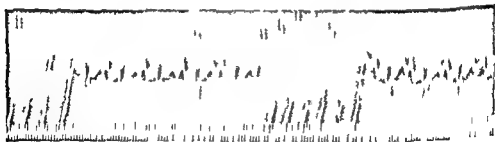


FIG. 94 Prolonged atrioventricular conduction time and a series of ventricular extrasystoles

**Cardiodynamics** Every extrasystole causes a considerable disturbance in cardiodynamics. An extrasystole may occur so early in diastole that ventricular filling is negligible. The more prematurely an extrasystole appears, the smaller is the stroke volume of the extrasystolic contraction and the smaller will be the pulse caused by it. If extrasystoles are very premature, no pulse is palpable in the peripheral arteries and the contraction is abortive. Such an extrasystole advances

little or no blood into the arterial system at the same time during the extrasystolic contraction the inflow of blood from the atria into the ventricle is impeded and venous stasis develops. Since the postextrasystolic pause is as a rule much longer than the normal cardiac pause of the individual the stroke volume of the first normal beat following the extrasystole is correspondingly larger and the associated pulse stronger. Whereas an extrasystole propels too little blood into the arterial system the situation is balanced by the first normal beat after the

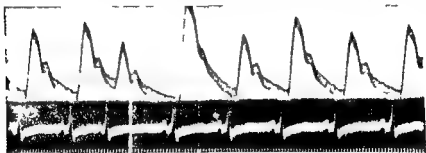


FIG 90 Pulse changes typical of extrasystoles (see text)

extrasystole and circulatory disturbance is prevented. The minute volume remains normal even if some of the systoles (extrasystoles) eject little blood into the arteries. Thus a patient may have many extrasystoles per minute for a lifetime and still not suffer from any disturbance of the circulation.

In figure 95 the pulse tracing and the electrocardiogram of a patient with atrial extrasystoles are reproduced. An atrial extrasystole appears after the second normal beat. The extrasystole causes a premature smaller pulse wave. Due to the postextrasystolic pause the first postextrasystolic pulse wave is much larger. An alternating pulse is visible for the first few postextrasystolic beats.

*Symptoms.* Most extrasystoles provoke no sensation. Patients are frequently encountered in whom multiple extrasystoles or bigeminal rhythm have persisted for months or years without attracting attention or causing any symptoms. In other instances the attention of the patient is directed to the disturbance accidentally by the awareness of an irregular cardiac rhythm in the stillness of the night when one ear rests upon the pillow through the palpation of the pulse or through the remark of a physician. Under these circumstances the patient notices the irregularity but otherwise he does not feel it.

At times extrasystoles create considerable annoyance. The symptoms vary. Purely the extracontraction itself is felt as an unpleasant impact. Patients often give very vivid descriptions of their sensations so that the diagnosis can be made on the basis of the history. Some report a sensation like a sudden blow others a brief awareness of some event in the cardiac area which is described differently according to imagination and education. It is a sudden jumping kicking or a sudden blow or somersault. Sometimes it is referred to as a skipping of the





FIG 96



FIG 97 →

FIG 96 Multiform ventricular extrasystoles

FIG 97 Series of multiform extrasystoles in a patient with coronary sclerosis. Death occurred suddenly one day after this tracing had been taken. This type of extrasystoles not rarely precedes ventricular fibrillation.

heart other times a sudden sharp painful sensation is felt. In neurotic patients who observe the heart and the sensations in the cardiac area carefully a pain may be felt with every extrasystole which makes the whole body twist as if the patient had touched a live wire. Slight faintness may also appear. Frequently the pauses after the extrasystole are perceived unpleasantly; the patient has the sensation that his heart suddenly stood still. He anxiously waits to see 'whether it will begin to beat again.' This sensation is interesting in view of the shortness of the postextrasystolic pause. Most often however the normal beat after the extrasystole is felt as a strong contraction and produces the sensation described above. This is natural since the first normal beat after the extrasystole expels a very large stroke volume. In aortic regurgitation with a large left ventricle and a larger stroke volume even with regular cardiac action the postextrasystolic beat is particularly unpleasant.

Of interest is the dry short cough caused by an autonomic reflex occurring in some persons with every extrasystole.

**Signs.** If the existing rhythm is interrupted by premature beats which are followed by a long pause the correct diagnosis can be made in most cases without an electrocardiogram. The earlier the extrasystole occurs and the more incomplete the filling of the ventricles the louder is the first heart sound particularly over the apex. Owing to the small stroke volume the second heart sound is soft. When extrasystoles occur very early the second heart sound may be absent since the semilunar valves are not opened by the abortive systole.

Not rarely extrasystoles disappear at the time of the examination. They may vanish with any measure which increases the heart rate and consequently shortens the length of diastole. Therefore exertion and excitement

usually abolish extrasystoles. Often they appear however a short time after exertion when the initial tachycardia subsides. Sometimes they are elicited by carotid pressure or after inhalation of amyl nitrite (Scherf).

*Differential Diagnosis* In a majority of cases the occurrence of a premature contraction disturbing the existing rhythm with a succeeding long pause permits the diagnosis without graphic registration. Under certain conditions however difficulties arise.

If extrasystoles are multiple and occur irregularly they may be confused with atrial fibrillation. The differentiation will be discussed later.

In patients with a continuous bigeminal rhythm in which the first sound of the extra contraction alone is heard gallop rhythm is occasionally diagnosed because a third heart sound is heard shortly after the two normal sounds. Since extrasystoles usually disappear on acceleration of the heart any slight exertion — sitting up and lying down a few times — will abolish the extrasystoles. This exercise will usually accentuate the gallop rhythm.

*Occurrence* Extrasystoles may appear at any age. Repeatedly they have been detected during auscultation of the fetal heart sounds (Antoine). Most physicians believe that there is rarely a healthy individual who has never exhibited an extrasystole. They come and go without detectable reason and are in most cases devoid of any importance.

In other instances definite reasons for their occurrence can be found. In one individual they appear with meteorism or constipation in another with deep breathing. In one patient they are found only on deep inspiration in another only with deep expiration. They may occur only before menstruation and are a common event during pregnancy. For the most part they are present only at rest but in rare instances they appear during or immediately after exertion.

Certain drugs and certain substances like caffeine and nicotine may cause them. The extrasystoles due to drinking strong coffee and after smoking have been known for many years and were discussed even at the time when one spoke only of an intermittent pulse. Chloroform and cyclopropane anesthesia often elicit extrasystoles. Premature contractions are also not rare following an injection of adrenalin and allied substances. One of the more important types of clinical extrasystoles is the variety that appears during treatment with digitalis.

Extrasystoles are occasionally caused by reflexes. That premature contractions may be elicited by carotid pressure or on deep breathing was mentioned above. The literature on extrasystoles caused by mechanical or chemical irritation of the respiratory tract or from the digestive tract is large. Extrasystoles appear on distention of the stomach (Pribram and Mayer) on the insertion of a tracheal tube during cyclopropane anesthesia (Reid and Brace) in patients with gall bladder disease and in those with a hiatus hernia (Kaestner). Certain hypothalamic centers have been shown to be an important link in these reflexes (Allen, Brown et al.).

If extrasystoles appear during diphtheria, coronary disease, pneumonia or scarlet fever they often indicate a lesion of the myocardium and have diagnostic

importance Extrasystoles due to an organic heart disease often but not invariably are recognized electrocardiographically by the fact that they seem to arise from multiple foci

Extrasystoles have been described in allergic reactions (Harkavy)

Extrasystoles may persist for many years in the same individual Walsh observed them on himself for 40 years

*Mechanism* The finer mechanism of origin of extrasystoles is still unknown in spite of the ease with which they can be elicited by mechanical electrical or chemical stimuli

Extrasystoles are caused by different disturbances In rare cases a circus movement or re entry mechanism is active In a majority of cases however firing of an impulse in an abnormal focus initiated by the beat preceding the extrasystole takes place (Scherf and Schott)

*Clinical Importance* While extrasystoles arise from an abnormal type of stimulus formation it is incorrect to assume the presence of cardiac disease simply because extrasystoles exist There are many arguments to support the assumption that the abnormal stimulus formation takes place in one fiber a center It is easy to conceive that the structure of the cell in one of the innumerable muscle fibers becomes altered leading to an abnormal depolarization of this cell and to a premature contraction Indeed one may assume that frequently in other organs of the body a single cell may be abnormal in a similar way without the organ to which it belongs being diseased But such an abnormality is rarely recognizable in other organs In the heart however if a stimulus formed by an abnormal center is above threshold it may excite first the neighboring cells and then the entire heart thereby being easily detected

If extrasystoles occur the only deduction permissible at first is the presence of a disturbance in a restricted area This disturbance is probably limited to a single cell If the remainder of the heart shows nothing abnormal — no anginal pain or infectious disease — no condition in which cardiac damage is suspected — then the extrasystoles are usually devoid of any significance In the appraisal of the case it is immaterial whether few or many extrasystoles are present

Since extrasystoles may constitute even an early sign of a pathologic process in the myocardium every patient in whom premature contractions are found deserves a careful examination If no abnormalities are discovered he should be observed over a period of time In some cases only prolonged observation permits one to decide whether a purely local and negligible alteration exists or whether the extrasystoles indicate the development of a cardiac disease which otherwise would have escaped detection

If the physician is consulted by a patient who reports that extrasystoles have been present for years the negative result of even a single thorough examination will be sufficient to show that a harmless disturbance exists in a person with a healthy heart

Most extrasystoles have no prognostic significance for prognosis depends upon the cardiac status

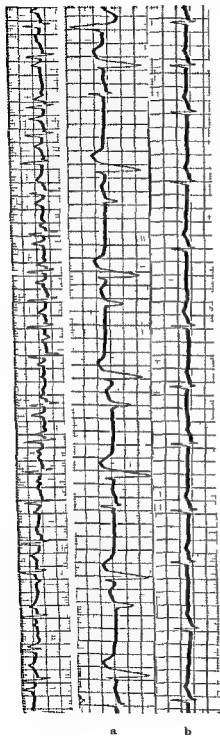


FIG 98

FIG 99

Multifocal ventricular extrasystoles all ways indicate myocardial damage and are therefore a finding of importance (figures 96 and 97)

Figure 96 shows an instance of multifocal extrasystoles in lead II. This tracing was taken from a 61 year old man with coronary sclerosis and angina pectoris. The atrioventricular conduction time is prolonged to 0.26 second. The width of the QRS complex is 0.12 second and the T waves are inverted. Each sinus beat is followed by a ventricular extrasystole but their form continually varies. The extrasystoles seen in healthy people always have the same form even if they persist for years.

In an overwhelming number of cases, unifocal extrasystoles are harmless but they may also accompany myocardial disease. In conditions in which atrial fibrillation is common such as mitral stenosis, hyperthyroidism and coronary sclerosis, atrial extrasystoles may precede the onset of fibrillation for some time.

A typical disturbance appearing in any age but found especially often in elderly patients is the arrhythmia shown in figure 98. Atrial extrasystoles originating in many foci and shifting of the pacemaker with varying forms of T waves are seen. This arrhythmia often precedes atrial fibrillation.

**Treatment** If an individual does not feel the extrasystoles and if examination as well as observation reveals a healthy heart, it is a serious mistake to draw the attention of the

FIG 98 Shifting pacemaker and multifocal atrial extrasystoles

FIG 99 Multifocal ventricular extrasystoles partly bound to ectopic atrioventricular beats in a 67 year old patient under treatment with digitalis (a) Following the administration of 5 grams of potassium chloride the extrasystoles disappeared (b)

patient to the cardiac irregularity or to treat it. The layman is readily inclined to consider any irregularity of the ever constant rhythm of the heart as a serious disease.

If a healthy individual consults the physician because he feels the extra systoles and the examination reveals no cardiac disease, the harmlessness of the disturbance should be explained to the patient and an endeavor made to convince him that he may lead a completely normal life. It is well to point out that this disturbance occurs chiefly at rest while physical exertion which precipitates symptoms in organic heart disease causes no discomfort and is a matter of fact usually abolishes the extrasystoles.

If the physician omits explanations or if he lacks the necessary knowledge and authority for this purpose indeed if he speaks of a mild heart muscle irritation and suggests restriction in some activities the patient simply sees his own conception of an organic heart ailment thoroughly confirmed. He observes himself more carefully and with greater anxiety counts the number of premature contractions per minute observing all the details of the sensations caused by them. The anxiety neurosis which soon develops from a harmless phenomenon can be treated only with difficulty and patience. If the physician succeeds in convincing the patient that the extrasystoles are meaningless they are usually soon disregarded. This is accomplished more readily if the physician insists authoritatively that the patient is a healthy person and should lead the life of a normal individual. Nothing will convince the patient so readily of the innocence of his disturbance as lack of prohibitions and restrictions. Furthermore the patient should be instructed not to watch the rate or rhythm of his pulse.

The result of this therapy depends upon whether or not the patient can be convinced that the extrasystoles are meaningless and that they can be dismissed as unimportant.

If they occur in organic heart disease the extrasystoles per se rarely require drug therapy. Exceptions are extrasystoles in coronary thrombosis which may be precursors of ventricular fibrillation and the previously mentioned extrasystoles in diseases that are often accompanied by atrial fibrillation.

If definite factors are found to release extrasystoles an attempt should be made to eliminate them. Often the correction of marked meteorism, a high diaphragm, a severe constipation and gall bladder disease or cessation of smoking will permanently abolish the extrasystoles.

Treatment with drugs is not necessary in most cases. Such therapy affords relief only for the duration of administration. As soon as the patient discontinues treatment the extrasystoles recur and the patient becomes more upset than before.

In addition to the conditions mentioned earlier the administration of drugs is indicated when the extrasystoles multiply in a threatening manner or evoke so many unpleasant complaints that it seems advisable to remove them at least temporarily in order to convince the patient that palliative treatment and control of his condition is possible. It is however advisable to inform the patient before instituting treatment that extrasystoles will probably recur when the administration of the remedy is stopped.

Since Wenckebach's recommendation quinine and its much stronger isomer quinidine (Frey) are regarded as the most effective remedies for abolishing extrasystoles because they diminish the irritability of the heart and depress stimulus formation and conductivity. If suitable doses of these drugs are administered extrasystoles are abolished in most instances.

Since quinidine is rapidly eliminated from the body it is advisable to give small doses frequently. As with all forms of cardiac therapy the opportunity to watch the success of the treatment permits adjustment of the therapy to the needs of the patients. A capsule or tablet containing 0.2 Gm. of quinidine sulfate is prescribed and the patient is advised to take it four or five times a day. The first dose should be given as early as possible in the morning; the last is given late in the evening. If these doses do not suffice the single doses are increased until the extrasystoles disappear.

A second remedy that removes extrasystoles regularly is digitalis. It may seem strange that a drug which frequently produces extrasystoles should also be employed to abolish them. It happens however that extrasystoles appear during digitalis therapy only under specific conditions (see digitalis therapy). As a matter of fact practically every substance which causes extrasystoles in certain doses may abolish them in others. This is true for example with potassium, magnesium, procaine and even quinidine. The extrasystoles which are not the consequence of digitalis disappear during digitalis treatment. Often small doses such as 0.2 Gm. daily for four or five days suffice for this purpose. One disadvantage of this procedure is that many patients, knowing that digitalis is given for heart disease, become frightened when this remedy is mentioned. It is however rarely necessary to prescribe digitalis to abolish extrasystoles. A rare indication is multiple extrasystoles requiring drug treatment and at the same time the presence of idiosyncrasy of the patient to quinidine.

In recent years procaine amide (Pronestyl) has been introduced into the therapy of cardiac arrhythmias. It can be given orally and is not rapidly destroyed by enzymes as is procaine. The dose is 0.50—0.75 Gm. three or four times daily. Quinidine should remain the drug of choice. Pronestyl more useful in ventricular than atrial extrasystoles is given when hypersensitivity prevents administration of quinidine. The doses of Pronestyl required for the treatment of extrasystoles and paroxysmal tachycardia are three times as large as those of quinidine (Schaffer). The side effects of both compounds are similar.

Often it is possible to abolish extrasystoles particularly those due to digitalis with potassium salts given orally (figure 99). This treatment has considerable interest and will be discussed in the chapter on paroxysmal tachycardia.

## CLINICAL ASPECTS OF ATRIAL FIBRILLATION AND ATRIAL FLUTTER

### *Atrial Fibrillation*

Atrial fibrillation was known for a long time to those who performed animal experiments. Formerly the condition was called *arrhythmia perpetua* before it

was realized that the irregularity may disappear spontaneously or be abolished by treatment. Total disorder of the cardiac rhythm in clinical atrial fibrillation was recognized as *delirium cordis* by physicians of the 1st century. The identity of both was suggested by Cushny and Edmunds but it was not proved until the introduction of electrocardiographs in institutions (Rothberger and Winterberg as well as Lewis).

**Incidence.** Atrial fibrillation is present in approximately 50 per cent of patients who seek hospitalization because of cardiac diseases. It is very common in rheumatic mitral lesions, in hyperthyroidism and in coronary sclerosis. But fibrillation may also occur in other valvular diseases as well as in myocardial lesions and hypertension. It is not an unusual complication of diseases frequently accompanied by myocarditis such as pneumonia and typhoid fever but it is rather rare in patients with syphilitic aortitis and syphilitic aortic regurgitation. Although uncommon in cor pulmonale and bacterial endocarditis, every cardiologist has observed it in these conditions.

Atrial fibrillation has been observed in an infant three months old (Cold bloom and Segall). It is occasionally seen in otherwise apparently healthy persons after violent exercise.

Occasionally atrial fibrillation is discovered in a patient whose heart has been completely normal through decades of careful observation. In some of these patients some latent cardiac pathology, myocarditis accompanying streptococcal infection for instance, might have existed and have escaped detection while the fibrillation persisted.

**Electrocardiogram.** Figure 100 shows a typical instance of atrial fibrillation in the 3 standard leads. The tracing was obtained from a 61 year old man with coronary sclerosis. The irregularity of the ventricular activity is clearly visible. Characteristic however are the irregularly formed fibrillation waves (F waves) which replace the normal P waves.

**Dynamics.** Patients with atrial fibrillation in whom less than 80 atrial stimuli per minute reach the ventricles due to a high vagal tonus or slow conductivity of the specific tissue feel normal. If the heart of these patients is otherwise normal the fibrillation is asymptomatic and is discovered only by chance. Occasionally one even sees patients with organic heart disease — for instance a slight rheumatic mitral stenosis — who alternate between fibrillation and sinus rhythm without being aware of the difference.

Unfortunately these cases represent the exception. As a rule the conduction system transmits more than 80 stimuli per minute to the ventricles and with faster rates symptoms increase. The inadequate output and the fall of the minute volume associated with it lead to a feeling of weakness and faintness. Dyspnea on exertion may appear but often is not prominent since the rapid activity of both right and left ventricles leads to venous and hepatic congestion, i. e. to signs of right heart failure and not to pulmonary congestion. In fact the appearance of right ventricular failure often coincides with the disappearance of any existing pulmonary congestion.

The engorgement of the neck veins causes a sensation of fullness and constriction. The enlargement of the liver leads to nausea as an early symptom and later to vomiting and right hypochondrial pain.

The tachycardia may cause anginal pain especially if the patient has coronary sclerosis. It may also cause fainting and other cerebral phenomena particularly in patients with cerebral vascular sclerosis. Too rapid ventricular action in patients with atrial fibrillation may lead to Stokes Adams attacks and even to sudden death although the latter event is not unequivocally proved.

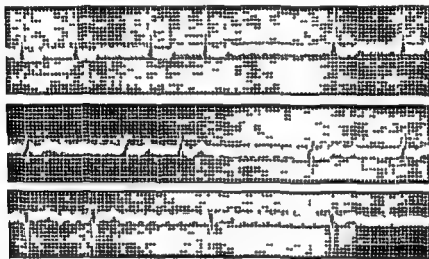


FIG 100 Atrial fibrillation and the effect of digitalis on the RST segments and T waves

*Signs* The complete disorder of the heart rhythm usually permits the diagnosis without difficulty. If the ventricular rate is slow the arrhythmia is not so easily recognized but it becomes more apparent with prolonged auscultation. A slight increase of the heart rate by moderate exertion brings out the arrhythmia more distinctly.

With the appearance of atrial fibrillation and increase of the ventricular rate the blood pressure falls if venous pulsations are visible in the veins of the neck, atrial waves are absent.

Due to the prolonged tachycardia signs of congestive heart failure may appear even if the heart is otherwise healthy. The high ventricular rate impairs cardiac blood supply and therefore leads to dilatation. Relative mitral and tricuspid regurgitation may appear in an otherwise healthy heart if the fast ventricular rate in atrial fibrillation remains uncontrolled for a long time.

*Differential Diagnosis* In most cases it is easy to make the diagnosis without resort to graphic methods. The differentiation between multiple irregularly appearing extrasystoles and atrial fibrillation may be difficult. In these cases



an exercise test or the inhalation of amyl nitrite permits differentiation since extrasystoles usually vanish if tachycardia shortens diastole and the heart rhythm temporarily becomes regular. Under the same conditions the arrhythmia due to fibrillation becomes more obvious since now more stimuli are conducted to the ventricles. With an arrhythmic heart action and a rate exceeding 120 atrial fibrillation is usually present.

Sometimes respiratory arrhythmia is confused with atrial fibrillation particularly if the relation between the respiratory phases and the arrhythmia is somewhat atypical. The disappearance of the arrhythmia when the patient holds his breath leads to the correct diagnosis.

One often hears the remark that the patient fibrillated less today than on previous examinations. This statement is incorrect. The fibrillation in such cases remains unchanged but the ventricular rate is slower and the arrhythmia is less distinct.

*Mechanism.* Attempts to explain the abnormal mechanism causing atrial fibrillation on the basis of pathologic structural changes have been abandoned. While it is true that the condition is common in some cardiac diseases and rare in others and abnormal histologic findings have been repeatedly described there is general agreement that atrial fibrillation is often an abnormal functional disturbance without anatomic alterations.

For many years the opinion prevailed that atrial flutter and fibrillation are caused by a rapid circus movement of a central or mother wave on a closed path.

It is impossible to discuss in this connection the fascinating and ingenious work that has been performed in order to explain this common disturbance. The reader is advised to consult textbooks of electrocardiography or monographs on the subject to obtain such information.

Recent investigations have shown that these arrhythmias can be explained better by a rapid stimulus formation in a center (Scherf et al.) (figure 101). In atrial flutter one center forms the impulses while in fibrillation one or more centers are active (Scherf et al.). There are still authors who maintain that atrial flutter and fibrillation are caused by a circus movement mechanism. In flutter they would have to explain why it persists when the path around the venous cava is interrupted by a broad ligature across the sinus node and the neighboring tissue (Scherf). In flutter and in fibrillation they would have to explain why cooling of the tip of the left atrial appendix on which conotine had been applied in order to elicit them immediately stops these disturbances of rhythm and why they reappear when cooling is discontinued (Scherf et al.).

Atrial (and ventricular) fibrillation may appear in a somewhat damaged heart the metabolic state of which is abnormal if one single stimulus falls in a certain period, the so called critical or vulnerable period early in diastole. At this time an electrical or a light mechanical stimulus — simple touching of the heart for example — or a natural stimulus in the form of a premature extrasystole initiates fibrillation. It was pointed out before that in patients with mitral stenosis or hyperthyroidism atrial extrasystoles often precede atrial fibrillation. It may

be assumed that one of the extra systoles occurred precisely during the vulnerable phase and set up the fibrillation. During this vulnerable phase a few hundredths of a second at the end of systole and at the onset of diastole one stimulus may lead to rapid firing of impulses.

Important for the understanding of atrial fibrillation in mitral stenosis is the experience that under certain conditions stretch exerted on the right atrium may elicit this arrhythmia (figure 102).

*Duration.* Attacks of atrial fibrillation last for variable periods. Often a paroxysm persists only for a few hours while we have seen attacks last no longer than a few seconds. In other cases the disturbance remains for months or years. If attacks of atrial fibrillation recur frequently their management and clinical importance also depend upon the ventricular rate. With higher rates they have the same importance as attacks of paroxysmal tachycardia.

*Treatment.* In slow fibrillation that is atrial fibrillation with a slow ventricular rate no special treatment is required. To be sure such patients tolerate effort somewhat less than people with normal cardiac action because the increase of heart rate on exertion is usually greater. Patients with atrial fibrillation are however often encountered who for many years show no other symptoms or signs.

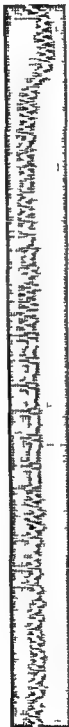


FIG. 101. Dog experiment. Atrial fibrillation was created by the application of crystalline acouline on the appendix of the right atrium. Cooling the area of application stopped the fibrillation and restored sinus rhythm (center of tracing). Interruption of the cooling permitted the atrial fibrillation to reappear. This result cannot be explained by the circus movement theory. It speaks in favor of rapid firing off of impulses in a center.



FIG. 102. Atrial fibrillation had been induced in a dog in the same manner as described in figure 101. It disappeared after 55 minutes. Stretching the wall of the right atrial appendix leads to temporary reappearance of the fibrillation.

The abnormal impulse formation in the atria during atrial fibrillation is of less importance than the ventricular rate — fibrillation is proportionately more harmful as the ventricular rate rises. Therefore treatment is aimed chiefly at reducing the ventricular rate and keeping it low. With some exceptions (febrile disease, rheumatic fever, pulmonary embolism, hyperthyroidism) this is possible with the aid of digitalis. By increasing vagal tonus and thus inhibiting the atrioventricular conduction as well as by a direct action on the muscle fibers diminishing their conductivity, digitalis reduces the ventricular rate. The fibrillation in the atria proceeds uninfluenced. Rarely does it stop during the administration of digitalis. The treatment is easy to carry out and the results are good. Only in the above named conditions is a slow ventricular rate obtained with difficulty.

Since part of the action of digitalis is symptomatic in reducing the ventricular rate, the question is often asked whether it would not be wiser to abolish the fibrillation itself by means of quinidine. As a matter of fact, one can succeed in restoring sinus rhythm in 70 to 80 per cent of the cases by administration of quinidine sulfate. Nevertheless, the treatment is rarely used.

At first some important contraindications must be considered. With long lasting fibrillation mural thrombi may form in the atrial appendices and when powerful atrial contractions are again instituted upon the return of normal rhythm these thrombi may be released and produce fatal embolism. Unfortunately such accidents are not rare and are regrettable since the administration of quinidine to patients with atrial fibrillation who respond well to digitalis is not obligatory but only an elective method of therapy. It has also been pointed out that marked dilatation of the left atrium as it occurs in mitral stenosis represents a contraindication to quinidine treatment because thrombi seem to form more rapidly in overdistended atria. Finally, any evidence of cardiac failure or myocardial damage contraindicates the administration of quinidine since large doses of the drug are often necessary and quinidine is a cardiac depressant. When quinidine is used according to many statistics 2 to 4 per cent of the patients die suddenly from the above mentioned embolisms, ventricular fibrillation and cardiac or respiratory standstill. If anticoagulants are given for 14 days prior to administration of quinidine the formation of new atrial thrombi is prevented and the danger of systemic embolism is diminished.

Moreover experience shows that the normal rhythm often does not persist after quinidine succeeds in restoring it. Sooner or later the fibrillation reappears particularly in the three conditions with which it is most frequently associated, rheumatic mitral stenosis, hyperthyroidism and coronary sclerosis. Thus the patient is exposed to the danger by quinidine therapy and shortly after treatment ends he fibrillates again. Furthermore such patients feel just as well after successful slowing of the ventricular rate with digitalis as they would if sinus rhythm were present; they fail to note any improvement when the atrial fibrillation is removed and often do not enjoy any benefit. In some cases of mitral stenosis the restoration of atrial activity will improve compensation. In many

other cases the dilated atria do not contract even when sinus rhythm is present these patients derive no benefit from quinidine therapy In mitral stenosis a long diastole is necessary in order to permit adequate filling of the left ventricle Marked slowing of the heart is often impossible with digitalis as long as sinus rhythm exists but is easily accomplished when atrial fibrillation appears Therefore patients with mitral stenosis often feel better when fibrillation replaces sinus rhythm The same holds for patients with attacks of paroxysmal atrial fibrillation which can be controlled by digitalis It is also of interest that subacute bacterial endocarditis occurs only rarely with atrial fibrillation It is therefore clear that one should seriously consider whether or not defibrillation with quinidine would be of advantage for a given patient

It is an old clinical rule not easily explained that pulmonary edema in mitral stenosis and angina on effort in coronary stenosis are rarely encountered after the onset of atrial fibrillation

Thus it happens that even in an active service of a large hospital quinidine is rarely used The presence of indications rather than the absence of contra-indications should be the determining factor Quinidine should be given when subtotal thyroidectomy has been performed for hyperthyroidism and when all the symptoms of this condition have vanished with the exception of atrial fibrillation Or it should be used in patients who develop fibrillation during a pneumonia or an infectious disease when the fibrillation persists even though they are otherwise healthy Under these circumstances there is reason to hope that the patient will become entirely well after the fibrillation is abolished and the treatment may be justified

In recent years an attempt has been made to revive quinidine therapy of atrial fibrillation as a routine measure The arguments for this procedure are not convincing and we see no reason to change our attitude

In cases in which defibrillation is to be attempted before quinidine treatment is started the patient should be digitalized until the ventricular rate falls to about 80 per minute As soon as this is accomplished a trial dose of 0.2 Gm. of quinidine is given orally to test for sensitivity This must be done because abnormal reactions to quinidine in the form of skin rashes, diarrhea and respiratory disturbances are common and unpleasant phenomena Death due to hyper sensitivity has been observed after this one dose (Lowe) Kalmansohn and Sampson observed transient ventricular fibrillation following doses of 0.2 Gm. of quinidine in two patients In rare cases atrial fibrillation disappears even with this first dose If no untoward symptoms are present on the next day treatment is instituted according to the following plan

Day	Gm. Quinidine Sulfate
1	3 × 0.20
2	4 × 0.20
3	5 × 0.20
4	6 × 0.20 (or 3 × 0.4 Gm.)
5	7 × 0.20
6	8 × 0.20
7	9 × 0.20

Naturally the larger doses are prescribed only if the smaller ones are tolerated. Smaller doses (0.2 Gm) are given from 8 a.m. to 8 p.m. The larger doses (0.4 Gm) are distributed equally within 24 hours. If quinidine causes untoward effects, treatment is discontinued. In many cases the administration of the smaller doses (0.2 Gm) does not bring the desired result while larger doses such as single doses of 0.6 Gm abolish the fibrillation.

On the basis of the estimation of the blood level of quinidine during oral therapy it has been proposed that the drug be administered every 2 hours. The results are the same however whether quinidine is given every two hours or three times a day. One succeeds in reestablishing sinus rhythm in about 80 per cent of the cases. Bedard reversed 89 per cent of his patients with atrial fibrillation to sinus rhythm. Four and one half per cent of his patients died suddenly. However the doses advised by him were much higher than the average (up to 6 grams of quinidine daily).

If the fibrillation disappears 0.2 Gm is given three times a day for a few more days and then is stopped. If fibrillation persists on the eighth day treatment is also discontinued. Longer administration of large doses increases the risk beyond reasonable prospect of success. If the drug is tolerated well in heavier patients even a dose of 0.5 Gm may be given four times daily on the fifth to seventh day of the treatment. The patient must be under close observation and must be confined to bed. Due to the atropine-like effect of quinidine on the peripheral vagus the ventricular rate may slightly increase when the administration of quinidine is started. This is why it is well to avoid the combination of digitalis and quinidine as a routine treatment of atrial fibrillation since quinidine counteracts the effect of digitalis to a certain degree.

Thiouracil or radioactive iodine may help in patients with frequent attacks of paroxysmal fibrillation and overfunction of the thyroid.

### *Atrial Flutter*

Atrial flutter in man was described in 1910 (Jolly and Pitchie).

*Mechanism and Electrocardiogram* In this condition the atrial contract approximately 300 times per minute that is at a rate in which coordinated movements are still possible. Occasionally all stimuli reach the ventricle but usually only a fraction of them (every second, third or fourth) is conducted. If every fourth beat is conducted regularly to the ventricle the ventricular rate appears normal. Very often the number of conducted stimuli varies continually so that diverse arrhythmias appear. Extrasystoles or atrial fibrillation may be mistakenly diagnosed because of the disturbance of rhythm. Atrial flutter a much rarer event than atrial fibrillation appears in the same conditions as the latter and is usually permanent. Purely it appears as a short or longer paroxysm.

Figure 103 shows an electrocardiogram of a patient with atrial flutter. The patient was a 68 year old man with coronary sclerosis. The flutter waves are clearly visible in leads II and III. Every fourth atrial wave is conducted to the ventricle (4:1 block) in lead I a 3:1 block occurs once.

*Diagnosis:* The clinical diagnosis is possible without recourse to electrocardiography once the existence of this disturbance is suspected and the patient carefully examined.

In a minority of cases the rapid regular undulations of the flutter waves are visible if the neck veins are inspected (figure 104)

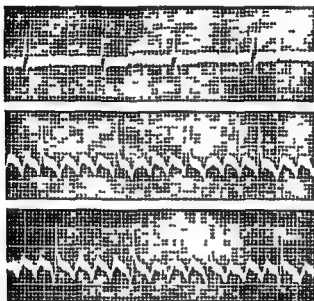


FIG 103 Atrial flutter with 4:1 block

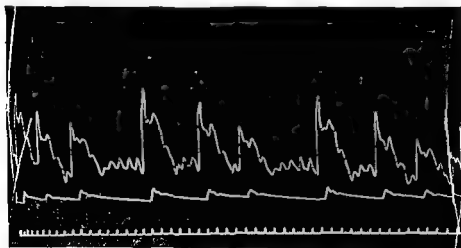


FIG 104 Venous pulse of a patient with atrial flutter and varying AV block; the flutter waves (F waves) are clearly visible in the phlebogram

The diagnosis should be suspected in every tachycardia with a ventricular rate of over 100. Ventricular rates of over 300 beats per minute are observed in atrial flutter and full A V conduction. While a paroxysmal tachycardia occasionally has this rate it is a usual feature of atrial flutter with full rhythm. Frequently with the onset of atrial flutter only every second or third atrial stimulus reaches the ventricle (flutter with 2:1 or 3:1 block) so that the ventricular rate is between 100 and 160. To eliminate a simple acceleration of the heart rate (sinus tachycardia) the patient should be requested to stand to walk a little or if possible to undertake light exercise in the form of climbing stairs or bending. In a simple sinus tachycardia a change of posture or slight effort moderately accelerates the rate but this acceleration gradually disappears within a few minutes. This is a typical response of the sinus node with normal rate as well as with a sinus tachycardia. In atrial flutter however the heart rate remains fixed in all positions even after slight exercise because the abnormal mechanism in the atrium is not influenced by these measures. If more strenuous exercise is performed the increased sympathetic tonus improves conduction from atria to ventricles thus a 2:1 block replaces 3:1 block or full conduction appears instead of a 2:1 block. The heart rate is increased by exactly 50 or 100 per cent and after a while suddenly returns to its former level. The diagnosis is easily confirmed with the aid of the electrocardiogram.

**Therapy** The treatment is not as simple as it is for cases of atrial fibrillation. In the latter the rapid and therefore weak atrial stimuli are easily prevented from reaching the ventricle by digitalis which causes a slight impairment of conductivity. In atrial flutter however with its less rapid and stronger stimuli the ventricular rate can be reduced only by much larger doses of digitalis and these cannot be administered for any prolonged period of time.

There are two methods of procedure: quinidine treatment or massive doses of digitalis given in a special way and for a special purpose.

Frequently it is possible to abolish atrial flutter with quinidine. The method of treatment and the dosage are the same as discussed earlier for atrial fibrillation. The danger of peripheral embolism is greatly reduced because atrial contractions in atrial flutter are powerful and thrombi do not occur as often in the appendices as during atrial fibrillation. If quinidine therapy fails or is contraindicated because of hypersensitivity or myocardial failure or if myocardial infarction or severe anginal pain exists which makes a quick effect mandatory then digitalis is given. The rationale of the digitalis treatment is not to reduce the rate but to transform flutter into fibrillation. It has been shown experimentally that an increase of vagal tonus by faradization of the vagus nerve in the neck immediately transforms atrial flutter to fibrillation. An attempt is made to accomplish the same result by digitalis via a direct action on the heart muscle and its effect on the vagal tonus. For this purpose the administration of digitalis is recommended. We have had the best success with digitoxin. If five to six tablets of 0.1 mg are given daily fibrillation usually appears on the third or fourth day. As soon as this is accomplished it is relatively easy to control the ventricular rate by the

continuous administration of small doses of digitalis. Often sinus rhythm appears spontaneously after the conversion of flutter into fibrillation; if not, it is brought about with quinidine (figure 105).

To be sure, there are cases in which digitalis and quinidine fail to change the existing atrial flutter. If this happens, it is advisable to repeat the same therapy after an interval of a few months. In our experience the second or third attempt often yields better results.

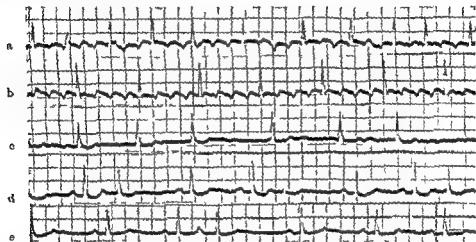


FIG. 105 (a) Atrial flutter with varying 3:1 block in a 45 year old man after 0.4 mg of digitalis was administered daily for two days; a regular 4:1 block appeared (b) Four days later, after the same daily doses of digitalis had been continued, atrial fibrillation appeared (c) Then digitalis was stopped. Four days later sinus rhythm with atrial extrasystoles spontaneously appeared (d) Nine days later the picture was unchanged (e) The R-T segments are still deformed by the digitalis effect.

Ventricular flutter and ventricular fibrillation are usually terminal events. They may occur during cardiac catheterization and electric shock therapy. Occasionally patients survive such attacks, some of which have been registered in the electrocardiogram. It is interesting that attacks occurred more often in patients with heart block and during treatment with quinidine. Patients have survived attacks lasting as long as six minutes (Schwartz).

In general, standstill of the circulation lasting longer than 3 to 3.5 minutes leads to damage of the cerebral cortex. Therefore, quick action is necessary if ventricular fibrillation appears. The chest must be opened, best between the fourth and fifth left ribs, and the heart must be massaged rhythmically at least 40 times per minute. The intracardiac injection of procaine hydrochloride (5–10 ml of a 1 per cent solution) or application of electric shocks is then used to stop the fibrillation. This procedure has been successful in many instances (Zoll). The external defibrillator is built on the same principle as the apparatus



in use for direct defibrillation of the exposed heart. However, the countershocks are much stronger (200 to 700 volts as compared to 120 to 150 volts). The duration of the current is about 0.15 second.

### CLINICAL ASPECTS OF THE TACHYCARDIAS

The tachycardias can be divided into two main groups: sinus tachycardias and paroxysmal tachycardias.

#### *Sinus Tachycardia*

In sinus tachycardia there is a mere acceleration of the normal (sinus) rhythm. This is a physiologic phenomenon that occurs after exertion and during excitement. In fever the heart rate usually increases 10 beats per minute for each degree rise of the temperature. A sinus tachycardia is also found during and for some time after infectious diseases, in hyperthyroidism and in cardiac neuroses and many other conditions.

While the cardiac rate is only slightly accelerated in some cases (100–120 beats per minute) a rate of 150–180 is attained in others. It is very rare for a sinus tachycardia to exceed a rate of 200.

A sinus tachycardia is distinguished from other tachycardias by the fact that (1) the tachycardia develops and disappears gradually, and (2) any change of position of the patient and even the slightest exertion increase the rate to some extent. Regardless of the existing rate, sinus tachycardia in hyperthyroidism becomes faster when the patient rises from the recumbent posture, and a further increase occurs during walking.

Drug therapy of the sinus tachycardia has been quite fruitless. Even in a tachycardia with a rate of 180 beats per minute, as seen occasionally in hyperthyroidism or a cardiac neurosis, no improvement is obtained with digitalis or quinidine. Only if a sinus tachycardia is due to cardiac failure can the cardiac rate be reduced by digitalis. Employment of prostigmine preparations likewise does not yield satisfactory results. The most effective measure is the treatment of the basic disease underlying the tachycardia. If hyperthyroidism is treated with iodine or thiouracil, the tachycardia disappears within a few weeks. In recent years it became evident that in some patients a sinus tachycardia may be abolished with *Pauwolfia* preparations.

If the heart is otherwise healthy, little damage is done by a sinus tachycardia even when the rate is high, but the harm it causes in the presence of organic changes, e.g., coronary sclerosis, is considerable.

#### *Paroxysmal Tachycardia*

The paroxysmal tachycardias are characterized by sudden onset and an equally abrupt termination. If the patient has been aware of the tachycardia, its sudden onset and the abrupt cessation will have been noted. Often, however,

no sensation of palpitation or other abnormality is experienced with very high rates

Three principal forms of paroxysmal tachycardia are distinguished (1) paroxysmal atrial fibrillation and flutter (2) paroxysmal atrial tachycardia and (3) paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia. The last two are also known as essential paroxysmal tachycardias. A tachycardia originating in the atrio-ventricular node (nodal A V tachycardia) is rare but it is often erroneously diagnosed from the electrocardiogram. According to Campbell a supraventricular tachycardia is found in 60 per cent of paroxysmal tachycardias, paroxysmal atrial fibrillation in 30 per cent, atrial flutter in 6 per cent and ventricular tachycardias in 4 per cent.

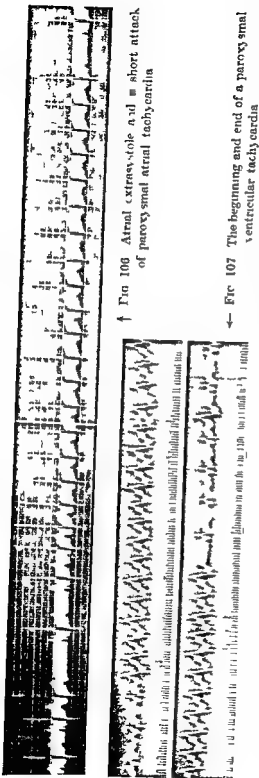
*Paroxysmal Atrial Fibrillation and Flutter* These disturbances discussed as permanent conditions in the preceding section are often accompanied by a high ventricular rate. Since they begin and end suddenly these conditions belong to the paroxysmal tachycardias. The complete irregularity permits the diagnosis of atrial fibrillation without an electrocardiogram. The diagnosis of atrial flutter was discussed in the preceding section.

The significance and treatment of atrial fibrillation and flutter as permanent states was discussed earlier. If short attacks of atrial fibrillation or flutter appear several times a week or daily, quinidine sulfate should be given prophylactically. One tries in the case of extrasystoles to obtain success with the smallest possible amounts of the drug. Only when quinidine cannot be given or is not tolerated, is digitalis administered. The result is sometimes similar, since the attacks occur less frequently or even disappear completely. Often, however, the attacks persist, but digitalis reduces the ventricular rate so much that they are harmless. Occasionally digitalis transforms paroxysmal fibrillation into permanent fibrillation, which is welcome to the patient and the physician since the patient is no longer in constant dread of an attack. The permanent fibrillation is usually easily controlled with small maintenance doses of digitalis.

If the attacks occur at irregular and long intervals, e.g. once a month, prophylactic therapy is hardly necessary. Under these circumstances it is advisable to administer quinidine only during the attacks, one tablet of 0.20 Gm is given every two hours until the flutter or fibrillation subsides. As a rule only two or three doses are necessary until sinus rhythm reappears. If there is hypersensitivity to quinidine one must resort to digitalis.

*Essential Paroxysmal Atrial and Ventricular Tachycardia* Both types of tachycardia consist of a long series of extrasystoles. A tachycardia develops because the interval between the extrasystoles is short.

The clinical picture of the essential paroxysmal tachycardias has been studied by numerous investigators all over the world for a long time. This has been possible because of its prevalence. Atrial tachycardias in particular are very common but only a small percentage ever come to the attention of the physician. In the majority of cases the attack is of short duration and is unrecognized even by the patient. Paroxysmal ventricular tachycardias are rarer but by no means as uncommon as some reports seem to indicate.



**ELECTROCARDIOGRAM** Figure 106 shows a short attack of paroxysmal atrial tachycardia observed in a patient with mitral stenosis (lead II). The sudden beginning and the sudden end of the attack are clearly visible. The rate of the tachycardia is 150 per minute. A single atrial extrasystole appears in the beginning of the tracing.

In Figure 107 the beginning and the end of a paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia are shown. The rate is about 200 per minute. A single ventricular extrasystole appears after the tachycardia ends.

In patients with severe myocardial damage the form of the ventricular beats during ventricular paroxysmal tachycardia varies. Similar tachycardias appear following the administration of toxic doses of digitalis in patients with myocardial damage.

**MECHANISM** The same two theories as in atrial fibrillation and flutter are usually advanced in order to explain the mechanism of paroxysmal tachycardias. The explanation most acceptable to us is that of a rapid formation of stimuli in an abnormal center.

**ETIOLOGY** In the majority of cases attacks of atrial tachycardia occur in perfectly healthy people showing no evidence of organic heart disease. In exceptional cases the attacks are related to excessive smoking, pregnancy, an injection of adrenalin or the administration of strophanthin or digitalis. Ventricular tachycardias also may occur without any symptoms of heart disease, but often coronary occlusion or coronary sclerosis is present. In rare cases reflexes (paroxysmal tachycardia occurring on yawning) (Sakai and Mori) or exertion (Scherf) are exciting factors. In most of the cases

however the attacks occur without any demonstrable cause. Patients with abnormal response to digitalis occasionally have a characteristic type of paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia (see later) and this represents an urgent

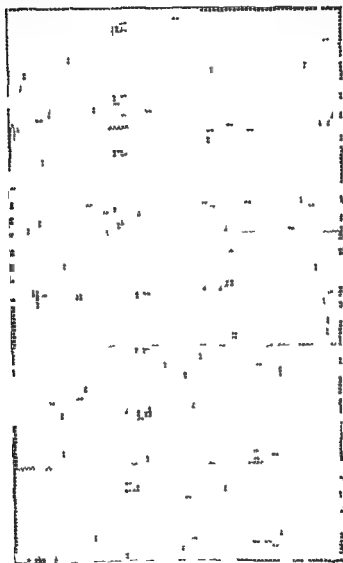


FIG 108 Pre excitation syndrome in a 47 year old man

warning to discontinue the drug. Paroxysmal tachycardia has been found at all ages and even in infants.

About every third patient with the pre excitation syndrome characterized by a very short P-R interval and abnormal QRS complexes (figure 108) complains

of attacks of paroxysmal tachycardia: Common in these QRS complexes is a slurring or notching of the ascending branch of the R wave. The interpretation of this phenomenon as being caused by an accessory A-V bundle of conduction (Holzmann and Scherf) is still the most widely accepted one. A disturbance of impulse formation in the A-V node has been suspected because of misinterpretation of tracings but there is no sound foundation for this assumption (Scherf, Blumenfeld and Mueller).

**SYMPTOMS** Many patients have a fluttering sensation which if accurately described leads to the diagnosis. Other patients have palpitation which also should make the examiner suspicious. In a large number of cases however only weakness and fainting exist without any unusual sensation in the cardiac area so that the physician who sees the patient after the attack has disappeared has difficulty in reaching the diagnosis. Occasionally a patient will describe only a peculiar feeling of anxiety while another has nausea and vomiting (due to hepatic congestion), anginal pain or intense pressure in the cardiac area. Meteorism and belching are early complaints. In older individuals with atherosclerosis a marked fall of blood pressure with confusion, coma or even shock may appear.

Of greatest diagnostic importance is the statement that the attacks or sensations start suddenly and end suddenly. If the history of the sudden onset and abrupt ending of the attack is elicited the diagnosis is obvious. Many patients however particularly those whose hearts are abnormal do not feel the beginning and ending clearly making the positive history alone of value. Not rarely the examining physician notes the end of an attack by auscultation but the patient does not feel it has subsided.

A peculiar scarcely investigated symptom accompanying various forms of paroxysmal tachycardia is *urina spastica* the patient reports voiding remarkably large volumes of light colored urine. This large amount of urine is passed soon after the onset occasionally during the attack but only rarely after its cessation. Since this sometimes unnecessarily alarming phenomenon may occur immediately after the onset of the attack one cannot ascribe it to the disappearance of renal congestion as has been suggested. While this phenomenon may be observed in other conditions unrelated to the heart and circulation the finding of *urina spastica* helps in the differentiation from other forms of tachycardia or palpitation because it is common in paroxysmal tachycardia but very unusual in the sinus tachycardia.

Prolonged tachycardias with rapid ventricular action may lead to passive congestion for the same reasons as atrial fibrillation. Pulmonary edema may even occur. Hemoptysis during an attack is not rare and is difficult to explain. The temperature is moderately increased presumably due to pulmonary congestion. Leukocytosis may be found.

The venous pressure is increased the minute volume and occasionally arterial oxygen saturation may fall remarkably. The T waves may be abnormal for a few days after a tachycardia (fig. 109) (Burak and Scherf).

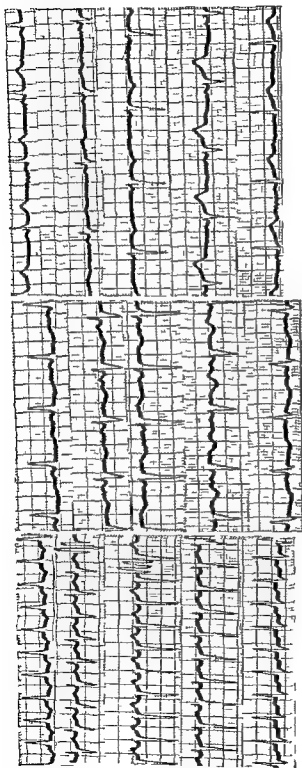


FIG. 100. I have a normal atrial tachycardia in a 74 year old man who sought hospitalization for precordial pain. Two days after the tachycardia had disappeared the electrocardiogram is markedly altered and shows deep inversion of the T waves in all leads (b). This is not the post tachycardia syndrome described by Burak and Scherf since a normal electrocardiogram was not registered until ten days later. The electrocardiogram should have become normal within a few days were the abnormality solely the result of the tachycardia. Presumably the patient developed the tachycardia as a consequence of a small myocardial infarction.

The size of the heart may decrease during the attack (Scherf and Zdansky) but in a tachycardia lasting over many months with a fast rate both ventricles may dilate and evidence of relative tricuspid and mitral insufficiency may appear.

The manifestations of paroxysmal atrial or ventricular tachycardia differ in each individual case. The course can never be predicted when the patient is seen in the first attack. Even single attacks may exhibit extreme variations with respect to frequency and duration. An attack may recur repeatedly within twenty-four hours or the patient may have only one attack in years or in a lifetime.

**DIAGNOSIS** The rapid regular action of the heart is easily recognized if the rate is over 150 but with slower rates the diagnosis is often missed without the help of the electrocardiogram. The rate may vary in individual cases between 110 and 250 beats per minute. It is always faster than the existing sinus rhythm. The first heart sound is often accentuated while the second heart sound may be soft owing to the diminished output and the fall of blood pressure. In other cases embryocardia is present. If murmurs are present during sinus rhythm they disappear during the tachycardia since the diastole is much too short to permit their appearance and the systolic output is too small to make a systolic murmur audible. With a heart rate of over 180 a correct count of the pulse becomes difficult.

The frequently made diagnosis of cardiac failure with sinus tachycardia causes the patient and his family unnecessary fright. The attitude of the physician in cases of paroxysmal tachycardias is often wrong and unfounded alarm more often than not exerts a bad influence on the morale of the patient.

In a paroxysmal tachycardia one should determine first whether an atrial or ventricular type exists. Occasionally this is possible by observation of the venous pulse since in the ventricular form the atria usually do not participate in the tachycardia and independent slow *a* waves may be seen in the jugular veins. The differentiation is made easier by the use of the electrocardiograph. On this occasion a warning may be sounded. Many enthusiastic physicians seek to abolish the attack with carotid pressure and often in atrial tachycardias attain success so quickly that no opportunity is afforded to ascertain what type of attack is present. Since the differentiation between the various types of tachycardia has prognostic significance one should try — if possible — to take an electrocardiogram before therapeutic measures are instituted. Rarely even ventricular tachycardias are stopped by carotid pressure.

As pointed out before the rate of the tachycardia has great importance in the clinical picture. In an atrial tachycardia the atrial contraction precedes the ventricular and aids the filling of the ventricles. If however the atrial tachycardia exceeds a certain critical rate (Wenckebach) which usually amounts to 180 beats per minute diastole is so short that the atria contract while the ventricles are still in systole. Since the atrial systole is superimposed on that of the ventricles the atria cannot expel their contents into the contracted ventricles and blood moves backward into the venae cavae producing a particularly marked engorgement of the great veins and of the liver.

The appraisal of the clinical picture is easy when the patient has a long history of attacks and can provide information upon all important details. But the problem is more difficult if the patient seeks aid during or after the first attack. Then a decision must be deferred until observation permits a reliable evaluation of frequency, duration and consequences of the attacks.

The same statement is particularly valid in determining the significance of the tachycardia. If the patient reports that the attacks have existed for years and examination reveals nothing abnormal, one is justified in regarding the tachycardia as a harmless disturbance (cf. the statement on extrasystoles). But if patients are seen during or shortly after the first attack, they must be observed for a time even when the first examination is negative, since the tachycardia may be the first and for a time the only sign of myocardial disease. All statements made on this subject during the discussion of extrasystoles are applicable here.

**DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS.** In most cases it is easy to differentiate between paroxysmal tachycardias and a sinus tachycardia. In patients who do not feel the sudden start and ending, and have only vague symptoms, the diagnosis is difficult unless one has the opportunity to observe the patient during an attack.

Atrial flutter may be difficult to rule out even with the aid of an electrocardiogram.

**PROGNOSIS.** The majority of attacks occur in healthy persons and have an excellent prognosis. Even if they recur often, the patient is usually able to stop them easily. If he is correctly informed by the physician, any feeling of apprehension that is present may disappear.

The situation is difficult if the attacks respond poorly to treatment or if they last too long or appear too often. In rare cases, cardiac dilatation and congestive heart failure may be caused simply by the tachycardia and death may occur without any evidence of myocardial or valvular lesion (Scherf and Kisch).

The prognosis of ventricular tachycardias is usually considered worse than that of atrial tachycardias. Ventricular tachycardias, to be sure, may also appear for years in patients who show no evidence of myocardial disease, but this is exceptional. Usually organic heart disease, particularly coronary sclerosis, exists, occasionally, as mentioned above, a paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia may be the first sign that a heart lesion is present.

Paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia is an ominous complication of myocardial infarction.

**TREATMENT.** If the patient is seen during an attack and the diagnosis of an atrial tachycardia is established by means of the electrocardiogram, before the administration of drugs an attempt should be made to abolish the attack by one of the numerous vagal reflexes. If tried with care and patience, they often help, and these procedures have the advantage that the patient can be taught to use them whenever the attack recurs.



At first carotid pressure described as vagus pressure in older literature is applied. It is performed in the following manner: the patient must assume the recumbent posture because dizziness and faintness may result from carotid pressure. The carotid artery is palpated at the level of the thyroid cartilage anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle and is pressed toward the vertebra. Cardiac activity is simultaneously observed with the stethoscope. The amount of pressure exerted differs in every case. In some even the lightest pressure suffices while in others the pressure must be strong. If several attempts are unsuccessful it is well to repeat the procedure at a somewhat higher or lower level because the site of the carotid sinus varies and pressure at other points is ineffective. In a majority of cases the pressure is effective on the right side but pressure is often successful on the left. Obviously pressure should not be exerted on both sides simultaneously. Many patients soon learn to apply carotid pressure themselves and can thus suppress attacks readily.

An attack of paroxysmal atrial tachycardia existed in the patient whose electrocardiogram is reproduced in figure 110. Carotid pressure on the right side was started at the time indicated by the signal. The attack ended abruptly (within a few seconds) and was followed by a complete standstill of the heart for a few seconds because the pressure was exerted too long.

If carotid pressure is ineffective other vagus reflexes should be tried. Some patients can terminate attacks by holding their breath or by a sudden deep inspiration. Others succeed by means of the Valsalva experiment that is maximal activation of the expiratory muscles with a closed glottis. The patient should be advised to exert pressure similar to the way during defecation. Ocular pressure (bulbar pressure) is often effective particularly in youthful individuals. The patient looks downward and closes his eyes then gradually increasing pressure is exerted against the eyeball. Occasionally bending forward or bending the knees terminates an attack. In rare cases pressure on the abdomen or slight mechanical irritation of the skin in the external auditory canal stops the paroxysm. Some patients find that touching the pharynx with the fingers provokes retching and abolishes the attack at once.

If all these reflexes are tried — which is easily done within a few minutes — the attacks can be terminated in almost 50 per cent of the cases.

The drug which is safest and usually successful within a reasonable time is again quinidine sulfate. After a test dose shows that no idiosyncrasy exists a tablet of 0.20 Gm. is given every two hours day and night until the attack subsides. This is usually the case within a few hours although in some cases treatment has to be continued for a few days. This treatment is harmless if the patient shows no untoward sign due to hypersensitivity. The patient should rest until the attack subsides.

If the patient does not tolerate quinidine he should be given digitalis. This drug was more widely used in the prequinidine era and nowadays is neglected by many. For this treatment as in atrial flutter digitoxin is recommended. Digitalis therapy has been very successful for attacks of paroxysmal tachycardia in child

ren The frequently heard statement that digitalis is useless or contraindicated in the ventricular type of paroxysmal tachycardia is not correct

In the majority of cases the attacks need not be abolished immediately. No harm is done while waiting for quinidine or digitalis to become effective; therefore this method is preferable to those which are speedier but have some untoward and sometimes unpleasant effects.

Often an intravenous injection of quinine dihydrochloride or quinidine sulfate is effective and stops an attack of paroxysmal tachycardia immediately (Singer and Winterberg). Initially only 0.2 Gm. should be injected; this amount if not effective may be increased if necessary to 0.4 or even 0.5 Gm. on the following day or in the next attack provided the first injection was well tolerated. As a rule the attacks cease immediately and usually even during the injection. The injection must be given very slowly, however, and it is not always entirely harmless. Quinidine is a cardiac depressant; even small doses given intravenously may act adversely on a damaged myocardium. Since no one can readily determine whether and to what extent the myocardium is damaged in an unknown patient, great caution is advised in the use of quinidine or quinine by intravenous injection. Slow infusion with control of heart rate and blood pressure is safer. Intramus-

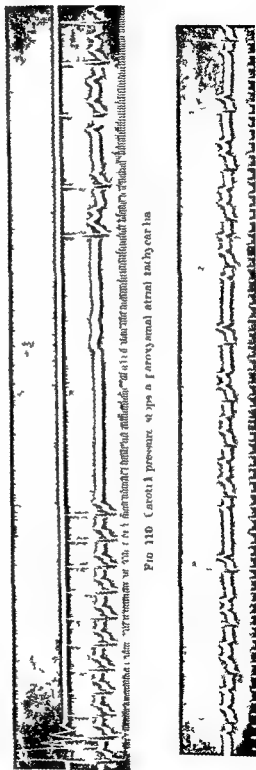


FIG. 110 Carotid pressure at 30 mm. Hg. in paroxysmal atrial tachycardia.

FIG. 111 Irregularly dropped beats (Wenckebach's period).

cular injections are now possible since preparations are available for this purpose they are devoid of danger in certain cases this route has advantage The injection of a single dose of 0.5 Gm every three or four hours is permissible The same rules obtain for quinidine lactate as for other salts of quinidine

If the patient does not tolerate quinidine or if evidence of heart failure is present digitalis or strophanthin is preferable If quick action is desired the injection of one of the new purified glycosides like Cedilanid (0.4 mg) or digoxin is recommended Still more active is strophanthin which may be given in the dose of 0.25 mg if no digitalis has been administered earlier

Quinidine is superior to digitalis when attacks recur often and prophylactic measures are indicated In this case one proceeds exactly as in the treatment of extrasystoles or paroxysmal fibrillation and seeks to determine the smallest amount effective in preventing the tachycardia

Among the numerous other drugs recommended for the treatment of paroxysmal tachycardia choline or the much more effective derivative acetyl beta methylecholine was found helpful It abolishes the tachycardia in about 85 per cent of the cases The dosage depends upon the weight and age of the patient usually 30 to 40 mg subcutaneously suffice One must have a syringe with atropine ready in case untoward symptoms appear While these are rarely dangerous they are often unpleasant Adenosine triphosphate has been used with success (Komor and Ciras) Vagus stimulation by physostigmine often used in the past has been abandoned but prostigmine (0.5–1.0 mg subcutaneously) has less side effects than mechoyl All these compounds are rarely used today

Emetic drugs have also been recommended but the simple suggestion to the patient to induce retching by inserting two fingers very deep into the throat has the same effect without other unpleasant reactions

Pressor amines such as neosynephrine Vasoxyl and Isuprel abolish attack of supraventricular tachycardia but they may elicit dangerous ventricular ones The intravenous injection of 0.5 to 1 mg of neosynephrine has been advocated in paroxysmal atrial tachycardias It has been suggested that this dose be repeated when the blood pressure is normal after 30 seconds however ventricular extrasystoles are common when pressor amines are injected intravenously and they bring danger

It is astonishing what heroic measures and even dangerous drugs have been recommended for this harmless condition which so rarely endangers the life of the patient and for which more conservative methods of treatment usually suffice Apomorphine for instance and even adrenalin were recommended the latter will often abolish the tachycardia but in a certain percentage of cases will cause ventricular tachycardia or even fibrillation

Among the recently recommended drugs magnesium sulfate is often useful Fifteen to twenty ml of a 20 per cent solution are given intravenously No untoward symptoms were seen by the authors in a series of about 60 cases and none have been reported by others injecting this drug in patients with paroxysmal tachycardia Since stronger solutions of magnesium sulfate paralyze the heart

muscle the injection must be given slowly. It is contraindicated in patients with a damaged or weak myocardium.

In a paroxysmal tachycardia refractory to quinidine in safe dosage and not responding to oral administration of Pronestyl, an intravenous injection of Pronestyl may be attempted. It should be done very slowly with continuous control of the blood pressure. Side effects often appear — as with quinidine — in elderly patients and in patients with a damaged myocardium. The necessary dose varies. Not more than 100 mg per minute should be injected (Kerry et al); usually 300—1000 mg are needed.

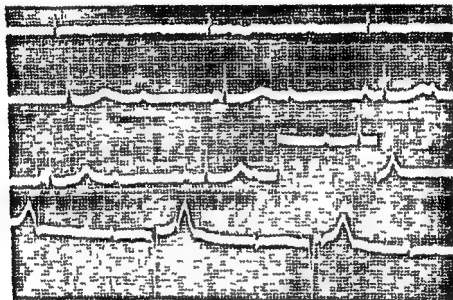


FIG. 112 Complete dissociation between atria and ventricles (complete heart block)

Bellet et al. noted good results with an intramuscular injection of Pronestyl gluconate or hydrochloride in the dose of 0.5—1.5 gram. In this way the severe hypotension which may follow if these drugs are given intravenously is avoided.

Of great interest is the employment of potassium preparations in the treatment of paroxysmal tachycardia and extrasystoles. The effect of potassium on stimulus formation of the heart has been known since the classical studies of the action of electrolytes on cardiac activity by Loeb, Pinger and others. It has been recognized that potassium inhibits stimulus formation and in this regard is antagonistic to sodium and calcium. The administration of potassium salts by mouth increases the blood level and causes the extrasystoles and paroxysmal tachycardias to disappear (Simpson, Anderson). However, the dosage is difficult to determine since the effective doses vary in different persons. Even in patients with normal renal function dangerous arrhythmias have been observed after oral administration of potassium.

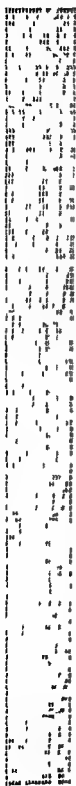


FIG 113 Stethogram of a patient with complete A-V block. The loud systolic aortic murmur was transmitted to the apex. The stethogram was obtained from the apical area and clearly shows the marked accentuation of the first heart sound of the third beat in figure 112 when atrial systole precedes the ventricular one by about 5 hundredths of a second.

Two grams are given at the beginning and 1 to 2 grams are repeated every two hours until the attack subsides. Potassium iodide is usually recommended. Other salts like potassium chloride or acetate are also effective. The combination with quinine has been advised (Stempien and Katz). Following the ingestion of a potassium salt the blood level begins to rise in about 30 minutes and reaches its maximum in two to three hours. A blood level of 3.3 mg per cent of potassium was obtained in this way. Sweating and nausea may appear.

A rapid intravenous injection of a potassium salt leads immediately to ventricular fibrillation.

### Conduction Disturbances

Various arrhythmias sometimes of complex structure may be caused by sinoatrial or more frequently by an atrioventricular block. Only a few remarks concerning these disturbances can be included in this book. For a complete discussion the reader is referred to our textbook on electrocardiography.

The simplest and most common conduction disturbance is the prolongation of the P-I interval (figures 22 and 94). This causes no disturbance of rhythm and may be suspected only by the presence of a presystolic gallop rhythm. Next in frequency is a periodic dropped beat where as in figure 111 the atrial stimuli are conducted progressively more slowly to the ventricle until one atrial impulse is blocked. The conduction system recovers, the conduction returns to normal or at least is improved for one beat and then the progressive fatigue reappears. This condition first described by Wenckebach is now called Wenckebach's period.

In the two conduction disturbances described above and in higher degree of partial as well as in complete atrioventricular block (figures 70 and 112) one must at first rule out digitalis therapy as the etiologic agent. Digitalis in large quantities is a typical cause of these

conduction disturbances if given when the heart is already damaged even relatively small doses may produce various types of conduction disturbances or even complete heart block. If treatment with digitals did not precede the appearance of heart block then an organic change in the conduction system must be assumed to exist. As pointed out in the preceding chapters there are three lesions in which heart block appears very often. One is rheumatic fever which seems to possess a peculiar and unexplained affinity for the atrioventricular conduction system. The second condition is coronary sclerosis and the third diphtheria. It has been mentioned that particularly in an occlusion of the posterior descending coronary artery (right coronary artery) different types of heart block appear. Partial and more often complete heart block are also found in congenital ventricular septal defects.

Complete A V block can be recognized by auscultation. One of the most characteristic signs is the presence of the cannon sounds over the apical area. In the presence of a regular heart action one hears periodically a very accentuated often tympanic first heart sound. This does not occur when atrial and ventricular contraction coincide; it is present as shown in figure 113 when the atrial contraction precedes the ventricular one by about 5 hundredths of a second. For the explanation of this and the discussion of other signs of A V block we refer to our companion book on Clinical Electrocardiography.

No specific treatment is necessary in heart block; the management of the patient is that of the underlying disease. There is only one serious accident in the course of the development of a complete block, namely Stokes Adams attacks. These were discussed in another chapter where emphasis was directed to the fact that the appearance of this syndrome requires not only a conduction disturbance but also damage to the automaticity of the deeper ventricular centers.

## Bibliography

- Allen W. F. An experimentally produced premature systolic arrhythmia (pulsus bigeminus) in rabbits. I. Its nature and agents which produce it. *Am J Physiol* 94: 588 1930.
- Antoine T. Ein Fall von foetaler Herzarrhythmie. *Zeitschr f Geb u Gyn* 30: 112 1926.
- Askey J. M. Hemiplegia following carotid sinus stimulation. *Am Heart J* 31: 131 1946.
- Bachgaard I. Paroxysmal ventricular fibrillation with recovery. *Acta med Scandinav* 13: 11 1948.
- Bedard O. Quinidine in the treatment of auricular fibrillation. *Am J M Sc* 927: 530 1954.
- Bellet S., Zeeman S. E. and Hirsh S. A. The intramuscular use of pronestyl (procaine amide). *Am J Med* 13: 145 1952.
- Berger A. J. and Rackliffe H. L. Treatment of paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia with methoxamine. *JAMA* 15: 1132 1953.
- Berman R., Sadoff C. M. and Cordon G. M. Quinidine intoxication occurring during therapy of auricular arrhythmias. *Minnesota Med* 36: 105 1953.
- Boden E. and Wankell. Experimentelle und klinische Studien über die Herzwirkung des Cholin. *Ztschr f Kreislauforschg* 40: 411 1953.

- Boyd L J and Scherf D Magnesium sulfate in paroxysmal tachycardia *Am J M Sc* 206 43 1943
- Brow C R Long C L H and Beattie J Irregularities of the heart under chloroform their dependence on the sympathetic nervous system *JAMA* 95 715 1930
- Bural M and Scherf D Angina pectoris und paroxysmale Tachykardie *Wien Arch f inn Med* 23 475 1933
- Campbell M The paroxysmal tachycardias *Lancet* 2 641 1941
- and Elliot G A Paroxysmal tachycardia etiology and prognosis of one hundred cases *Brit Heart J* 1 123 1939
- Cole F Cardiac massage in the treatment of arrest of the heart *Arch Surg* 64 115 1937
- DiPalma J R and Schults J E Antifibrillatory drugs *Medicine* 29 123 1950
- Ditlefsen F M L Concentration of quinidine in blood following oral parenteral and rectal administration *Acta med Scandinau* 146 81 1953
- Ellis A W N and Clark Kennedy A E Arrest of auricular fibrillation by the use of quinidine *Lancet* 2 894 1921
- Fleischmann C A The use of quinidine in auricular fibrillation *Am J M Sc* 225 611 1953
- Frey W Über Vorhofflimmern beim Menschen und seine Beendigung durch Chinidin *Berl klin Wchnschr* 55 417 450 1918
- Froment R Les tachycardies paroxystiques ventriculaires Paris Masson 1937
- Furman R H and Geiger A J Use of cholinergic drugs in paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia *JAMA* 149 269 1952
- Garrey W F Auricular fibrillation *Physiol Rev* 4 215 1924
- Goldsbloom A and Segall H N Auricular fibrillation in infancy *Am J Dis Child* 56 387 1938
- Gossage A M and Hicks J A B On auricular fibrillation *Quart J Med* 6 435 1913
- Hanson H H and Rutledge D I Auricular fibrillation in normal hearts *New England J Med* 240 947 1949
- Harlavy I Cardiac arrhythmias with special reference to paroxysmal tachycardia auricular fibrillation and premature beats in constitutionally allergic individuals *J Mt Sinai Hosp* 6 273 1938
- Hawkins J McLaughlin C R and Daniel P Neuronal damage from temporary cardiac arrest *Lancet* 1 488 1946
- Hay J The action of quinidine in the treatment of heart disease *Lancet* 2 543 1974
- Hubbard J L Paroxysmal tachycardia and its treatment in young infants *Am J Dis Child* 61 687 1941
- Huggins R A and Chapman D W The effect of quinidine lactate on the plasma potassium level and the electrocardiogram *Arch Int Pharmacodyn* 85 211 1951
- Jacob J La fibrillation cardiaque et les antifibrillants de synthese *Produits pharmaceut* 10 1 1955
- Jolly W A and Ritchie W T Auricular flutter and fibrillation *Heart* 2 17 1910
- Kaestner F Kasuistischer Beitrag zum Krankheitsbild der Hiatushernie *Med Welt* 6 1349 1932
- Kalmansohn R W and Sampson J J Studies on plasma quinidine content *Circulation* 1 564 569 1950
- Kerr W J and Bender W L Paroxysmal ventricular fibrillation with cardiac recovery in a case of auricular fibrillation and complete heart block while under quinidine sulfate therapy *Heart* 9 289 1922
- Komor K and Caras J Adenosine triphosphate in paroxysmal tachycardia *Lancet* 2 93 1955
- Kouwenhoven W B and Kay J H A simple electrical apparatus for the clinical treatment of ventricular fibrillation *Surgery* 30 781 1951

- Lampson R & Schaeffer W C and Lincoln J R Acute circulatory arrest J A M A 13 1575 1948
- Lewis T The Mechanism and Graphic Registration of the Heart Beat ed 3 London Shaw & Sons 19 5
- Linenthal A J and Freedberg A S Measures used in the prevention and treatment of cardiac arrhythmias New England J Med 241 612 1949
- Levine S A and Golden R Some observations on paroxysmal rapid heart action Arch Int Med 29 836 1922
- Love W D The basis of quinidine therapy Am J M Sc 29 89 1905
- Mackenzie J Quinidine in auricular fibrillation Brit M J 2 576 1911
- Mahaim I and Surinong R Un nouveau cas de double canon de Duchosal sur bloc de branche droite atypique avec bloc auriculoventriculaire Cardiologia 19 71 1951
- Marmor J and Sapirstein MR Bilateral thrombosis of anterior cerebral artery following stimulation of a hyperactive carotid sinus J A M A 111 1099 1941
- McLean M M Auricular flutter in newborn baby Arch Dis Child 27 436 1952
- Miller H Nathanson M H and Griffith G C The action of procaine amide in cardiac arrhythmias J A M A 146 1004 1951
- Moe T A case of Morgagni Adams Stokes attacks caused by transient ventricular fibrillation without apparent organic heart disease Acta med Scandinav 130 416 1948
- Nathanson M H and Miller H The action of norepinephrine epinephrine and isopropyl norepinephrine on the rhythmic functions of the heart Circulation 18 238 1952
- Nudelman P L Leff I L and Howe C D Thrombopenic purpura following quinidine J A M A 13 1219 1949
- Larkinson J and Campbell M Paroxysmal auricular fibrillation Quart J Med 1 67 1930
- Irvine Cotton R Notes and observation upon a case of unusually rapid action of the heart Brit Med J 1 670 1867
- Irishram A and Mayer S Studien zur Physiologie des Herzens und der Blutgefäße Sitzbass Akad d Wissch Wien 66 102 1871
- Read J M Fatal ventricular fibrillation following procaine amide hydrochloride therapy J A M A 149 1390 1952
- Rid L C and Braee D E Irritation of the respiratory tract and its reflex effect upon the heart Surg Gyn & Obst 10 157 1940
- Rothberger C J Bemerkungen zur Theorie der Kreisbewegung beim Flimmern Klin Wchnschr 2 140 1923
- Sakai and Mori F Über einen Fall von sog Schließfachthardie Ztschr f d ges exper Med 50 106 1956
- Sampson J I and Anderson F M The treatment of certain cardiac arrhythmias with potassium salts J A M A 29 211 1937
- Savv I Tachycardie paroxystique et medication vomitric Arch d mal du coeur 3 80 1910
- Schaffer A I Procaine amide compared to quinidine as a therapy of arrhythmias Am Heart J 59 1951
- Blumenfeld S Pitman F R and Dix J H Procaine amide its effects on auricular arrhythmias Am Heart J 5 115 1951
- Steinman R and Scherf D Intravenous procaine its effect on the human electrocardiogram and on cardiac arrhythmias Cardiologia 16 342 1950
- Scherf D Zur Frage der Laryngstolie Wien Arch f inn Med 8 151 1954
- Die Amylinatprobe als Funktionsprüfungsmethod des spezifischen Herzmuskel systems Wien Klin Wchnschr 40 113 1911



- Scherf D Versuche zur Theorie des Vorhofflatterns und Vorhofflimmerns *Ztschr f d ges exper Med* 61 30 1928
- Studies on auricular tachycardia caused by aconitine administration *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 64 233 1947
  - Blumenfeld S and Mueller P AV conduction disturbance in the presence of the preexcitation syndrome *Am Heart J* 43 829 1952
  - and Boyd L J *Clinical Electrocardiography* ed 3 Heinemann London 1953
  - and Boyd L J Betrachtungen über die Entstehung einiger Störungen des Herzrhythmus *Wien klin Wchnschr* 67 650 1955
  - and Kisch F Ventricular tachycardia with uniform ventricular complexes *Bull New York M Coll* 2 73 1940
  - Romano F J and Terranova R Experimental studies on auricular flutter and auricular fibrillation *Am Heart J* 36 241 1948
  - Schaffer A I and Blumenfeld S Mechanism of flutter and fibrillation *Arch Int Med* 91 333 1953
  - and Schott A Extrasystoles and Allied Arrhythmias London Heineman 1953
  - and Terranova R Mechanism of auricular flutter and fibrillation *Am J Physiol* 159 137 1940
  - and Zdansky E Über die Beeinflussung der Herzgröße durch Atropin Adrenalin und Amylnitrit *Wien Arch f inn Med* 16 399 1929
- Schwartz S P Transient ventricular fibrillation a study of the fibrillary process and its development in man *J Mt Sinai Hosp* 8 1005 1942
- Singer R and Winterberg H Chinin als Herz- und Gefäßmittel *Wien Arch f inn Med* 3 329 1922
- Somlo E Adenosine triphosphate in paroxysmal tachycardia *Lancet* I 1125 1955
- Southworth J McKusick V A Prince E C and Rawson F L Jr Ventricular fibrillation precipitated by cardiac catheterization *JAMA* 143 717 1950
- Starr I Jr Acetyl beta methyleholin IV Further studies of its action in paroxysmal tachycardia and in certain other disturbances of cardiac rhythm *Am J M Sc* 191 210 1938
- Steinhaus J E and Carden V L Evaluation of antibrillatory drugs in experimental coronary occlusion *Fed Proc* 12 369 1953
- Stempien S J and Katz K Quinidine and potassium in the treatment of refractory paroxysmal tachycardia *Am Heart J* 24 555 1942
- Van Dongen K and Taal A Remarks on the mechanism of heart fibrillation *Arch int pharmacodyn* 51 129 1950
- Weinberger L M Gibbon M H and Gibbon J H Jr Temporary arrest of the circulation to the central nervous system *Arch Neurol Psych* 43 615 1940
- Weisman S A Studies on the time required for the elimination of quinidine from the heart and other organs *Am Heart J* 20 21 1940
- Review and evaluation of quinidine therapy for auricular fibrillation *JAMA* 152 496 1953
- Weiss S and Hatcher R A Studies on quinine *J Pharm & Exper Therap* 30 37 1927
- and Sprague H B Vagal reflex irritability and the treatment of paroxysmal auricular tachycardia with ipecac *Am J M Sc* 194 53 1937
- Wenckebach K F Über eine kritische Frequenz des Herzens bei paroxysmaler Tachycardia *Deutsche Arch f klin Med* 101 402 1910
- Die unregelmäßige Herzstätigkeit und ihre klinische Bedeutung, Leipzig Leipzig 1914
  - Über Chinin als Herzmittel *Berl klin Wchnschr* 22 571 1918
  - and Winterberg H Die unregelmäßige Herzstätigkeit Leipzig Leipzig 1922

- Wiggers C J and Wegria R Ventricular fibrillation due to single localized induction and condensor shocks applied during the vulnerable phase of ventricular systole  
*Am J Physiol* 128 500 1940
- Wilkins L and Kramer H Studies on the potassium content of human serum  
*Arch Int Med* 31 916 1923
- Wolff L Clinical aspects of paroxysmal rapid heart action  
*New England J Med* 226 640 1942
- Zoll P M et al Termination of ventricular fibrillation in man by externally applied electric countershock  
*New England J Med* 254 727 1956
- Zwillingner L Über die Magnesiumwirkung auf das Herz  
*Klin Wchnschr* 14 1429 1935

## Chapter 30

# Peripheral Vascular Diseases

### INTRODUCTION

OUR KNOWLEDGE OF peripheral vascular disease has increased tremendously in the past 40 years. For a long time these conditions were investigated and discussed mainly by neurologists (Charcot, Erb, Weir Mitchell) and were ascribed almost exclusively to a nervous vasospasm. In his paper describing erythromelalgia, Mitchell called the lesion a rare vasomotor neurosis, while Casper, entitled one of the early monographs on peripheral vascular diseases, "Vasomotor trophic Neuroses." Since then we have learned to differentiate many pathologic entities which can be distinguished clinically by a detailed history and careful examination. New methods of examination permit the differentiation between vascular disorders due to organic obstruction and those caused by vasospasm.

Recent therapeutic innovations may save limbs from amputation, but even at present early lesions are still too often attributed to fallen arches or rheumatism, although these errors are less frequent than a few years ago.

The peripheral vascular lesions are best classified as organic or functional disturbances. The former group can be subdivided into inflammatory processes such as thromboangitis obliterans or lesions due to tuberculosis, typhus, syphilis, and so forth, while another group involves degenerative lesions such as arteriosclerosis. Periarteritis nodosa seems to be an allergic phenomenon. The functional group includes disturbances such as erythromelalgia, acrocyanosis, and certain types of the Raynaud syndrome.

The lesions resulting from arterial embolism or arterial as well as venous thrombosis form a separate group. Only the more common and the more important lesions will be discussed in this book.

### SYMPTOMS

The frequent combination of inflammatory or degenerative vascular alterations with functional spastic disorders causes diversified clinical pictures. The localization, the time of appearance of the lesions, and many other factors vary according to the nature of the disturbance; most complaints of the patients, however, are the same even when the etiology differs. Therefore we shall discuss some of the symptoms at the outset and subsequently add the details characteristic of the different lesions in corresponding sections.

**Pain** This is the most common symptom. Often it appears in the calf hip or in the foot during walking occasionally it is also felt at rest and it may come at night particularly if the leg is held in certain positions. Sometimes it is constant. All transitions between mild gnawing and most excruciating pain are encountered.

If pain in the calf appears on walking the patient may be forced to stand still. This is known as intermittent claudication. The history indicates clearly that the pain occurs after walking a certain distance and disappears a few minutes after stopping. Similar to the anginal pain on effort walking for a long time at home even climbing of stairs need not cause the pain. This distance may remain constant for a long time and deterioration of the patient's condition as well as any improvement are clearly reflected by shortening or lengthening respectively of this distance.

It has been clearly demonstrated that an accumulation of a stable physicochemical stimulus in the tissue spaces (Factor P) the consequence of the lack of oxygen in the muscle fibers is responsible for the pain. Possibly the lactate ion is the agent involved in the chemical stimulus (Elliott and Evans).

Intermittent claudication may appear in the absence of vascular disease as in mitral stenosis or in coarctation of the aorta — whenever that is the difference between the supply of blood to the leg muscles and the needs is disproportionate.

In general pain at rest is more unfavorable from a prognostic standpoint than pain on movement. The absence of pain during rest does not however indicate an adequate blood supply since pain may be absent in embolism with complete occlusion of the femoral artery and resultant gangrene. Pain at rest may indicate impending trophic disturbances and particularly in thromboangitis obliterans it may be due to an ischemic neuritis.

One must differentiate between rest pain in peripheral vascular disease and night cramps which appear in healthy people particularly when toward morning the legs are stretched. The mechanism of this pain during which the calf muscles become as hard as a board is unknown. Several therapeutic measures have been recommended such as vitamin sodium chloride Benadryl and calcium. According to our experience 0.2 Gm of quinine sulfate taken before retiring helps more than other drugs.

Patients with so called restless legs (Ekbom) feel sensations of cold weakness paresthesias and sometimes pain in the legs and thighs which disappear when they stand or walk. The cause is unknown.

**Fatigue** Weakness and fatigue in the limbs are also common and often are the early signs of a disturbed circulation.

**Paresthesias and Coldness** Often patients complain of numbness tingling pins and needles and other paresthesias. A burning sensation may be present. Usually an unusual coldness is felt in certain parts of the extremities but this finding is by no means characteristic of peripheral vascular disease.

In rare cases patients seek advice because parts of the limbs show abnormal discoloration

### METHODS OF EXAMINATION AND INTERPRETATION OF FINDINGS

*Inspection* Inspection of the affected extremities often reveals an abnormal color. With widening of the venules in the subcapillary plexus the blood flows slowly and more oxygen is delivered to the tissues so that cyanosis appears. Obstruction of an artery in the absence of collateral circulation causes abnormal pallor. Increased redness is present if inflammation or other factors cause dilatation of arterioles, capillaries and veins. A dark violet color is seen in complete or almost complete arterial obstruction with imminent gangrene.

These discolorations may be found over the entire extremity, in the toes or fingers, or in small patches of the shins. Differences in the color of the two limbs exposed to the same temperatures are of great importance because symmetrical cyanosis appears under normal conditions when the peripheral vessels dilate abnormally due to a variation in vascular tone and is not necessarily pathologic.

The skin may be edematous, thickened or thin and atrophic. Its texture is often altered. The hairs may disappear locally. Small ulcers may be present. Even muscles may atrophy. One should look carefully between the toes for evidence of epidermophytosis.

Examination of the nails often reveals trophic disturbances. The normal longitudinal ridges are increased and transverse ridges appear. The nails may become discolored and may loosen from their bed; they may grow slowly or stop growing altogether.

*Palpation* Temperature of the skin is estimated with the palm or the ulnar surface of the examiner's hand. He should test the extremities after they have been exposed for 10 to 15 minutes to room temperature. The finding of an equally cool skin over both extremities is without great importance because this may be normal, but even small differences between the two sides tested after sufficient exposure to room temperature have great significance. The level at which a difference of temperature begins should be ascertained. A slight difference of temperature is often discovered over the knee at a time when no other place shows significant change. A temperature difference of as little as 0.5° C. can be detected by palpation. Sometimes the affected leg is warmer than the healthy one, or the more affected leg is warmer than the less involved one. The local temperature is lower when there is perspiration; sometimes the more affected limb sweats less profusely than the healthy one.

If blanching of a circumscribed area, e. g., the ball of the toe, is caused by pressure of the finger, normally the ischemic area rapidly becomes perfused again when the pressure ceases. The slow return of the color is occasioned by diminished flow of blood, while a more rapid flow or increased pressure in the vessels, particularly in the venules, may cause an acceleration. It is true that a prompt return to the previous color may be seen even if circulation in a deeply cyanotic leg is

arrested completely, slight differences on the two sides however are important for they are early indications of an abnormality in the circulation. This test gives the best results when performed with the involved extremities slightly elevated.

Examination of the pulsation in the arteries of all four extremities is the next step. In the arms one examines the subclavian and axillary arteries, the brachial, radial and ulnar arteries at the well known areas.

In the lower extremities the femoral artery is palpated at Poupart's ligament midway between the symphysis and the anterior superior spine of the os ileum and followed to the triangle of Scarpa. The popliteal pulsations are examined best with the patient prone and the leg slightly flexed at the knee. In obese patients the popliteal pulsation is recognized only with difficulty. The dorsalis pedis artery is palpated on the dorsum of the foot between the proximal ends of the first and second metatarsal bones and lateral to the tendon of the extensor hallucis longus muscle. A search for the pulsation of the posterior tibial artery is made behind and a short distance from the internal malleolus.

Occasionally pulsation of the two last named arteries is not found on one or both sides in normal people. The location of the vessel may vary. The dorsalis pedis artery runs a different course over the dorsum of the foot in about 3 per cent of cases. Statistics indicate that the artery is absent in about 4 per cent of people bilaterally and in 12 per cent on one side only. Variations in the course of the radial artery are even more common.

In some patients vascular spasm makes an arterial pulse imperceptible. Therefore before it is declared absent it has been recommended that the arteries be palpated shortly after the patient has taken a tablet of nitroglycerin. Sometimes the vessels feel sclerotic and do not show pulsations because of deposits of calcium in their walls. They are however patent. In order to avoid confusing the patient's pulse with the pulse in his own fingers the examiner should palpate the patient's radial pulse at the same time.

Although the finding of slight differences on the two sides is important for the diagnosis, the occurrence of unilateral variations is so common that no diagnosis should be based on the absence of a pulsating dorsalis pedis artery or an absence of pulsation of the posterior tibial artery on one side alone.

Some patients have no pulsation for years in an artery owing to vascular disease but they have no complaints. In such instances the arterial obstruction is fully compensated by collateral circulation. On the other hand severe trophic disturbances and even gangrene of the toes may appear with the pulse palpable in all major arteries in a limb. This happens when the process involves arteries lying distant from those palpated.

The following is a useful test for discovering obstruction of the ulnar or radial arteries. The patient is asked to close his hands as tightly as possible in order to squeeze the blood out of the palm. The ulnar and radial artery are then compressed and the patient opens his fist. The pressure on these arteries is released one after the other and the return of color is noted. An occlusion of the ulnar

artery for instance is diagnosed if the color does not return with the release of compression on this artery but quickly returns when the pressure on the radial artery is released (Allen). At the same time as the pulsations are felt an attempt is made to determine the condition of the arterial walls.

If a distinct pulsation is elicited from the *dorsalis pedis* artery it should be determined whether or not the pulsation disappears when the leg is elevated from the horizontal toward the vertical position. Normally the pulsation should persist at least until an angle of 45 degrees is reached. Often it is found in all positions. If elevation of the leg to less than 45 degrees causes the pulsation to vanish the existence of organic arterial disease in the lower extremity may be suspected.

*Blood Pressure.* The results of palpation can be supplemented in some cases by the measurement of the blood pressure. If the blood pressure cuff is placed on the thigh and the pulsations are palpated in the *dorsalis pedis* artery normally the blood pressure in the lower extremities at least equals the arm reading and usually exceeds it. In pathologic processes involving the large arteries of the lower extremities the blood pressure may be much lower on the affected side.

*Color Changes with Change of Position.* Of great value is the observation of color changes of the skin after change of position of the leg (Buerger). The patient lies on his back and exposes his legs to the room temperature for about 10 minutes. Then he lifts both legs to an angle of 60–90 degrees and maintains this position for about 2 minutes. Simultaneously the patient is requested to perform plantar and dorsal flexion of the foot and toes. The legs of the weak patient should be supported by the examiner during the period of elevation. Under pathologic conditions marked pallor appears over the entire foot or parts of it and here again differences on the two sides have great significance. The pallor is noted more often on the plantar surfaces than on the *dorsum* of the foot. Subjective complaints are usually absent although pain occasionally appears. If the patient remains in this position for a longer time small red patches may appear amidst areas displaying cadaveric pallor. The patient then assumes a sitting position with the legs hanging down. Under normal conditions within five to ten seconds the feet become flushed. With obstruction of the arterial blood flow the flush appears irregularly and tardily. Due to this delay the color is intensified and may be a very bright pink.

If such pink areas are rendered ischemic by means of momentary finger pressure subsequently they redden with extraordinary rapidity in comparison to the healthy side. The presence of an enormous acceleration of the blood stream may be deduced from the light red color and the rapid disappearance of any anemia produced by pressure.

As a rule these changes indicate structural alterations of the arteries but they are also observed in conditions with an abnormal vasomotor tonus.

*Filling Time of Veins.* If the legs are elevated the veins on the *dorsum* of the foot collapse. If the patient sits with the legs hanging down the veins refill at greater arterial pressure and arterial blood flow returns. The return of venous

filling under normal conditions requires less than 10 seconds. A prolongation of the venous filling time indicates obstruction to the arterial blood flow.

*Reactive Hyperemia* This examination may be supplemented by the reactive hyperemia test. After being kept in a warm bath for ten minutes the extremities are dried and maximally elevated until some blanching occurs. The remaining color is removed by massage. While the extremity is still elevated a cuff high on the upper arm or thigh is quickly inflated above the systolic pressure. The compression should be maintained for about five minutes — this time is shortened only in patients in whom arterial thrombosis threatens. During the period of interruption of blood flow the extremity is kept in the warm bath maintained at a temperature of 35—40 C in order to avoid vascular spasm. At the end of the five minute period the extremity is dried and the cuff is deflated. The time elapsing until the flush begins to appear is determined and one observes whether it is symmetrical in all parts of the extremity. The flush — the reactive hyperemia — normally appears in about five seconds. Under abnormal conditions it is delayed even to more than one minute in small or large areas of the leg and appears in some areas earlier than in others. The color changes are similar to those seen in the test with elevation of the legs. The vasodilatation is due to slowly diffusible substances formed during the arrest of the circulation.

With marked diminution of cutaneous blood supply disturbances of sensation are commonly found.

The investigations just mentioned can be performed by every physician without the aid of special instruments and often suffice to indicate the presence and extent of a disturbance in the arterial blood supply to a limb. These results can be supplemented by a series of other examinations.

*Oscillometry* With this method the pulsations of the arteries lying under the cuff are transferred to an instrument and produce according to the pressure in the cuff corresponding movements of a pointer. These movements do not occur when the underlying arteries fail to pulsate. This may be due to an occlusion higher up or at the level of the test. Absence of pulsation may also be the result of great rigidity of the arterial walls. Therefore an artery may not pulsate although its lumen is patent. The collateral circulation is not shown by this test. The blood supply to an extremity may be adequate in the absence of oscillatory pulsations; in fact oscillations in the legs may be missed in some patients who have remarkably few complaints and only a few other signs of abnormal blood supply. The condition of the patient may undergo marked improvement without any increase in the amplitude of the oscillations.

Conclusions drawn from the absolute size of the oscillations are of no value because they vary in the same areas in different individuals. Even in healthy subjects oscillations on both sides may differ. Different results are obtained at different times of the same day even when the same area is examined. The size of the oscillations depends upon many factors other than the state of the wall of the examined vessel owing to the existence of many variables. Even differences on the two sides can be evaluated only if they are marked.



In view of these difficulties it has been proposed that in cases of peripheral vascular disease in the lower extremities the excursions with the cuff just above the ankle be compared to those obtained when the cuff is just above the wrist. If the reading of the lower part of the leg is used as numerator the ratio under normal conditions is at least 1.0 that is the oscillations in the lower part of the leg are at least equal to those in the lower forearm. If the ratio is lower than 1.0 a peripheral vascular disease involving the lower extremity is present.

If conclusions are drawn with caution oscillometry is valuable. Often it helps to demonstrate the site of an embolic or thrombotic occlusion and it reveals pulsations of large arteries where pulsations of peripheral arteries are missing.

*Measurement of Temperature* Of value in estimating the progress of peripheral vascular disease and indispensable for the estimation of vascular spasm is the measurement of the temperature of the skin with the aid of a skin thermometer or a thermocouple.

The limbs to be examined are exposed to room temperature of  $20^{\circ}\text{C}$  for about 20 minutes. A higher temperature should be avoided because even in the presence of peripheral vascular disease the skin readily reaches the temperature of the room. Under normal conditions in a cool room ( $16-18^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) the fingertips are rarely under  $20^{\circ}\text{C}$  while in a warm room ( $20^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) they are around  $32^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Here again differences on the two sides are very important. The normal skin temperature varies. Usually it is lower in nervous patients because of perspiration.

In a large series of observations it was found that normally the temperature of the skin of the arms is slightly above  $32^{\circ}\text{C}$  and 1 to 2 degrees less in the lower extremities. Variations from these figures are encountered.

The differences on the two sides have greater importance than absolute values since variations are great even in the healthy. Differences found in the normal leg in different persons may amount to  $8^{\circ}$ . Still more valuable is information about changes of temperature after maximal vasodilatation and after abolition of any vasospasm present.

*Vasodilatation* Vasospasm disappears in deep general anesthesia following paravertebral block, peripheral nerve block, after the consumption of large quantities of alcohol, the administration of nitrites and in the lower extremities following spinal anesthesia. The safest and best way to relieve vasospasm is to bathe the two extremities not under examination in water of about  $45^{\circ}\text{C}$ . This simple method usually suffices in patients with unusually high vasomotor tonus; however at times no effect is seen. Under normal conditions the skin temperature over the toes after vasodilatation will approach the temperature of the body and it is always higher than  $31^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The vasodilatation that results from warming distant parts of the body is not caused by a reflex mechanism; it is due mainly to warming the vasomotor centers by the blood flowing to them from the bathed parts of the body (Pickering). This simple test is also preferable to measurement of the skin temperature before and after induced fever by the injection of typhoid vaccine or in a sweating cabinet. Another method widely used is the

peripheral nerve block e. g. blocking of the posterior tibial nerve by an injection of novocaine behind the internal malleolus for the diagnosis of lesions of the toes

With these methods the degree of vasoconstriction is estimated furthermore the presence of an early organic occlusion is detected if the temperature does not rise sufficiently. Finally the capacity of vasodilatation is estimated in order to ascertain the advisability of operative intervention on the sympathetic nervous system. If the temperature does not go higher than 28° C. sympathectomy is not recommended.

**Histamine Test** On the basis of investigations by Lewis histamine injected intradermally was recommended as a test for the vascularization of the skin (Starr). The skin is cleaned and a few drops of 1:1000 solution of histamine acid phosphate are applied to the spot to be tested. If the skin is pricked with a needle through the histamine solution without causing bleeding a wheel surrounded by a red flare appears within five minutes.

Under pathologic conditions with impairment of blood supply the wheel is reduced in size, delayed in appearance or may be absent. If the wheel is absent the blood flow is reduced to a minimum or arrested and gangrene is imminent. A moderate decrease of blood flow has no influence on the outcome of the test. If the test yields an abnormal result the circulation is definitely affected. The test has proved particularly useful for estimating the viability of tissue.

The intradermal injection of 0.2 ml. of histamine solution has the same effect.

**Röntgenography** An x-ray film of the leg may confirm the diagnosis of an arteriosclerotic vascular disease through the discovery of lime salt deposits in the vessel wall. But medial sclerosis is often present for many years in the leg arteries without any signs of peripheral vascular disease being evident. Positive x-ray findings are observed even in 40-year-old patients without complaints and without evidence of peripheral vascular disease. Calcification of lower extremity vessels is found in 65 per cent of men and 28 per cent of women over 50 years of age. Mural calcium deposits in the arteries of the legs do not indicate narrowing of the arterial lumen. Therefore the discovery of such deposits has dubious value in diagnosis and in evaluating the degree of the lesion. Different x-ray patterns of the calcium deposits are observed in medial sclerosis as compared to atherosclerosis (Lindbom).

**Angiography** Visualization of the arterial vascular tree after intra-arterial injection of some radiopaque substance can furnish worthwhile information if carried out by experienced physicians. The same holds for venography. Complications resulting from the injection may occur even thrombosis leading to gangrene. Complications may be caused by sensitivity to iodine. The test should be performed only under exceptional circumstances such as preoperatively in the Leriche syndrome.

**Other Tests** Examination of the skin capillaries under the microscope does not supply much information that cannot be secured by other methods. The blood supply to the skin is also estimated by intravenous injection of fluorescein and the study of the skin with the aid of a special long wave ultraviolet light in

a dark room. The use of infrared photography is limited largely to the discovery of subcutaneous veins not visible on mere inspection.

### THROMBOANGITIS OBLITERANS

Among the occlusive peripheral vascular diseases thromboangitis obliterans shares first place with peripheral atherosclerosis. These conditions together comprise almost 95 per cent of peripheral vascular lesions.

The involvement of arteries and veins together was recognized as characteristic of the disease as early as 1878 (Wimwarter). The condition was described in great detail and was named by Buerger.

#### *Incidence*

The disease usually occurs in young males. The incidence in females is estimated to run about 1 to 2 per cent of that of males. Until a few years ago only 22 instances in women had been reported (Collens and Wilensky). It seems that this disease is becoming more uncommon. Allen, Barker and Hines found an incidence of 1/5000 in Rochester, Minnesota residents.

Thromboangitis obliterans occurs at practically all ages. It has been observed in patients of 15 years; one patient was 79 years old. A majority of those affected are between 30 and 50. The disease has been reported in brothers.

A peculiar susceptibility of the Jewish race was reported. It is certain that the disease has been observed in most races and is common in Japan. The full blooded Negro has been said to be free from the disease.

#### *Etiology*

The cause of the disorder is unknown. Infection was considered as the most likely etiologic factor since inflammation is always present (Buerger). This conception received support from reports of the successful transmission of the condition by transplantation of a resected involved superficial vessel. A variety of microorganisms have been found in the lesion but these reports remain unconfirmed.

Injuries of the tissues as a result of exposure to cold have been considered an etiologic factor. Since the disease is usually seen in heavy cigarette smokers tobacco with its numerous active constituents as well as cigarette paper was supposed to be responsible. While smoking definitely aggravates the condition no proof is available to show that it produces the disease. Thromboangitis obliterans also occurs rarely in non smokers.

Allergy to tobacco, to proteins derived from fungus infections or to ergotism from rye were also blamed. Typhus infection has also been considered responsible.

The relative immunity of women suggested the presence of estrogenic hormone as a protective factor and treatment with estrogens was recommended on this basis (Snapper).

### *Pathology*

For the most part the disease involves the vessels of the lower extremity. Involvement of the arm vessels is less common. However the process has been found in the coronary arteries, the cerebral vessels, gastric and mesenteric arteries. Many patients with thromboangitis obliterans die from coronary thrombosis but usually coronary atherosclerosis is found at post mortem.

The pathologic findings are characteristic. Segments of arteries and veins are enmeshed in fibrotic tissue. The arteries are occluded by fibrous tissue which because of recanalization presents a cribiform appearance. Thrombi develop in both arteries and veins. The nerves are also included in the fibrotic mass.

The process often begins as a migratory phlebitis. If an artery becomes involved, lymphocytes and leukocytes infiltrate all three layers of its wall. Intimal proliferation appears early and secondary thrombosis may follow. The artery, however, is often occluded by intimal proliferation alone. In the veins only thrombosis is found. Giant cells appear and recanalization progresses slowly. The nerves show an ischemic neuritis. Wallerian degeneration and evidence of lymphocytic infiltration (Barker) occur. The nutrient vessels of the nerves are thrombosed.

The disproportion between the extensive occlusion of the large main arteries and the trifling nutritional disturbances is astonishing. Even occlusion of the femoral artery is not regularly followed by gangrene (Jaeger).

### *Symptoms and Signs*

*Migratory Phlebitis.* Some of the earliest symptoms are provoked by the migratory phlebitis. The incidence of this phenomenon is estimated at 70 per cent, although some find it in only 10 per cent of their cases (Telford and Stopford). We noted it in about 20 per cent of our material. Inquiry should be made about red painful areas on the dorsum of the foot, particularly in the vicinity of the ankles or the lower leg, as well as on the lower arm. Usually nonvaricose cutaneous veins are affected. Pain, redness and tenderness are found. Slight malaise and a little rise of temperature are present. Often a portion of the vein about 2 to 4 inches in length is involved. In some cases, however, the inflamed area is smaller and confusion with erythema nodosum or erythema induratum of Bazin occurs. The period of acute inflammation lasts about 10 to 12 days and is followed by brown pigmentation. One gains the definite impression that the adventitia and the neighboring tissue participate in the inflammatory process.

Whenever a migratory phlebitis appears it should arouse the suspicion that a thromboangitis exists or is developing, thereby requiring a careful examination of the peripheral arterial circulation.

*Pain.* One of the earliest symptoms is pain. In general it is more severe than the pain in atherosclerotic peripheral vascular disease, but all degrees between mild pain and excruciating agony are encountered. Often the pain appears for the first time after exposure to cold.

Intermittent claudication is found in 98 per cent of cases (Goldsmith and Brown). It is felt not only in the calf but also in the foot. This pain is not knife-like; rather it resembles a cramp. As in angina pectoris, which has the same mechanism, the pain often occurs after progressively shorter intervals and lasts longer after cessation of activity. Rest pain may be due to impending trophic disturbances such as ulcers or gangrene. The rest pain is caused by the arteritis and phlebitis as well as the concomitant inflammation in the surrounding tissue. It is also a result of the involvement of the nerves, so called ischemic neuritis. The latter condition in particular causes pain of unusual intensity. The sharp shooting lancinating pain is felt in the whole extremity. The patient may consume large quantities of narcotics without much benefit. Lack of sleep and lack of food cause rapid loss of weight. There is no satisfactory treatment for this type of pain, although even chordotomy has been performed for its relief. It is a difficult task to bring the patient through this period, occasionally possible only by the repeated assurance that the pain is of temporary character. It may last, however, for many months and has even driven patients to suicide.

Occasionally the pain due to tissue dystrophy is partly relieved when the leg is kept down. Patients may sit day and night on the edge of the bed holding the involved foot (which is crossed over the healthy leg) in their hands, massaging it and letting it hang down from time to time. This ischemic pain is often aggravated by coexistent vascular spasm initiated by the involvement of the adventitia and causing irritation of autonomic nerves; the spasm is accompanied by blanching. If the tests described above show that spasm is responsible to an appreciable degree, its abolition brings quick relief.

*Other Symptoms and Signs.* Heaviness and weakness in the legs as well as paresthesias are early symptoms.

Edema is caused by increased venous pressure and damage to the capillary endothelium. In some cases ulcers and gangrene appear in or between the toes early in the process.

The signs of arterial obstruction discussed on the preceding pages are observed on examination. At the beginning and sometimes persistently, the process is unilateral. Femoral pulses may be absent in patients who come with trifling complaints. If the interosseal and digital arteries alone are involved the peripheral pulses obtained at the usual places may be normal. Fungus infections cause early complications and should be searched for assiduously. Occasionally the arm arteries are also affected — cases are known in which amputation of all four extremities was necessary. However, if the upper extremities are affected it is rarely necessary to amputate more than a finger.

The appearance of symmetrical vascular changes in the arms may simulate a Raynaud-like picture. Among 389 cases of thromboangitis obliterans the legs alone were involved in 74 per cent, both arms and legs in 24 per cent, and the arms alone in only 2 per cent (Brown).

Fever may be present. The sedimentation rate is usually increased.

### *Course*

The course of the disease varies. Progress may be very slow or stormy. Some cases manifest no more symptoms than those of recurrent thrombophlebitis and the arterial involvement is discovered only by careful examination. These patients have no other complaints during a long period of observation. In some who complain of intermittent claudication, years elapse between exacerbations. With canalization and development of sufficient collateral circulation, symptoms may even gradually disappear. In other observations, the advance may be rapid and the first episode may lead to gangrene. Sometimes the process is fulminating, from the beginning leading within a few days to the purple discoloration of developing gangrene.

The course is unpredictable, but with modern treatment the necessity for amputation is much rarer than formerly. This is partly due to the fact that amputation is performed much later than previously. We have learned that despite very advanced nutritional changes, remarkable improvement may appear suddenly, even when amputation seems inevitable.

### *Differential Diagnosis*

This may offer great difficulties, particularly in men over 50 when the condition must be distinguished from atherosclerosis. The presence of a migratory phlebitis is of diagnostic importance. The discovery of calcified vessels in x-ray pictures of the legs has small value in patients over 50 because it is so common in the average individual of this age without peripheral vascular disease. It has been claimed that arteriography shows a different pattern of anastomoses in thromboangitis obliterans as compared with atherosclerosis (Edwards).

Confusion of thromboangitis obliterans with ingrown toenails occurs and may lead to unnecessary and detrimental operations.

The differentiation of the condition from Paynaud's disease or peripheral embolism is usually easy.

### *Treatment*

Treatment cannot be directed against the etiologic factor of thromboangitis obliterans. As soon as the disease is recognized by the discovery of a disturbed peripheral blood supply, active therapeutic measures should be undertaken to prevent further damage to the peripheral circulation and to improve collateral circulation. It seems that in most cases, careful observation of the measures discussed below can prevent gangrene and amputation. Even if new exacerbations cannot be prevented with certainty, much can be accomplished.

*Hygienic Measures.* Since the arterial blood supply to the tissues is diminished, the first efforts should be directed against any increased demands, if these demands cannot be fulfilled. Nutritional changes are the consequence. Rest is therefore necessary. Local heat, which was widely used in the past, is strictly forbidden. With increased tissue temperature, the metabolism and therefore

the oxygen requirements rise. This is not compensated by an increased speed of oxygen dissociation from hemoglobin with the result that gangrene may follow the application of heat. Rest is indicated in the presence of wound, gangrene or the appearance of rest pain. Since trauma and infection impose greater demands for blood and the tendency to venous thromboses they should be carefully avoided. Fungus infections in particular are responsible in many cases for the aggravations and complications in the disease. Living in a warm climate is beneficial.

Antibiotics are given for streptococcus infections and penicillin is injected if need be even intra arterially (Glasser et al). If fungus infections are present the patient should bathe his feet twice daily for thirty minutes in a 1:3000 solution of potassium permanganate or soak them in Dakin's solution or in a warm boric acid solution. The same treatment is used if gangrene or ulcers exist. The resistance of the body to infections and sepsis is much greater in thromboangitis than it is in peripheral atherosclerosis.

Without the indications for bed rest mentioned above the patient may be up and about, although too much walking should be discouraged. With severe pain the dependent position of the leg may bring relief. This position however should not be maintained too long otherwise the formation of edema is favored which also impairs tissue nutrition.

If patients walk more slowly than they usually do the pain appears either much later or not at all.

Talcum and dusting powders should be used freely to keep the feet dry.

The shoes should be comfortable and should be changed often. The socks should be made of soft wool. Bed socks are of value. Constricting elastic bands (garters) should be avoided. The nails should be carefully trimmed and meticulous care should be taken to avoid every injury. The nails should not be trimmed too short and the cutting should be straight across. In order to avoid ingrown toenails an important complication capable of producing serious consequences the patient or physician should file the surface of the nail of the big toe in order to relieve lateral pressure.

The feet should be bathed at least twice daily, they should be dried carefully with particular attention paid to the interdigital spaces. If the skin is too dry lanolin should be used. If perspiration exists talcum powder should be applied often. The legs and feet should always be kept warm.

Operative removal of bunions is prohibited. For corns an ointment containing salicylic acid may be used but with great caution. A callus should be treated with sandpaper. The patient should not sit with his legs crossed. Overeating should be avoided but no special diet is necessary.

A fundamental rule in the therapy of thromboangitis is strict abstinence from smoking. The greatest stress must be laid on this advice. It is a repeatedly confirmed fact that smoking even one cigarette not only increases blood pressure and heart rate but lowers skin temperature as well. While there is no convincing proof that tobacco is an etiologic factor there is no doubt that smoking even a

few cigarettes may cause a severe relapse it may prevent wounds from healing and may cause new areas of gangrene to appear. One observer followed 100 patients with thromboangitis obliterans who stopped smoking for over 10 years. The disease was completely arrested in all cases (Silbert). It does not suffice to tell the patient not to smoke. The dangers of smoking must be explained in detail to the patient and he should be informed that gangrene and mutilating operations are avoidable only if smoking is completely omitted. The detrimental effect of tobacco in peripheral vascular disease was known for many decades but the importance of this factor in the treatment of thromboangitis obliterans has been appreciated only in the last 25 years.

*Heat Treatment* The damage resulting from exposure to cold and the benefit of warm temperature was recognized early and led to the application of warmth by different means (diathermy, sitz baths). The warm foot bath as well as the contrast bath and heat cradle were widely used although often with detrimental effects. The damage done by heat applied directly to undernourished tissue was explained above. It is far safer to attempt to dilate the vessels to stimulate and improve collateral circulation in the legs by immersing the healthy arms up to the elbows into water at 40 C or more simply by applying a heating pad to the abdomen.

*Active Vascular Exercise* In order to improve collateral circulation Buerger introduced vascular exercise. It has been widely used in the past. The legs are at first elevated to an angle of about 60 degrees and kept in this way two to three minutes until blanching occurs. This is best done if the back of an inverted chair is used for support. The patient should then dangle the legs for three to five minutes until maximal flushing develops. This procedure is repeated five times and at each of three or four daily sessions. These exercises as well as the procedures discussed in the two following paragraphs are contraindicated if an infection or an open wound exists. The value of this therapy has not however been proved.

*Passive Vascular Exercise* Another method of physical therapy is called suction and pressure treatment. The involved extremity is put into a hermetically sealed boot. Alternately high and low pressure is introduced within the boot for the purpose of expelling blood from the vessels with the high pressure and drawing blood into the dilated vessels during the low pressure period. Similar methods of treatment have been known for more than a century but recently were revived and improved. The original very enthusiastic reports have given way to some skepticism concerning the value of this treatment. Here again there is no proof of an improvement of blood flow.

Based on the finding that venous compression if sufficiently prolonged causes a reactive hyperemia similar to that of arterial occlusion intermittent venous occlusion by means of a special apparatus was recommended for treatment of peripheral vascular disease. Success with this treatment has been reported repeatedly although some authors are somewhat skeptical. We find no advantage in using any of these methods in the treatment of thromboangitis obliterans.



*Drugs* : This treatment is often neglected in favor of the methods discussed above. Caution is in order. If strong general vasodilators are used the blood flow in the diseased extremity may diminish for obvious reasons.

Papaverine, one of the most active vasodilators, is hardly ever used in the treatment of peripheral vascular disease. The vasodilating effect is slight if the drug is given orally. Intravenous and intramuscular injection are more effective but the vasodilatation is evanescent.

Much too rarely used in our opinion are preparations of theobromine or theophylline. The vasodilating effect of these agents is small if given orally in the usual doses but they are powerful and the action is prolonged when given intravenously. We feel that the most active drugs are aminophylline (theophylline with ethylenediamine) and theophylline sodium acetate. We prefer the latter because no reactions follow its intravenous administration. Five to ten ml of a 10 per cent solution are injected intravenously every day for 15 days. The injection is performed slowly. The improvement in some cases is astonishing. The patients can walk farther without pain in the calves, the leg feels warmer and wounds heal faster. The series of injections can be repeated whenever indicated. Apart from rare instances of idiosyncrasy, no untoward results are seen even from prolonged treatment. One begins with 5 ml and gives 1 more ml every day. If the full dose of 10 ml stimulates the patient too much, 6 or 8 ml are given. If theophylline sodium acetate is not available, aminophylline in the dose of 0.25 Gm is injected very slowly.

Between the series of injections, suppositories containing aminophylline may be used, one suppository of 0.5 Gm once or twice daily.

Many other measures are recommended but are much less useful.

Since spontaneous gangrene of the extremities was believed to be associated with an increased viscosity of the blood, infusions of sodium chloride to decrease this effect have been advised. Later the injection of 150–300 ml of a 5 per cent sodium chloride solution was recommended for the same purpose (Silbert). Two to three injections are given weekly and continued for many months. This treatment temporarily met with great popularity but has been abandoned in most places. Chills, hepatitis and venous thrombosis sometimes follow the injections.

More success is obtained with injections of foreign protein, particularly typhoid vaccine. Triple typhoid vaccine (Lederle) or typhoid H antigen (Eli Lilly) are used. The doses must be small in order that chills or a steep rise of temperature with accompanying vasospasm be avoided. The first dose is around 5 million organisms; this dose is increased slowly in the following injections, which are given every third to fourth day. The injection is repeated only if the effects of the previous one have disappeared entirely. The use of larger doses has been followed by arterial thrombosis, presumably caused by vascular spasm during the chill (Allen and Smithwick).

Choline derivatives were also employed as vasodilators. The original method of administration by the intravenous route has been abandoned because too

many untoward effects were noted. Iontophoresis with acetyl beta methyl choline chloride (Mecholyl) has been used in some peripheral vascular diseases with little success. Histamine iontophoresis has also been tried. Priscoline (tolazoline) an adrenergic blocking substance is often used but this may cause cardiac pain.

Reportedly the administration of muscle extracts and of insulin free pancreatic extract has been recommended. The best known preparation Depropriner is given intramuscularly in doses of 2 ml twice weekly. Proof that this treatment is beneficial however is still lacking in our opinion.

Based on reports of vasodilating action of estrogens and the observation that thromboangitis obliterans is rare in women the use of estrogens was advocated. Recently androgens were also reported to be of benefit. Here again the opinions of authorities differ. Benefit is reported by some no effect by others.

Mild adrenergic blocking agents such as Ildar (azapetine) may yield some effect when vasoconstriction exists. Arlidine acts in a similar way.

In the treatment of these cases it should not be forgotten that one of the most pleasant remedies for many patients and at the same time a very active vaso dilator is alcohol. It should be given often. During an acute exacerbation with excruciating pain large doses may give more relief than any other drug and may tide the patient over a critical period.

**Surgical Measures** For patients with intolerable pain crushing or blocking of nerves was recommended. These procedures do not always help and as was pointed out some of these patients have even required a chordotomy as the final possible therapeutic step after all other measures were unavailing.

Therapeutic sympathectomy is done only in selected cases. It should never be performed following an acute exacerbation or in patients whose complaints are only of short duration. One must be satisfied that arterial spasm contributes greatly to the clinical picture before undertaking it. However the response to sympathetic block may be poor while sympathectomy helps. Block may lead to damage of the cord and nerve roots. It helps only for about 8 hours.

Excision of the second third and fourth lumbar ganglia provides good results. Vascular spasm is eliminated sweating is abolished and the legs become warmer. In cases of gangrene it is well to avoid operation. There is also no certainty of therapeutic success in intermittent claudication. Preganglionic sympathectomy has been recommended as the most beneficial procedure (Adson). The necessity and advantage of this operation in a given case should receive serious consideration. This mortality is estimated to amount to about 2 per cent. The morbidity after the operation also deserves consideration. The tonus of the peripheral vessels recurs after a few months and they show greater sensitivity to the action of adrenalin.

In recent years surgical restoration of the lumen of arteries by extirpation of the occluded area and end to end anastomosis has been attempted.

Periarterial sympathectomy recommended by Leriche was abandoned when it was shown that the vasoconstrictor nerves run with the peripheral mixed nerves and join the peripheral arteries segmentally.

### ATHEROSCLEROTIC PERIPHERAL VASCULAR DISEASE

Atherosclerosis (arteriosclerosis obliterans senile gangrene endarteritis obliterans) is the most frequent peripheral vascular disease and as pointed out earlier with thromboangitis obliterans comprises about 95 per cent of all peripheral vascular cases

Peripheral vascular disease of diabetes (diabetic gangrene) is often separated in the discussion of this subject but fundamentally it concerns the same pathologic anatomic subject and the clinical manifestations are identical. The fact that the disease occurs in diabetic individuals however is responsible for its earlier appearance the poor tendency to heal once ulcerations are established and the frequency of secondary infection

#### *Incidence*

The disease usually is encountered in persons over 50 years of age but it may appear much earlier in diabetics. Women with the exception of diabetics are less often affected than men the ratio being about 6 to 1. The condition is often unilateral. The arms are rarely involved. One third of the patients have hypertension.

#### *Pathology*

The pathologic changes are those of atherosclerosis with the same manifestations and symptoms as discussed in previous chapters in connection with atherosclerosis in other parts of the body. The frequent involvement of the arteries in the lower extremities as compared to the rarity of the condition in the upper extremities has often been the subject of discussion. In general the atherosclerotic process increases with the distance from the heart. The descending aorta shows more involvement than the ascending aorta the abdominal aorta is even more affected and atherosclerosis is most common in the lower legs. This is not due to an increased blood pressure in the lower extremities as was long believed for the pressure differences between the upper and lower extremities are not great. The upright posture of man is not responsible because the process is common in animals. As a matter of interest the first case of intermittent claudication due to atherosclerosis was described in the horse by a veterinarian.

Atherosclerosis of the leg arteries often is very pronounced although the patient is symptom free. This is usually explained by the fact that the process has not as yet led to arterial occlusion, if this did happen the occlusion occurred so slowly that adequate time was available for the development of a collateral circulation.

Atherosclerosis causes vascular occlusion by fibrosis or by thrombosis which may involve large or small arteries. In 90 per cent of amputated legs two or more vessels are occluded.

When symptoms and signs of ischemia appear (rest pain trophic pain) one or more vessels are completely occluded.

Atheromatous debris from atheromatous patches in the aorta may cause peripheral embolism (Flory)

The veins are rarely involved and in contradistinction to thromboangitis obliterans there is no evidence of inflammation. Thus factor the intimal atherosclerosis and the absence of intimal proliferation permit the histologic differentiation from thromboangitis obliterans.

The clots undergo hyaline and fibrotic changes; secondary calcification also occurs. In time there is some recanalization. The media is often thin due to degenerative processes.

### *Symptoms and Signs*

The complaints of the patient and the objective findings are very similar to those of thromboangitis obliterans. The picture is modified by the rarity of thrombophlebitis and by the minor role of arterial spasm. Presumably this results from the absence of adventitial and periarterial inflammation and the absence of nerve involvement.

*Intermittent claudication is the most common complaint and often involves only the toe or the heel. The pain may appear at night and at rest and may be relieved if the covers are removed and the leg is exposed to the cooler air of the room. Post pain may also disappear if the legs are kept in a dependent position. Patients often feel better if they walk at night when the pain appears and they are relieved if the upper end of the bed is elevated so that the legs are the lowest part of the body.*

These spontaneous nocturnal pains should not be confused with the night cramps in the calf that were mentioned earlier.

Narästhesias are often present. One of the earliest symptoms is fatigue and heaviness of the legs.

Sudden aggravation occurs if an arterial thrombus forms. Under these circumstances the picture varies. Sometimes gangrene with intolerable pain may appear within a few days. Other patients have redness and swelling of a to or a part of the foot resulting in the development of an ulcer. Sometimes there are no signs of impaired tissue nutrition but intermittent claudication and other complaints increase in intensity.

Due to the development of collateral circulation slow spontaneous improvement of the condition is not rare.

Even if the involved artery becomes occluded the paroxysms of rest pain particularly at night never reach the severity that characterizes thromboangitis obliterans. In the rare case of extreme vasospasm petechiae develop in the lower leg (Hines and Barker).

The sign are those of arterial occlusion and diminished blood supply to the extremity. It is important to realize that patients with atherosclerosis of the leg arteries may complain of intermittent claudication without showing evidence of diminished blood supply in the superficial tissues.

Gangrene may appear after a spontaneous thrombosis. In most cases thrombosis of a peripheral atherosclerotic artery is the result of the rupture of a giant capillary in the intima as in coronary thrombosis. Gangrene often follows the least trauma and infection.

Röntgenologic demonstration of lime salt deposits in the vascular wall provides little help for the diagnosis. It is sometimes not seen in spite of marked nutritional disturbances resulting from atherosclerosis. In many cases it is very pronounced when the arteries are patent and circulation is normal. Monckeberg's medial sclerosis does not disturb the blood supply to the tissues. In this condition concentric incomplete rings are found while in atherosclerosis diffusely distributed plaque-like densities are seen.

### *Clinical Course*

All variations are seen. Within a few days gangrene may follow thrombosis in a patient without previous complaints; in others a long duration of intermittent claudication over many years may be noted without complications or exacerbations. Prognosis therefore is difficult. In one series of patients with obliterative atherosclerosis of the leg vessels 54.6 per cent died after an interval of three years (Hines and Barler).

If accidental complications such as coronary occlusion or heart failure do not hasten the end, progress of the condition may lead to gangrene. Arrest of the disease is much rarer than in thromboangitis obliterans and amputation is therefore more common.

The separation of gangrenous parts from healthy tissues often takes many months. It is astonishing how painless this is in some cases, particularly when dry gangrene develops. Cellulitis, lymphangitis and other infections are common especially in diabetic patients.

The appearance of atherosclerotic disturbances in the arteries of the legs in diabetics has been said by some to be independent of the severity of the diabetes, its relative duration and even from therapy, while others find it more commonly in neglected cases. It appears in diabetics 10 times more often than in comparable age groups of controls.

### *Treatment*

The treatment consists of the same general hygiene and the avoidance of injurious factors such as excessive heat and cold, trauma and fungus infections as discussed in the section on thromboangitis obliterans. Smoking is absolutely forbidden although abstinence does not prevent progression of the process. The use of alcohol is permissible.

A daily bath is enforced with cautious drying. Lanolin is used to soften the skin. Corn pads may be worn but no local chemical applications are permissible.

Among the various drugs mentioned in the preceding chapter only aminophylline (theophylline) in the form of suppositories and intravenous injections have yielded satisfactory results for us. We wish to stress that we do not know of any other medical therapy that is equally efficient.

Depropanex given once daily for the first week and then gradually less often has been recommended. Its action may stem from its content of adenosine phosphate.

The administration of anticoagulants is recommended for 2 to 3 weeks when thrombosis seems to threaten. This event cannot, however, be predicted and the preventive power of anticoagulants appears doubtful to us, since vascular thrombosis (like coronary thrombosis) seems often to be caused by rupture of a giant capillary in the atherosclerotic lesion.

Blocking of nerves for the relief of pain is necessary much less often than in thromboangitis obliterans.

The value of such various methods of physiotherapy as suction and pressure is even more debatable than it is in thromboangitis. Postural active exercises are recommended.

The appearance of gangrene or ulcers necessitates bathing the feet in solutions of permanganate or of boric acid. The involved parts are kept dry with a mixture of 20 per cent boric acid and 80 per cent talcum.

Opinions concerning the value of preganglionic sympathectomy are more divided than in thromboangitis obliterans. Most observers are opposed to operation since the contribution of vascular spasm to the general picture is small in atherosclerosis. Naturally the operation is performed in this disease only if the presence of arterial spasm is revealed by the measurement of temperature on the involved area before and after vasodilatation. Gangrene has followed the operation despite the fact that skin temperature rose to 30° C. after dilatation. Return of vascular tone after operation is common. It seems that postoperatively the vessels develop an increased sensitivity to adrenalin.

De Bikes et al. observed improvement in 85 per cent of patients without gangrene following sympathectomy. Even with imminent gangrene extremities could be salvaged. Major on the other hand found a significant improvement of intermittent claudication in only 9 of 54 patients following sympathectomy.

In patients with intermittent claudication tenotomy of the tendon Achilles has been recommended. Boyd et al. had a good result in 22 of 24 patients and not one patient was unrelieved. The operation is done subcutaneously. The rationale is not clear. Hamilton and Wilson had the operation performed with success in 4 of their patients.

In segmental atherosclerotic occlusion resection of the involved part and replacement by autogenous vein grafts or homologous veins (saphenous, superficial femoral) and bypass surgery has been attempted with success (Julian et al.).

Mortality from operations is reduced with the use of refrigeration anesthesia.

## NARROWING AND THROMBOSIS OF THE INTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY

Thrombotic occlusion of the internal carotid artery of atherosclerotic origin is a common condition. It has been found in 3 per cent of routine autopsies; one observer found 45 such patients within two years. The frequency of this condition was first stressed by Moniz et al.

Men between the ages of 35 and 65 years provide most examples. The patient experiences unilateral frontal headache, pain around the eye, nausea and vomiting. Muscular weakness appears with drowsiness or temporary loss of consciousness or paresis in one arm or one side of the body. Temporary hemihypesthesia or paresthesia occurs, as does complete but often temporary hemiplegia.

Aphasia occurs. In repeated attacks the same pattern is observed. Tinnitus, paresthesias and unilateral blurring of vision are noted. Cataracts develop early; total blindness may occur. Facial atrophy may develop while convulsions with loss of consciousness and epileptic attacks have also been described. The combination of homolateral blindness and contralateral cerebral lesions is characteristic.

Palpation reveals the absence of pulsation of the internal carotid artery along the anterior border of the upper sternocleidomastoid muscle and in the fossa tonsillaris. But even when pulsations are found the possibility of a thrombus situated higher up should be considered. Most often the thrombosis is located at the origin of the artery.

Men are more often affected than women. The lesion occurs more often on the left side. Both carotid arteries may be occluded by thrombi without consequences if the circle of Willis functions well.

An arteriogram is rarely necessary and is not recommended because of the dangers involved.

The course varies. Some patients have only narrowing of the artery with attacks of the above described symptoms and signs coming on repeatedly over a period of many months. Others die immediately after thrombosis of the artery.

Anticoagulants should be given permanently to patients with incomplete occlusion.

In several patients a successful resection of the thrombosed artery and direct anastomosis of the ends was performed (Denman et al., Fawcett et al.).

The first portion of the carotid artery is second to the abdominal aorta in its liability to atherosclerosis.

## ARTERIAL EMBOLISM AND THROMBOSIS

### *Etiology*

Embolism of the arteries in the arm or leg occurs most often in patients with cardiac disease. In patients with atrial fibrillation the emboli come from thrombi in the atria; in one autopsy study it was found that 43.3 per cent of patients with rheumatic heart disease and atrial fibrillation had atrial thrombi (Gruen). Emboli often arise from thrombi in the left atrium — e.g. in the course of mitral stenosis. In myocardial lesions they originate from mural thrombi in the left ventricle.

particularly in coronary disease with myomatosis and in myocarditis. Cardiac disease was present in over 69 per cent of a series of cases with peripheral arterial embolism (Pearse). Emboli also arise from thrombi formed in aortic aneurysms or from atheromatous patches on the aorta.

With a patent foramen ovale emboli are transferred into the greater circulation from thrombi originating in the pelvic veins or the veins of the lower extremities (paradoxical embolism). This phenomenon is not as rare as is commonly believed. On two occasions one of us saw at necropsy the embolus caught just half way through the patent foramen ovale.

Emboli usually impinge where arteries divide particularly at the bifurcation of the common femoral into brachial or popliteal arteries. Embolism is particularly common in the posterior tibial artery.

Additional (secondary) thrombus formation following an embolism is a common event. It occurs mostly centripetally and may spread a long distance up the vessel and occlude the important collateral arteries.

It is sometimes extremely difficult to differentiate primary arterial thrombosis from embolism. If evidence of arterial occlusion appears in a patient with peripheral vascular sclerosis thrombosis is more probable. Arterial embolism is more probable in patients with cardiac involvement. Arterial thrombosis is occasionally seen in severe infectious diseases which frequently damage the vascular endothelium. It is rarely observed following operations.

Embolism in bacterial and subacute bacterial endocarditis was discussed earlier.

### *Pathologic Physiology*

The consequences of arterial occlusion by embolism and thrombosis depend upon the location of the occlusion and the availability of a collateral circulation. The latter will develop easier with young elastic arteries than in peripheral atherosclerotic vessels of the aged.

In many cases of peripheral arterial embolism the initial dramatic clinical picture observed disappears completely within a few hours. Since the dissolution of the embolus is highly improbable presumably this improvement depends upon the disappearance of reflex arterial spasm which participates in the acute picture.

If patent vessels are available effective collateral circulation may develop quickly. For ligation of the main artery of a limb may be devoid of serious consequences. A radial pulse following ligation of the brachial artery may reappear within a few days. Embolism into the arteries of the upper extremities is rarely followed by gangrene.

Complete interruption of the blood supply to the muscles leads to their death within 6 to 8 hours while nerve fibers survive for about 12 to 24 hours.

### *Symptoms and Signs*

Severe pain develops in many cases. There is no certainty that the pain will develop immediately or after a short interval. In all probability the original pain



is due to vascular spasm while pain appearing later is caused by ischemia. Often the pain is excruciating and requires the administration of large doses of morphine but some patients have relatively little pain or even none at all. In one series of peripheral arterial embolisms pain was reported in only 64 per cent of the cases in only 53 per cent did it appear immediately (Ryckert and Graham). With the development of gangrene late pain is the rule. In another study 59.5 per cent of the patients had sudden pain in 21.7 per cent numbness and coldness appeared suddenly and in 17 per cent the lesion was silent. Those patients without early pain are in greater danger of losing the limb or a part of it because the situation is not realized at once and treatment is not started. Time and again we have observed that the nursing staff paid no heed to the complaint of a patient about moderate pain in the lower leg and the physician was notified only after the lapse of many hours. Peripheral embolism is diagnosed earlier if the nursing personnel and physicians are embolism conscious.

With the pain or independent of it numbness and tingling with pins and needles sensation appear in the involved part of the limb. The affected limb feels cold.

The affected extremities may show a very pronounced initial pallor particularly if there is much arterial spasm. The cutaneous veins are empty. Cyanosis may be present from the beginning unless the veins are empty. Cyanosis together with mottling of the skin prevails in later stages. Wheals and blebs may appear within 36 hours particularly when the surrounding temperature is warm.

No peripheral pulse is found in the involved area. The part feels cold and assumes the room temperature when exposed to it. This coldness begins a few inches below the occlusion. It should be emphasized that the involved limb may feel warm if it was well covered or if heat was applied to it. Oscillometry shows no excursions and permits one to locate the occlusion. Muscular paralysis appears within 30 minutes the sensory nerves are disturbed and the reflexes are diminished or absent.

Fever with leukocytosis and an increased sedimentation rate appear. The patient shows evidence of toxemia.

### *Prognosis*

It is estimated that recovery occurs in about 50 per cent of patients with embolism or thrombosis even without surgical intervention. Spontaneous recovery was seen in 20 out of 36 cases (Ryckert and Graham) of occlusion of the femoral or popliteal artery. Owing to the seriousness of the general condition of the patient and the disease responsible for the embolism or thrombosis about 50 per cent of the cases in one series died within one month (Pearse).

### *Treatment*

Opiates must be given to relieve the acute pain. The involved extremity is kept warm but the application of heat should be avoided. The ingestion of alcohol is useful. In order to diminish the danger of secondary thrombosis heparin should

be started immediately. Fifty milligrams are given intravenously every 5 to 6 hours.

Collateral spasm is combatted by means of vasodilators. Papaverine in the dose of 0.03—0.06 Gm. is injected intravenously or into the artery of the involved extremity (Leiner). Theophylline or aminophylline is injected intravenously in the amount of 0.25—0.5 Gm.

Paravertebral block, epidural block or subarachnoid spinal anesthesia are used and often result in marked improvement.

In cases without gangrene experience with these conservative measures shows that the results obtained are as good as with embolectomy. In many cases, however, the development of gangrene cannot be prevented with conservative methods and therefore embolectomy will always retain its place. Different opinions are expressed on whether the therapeutic procedure should be purely conservative or surgical. In our opinion all the conservative measures discussed above should be instituted immediately. If there is no sign of resumption of blood flow within six hours embolectomy should be done provided the underlying disease is one in which postoperative survival can be expected.

If possible embolectomy should be done not later than 12 hours after the occlusion; however, successful operations have been performed after 24 hours. The chances of full recovery are less with belated performance of the operation since the arterial endothelium is so damaged that arterial thrombosis may develop despite a successful embolectomy. The problem is rendered difficult because it is not always easy to locate the site of the occlusion. Symmetrical gangrene may be caused by a riding embolus at the bifurcation of the aorta or peripheral embolism in both lower extremities.

Since the pioneer work of Key, successful embolectomy has been repeatedly performed in every major hospital. In one of our observations a riding embolism was diagnosed at the bifurcation of the aorta in a patient with a rheumatic mitral stenosis. During the transportation to the operating room the embolus split into two parts and the patient developed signs of an embolism in the popliteal artery of one leg and in the femoral artery of the other. The patient was operated on immediately by two surgeons, one working on each side, and survived the bilateral embolectomy. When last seen she was in satisfactory condition and could walk without complaints.

Sudden appearance of tingling in an extremity that previously was without sensation may indicate the recurrence of blood flow. Observation with the capillary microscope may reveal the presence of a slight circulation and encourage conservative treatment.

The opinions about the necessity for administering heparin are divided. One group of observers gives heparin immediately; another points out the dangers of embolectomy while a patient is under the influence of heparin. Furthermore, very serious and often lethal retroperitoneal hemorrhages have occurred when sympathetic block is performed during the administration of an

anticoagulant. Therefore anticoagulants are only given if one is reasonably certain that no embolectomy will be done.

### OCCCLUSION OF THE MESENTERIC VESSELS

Occlusion of the mesenteric vessels is a relatively common event especially in patients with atrial fibrillation bacterial endocarditis or atherosclerosis. It may derive from either embolism which occurs particularly in the two conditions mentioned first or thrombosis. Thrombosis is seen in atherosclerosis polycythemia infections and trauma. Compression by tumor is also provocative. Most frequently the superior mesenteric artery is involved. The veins may also become thrombosed.

Narrowing of the mesenteric arteries leads occasionally to the picture of abdominal angina the dyspraxia abdominalis intermittens arteriosclerotica of Ortnier. The pain is periumbilical and appears one to one and a half hours after eating i. e. at the height of digestion.

In a venous occlusion prodromal signs may appear. An arterial occlusion starts dramatically.

An overwhelming steady and not colicky pain over the center of the abdomen appears and is accompanied by shock and vomiting. In some cases the pain is less severe and patients with small emboli may survive at times without surgical intervention. Infarction is not invariable. Occasionally the symptoms are those of an acute intestinal obstruction or peritonitis. Constipation or diarrhea is found. Leukocytosis nausea and vomiting appear. When seroanguinous fluid is found on peritoneal tap exploration is indicated (Mersheimer et al). The mortality even with an operation performed in time is about 90 per cent.

### OCCCLUSION OF THE ABDOMINAL AORTA

Thrombotic or embolic occlusion of the aorta may produce a dramatic picture. Few patients survive and death usually occurs within a few days. Cases are recorded however in which patients recovered and records exist in which an old complete occlusion of the abdominal aorta above the bifurcation was an incidental finding at post mortem. In some patients only intermittent claudication existed during life while in others no symptoms whatsoever were felt. In still other cases the onset of symptoms may be insidious (Leriche syndrome).

According to Shapiro occlusion of the abdominal aorta is found once in 1000 autopsies. It appears most often in males between 40 and 60 and rarely in younger subjects. The patient complains of fatigue in the legs and pain around the hips and back on walking. A systolic murmur may be heard over the abdominal aorta around the umbilicus (Covey). The lower extremities are cold and pale particularly when they are elevated.

Femoral pulses and oscillations on the legs are absent. Stable erection is impossible. Wasting of one or both thighs occurs. Thrombosis occurs in atherosclerosis while embolism is most common in rheumatic mitral stenosis. Usually

they are combined since an original embolism usually leads to a secondary thrombosis. The diagnosis of this condition and its separation from multiple embolism in the arterial tree often is very difficult.

It is hard to explain how the collateral circulation is maintained in those patients who develop an occlusion of the lower abdominal aorta without symptoms. Embolectomy has been successful in some cases.

Patients may survive this syndrome for 10 years but sooner or later gangrene appears.

Recently many successful attempts have been made to resect the thrombosed portion of the aorta followed by end to end anastomosis.

## SYNDROMES OF GANGRENE OF THE UPPER EXTREMITIES

### *Dead Fingers*

So called dead fingers are not uncommon in otherwise healthy individuals. The frequency of this phenomenon in the general population is estimated to be as high as 20 per cent. The incidence is equal in both sexes.

Often the patient suffered from chilblains in childhood. With the onset of puberty (and sometimes in children no more than 9 years old) one or more fingers occasionally exhibit a cadaverous pallor usually beginning at the tip and spreading centrally. The episode lasts for only a few minutes. Numbness is present and tingling with pain is felt when the circulation returns. There is redness due to vasodilatation, the consequence of accumulated metabolites with the return of circulation. The symptoms are sometimes symmetrical. Rarely the toes are also involved.

Usually the condition is hereditary, sometimes it occurs in siblings. It appears most often while the person is swimming in cold water. Occasionally it develops without exposure to low temperatures but it never occurs for emotional reasons and is never progressive. These two factors readily distinguish this phenomenon from Raynaud's syndrome.

Rubbing and massage of the finger accelerates the return of the circulation in some cases.

The condition is harmless and requires no treatment. It may disappear spontaneously in the course of several years. No nutritional disturbances are visible. Hyperexcitability of the peripheral vessels which makes them react abnormally to cooling is considered the relevant cause.

### *Raynaud's Disease and Phenomenon*

The Raynaud phenomenon is sometimes found in periarteritis nodosa, thromboangiitis obliterans (here rarely symmetrical) with cervical ribs in the scalenus anticus syndrome and other conditions discussed in the following pages. One speaks of Raynaud's disease when an observation period over several years

reveals no etiology for the condition. As opposed to Raynaud's phenomenon Raynaud's disease is usually symmetrical.

Raynaud's phenomenon comprises cases of intermittent pallor and cyanosis on exposure to cold. This is also a characteristic sign of Raynaud's disease. Long after Maurice Raynaud's paper appeared it was shown that all but one of his cases actually belonged to another related group of lesions but his description is so classic that his name should be retained for this syndrome. In order to avoid confusion however we will discuss here chiefly the condition which should bear the name Raynaud's disease.

In the majority of cases it involves young women although it does occur in men (Hines and Christensen). There is also a hereditary factor. Sometimes the patients are neuropathic but otherwise they are usually healthy. In many patients the alterations may involve the toes as well.

On sudden exposure to cold or on excitement a few or all fingers and some times even parts of the hand show a marked purple blue cyanosis or pallor. Cyanosis is more common. It has been shown that the white appearance of the fingers is found only if the blood is massaged out of the part, flows out on elevation or is pressed out by reflex spasm. Temporary return of the blood flow causes a pink color that quickly turns to blue if the circulation stops again. The order of the color change stressed so strongly in the older literature on this subject is of no importance. Pain may be excruciating particularly with the return of the normal circulation. The involved parts of the extremities often perspire profusely.

The excitement that initiates the attack may be a minor one. Attacks may appear during ward rounds, they may even be caused by a sudden knock on the door (Hunt). An attack may even appear if the patient sits quietly in a room with the temperature of only  $18^{\circ}\text{C}$ . The critical temperature initiating an attack varies in different cases.

The lesion is often progressive. The attacks last longer and occur more often. Sometimes the vascular spasm relaxes only after many hours. Trophic disturbances develop in such cases. There are small areas of necrosis in the skin over the fingers, gangrene of large areas does not appear. The skin becomes atrophic and there are disturbances of pigmentation. The nails show trophic changes and decalcification with atrophy can be demonstrated early in the terminal phalanges by x ray. Symmetrical gangrene appears.

According to Raynaud the disease is a vasoneurosis resulting from a disturbance of the sympathetic nervous system. It has been shown however that attacks also occur after interruption of the sympathetic nerve pathways. The essential factor in most cases seems to be an abnormal excitability of the digital arteries to cold. Participation of the smaller arterioles and venules in the spasm has not been demonstrated. It has also been shown that it is possible to elicit the attacks regularly by exposing the fingers to water at a temperature between  $15$  and  $18^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 10 to 20 minutes (Lewis). If the hands are exposed to water under  $10^{\circ}\text{C}$  attacks do not occur. Attacks appear however when the

body is cooled and the fingers are kept warm. warming the body may relieve the attack.

While the investigations by Lewis and his co-workers make an abnormal reaction of the digital arteries most probable as an etiologic factor, it is possible that an abnormal reaction to sympathetic impulses is important. Although the fact that the attacks may persist after sympathectomy speaks strongly in favor of Lewis' conception.

In typical Raynaud's disease there is no evidence of occlusion of larger arteries. In more advanced stages intimal thickening of the digital arteries appears with secondary occlusion of small vessels partly by thrombosis and makes the appearance of nutritional disturbances and gangrene understandable. With the narrowing of the lumen in these arteries even a slight increase in vascular tone on exposure to cold may interrupt the blood flow (Lewis).

With regard to therapy, patients are advised to keep the hands warm and to avoid exposing other parts of the body to cooler temperature. If possible the patients should move to a milder climate.

Temporary improvement has been reported with ACTH and cortisone. Priscoline (20-50 mg three times a day) and Lomacal help some patients.

Cervical sympathectomy affords good results. Even if the attacks recur after some time or remain, they are milder, shorter and less frequent. Operations are inadvisable in very advanced stages when arterial obstruction is present. The beneficial effect of neurosurgery proves that nervous factors play some part in the attacks. The gradual reappearance of pain after the operation may be due to an increased sensitivity of the vessels to adrenalin following sympathectomy.

Preganglionic operations are preferable in the upper extremities. The ramus of the second and third thoracic ganglia are divided. In the lower extremities extirpation of the second and third lumbar ganglia is necessary. Special care must be taken to avoid regeneration.

*Dermatomyositis* may cause heliotrope color of the skin, pigmentation, asthenia and the Paynaud phenomenon. It is occasionally associated with visceral disease which may precede the dermatomyositis. Recovery may occur but usually the illness is fatal.

In addition to the other syndromes leading to the appearance of Raynaud's phenomenon, those due to the presence of cold agglutinins (Hausen) and cold precipitable proteins (cryoglobulinemia) occasionally encountered in myeloma should be mentioned (Barr et al).

### *Scleroderma*

This is in many respects a mysterious disease of unknown etiology and one not susceptible to successful therapy. Since it is often seen in patients with Raynaud's phenomenon, it may be briefly discussed at this place.

Although a differentiation is made between generalized scleroderma and the localized form (sclerodactyly, acrosclerosis), it is not always possible to separate these conditions, for one may merge into the other.

The condition may start without vasomotor disturbances in other cases it begins after a typical Raynaud's syndrome. For the most part it affects young females; the ratio of incidence in the two sexes is 10 to 1 (Hunt).

The hands, feet and face are usually involved; the trunk is rarely affected. The skin becomes shiny; the normal wrinkles disappear and it is impossible to fold the skin at the finger tips. Flexion and extension of the fingers become difficult; the hair disappears; the nails grow slowly and show trophic disturbances. Sores and blisters appear at the tips of the tapering fingers.

If the face is involved the masklike facies becomes devoid of expression. The creases disappear and the mouth cannot be opened normally; the eyes cannot be closed in advanced cases. Disturbances of pigmentation appear. Histologically there is hypertrophy of the collagen tissue which causes constriction of the blood vessels (Matsui).

With greater involvement of the skin there is considerable vascular constriction but the disturbed nutrition of the skin is not the primary causative factor since the condition often occurs without vascular disturbances; moreover nutritional disturbances of other origin than Raynaud's fail to cause scleroderma.

Perhaps the lesion is of toxic origin; the possibility of an endocrine influence has been discussed. Posterior pituitary extracts have been administered. Often the process progresses very fast from the start and the prognosis is poor. Patients become crippled since they are unable to move the fingers. However patients may live with this illness in a tolerable condition over three decades.

Myocardial fibrosis and dysphagia with esophageal strictures indicate that the process may be generalized in some cases. The lungs, kidneys, adrenals, pancreas, larynx and tongue may also become involved although this is rare. When affected these parts show fibroblastic proliferation.

The disease may progress slowly. Treatment is purely symptomatic. Massage of the skin with olive oil brings some improvement. Iontophoresis with mecholyl and histamine has been recommended. Ganglionectomy is done and affords slight relief in cases in which a vasospastic component can be proved. Other observers have obtained no success from the operation.

Therapy with ACTH and cortisone causes temporary improvement. Exacerbations during therapy with corticotropin have been noted (Lunseth et al.). Treatment with veratrum alkaloids (1—3 mg of Veriloid three times daily) has been recommended (Fuller). Spontaneous remissions occur. Patients often die from heart failure.

Often *scleredema* is confused with *scleroderma*. In the former the hands are not involved; the skin is not atrophic and there is no depigmentation. It is a benign, self-limited edema of the face, arms and legs; pleural and pericardial effusions occur.

Atherosclerosis is separated from diffuse *scleroderma* only with difficulty. There is swelling of the collagen fibers of the skin; absorption of the terminal phalanges in the x-ray and cutaneous ulcers and gangrene.

*Cervical Rib and Scalenus Anticus Syndrome Hyperabduction  
and Costoclavicular Syndrome*

The occurrence of a cervical rib was known to Galen but disturbances caused by this abnormality have been recognized only in the last 70 years.

Cervical rib is not a rare abnormality. It may occur bilaterally. The brachial plexus and the subclavian artery travel over the cervical rib laterally and downward.

Cervical rib is more common in women than in men (Adson and Coffey). The first symptoms begin late (between the age of 25 and 50) presumably due to the fact that with advancing age the shoulder sags lower leading more readily to compression of the structures named above. In right handed persons the right side is much more often involved than the left.

The symptoms consist of burning pain sometimes of lancinating character felt mostly in the ulnar side of the arm and over the deltoid area. Numbness tingling and some hyperesthesia appear. The fingers and hand may be cold and discolored. A bluish hue or redness appears in some cases while pallor is present in others. There is abnormal perspiration and some swelling. Muscular weakness may be followed by trophic changes and even gangrene. The area of attachment of the scalenus muscle is often tender. The blood pressure on the involved side may be lower.

Sometimes x ray examination shows the presence of a cervical rib. Lifting the shoulder may furnish temporary relief (Falconer and Weddell) whereas sudden rotation of the head or downward movement of the shoulder may cause pain.

Opinions concerning the mechanism of the disturbances vary. The original explanation which is still accepted by most authorities attributes the lesion merely to compression of the subclavian artery. According to Lewis and Pickering damage of the endothelium leads to the formation of local thrombosis in the subclavian artery. Migration of these thrombi to the periphery causes ulcers and gangrene of the fingers. At post mortem one may actually find the subclavian artery imprisoned in dense bands (Ojienick). It is believed by some that irritation of the nerves also produces symptoms and signs. Since the lancinating pain cannot be explained by a disturbed arterial blood supply irritation of the sympathetic nerves in the brachial plexus was considered a factor. Irritation with resultant vascular spasm was advanced as the cause of the syndrome (Telford and Stopford). The presence of excessive perspiration in the involved area speaks in favor of the latter conception. In all probability a combination of these factors is significant.

Surgical intervention is indicated if there is evidence that the complaints are progressive. Resection of the cervical rib (if present) has been replaced by tenotomy of the scalenus anterior muscle at its attachment on the first or cervical rib (Adson and Coffey). The operation is usually but not invariably successful.



Even in the absence of a cervical rib similar peripheral vascular phenomena may appear due to the fact that the subclavian vessels and the brachial plexus are situated in the angle formed by the attachment of the scalenus anterior muscle and the first rib; the muscle or fibrotic bands may compress the artery and nerves under certain conditions (scalenus anticus syndrome). The deepest structure in the angle is the subclavian artery; above it follow the eighth cervical and first dorsal nerves. If a cervical rib is present the scalenus muscle enters on it.

In some cases particularly during deep inspiration the subclavian artery may be compressed between the clavicle and the ribs. One type of paradoxical pulse results from this compression; and in one personally observed patient a systolic murmur was heard over the subclavian artery in inspiration due to compression. Hyperabduction of the arm for a long period, e.g. sleeping on the hyperabducted arm, may also compress the subclavian artery between the clavicle and first rib and seriously diminish the blood supply to the arm. Pressure by crutches may cause a similar syndrome.

### *Some Other Types of Gangrene*

Syndromes associated with disturbed blood supply to the arms and production of gangrene are observed in several other conditions that are often confused with the Raynaud syndrome.

*Ball Thrombus in the Left Atrium.* This condition is found exclusively in rheumatic mitral stenosis and causes a rather typical clinical picture with cyanosis and gangrene of the fingers, toes, the tip of the nose and ear. It should be easily diagnosed and was discussed before.

*Infections.* Peripheral gangrene occurs following certain infections, e.g. syphilis, typhus, meningococcus infection and infrequently in rheumatic fever.

*Intoxications.* Ergot and phenol may cause peripheral gangrene. In some patients gangrene of fingers and toes has followed the injection of one ml. of a standard ergot preparation used in the treatment of migraine or in obstetrics. If the evaporation of phenol is prevented by a bandage local gangrene may follow.

*Symmetrical Gangrene of the Young; Symmetrical Gangrene of the Old.* Rarely these conditions develop within a few days without apparent cause. In the former an infection often precedes; atherosclerosis or tuberculosis may be responsible in the latter. But in young and in old patients symmetrical gangrene may develop in the absence of any other evidence of disease and particularly without signs of an infection or intoxication.

In a 65 year old man of this group observed by one of us dry symmetrical gangrene developed on all fingertips within a few days. There was no pain and no other evidence of disease.

*Hemoglobinuria.* Occasionally, cold hemoglobinuria may cause symmetrical gangrene. These patients usually have syphilis and may develop gangrene.

after exposure to cold. Damage of the vascular endothelium leads to arterial thrombosis.

*Diseases of the Central Nervous System* In some diseases particularly in anterior poliomyelitis, hemiplegia and syringomyelia disturbances of the circulation without gangrene are occasionally observed. The peripheral circulation is abnormal if the limb is not used and muscles are inactive.

*Diseases Caused by Vibrating Tools* Workers using vibrating tools pneumatic hammers, pounding machines in shoe factories, chisels and riveting machines may present a disturbance similar to Raynaud's syndrome. These patients show evidence of a disturbed blood supply in the fingers and hands; they are sensitive to cold and so forth. The syndrome disappears quickly if the workers change their occupation when the first symptoms of the Raynaud phenomenon start. But once established the condition usually persists even if the patient no longer uses such tools (Jepson). The pathophysiology is unknown. The endothelium is not involved and therefore serious nutritional lesions are missing.

*Other Factors* It may be mentioned again that in thromboangitis obliterans as well as in peripheral atherosclerosis a Raynaud like syndrome is occasionally observed.

Finally, symmetrical gangrene has been seen in simple cardiac failure and has been explained by a reflex vasoconstriction (Perry and Davis).

### ACROCYANOSIS

This condition formerly called a vasoneurosis appears almost exclusively in young women. Whether an endocrine imbalance is responsible is unknown.

The fingers and rarely the toes as well exhibit a marked cyanosis. They feel cold and swollen particularly during the winter. The patients also complain of excessive perspiration. Fissures occur in the skin over the fingertips and the nails are altered. Chilblains are common. Pain is absent. Cold aggravates the complaints and excessive warmth is also poorly tolerated. In warm temperatures as well as when it is excessively cold the fingers are somewhat purple in color.

In some instances the condition is purely symptomatic. It occurs for example in thromboangitis obliterans or after refrigeration.

The mechanism is unknown. Originally explained as an obstruction of venous drainage (Erben) it was believed later (Lewis and Landis) that the essential disturbance consists in an abnormal narrowing of the arterioles with widening of the capillaries and veins; this diminishes the blood supply and causes oxygen deficiency in the vessels of the subpapillary plexus. There is no vasomotor disturbance but only a local abnormal response in the arterioles. Others assume that dilatation and lack of response in the capillaries and venules of the skin slows blood flow.

The therapy is simple and consists merely in advising the patient to keep the hands warm.

## LIVIDO RETICULARIS

This condition characterized by mottled skin with focal bluish discolorations is recognized lately as a vascular disease. It occurs mostly in women and involves the legs and feet. Exacerbations occur in the summer months. According to Feldaker et al 30 per cent of the patients have hypertension 50 per cent have emotional instability. Particularly in cold weather numbness and pain appear vasospasm may be responsible but arterial occlusions are found. Ulcerations of the skin gangrene and loss of the toes and limbs are reported. Constriction blocking agents (hexamethonium) and sympathectomy are recommended.

## ERYTHROMELALGIA

This condition was originally described by Mitchell in 1874. Believed to be a rare vascular disease it is currently assumed to be a syndrome common to several conditions and not an entity in itself (Lewis).

There is a unilateral (rarely bilateral) painful red swelling limited to a part of the extremity usually the leg. The essential features are burning pain increased local heat increased pain on warming the involved area and on dependency improvement on cooling elevation and rest (Brown). The local heat has been explained by a dilatation of the arterioles the redness by a dilatation of capillaries and venules.

According to Sir Thomas Lewis the condition is the result of an abnormal response of the arteries to warmth. The skin is highly susceptible and sensitive to friction as well as to temperatures over 32°C. The disturbance depends upon the liberation of a specific substance (histamine?). The name Erythralgia has been proposed (Lewis). Smith and Allen refer to it as Erythromelgia.

A similar condition occurs after burns of the skin and is observed occasionally in polycythemia. It is not rare in thromboangitis obliterans.

The therapy consists in keeping the involved area cool. Good response has been observed after administration of epinephrine (Mufson) and the relief experienced after taking acetylsalicylic acid has been called specific (Smith and Allen). The condition may improve following sympathectomy.

## CAUSALGIA (REFLEX SYMPATHETIC DYSTROPHY) AND POST TRAUMATIC DISTURBANCES

Very painful circulatory disturbances are known to occur occasionally after trauma to a limb. Mitchell called this condition causalgia owing to the burning character of the pain.

Originally it was thought that the lesion was due to post traumatic spasm of the injured artery. Vascular spasm from mechanical irritation is known to every physician. The spastic vein which scarcely permits the introduction of a cannula and the spastic artery met with in experiments on animals are well known to medical students. Prolonged arterial spasm lasting for hours has been observed

following blunt trauma. It was gradually recognized however that vasodilatation and not spasm is responsible for many of the symptoms and signs of cruralgia and that nerve irritation alone without any trauma to an artery may be the essential factor.

Prolonged bombardment of the spinal cord with pain impulses sets up a circle of reflexes similar to the painful disability of the shoulder in coronary disease. These impulses spread via the connecting neurons of the internuncial pool up and down and across the spinal cord and set up disturbances in other segments. The name reflex sympathetic dystrophy has been proposed since pain may be slight or missing.

There is no parallelism between the severity of the condition and the degree of trauma. The cruralgic state may follow rather trivial trauma and it is estimated that some evidence of it occurs in about 5 per cent of cases after sprains. The syndrome may begin hours after the trauma. Because the original injury may be slight patients are treated as neurotics.

The first sign is pain out of proportion to the injury. The pain is continuous but it may also be intensified in paroxysms which last for hours. In this stage there are no objective findings and the diagnosis of a compensation neurosis or malingering is often made. Redness soon appears in the skin over the involved area and there is tenderness to touch and to friction. The skin feels warm and later cold. There is marked perspiration at this time. The situation is similar to that found in erythromelalgia. The pain may increase until it is excruciating and intractable. Even chordotomy has been performed without benefit in these cases and it has been even suggested that the sensory cortical centers be removed.

Presumably due to the vasodilatation and increased blood flow bone atrophy (Sudeck's atrophy) sets in (Leriche and Fontaine). The skin may be edematous and the muscles atrophic largely as the result of disuse.

With respect to treatment everything must be done at the beginning of the syndrome to relieve the pain. Infiltration of the injured area with procaine has proved useful in more advanced stages. paravertebral sympathetic block is recommended or finally preganglionic sympathectomy.

Pilocarpine may be given in doses of 2-50 mg four or five times daily. Cortisone and ACTH have been employed with some success. Recently ganglion blocking agents (hexamethonium and dibenzylamine) have been used with success (Fowler and Moser).

### THE PULSELESS DISEASE

*Definition.* The pulseless disease — maladie sans pouls or Takayashu's syndrome — concerns a clinical picture described more than a century ago in single observations. It became a recognizable and well defined syndrome after Takayashu's description.

*Pathology Etiology.* Syphilis is a factor in some cases since syphilitic aortitis obstructs the orifices of the large vessels originating from the arch of the

**aorta** In most patients an aneurysm has been found with intimal proliferation (Mangold and Roth). It has been called an aneurysm obliterans. Others discuss the possibility of a dysontogenesis (Trias de Bes et al.). It is possible that the etiology varies from patient to patient.

**Symptoms.** Usually, young women are affected although it has been observed in both sexes after the age of 50. The patients complain of headaches particularly if the head is moved backward. There are attacks of fainting, vertigo and loss of consciousness if the patient changes her position quickly. The heaviness and pains in the arms on working may resemble intermittent claudication. There is also an intermittent claudication of the muscles used in mastication. Very often there is dimness of vision, photophobia, amblyopia and transient amaurosis, cataract, visual disturbances of various types up to complete blindness which may bring the patient originally to the ophthalmologist. Coronary artery involvement is rare.

**Signs.** The most outstanding clinical sign is the absence of the pulse of the arteries of the aortic arch, i.e. in one or both carotids, left and right subclavian. Sometimes in one artery or another a small pulse is present but it soon disappears. Trophic disturbances have been described in the skin, muscle and even the skeleton in areas with an abnormal blood supply. An ulcerated nose and palate occur. The blood pressure in the lower extremities is often increased. Therefore and because of the presence of a collateral circulation involving deeper arteries (affecting the same vessels as in coarctation of the aorta, only with a reversed direction of blood flow) one often speaks of the syndrome as an inverted coarctation. Even crenation of the lower border of the ribs due to enlarged tortuous intercostal arteries has been described (Ask Upmark). A systolic diastolic machinery murmur can be heard in the supraclavicular area near the attachment of the sternocleidomastoid muscle due to the widened collaterals with great speed of blood flow.

There are many findings when the eyes are examined. Corneal opacities, atrophy of the retina, iris, pallor of the fundus, low pressure in the retinal vessels, glaucoma and cataracts in particular appear.

**Course.** There is occasionally an acute form which soon causes death. Often the disease progresses insidiously for a few years, the longest known case lived 14 years (Ask Upmark). The prognosis is poor.

Therapy is unknown. Favorable experience with cortisone and ACTH remains to be secured.

### PERIARTERITIS NODOSA

Although periarteritis nodosa is an uncommon disorder it is by no means as rare as was formerly believed. At the last count well over 1000 cases had been reported since the original observations of Hussman and Muer in 1866. With the publication of series rather than individual cases the number is rapidly mounting.

There is increasing evidence to indicate that periarteritis nodosa is not a disease sui generis. With this convenient term several types of necrotizing pan arteritis are designated. The uncertain nosologic status is reflected in the existence of approximately 20 synonyms of which periarteritis nodosa and polyarteritis nodosa are most commonly used with a gradual shift toward the latter.

### *Etiology*

The cause of the disorder is unknown. Syphilis is not an etiologic factor although many of the early cases occurred in luetic individuals and the Wassermann reaction is occasionally positive. A filterable virus has been considered responsible in order to account for the epidemic appearance of periarteritis nodosa in lower animals but no supporting evidence has been obtained.

The disorder is likely to occur in individuals who have suffered from asthma, serum sickness, various infections, sulfonamide reactions and the like and it seems probable that a hyperergic reaction is responsible. This suggestion finds experimental support in the production of the characteristic lesion in rabbits by repeated injections of horse serum. The relation to the changes found in rheumatic fever has been stressed repeatedly.

Under certain conditions an infectious or chemical agent may alter the response of the vascular wall so that it reacts abnormally to a variety of stimuli (allergic hyperergic response).

Periarteritis nodosa occurs at all ages but it is most common between the ages of 30 and 40. Nearly 70 per cent of those affected are males (Boyd).

### *Pathology*

The arteries affected belong primarily to the muscular type and the size of the vessels involved ordinarily does not exceed that of the hepatic artery. The location of the lesion in a given vessel depends on the size of the artery and the presence of vasa vasorum. In the larger arteries changes are prominent at the junction of the media and the adventitia but in small vessels the lesion may remain for the most part subintimal. It is the tendency of the process to involve the medio-adventitial junction that led to the name periarteritis while the fact that destruction of the elastica was often followed by aneurysmal outpouchings suggested the term nodosa. Moreover the lesion is discontinuous and affects only limited sections of an artery.

The initial necrosis is followed by leukocytic infiltration, exudation and the development of granulation tissue. The elastic membranes are particularly susceptible and may be destroyed. If the inflammation extends through all layers of the vessel the elastic layers are destroyed and the media is necrotic. Small aneurysmal nodules, firm pinkish or red and varying in size from one to several millimeters, may be scattered irregularly along the affected artery. If the artery ruptures — a rather common event in the renal and perirenal structures — massive hemorrhage may result. In smaller vessels the major lesion may be subintimal

in this case local thrombosis may result in occlusion of the vessel and an infarction of the tissues supplied by the artery an event not unusual in the mesenteric arteries and the intestine Irrespective of the location of the lesion in the adventitial or subintimal area the exudate is often composed largely of eosinophiles a fact which lends further support to the possibility of allergy as an important etiologic factor

There is a subacute phase with evidence of repair so that intimal proliferation may be found adjacent to medial necrosis Moreover a chronic state is seen in which the inflammatory processes have vanished in this instance the lumen of the vessel has usually been closed owing to proliferation of the intima and thrombosis while the media may show calcium deposits Since the affection is often characterized by exacerbations and remissions all kinds of lesions from fresh to healed may be observed at necropsy

Although the involvement of the veins is less common and much less conspicuous in occasional cases the participation of the venous system is prominent with the result that clinical as well as histologic similarities between perarteritis nodosa and thromboangitis obliterans exist

### *Symptoms and Signs*

The clinical picture is remarkably diversified since arteries in practically every region of the body may be affected in varying degrees either simultaneously, in sequence or individually Moreover the process acts with variable intensity on different arteries and even on a single artery thus mild involvement of a mesenteric artery may slightly interfere with the blood supply of a portion of the intestine and cause intermittent colicky pain Furthermore the intestine may be infarcted and fatal peritonitis develops with fulminating speed

Even the onset varies from insidious to violent Often a tonsillitis or some other infection precedes the illness by a few weeks or months Sometimes after the patient seems to have recovered from the preliminary illness a new syndrome either in a new guise or simulating the old illness gradually emerges There may be loss of weight leukocytosis and increased sedimentation rate

In the ordinary case the impression created at the onset is that of a subacute febrile disease without particular localization Typhoid fever miliary tuberculosis or subacute bacterial endocarditis are usually suspected but no confirmatory evidence of these diseases can be obtained The situation is equally confusing if the affection does seem to localize If there are pains in the muscles with eosinophilia and fever trichinosis may seem likely and leads to muscle biopsy if the pains recur in the joints and an erythema develops with obscure fever rheumatic fever may be simulated Not rarely the abdominal symptoms dominate the clinical picture the fever abdominal pain the leukocytosis and evidence of peritoneal irritation suggest an acute cholecystitis or appendicitis necessitating operative intervention Not only does the surgeon fail to recognize the situation but the pathologist may overlook the lesion in the specimen and to his embarrassment discover the typical process when the material is reviewed at the necropsy

In rare instances the surgeon has noted the presence of aneurysms of the hepatic or other abdominal arteries

The fever does not follow any special course it may be high low or absent. Prolonged remissions may recur between febrile episodes. We have repeatedly encountered an irregular temperature closely simulating Pel-Ebstein fever of Hodgkin's disease.

Since the manifestations are protean reference will be made only to some of the clinical prototypes and outstanding phenomena in the succeeding paragraphs.

**Skin.** In rare cases the affection seems limited to the cutaneous vessels. This rather prolonged and relatively benign type is recognized with the appearance of livedo racemosa and nodules. The livedo consists of a flash of lightning discoloration in which the vessels are thick, elevated, blue-red and dendritic. In the meshes of the livedo eruptions of various types occur. Livedo racemosa may also occur in other diseases (see above) and must be associated with the nodules to be diagnostic.

The nodules are isolated subcutaneous shiny round pinhead in size movable and painful. At times the nodules are somewhat larger and may attain the size of a pea in the subcutaneous form. These nodules may break down and form ulcers. Recovery usually occurs in this form although it may be postponed for two or three years.

Subcutaneous nodules occur in about 20 per cent of cases of periarthritis nodosa when the abnormal findings consist for the most part of these nodules the term periarthritis nodosa subcutanea is sometimes applied. The nodules tend to appear in crops on various parts of the body although the extensor surfaces are the most common site. The number of nodules present at a single time usually does not exceed 50. The appearance of a crop of nodules often coincides with a new bout of fever.

Ordinarily the nodules disappear in the course of a few weeks if no ulcer develops. If numerous or large arteries are involved cutaneous apoplexy may follow or multiple areas of gangrene may occur and even simulate Raynaud's disease (Freund).

With or without subcutaneous nodules crops of petechiae may be found. Although a variety of erythematous eruptions may be encountered purpura of the Schoenlein-Henoch type is the most common.

Owing to the secondary anemia which often develops pallor may be pronounced. This is common and with the wasting observed in some patients led to the old name chlorotic marasmus. Apart from the pigmentation following subcutaneous hemorrhages a discoloration of the skin resembling that of Addison's disease is occasionally seen.

**Muscles and Nerves.** The neuromyositic manifestations are very important and may be explained by the involvement of the vessels supplying muscles and nerves. Polymyositis (Fahr) is extremely common and often the correct diagnosis is established when a muscle biopsy is secured for suspected trichinosis. Any or all of the skeletal muscles may be affected. It is common to consider the possibility



of a dermatomyositis when the cutaneous and muscle symptoms are prominent sometimes differential diagnosis is impossible

In addition to a polymyositis there is often a polyneuritis characterized by pain weakness nerve trunk tenderness disturbance of sensation atrophy and paralysis A peroneal forearm type is rather common If an acute febrile polymyositis and polyneuritis is accompanied by albuminuria periarteritis nodosa should be suspected

In a minority of patients occlusion of the deep muscle arteries occurs or the peripheral vessels of an extremity become occluded and the segment supplied becomes gangrenous In this form designated periarteritis nodosa mutilans the clinical picture may approximate that of thromboangitis obliterans

*Abdomen* The arteries supplying any abdominal organ may be involved thus producing a variegated clinical picture Involvement of the mesenteric arteries may be responsible for colic alterations of the bowel habit intestinal infarction or peritonitis Sometimes symptoms typical of an appendicitis may antedate all other symptoms for several months In one personally observed case polyneuritis and polymyositis developed four months after the patient had recovered from an appendectomy her eosinophilia did not recede in the interim The vessels of the gall bladder are frequently involved so that operations are undertaken for cholecystitis Gastric ulcers are not infrequent and hemorrhage is not unusual Pancreatic involvement is not ordinarily detected by clinical methods but diabetes mellitus has developed in rare cases periarteritis nodosa is one of the few causes for infarction of the pancreas

Despite these and innumerable other possibilities the most common abdominal symptom in periarteritis nodosa is vague pain usually epigastric or shifting from left to right in the course of a subacute or prolonged febrile illness The diagnosis of periarteritis nodosa is suggested in these cases by the finding of a polyneuritis polymyositis albuminuria and eosinophilia At any moment an abdominal organ may be infarcted causing hemorrhage or peritonitis to develop

*Kidneys* Sooner or later in the course of most cases (80 per cent in our experience) the kidneys are affected The urine contains albumin casts and other evidence of a tubuloglomerular nephritis It is however the rapid development of hypertension in the course of a febrile disease that makes periarteritis nodosa a diagnostic possibility While the elevation of blood pressure is not limited to febrile patients its sudden appearance and rapid evolution in nearly 50 per cent of the patients makes it an important sign Rather often the urinary signs the edema of the extremities and the hypertension lead to the diagnosis of an acute nephritis naturally the differential diagnosis between nephritis and periarteritis nodosa may be impossible if the vascular lesion is limited to the kidney

In a small number of cases the outstanding symptom is hematuria In three are known in which essential hematuria led to nephrectomy for severe and recurrent bleeding and periarteritis nodosa was discovered in the specimen removed This form in contrast to the type simulating nephritis has a relatively benign course

More catastrophic is a variety in which periarteritis nodosa affects the kidney vessels. Rupture of these interlobular arteries may be followed by perirenal hematoma and collapse. Hemorrhage is common in all forms of periarteritis nodosa and accounts for many instances of shock seen in this disease. The diagnosis usually is not considered unless a mass suddenly develops in one or the other flank.

Renal infarction is also very common and terminal uremia is the usual outcome of those patients not succumbing to a vascular accident.

*Heart* Tachycardia out of proportion to the fever is often observed and militates against the diagnosis of typhoid fever. In spite of the involvement of the coronary arteries angina pectoris is rather uncommon. Sometimes the aneurysms of the coronary arteries in this disease resemble the beads of a rosary but some of the cases of multiple coronary artery aneurysm reported in very young children undoubtedly belong to the congenitaliliary aneurysms resulting from malformations of the arteries rather than to periarteritis nodosa.

When there is an irregular fever and cardiac murmurs develop as the result of cardiac dilatation and anemia the suspicion of a subacute bacterial endocarditis is almost inevitable. This suspicion may be strengthened by the development of infarctions, hematuria, petechiae and the like. The electrocardiogram may show evidence of myocardial damage but is not altered in any characteristic manner. Myocardial infarction is uncommon despite the occurrence of multiple aneurysms of the coronary arteries. Involvement of the pericardial vessels may cause an inoperable pericarditis.

Congestive heart failure often supervenes and is next to uremia the most common ending of fatal periarteritis nodosa.

*Lungs* In a large number of instances the syndrome of periarteritis nodosa seems to emerge from a previous history of bronchial asthma. Not infrequently there is definite evidence of an allergy and the development of an increasingly severe intractable bronchial asthma after some mild illness should raise the question of the possible presence of periarteritis nodosa. It has been suggested that the diagnosis of periarteritis nodosa should be considered in cases of bronchial asthma with more than 15 per cent eosinophiles (Wilson and Alexander).

In many cases the persistent low grade fever together with indefinite chest signs make the diagnosis of pulmonary tuberculosis likely. While x ray changes may occur in the lungs of patients with periarteritis nodosa they are not characteristic nor do they simulate those of tuberculosis. The occurrence of pulmonary infarction and pulmonary inflammation may cause marked dyspnea and cyanosis during the course of the illness.

*Endocrine Glands* The endocrine glands have not been thoroughly studied in periarteritis nodosa but case reports are sufficient to show that they may be involved. Apart from the better known involvement of the pituitary (syndromes like Simmonds' cachexia) and the adrenals (syndromes resembling Addison's disease) no special clinical prototypes have been described.

*Central Nervous System* Symptoms and signs arising in the central nervous system are observed in a minority of cases. As might be anticipated they are

subject to great variation. Occasionally in a patient with periarteritis nodosa meningitis was diagnosed until a negative spinal fluid was obtained. Epileptiform attacks occur. Likewise a variety of neuropsychiatric syndromes have been reported in older patients suffering from periarteritis nodosa but none of them are characteristic.

*Eyes:* Albuminuric retinitis is exceedingly common; detachment of the retina is occasionally observed and total loss of vision has been recorded. Aneurysmal dilatation of small fundal vessels has been seen. Any of the intrinsic or extrinsic muscles of the eye may become paralyzed.

### *Laboratory Findings*

Laboratory findings are sometimes of diagnostic help. The secondary anemia of moderate intensity gives little assistance. As a rule the white blood cell count ranges between 12 000 and 20 000. In contrast to typhoid fever leukopenia is exceptional. The increase in the number of white blood cells is due to a polymorphonucleosis but the percentage of polymorphonuclear cells does not rise to that ordinarily seen in miliary tuberculosis. At least 10 per cent of the patients suffering from periarteritis nodosa have a marked eosinophilia; there are few diseases in which the percentage of eosinophiles may become so high. In one personally observed case they reached 60 per cent of the white blood cells while even figures as high as 90 per cent have been reported.

### *Differential Diagnosis*

Many of the differential diagnostic problems have been mentioned in the preceding paragraphs. Miliary tuberculosis, typhoid fever, trichinosis, neuritis, meningitis, encephalitis, cholecystitis, angina pectoris, appendicitis, bronchial asthma, myoitis and sepsis are often diagnosed before the true nature of the disease is recognized. The diagnosis is inferential until established by histologic sections obtained by biopsy or during the course of some surgical procedure. Obscure fever, weakness, pallor, polyneuritis, polymyositis, vague gastrointestinal disturbances, signs of nephritis or hypertension, subcutaneous nodules and eosinophilia constitute some of the suggestive symptoms and signs.

Allergy, hypersensitivity angutis and serum sickness angutis must be considered. Loeffler's syndrome and temporal arteritis are related. In allergic granulomatosis which is related to Loeffler's syndrome granulomatous nodules occur in the epicardium and mural endocardium. Clinically, fever, asthma and signs of vascular disease appear in various organs (Churg and Strauss).

### *Prognosis*

Since most reports have been published by pathologists and major emphasis has been placed upon the tissue alterations, attention has been focused on the lethal nature of the affection. However the reparative process is often clearly

evident and recovery presumably occurs more frequently than was formerly appreciated

In most cases the duration of life after the appearance of major symptoms is about four months. In the event of some catastrophe e. g. intestinal perforation the clinical course may be measured in terms of days; otherwise survival for one or two years is possible when vital organs happen to escape serious damage although this is a rather uncommon occurrence. However we observed several cases in medical officers of the last war where the diagnosis had been unequivocally established by classical peripheral symptoms: high eosinophilia and positive muscle biopsy in which recovery was more or less complete save for an extreme atherosclerosis of the vessels of the lower extremities. The course of the cutaneous forms is often prolonged and recovery with more or less invalidism is not extremely rare. The most common causes of death are nephritis, cardiac failure, perirenal hemorrhages, bronchopneumonia or peritonitis.

### *Treatment*

Attempts to ascertain the action and exclusion of possible antigenic substances do not seem to have been undertaken. With the greatly reduced use of the sulfonamides the incidence of the disease seems to be less. A host of measures with a positive therapeutic effect has been suggested which by their very multiplicity implies that none of them has much actual value; moreover practically none of the supposedly remedial agents seems very rational if the current theories of pathogenesis are correct. Thus the arsphenamines were advocated although the lesion frequently developed during treatment with arsenicals. The same holds for the sulfonamides which have also been employed for the experimental production of the lesion. Generally speaking agents have seemed to be most beneficial when evidence of visceral involvement was slight, that is in the forms known to be associated with spontaneous remission.

Therapy in our experience is mainly supportive and symptomatic. Blood transfusions may occasionally make the condition more tolerable. Special diets, a high vitamin diet for example, have been advocated but in practice the presence or absence of intestinal or renal involvement will determine the nature of the food permissible.

In recent years ACTH, cortisone and related substances seem to provide marked improvements. Cortisone (200 mg. on the first day and 200 mg. daily for 5–6 weeks) or 100–150 mg. of ACTH are at present the medicinal agents of choice. Often the fever disappears after a few days of such therapy but relapses are common.

### TEMPORAL ARTERITIS

This disease of unknown etiology was described in 1934 (Horton et al.). It affects patients over 50 years of age; most are between 70 and 80 although one patient was only 23 years old. Women are more often affected than men.

It begins with malaise vomiting pain in the ears and in the temporal area of the affected side and fever up to 39.5 C. There is anorexia severe nocturnal headache and weakness. After a few weeks there is a definite periarteritis around the temporal artery although the vessel still pulsates. Soon it becomes thrombosed and very sensitive to the touch. The palpable nodules consist of the thrombosed vessel and the periarterial inflammatory tissue. Mastication becomes very painful. Leukocytosis appears.

In rare cases other arteries are also involved. One even speaks of a cranial arteritis in those instances in which these arteries but not the temporal artery are affected. Ocular complications seem to occur in one third of the patients owing to involvement of the ophthalmic and retinal arteries. Blindness and visual disturbances are possible consequences. In one case of bilateral temporal arteritis total blindness appeared (Shannon and Solomon). Apparently the visual disturbances are permanent.

The disease is self limited. After four to twelve months the symptoms and signs gradually subside or at least fail to progress. An occasional case with a more protracted course is encountered.

The histologic picture is similar to that seen in periarteritis nodosa. The lumen of the artery is filled by granulomatous tissue with giant cells. At present nothing is known about the histologic findings in other arteries of the body.

Treatment is mainly symptomatic. Potassium iodide has been recommended and ACTH and cortisone induce temporary remissions.

Dramatic improvement may appear if the involved segment of the temporal artery is removed. Even infiltration with novocaine aids temporarily.

### ARTERIOVENOUS ANASTOMOSES AND GLOMUS TUMOR

Congenital and acquired arteriovenous fistulas were discussed in a previous chapter. At this juncture reference will be made to some peculiar short circuits between arteries and veins which were described in classic papers many years ago but failed to attract much attention from physiologists and clinicians until their part in pathology was discovered by Masson in 1924.

#### *The Normal Glomus*

*Anatomy* Some of the digital arteries divide into two branches. One takes the normal course and divides into arterioles and capillaries which transport the blood finally into the veins while another branch sends blood directly from the arterial side into a vein. The anastomotic vessel, the Sucquet Hoyer canal, has a very thick wall and is slightly tortuous. It has a longitudinal and circular layer of muscle. The outer muscles may be completely replaced by epithelioid cells. This vessel suddenly changes its character and joins wide veins to form a convolution covering and surrounding the anastomotic artery. The veins have no muscular fibers and only a thin layer of endothelium. There are many collagen fibers between

these vessels and many nonmedullated nerve fibers. A capsule consisting of connective tissue surrounds the whole structure. Such a unit was called a glomus by Masson after the glomus coccygeum which has a similar structure. Sometimes four Sucquet Hoyer canals originate from a single anastomotic artery.

The glomus is situated in the deepest layer of the corium particularly on the fingers the nail beds the toes hands the foot. The number of these structures has been estimated to be up to 500 per square centimeter (Grant and Bland) but is certainly less.

According to most investigators the glomus appears in the first year after birth but it has been found in an embryo of six months (Clara). Their number diminishes in old age (Popoff). They are not found in cold blooded animals.

*Physiology.* Our knowledge of their function is limited. It is certain that an anastomotic artery can close or open if the need arises that is the blood can be directed in the normal way through the capillaries or it can be shunted into the glomus. Therefore Hoyer thought that these structures might play a part in the regulation of temperature. Experimental observations have been made which favor this conception (Grant and Bland Lewis and Pickering). When cold is applied to the skin the anastomosis opens and warm arterial blood flows into the venous convolution. Whether the glomus plays any part in the regulation of blood pressure is not decided.

The appearance of arterialized blood in the arm veins in the tropics observed early by Robert Mayer the appearance of arterialized blood in the submaxillary vein during stimulation of the chorda tympani seen by Claude Bernard and other observations in kidney experiments are explained by these short circuits and support the assumption that such anastomoses occur also in other organs. Arterio-venous short circuits were observed in the scleral conjunctiva (Urbanek and Scherf).

In this connection it is of interest that epithelioid cells similar to those found in the glomus are seen in the wall of the afferent arteries of the glomeruli of the kidney.

### THE GLOMUS UNDER ABNORMAL CONDITIONS

The behavior of the glomus in peripheral vascular diseases has been studied (Popoff). Changes have been seen in peripheral atherosclerosis where the afferent arteries are sometimes found continuously patent. This may explain why the affected extremity often is warmer than the normal one. Fewer changes are found in thromboangitis obliterans but certain symptoms and signs of this condition have been ascribed to an abnormal function of the glomus.

It is a very interesting fact that the blood of the saphenous vein in patients with atherosclerosis of the leg arteries often is more arterialized than the blood of the basilic vein (Popoff). This finding has been frequently confirmed it may be due to the patency of afferent arteries of the glomus.

*Glomus Tumor*

Small painful subcutaneous tubercles were described early but since Masson's study their relation to the glomus (glomus tumors) and their common occurrence has become more widely appreciated.

These glomus tumors are small bluish nodules of firm consistency and exquisite sensitivity to touch. Usually they are found at the same areas as normal glomus formations. They appear most often on the fingers particularly in the nail bed but are occasionally seen in areas where the glomus is normally absent e.g. the arm, thighs, shoulder, chest wall, neck or the buttocks.

The outstanding symptom is pain which may be extremely severe. It may occur in spontaneous paroxysms (crises) or may be constant. The patient is always on guard to avoid pressure on the structure. The pain may spread over wide areas e.g. over the whole extremity. Changes of temperature also cause pain. Patients with the same structures but without pain are very rare (Lendrum and Mackey). Occasionally trophic disturbances are observed in the involved part of the body. The finger containing a glomus tumor may be warmer and may flush or perspire. Multiple tumors are occasionally seen. Numerous instances have been reported in which the tumor appeared after a trauma. In one patient shortly after the tip of the finger was crushed by the door of an automobile a glomus tumor appeared under the nail of this finger.

The tumors are usually very small in size and measure only a few millimeters in diameter. The measurements of one tumor however were  $1.5 \times 1.0 \times 1.0$  cm (Ottley) and in another the longest diameter was over 3.5 cm (Lendrum and Mackey).

Histologically the tumors show the characteristic structure of the normal glomus but the composition varies and individual parts of the glomus may be exaggerated. Thus the tumors have been called angiomatoneuromas. Masson differentiates between an angiomatous, an epithelioid and a neuromatous tumor depending upon the tissue prevailing in the glomus structure.

The tumors are not malignant. They compress the neighboring structures and may cause circumscribed atrophy for example of the phalangeal bone. Recurrence after incomplete removal of a tumor has been reported (Ottley).

Usually pain forces the removal of the tumor bringing complete cure. The tumor is not sensitive to radiotherapy.

*PERNIO CHILBLAINS FROSTBITE IMMERSION FOOT*

Apart from certain systemic reactions to cold characterized by profound shock or by paroxysmal hemoglobinuria there are several local syndromes to which brief reference should be made.

Chilblains or pernio represent a mild inflammatory reaction developing after exposure to cold damp cold in particular. They are related to trench foot a condition seen in soldiers whose feet are exposed to damp cold for several days. This in turn is related to immersion foot which is encountered primarily in

survivors of shipwrecks when the feet have dangled in cold water for several days. A somewhat similar syndrome has been described in men shipwrecked in tropical waters but in this instance other factors than cold are present.

If cold is applied to the skin it leads at first to arteriolar constriction and then to marked hyperemia which is followed by itching swelling and wheal or flare formation due to the release of histamine like substances. Very early often within a few hours vascular thrombi are formed from red blood cell debris which silts along the vessel. There is some separation of the endothelium from the vascular wall. Edema forms early. Peactive inflammation, blister formation, ulcers and gangrene are found in more advanced or more severe cases.

Cold is apt to produce effects where large areas of skin are supplied by relatively small vessels — the fingers, toes, nose and ears.

Mild forms of this condition are rather common in adolescent women in temperate climates. The lesions are situated above the malleoli, the skin is tender when rubbed and swollen. Many of these patients seem peculiarly sensitive to chilblains after a previous injury by cold, and the burning itching tingling of pain may be associated with swelling from time to time. Under these circumstances there may be some permanent alteration in the vessels or nerves that renders the individual susceptible to subsequent exposures to cold.

In slightly more severe forms there may be scaling of the skin and even patches of gangrene which ultimately heal. If the part is frozen, edema and blister formation, in addition to secondary infection, precede necrosis or gangrene, the dead part eventually sloughs off after a line of demarcation has formed.

Those living in the Arctic do not suffer commonly from skin injuries consequent to exposure to cold. Since they are fully aware of the dangers, proper precautions are taken to avoid exposure. In this connection it should be mentioned that exposure to cold involves a special danger in that lower temperature may produce local anesthesia and abolish the warning signals of impending freezing. It is not the absolute temperature alone which is important but also the humidity of the air and the activity of the patient.

Immersion foot may develop in a day or so after exposure. The part is painful, numbness and tingling is annoying. There are no pulses in the arteries (Ungley et al). The swollen, pallid skin contains cyanotic areas. This is the so called prehyperemic stage. Subsequently the pallor is replaced by erythema. The feet become very warm but do not sweat. Edema may obliterate the pulse which otherwise has become full again. Pain is severe and continuous. Vesicles containing straw colored or sanguinous fluid may form. If local patches of gangrene develop they are usually not extensive and do not require more than amputation of toes. The chief difference between frostbite and immersion foot consists in the fact that in the latter the tissues are chilled but not frozen.

Until the last war it was recommended that the involved part of the body be kept cool and that only very slow thawing be permitted, but since then it has been found that tissue damage is less when the involved extremity is warmed.



as soon as possible. The best temperature applied for thawing is around 40 C. After thawing is completed warming is discontinued.

Rubbing the affected area is forbidden since the entrance of infection into a blister abrasion or fissure may constitute a serious threat to life. Pressure bandages tend to minimize the formation of edema. Infection contributes greatly to the danger and must be controlled or prevented by measures which will not further injure the skin. Therefore antibiotics should be given.

The tropical form of immersion foot requires the additional management of vitamin deficiency and hypoproteinemia.

Prophylactic measures prevent the appearance of chilblains and trench foot in most cases.

## DISEASE OF THE VEINS

### *Varicose Veins*

Pathologic dilatation of veins may result from diffuse enlargement (phlebectasia) or unequal circumscribed dilatation (varicosities). While these phenomena may occur in the central nervous system, the esophagus, broad ligament, urinary bladder, spermatic veins and so forth, reference will be limited to varices of the lower extremities.

The actual incidence of varicose veins is unknown. The usual estimate of 10 per cent in young healthy industrial workers is probably low since it concerns a selected group of adults.

The etiology is equally obscure and it has been impossible to study the problem by animal experimentation. The frequency of the disease in certain occupations (waitresses, laundresses, traffic policemen) that place a special burden on the legs and require the patient to stand for long periods is established. The familial occurrence and the appearance in many members of the same family even in early youth emphasizes the significance of heredity. A constitutional aspect is implied in the description of an asthenic type of individual with inherent weakness of the connective tissue. The development of varices in the early stages of pregnancy before mechanical factors come into play suggests the participation of an endocrine influence. The importance of increased abdominal pressure in the back flow of blood to the heart is demonstrated by the appearance of varicosities in patients engaged in hard labor.

In general, two factors, a primary change of unknown nature in the vein wall and stasis, seem to be of great importance.

The early pathologic changes observed consist of dilatation, elongation and tortuosity of the vessel associated with some hypertrophy. An inflammatory reaction in and around the vessels is more or less constant but seems to be secondary to the stagnation of blood in sluggish pools rather than primary. Thinning of the vein followed by sacular or spindle shaped dilatation begins near a valve and spreads distally. Ultimately the continuous distention and perhaps infection lead to an infiltration of all layers of the vein by connective

tissue. This rather characteristic fibrosis the genesis of which is entirely obscure may be followed by lime salt deposits (phlebosclerosis).

*Symptoms* The symptoms consist of fatigue of a drawing sensation and at times of pain. Often these are early complaints evoking erroneous diagnoses. This is particularly true when mere inspection does not permit recognition of the situation. Sometimes there are cramps in the calves particularly at night or when the patient is in cold water. Precordial pain, dizziness and dyspnea occur because of pooling of blood in the lower extremities. There is no parallelism between the extent of the varicosities and the number or severity of symptoms.

*Tests* In order to ascertain whether the communicating veins function properly and are able to compensate for the abnormal circulation due to the varicosities certain tests are used. In the Trendelenburg test the involved leg is elevated to empty the veins. A tourniquet or cuff is applied about the upper thigh and the patient is allowed to stand. If the veins remain empty or fill slowly (20—30 seconds) the test is considered negative. If the veins fill rapidly (5—15 seconds) the test is positive. In the latter instance the communicating veins are inefficient.

Before undertaking any treatment to prevent the flow of blood in the superficial veins the physician should ascertain whether the deep veins are patent. The simplest test is to apply an elastic bandage and ask the patient to walk. Considerable discomfort appears if the deep veins are not patent.

Perthes test is satisfactory for determining the patency of the deep veins. The tourniquet is applied while the patient stands, being placed just tight enough to prevent reflux from the saphenous vein. The leg is then flexed and extended at the knee ten times or the patient may walk vigorously for a minute or two. If the deep veins are patent and the communicating veins function normally, blood is aspirated from the superficial veins and the varicosities collapse. In the so called comparative tourniquet test the cuff is applied at different levels so as to determine the level at which the communicating veins are incompetent. By this means one may demonstrate that low as well as high ligation is necessary. If superficial and communicating veins are incompetent, injections of sclerosing solutions are liable to be followed by recurrence of varicosities. If only the saphenous vein valves are incompetent, ligation followed by injections is usually not followed by a recurrence.

In the Schwartz test the saphenous vein is percussed near its entrance into the femoral vein. If the percussion wave is felt by the other hand which rests upon the varicose veins of the lower leg, the valves are incompetent.

*Complications* The complications created by varicose veins are numerous. Besides thrombosis and thrombophlebitis a periphlebitis and suppuration may develop. A varix may rupture externally or into the tissues. The skin may become atrophic or pigmentation and eczema may appear when the varices have existed for a long time, even elephantiasis may occur. The notorious chronic varicose ulcer usually located on the inner side of the lower third of the leg may result from trivial trauma or may appear spontaneously. These ulcers

are rarely painful but healing is associated with diffuse scar formation. Edema of the ankle and leg is prone to develop if the patient stands for some time. At any time an acute infection may occur with redness, pain and increased swelling.

Since the blood flows toward the periphery in a varicose vein, pulmonary embolism is a rare occurrence following thrombosis.

Varicose veins are almost useless for the circulation. When the vein valves become incompetent the blood flows backward and toward the periphery in the varicosities. The communicating veins alone conduct blood to the deep (femoral) veins which direct it to the heart. The deep veins rarely become varicose owing to the support provided by the surrounding muscles; they do, however, suffer not rarely from thrombosis and frequently are occluded when superficial varices are present. If the communicating and the deep veins become affected and their valves become more incompetent, intravenous and intracapillary pressure rises decidedly, causing edema to appear. This edema fluid is rich in proteins and leads to fibroelastic proliferation and induration. Therefore, one is justified in combatting it even with mercurial diuretics.

*Therapy.* In mild cases, management should be limited to the application of an elastic bandage or the wearing of an elastic stocking.

Formerly, surgical procedures were the only method of treatment for marked varicose veins, but later obliteration of the varix by injection became widely employed. Recurrences are, however, common. The method is based upon the fact that the intravenous injection of certain substances injures the vein wall to produce a phlebitis and local thrombosis with subsequent obliteration of the lumen. Of the innumerable substances capable of producing an endophlebitis, 5 per cent sodium morrhuate, 15–30 per cent sodium chloride or 50 per cent dextrose are the most popular solutions. They vary somewhat in efficiency, the intensity of the local reaction and the amount of pain produced.

The injection must be made with due regard for certain rules. Thus, paravenous injection must be scrupulously avoided. With many solutions, meticulous care must be exercised, since even a small amount in the paravenous tissues will result in a slough that may require excision and suture. If there is any reason to suspect that some fluid has escaped from the vein, novocaine should be injected immediately into the blanched area. Moreover, a bandage should be applied at the site of injection to lessen the chance of any leakage and to encourage adhesion of the vein walls. With injections of sodium morrhuate anaphylactoid reactions occasionally occur, particularly when a second series of injections is started after a rest period. Unless the treatment is discontinued, increasingly severe and even fatal reactions may occur. A patch test has been advocated to determine sensitivity of the patient to the preparation.

It is preferable to have the patient ambulatory except for a few minutes immediately after the injection; this diminishes the possibility of embolism.

There are many contraindications to injection therapy. Among them, severe cachexia, advanced age, migratory phlebitis, tuberculosis and the presence of intermittent claudication represent absolute contraindications, equally impor-

tant contraindications are a history of a cardiovascular accident hyperthyroidism and the presence of an acute infection of any sort

Injection therapy alone is done only when the Trendelenburg test is negative that is if the deep veins and communicating vessels are normal

Ligation of the saphenous vein and stripping of veins is a useful supplement when the valves of the saphenous vein are incompetent This is performed at the saphenofemoral junction and includes all tributaries of the saphenous at that point even if they are not dilated A similar operation is recommended in the presence of ulcers and brown indurated edema provided no infection is present Bed rest elastic bandages elevation and heat elastic adhesive dressings iontophoresis and numerous other procedures are available for the treatment of infected ulcers and should be employed before injection is undertaken

## VENOUS THROMBOSIS AND THROMBOPHLEBITIS

### *Thrombosis*

The importance of this process for the appearance of embolism its frequent occurrence and its dangers were discussed in a previous chapter A few further remarks seem relevant

Among the three factors regarded as responsible for thrombus formation — slowing of the blood stream chemical and physical alterations of the blood and injuries of the vascular wall — the first seems to be the least important Ligation of a vein at two points some distance from each other if done carefully to avoid endothelial damage causes a complete standstill of blood flow but no thrombosis Any trauma or surgical intervention may increase coagulability of the blood The susceptibility of patients with polycythemia to venous and arterial thrombosis is known The tendency of patients with fungus infections on the feet to thrombus formation was mentioned Dehydration also seems to be an established factor in increasing the likelihood of thrombus formation

Traumatic thrombosis may appear as late as 10 to 14 days after an injury The trauma may be trivial and often is forgotten by the patient A blow on the calf even by the relatively light object without the appearance of any visible alteration on the skin may cause a diffuse thrombosis of the deep veins Often the vein is not occluded by a thrombus but rather is compressed by fascia or an extravasal hemorrhage There is sudden sharp pain cyanosis and numbness

Heavy physical work may cause thrombosis of the axillary and subclavian veins with shoulder pain as well as cyanosis and edema of the arm ( thrombose par effort ) This accident is particularly common if the shoulder girdle is moved upward and backward without abduction of the arm Lifting a heavy object or pitching a baseball may cause this accident Injuries to the veins are common and may even cause them to rupture

Thrombophlebitis is more common in old age in carcinoma and in patients with varicose veins In rheumatic fever it occurs in the veins of the upper extremity and neck Aschoff bodies may be found in the walls of these veins

Prolonged sitting on poorly constructed seats may induce deep vein thrombosis. This was seen in the air raid shelters of London where the crossbars compressed the veins (shelter legs). Venous thrombosis occurs during flights in airplanes lasting for many hours. Compression of the calf veins by the weight of the leg in bedridden patients is thought to be responsible for the frequent occurrence of thrombi in these patients. On all these occasions mechanical compression of the veins may injure the endothelium and lead to thrombus formation.

In simple thrombosis the symptoms are very few or absent or are elicited only by careful inquiry. Pain in the plantar area of the foot, calf pain on dorsiflexion of the foot were mentioned earlier. Spontaneous pain is found only in a circumscribed area. It may not be superfluous to stress again that pressure and massage should be avoided. The spontaneous pain may be a mere soreness or it may be excruciating, particularly if a thrombophlebitis with perivascular inflammation is present. In iliofemoral thrombosis the pain may spread to the back.

It is estimated that deep vein thrombosis in the legs causes pulmonary emboli in one out of three cases. If these patients are ambulatory, walking upstairs may produce calf pain. Tenderness over the posterior part of the leg is almost always present. Swelling tends to be trivial and limited to the lower leg, but the thigh may be enlarged if the thrombosis extends to the femoral vein. The prophylaxis of venous thrombosis has been discussed earlier.

Venous thrombosis in the upper extremities is known as Paget Schroetter's syndrome. Males are usually affected. Among 300 instances it was found on the right side in 60 per cent (Hughes). Swelling, pain, sometimes discoloration, paresthesias and overdistended veins are found. There is often local tenderness. Anticoagulants and cervical sympathetic block are used.

### *Thrombophlebitis*

The local symptoms of thrombophlebitis vary considerably with the particular vein involved. The usual picture will be recalled by mention of the familiar extensive thrombophlebitis of the legs, phlegmasia alba dolens or milk leg of older writers. Pain is felt in the medial part of the thigh. Both lower extremities are swollen, pale and somewhat colder than normal. There may be moderate tenderness along the course of the deep femoral vessels. The local picture will be modified if, as often happens, the thrombosis extends into the external and common iliac veins or even into the inferior vena cava.

Fever accompanies thrombophlebitis. There is a leukocytosis and an increase of the erythrocytic sedimentation rate. If the inflammation is superficial inflammation is evidenced by the presence of a warm, red area, but if deep veins are involved the diagnosis may be difficult. Local signs are minimal or absent save for a small enlargement of the circumference of the calf if deep veins are affected.

The edema is partly due to increased capillary pressure. Ligation of a large vein experimentally does not lead to edema and does not cause it clinically for there are too many collateral vessels. If, however, many peripheral veins are obstructed, edema develops. This happens even in the absence of lymphadenitis and inflammation of the perivascular lymphatics. Obstruction of major lymphatic trunks can, however, be a factor in the production of edema.

The vasoconstrictor impulses arising from a thrombosed and inflamed vein cause arterial spasm and may even lead to gangrene (Homans); this is a common reason for the erroneous diagnosis of an organic arterial disease.

Thrombosis of the veins of the upper extremities rarely causes pulmonary embolism. In many cases the signs caused by pulmonary embolism lead to the diagnosis of pneumonia or pleurisy, while the real situation is unrecognized.

Perlow described as phlegmasia caerulea dolens a syndrome with shock and unconsciousness caused by the loss of about 5000 ml of plasma into the tissues. There is severe cyanosis of the leg with petechiae and purpura. Blood and plasma replacement may be life saving.

**Therapy.** In venous thrombosis and thrombophlebitis the local excruciating pain is often ameliorated by the application of three or four leeches in the neighborhood of the thrombosed vein area. The treatment is ridiculed only by those who have never tried it; in our experience the results have been very gratifying.

In thrombophlebitis of the lower leg, bed rest is indicated when acute inflammatory symptoms are present. The inflammatory process subsides more rapidly by immobilization and the edema diminishes as the result of elevation. Decrease of the edema is important since it tends to be a permanent feature if it persists for any length of time. Restriction of fluids and of salt as well as the use of mercurial diuretics or calcium gluconate have been advocated to lessen edema formation. The use of novocaine block to relieve veno- and arterio-spasm, which are likewise considered important factors in the production and maintenance of edema, is mentioned below.

A difficult problem always faced is the duration of bed rest. No standard period is known. Prolonged recumbency offers just as much danger as premature walking. The former may lead to the formation of new thrombi; the latter to pulmonary embolism. Unfortunately, no reliable method is available to decide the best course in a given case. In thrombosis of the femoral and pelvic veins, bed rest must be prolonged four to five weeks. The foot of the bed is put on blocks. The patient is admonished to avoid deep breathing and straining at stool.

Many physicians do not advocate bed rest at all unless acute inflammatory symptoms are present. In our experience, if there is much pain walking in the early stage of the disease greatly aggravates the swelling, since the collateral veins and lymphatics are incompletely developed.

For the arterial spasm, paravertebral injection is beneficial and has been widely used since Leriche's recommendation. It relieves pain and, as mentioned

above edema. It also restores arterial circulation. If the sympathetic trunks are to be blocked, this measure should be instituted early and should be repeated a few times.

If pulmonary embolism is present and its recurrence seems likely, femoral vein ligation has been performed just distal to the entrance of the saphenous vein. Some operators prefer to divide this vessel hoping thereby to interrupt impulses responsible for the vasospastic effects. Even the inferior vena cava may be ligated if one has the impression that both femoral veins are thrombosed or if there is a thrombosis of the iliac vein. The operation does not absolutely prevent the occurrence of embolism but greatly diminishes the risk. These operations have been known to gynecologists for many years and were employed successfully in cases of gynecologic sepsis.

If operations are performed in patients whose collateral pelvic veins are also occluded, serious complications will follow.

Therapy with anticoagulants is the method of choice and gradually replaces venous ligation. This was discussed in the section on pulmonary embolism. It is applicable in thrombophlebitis as well as in thrombosis.

The value of trypsin given intramuscularly is still not established (Inner field). Stein warmly recommends therapy with phenylbutazone.

Chronic edema of the leg consequent to a femoral vein thrombophlebitis is often followed by persistent induration of the skin and subcutaneous tissues. Subsequently pigmentation appears and the leg ultimately turns brown. The indurated tissue does not pit on pressure but ulcers are prone to occur. Pain is variable and at times very annoying. Infection of the lymphatics and extravasation of serum containing large amounts of protein leads to the deposition of scar tissue which contributes to the blockade of veins and lymphatics. The treatment of this complication requires limitation of activities, avoidance of dependent position of the legs, and the application of elastic bandages unless further measures are indicated for the ulcers. Examination from time to time may disclose soft areas that may contain large varices demanding injection therapy.

### THROMBOPHLEBITIS MIGRANS

Thrombophlebitis migrans or migratory phlebitis is a painful phlebitis and periphlebitis which occurs mostly in males. Short segments of veins usually 5–10 cm in length are affected. The involvement is usually observed in subcutaneous veins but in rare cases the deep veins are also affected. Every recurrence is accompanied by an increase of temperature, general disturbance of well being and tachycardia. The affected superficial veins are palpable as hard tender cords which show at first a light red color, then a livid discoloration and finally a brownish hue. The inflammation also involves neighboring tissues for a distance of 3–4 mm from the vein.

Widely separated areas are affected. One day a painful thrombosis of a short section of a foot vein appears. On the next day, week or month, another

vein is involved at the elbow on the inner side of the forearm or in the neck. Thrombosis may even spread into the cranial venous sinuses. Most cases described as thrombosis of the coronary or pulmonary veins with *angina pectoris* were actually instances of pulmonary embolism. These with all their manifestations and complications are not unusual in thrombophlebitis migrans.

In an astonishing number of cases focal infection is observed and the process disappears when these foci are successfully eradicated. Histologically a periphlebitis and thrombophlebitis similar to that seen in thromboangitis obliterans is noted. For some authors every case of thrombophlebitis migrans is simply a form of Buerger's disease although we do not share this opinion. The arterial circulation should be watched carefully in every case of migratory phlebitis.

The course may be protracted and the disease may last for decades. In some cases observed by us the progress was stormy and hyperacute. In a few weeks multiple emboli may lead to death. On the other hand the process may disappear at any time.

In a large number of cases migratory phlebitis accompanies carcinoma. It has been repeatedly described as an early sign of pancreatic carcinoma. We have seen it early in ovarian and gastric carcinoma. The relationship is obscure. In pancreatic carcinoma a relation may exist to the mucin production (Durham). Thrombophlebitis migrans was observed to disappear after surgical removal of the carcinoma.

The therapy of choice is the administration of anticoagulants which must be continued for months. Oral administration of butazolidine (phenylbutazone) has been recommended. Three and one half grams are given in one week (Stein).

### OCCLUSION OF THE SUPERIOR VENA CAVA

More than half of the cases of compression of the superior vena cava result from aneurysm of the aorta. Another 25 per cent originate from carcinoma of the bronchi. Thrombosis of the superior vena cava possibly the result of a phlebitis of unknown origin is sometimes seen in tuberculosis, syphilis or pyogenic infection. Occurring in cardiac patients with advanced decompensation it usually starts in the jugular veins and is propagated into the superior vena cava. We observed it in one patient with thrombophlebitis migrans.

Although thrombosis of the superior vena cava may occur at any age it seems to be most common in the fifth decade. Nearly two thirds of the patients are males.

The pathognomonic symptoms and signs are edema and cyanosis of the face, neck and upper extremities aggravated in the recumbent position and relieved in the erect posture. The venous pressure is increased in the arms while pressure is normal in the lower extremities. Dilated collateral veins may be visible on the anterior chest wall within a short time. The slow cerebral circulation may lead to dyspnea and hyperventilation. Pleural effusion may develop as the result



of increased pressure in the azygos veins. Headache aggravated by lying horizontally is not uncommon. Vertigo may be noted. Somnolence is an occasional symptom. Prominence of the eyes and staring may be conspicuous. Tinnitus and deafness may occur but vanish with the development of a collateral circulation.

The symptoms depend to a great extent both upon the rapidity with which thrombosis develops and the underlying disease. If the former proceeds slowly and collaterals form rapidly many symptoms like cyanosis, facial edema and so forth may be absent.

The prognosis depends partly upon the associated disease and partly upon the relative rates of venous occlusion and the development of a collateral circulation. The mortality rate is high. Death usually occurs in a few months but survival for many decades is possible. In one personally observed case the thrombosis followed an acute tonsillitis; this patient was still alive after six years although he suffered from extreme vertigo when his position was changed suddenly. We have seen tuberculous endophlebitis of the superior vena cava with occlusion unfold its picture in a matter of weeks; sometimes there is a marked change of personality before death.

In recent years surgery has provided great relief to patients with this syndrome. The azygos vein has been grafted into the right atrium or with the aid of arterial grafts it has been anastomosed to an innominate vein and patent parts of the superior vena cava.

### OCCLUSION OF THE INFERIOR VENA CAVA

A thrombosis or thrombophlebitis in the course of an infectious disease occasionally causes an occlusion of the inferior vena cava. More often this event is due to a thrombus propagated from another vein. Most common in our experience is occlusion of the inferior vena cava by a renal new growth in which a large mass of neoplastic tissue ascends the inferior vena cava.

When occlusion of the inferior vena cava complicates the terminal phase of some other disease the clinical picture need not be modified. When symptoms develop at all they consist mainly of leg edema and edema of the back without ascites. The urinary output may diminish. Subsequently an extensive collateral circulation may develop in which the superficial veins of the abdominal wall participate. However we have observed collateral circulations in which the deep veins of the abdominal wall alone acted vicariously for the occluded vena cava and the diagnosis was impossible since no collateral circulation was visible externally.

Among the measures for symptomatic relief repeated veno-section may possess great value. It may not prolong life but it may relieve many annoying symptoms for 48 hours or more.

From the standpoint of differential diagnosis the principal source of confusion has been to mistake occlusion of the inferior vena cava for Baumgarten's

syndrome of the paraumbilical veins. In both a remarkable caput medusae may be present but otherwise there is little similarity. The outstanding signs of Baumgarten's syndrome apart from the caput medusae and thrill is splenomegaly and at least in many cases the recurrent ascites moreover Baumgarten's syndrome in our experience is seen in young individuals of the asthenic habitus who frequently lack secondary sex characteristics.

Suppurative phlebitis and its relationship to appendicitis and to liver abscess endophlebitis syphilitica of the hepatic veins (Chiari's disease) splenic vein thrombosis and its association with the Banti syndrome various types of portal vein thrombosis and particularly the relatively common form observed in connection with cirrhosis of the liver as well as many other diseases of the veins belong to the domain of Internal Medicine and are not discussed in this volume.

## Bibliography

- Abramson D I Fierst S M and Flachs K Rate of peripheral blood flow in the presence of edema *Am Heart J* 25 328 1943
- Katzenstein K H and Senior E A Effect of nicotinic acid on peripheral blood flow in man *Am J Med Sc* 100 96 1940
- Adson A W Changes in technique of cervicothoracic ganglionectomy and trunk resection *Am J Surgery* 23 987 1934
- and Coffey J R Cervical rib *Ann Surg* 85 830 1927
- Allen A W and Smithwick H H Thrombosis of peripheral arteries following intra venous injection of typhoid vaccine *New Engl J Med* 200 217 1929
- Allen E V Thromboangitis obliterans *Am J Med Sc* 178 237 1929
- Barker N W and Hines I A Jr *Peripheral Vascular Diseases* ed 2 Philadelphia Saunders 1935
- and Kvale K H Physical medicine in vascular diseases *M Clin North America* 27 951 1933
- Ameli N O and Ashby D W Non traumatic thrombosis of the carotid artery *Lancet* 1078 1949
- Anderson T Temporal arteritis (Horton) a case without temporal arteritis *Acta med Scandnav* 13 230 1947
- Ask Upmark E On the pulseless disease outside Japan *Acta med Scandnav* 149 161 1954
- Atlas I N Oscillometric readings in cases of arteriosclerotic disease of the lower extremity *Arch Int Med* 66 155 1940
- Lumbar sympathectomy in the treatment of peripheral arteriosclerotic disease II Gangrene following operation in improperly selected cases *Am Heart J* 93 493 1942
- Aynesworth K H The cervicobrachial syndrome *Ann Surg* 111 724 1940
- Babinski J and Heitz J Obliterations arterielles et troubles vaso moteurs d'origine reflexe ou centrale *Bull et mém Soc med hop de Paris* 40 570 1916
- Bailey O T The cutaneous glomus and its tumors — glomangiomas *Am J Path* 11 915 1935
- Balo J and Nachtnobel E Periarthritis nodosa and innere Sekretion *Endokrinologie* 3 180 1939
- Barker N W Primary idiopathic thrombophlebitis *Arch Int Med* 59 147 1936
- Lesions of peripheral nerves in thromboangitis obliterans *Arch Int Med* 62 271 1938

- Barnum F N The roentgenographic differentiation of peripheral arteriosclerosis *Am J Roentgenol* 68 619 1952
- Barr D P Reader G G and Wheeler C H Cryoglobulinemia *Ann Int Med* 37 6 1950
- Bauer G Venographic study of thromboembolic problems *Acta chir Scandinav* (Suppl 61) 34 1 1940
- Berman L G and Russo F R Abdominal angina *New England J Med* 249 611 1950
- Bevans M Pathology of scleroderma with special reference to the changes in the gastrointestinal tract *Am J Path* 21 25 1945
- Bigelow W C The modern conception and treatment of frostbite *Canad M A J* 47 579 1942
- Birnberg V J and Hansen V E Thrombophlebitis migrans *J Radiat* 91 775 1949
- Black Schaffer H Pathology of anaphylaxis due to sulfonamide drugs *Arch Path* 39 301 1945
- Boyd A M Ratcliffe A H Jepson R P and James G W H Intermittent claudication *J Bone & Joint Surg* 31 325 1949
- Boyd L J The clinical aspects of periarteritis nodosa *Bull New York Med Coll Flower & Fifth Ave Hosp* 1 219 1938 3 32 175 272 1942 4 27 176 1041 6 130 1943 7 94 1944
- Brooke R Periarterial sympathectomy with ligation of the femoral vein in the treatment of diabetic gangrene *Brit J Surg* 1, 286 1927
- Brown G E Erythromelalgia and other disturbances of the extremities accompanied by vasodilatation and burning *Am J M Sc* 193 468 1932
- Thromboangitis obliterans Buerger's disease *Surg Gyn & Obst* 59 997 1934
- Allen E V and Van Nuys H Thromboangitis Obliterans Philadelphia Saunders 1928
- Buerger L Thromboangitis obliterans a study of the vascular lesions leading to peripheral spontaneous gangrene *Am J M Sc* 136 567 1908
- The Circulatory Disturbances of the Extremities Including Gangrene Vasomotor and Trophic Disturbances Philadelphia Saunders 1924
- Buschke A Über Sklerödem *Berl klin Wchnschr* 39 955 1902
- Cassirer R Die vasomotorisch trophischen Neuroen II Aufl Berlin S Karger 1917
- Chapman E M and Asmussen E On the occurrence of dyspnea dizziness and precordial distress occasioned by the pooling of blood in varicose veins *J Clin Investigation* 21 393 1942
- Chasnoff J and Vorzimer J J Temporal arteritis a local manifestation of a systemic disease *Ann Int Med* 20 327 1944
- Churg J and Strauss L Allergic granulomatosis allergic angitis and periarteritis nodosa *Am J Path* 27 277 1951
- Clara M Die arteriovenösen Anastomosen Leipzig Barth 1939
- Clark M Arterio venous anastomoses *Physiol Rev* 18 229 1938
- Collens W S and Wilensky N D Two quantitative tests of peripheral vascular obstruction *Am J Surg* 34 71 1936
- Collens W S and Wilensky N D Peripheral Vascular Diseases ed 2 Springfield 11 Thomas 1953
- Cohen S M Traumatic arterial spasm *Lancet* 1 1 1944
- von Conta G Periarteritis nodosa der Lungengefäße und Lungenröntgenbild *Fortschr a d Geb'd Röntgenstr* 4, 506 1933
- Crafoord C Heparin and postoperative thrombosis *Acta chir Scandinav* 8 319 1939
- Covey C W Thrombosis of the abdominal aorta a new physical sign *Nbrucka M J* 40 20, 1955

- DeBakey M E, Creech O and Woodhall J P Evaluation of sympathectomy in arteriosclerotic peripheral vascular disease *J A M A* 144 1227 1950
- Denk W Zur Behandlung der arteriellen Embolie München med Wchnschr 81 437 1934
- Denman F R, Fini C and Duty W S Insidious thrombotic occlusion of cervical carotid arteries treated by arterial graft Surgery 33 569 1955
- Dennis C Disaster following femoral vein ligation for thrombophlebitis: relief by fasciotomy: clinical case of renal impairment following crush injury Surgery 14 264 1945
- Dolger H Clinical evaluation of vascular damage in diabetes mellitus *J A M A* 134 1289 1947
- Dornhorst A C and Sharpey Schafer F P Collateral resistance in limbs with arterial obstruction *Clin Sc* 10 371 1951
- Doupe J, Cullen C H and Chances C H Post traumatic pain and the causalgic syndrome *J Neurol Neurosurg & Psychiat* 33 1944
- Douthwaite A H and Finnegan T R L Vasodilators in peripheral vascular disease *Brit M J* 1 868 1950
- Durham R H Thrombophlebitis migrans and visceral carcinoma *Arch Int Med* 95 380 1955
- Eastcott H H G, Pickering C W and Rob C O Reconstruction of internal carotid artery *Lancet* 2 694 1954
- Edwards E A The arteriographic comparison of thrombo angitis obliterans and arteriosclerosis *New England J Med* 213 616 1955
- Bad changes in functional and organic arterial disease *New England J Med* 219 367 1948
- Elliott A H and Evans I D Ischemic pain in exercising muscles *Am Heart J* 12 644 1936
- Epstein N V Scleroderma adultorum (Buschke) *J A M A* 99 820 1932
- Erben S Über vasomotorische Störungen *Wien Klin Wchnschr* 11 33 1918
- Evans J A Reflex sympathetic dystrophy *Surg Gyn & Obst* 36 1946
- Rubitsky H J and Perry A W Treatment of diffuse progressive scleroderma *J A M A* 151 891 1953
- Fahr T Zur Frage der Polymyositis (Dermat myositis) *Arch f Dermat u Syph* 130 1 1921
- Falconer M A and Weddell G Costoclavicular compression of the subclavian artery and vein *Lancet* 2 539 1943
- Faxon H H Present methods of treating varicose veins *New England J Med* 216 327 1937
- Feldaker M, Hines A Jr and Herland R R Livedo reticularis with ulcerations *Circulation* 23 196 1956
- Fisher M Occlusion of the internal carotid artery *Arch Neurol & Psych* 65 346 1951
- 72 187 1954
- Fitz R, Parks H and Branch C F Periarthritis nodosa *Arch Int Med* 64 1133 1939
- Flory C M Arterial occlusions produced by emboli from eroded aortic atheromatous plaques *Am J Path* 21 549 1945
- Foley W T, McDavitt E, Tulloch J A, Tunis M and Wright I S Studies of vasospasm *Circulation* 7 847 1953
- Fowler E D and Moser M Use of hexamethonium and dibenzylamine in diagnosis and treatment of causalgia *J A M A* 161 1051 1956
- Freeman A F Influence of temperature on the development of gangrene in peripheral vascular diseases *Arch Surg* 40 326 1940
- Freund F Apoplexia Cutanea Periarthritis nodosa *Arch f Dermat u Syph* 157 158 19 6

- Frykholm R The pathogenesis and mechanical prophylaxis of venous thrombosis  
Surg Gyn & Obst 71 307 1940
- Fuller C B Scleroderma treated by veratrum alkaloids Lancet 1 507 1906
- Garvin C F Mural thrombi in the heart Am Heart J 21 713 1941
- Gaston E A and Folsom H Ligation of the inferior vena cava for the prevention of pulmonary embolism New England J Med 233 229 1945
- Ciamarino H J and Jaffe S A Mesenteric vascular occlusion Arch Surg 45 647 1947
- Cilmour J R Giant cell chronic arteritis J Path & Bact 53 263 1941
- Glasser S T Herrlin J Jr and Pollock B Intra arterial injection of penicillin for infections of the extremities JAMA 128 796 1945
- and Lesser A Femoral vein ligation for chronic occlusive arterial disease Am J Surg 52 100 1941
- Coodwin J F and Kaplan S Priscol in treatment of peripheral vascular disease Brit M J 1 1102 1951
- Coldsmith C A and Brown G E Pain in thromboangitis obliterans a clinical study of 100 consecutive cases Am J M Sc 189 810 1935
- Crant R T and Bland E F Observations on arteriovenous anastomoses in human skin and in the bird's foot with special reference to the reaction to cold Heart 15 385 1931
- Green H D and DuBose H H Clinical trial of Ildar a new benzapetine adrenergic blocking drug in the treatment of peripheral vascular diseases and miscellaneous complaints Circulation 10 374 1954
- Greene R Frostbite and kindred ills Lancet 2 680 1941
- Grimson K S Pearson M J Marzoni F I and Hendrix J I The effects of priscol on peripheral vascular diseases Ann Surg 121 968 1948
- Haimovici H I peripheral arterial embolism Angiology 1 20 1951
- Gangrene of the extremities of venous origin Circulation 1 225 1950
- Hamilton M and Wilson C M The treatment of intermittent claudication Quart J Med 21 160 1952
- Hampton A O Prandoni A G and King J T Pulmonary embolism from obscure sources Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp 76 245 1945
- Hansen I F and Faber M Raynaud's syndrome originating from reversible precipitation of protein Acta med Scandinav 129 81 1947
- Harrison C V Giant cell or temporal arteritis a review J Clin Path 1 197 1948
- Hausser F and Allen E V Cerebrovascular complications in thromboangitis obliterans Ann Int Med 12 845 1938
- Heinbecker I and Bishop G H The mechanism of spastic vascular disease and its treatment Ann Surg 10 270 1938
- Herrmann L C Passive Vascular Exercises and the Conservative Management of Obstructive Arterial Diseases of the Extremities Philadelphia Lippincott 1936
- Hill R M Vascular anomalies of the upper limbs associated with cervical ribs Brit J Surg 2 100 1939
- Hines F A Jr and Barker N W Arteriosclerosis obliterans a clinical and pathological study Am J M Sc 200 717 1940
- and Christensen N A Raynaud's disease among men JAMA 129 1 1945
- Holman C W and Steinberg I Treatment of superior vena caval occlusion by arterial graft JAMA 105 1403 1954
- Homans J Circulatory Diseases of the Extremities New York MacMillan 1939
- Horton B T Magath T B and Brown C I Arteritis of the temporal vessels a previously undescribed form Arch Int Med 53 400 1934
- Hughes J S R Venous obstruction in the upper extremity (Lager-Schroetter's syndrome) Intern Abstr Surg 39 89 1949

- Hultquist G T Über Thrombose und Embolie der Arteria carotis und hierbei vorkommenden Gehirnstörungen Jena Fischer 1942
- Hunt J R The role of carotid arteries in the causation of vascular lesions in the brain *Am J M Sc* 147 704 1914
- The Raynaud phenomena *Quart J Med* 5 399 1936
- Hussey H H Katz S and Yater W M The superior vena caval syndrome *Am Heart J* 37 1 1946
- Hyndman O R and Wolkin J Raynaud's disease *Am Heart J* 93 535 1947
- Innerfield I Angrist A and Benjamin J W Studies on trypsin I The anticoagulant action of trypsin *Gastroenterology* 20 630 1952
- Jennings G H Arteritis of the temporal vessels *Lancet* 1 424 1938
- Jepson R P Raynaud's phenomenon in workers with vibratory tools *Brit J Indust Med* 11 180 1954
- Julian O C Dye W M Oliwin J H and Jordan P H Direct surgery of arterio-sclerosis *Ann Surg* 136 459 1952
- Kaplan T Frost bite *Am J Surg* 70 318 1936
- Kappert A and Hadorn W Experimental and therapeutic investigations with certain new hydrogenated ergot alkaloids in peripheral vascular disorders *Angiology* 1 570 1950
- Key F Embolectomy in the treatment of circulatory disturbances in the extremities *Surg Gyn & Obst* 36 309 1923
- Kinmonth J B The physiology and relief of traumatic arterial spasm *Brit M J* 1 59 1952
- Kissin M Stein J J and Adleman R J The effect of drugs used in treatment of intermittent claudication *Angiology* 2 217 1951
- Kleinsasser L J Effort thrombosis of the axillary and subclavian veins *Arch Surg* 69 958 1949
- Kreyberg L Development of acute tissue damage due to cold *Physiol Rev* 29 156 1949
- Klinge F Der Rheumatismus *Ergebn d allg Path u path Anat* 27 1 1933
- Landis F M and Gibbon J H Jr A simple method of producing vasodilation in the lower extremities *Arch Int Med* 57 785 1933
- and Hitzrot L H Treatment of peripheral vascular disease by means of suction and pressure *Ann Int Med* 9 264 1935
- Lange K and Boyd L J Use of fluorescam method in establishment of diagnosis and prognosis of peripheral vascular diseases *Arch Int Med* 74 175 1944
- Lansbury J and Brown G E The clinical significance of calcification of the arteries of the lower extremities *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 9 49 1934
- Laufman H and Dehesenberg S Arterial and venous mesenteric occlusion *Am J Surg* 58 84 1947
- Leiner G Zur Behandlung der arteriellen Embolie *Klin Wchnschr* 16 639 1937
- Lendrum A C and Mackay W A Glomangoma a form of painful subcutaneous tubercle *Brit M J* 2 676 1939
- Leriche R La Chirurgie de la Douleur Masson et Cie Paris 1937
- Considerations sur le traitement chirurgical de la phlébite du membre inférieur et de ses séquelles éloignées *J Internat Chir* 35 585 1938
- and Fontaine R Des ostéoporoses douloureuses posttraumatiques *Presse méd* 38 617 1930
- and — Sur la nature de la maladie de Raynaud *Presse méd* 40 15 1 1937
- and Kunlin J Traitement immédiat des phlébites postopératoires par l'infiltration novocaïnique du sympathétique lombaire *Presse méd* 40 1481 1934

- Leriche R and Morel A The syndrome of thrombotic obliteration of the aortic bifurcation *Ann Surg* 127 193 1948
- Lewis T Experiments relating to the peripheral mechanism involved in spasmodic arrest of the circulation in the fingers a variety of Raynaud's disease *Heart* 15 7 1919
- Clinical observations relating to burning pain in the extremities and to so called erythromelalgia in particular *Clin Sc* 1 175 1933
  - Vascular Disorders of the Limbs New York Macmillan 1936
  - The pathological changes in the arteries supplying the fingers in warm handed people and in cases of so called Raynaud's disease *Clin Sc* 3 287 1938
  - Observations on some normal and injurious effects of cold upon the skin and underlying tissues III Frostbite *Brit M J* 2 869 1941
  - and Landis E M Observations upon the vascular mechanism in acrocyanosis *Heart* 16 229 1930
  - and Pickering G W Vasodilatation in the limbs in response to warming the body with evidence for sympathetic vasodilator nerves in man *Heart* 16 33 1931
  - and — Observations upon maladies in which the blood supply to digits ceases intermittently or permanently and upon bilateral gangrene of digits observations relevant to so called Raynaud's disease *Clin Sc* 1 327 1934
  - Pickering G W and Rothschild P Observations upon muscular pain in intermittent claudication *Heart* 15 359 1931
- Lindbom A Arteriosclerosis and arterial thrombosis in the lower limb *Acta radiol Suppl* 80 1950
- Lindgren S and Wilander O The use of heparin in vascular surgery *Acta med Scandinav* 107 148 1941
- Lindquist T Intermittent claudication and vascular spasm *Acta med Scandinav* 136 447 1950
- Ljunggren E Über die sogenannte traumatische Venenthrombose der oberen Extremität *Acta chir Scandinav* 7, 111 1935
- Lowenstein P S Thrombosis of the axillary vein an anatomic study *J A M A* 87 854 1924
- Lunseith J H Baker L A and Shiffin A Chronic scleroderma with acute exacerbation during corticotropic therapy *Arch Int Med* 88 783 1951
- McCann M B and MacCormack D H Dead Hand in users of vibratory tool *Lancet* 359 1945
- McDowell R E Estes J E and Seybold W D Mesenteric thrombosis associated with thrombo angitis obliterans *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 24 1 1949
- McGavack T H and Samworth R P The place of iontophoresis with acetyl beta methyl choline chloride (Mecholyl) in the treatment of varicose ulcers *Bull New York Med Coll Flower & Fifth Ave Hosp* 2 65 1939
- McGovern T and Wright I S Pernio a vascular disease *Am Heart J* 27 583 1941
- Maddock W G and Collier F A Peripheral vaso constriction by tobacco and its relation to thrombo angitis obliterans *Ann Surg* 98 70 1933
- Mangold R and Roth F Zur Kenntnis des Aortenbogensyndromes (Maladie sans pouls) Schweiz med Wchnschr 84 1192 1954
- Martorell E and Fabre J The syndrome of obliteration of the supra aortic branches *Angiology* 5 39 1954
- Masson P Les Glomus Neuro Vasculaires Paris Hermann & Cie 1937
- Mathieu L Hadot S Pernot C and Metz Deux cas d'arterite oblitrante d tronc supra aortiques des jeunes femmes (maladie de Takaya-hu) *Arch d mal du coeur* 48 1172 1955
- Matsui S Anatomie pathologique et pathogenie de la scleroderme generalisee *Presse med* 2 142 1924

- Mavor G E Intermittent claudication and sympathectomy *Lancet* 2 794 1955
- Menendez C V and Linton R R Peripheral vascular disease *New England J Med* 251 392 1954
- Mersheimer W L Winfield J M and Fankhauser R L Mesenteric vascular occlusion *Arch Surg* 66 752 1953
- Meyers L and Lord J W Jr Cranial arteritis *JAMA* 136 169 1948
- Millikan C H Sickert R G and Shick R M Studies in cerebrovascular disease V  
The use of anticoagulant drugs in the treatment of intermittent insufficiency of the internal carotid arterial system *Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clin* 40 578 1955
- Mitchell S W On a rare vasomotor neurosis of the extremities and on the maladies with which it may be confounded *Am J M Sc* 76 17 1848
- Moniz E Lima A and DeLacerda P Hemiplegies par thrombose de la carotide interne *Presse med* 45 977 1937
- Moore H C and Sheehan H L The kidney of scleroderma *Lancet* 1 69 1952
- Mufson I Clinical observations in erythromelalgia and a method for its symptomatic relief *Am Heart J* 13 483 1937
- The etiology of scleroderma *Ann Int Med* 39 1219 1953
- Neisser E Über wandernde Phlebitis *Deutsche med Wchnschr* 29 680 1903
- Norman I L and Allen E V The vascular complications of polycythemia *Am Heart J* 13 257 1937
- Nuzum F R and Elliot A H Pancreatic extract in the treatment of angina pectoris and intermittent claudication *Arch Int Med* 49 1007 1932
- Ochsner A Gage M and DeBakey M Scalenus anticus (Naffziger) syndrome *Am J Surg* 48 669 1935
- Oljenick I Bilateral cervical rib *Arch Surg* 18 1984 1929
- Olovson T Über die Anwendung von Heparin bei Arterienembolie *Acta chir Scandinav* 82 487 1939
- O'Neil E E Ligation of inferior vena cava in prevention and treatment of pulmonary embolism *New England J Med* 232 641 1945
- Ophuls W Periarthritis nodosa acuta *Arch Int Med* 32 870 1923
- Orr K D and Fainer D C Cold injuries in Korea during winter of 1950-51 *Medicine* 31 177 1952
- Ottley C M Glomus tumor *Brit J Surg* 29 397 1947
- Palumbo L T Quirin L F and Caneling R W Lumbar sympathectomy for peripheral arteriosclerosis *Ann Surg* 137 61 1953
- Pearl F L and Handel A Peripheral vascular status of one hundred unselected patients with diabetes *Arch Surg* 39 86 1939
- and Rosenman L D Lumbar sympathectomy for peripheral arteriosclerosis *Circulation* 4 40 1951
- Pearse H F Jr Embolectomy for arterial embolism of the extremities *Ann Surg* 95 17 1933
- The influence of the heat regulatory mechanism on Paynaud's disease *Am Heart J* 10 1005 1935
- Perez de los Reyes R Castellanos A and Pereiras P Angiocardiography and its value *Am Heart J* 25 298 1943
- Perlow S Phlegmassa cerulea dolens *JAMA* 144 1257 1950
- Perry C B and Davie T B Symmetrical peripheral gangrene in cardiac failure *Brit M J* 1 15 1939
- Pickering G W and Wayne E J Observations on angina pectoris and intermittent claudication in anemia *Clin Sc* 1 305 1933
- Vascular spasm *Lancet* 2 845 1951



- Popoff N W The digital vascular system with reference to the state of the glomus in inflammation arteriosclerotic gangrene diabetic gangrene thrombo angitis obliterans and supernumerary digits in man *Arch Path* 18 295 1934
- Raynaud A Observation d'une obliteration presque complete de l'aorte Suivie de quelques reflexions et precedée de l'indication des faits analogues Consignes dans les auteurs *Journ hebdom de med* 1 161 1828
- Reich R S The pulses of the foot their value in diagnosis of peripheral circulatory disease *Ann Surg* 99 613 1934
- Reveno W S Reynolds L and Dodrill F D Occlusion of both innominate veins restoration of blood flow by arterial graft *JAMA* 159 1192 1955
- Reynolds J T and Jirka F J Embolic occlusion of major arteries *Surgery* 16 495 1944
- Rich A R The role of hypersensitivity in periarteritis nodosa as indicated by seven cases developing during serum sickness and sulfonamide therapy *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 71 123 1942
- and Gregory J E The experimental demonstration that periarteritis nodosa is a manifestation of hypersensitivity *Bull Johns Hopkins Hosp* 72 65 1943
- Rischpler A Über die histologischen Veränderungen nach Erfrierung *Beitr path Anat* 28 541 1900
- Ross R S and McKusick V A Aortic arch syndromes *Arch Int Med* 92 701 1953
- Ruggiero W F and Chu F The management of peripheral vascular emergencies *Surg Clin North America* 35 543 1955
- Runge W and Melzer R Über Periarteritis nodosa mit starker Beteiligung des Zentralnervensystems (und sehr eigenartigem klinischen Befund) *J f Psychol u Neurol* 40 298 1930
- Roux J L Le syndrome de l'arterite temporale *Helv méd acta Suppl* 34 1954
- Ryckert H E and Raham D Some problems in the diagnosis prognosis and treatment of acute arterial occlusion *Am Heart J* 16 395 1938
- Ryle J A Thrombophlebitis migrans *Lancet* 2 731 1930
- Sampson J J An apparent causal mechanism of primary thrombosis of the axillary and subclavian veins *Am Heart J* 25 313 1943
- Santos J C Dos Phlebographie directe conception technique premiers resultats *J Internat de Chirurg* 3 625 1936
- Saphir O Thromboangitis obliterans of the coronary arteries and its relation to arteriosclerosis *Am Heart J* 12 521 1936
- Scherf D and Schonbrunner E Über Herzbefunde bei Lungenembolie *Ztschr f klin Med* 128 455 1935
- von Schrotter L Erkrankungen der Gefäße in Nothnagel *Handbuch d allg Pathologie* 1884 p 533
- Scott R M Some medical aspects of tobacco smoking *Brit M J* 1 61 1937
- Scott W J M and Morton J J Sympathetic activity in certain diseases especially those of the peripheral circulation *Arch Int Med* 48 106 1931
- Seymour W B and Liebow A A Abdominal intermittent claudication and narrowing of the coeliac and mesenteric arteries *Ann Int Med* 10 1033 1937
- Sgalitzer M Kollert V and Demel R Kontrastdarstellung der Venen im Röntgenbilde *Klin Wchnschr* 10 10 9 1931
- Shannon F W and Solomon J Bilateral temporal arteritis with complete loss of vision *JAMA* 127 647 1945
- Shapiro D The Leriche syndrome *Am J Roentgenol* 61 891 1922
- Shumacker H B Jr Sympathectomy in the treatment of peripheral vascular disease *Surgery* 13 1 1943

- Shumacker H B Jr and Abramson D I Post traumatic vasomotor disorders  
Surg Gynec & Obst 88 417 1949
- Silbert S The treatment of thromboangitis obliterans by intravenous injection of hypertonic salt solution JAMA 86 1759 1926
- Etiology of thromboangitis obliterans JAMA 199 5 1945
- Singer R Neue Beobachtungen über die Kreislaufverhältnisse in den unteren Extremitäten und ihre Beziehung zur Klinik Wien klin Wchnschr 49 871 1936
- Skipper E and Flint F J Symmetrical arterial occlusion of upper extremities head and neck a rare syndrome Brit M J 2 9 1950
- Smith J L Ritchie J and Dawson J Clinical and experimental observations on the pathology of trench frost bite J Path & Bact 90 159 1915
- Smith L A and Allen E V Erythralgia (erythromelalgia) of the extremities Am Heart J 16 175 1938
- Smith P G Gullickson M and Campbell D A Some limitations of lumbar sympathectomy in arteriosclerosis obliterans Arch Surg 64 103 1952
- Smithwick R H The problem of producing complete and lasting sympathetic denervation of the upper extremity by preganglionic section Ann Surg 112 1085 1940
- Snapper J Über die Verstopfung der peripheren Arterien Wien klin Wchnschr 45 667 1932
- Spiegel I J and Milowsky J Causalgia a preliminary report of nine cases successfully treated by surgical and chemical interruption of the sympathetic pathways JAMA 12 9 1945
- Spuhler O and Morandi L Sklerodermie und ihre Beziehung zu Libman Sacks Syndrom Dermatomyositis und rheumatischem Infektionskreis Helvet med acta 16 167 1949
- Spurling R G and Bradford F K Scalene neurocirculatory compression Ann Surg 107 708 1939
- Stallworth J M and Jeffords J V Clinical effects of arapetine (Ildar) on peripheral arterial disease JAMA 161 840 1956
- Starr I Jr Change in the reaction of the skin to histamine as evidence of deficient circulation in the lower extremities JAMA 90 209 1929
- Physiologic consideration concerned with the pathogenesis and treatment of obstructive vascular disease Circulation 6 643 1952
- Stein I D Further observations on the treatment of superficial thrombophlebitis with phenylbutazone (Butazolidine) Circulation 12 833 1955
- Streissler E Die Halsrippen Ergebn Chirurg u Orthop 5 280 1913
- Suequet J P Anatomie et physiologie de la Circulation du sang dans les membres et dans la tete chez l'homme Paris Delahaye 1860
- Szilagy D E and Overhulse P R Segmental aorta iliac and femoral arterial occlusion JAMA 144 6 1945
- Telford E D Sympathectomy a review of 100 operations Lancet 1 444 1934
- and Stopford J S M Thromboangitis obliterans with special reference to its pathology and the results of sympathectomy Brit M J 1 863 1935
- Theis F V Thrombosis of the terminal aorta Surg Gynec & Obst 11 505 1902
- Todd T W The vascular symptoms in cervical rib Lancet 36 1912
- Tremolières F and Veran P Syndrome d'oblitération artérielle du membre inférieur droit apparue au cours d'une phlébite superficielle et profonde avec embolies pulmonaires Effet thérapeutique et l'acetylcholine Bull méd Paris 43 1101 1979
- Trendelenburg F Über die Unterbindung der Vena saphena magna bei Unterschenkelvaricen Beitr z klin Chir 195 1890—91
- Trias de Bes L Lucas J G S Barcons F B A case of Takayashu's syndrome the pulseless disease Brit Heart J 11 484 1955

- Irotter L B C Embolism and Thrombosis of the Mesenteric Vessels Cambridge Oxford Univ Press 1913
- Umlauf W Thrombosen und Lankreaskarzinom München med Wchnschr 80 60, 1933
- Ungley C C Channel G D and Richards R L The immersion foot syndrome Brit J Surg 33 17 1945
- Urbanek J and Scherf D Kapillarmikroskopische Untersuchungen an der menschlichen Konjunktiva über das Vorkommen von derivatorischen Gefäßen im Bereiche des konjunktivalen Gefäßsystems Wien Klin Wchnschr 11 8, 1928
- Vallet B L Scleroderma a systemic disease New England J Med 235 207 1946
- Wartman W B Hemorrhage into the arterial wall as a cause of peripheral vascular disease Am Heart J 39 79 1950
- Weiss S Stead E A Jr Warren S V and Bailey O F Scleroderma heart disease Arch Int Med 71 749 1943
- White J C Raynaud's disease Studied on postoperative cases bearing on etiology of the disease and the efficiency of sympathetic ganglionectomy New England J Med 206 1198 1932
- Vascular and neurologic lesions in survivors of shipwreck I Immersion foot syndrome following exposure to cold New England J Med 228 211 1943
- Smithwick R H and Hammerick R The Autonomic Nervous System ed 2 New York Macmillan 1932
- Whitfield A G W Cooke W T Evans I I and Rudd C Temporal arteritis and its treatment with cortisone and ACTH Lancet 1 409 1953
- Wilson K S and Alexander H The relation of periarteritis nodosa to bronchial asthma and other forms of human hypersensitiveness J Lab & Clin Med 30 195 1946
- von Winiwarter F Über eine eigenthümliche Form von Endarteritis und Erythrophobie mit Gangran des Fußes Arch f Klin Chir 23 202 1879
- Wisham L H Abramson A S and Ebel A Value of exercise in peripheral arterial disease JAMA 163 10 1953
- Wolfe V de Le Feuvre F A Humphries A W Shaw M and Jhalan C Intermittent claudication of the hip and the syndrome of chronic aorto iliac thrombosis Circulation 9 1 1954
- Wright I S Vascular Diseases in Clinical Practice Chicago Year Book Publishers 1949
- The neurovascular syndrome produced by hyperabduction of the arm Am Heart J 29 1 1945
- Wuhrmann F and Fasellier A Klinische und anatomische Untersuchungen bei einem 24 Jahre lang beobachteten Fall von Endangitis obliterans von Winiwarter Buerger Cardiologia 9 1 1945
- Wylie F J Thromboendarterectomy for arteriosclerotic thrombosis of major arteries Surgery 37 275 1922
- and McGuiness I S The recognition and treatment of arteriosclerotic stenosis of major arteries Surg Gynec & Obst 97 42, 1953
- Zeek I M Periarthritis nodosa and other forms of necrotizing angitis New England J Med 249 764 1953

## Chapter 31

# Therapy

### GENERAL REMARKS

**I**N THIS CHAPTER some measures available for the treatment of cardiac diseases are reviewed. A large number of therapeutic procedures for special conditions have already been discussed in the preceding individual chapters. The agents serving especially for the management of cardiac failure will find consideration in the discussion which follows.

Cardiac failure and decompensation should not be treated exclusively with drugs. Rest and appropriate diet alone will restore compensation in many patients.

The method of treatment so popular in the past consisting of complete digitalization and then dismissal of the patient until cardiac failure reappeared has been properly abandoned. Such treatment can be compared to leaving a non-swimmer under water and lifting his head out of the water now and then to prevent complete asphyxia. The patient must be under continuous control; his activities must be planned and discussed in detail with him. Compensation must be maintained by the mode of living as well as by continuous administration of drugs.

When decompensation develops, an endeavor should be made to determine its cause. Knowledge of the precipitating factor helps greatly in treatment. Often the appearance of an arrhythmia, particularly atrial fibrillation, of an infection with hemolytic streptococci, pulmonary embolism, extra physical strain, or under nutrition will precipitate cardiac failure. In all these instances it is possible for the situation to improve after the disappearance or elimination of the precipitating factor. After they have recovered from cardiac failure, these patients may have an efficient and fully compensated circulation for years.

Decompensation must be considered much more grave, however, if it develops from failure of a markedly dilated heart or a steadily progressive process such as coronary sclerosis. Under these circumstances there is not much prospect that the state of the patient will remain satisfactory without continuous treatment. But even in the latter instance, decided improvement may occur if in the case of an earlier infarction collateral circulation develops and strong scars are formed in the myocardium. Therefore, even the symptoms and signs of advanced cardiac failure in coronary sclerosis should never lead to an absolutely poor prognosis.

Psychotherapy has considerable importance in the management of decompensated patients and should not be neglected. All encouraging features should

be stressed such terms as cardiac failure should be avoided in discussion with the patient. The term congestion is less alarming. The importance of preventing mental strain and nervous tension in patients with hypertension or coronary thrombosis was mentioned in the respective chapters.

The removal of visible edema, dyspnea or tachycardia is not the ultimate objective of therapy. Many weeks of treatment sometimes are needed until the heart acquires sufficient reserve and the patient is in an optimal condition. The disappearance of dyspnea or edema does not constitute the maximal benefit from treatment.

A discussion of the sexual life of the patient ought not to be omitted because of a false sense of prudery. Actually patients are often thankful that they were anticipated in this question which they may have hesitated to raise. In cases of coronary disease many deaths during sexual intercourse could have been prevented if the patient had been told to take nitroglycerin before the act.

Greatest attention should be devoted to the treatment and prevention of all infections. It was shown in the chapter on myocarditis how often the heart muscle is involved in various infections. Patients with advanced valvular lesions or severe hypertension remain compensated for years as long as the heart muscle is normal but the slightest impairment of the myocardium may lead to cardiac failure. It is readily conceded that dental granuloma, gingivitis and dental abscesses do not play the role ascribed them by some advocates of the doctrine of oral sepsis. Nevertheless, foci of this kind possess great and often underestimated significance in many cases.

Medicine possesses no satisfactory test for estimating the functional capacity of the heart and none for the early diagnosis of decompensation. All the innumerable tests described—such as registration of the heart rate and the respiratory rate, the blood pressure at rest and after measured work—and all the recommended combinations of these tests have little value. The least exertion may increase the pulse rate and blood pressure more in the otherwise healthy neurotic individual than in a decompensated patient. A careful history and exact examination furnish much more information on the state of the circulation of the patient than any of the functional tests now available.

### DIGITALIS

No other drug employed in medicine has created a literature as voluminous as that of digitalis. Numerous monographs and innumerable experimental and clinical papers have digitalis as their subject. While much research has been done particularly in recent years on digitalis glycosides and on purification of the drug, the clinical rules laid down by Withering still hold and have been little improved. This does not reflect adversely on the scientific zeal of workers in all countries but merely proves how unusual the experience, the excellent powers of observation and the remarkable descriptions of Withering.

### Chemistry

Among the many plants of the digitalis group the leaves of digitalis purpurea and of digitalis lanata are used almost exclusively at present as the source of digitalis preparations. Digitalis lanata is a species of foxglove that has the advantages of easy cultivation and a large content of active glycosides.

The digitalis glycosides are composed of an aglucone (genin) fraction and a sugar fraction. The latter is important for the solubility of the glycoside and enables it to penetrate the cells. The aglucone fraction has a phenanthrene structure similar to that of the sex hormones (sterols) and desoxycorticosterone and exerts the specific cardiac effect.

The three glycosides isolated from the leaves of digitalis purpurea — digitoxin, gitoxin and gitalin — are known to have precursors; they are not genuine glycosides (Stoll). These have still not been isolated.

From digitalis lanata three products, digitanin A, digitanin B and digitanin C have been isolated; from these digitoxin, gitoxin and digoxin are derived.

Digitalis contains many other substances among them the saponins which promote absorption from the gastrointestinal tract.

The isolation of pure crystalline products, digitoxin from digitalis purpurea (digitaline Natuelle isolated as early as 1869), digoxin (isolated by Smith in 1930) and cedilanin from digitalis lanata makes possible the administration of pure products of known strength.

### Pharmacology

**Action of the Heart Muscle.** Digitalis glycosides increase the contractility of the myocardium. This is seen even in isolated muscle strips and may also be observed microscopically in fibers from the specific tissue. Systole is strengthened and is more complete so that the heart empties better. The heart muscle is enabled to overcome greater resistance and its absolute power is increased. The minute volume may be doubled. There also are some effects on the diastolic phase although they are not very pronounced in the mammalian heart. The speed of relaxation is increased but diastolic size is not reduced. The increased velocity of the contraction shortens the duration of systole and the refractory phase (Junkmann). The pump works quicker, stronger and the piston of the pump goes deeper than before digitalization.

The action of digitalis on actomyosin and adenosine triphosphate is not clear. It is possible that the diminished amount of ATP (Wollenberger) in the heart of patients with thiamine deficiency or hyperthyroidism explains the poor effect of digitalis in these conditions. Digitalis increases the glycogen content of the heart muscle and diminishes the amount of lactic acid. According to Pothlin et al. digitalis interferes with energy utilization and not with energy production. Bing et al. found that strophanthin does not affect oxygen consumption of the failing heart which remains normal. According to Proctor et al. digitalis influences the enzyme systems that regulate the level of adenosine triphosphate.

In patients with heart failure digitalis leads to disappearance of congestion diminution of residual blood fall of atrial pressure lower venous pressure better nutrition of the tissues and finally to an increase of the cardiac reserve power. The peripheral blood depots open partly due to the disappearance of edema and partly due to widening of the peripheral vessels by other mechanisms. All these actions begin soon and bring about a remarkable improvement. It is claimed that digitalis is ineffective in high output failure. This is true in our opinion only if the causative factor (pulmonary pathology arteriovenous fistula etc.) persists in great intensity.

*Action on the Vagus* Digitalis glycosides increase the vagal inhibition of the heart. This effect is not of central origin; it has been explained by increased sensitivity of the receptors in the carotid sinus (Heymans et al.) or by sensitization of the heart muscle to the (normal) vagal tone (Abdon and Nielson).

This heightening of vagal inhibition is beneficial. It may slow the heart particularly in cases of atrial fibrillation where it slows the ventricles by inhibiting the atrioventricular conduction. The contractility of the ventricles is not impaired by this vagal action since — as was pointed out before — there are no vagus fibers and therefore no direct vagal effects on the mammalian ventricle.

The conduction of a stimulus over the heart is directly impaired by large doses of digitalis. This effect is observed even in isolated muscle strips.

*Action on Blood Vessels* Much has been written about the vascular effect of digitalis glycosides. A general vasoconstriction particularly in the gastrointestinal tract seems to take place under certain conditions but not with doses comparable to those used in therapeutics. This effect is also counteracted by the improved peripheral blood supply; the result of the stronger and shortened systole. The special situation of the coronary arteries will be discussed later.

There is no proof of a direct diuretic effect on the kidneys. Any increase in urinary output is the indirect consequence of the improvement of circulation.

*Action on the Normal Heart* It is often maintained that digitalis does not affect the normal heart but this statement is certainly untrue. It must be expected that the efficiency of the systolic contraction will not be remarkably increased if the heart works under normal conditions. The minute volume cannot increase as long as the inflow of blood to the heart remains the same. If toxic doses of digitalis are given to healthy individuals the minute volume falls, a finding that could be anticipated in view of the toxic effects of large doses of digitalis on the heart muscle. According to some authors the diminished output is due to peripheral factors (Dock and Tunter).

*Fixation and Cumulation* Digitalis is fixed in the heart (Hatcher). It is still present 28 days after administration of one large dose. It has been estimated that the heart loses only 3 to 7 per cent of the cumulative amount of digitoxin. The binding of scilla and strophanthin is slight. Friedman et al. found that the renal excretion of digitoxin lasted 24 days. It is significant that elderly patients excrete much smaller amounts.

The digitalis glycosides cumulate. Even very small doses may suddenly exert toxic effects when repeated often over a sufficient length of time. Originally cumulation was explained by simple addition until it was shown that large sublethal doses of digitalis cause necrosis of the myocardial fibers. This necrosis was seen first in 1904 but was completely forgotten until it was rediscovered in recent times. It is not yet decided whether the necrosis is caused by a direct action of the digitalis on the myocardium or whether it is due to ischemia. Digitalis in sublethal doses also causes hyaline necrosis in the aorta and in the walls of the renal and coronary arteries. Degenerative changes have also been seen in the brain. The necrosis and hyaline degeneration in the myocardium is situated around the papillary muscles in particular. It is followed by secondary leukocytic infiltration. We may assume that smaller doses of digitalis alter the myocardial cell without leading to histologic changes. It is probable that the cumulation is due to the increased sensitivity of the myocardium altered by small doses of digitalis to additional doses.

The heart was supposed to store more digitalis than any other organ. However, recent investigations with the embryonic duck heart as test object (Friedman et al.) speak against this predilection. The authors found the greatest concentration in the liver and kidneys. It is interesting to note that the tissues of the rabbit (examined by Friedman's technique) do not retain digitalis as compared to the tissues of other animals. Digitalis is fixed by the cat heart but not by the rat heart, and even the cat heart does not fix more than other organs of this animal. This should be a warning against drawing conclusions from one species to another.

The maximum capacity for destroying digitalis is, according to Friedman et al., 50 micrograms daily. This amount is the same whether 0.1 or 0.2 mg of digitoxin are given.

Most of the digitalis administered is excreted by the urine (80 per cent) and feces in an inactive form. Only traces of active substances are excreted.

Using radioactive digitoxin Okita et al. found minute amounts in the heart after 40 days.

**Electrocardiogram.** The digitalis glycosides cause visible effects in the electrocardiogram. The shortening of systole can be measured in the electrocardiogram and may amount to 41 per cent (Berliner). Within a few hours a single large dose may depress the P-S-T segments and lower the T waves. These changes may persist for more than three weeks after discontinuation of treatment (figure 114). Extrasystoles will be discussed later. Digitalis also causes atrioventricular conduction disturbances. In some hearts with a damaged myocardium they appear following small doses.

In figure 115a a prolonged P-P interval exists. The tracing was obtained from a 56 year old patient with hypertension who had received 0.3 Gm of digitalis daily for 18 days in the form of tablets of powdered leaves. The P-P interval measured 0.32 second. In lead I the third atrial stimulus is not conducted to the



ventricle the following conduction is shorter due to partial recovery (Wenckebach's period). The RST segments and T waves are displaced in a direction opposite to the main deflection—a typical digitalis-effect. Figure 115b was

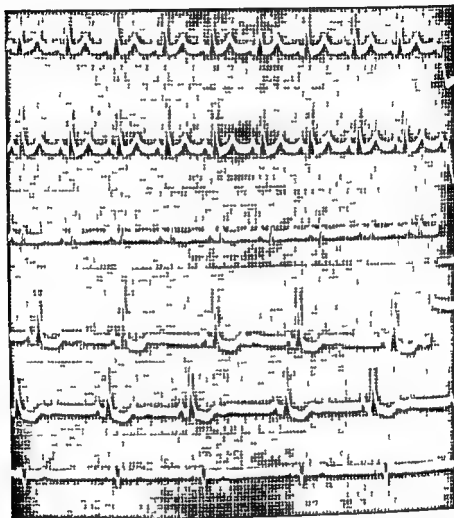


FIG 114 The upper three strips represent the three standard leads before, the lower 3 strips after digitalis therapy. Note the change of rate and the depression of the RST segments with lowering of the T waves. U waves appear; this is common and may be explained by the diminished content of potassium in the heart muscle.

taken from the same patient 17 days after digitalis had been discontinued. The digitalis effects (conduction disturbances, shortening of systole and P-S-T changes) have disappeared.

**Standardization.** Methods for standardization of digitalis according to the amount necessary to cause standstill of the frog or cat heart in a given time

under certain experimental procedures are in wide use. One should not forget however that preparations having the same strength experimentally (containing the same number of cat units) may have a quite different activity in men. Even cat units cannot be compared with each other because of different methods used. Likewise they cannot be compared to frog units since preparations having the same number of frog units may have different toxicity when tested in cats. Therefore the labels indicating standardization of a preparation on frogs or cats may be somewhat misleading. They often give a false sense of

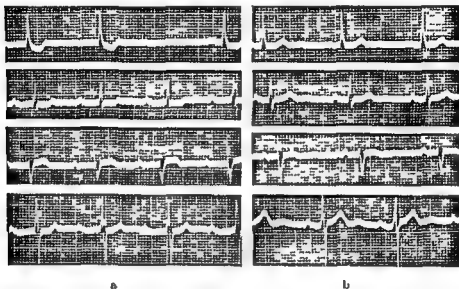


FIG. 115. Atrioventricular block and deformation of the RS T segments and T waves caused by digitalis (a). Only left axis deviation remains 17 days after digitalis was discontinued (b).

security in dosage. In a similar way, standardization in man, which has often been tried, encounters great difficulties.

Many preparations, particularly tincture of digitalis, deteriorate rapidly. The pure glycosides do not require bioassay.

### Indications

Scientific evidence and reasoning, often only superficially accurate, cannot yet be conceded the final argument for or against the administration of digitalis in a special case. The dose and mode of treatment must be determined by the real benefit the patient derives from it. A long life is too short to learn enough about this wonderful drug (Wenckebach).

These sentences written by a great cardiologist illustrate clearly the superiority of practical experience over theoretical knowledge in digitalis treatment.

Digitalis therapy is a great art that cannot be learned from books. Only the inexperienced take it lightly. Lives may be saved or astonishing improvement may be accomplished by a slight increase in dosage. The addition or decrease of one tablet of 0.1 Gm. of digitalis per day may change the whole picture.

An exact knowledge of the indications and contraindications is the necessary basis for any therapeutic program with digitalis.

There are two main indications for the treatment: (1) evidence of cardiac failure, (2) arrhythmias particularly atrial fibrillation with too rapid a ventricular rate.

**Cardiac Failure** In the presence of rhythmic cardiac action, evidence of myocardial failure is the only indication for digitalis. Cardiac failure is evidenced not only by edema, dyspnea and engorgement of the liver but also by Cheyne-Stokes respiration, nocturnal cough, hydrothorax and pulmonary congestion. Digitalization should not be postponed until cardiac weakness has fully developed. The drug should be given at the first sign of myocardial failure.

It has been stated that digitalis never helps patients with rhythmic cardiac action unless hypertrophy of the heart exists in combination with dilatation (Edens). Although no proof can be cited to support this statement, there is some truth in it. In concentric hypertrophy alone digitalis is not indicated and no help can be expected from it, since the heart is not decompensated and no failure exists. In patients with pure dilatation, as in a case of toxic myocardial damage or following unusual strain, digitalis is useless. Digitalis is also useless in the myocardial necrosis of diphtheria and coronary sclerosis and in the myocardial damage of rheumatic fever. Only if the basic condition or another disease in these cases (hypertension, chronic coronary artery disease) has already led to hypertrophy and dilatation does the drug improve the condition of the patient.

Digitalis is, of course, useless in congestive failure caused by pericarditis or cardiac tamponade. Only in slowly developing myocardial failure as it actually happens in the majority of decompensated cardiac patients in whom hypertrophy and dilatation of some part are combined, is digitalis useful.

Digitalis is administered to these cases primarily for its positive inotropic effect, that is, to improve the contractile power of the heart muscle.

In the presence of rhythmic cardiac action, slowing of an accelerated cardiac rate (sinus tachycardia) by digitalis is often impossible. If the tachycardia is caused by decompensation (Bainbridge reflex), it may disappear during digitalization (figure 114) but in many cases it persists unless toxic doses are used. Thus, in mitral stenosis with regular sinus rhythm and sinus tachycardia, the rate remains rapid even if large doses of digitalis are administered. In those patients who also exhibit marked pulmonary congestion, digitalis is of little or no value because it does not help overcome the valvular defect and neither ventricle is incompetent. Sometimes a tachycardia has a compensatory effect to maintain cardiac output, as pointed out before.

An increase of rate alone need not be the occasion for inaugurating digitalis therapy, since cardiac acceleration occurs in the absence of decompensation.

Thus considerable tachycardia may be encountered in a cardiac neurosis in hyperthyroidism in patients with aortic regurgitation in endo and myo carditis and other conditions without coexisting decompensation. Often an entirely superfluous digitalis therapy is initiated in these patients. It is on the other hand well known that digitalis often restores compensation without slowing the heart.

Occasionally digitalis is withheld from decompensated patients even when they suffer nightly from attacks of paroxysmal dyspnea simply because the cardiac rate is slow. One may encounter severely decompensated patients in whom the cardiac rate does not exceed 60 to 70 beats per minute. Not rarely this happens to patients with coronary sclerosis in whom this bradycardiac decompensation may be due to abnormal nutrition of the sinus node. It occurs in aortic stenosis. The hesitancy to give digitalis in these patients is not justified. The heart rate in these patients does not become slower during digitalis treatment and digitalization will cause marked improvement.

*Arrhythmias.* The second indication for digitalis therapy is seen even in the absence of cardiac failure. It is represented by cases of atrial fibrillation and a rapid ventricular rate. Here as pointed out before engorgement of the liver venous congestion and edema appear early when the ventricular rate is high. In these cases impairment of conductivity by the direct action of digitalis on the specific tissue and via the vagus slows the ventricular rate to values between 70 and 80 beats per minute. As soon as this level is reached the circulation is in an optimal condition. Since with rare exceptions slowing occurs regularly with the employment of relatively small doses these patients react exceedingly well to digitalis. Only a slight impairment of conductivity is necessary to prevent the majority of the weak stimuli originating in the fibrillating atrium from reaching the ventricle. In rare cases atrial fibrillation may disappear during digitalis treatment even rarer are patients in whom the onset of fibrillation coincides with the treatment. The special method of treating atrial flutter with digitalis has been discussed earlier.

Other arrhythmias such as atrial extrasystoles and paroxysmal tachycardias are also abolished by digitalis but they respond better to other drugs e. g. quinidine.

*Other Indications.* Apart from the group of patients presenting cardiac failure and those with atrial fibrillation and flutter there are only rare indications for digitalis. One is mentioned below in connection with heart block.

The administration of digitalis in infectious diseases or preoperatively in order to strengthen the heart has been properly abandoned. In these conditions peripheral circulatory failure rather than cardiac failure develops occasionally and digitalis is useless. The administration of digitalis in pneumonia in the pre antibiotic era was abandoned after it was shown that there was no proof that routine administration of digitalis in these cases lowers the mortality. It has also been recognized for a long time that cardiac weakness is not responsible for shock. In this condition digitalis is therefore often without value.

### Contraindications

The contraindications to digitalis since they are so few may be summarized briefly. Our claim that such contraindications are practically nonexistent is based on the fact that whenever the administration of digitalis is necessary it must be carried out since there is no substitute. If cardiac failure is present or if the ventricular rate is too high in atrial fibrillation therapeutic success is not obtained without digitalis and the condition of the patient steadily deteriorates unless it is given. Naturally there are patients in whom large doses of digitalis must be avoided but no contraindication to digitalis is admitted. Allergy or intoxication signs mentioned below occasionally prevent continuation of treatment.

For obvious reasons digitalis will not help in congestion of the liver and veins in pericardial diseases or cardiac tamponade nor will it abolish dyspnea due to pulmonary disease. Even in patients with mitral stenosis and pulmonary congestion with sinus rhythm digitalis is not indicated and is useless.

Since some older textbooks enumerate an entire series of contraindications they must receive some mention in this section.

*Paroxysmal Ventricular Tachycardia* This disturbance — contrary to prevailing opinion — is a contraindication to digitalis therapy only when it appears during the administration of digitalis and is elicited by it. Attacks of ventricular paroxysmal tachycardia not induced by digitalis are no contraindication and in fact respond favorably to it. Thus we saw success in ventricular tachycardias following acute myocardial infarction even when quinidine was ineffective. Scherf and Kisch observed a patient with attacks of ventricular tachycardia with alternating forms of ventricular complexes that always disappeared when digitalis was given.

*High Blood Pressure* A warning was issued against digitalis therapy in the presence of an elevated blood pressure owing to the alleged danger of a further rise during the course of treatment. The improved contractility and the shortening of the systole actually should lead to an increase of systolic blood pressure. However so many regulating factors influence the level of the systolic blood pressure that at the bedside its height can always be disregarded in the question whether digitalis is necessary. Often in decompensated hypertensive cardiac patients the blood pressure even falls during the course of the treatment of hypertension if decompensation was the cause of the hypertension (stasis hypertension). In other cases the blood pressure increases during digitalization. But in these instances hypertension was present for a long time during the period of failure the blood pressure dropped but rose once again as digitalis therapy improved ventricular contractility.

*Embolism* Patients who recently experienced an embolism in the lesser or greater circulation were often considered unsuitable for digitalis because of the fear that more powerful contractions of the heart induced by the drug might lead to the release of more thrombi and cause further embolism. Any increase of

cardiac action due to a rapid movement or unavoidable excitement naturally offers the same danger. Furthermore in these cases as in all others digitalis is given only when indicated; therefore it must be administered since there is no drug with a different mode of action that can replace it.

*Coronary Disease.* Many physicians withhold digitalis from patients with angina pectoris and myocardial infarction. In patients with anginal pain the detrimental effect due to narrowing of the coronary arteries is considered dangerous while in myocardial infarction rupture of the heart the result of more powerful contractions after digitalis is considered possible.

Despite a tremendous amount of experimental work concerning the effect of digitalis (and strophanthin) on the coronary blood flow no decisive results have been obtained. This is largely due to the fact that the coronary blood flow during digitalis therapy is influenced by factors which in many respects act oppositely. The increase of cardiac contractility with shortening of the systole and the change of the heart rate may improve coronary blood flow while the increased vagus tone may diminish it. A direct action of digitalis on the coronary vessels can only be studied in experiments on excised isolated vessels. According to some investigators toxic doses narrow the coronary vessels. No effect or only negligible reduction of blood flow is reported by others.

Large doses of digitalis were given to 15 patients with angina pectoris and a positive exercise test. No marked changes in the electrocardiogram on exertion and in only one case did the complaints slightly increase. In this single instance the alterations in the electrocardiogram became more pronounced on exertion after digitalis therapy (Hauser and Scherf).

Clinical experience shows that digitalis should be given if indicated to patients with angina pectoris due to coronary stenosis or patients with myocardial infarction.

In cases of angina pectoris on effort the attacks occasionally disappear during the period of decompensation and reappear once compensation is restored. This fact well known for many years has been questioned recently. We have observed it repeatedly particularly in cases of aortitis and angina pectoris due to coronary stenosis. The physician faces a dilemma and must choose between the Scylla of angina pectoris and the Charibdis of cardiac failure. The disappearance of angina on effort in decompensation may be accounted for by the diminished activity of the patient due to dyspnea, edema and so forth. But the fact that anginal pain at rest may also disappear has not as yet been satisfactorily explained.

In coronary thrombosis with myocardial infarction the appearance of pulmonary congestion alone especially in the first few days is no indication for digitalis. One will often succeed in preventing pulmonary edema and abolishing dyspnea by means of small doses of morphine and the congestion will disappear within a few days. If however the signs of congestion increase despite morphine or if gallop rhythm and other signs of myocardial damage appear digitalis must be given. The effect here often is as miraculous as in other cases. Digitalis may

be particularly necessary in patients with a second or third attack of myocardial infarction or patients with chronic hypertension who develop myocardial infarction

*Heart Block* Cases of heart block (atrioventricular block) are often cited as unsuitable for digitalis therapy because of the danger of further cardiac slowing. If complete atrioventricular block is present this fear is groundless, since digitalis does not reduce the automatism of the ventricular centers but rather augments it if proper dosage is used. Accordingly patients with heart block and a ventricular rate even as low as 20–30 may be digitalized without danger. In patients with an incomplete heart block digitalis therapy may lead to a complete interruption of the atrioventricular conduction. This event represents a lesser evil than non digitalization of a failing heart. In fact digitalis is prescribed in atrial fibrillation for the purpose of impairing atrioventricular conduction and producing heart block. Therefore cautious administration of digitalis in cases of heart block is permissible and even indicated when continuous change from partial to complete A V block causes Stokes Adams attacks.

### *Signs of Intoxication and Side Effects of Digitalis Treatment*

While true contraindications to digitalis treatment do not exist in some cases the administration of the drug must be interrupted even if its continuation seems indicated. Interestingly enough many of these signs of intoxication and side effects of digitalis therapy were known to Withering.

*Allergy* The administration of digitalis is sometimes impossible because of allergy to the drug. Instances of scarlatiniform rashes, urticaria, asthma, pruritus, edema of the face and fever caused by digitalis have been described. Rarely we have also seen skin rashes appear during the administration of strophanthin.

*Nausea and Vomiting* Digitalis vomiting is not the result of direct irritation of the gastric mucosa, since vomiting occurs on parenteral administration nor is it due to irritation of the vomiting center. Some investigators considered reflexes emerging from the heart and running predominantly over the vagus responsible while others assumed that reflexes from the liver or other abdominal viscera cause it. Vomiting has been observed however even after extensive severance of connections between the heart and the abdominal organs from the central nervous system. Digitalis is said to have a central emetic effect which summates the effects caused by stimulation of peripheral reflexes outside the intestine (Borison). The oral administration of galenic preparations may cause direct irritation of the stomach by virtue of the saponins and other ballast substances.

The vomiting often comes in waves with periods of relative wellbeing between them.

If vomiting occurs during the course of digitalis treatment one possibility should always be considered, namely, that the doses administered are too small.

to control the failure and the vomiting is due to hepatic enlargement and congestion. This type of vomiting naturally vanishes if therapy is continued with adequate doses of the drug.

Digitalis vomiting does not depend solely on the dosage. It occurs in some patients even after small amounts of digitalis while in others relatively large amounts fail to induce it. Therefore one is not permitted to consider the appearance of vomiting as a sign that the patient is fully digitalized.

Anorexia, nausea and diarrhea may also occur.

*Salivation, Fatigue and Other Signs.* Neuralgic symptoms with shooting pains, tingling of the fingers and generalized muscular pains have been described (Batterman and Gutner). Delirium may appear (Duroziez, King) caused by injury to nerve cells. Gynecomastia is found because of the action of the aglucones (LeWinn).

Other untoward effects described by Withering are increased salivation and great lassitude. The latter appears particularly in elderly patients who also suffer occasionally from headaches, delirium, hallucinations and convulsions.

*Visual Disturbances.* Green and yellow vision is common, blue and red vision is rare. Dimness of vision, inability to focus, scotomata and even temporary blindness are occasionally observed.

*Eosinophilia.* A marked eosinophilia appears in the blood in some patients allegedly through an increase of vagal tonus (Pecht, Romano and Geiger). Up to 30 per cent eosinophiles have been observed during digitalization.

*Anuria.* Anuria due to digitalis is rare but undoubtedly occurs. In one of our patients with lead poisoning, hypertension and nephrosclerosis the administration of four tablets of 0.1 Gm. digitalis daily led to oliguria and water retention. After the drug was discontinued for 2 or 3 days there was a profuse diuresis and a weight loss amounting to 5 kg. The experiment was repeated a few times with the same result. Intravenous injection of  $\frac{1}{4}$  mg. of strophanthin daily had the same effect (Hauser and Scherf).

*Coagulation of Blood.* In therapeutic doses digitalis was said to alter the coagulability of the blood. With no change in the prothrombin time coagulation time was shortened (Massie et al.). The frequent occurrence of venous thrombosis in cardiac cases has been ascribed to this effect of digitalis. This effect of digitalis on the coagulation time has been denied recently (Sokoloff and Ferrer) but fast energetic digitalization is still said to increase the incidence of thromboembolism (Cormsen).

*Extrasystoles.* Experimentally cardiac irregularities appear in cats after 75 per cent of the fatal dose of digitoxin and 60 per cent of the fatal dose of ouabain are given. This includes conduction disturbances (Krueger and Unna).

A very important sign of so called digitalis intoxication is the appearance of extrasystoles. They are usually found as bigeminy, that is every normal beat is followed by an extrasystole. We put intoxication in quotation marks because healthy mammalian hearts do not develop the regular digitalis bigeminy even when treated with toxic doses. It was not possible to observe this disturbance



of rhythm in man following the administration of toxic doses (suicides) or in animal experiments as long as the heart was in good condition. Only the dying heart may show bigeminal groups in the very last minutes before standstill. Extrasystoles like those observed in the cardiac patient, which may persist for weeks, are obtained experimentally, however, if the myocardium is chemically or mechanically damaged (Kobacker and Scherf). In a similar way digitalis causes extrasystoles in patients only if myocardial damage coexists. The nature of this myocardial damage, the necessary prerequisite, was unknown until recently. If extrasystoles develop during digitalis therapy in a cardiac patient it indicates that the heart muscle is abnormal. Accordingly, the prognosis is always dubious.

Recent investigations show that a diminished amount of potassium in the heart muscle cells is responsible. Skeletal and heart muscle lose some potassium when fatigued. Toxic doses of digitalis have the same effect, whether the therapeutic doses do so or not, certain, but possible. The potassium content of the heart muscle was found diminished, particularly in mitral lesions with chronic heart failure (Calhoun et al.). It is usually in these hearts that digitalis bigeminy appears. Lown could elicit digitalis extrasystoles when potassium was removed from the serum by hemodialysis, and Page could precipitate ventricular arrhythmias in 7 of 37 digitalized patients by reducing the potassium level in the serum through the administration of carbohydrates. Anoxia, acidosis, adrenalin, insulin and glucose injections increase the potassium deficit in the heart. Since it is not only the amount of digitalis but also the state of the heart muscle that is important for the development of these extrasystoles, the term "sign of intoxication" in the usual sense is not entirely justified. Some patients do not develop digitalis extrasystoles even if they take 0.2 Gm. of standardized leaf daily for years, while others develop them regularly after the third tablet of 0.1 Gm. digitalis (personal observations). Five to seven grams of potassium chloride daily in fruit juice abolish these extrasystoles.

Extrasystoles and bigeminal rhythm may occur in cardiac patients independent of digitalis treatment. In these cases digitalis therapy — if indicated — is permissible, and one will usually find that the extrasystoles disappear during the treatment. In patients who show extrasystoles in the course of digitalis therapy, however, great caution should be observed before further doses of the remedy are administered. If the treatment is continued in the presence of extrasystoles caused by digitalis, the number of extrasystoles often increases, resulting in the development of threatening tachycardia and even ventricular fibrillation. If digitalis treatment seems necessary, one may continue the treatment with small doses, i.e., not more than 0.15 Gm. daily. The patient must be examined at least twice daily, and the treatment must be discontinued if the number of extrasystoles increases. Most — if not all — deaths due to the administration of digitalis are caused by the neglect of this rule. In an advanced stage digitalis extrasystoles occur so irregularly and so rapidly that an anarchic ventricular appears (Mahaim); the examining physician is convinced that

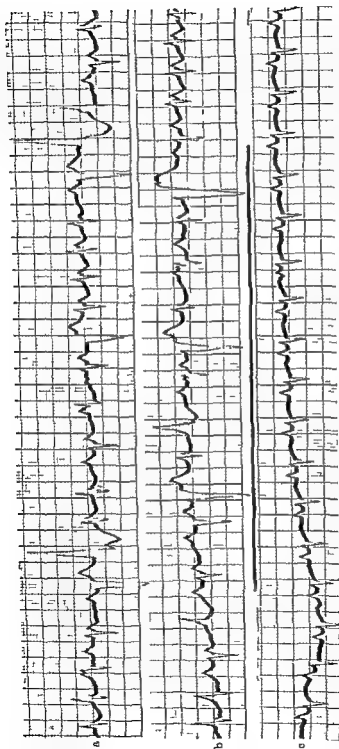


FIG. 116 The ECG tracing (Lead II) shows an atrial ectopic tachycardia and premature ventricular contractions (PVCs) in a 70-year-old woman who had received 1 mg of digitalis as a single dose. The premature ventricular contractions are also present. In (b) the tachycardia remains during carotid pressure (the horizontal black line indicates the duration of pressor effect) at pressure when pressure = diastolic pressure. Figure 116c shows a regular sinus rhythm interrupted by a single atrial extrasystole 11 days after the digitalis had been stopped and after the administration of potassium.

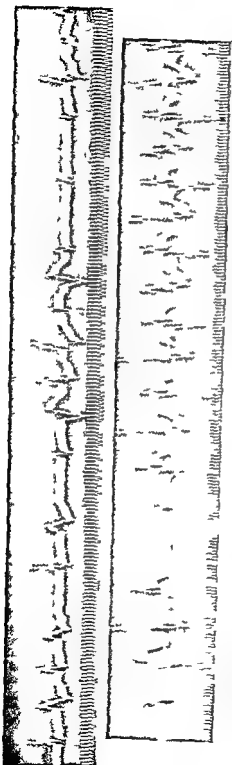


FIG 117

FIG 118

FIG 117 Atrial fibrillation and multiform ventricular extrasystoles with abnormal cloventricular ectopic beats caused by digitalis  
FIG 118 Ventricular tachycardia with alternating form of ventricular complexes caused by digitalis There is also atrial fibrillation

he is dealing with atrial fibrillation and rapid ventricular action he increases the dose of digitalis and ventricular fibrillation is induced. The principal reason that the treatment with full therapeutic doses — the administration of large amounts of digitalis in one or two doses — should be completely abandoned is that one can never predict after what dose of digitalis extrasystoles will appear. Since they may develop even after a few tablets the administration of large initial doses may lead to dangerous and even lethal arrhythmias. It is therefore understandable that most publications dealing with dangerous digitalis arrhythmias appeared when treatment with full doses was in vogue about forty years ago and again in recent years.

Digitalis extrasystoles usually originate in the ventricles. Reports of atrial extrasystoles caused by digitalis are scarce. We have rarely seen them. In all probability the reason for this rarity lies in the fact that the atria are under the influence of the increased inhibitory vagal tonus during digitalis therapy and this influence is lacking in the ventricles. Experimentally the direct application of digitalis (or strophanthin) to the myocardium leads to atrial as well as to ventricular extrasystoles.

Paroxysmal atrial tachycardia with partial A-V block appear during the administration of

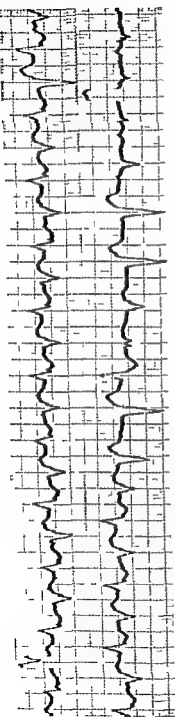


FIG 119 Ventricular tachycardia with alternating forms of the ventricular complexes in a patient with sinus rhythm. The patient died suddenly, presumably from ventricular fibrillation a few hours after the record had been registered.

digitalis and disappear promptly after the exhibition of potassium chloride or acetate (figure 116)

The electrocardiogram usually permits the differentiation between digitalis extrasystoles and the harmless ventricular extrasystoles that occur in the healthy. The extrasystoles found so often in the healthy always originate in the same focus and show the same ventricular electrocardiographic complex even if they persist for years. Extrasystoles due to digitalis show a continuous variation of form since they originate in different foci and are due to an abnormal intraventricular conduction (Scherf 1927). Extrasystoles caused by organic heart disease (coronary sclerosis, diphtheria) may also show varying forms of the ventricular complexes.

This initiation of ectopic impulses by digitalis is a specific quality of the drug and is not caused by increased excitability; the latter is actually diminished.

Figure 117 shows the electrocardiogram in the third lead of a patient with a rheumatic mitral lesion and extrasystoles due to digitalis. There is atrial fibrillation. The first ventricular complex conducted from the atrium in the tracing is followed by three multiform ventricular extrasystoles; the second by one. The third conducted complex is followed by six extrasystoles and then by an abnormal automatic beat which is a characteristic digitalis effect.

In figure 118 obtained from another patient atrial fibrillation is also present (lead II). The first beat is followed by three ventricular extrasystoles of different form. The next beat after a pause is followed by a paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia with alternating form of the ventricular beats. These

tachycardias precede the stage of ventricular fibrillation. They are rarely seen except when digitalis is used in advanced myocardial damage. They appear typically, however, if digitalis therapy is continued in cases of digitalis bigeminy.

The important phenomenon of redigitalization is discussed in the next section.

Elderly patients tend to show untoward effects after administration of moderate doses more often than younger individuals (fig. 119).

### *Do age*

It is not advisable to follow a fixed scheme of treatment. The digitalization of every new patient represents an experiment with an unknown outcome. One can never know in advance how much digitalis a patient will need. Only after it is determined how the patient responds to treatment, how much digitalis is needed to obtain a desired effect, and how long it takes until compensation is restored, should an opinion about the prognosis of a decompensated case be offered.

*Full Dose Treatment.* As was previously mentioned, and for the reason just cited, the practice, formerly in vogue and recently reintroduced, of treating every decompensated cardiac patient for a certain number of days always with the same amount of digitalis is not correct. It is just as improper to give schematically an amount of digitalis calculated according to body weight. This is done by pharmacologists in animal experiments but is not permissible in the sick patient whose reaction to digitalis treatment is unpredictable.

In recent years a similar method, the full dose therapy, was recommended. Without regard to weight, age or degree of failure, the dose of 1.2 mg of digitoxin is given at one time. Others recommended 1.7 or even 2.2 mg as the full dose. The statement that 1.2 mg of digitoxin may be given at one time with complete safety (Gold et al.) is certainly wrong as many publications show. On the other hand, Evans et al. gave 2 mg of digitoxin to one patient without even obtaining a slowing of the rate.

Four facts speak against this procedure. In the first place, patients with the same type of heart lesion, of the same age and the same body weight and even the same degree of decompensation may require entirely different amounts of digitalis. Furthermore, the wisdom of administering large doses to restore compensation as quickly as possible may be doubted. Naturally, one wishes to help as soon as possible and to improve the cardiac condition in an emergency. Nevertheless, the average cardiac patient who requires digitalis for rapid ventricular action caused by atrial fibrillation or for decompensation does not have to be digitalized within 24 hours. The old mechanical conception of decompensation no longer suffices. We have learned that most tissues and cells of the body live under abnormal conditions in a patient with congestive heart failure; the advantage of changing the situation quickly is questionable. Nothing is gained by restoring the circulation in these patients within a few hours instead of a few days; indeed, the disadvantages are great. The third and most important reason for

not utilizing the full dose treatment was mentioned in the preceding pages when it was pointed out that the appearance of dangerous extrasystolic arrhythmias even after small doses of digitalis can never be foreseen. Finally caution against the employment of large doses is required because focal necrosis appears in the myocardium in the experimental animal after the administration of sublethal doses of digitalis. While similar changes have not been observed in man even after the use of large therapeutic doses one should not forget that injury to the tissue cells may occur despite the fact that such injury may not be demonstrable by our rather crude histologic methods.

Actually severe signs of intoxication have been seen particularly in elderly patients even after the administration of 0.6 mg of digitoxin (Fremont and King). We have seen toxic prefibrillatory arrhythmias and atrial tachycardias after 0.3 mg of digitoxin daily and the lassitude and nausea may persist for weeks.

Not only does every species of animals have a different sensitivity to digitalis but the sensitivity of different members of the same species of healthy laboratory animals varies. This is true much more for sick human beings who at different times need different doses.

Furthermore a half dose in a patient with atrial fibrillation brings the rate down from 160 to 85 while the full dose brings the rate down from 160 to 75 in the same patient (Kay). The dangers of larger doses are infinitely greater. The benefit is small.

There is no average initial or maintenance dose except that which is calculated on paper. Therapy is highly individual. Therefore the recent revival of the full digitalizing dose assuming that the amount needed by every individual is the same independent of weight, age, etc., cannot be accepted.

*Initial Dosage.* While treatment with excessively large doses of digitalis given within a short time should be avoided, the administration of moderate doses proportionate to the severity of the decompensation is proper.

One tenth of 1 Gm. of the standardized (assayed) powdered leaves in the form of tablets will be considered as a standard unit. Even here the strength may change. Thus the assayed digitalis of USP XI was much stronger than that of USP X, while the digitalis of USP XII was again slightly weaker.

The dose given to a patient with mild decompensation who does not present severe manifestations of congestion may amount to 0.15—0.2 Gm. a day of assayed digitalis in the form of powdered leaves or tablets. In more severe cases of decompensation the daily dose is increased to 0.1 Gm. three or four times daily.

Only those subjects who are known to require much larger doses of digitalis than the average patient should receive about 0.6 Gm. of digitalis daily. This group comprises patients with hyperthyroidism, fever, or pulmonary embolism. The literature on the question of the greater resistance to digitalis of patients belonging to one of these groups is large and somewhat contradictory. It seems established, however, that slowing the heart in patients with hyperthyroidism combined with atrial fibrillation is difficult. Why a larger amount of digitalis is needed by virtue of the presence of fever is not yet decided. Another un-

difficulty in obtaining the desired slowing of the heart in atrial fibrillation is encountered in patients with pulmonary embolism. This complication should always be suspected if — in the absence of fever or hyperthyroidism — the expected effect of digitalis is not obtained.

Large doses of digitalis are given only as long as evidence of severe decompensation persists. As soon as improvement appears treatment is continued with smaller doses.

One can never predict the duration of digitalis therapy. Many days or even weeks may elapse before it appears that the best possible result has been obtained or until digitalis vomiting or bigeminy prevents further administration of the drug. Long duration of the period of digitalis medication in itself is no contra-indication for continuation of the treatment.

*Maintenance Treatment.* If digitalis therapy in a decompensated lesion or myocardial disease is carried to the point where the patient seems fully compensated and all signs of congestion have disappeared or when this result is impossible if the optimal state seems to exist the administration of digitalis should not be discontinued to be resumed only when the manifestations of decompensation reappear. It is also improper to recommend a certain amount of digitalis purely schematically for a number of days each month for all patients. It is better practice with most patients not to pause entirely in the administration of the drug; an adequate amount should be given to maintain the patient in the best condition attainable by treatment.

In cases of atrial fibrillation in which digitalis is given only to keep the ventricular rate low the rate itself is the best guide for the dosage. These cases in particular require maintenance treatment. Patients who develop decompensation following an acute infection or excessive physical effort may not require maintenance treatment. Full compensation may be preserved if the cause for the decompensation has vanished.

The dose for maintenance treatment should also vary according to the needs of the patient. If compensation was readily restored and if this was achieved with relatively small doses of digitalis 0.1 Gm. digitalis given once on every day or on every second day may suffice. If larger doses were originally required for a long period the maintenance doses also will usually be larger. One will find that some patients may need 0.2 or even 0.3 Gm. of digitalis every day because even a temporary and slight reduction of the dose causes the reappearance of signs of decompensation. Naturally the amount of digitalis required by the individual patient will not always be found instantly; after some observation the doses may have to be increased or decreased. Likewise the unavoidable alteration of the sensitivity of the patient, changes of the heart and also changes of the strength of the drug may force a change of dosage. Digitalis made by different manufacturers which were assayed cause quite different responses in man at different times and in addition the absorption and stability of different preparations varies.

For these reasons patients who require maintenance treatment with digitalis need periodic re-examination by their physicians. By the continuous adminis-

tration of digitalis patients avoid the frequent change from compensation to decompensation and within certain limits they may be kept active for years. There is no danger of acquiring tolerance for digitalis from prolonged administration the drug always remains effective.

If some untoward sign mentioned in a previous chapter including digitalis extrasystoles appears and one finds that continued treatment is necessary merely diminishing the dose often will suffice. If the patient does not tolerate even the smallest doses without exhibiting side effects one may be compelled to stop the drug completely and try again after a short period during which other cardiac stimulants such as caffeine or theophylline are given.

### *Different Preparations of Digitalis*

In selecting a preparation it should be remembered that the galenic forms of digitalis are still among the most reliable provided the assayed drug is employed.

The powdered leaf or the tablet made from powdered leaves are most commonly used. Formerly digitalis tincture was used widely if fresh it is very satisfactory. It is rarely prescribed at present and perhaps should be avoided because it must be fresh and reliable in order to give good results. The deterioration of tablets or powdered leaves by storage is negligible.

The number of special digitalis preparations on the market is legion and new ones constantly appear. Most of these preparations are satisfactory. Few have any advantage in comparison to assayed digitalis tablets. If a new preparation is tried the physician should familiarize himself with the correct dosage which is frequently at variance with the manufacturer's recommendation. Only experience gained by the use of the preparation in many patients will show its value. It is unwise for the physician to change continually to new and different preparations and to adopt at once those which are highly eulogized. Certain advantages are claimed for every new preparation of digitalis. Many of these attributes to be sure are based on experimental investigations on the frog or cat heart and have little value at the bedside. If it is asserted that a preparation is nontoxic does not cumulate and does not produce vomiting it should not be employed it is inert. A good preparation of digitalis is toxic does cumulate at least to a slight degree and must cause vomiting when it is administered in sufficiently large doses.

Preparations of digitalis made from the whole drug (Digifortis, Digalen, Digiland, Digifolin and many others) contain a mixture of glycosides and possess no advantage over the standardized preparations; they are rarely used in the United States today. They may be used where the standardized powder or tablets are unobtainable. The physician is advised to employ only one or two of these preparations in order to obtain some experience. Even the strength of these special preparations may change for various reasons and a physician who does not thoroughly know the digitalis employed may become aware of this change too late. It is a great handicap to work with two unknowns the preparation of digitalis and the patient.



Most good commercial preparations are assayed. One should not rely, however, too strongly upon the statement of the manufacturer for dosage. The amount should be determined on the basis of personal experience. If the directions printed on packages are followed the dose prescribed frequently is too small.

Every physician should be acquainted with the action of a few special preparations of digitalis. Some are very powerful. Since some are obtainable in the purified crystalline state the dosage is exact and the biologic assay with all its difficulties is unnecessary.

The oldest pure crystalline digitalis glycoside is digitoxin (digitaline Nativelle). It is quantitatively absorbed when given orally. The different preparations of digitoxin are not of equal purity and not of equal strength. A dose of 0.1 mg. given three times daily is as active as three tablets of 0.1 Gm. powdered leaves given daily. Only for special purposes, e.g., to transform atrial flutter into fibrillation, should larger doses be given, and then only under close supervision. Nausea and vomiting soon appear with large doses. Digitoxin is fixed to the albumin fraction in the blood and disappears completely from the blood only after 24 hours. It is therefore not one of the rapidly acting glycosides. Only 7 per cent of the glycoside is dissipated daily in the heart muscle. Therefore digitoxin is a glycoside with a great tendency to cumulate. For the restoration of compensation in patients with coronary sclerosis or following a myocardial infarction preparations of digitoxin are very useful. In many patients the prolonged administration of 0.2 mg. daily is necessary to preserve compensation. In others, particularly in elderly people, this dose is too large and causes toxic phenomena to appear. Some patients need 0.1 mg. every other day or even smaller amounts.

A very satisfactory glycoside isolated from digitalis lanata is the crystallized digoxin (Smith). It can be given by mouth or by injection. Following an intravenous injection ventricular slowing begins in five to ten minutes and the maximum effect is attained within an hour. After oral administration improvement begins within an hour and may be pronounced within six to seven hours. Tablets contain 0.25 mg. of digoxin and the material for injection contains 0.5 mg. per ml.

The third crystalline glycoside also isolated from digitalis lanata is Cedilanid (lanatosid C). The components originally isolated (digitanides) were found to cumulate less than digitoxin. Ampules and tablets are available. One ml. of the liquid contains 0.2 mg. of Cedilanid. The first dose is usually 2-4 ml. It may be repeated on the next day according to the condition of the patient.

Lanatosid C is bound but little to blood proteins and acts quickly, almost like strophanthin. It is rapidly eliminated.

Acetyl digitoxin is also derived from the digitalis lanata. It is obtained from lanatosid A fraction by enzymatic cleavage of 1 molecule of glucose. It is absorbed rapidly. Therefore it is recommended particularly for paroxysmal tachycardias and fibrillation (Loeffler et al.).

Citalin is a mixture of amorphous digitalis glycosides that has been employed on the European continent for many years, recently has been reintroduced (Bitter

man) We employed it for many years as Verodigen and found it reliable However the claim that gitahn (amorphous) helps when other glycosides fail is unjustified

### *Method of Administration*

In the majority of cases digitalis is given by mouth in the form of the assayed powder tablets drops or pills of one of the reliable commercial preparations In exceptional cases in which more rapid effects seem necessary digitalis is given intravenously using a crystallized pure glycoside (digitoxin digoxin cedilanid)

The rectal suppository represents another method of administration but it is rarely used in this country By rectal administration of purified digitalis gastric irritation due to ballast substances and saponins is avoided Furthermore the drug is absorbed by the mucosa and conducted by the hemorrhoidal veins into the inferior vena cava without retention in the liver The rectal administration of digitalis has the same effect as a slow intravenous infusion The amount of digitalis which should be given by rectum is the same as that which would be given by mouth

It is easy to administer the whole dose of digitalis for the day in the form of two suppositories in this way one obtains better absorption without gastric irritation Particularly in those patients who present evidence of marked hepatic congestion or who for some reason are unable to receive injections of a crystalline digitalis glycoside or strophanthin suppositories are useful

One of the best is the diglanid suppository If a dose or a preparation different than that obtainable from the manufacturer is desired the suppositories can be prepared by any pharmacist by mixing the corresponding amount of a purified digitalis preparation (digitaline digalen diglanid) with cacao butter Usually it is possible to mix about 15 drops of an appropriate digitalis solution in the amount of cacao butter required for one suppository

Another advantage of a suppository is the possibility of admixing other substances which must be administered by rectum Thus patients with Cheyne Stokes breathing may need aminophylline in addition and if necessary an hypnotic may be added For example

Digalen	0.5 ml
Aminophylline (Theophylline ethylenediamine)	0.5 Gm
Ol Cacao q s f suppos	

One suppository may be given in the morning and sodium phenobarbital may be added to another which may be administered in the evening

It is not advisable to administer digitalis intramuscularly since local pain invariably follows and the temperature rises indicating muscular necrosis

### *Preparations with Digitalis Like Action*

There is a large number of so called digitalis preparations of the second order they are powerful and active drugs Most of these preparations have effects similar to those of digitalis but rarely do they accomplish more than digitalis In the rare case of idiosyncrasy to digitalis such agents may be em

ployed we find them useful on patients who are under the impression that the administration of digitalis means the beginning of the end

Squill is perhaps the best known representative of this group. It is at the same time one of the oldest known drugs, being mentioned in the Ebers papyrus. From the drug a pure crystallized glycoside, Scillaren A, has been isolated (Stoll) and its activity can be compared with good preparations of digitalis. The single dose of Scillaren by mouth is 0.8 mg; the suppositories contain 1 mg of the glycoside. The side effects, if these drugs are employed, are the same as those of digitalis, including ventricular extrasystoles.

Among the other drugs of this group (*Adonis vernalis*, *Nerium Antheris*, *Convallaria majalis*) only *Helleborus* deserves mention. Its purified extracts proved very active in its pharmacologic characteristics; it stands midway between digitalis and strophanthin (Scherf).

### STROPHANTHIN

Closely allied to the digitalis glycosides, although different in many respects, are the glycosides of *strophanthus*. Of the many compounds in this group only three are used clinically.

#### Preparations

**A Strophanthin** *Strophanthin kombè* or *k strophanthin* is an amorphous powder. In recent years it has been possible to isolate a crystalline glycoside from *k strophanthin*, which represents about three quarters of the amorphous glycoside. It is called *strophoside*. *k strophanthin* is mentioned in the United States and in the British Pharmacopoeia and it was widely used in Germany under the leadership of Frenkel.

**G Strophanthin** *Strophanthin gratus* or *g strophanthin* was isolated as a more stable crystalline product by Arnaud (1888) and is called by its African name *ouabain*. This preparation is widely used in French medicine.

**Acetyl strophantidine** an aglucone is a synthetic preparation prepared from the seeds of *strophanthus kombè*. It works more rapidly than any other preparation and therein lies its danger. Toxic rhythms are common and in our opinion there is no place for the use of this compound in clinical medicine.

#### Pharmacologic Effects

The action and side effects of strophanthins on the heart muscle, particularly on systole and on the blood vessels, are identical to those of digitalis. Some of the differences are their great solubility in water, the small amount of fixation of strophanthin in the heart and — in connection with this — the slight cumulation. If a dose of digitoxin is given, 93 per cent of the drug is still present in the heart after 24 hours and 50 per cent after 9 days. Of a dose of lanatoside C after 24 hours only 80 per cent is present and only 64 per cent after 48 hours. Of strophanthin only 50 per cent of its action is present after one day and only

one eighth after three days (Rothlin and Bircher) The most important difference from a clinical standpoint has been the almost immediate action of strophanthin This is advantageous when it is necessary to improve a severe decompensation rapidly With the pure crystalline glycosides of digitalis purpurea (digitoxin) and digitalis lanata (digoxin cedilamid) which may be given intravenously only slightly less rapid action (30—60 minutes) is obtainable

There are few potent drugs about which opinions are as divided as strophanthin (Kisch) While in some countries particularly on the European continent strophanthin is employed in practically all types of decompensation much more often than digitalis and in many large institutions seems to be the drug of choice in other countries strophanthin is scarcely known

Several facts account for this difference of opinion First overenthusiastic physicians stressed the digitalis like effect of strophanthin and went so far as to use it as a synonym for digitalis neglecting however to stress the important and essential differences between the two Second the doses recommended (even in recent times) were much too large led to untoward effects and discouraged the physician from further use Third most preparations of strophanthin are quickly destroyed particularly by the alkaline glass of the ampules and lose their potency within a short time Therefore many preparations now dispensed are disappointingly weak unless certain types of glass are used for the containers If injection of the inactive contents of these ampules a few times in emergencies elicits no effect the disappointed physician doubts the reports of other observers and decides to use only digitalis in the future

The ampules of ouabain at present are the best preparation of strophanthin obtainable in this country

### *Indications*

In general strophanthin is indicated in the same conditions as digitalis Since these preparations are active only if given by injection there is the disadvantage of greater expense to the patient for he is forced to have an injection daily or almost daily for some time accordingly we feel that for routine treatment digitalis is by far preferable and that strophanthin should be given only on definite indications

Formerly the fact that its exact dosage could be prescribed without the necessity of bioassay was of great advantage but such procedure is also possible now with the crystalline preparations of digitalis

Strophanthin is indicated in an acute emergency If for example in an untreated or inadequately treated pregnant woman with mitral stenosis acute heart failure appears during childbirth or if a protracted and severe pulmonary edema appears in a patient with hypertension and does not react well to symptomatic therapy or if a patient is admitted to the hospital with a surgical emergency requiring immediate operation and atrial fibrillation with a very rapid ventricular rate is found the administration of strophanthin will usually bring noticeable improvement within a few minutes However it must be stressed

is present due to pulmonary congestion. In these cases rapid dehydration may furnish quick relief. In the majority of cases however treatment with diuretics is initiated only after the circulation has been improved somewhat by digitalis. Often even the strongest diuretics evoke only a slight response when given to congested and decompensated patients. If diuretic treatment is delayed a few days until the circulation is improved somewhat by digitalis striking effects may be obtained with much smaller amounts of diuretics. Often the diuretics even become superfluous because rest in bed, diet and digitalis alone cause a profuse diuresis.

The diuretics which are the most effective and if properly employed distress the patient least by unpleasant untoward actions particularly on the gastrointestinal tract are certain organic preparations of mercury. Since their use is not permissible in some cases every physician should be acquainted with the xanthine derivatives and other diuretics as well. The action and the method of administration of the latter preparations will be considered first.

### *Xanthine Derivatives*

Xanthine preparations (purine bodies) have caffeine, theobromine and theophylline as chief representatives. While caffeine exerts its strongest effect as a stimulant of the central nervous system theobromine and theophylline are pronounced diuretic agents. They also dilate the coronary arteries.

All these preparations increase water and sodium chloride diuresis. This effect seems to be accomplished by a direct action on the kidney. Diminished tubular absorption has been assumed partly it is due to improved contractility of the heart and to mobilization of water and salt in the tissues. Vasodilatation and better perfusion of the kidney originally held responsible seem to play a minor role. All these drugs also stimulate the heart. Thus theophylline increases the output of the damaged heart of the dog in the Starling preparation. This effect is independent of changes of the coronary blood flow.

Caffeine is rarely used as a diuretic since its stimulating action on the central nervous system is so pronounced that it leads to unpleasant sensations.

The xanthine preparations most commonly used as diuretics are theobromine and its salts or theophylline with various combinations.

The customary method of administering moderate doses of xanthine bodies distributed throughout the day often produced little diuretic action. It is better not to scatter the doses rather large amounts should be used at short intervals and only for a short time.

If the diuretic effect of one of these drugs ceases there is no justification for continuing the remedy with larger doses. It is better to prescribe another preparation which may act excellently although it may be closely related to that which was originally given.

*Pure Theobromine.* In using pure theobromine we observed the best effect when it was given in 1 g. after lunch and if the same dose was repeated

two and four hours later thus a total of 3 Gm are given in divided doses in the afternoon. If patients become too stimulated by the drug and sleep is disturbed theobromine may be administered after breakfast and two as well as four hours later.

*Theobromine Calcium Salicylate* This drug known under the name Theocalcin is said to cause less gastrointestinal disturbance but we found no difference in comparison to some of the other purine bodies. The dose is 3 Gm daily.

*Theophylline* The strongest diuretic effect is obtained with pure theophylline. It is best to administer it in enteric coated tablets similar tablets are also available for some of the other xanthine preparations. The diuretic effect of theophyllinum purum is much stronger than that of theophylline with ethylenediamine (aminophyllin, euphylline) or theophylline with sodium acetate. The rule of giving large doses within a relatively short time is particularly applicable with this preparation. The best diuretic effect is obtained if 0.3 Gm is given after meals three times a day but only on every fourth day. Such jolts of theophylline are greatly superior to small doses daily. The 24 hour diuresis may amount to 5 liters. Sometimes pure theophylline given in this way may be effective when mercurial diuretics fail (Faltischek and Scherf).

If the preparation is used in the same dosage daily its diuretic effect often ceases completely within a few days. If administered only on every fourth day as in the case with the mercurial diuretics it remains active for an indefinite period.

Vogl recommends 0.5 Gm of aminophyllin injected intravenously twice daily very slowly for the purpose of diuresis.

*Untoward Effects* Whenever xanthine preparations are administered it is well to inform the patient that untoward effects may occur. In the event that such phenomena appear the patient is not taken by surprise and is not alarmed. Moreover he is informed in advance that discontinuance of the remedy will afford rapid relief. If the patient is unacquainted with the possibility of unpleasant untoward reactions the appearance of nausea, vomiting, severe headache and restlessness with increased excitability may be alarming. All these phenomena are more common with theophylline than with other xanthines. To counteract the central stimulating effect the administration of phenobarbital (0.03—0.05 Gm) with each dose of theophylline is recommended.

A rare but nevertheless important contraindication to theophylline is epilepsy. The preparation stimulates the cerebral cortex and may lead to attacks in epileptic individuals. This effect as well as headache and hyperirritability are also prevented or diminished by the addition of phenobarbital to each dose of theophylline.

#### *Antidiuretic Action of Sedatives, Analgesics and Hypnotics*

Phenobarbital in the doses mentioned does not depress the diuretic action of theophylline. Larger doses however as well as moderate doses of morphine or aminopyrine may not only abolish the effect of diuretics but may also inhibit normal diuresis to a high degree.

is present due to pulmonary congestion. In these cases rapid dehydration may furnish quick relief. In the majority of cases however treatment with diuretics is initiated only after the circulation has been improved somewhat by digitalis. Often even the strongest diuretics evoke only a slight response when given to congested and decompensated patients. If diuretic treatment is delayed a few days until the circulation is improved somewhat by digitalis striking effects may be obtained with much smaller amounts of diuretics. Often the diuretics even become superfluous because rest in bed, diet and digitalis alone cause a profuse diuresis.

The diuretics which are the most effective and if properly employed distress the patient least by unpleasant untoward actions particularly on the gastrointestinal tract are certain organic preparations of mercury. Since their use is not permissible in some cases every physician should be acquainted with the xanthine derivatives and other diuretics as well. The action and the method of administration of the latter preparations will be considered first.

### *Xanthine Derivatives*

Xanthine preparations (purine bodies) have caffeine, theobromine and theophylline as chief representatives. While caffeine exerts its strongest effect as a stimulant of the central nervous system theobromine and theophylline are pronounced diuretic agents. They also dilate the coronary arteries.

All these preparations increase water and sodium chloride diuresis. This effect seems to be accomplished by a direct action on the kidney. Diminished tubular absorption has been assumed partly it is due to improved contractility of the heart and to mobilization of water and salt in the tissues. Vasodilatation and better perfusion of the kidney originally held responsible seem to play a minor role. All these drugs also stimulate the heart. Thus theophylline increases the output of the damaged heart of the dog in the Starling preparation. This effect is independent of changes of the coronary blood flow.

Caffeine is rarely used as a diuretic since its stimulating action on the central nervous system is so pronounced that it leads to unpleasant sensations.

The xanthine preparations most commonly used as diuretics are theobromine and its salts or theophylline with various combinations.

The customary method of administering moderate doses of xanthine bodies distributed throughout the day often produced little diuretic action. It is better not to scatter the doses rather large amounts should be used at short intervals and only for a short time.

If the diuretic effect of one of these drugs ceases there is no justification for continuing the remedy with larger doses. It is better to prescribe another preparation which may act excellently although it may be closely related to that which was originally given.

*Pure Theobromine.* In using pure theobromine we observed the best effect when it was given in doses of 1 Gm. after lunch and if the same dose was repeated

The administration of potassium salts as diuretics has been revived in recent years. Potassium chloride or acetate are recommended. Doses of about 3 Gm. daily seem to be optimal. Potassium chloride is obtainable in enteric coated tablets. Occasionally nausea occurs during the administration of the drug and methemoglobinemia has followed the use of potassium nitrate. If large doses are used or if kidney function is impaired the level of blood potassium increases. The acid base balance is changed in some patients toward the acid side.

### Mercurial Diuretics

*Type of Preparations* Some inorganic mercurial preparations e. g. calomel have been used for many years as diuretics. The action of calomel however was unreliable and intoxications were frequent. The discovery of the diuretic action of organic soluble salts of mercury in 1920 was one of the greatest advances in the treatment of cardiac patients in recent years. The duration of life in many patients is prolonged for years and countless others are enabled to lead an active life with the employment of these drugs. The discovery was quite accidental. Novasurol (Merbaphen) was used for about three years in the treatment of syphilis until its diuretic action was observed in a case of syphilitic aortitis (Saxl and Heilig 1931). Later Salygran (mersalyl) and novurit (Mercupurine, Mercurin) were introduced as well as neptal esdron, Mercurhydrin, Thiomerin and others. It is often claimed that the first preparation Novasurol (Merbaphen) was more toxic than the others, but it seems that as experience increased the preparations were used more cautiously and therefore toxic manifestations became rare. These diuretics contain about 40 mg. of mercury per ml.

Since the introduction of Mercupurine (novurit) which contains a very small amount of theophylline it has been claimed that this addition considerably enhances the diuretic effect of the mercurial salts. Therefore theophylline was also added to most of the other preparations. It is claimed that the addition of theophylline makes the mercurial diuretic less toxic and that they are less irritating locally when injected intramuscularly. At bedside in appropriate cases by alternating the use of mercurial diuretics with and without theophylline we were unable to discover an appreciable difference.

Fundamentally the diuretic action of all above named mercurial preparations is equal. It has been claimed however that some such as neptal and esdron are slightly more toxic than the others. Mercupurine seems to act a little sooner and diuresis follows the injection more rapidly. But the end result is the same as with the other diuretics. The remarks which follow are equally applicable for all preparations including Mercurhydrin and Thiomerin which is a mercaptan compound and which can be given subcutaneously.

*Pharmacology* The preparations lead to a marked water diuresis and to a relative and absolute increase of the sodium chloride diuresis. More than 40 Gm. of sodium chloride may be excreted in 24 hours. In a boy of 15 years 1 ml. of neptal caused a diuresis of 14-30 ml. of urine in 24 hours. 570 ml. of urine were



in the urine of patients with congestive heart failure is increased. The presence of a concentrated dark urine (after exposure to air for a few hours) due to urobilin shows that it is safe to use mercurial diuretics.

The presence of colitis in any form constitutes another contraindication to mercurials. Colitis is one of the most dangerous manifestations of mercury intoxication and therefore the administration of these compounds should be avoided when colitis is already present. It is also unwise to give purgatives which irritate the large intestine on the days of the injection of mercurial diuretics. Decayed, neglected teeth and the presence of a profound anemia or cachexia are further contraindications, since mercurial diuretics have a relatively high content of mercury and therefore act as cell poisons.

*Untoward Effects.* Mercurial diuretics may cause untoward effects by different mechanisms: those of mercury intoxication; those due to hypersensitivity or those caused by a too marked loss of water and electrolytes.

**MERCURIALISM.** The earliest indications of mercury intoxication are metallic taste, salivation, gingivitis, stomatitis and colitis. The latter is often hemorrhagic in character. The patient may collapse so suddenly that no melena occurs. All these manifestations of mercurial intoxication were rare since the preparations were used with proper caution and in appropriate cases. Unfortunately it has been recommended recently that mercurial diuretics be given in intervals that prove to be too short with the result that evidence of intoxication is observed more often. Aggranulocytosis may occur.

To counteract the effect of mercury, BAL (5 mg per kg) is given intravenously every 4 hours.

**HYPERSENSITIVITY.** Hypersensitivity to the mercury ion may exist but more often it is connected with the specific organic compound used. Therefore change of the preparations often helps to avoid further abnormal reactions. Dizziness, fall of blood pressure, drowsiness and headaches, urticaria and erythematous dermatitis may appear. Fever, collapse and cyanosis with death in a few minutes have been observed. Dyspnea and attacks of asthma have followed even the first injection. There is experimental and clinical evidence that ventricular extrasystoles, paroxysmal tachycardias and ventricular fibrillation may appear owing to the direct effect of the mercury ion on the heart muscle. These effects, particularly the cardiac arrhythmias, appear for the most part after intravenous injections.

**CONSEQUENCES OF DIURESIS.** The loss of water, sodium and chloride causes somnolence, cramps in the calf muscles and sometimes delirium or mental confusion. Profound weakness may appear due to loss of potassium. Therefore fruit juices should be ordered. These complaints were known to follow a profuse diuresis long before the mercurial diuretics were introduced. Since the excretion of sodium and chlorides need not parallel the water diuresis, occasionally one observes these phenomena after moderate diuresis but may miss them after an unusually profuse one.

The loss of calcium ions may lead to tetany. Acute gout has appeared in a series of patients who had had previous attacks of gout. A disturbance of electrolyte balance may be responsible.

It has been claimed that the influx of fluid from the tissues increases the coagulability of the blood and therefore increases the danger of thrombosis and embolism.

Fever and cutaneous manifestations (rash) may develop after an injection. The fever may reach 39 C but rarely lasts longer than 24 hours. The simultaneous use of calcium gluconate may help avoid these complications.

However, the intravenous injection of calcium preparations is dangerous especially in digitalized patients. In one personally observed case it was followed by ventricular fibrillation. In another patient who had not received digitalis before, a long and dangerous ventricular standstill instantaneously followed the injection. Intramuscular injections of calcium salts are free from these dangers.

The appearance of abnormal reactions cannot be predicted. They have been observed in patients who responded normally to preceding injections. If however an abnormal reaction occurs once it is unwise to employ the intravenous route. Sudden lethal accidents are not observed after intramuscular injections of mercury.

While collapse or even sudden death immediately following an injection due to allergy undoubtedly occurs, such catastrophes are rare and should not militate against use of these excellent agents. Several series of more than 8000 injections have been reported without the occurrence of any untoward effect.

The profuse diuresis may lead to an acute urinary retention in elderly patients with prostatic hypertrophy.

Two other side effects of therapy with mercurial diuretics merit attention.

(1) **THE LOW SALT SYNDROME** This develops in patients who receive mercurial diuretics too often while on a salt free diet or when losing much salt from the kidney. The diuresis in these patients stops and they gain in weight. They have low plasma levels of sodium (from 140 to 120 mEq per liter or less) and chlorides (from 100 to 80 mEq per liter or less). Drowsiness and weakness may appear simultaneously. Nausea and vomiting may occur and abdominal cramps are common. There is a low carbon dioxide combining power and the urea as well as the NPN are increased, often to values over 100. This acidosis and azotemia are rarely relieved by the infusion of hypertonic saline solutions (200—300 ml of a 5 per cent sodium chloride solution) since irreversible intracellular changes appear. The outcome is usually fatal. The syndrome occasionally appears in cardiacs without ascertainable reason (movement of electrolytes? abnormal water retention? action of aldosterone?).

(2) **HYPOCHLOREMIC ALKALOSIS (low chloride syndrome)** The excretion of chloride under the influence of an injection of mercury is excessive and may be greater than that of sodium. When the chlorides fall below 86 mEq per liter no diuresis results from the injection. A fall by only 4—6 mEq may be of

Ammonium chloride is necessary only if mercury alone does not suffice or if injections of mercury are repeated at short intervals and the danger of hypochloremia exists

If doses not larger than 2 ml are given intramuscularly at intervals of no less than four days no accident will be seen in the course of many thousands of injections apart from hypersensitivity. Certainly the injections must be discontinued at once with evidence of colon irritation or stomatitis. It is astonishing how well the injections are tolerated. One of our patients received more than 700 injections in 14 years. Such patients are often observed and receive their injections on every fourth or fifth day without any sign of renal irritation.

The combination of a mercurial diuretic with decholin (6 ml) in the same syringe injected very slowly has been frequently recommended. However unpleasant accidents caused by dicholin have been observed.

No examination gives us as clear a picture of the effect of our diuretic therapy as weighing the patient.

*Mode of Administration.* The customary method of administering mercurial diuretics was for many years by intravenous injection. The injection must be properly performed. Some patients are so sensitive that the small amount of the preparation on the needle to say nothing of a paravenous injection suffices to cause a severe necrosis of the skin that requires months to heal. For this reason the needle through which the preparation is withdrawn from the ampule is never employed for the injection. The preparations are injected only if one is absolutely sure that the injection is exclusively intravenous.

Intramuscular injections are now the method of choice since dangerous hypersensitivity reactions can thus be avoided; they usually do not hurt or are only slightly painful. The original mercurial organic diuretic novasurol it may be recalled was for years given only intramuscularly; none dared to essay intravenous injection. Painful infiltration following intramuscular injection is avoided if 1 ml of a 1 per cent solution of procaine (or a similar preparation) is added to the mercurial preparation in the same syringe. The addition of procaine not only prevents any immediate (though slight) pain but it prevents secondary inflammation and irritation (Freud and Meyer). The best site for the injection is located in the posterior axillary line three fingers below the crest of the ileum. In obese patients the injection must be made with a needle of sufficient length. If this precaution is not taken the injection may actually be subcutaneous or be made into the deep adipose tissue where it causes necrosis. A true intramuscular injection never causes necrosis.

All injections should be given early in the morning. The diuresis follows the injection in two to three hours and for the most part is over by bedtime. If the injection is given later during the day the night rest is disturbed. The injection of mercurial diuretics into a pleural effusion or into ascitic fluid is dangerous and may lead to serious local irritation. Marked diuresis may follow such injections but there is no advantage. The appearance of a profuse diuresis following an intra-

peritoneal injection (done only in the presence of ascites) begins within a few hours and rarely exceeds two days. This proves that ascitic fluid is quickly absorbed and reformed. Otherwise the rapid action of the injection would be incomprehensible.

Suppositories of mercupurin or those made from some other organic mercurial diuretic produce a considerable diuretic effect (Denning and Krause). They should be inserted after a cleansing enema. The suppository should be covered with pantocaine or nupercaine ointment. Fissures and hemorrhoids are a contraindication. Since some suppositories contain a rather large amount of the active ingredient they should not be given more often than every four days. Many times the suppositories cause diuresis only after preliminary preparation with ammonium chloride. When the administration of injections is impossible for some reason suppositories may be tried.

The oral administration of the organic mercurial diuretics was tried early (Saxl) and has been recommended repeatedly. If 2 to 3 tablets are given daily some diuresis may be obtained. Often evidence of intoxication develops and in one series of 39 cases toxic effects appeared in 14. This also holds for preparations introduced recently and declared nontoxic. Orally administered mercury is often excreted days after its ingestion and cumulative effects are common.

*Ammonium chloride* nitrate and sulfate if given in sufficient doses may alone provoke a moderate diuresis and increase the diuretic effect of the mercurials. In the body the ammonium ions are synthesized to urea and the acid radical remains. Ammonium chloride is preferred because methemoglobinemia has followed the employment of ammonium nitrate. The mode of action is not entirely clear. Presumably acidification may help to liberate mercury in the renal tubuli. The administration of an acidifying diet also increases the water and sodium chloride diuresis caused by theocin (theophylline). A similar purpose is served by the administration of 20 ml. of dilute hydrochloric acid in 500 ml. of water.

Large doses of ammonium chloride are recommended. We advise 6 Gm. ammonium chloride in enteric coated tablets (i. e. 6 tablets of 1.0 Gm.) daily for two days before and 3 Gm. on the day the injection is given. Others suggest smaller doses for instance 2 Gm. of ammonium chloride two hours before the mercurial diuretic is injected. *Untoward effects (gastric irritation) are rare with enteric coated tablets.* In many cases ammonium chloride is unnecessary since the mercurial injection alone affords a satisfactory result. There is no justification for administering ammonium chloride daily for a long time. Prescribed in this manner it loses its diuretic action and causes acidosis.

#### *Diomax — Diuril*

A mild diuretic effect of sulfonamides has been known for a long time and one synthetic preparation Diomax with a new organic structure (acetazole amide) has a marked diuretic action with very few side effects.

Ammonium chloride is necessary only if mercury alone does not suffice or if injections of mercury are repeated at short intervals and the danger of hypochloremia exists

If doses not larger than 2 ml are given intramuscularly at intervals of no less than four days no accident will be seen in the course of many thousand of injections apart from hypersensitivity. Certainly the injections must be discontinued at once with evidence of colon irritation or stomatitis. It is astonishing how well the injections are tolerated. One of our patients received more than 700 injections in 14 years. Such patients are often observed and receive their injections on every fourth or fifth day without any sign of renal irritation.

The combination of a mercurial diuretic with decholin (5 ml) in the same syringe injected very slowly has been frequently recommended. However unpleasant accidents caused by decholin have been observed.

No examination gives us as clear a picture of the effect of our diuretic therapy as weighing the patient.

*Mode of Administration.* The customary method of administering mercurial diuretics was for many years by intravenous injection. The injection must be properly performed. Some patients are so sensitive that the small amount of the preparation on the needle to say nothing of a paravenous injection suffices to cause a severe necrosis of the skin that requires months to heal. For this reason the needle through which the preparation is withdrawn from the ampule is never employed for the injection. The preparations are injected only if one is absolutely sure that the injection is exclusively intravenous.

Intramuscular injections are now the method of choice since dangerous hypersensitivity reactions can thus be avoided; they usually do not hurt or are only slightly painful. The original mercurial organic diuretic, *nosapriol*, it may be recalled, was for years given only intramuscularly; none dared to essay intravenous injection. Painful infiltration following intramuscular injection is avoided if 1 ml of a 1 per cent solution of procaine (or a similar preparation) is added to the mercurial preparation in the same syringe. The addition of procaine not only prevents any immediate (though slight) pain but it prevents secondary inflammation and irritation (Freud and Meyer). The best site for the injection is located in the posterior axillary line, three fingers below the crest of the ileum. In obese patients the injection must be made with a needle of sufficient length; if made into the deep adipose tissue where it causes necrosis. A true intramuscular injection never causes necrosis.

All injections should be given early in the morning. The diuresis follows the injection in two to three hours and for the most part is over by bedtime. If the injection is given later during the day the night rest is disturbed. The injection of the mercurial diuretics into a pleural effusion or into ascitic fluid is dangerous and may lead to serious local irritation. Marked diuresis may follow such injections but they possess no advantage. The appearance of a profuse diuresis following an intra-

the hydrogen cycle and 20 per cent in the potassium cycle. Finally, potassium up to 75 per cent an ammonium and 25 per cent a potassium resin is given in doses of 15 grams three times daily.

The resins also seem to absorb riboflavin and thiamin. Since the absorption of potassium may lead to a dangerous hypokalemia, one third of the resin is in the potassium cycle so that potassium ions are available for reabsorption. Intake of resins can also cause hyperchloremic acidosis because hydrogen ions are released and basic ions lost in the feces; chlorides are not removed by the usual resins. Therefore, a large percentage of the resins are in the ammonium cycle and are able to release the ammonium in the gastrointestinal tract.

In vitro 1 gram of resin removes approximately 10 mEq of sodium, but in vivo the amount depends upon the intake of sodium and on other factors.

The acidosis is partly compensated by ammonia formation and the excretion of more carbon dioxide via the lungs. The acid urine may cause albuminuria and casts to appear.

While resins can be prescribed with reasonable safety, they should never be administered in the home; continuous control of the sodium chloride, potassium blood levels as well as of NPN and carbon dioxide combining power are needed. With the increase of chloride in the blood and a decrease of bicarbonate plasma concentration there is a great danger of a high NPN. Prolonged administration resulting in the removal of calcium may lead to bone demineralization. With removal of potassium, digitalis toxicity appears in patients taking this drug and dangerous arrhythmias occur. Rarely, fecal impaction occurs.

Whenever loss of appetite, weakness, or vomiting appear, therapy should be discontinued and one should check the blood for the substances mentioned above.

The granulated resins are best taken with cream, as in a cereal, the powdered forms with orange or other fruit juices, which also serve to supply potassium.

The indications are few. While diet may be more liberal and may contain more salt, few people like the resins, which taste like sand and which they must ingest only in order to get more of the food they desire. In patients who are sensitive to mercury, that is to all mercurial diuretics, the resins may save or prolong life. It should be stressed, however, that even if resins are taken, the diet can never be really liberal.

Renal damage is an absolute contraindication. Many refuse the resins because of diarrhea or constipation, vomiting, nausea, or loss of appetite.

### *Southey Tubes*

When all diuretics fail and tense edema is present, drainage with Southey tubes is necessary. This represents a last resort, since the danger of secondary infection and the development of erysipelas is great. Fortunately, this procedure has rarely been necessary since the introduction of the mercurial diuretics. But there are times when tubes must be employed because all other therapy is fruitless.

We have seen patients who responded to ordinary diuretics well only after the successful employment of the Southey tubes and then were kept free from edema for years

### TREATMENT OF CHEYNE STOKES RESPIRATION

Cheyne Stokes breathing and the various forms of paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea which result from cardiac failure (left ventricular failure) represent indications for digitalis therapy. However some time elapses before digitalis helps unless the rapidly acting pure glycosides or strophanthin are given. Furthermore not every patient is relieved by digitalis and signs of failure may persist despite energetic digitalization. Therefore it is often necessary to treat Cheyne Stokes respiration symptomatically.

*Oxygen* Since an oxygen deficit and hyposensitivity of the centers have long been recognized as precipitating causes of Cheyne Stokes breathing frequently an effort has been made to obtain improvement by means of oxygen inhalation as well as by agents which stimulate the cerebral centers.

As a matter of fact the inhalation of oxygen acts immediately and abolishes Cheyne Stokes in most cases only a few patients do not respond. The apneic pauses vanish and respiration becomes regular. Naturally improvement persists only as long as the administration of oxygen is continued.

Inhalation of oxygen by nasal catheters is useful and may tide the patient over distressing periods. The great anxiety and restlessness of the patient with a severe form of Cheyne Stokes often interferes with their use and makes the employment of oxygen masks also impossible. The oxygen tent is superior and may quickly abolish periodic breathing as well as the mental confusion and restlessness combined with it.

*Central Stimulants* All attempts to influence Cheyne Stokes respiration by the administration of central nervous system stimulants have failed. Lobeline, strychnine, atropine and coramine as well as caffeine are useless for this purpose.

*Aminophylline* (Theophylline with ethylenediamine) which is also known as metaphylline, euphylline, has an almost specific action. This compound was used for many years as a diuretic and vasodilator while its excellent effect on patients with Cheyne Stokes breathing was only occasionally mentioned until this action was stressed by Vogl. The relief afforded by the preparation is so great that the term miraculous is often used by patients and even by the physician in charge.

A few minutes following the injection the periodic alternation of dyspnea and apnea disappears and the respiration becomes regular. With this the restlessness and anxiety subside and patients who have not had a good night for weeks sleep quietly. It acts like magic. The patient is not compelled to sit up nor to pace the room restlessly but lies quietly in bed seeming and feeling altogether like a different person.

The most effective method of administering the preparation in patients with Cheyne Stokes is the intravenous injection. An ampoule containing 0.24 Gm. of aminophylline is injected very slowly. A rapid injection leads to marked vaso-

dilatation and flushing with the sensation of warmth not unlike the sensation following an intravenous injection of a calcium or quinine preparation. In the patient suffering from a cardiovascular disorder too rapid an injection may be followed by vertigo, marked fall of blood pressure and even a mild collapse. Therefore the aminophylline should be diluted with saline or a 5 per cent solution of glucose and injected so slowly that the injection requires at least 5 minutes. If this method is followed no harm need be feared. It is best to give the injection during the evening since Cheyne Stokes respiration tends to occur or to become worse at night. If necessary an injection can be given twice in 24 hours. Hypersensitivity to aminophylline (headache, vomiting) is rare. This treatment may be continued for a long time; the mere fact that the preparation is employed over a considerable period is in itself no reason for stopping it.

Intramuscular injections are not recommended because they often cause pain. Occasionally however an intramuscular injection is well tolerated perhaps due to a better balance of the hydrogen ion concentration. The dose for intramuscular injections may be the same or a double amount (0.48 Gm). Almost as effective as an intravenous injection is a retention enema. An ampoule containing 0.48 Gm or a corresponding amount of aminophylline powder (0.5 Gm) is diluted with about 30 ml of tap water and given as a retention enema. Similar but a little less effective is the administration of aminophylline in a suppository containing 0.5 Gm. The administration of aminophylline as a suppository results in satisfactory levels of theophylline in the blood plasma (Glass et al.). One suppository is given at bed time and another during the day if necessary. Aminophylline tablets have little value in Cheyne Stokes breathing.

The mode of action of aminophylline is still obscure. Aminophylline is a vasodilator but this effect is hardly responsible for the improvement since stronger vasodilators like the nitrites and even large doses of nitroglycerin are not effective in Cheyne Stokes respiration. Theophylline like all xanthine bodies is a central stimulant. But other central stimulants even though stronger like caffeine do not influence Cheyne Stokes breathing. We are dealing therefore with a specific effect of the preparation. It has been maintained that other theophylline preparations for example theophylline with sodium acetate have no effect on periodic breathing while ethylene diamine and some other amines influence the breathing like aminophylline. According to our observations however intravenous injections of theophylline sodium acetate act favorably on Cheyne Stokes respiration and we have seen equally good effects when urea was used as a solvent for the theophylline instead of ethylene diamine. The explanation of the action of aminophylline in Cheyne Stokes is made more difficult by the recent discovery (Kety) that after injection of this compound the cerebral blood flow is decreased and not increased.

Not rarely the patient reports in the morning after having had an evening dose of aminophylline that the night could have been a good one since breathing was much easier than it had been for a long time but he was unable to sleep. This is due to the central stimulation by theophylline which may cause consider



able excitement in some patients. Therefore the combination of a sedative with aminophylline is often necessary. A barbiturate will usually offset the stimulating effect of aminophylline.

*Morphine and Sedatives* Morphine particularly in the form of an injection of 0.01 Gm. or more is contraindicated in Cheyne Stokes breathing. In fact even in healthy persons morphine causes Cheyne Stokes which in turn also responds well to aminophylline.

A useful sedative for cardiac patients although it has been unjustly avoided for many years is chloral hydrate. The doses which depress the circulation are much larger than those customarily employed as a sedative and hypnotic. Doses of 2 Gm. per rectum or smaller amounts in the form of a syrup by mouth are effective and harmless.

### CARDIAC ASTHMA AND PULMONARY EDEMA

Cardiac asthma and acute pulmonary edema (paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea) also result from left ventricular failure and patients presenting these phenomena require digitalis. Specific therapy is however necessary during the attacks and in order to prevent recurrences until digitalis brings about the desired effect.

*Morphine* The sovereign remedy in these attacks is morphine. If given quickly and in sufficient doses it affords immediate relief. While the finer mechanism of its action is still unknown one can assume that it helps by diminishing the excitability of the centers.

No stimulating effect of morphine on the circulation is known and morphine certainly does not help to relieve an attack of paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea by improving the circulation. Its prompt effect has always given support to those theories of paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea which assumed abnormal reflexes or an abnormal condition of the respiratory centers as the causal mechanism.

Morphine sulphate is usually given hypodermically during the attack and the dose should not be less than 0.02 Gm. Since quick action is necessary and absorption from the cold skin and from the subcutaneous tissue may be slow it is better to administer morphine in this dosage intramuscularly. Even the intravenous administration of 0.01 Gm. of morphine sulphate has been recommended. It is well to include atropine sulphate in the amount of 0.0004 Gm. ( $\frac{1}{2}$  mg.) with the injection of morphine.

Morphine also prevents recurrences of the attacks. Very small doses suffice to guarantee a quiet night and prevent new attacks of cardiac asthma and pulmonary edema. An injection of 0.01 Gm. of morphine or pantopon or even one tablet or 0.02 Gm. of pantopon is given at bed time. The most inexpensive method of administration particularly in hospitals is by an aqueous solution of morphine hydrochloride or sulphate. The administration of 20—30 drops of a 1 per cent solution usually suffices. It has the advantage of rarely causing morphinism—at least we have never observed it in many hundreds of cases. After a few days the use of morphine usually becomes unnecessary because cardiac action has been improved by digitalis.



the consequently increased return of blood to the heart is considered one of the major reasons for the nocturnal appearance of the attacks. With the legs dangling the circulating blood volume may be reduced by 400 ml. Patients in shock however should lie flat or even with the lower part of the body elevated.

*Aminophylline* Aminophylline has also been recommended for the attacks of cardiac asthma. There is no doubt that in the absence of pulmonary edema when expiration is prolonged and difficult when a great deal of bronchospasm exists aminophylline may be useful.

*Atropine* Doses of 1—2 milligrams of atropine have also been recommended for decreasing reflex action and preventing secretion. This treatment is useful in experimental pulmonary edema. One must however be careful in the intravenous administration of large doses of atropine to patients with coronary sclerosis because the increase of heart rate may cause cardiac hypoxia and may have serious consequences. For this reason and owing to the disagreeable side effects of large doses of atropine this treatment is not recommended.

*Hypertonic Glucose Solution* Very effective is an injection of a highly concentrated solution of dextrose for example 40 ml of a 40—50 per cent solution. The improvement may appear within a few minutes. The action is not ascribed to the sugar. A purely osmotic effect of the hypertonic solution is responsible.

Intravenous injections of sugar with or without insulin have frequently been recommended for the treatment of various heart ailments. These injections were supposed to act particularly well in various myocardial and coronary diseases. No proof has been advanced as yet of any beneficial effect. The introduction of hypertonic solutions into the circulation causes an appreciable increase of the circulating blood volume by withdrawing fluids from the tissues and augments the load for the heart. In patients with cerebral edema an increase of the spinal fluid pressure has been observed after an initial fall. Therefore the administration of 50 per cent sucrose has been recommended for these cases. The cerebrospinal fluid barrier is not permeable for sucrose. Hypertonic solutions of sucrose have however an injurious effect on the kidneys.

Even if one employs venesection, tourniquets or hypertonic glucose solutions no time should be lost in giving morphine as soon as possible. This treatment alone is reliable only in the terminal pulmonary edema is it useless.

### *Morphine in Cardiac and in Pulmonary Dyspnea*

It was mentioned in the preceding section that morphine is a most effective remedy for cardiac asthma and pulmonary edema. It is no less useful in other forms of cardiac dyspnea.

For decades morphine was hailed as a second digitalis and was employed very often in cardiac patients. At present its beneficial effects on decompensated and dyspneic cardiac patients is often forgotten.

In the chapter on dyspnea it was shown that even the form of breathlessness due to pulmonary congestion does not depend exclusively upon the mechanical

effects of congestion but that various reflexes play an important role. In this group of patients examination of the arterial blood reveals no hypoxia. As long as no pulmonary complications exist the blood is normally saturated with oxygen and contains even less carbon dioxide than normal blood. Pulmonary congestion produces reflex hyperventilation. This hyperventilation alone may exhaust the patient because the greater physical work of respiration represents an increased burden. It also leads to the detrimental effects of excessive exhalation of carbon dioxide (hypocapnia). If small doses of morphine are given to such patients for instance 20 drops of a 1 per cent solution of morphine sulphate in water and the irritability of the centers is reduced slightly the dyspnea diminishes markedly and with it the added work imposed on the circulation. Following one dose of morphine to an otherwise untreated patient, one can often observe that in addition to the great subjective relief a profuse diuresis may start and the size of the liver may diminish. The great restlessness of these patients is abolished and they can be handled much easier. The statement of clinicians about 50 years ago, namely that compensation may be achieved with morphine alone is certainly true for some decompensated non fibrillating patients.

Therefore every decompensated dyspneic cardiac patient should receive small doses of morphine in the morning and evening for the first few days of treatment until the beginning of the digitalis effect makes this treatment unnecessary. The small doses recommended do not inhibit diuresis and no danger of morphinism need be feared if the doses are given by mouth for the short time they are indicated.

At this occasion it is appropriate to stress the fact that in contrast to cardiac dyspnea all types of pulmonary dyspnea contraindicate the use of morphine. In these cases oxygen saturation of the blood is diminished and carbon dioxide retention may also take place due to the pulmonary lesion. In this instance the dyspnea is not the abnormal outcome of various factors connected with decompensation but an important phenomenon necessary to maintain life and to compensate for the pulmonary lesion. Once the irritability of the respiratory centers is reduced by morphine and the respiration is slowed the exchange of gases suffers and hypoxia with increased cyanosis and hypercapnia appear. Patients soon fall asleep the breathing becomes more infrequent longer and longer respiratory pauses appear cyanosis increases and soon death may occur by respiratory standstill.

This is not a rare event and such occurrences unfortunately are encountered all too frequently. Often the connection between the administration of morphine and the death of the patient is not clear to the physician he attributes the fatality to the severe pulmonary process. It is regrettable that most of the current textbooks of clinical medicine and even of pharmacology do not stress this contraindication.

Morphine must be used with greatest care in cases of severe emphysema and kyphoscoliosis in diffuse bronchopneumonia in bronchial asthma in bilateral

tuberculosis and pneumonia and in diffuse metastatic pulmonary neoplasms. In mild emphysema, bronchopneumonia, tuberculosis or malignancy of the lung, morphine may be administered if indicated; however, in those extensive pulmonary lesions which cause cyanosis or dyspnea, morphine is forbidden. We have seen patients die within a half hour with the picture just described because inexperienced physicians ordered morphine for severe pain in a patient with carcinoma and extensive pulmonary metastases or advanced pulmonary tuberculosis. Patients with bronchial asthma rarely die during an untreated attack. This happens, however, often if morphine is given. If for any reason morphine must be administered or the physician is uncertain how much of the dyspnea is of pulmonary origin, small doses of the drug or better, demerol, may be given. The patient should be watched carefully so that the centrally acting stimulants like atropine, coramine, caffeine or aminophylline can be administered promptly if the depression of the respiration becomes more marked. Nallin in the amount of 5 to 10 mg. is effective.

For the same reason in pulmonary edema, when copious hemorrhagic sputum is already evident and bubbling rales are audible all over the lungs, it is well to omit morphine because a mechanical impediment causes the dyspnea and its suppression may lead to asphyxia. Morphine is given in these cases after one succeeds in causing the absorption of the alveolar transudate by an intravenous injection of hypertonic glucose solution or by the use of a high pressure oxygen mask.

### CARDIAC STIMULANTS

In patients with cardiac weakness, preparations of the digitalis or strophanthid group are primarily indicated. In some cases, for instance in acute cardiac failure of various origins, in acute pulmonary edema, in pulmonary embolism and right heart failure, one may find it necessary to stimulate cardiac action immediately before the digitalis glycosides can show an effect on the heart. Sometimes side effects of digitalis like extrasystoles forbid continuation of digitalis even if it is otherwise indicated. For this purpose, a host of remedies have been recommended but only a few are really useful.

**Strychnine.** For many years strychnine was employed as a cardiac stimulant. It was early recognized, however, that strychnine has no effect on the heart and can only be used to increase vascular tone. It has been given by mouth or by subcutaneous injection in the dose of 2 mg. three or four times daily.

**Pressor Amines.** Epinephrine has a very strong action on the circulation. It combines a positive inotropic action on the heart muscle with a constrictor effect on the vessels in wide areas of the body. Nevertheless its disadvantages are great. When given by mouth or by rectum, it is practically inert. If administered hypodermically, its action is sometimes stormy and vanishes in a short time. Even small doses are dangerous to cardiac patients due to the resultant marked tachycardia, the elevation of blood pressure and the remarkable increase of the oxygen requirements of the myocardium which often cannot be

met. Therefore this drug should never be used in cardiac patients even if it seems necessary for other purposes for instance as an addition to a local anesthetic or for the treatment of swollen nasal mucous membranes.

Some of the newer pressor amines and substances related to adrenalin however are indicated in cases in which for instance in myocardial infarction during local anesthesia or following sympathectomy the blood pressure threatens to fall to dangerously low levels. Paredrine and neosynephrine are given in these cases without undue danger to the heart. A single dose of 2 mg. of paredrine by mouth or 5—10 mg. of paredrine or neosynephrine by intramuscular injection may be used. Isuprel (10 mg.) may be given sublingually.

The action of these drugs is more prolonged and less stormy than that of epinephrine.

*Camphor Coramine Metrazol* Preparations of camphor were greatly cherished by many physicians in various countries as cardiac remedies and were given whenever stimulation of the heart seemed indicated. There is however no evidence available to prove a stimulating action of camphor on the heart. The same holds for some synthetic preparations which were originally recommended as synthetic camphor like stimulants. The best known of these preparations are coramine and metrazol (cardiazol). These preparations have no stimulating cardiac effect nor do they increase contractility of the heart. They stimulate medullary centers and only in this way lead to a moderate rise of blood pressure and increased respiration. They should not be employed for stimulation of the heart muscle.

*Xanthine Bodies* Several preparations belonging to the xanthine group possess a stimulating effect on the heart. They are particularly useful because this effect is combined with vasodilatation and some diuretic action.

It has been pointed out before that some of the xanthines like theophylline stimulate the heart muscle. Caffeine in particular increases the contractility of the myocardium and increases the amplitude of contraction especially of the damaged or weakened heart. The effect on the heart rate varies because this depends on various central and peripheral factors which act in opposite directions.

For injection the soluble double salts like caffeine and sodium benzoate are used. A subcutaneous injection of 0.2—0.3 Gm. may be given every two hours when necessary. For oral treatment caffeine parum in doses of 0.1 Gm. is useful. However strong black coffee which the patient may take much more willingly is no less effective than a capsule or an injection of caffeine. The caffeine content of a small cup of coffee may exceed the amount given in a capsule or injection.

#### VENESECTION LEPCHES

The effect of venesection on cardiac asthma, pulmonary edema and in hypertension was discussed in the corresponding chapters. This therapeutic procedure is time honored and purely empirical.

Patients with marked venous stasis and hepatic engorgement that is patients with right heart failure seem to derive some benefit from phlebotomy.

The removal of 400–500 ml of blood may bring relief. The venous pressure may fall temporarily and the patient may improve subjectively. The spinal fluid pressure also falls (Robertson and Fetter). Usually, however, a delay of several hours is safe and the same result can be secured by an injection of a mercurial diuretic.

In patients with right heart failure in the course of pulmonary disease (decompensated cor pulmonale) phlebotomy sometimes affords excellent results. In general, however, this procedure is rarely necessary and rarely used. Simultaneously with a lowering of right atrial pressure, venesection causes an increase of cardiac output. This may be due to the fact that the heart was overloaded before the phlebotomy and the extreme increase of filling pressure had led to a fall in output.

It has been pointed out that phlebotomy is helpful in polycythemic complicating pulmonary vascular sclerosis or congenital heart lesions. It helps in plethoric patients with chronic congestive heart failure.

When the use of leeches is recommended, one often encounters a smile of pity. We are, however, able to confirm the observations of others (Sir Thomas Lewis) that this old method of treatment may be very useful if employed upon definite indications. The most important situation in which leeches may bring relief is in patients with an acute engorgement of the liver leading to severe pain in the right hypochondrium. Under these circumstances, the application of three or four leeches over the liver suffices to bring relief in a few hours. A demonstrable reduction of the size of the liver may be found afterward. Although patients object at first to the use of these unpleasant creatures, they report definite relief in every instance when the procedure is employed. Nothing definite is known about the *modus operandi* of this measure. It has been suggested that the success may be due to the relation of some vascular spasm within the liver via a cutaneous visceral reflex. We found, however, that irritation of the corresponding section of the skin by cantharides plasters or cupping decidedly less effective.

#### TOTAL THYROIDECTOMY AND OTHER OPERATIONS IN CARDIAC FAILURE

Total thyroidectomy in patients with intractable angina pectoris has been discussed.

It has been known for more than 30 years that subtotal thyroidectomy can exert an excellent effect in patients with organic heart disease and mild hyperthyroidism. In these patients the signs of decompensation may vanish soon after the operation. Sometimes the heart even becomes smaller; disturbances of rhythm disappear and the functional capacity of the patient increases remarkably. The postoperative improvement is very impressive since previously intensive therapy with the most powerful agents available often had failed.

The occasional observation of similar striking improvement in patients operated on for an assumed hyperthyroidism although subsequent histologic examination of the thyroid revealed no sign of hyperfunction suggested subtotal

thyroidectomy also for cardiac patients without hyperthyroidism (Blumgart Levine) Since the initial improvement in several cases was followed soon by a recurrence of the original symptoms it was recommended that subtotal thyroidectomy should be discarded and that *total* thyroidectomy be performed. The recurrence of symptoms after the older procedure was attributed to regeneration of thyroid tissue.

The operation was adopted by many physicians with enthusiasm. Others repudiated it. At the present time it seems to be rarely employed since thyroidectomy can be accomplished by drugs without surgery.

The procedure deserves consideration in a very carefully observed case if in spite of intensive digitalis therapy, the use of the modern diuretics and despite constant hospitalization a tolerable state of compensation cannot be maintained. When prolonged observation shows that the myocardium of these patients is in good condition and in the absence of the contraindications to be mentioned presently the operation may be tried. One should not treat by thyroidectomy a patient in whom decompensation is merely the result of an infection, a pulmonary embolism or an arrhythmia. In these instances removal of the cause of decompensation furnishes relief in a simpler way. No signs of progression in aortitis should be present and no evidence of activity in cases of rheumatic heart lesion.

At first the success of the procedure was ascribed to the fall of the basal metabolic rate. It was believed that the operation leads to a diminished oxygen requirement in the tissues and thus the demands of the tissues are adapted to the impaired circulation. But it soon became clear that the improvement appears before the basal metabolism is lowered; indeed, occasionally it was evident a few days following the operation. Therefore abolition of a direct thyroid effect on the circulation is involved. When the basal metabolic rate falls to low levels and evidence of hypothyroidism appears, small doses of thyroid are given. Sometimes we were able to maintain the basal metabolic rate at a normal level in these patients while the improvement of the circulation remained.

One must also consider the fact that with the development of myxedema the cardiac output as well as circulation time fall to lower levels. This too forces us to seek for another explanation for the benefit of surgical or chemical thyroidectomy than simply the diminution of the oxygen requirements of the tissues.

Another indication for this mode of therapy are patients with paroxysmal tachycardia or paroxysmal flutter and fibrillation who suffer from very frequent attacks and who do not respond to the usual therapy. Here diminution of thyroid activity may lessen the severity and incidence of the attacks.

Thiourea derivatives proved helpful and were used with advantage in patients with congestive heart failure as well as in patients with angina pectoris. However, the simplest and for the patient least inconvenient therapy is that with radioiodine. The iodine uptake is at first determined with a tracer dose of  $I^{131}$ . Then doses of 20–30 millicuries are given orally in intervals of 5–6 weeks. Often good results are obtained early after the first dose. The development of a myxedematous state is by no means necessary.



It is claimed that in congestive cardiac failure this therapy helps in about 50 per cent of the cases. In angina pectoris excellent results were reported in one third of the cases and worthwhile results in another one third. In the latter group we found chemical thyroidectomy particularly helpful in patients with aortic stenosis and aortic insufficiency and decubital angina. Recently Blumgart et al reported worthwhile improvement in 75 per cent of patients with angina pectoris and about 60 per cent of patients with congestive heart failure.

### *Other Operations in Congestive Heart Failure*

In patients with congestive cardiac failure particularly in mitral lesions Cossio recommended ligation of the inferior vena cava. Satisfactory results were reported by him and others (Bernath et al). The operation is contraindicated in high output failure but provided immediate relief in the congestive heart failure of mitral patients.

These operations as well as the creation of an artificial experimental tricuspid insufficiency (Cossio et al) are now superseded by direct operation on the cardiac valves.

### ANTICOAGULANTS IN CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE

Thromboembolism in patients with congestive heart failure is a common complication and about one third of patients with rheumatic valvular lesions develop heart failure because of pulmonary emboli. If — as usually happens — the patient is forced to stay in bed the danger of new embolism is even greater.

The thrombi are not only located in the lower extremities but also and even more extensively in the venous plexusses of the pelvis the hypogastric veins the prostatic and ovarian plexusses which we had examined for years in every post mortem examination of patients dying from congestive heart failure and which we found thrombosed in practically every instance.

Such pulmonary embolisms coming repeatedly over a prolonged period may by themselves cause heart failure and are detrimental for patients whose hearts are already overburdened because of rheumatic fever or coronary sclerosis.

It has often been stated that therapy with digitalis increases the danger of thrombus formation. In a careful study of this question Cormsen found no correlation with the degree of diuresis and thrombosis but a good correlation between intensity of therapy and thrombosis.

For these reasons prolonged anti coagulant therapy has been recommended in patients with congestive heart failure (Wishart and Chipman, Harvey and Finch) and a significant reduction of the occurrence of thromboembolism has been reported. Griffith et al found in the treated group an incidence of the complication of 1.4 per cent while it was 15.5 per cent in the untreated group.

A final decision on whether or not the measure should be used routinely is not yet possible. One will understand that by the use of anticoagulants new hazards are added to those already existing. It should appear advisable to wait until

studies covering a large amount of material show that the dangers of the therapy are minor and the advantages outweigh them

### DIETARY QUESTIONS

Even if no special diet is required detailed instructions should be given to cardiac patients since the definite advice is always welcome

Compensated cardiac patients in general need not be subjected to great dietary restrictions A normal mixed diet is permissible Foodstuffs which cause flatulence foods which are not easily digested and large meals should be avoided

Eat frequently but do not take too much at one time is an excellent precept Fluids should be taken mainly between meals

The dietary requirements in patients with hypertension coronary sclerosis or myocardial infarction have been discussed in the chapters dealing with these conditions

Patients with cardiac failure and edema should receive a diet poor in salt or even salt free Even healthy persons who receive a salt free diet for one day have a profuse diuresis and show a loss of weight surpassing 1 Kg within 24 hours The great contribution of such a diet to the development of a satisfactory diuresis in edematous patients is readily understandable

Recently a high fluid intake has been recommended in cardiac edema (Schemm) It was pointed out that edematous patients may even be dehydrated If the sodium in the diet is restricted and the diet yields a neutral or acid ash remarkable diuresis may be obtained even with administration of more than 4 000 ml of water daily Meat eggs cereal prunes and plums belong to the food stuffs giving an acid ash Milk fruit juices and fruit with the exception of those mentioned above should be avoided Ammonium chloride (3 Gm daily) or a few drops of dilute hydrochloric acid in every glass of water serve to increase the acidity This diet has been abandoned by us and in many other places

The Karel diet consisting of 800—1 000 ml of milk only taken during the day is very satisfactory The use of milk has however some disadvantages Many patients do not like it in many it causes meteorism and distension and in others diarrhea Moreover milk is salt poor and not salt free It contains 750 mg of sodium per liter For this reason raw or cooked vegetables may be substituted for milk All varieties of fruits or vegetables are permissible Even potatoes are allowed particularly for heavy eaters They may be eaten with the skin which on account of their high content of potassium are supposed to exert some diuretic effect The total quantity of fruit or vegetables permitted during 24 hours should not exceed 1 200 Gm No other food and no other drinks are given This diet is followed for three days in succession and then supplemented by proteins

Artificial salts have been devised but most of them have a high content of sodium and are therefore of little value Usually one can dispense with them Garlic pepper paprika vinegar and the like are permitted

In patients who develop marked albuminuria a hypoproteinemia may appear during chronic congestion. Therefore a diet rich in proteins is necessary.

In patients who are overweight a low caloric intake will be prescribed. For most patients 20 calories for one Kg body weight are suggested. The calculated ideal weight of the patient rather than the actual weight should serve as a basis for the dietary regime.

The amount of liquid permitted to a patient with decompensation should not exceed 800–1 000 ml within 24 hours. Naturally fruits, vegetables, soups are calculated as fluids.

Excessive smoking and consumption of large quantities of alcohol are prohibited. It has been stressed in the appropriate chapters that in patients with hypertension, with coronary diseases and particularly in patients with peripheral vascular diseases smoking is harmful even in smallest quantities while alcohol taken in moderation is useful.

### AIR TRAVEL CLIMATE

In this era of air travel the question must often be decided whether the patient may undertake a trip by plane. With the exception of obvious contraindications such as severe congestive heart failure or a fresh myocardial infarction the answer will most often be yes. The small risk is illustrated by the experience (Graybiel) that among 7 million passengers carried by five major airlines only 3 deaths occurred during flight and 5 shortly after landing from cardiovascular disease. The rule "if you can walk you can fly" was accepted but consideration should be given to certain facts.

A patient with a myocardial infarction should not fly until four months have elapsed since the day the infarction occurred. Dyspnoeic patients should not fly. Among laymen the opinion prevails that pressurized planes are safe; however they are pressurized at a level of 7 000–8 000 feet. Some patients with angina pectoris need oxygen at 5 000 feet. Patients with status anginosus or attacks of angina pectoris at rest (angina de decubitus) should not fly. Abdominal distention due to the expansion of abdominal gases often causes discomfort. The administration of 1 tablet of dramamine every four hours is recommended.

Cardiac patients, particularly those with congestive heart failure, do not tolerate humid and hot climate well. On the other hand, even in a subtropical climate patients with angina on effort are more comfortable and the need for nitroglycerin diminishes.

The literature on observations on the occurrence of attacks of coronary thrombosis or apoplexy in connection with particular barometric pressures and other climatic factors is large. In Dallas, Texas, the incidence of myocardial infarction during the summer months is greater (Heyer et al.) while the incidence in Northern cities seems to be greater in the winter. Others reached different conclusions (Schnur). A sudden elevation of atmospheric temperature and humidity may precipitate an attack of left ventricular failure.

## Bibliography

- Aaron R S and Weston R F Outpatient treatment of congestive heart failure with sodium removing exchange resins Arch Int Med 90 18, 1952
- Abdon O and Nielson A A Localisation of cardio inhibitory vagal effect caused by digitalis Scandinau Arch f Physiol 31 1939
- Anitschkow S W and Trendelenburg P Die Wirkung des Strophanthus auf das ausreichende und auf das insuffiziente Warmbluterherz Deutsche med Wchnchr 61 1672 1934
- Bazach A L Martin J and Fekman M Positive pressure respiration and its application to the treatment of acute pulmonary edema Ann Int Med 12 754 1939
- and Molomut N Oxygen mask metered for positive pressure Ann Int Med 1 820 1942
- Batterman R C and Gutner L B Hitherto undescribed neurological manifestations of digitalis toxicity Am Heart J 37 592 1948
- DeCraff A C Gutner L B Rose O L and Lebowitz S Studies of gitalin (amorphous) for the treatment of patients with congestive heart failure Am Heart J 29 1101
- Berenson C S and Burch G F The response of patients with congestive heart failure to a rapid elevation of atmospheric temperature and humidity Am J Med 9 45 1952
- Berliner K Observations on the duration of the electrical systole of the heart with special reference to the effect of digitalis Am Heart J 189 1931
- Berliner R W Kennedy T J Jr and Orloff J Relation ship between acidification of the urine and potassium metabolism Am J Med 11 214 1951
- Bernath J Guillemot R Samuel I and Heim de Balsac P Vena cava inferior ligation in congestive cardiac failure Am Heart J 50 119 1955
- Bink R J Narasim J M Damman J F Jr Draper A Jr Heimbecker R Daley R Gerard R and Calazel I Effect of strophanthus on coronary blood flow and cardiac oxygen consumption of the normal and failing human heart Circulation 13 1950
- Bix H D Holmstahl Diuretikum Wien klin Wchnschr 40 321 1927
- Blum L Recherches sur le rôle des sels alcalins dans la pathogenèse des œdèmes l'action diurétique du chlorure de potassium Presse med 3 68, 1920
- Blumgart H L and Freedberg A S The heart and the thyroid with particular reference to I<sup>131</sup> treatment of heart disease Circulation 6 222 1952
- Black A B and Litchfield J A Uremia complicating low salt treatment of heart failure Quart J Med 20 149 1951
- Blumgart H L Freedberg A S and Murland G S Treatment of incapacitated thyrotoxic cardiac patients with radioactive iodine JAMA 157 1 1955
- Borg J F Treatment of edema with orally administered mercurial diuretic Am Heart J 33, 1947
- Borison H I Role of gastrointestinal innervation in digitalis emesis J Pharm Exper Therap 104 396 1952
- Bourne C Effects of flying on patients with cardiovascular disease Brit Med J 1 310 1955
- Boyer A R Cardiogenic shock New England J Med 230 2, 6 1944
- Leach C F and White I D The immediate prognosis of congestive heart failure Ann Int Med 14 10 1941
- Brandt P Förmis infolge Überempfindlichkeit gegen Digitalis purpurea Wien klin Wchnschr 50 132, 1937
- Brautke H Eine neue Anwendungsart des Salysgangs die intrapleurale Injektion München med Wchnschr 81 1, 2 1934

- Bresniet L, Woodward W K and Sageman C B Fatal reactions to intravenous administration of aminophylline *JAMA* 136 397 1948
- Buchner F Herzmuskelnekrosen durch hohe Dosen von Digitalisglykosiden *Arch exper Path u Pharmacol* 176 59 1934
- Burch C E The influence of variations in atmospheric temperature and humidity on the rates of water and heat loss from the respiratory tract of patients with congestive heart failure living in a subtropical climate *Am Heart J* 32 190 1946 Editorial *Arch Int Med* 96 671 1955
- Calhoun J A and Harrison T R Studies in congestive heart failure *J Clin Investigation* 10 139 1931
- Camponovo P B et al Influencia de la digitalis sobre algunos componentes sanguíneos *La Prensa Med Argentina* 42 1022 1955
- Cohen H M Digitalis poisoning and its treatment *New England J Med* 246 225 1952
- Cohen R V and Brodsky M Allergy to digitalis *J Allergy* 12 69 1940
- Cossio P Ligation of the inferior vena cava in the treatment of heart failure *Am Heart J* 43 97 1952
- Crawford J H and McIntosh J F The use of urea as a diuretic in advanced heart failure *Arch Int Med* 36 530 1925
- Curry C F and Nielsen M Control of pulmonary edema with silicone acetoal *J Pharm Exper Ther* 106 370 1952
- Cushny A R The Action and Uses in Medicine of Digitalis and its Allies London Longmans Green 1925
- Danowski T S, Greenman L, Ieters J H, Mateer F M, Weigand F A and Taral H The use of cation exchange resins in clinical situations *Ann Int Med* 35 529 1951
- Dearing W H, Essex H E, Herrick J F and Barnes A R Experiments with calculated therapeutic and toxic doses of digitalis I Effects on the myocardial cellular structure III Effect on coronary blood flow *Am Heart J* 25 648 and 19 1943
- et al Myocardial lesions produced by digitalis in the presence of hyperthyroidism *Circulation* 1 394 1950
- Dennig H and Krause F Diurese durch rektale Anwendung von Nuxist München med Wchnschr 52 1865 1935
- Deroo H A and Wolff L Oral administration of mercupurin tablets in ambulatory patients with chronic congestive heart failure *Am J Med* 3 693 1947
- Dock W Sodium depletion as a therapeutic procedure *Trans A Am Phys* 51 52 1946
- and Frank N R Cation exchangers their use and hazards as aids in managing edema *Am Heart J* 40 638 1950
- and Tainter M L The circulatory changes after full therapeutic dose of digitalis with a critical discussion of views on cardiac output *J Clin Investigation* 1 46 1930
- Downey A M and Strickland B A Jr Air transportation of cardiac and pulmonary patients *Ann Int Med* 36 525 1952
- Dresbach M Additional experiments relative to the origin of glycoside emesis in dogs *Am J Physiol* 126 480 1939
- Durozier I Du délire et du coma digitalique *Cah hebdom d méd* 11 780 1874
- Edens F Die Digitalisbehandlung, Wien Urban und Schwarzenberg 1916
- Eggleston C Digitalis dosage *Arch Int Med* 16 1 1915
- Fiehn L W and Faulstich H A comparison of the action of furosemide and digitalis in a patient with congestive heart failure *Am Heart J* 47 631 1953
- Fischberg K I Zur Digitalisvergiftung, Wien Ztschr f inn M 1 1948
- Emerson K Jr, Kahn S S, Vester J W and Nelson K D Oral use of cation exchange resins in treatment of edema *Arch Int Med* 55 60 1951

- Essex H F, Herrick J F, Baldes E J and Mann F C Digitalis and coronary blood flow. *Proc Soc Exper Bio & Med* 39 325 1938
- Evans W, Dick P and Evans B Rapid digitalization. *Brit Heart J* 10 103 1948
- Evans W and Paxton T A comparison of mercurial diuretics used in heart failure. *Brit Heart J* 11 12 1941
- Fahr G and Ladue J A preliminary investigation of the therapeutic value of lanatoside C (digiland C). *Am Heart J* 21 133 1941
- Faltitschek F and Scherf D Th. opyllinum purum als Diuretikum. *Therap d Gegenw* 73 95 1931
- Fiese M J and Thayer J M Value of the Southey Leech tubes in rapid relief of massive edema. *Arch Int Med* 9, 132 1950
- Fischer C S, Sjoerdama A and Johnson H The tissue distribution and excretion of radioactive digitoxin. *Circulation* 5 496 1952
- Flaum E and Roessler P Über die Herzwirkung der Furunkörper. *Klin Wchnchr* 14 1489 1933
- Fraenkel A Pharmacological aspect of digital therapy. *Lancet* 2 1101 1935
- Fremont R F and King H Digitoxin causing ventricular tachycardia with peripheral vascular collapse. *JAMA* 143 1052 1950
- Freud P and Meyer H H Über nichtzündende Subkutaninjektion entzündlich wirkender Heilmittel. *Deut med Wchnshr* 1922 31
- Friedberg C K, Teymar R M, War J H and Halpern N The use of diamox, a carbonic anhydrase inhibitor as an oral diuretic in patients with congestive heart failure. *New England J Med* 248 893 1953
- Friedman M, Bine P Jr and Byers S O The renal excretion of digitoxin in the acute and chronic cardiac patient. *Circulation* 6 853 1952
- et al The renal excretion of digitoxin in the normal subject after single and continuous administration of the drug. *Circulation* 749 1950
  - et al The behavior and fate of digitoxin in the experimental animal and man. *Medicine* 33 15 1954
  - et al Deposition and disappearance of digitoxin from the tissues of the rat, rabbit and dog after parenteral injection. *Circulation* 6 367 1952
- Fromherz K Entgiftung und Kumulierung. *Deutsche med Wchnshr* 60 1495 1934
- Gamble J L, Blackfan K D and Hamilton B A study of the diuretic action of acid producing salts. *J Clin Investigation* 1 359 1952
- Gelfand M L Total blindness due to digitalis toxicity. *New Engl J Med* 254 1181 1956
- George St S, Naefele F S, Rosenman R H and Friedman M A quantitative study of the digitoxin content of edema fluids. *J Clin Investigation* 32 1922 1953
- Ginsberg A M, Stoland O O and Silver K A Studies on coronary circulation VI The effect of some members of the digitalis group on the coronary circulation. *Am Heart J* 16 663 1938
- Glass G B J, Barowsky H, Boyd L J, Rief M and Ebin L Theophylline concentration in blood plasma following rectal administration of aminophylline. *Am J Med Sc* 215 1 1956
- Gold H, Kwit N T, Cattell M and Travell J Studies on purified digitalis glycosides. *JAMA* 119 928 1942
- Cattell M, Morell W, Kwit N T, Kramer M L and Zahn W Clinical studies on digitoxin (digitaline Nativelle). *J Pharm exper Therap* 89 187 1944
- Goldhammer S, Leiner G and Scherf D Über die zirkulierende Blutmenge vor und nach der Quecksilberdiurese. *Klin Wchnshr* 14 1109 1935
- Goldmann M A and Luisada A A Alcohol oxygen vapor therapy of pulmonary edema. Results in fifty attacks. *Ann Int Med* 3 121 1955

- Gordon B The value of venesection in the treatment of the decompensated heart *Am J M Sc* 170 671 1925
- Gormsen J Does rapid dehydration in cardiac decompensation produce thromboembolic complications? *Acta med Scandinav* 148 61 1954
- Govaerts P Origine rénale ou tressulaire de la diurèse par un composé mercuriel organique *Compt rend Soc biol* 99 647 1928
- Graff A C de Batterman R C and Rose O A Digitoxin *J A M A* 138 475 1948
- Graybiel A Air travel and heart disease *Modern Concepts Cardiovasc Dis* 23 3 1954  
— A consideration of the effects of oxygen lack on the cardiovascular system from the viewpoint of aviation *J Aviat Med* 12 183 1941
- Remels H Über die Kreislaufwirkung einiger neuerer Analeptika *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 153 36 1930
- Griffith G C Stragnell R Levinson D C Moore F J and Ware A C A study of the beneficial effects of anticoagulant therapy in congestive heart failure *Ann Int Med* 37 867 1952
- Gross H and Jezer A Treatment of Heart Disease Philadelphia Saunders 1956
- Guggenheimer H Zur Herzbehandlung bei Erkrankungen der Koronargefäße *Deutsche med Wchnschr* 49 1007 1923
- Haldane J S Respiration Yale University Press New Haven 1927
- Hanzlik P J and Wood D A The mechanism of digitalis emesis in pigeons *J Pharm Exper Therap* 37 67 1929
- Harvey W P and Finch C A Dicumarol prophylaxis of thromboembolic disease in congestive heart failure *New England J Med* 242 208 1950
- Hatcher R A The persistence of action of the digitalis *Arch Int Med* 10 968 1912  
— R A and Bailey H C The clinical use of strophanthus *J A M A* 55 1697 1910
- Hausner F and Scherf D Über Angina pectoris Probleme *Ztschr f klin Med* 176 166 1933
- Herrzog F and Schwarz H Über die Wirkung des Strophanthus im Fieber *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 151 12 1930
- Heubner W and Fuchs B Über rektale Applikation von g Strophanthin *Arch exper Path u Pharmacol* 171 102 1933
- Hever H E Teng H C and Barris W The increased frequency of acute myocardial infarction during the summer months in a warm climate *Am Heart J* 45 741 1953
- Heyl A F Auricular paroxysmal tachycardia caused by digitalis *Ann Int Med* 5 859 1932
- Heymans C Bouchaert J J and Regniers I Sur le mécanisme réflexe de la bradycardie provoquée par les digitaliques *Compt rend Soc de biol* 110 893 1937
- Heymans J F and Heymans C Sur le mécanisme de la bradycardie consécutive à l'injection de digitale strophanthine et cymarine *J Pharm & Exper Therap* 29 203 1926
- Hueper W C Some toxic aspects of digitalis therapy *New York State M J* 45 1449 1945  
— and Ichniowski C T Experimental studies in cardiovascular pathology II Pathologic lesions in organs of cats guinea pigs and frogs produced by digitalis poisoning *J Lab & Clin Med* 26 1565 1941
- Ikeri L T Boyle A J and Meyers C H Water and electrolyte balance during recovery from severe congestive failure on a 50 milligram sodium diet *Am Heart J* 40 706 1950
- Ishihara M and Iick F H Zur Pharmakologie der Tinkturen des Fiedn *J Pharm & exper Therap* 2 355 1926
- Jackson D F The pharmacological action of mercury in organic combination *J Pharm & Exper Therap* 29 471 1956

- Jezer A and Schwartz S I Auricular fibrillation as an early toxic digitalis manifestation further observations on this drug in children with congestive heart failure *J Pediat* 5 811 1934
- Judson W E Present day treatment of congestive heart failure *Med Clin North America* 35 1333 1951
- Junkmann K Beiträge zur Physiologie und Pharmakologie der Erregbarkeit des Isthmus herzens *Arch exper Path u Pharmacol* 105 313 1925
- Karr N W and Hendricks E L The toxicity of intravenous ammonium compounds *Am J Med Sc* 218 30 1949
- Kaufman R E Immediate fatalities after intravenous mercurial diuretics *Ann Int Med* 28 1040 1948
- Kay C F The clinical use of digitalis preparations *Circulation* 12 116 1955
- Keith N M and Binger M W Diuretic action of potassium salts *JAMA* 105 1284 1935
- Keith N M Whelan M and Bannick E G The action and excretion of nitrates *Arch Int Med* 36 797 1930
- Kety S S Circulation and metabolism of the human brain in health and disease *Am J Med* 8 20 1950
- King J T Digitalis delirium *Ann Int Med* 33 1360 1950
- Kisch B Strophanthin New York Brooklyn M Press 1944
- Kobasch J L and Scherf D Versuche über die Entstehung der Digitalis extrasystolen *Ztschr f d ges exper Med* 6 3712 1929
- Kohn R M and Kiley J E Electrocardiographic changes during hemodialysis with observations on contribution of electrolyte disturbances to digitalis toxicity *Ann Int Med* 37 38 1953
- Krueger H and Unna K Comparative studies on the toxic effects of digitoxin and ouabain in cats *J Pharm Exper Therap* 6 792 1947
- LeWinn E B Gynecomastia during digitalis therapy *New England J Med* 248 316 1953
- Lewis T Diseases of the Heart London Macmillan and Co 1933
- Lewitzki Über pathologisch histologische Veränderungen des Herzens bei Digitalis vergiftung Inaug Dissert Petersburg 1904 Abstr Zentralb f Pathol 16 532 1905
- Löffler W Esellier A F and Ferrater C Acetyl digitoxin *Am Heart J* 4 893 1944
- Longcope W T Luetscher J A Jr Calkins E Grab D Bush S W and Eisenberg H Clinical use of BAL *J Clin Investigation* 23 557 1946
- Lown B and Levine S A Current concepts in digitalis therapy *New England J Med* 260 819 1954
- Salzberg H Enselberg C D and Weston F E Interrelation between potassium metabolism and digitalis toxicity in heart failure *Proc Soc Exper Biol Med* 16 797 1951
- Luisada A A The treatment of paroxysmal pulmonary edema *Exper Med & Surg* 12 1943
- Acute pulmonary edema *Circulation* 13 112 1956
- Goldman M A and Weyl R Alcohol vapor by inhalation in the treatment of acute pulmonary edema *Circulation* 5 363 1952
- and Diamond I Action of cardiac glycosides on diastolic and resting length of cardiac strips *Am J Physiol* 181 347 1955
- Luten D The Clinical Use of Digitalis Springfield Ill Charles C Thomas 1936
- Mahaim I Un cas de tachycardie ventriculaire autonome anarchique avec lésions du faisceau de His *Ann anat path* 25 1938



- Schnitzer M A and Levine S A Presence of digitals in body fluid of digitalized patients *Arch Int Med* 60 240 1937
- Schott A Die physikalische Behandlung der chronischen Kreislaufinsuffizienz *Klin Wchnschr* 8 459 1929
- Schroeder H A Renal failure associated with low extracellular sodium chloride *J A M A* 141 117 1949
- Schnur S Mortality rates in acute myocardial infarction *Ann Int Med* 44 416 1956
- Schwartz W ■ The effect of sulfanilamide on salt and water excretion in congestive heart failure *New England J Med* 240 173 1949
- and Reisman A S Electrolyte disturbances in congestive heart failure *J A M A* 154 1237 1954
- Schwimmer J Schaffer A I and Guide J Febrile reaction to acetazolamide (diamox) *New York State M J* 54 692 1954
- Sharpe Schafer L P 2 thiouracil in the treatment of congestive heart failure *Brit M J* 2 888 1946
- Shattuck C C and Hilferty M M Causes of death from heat in Massachusetts *New England J Med* 209 310 1933
- Sleisenger M H and Freedberg A S Ammonium chloride acidosis *Circulation* 3 83 1951
- Smith S Digoxin a New Digitalis Glucoside London *J Chem Soc* 1930 p 508
- Sokoloff L and Ferrer M I Effect of digitalization on the coagulation time in man *Proc Soc Exper Biol & Med* 59 309 1945
- Spuhler C and Zwilling L Über die Wirkung von Strophanthin auf den Lurkinjefaden und ihre Beeinflussung durch Magnesium *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 181 451 1936
- Stapleton J F and Harvey W I Hypochloremic alkalosis induced by mercurial diuretics in congestive heart failure *Arch Int Med* 90 425 1952
- Stewart H J Dietrich J E Crane W F and Wheeler C H Action of digitals in uncompensated heart disease *Arch Int Med* 67 569 1934
- Stoll A The Cardiac Glycosides London 1937
- Stone J Auricular tachycardia and auriculo ventricular dissociation following 1 mg of digitoxin in one dose *J Mt Sinai Hosp* 14 924 1948
- Swigert W and Fitz R The effect of mersalyl (salysrgan) on plasma volume *J A M A* 115 1486 1940
- Thomas W A ■ The organic mercurial diuretics in the treatment of cardiac edema *Quart J Med* 6 321 1937
- Truitt F B Jr McKusick A A and Krantz J C Jr Theophylline therapy following after oral rectal and intravenous administration and correlation with diuretic action *J Pharm & Exper Therap* 100 309 1950
- Uricchio J F and Calenda D C The failure of hypertonic saline in the treatment of hyponatremia and edema in congestive heart failure *Ann Int Med* 39 1788 1953
- Vogl A Euphyllin *Wien Klin Wchnschr* 40 10, 1927
- Über den Mechanismus und die Behandlung der zentralen Dyspnoe *Klin Wchnschr* 7 83 1930
- Diuretic Therapy Baltimore Williams & Wilkins 1953
- and Ferrer M I Aminophylline as supplement to mercurial diuretics in intracardiac congestive heart failure *J A M A* 141 62, 1941
- Visscher M B Halasy F J and Stephens C The physiology and pharmacology of lung edema *Pharm Rev* 9 341 1956
- Volm I F Levitt R O and Martin H Studies on mercurial diuretics. V. Subcutaneous and intravenous injection *J A M A* 178 12 1944

- Walker A M Schmidt C F Edson K A and Johnston C G Renal blood flow of unanesthetized rabbits and dogs in diuresis and antidiuresis *Am J Physiol* 119 95 1937
- Weed A M The influence of digoxin on the potassium content of heart muscle *J Pharmacol exp Med* 65 268 1939
- Weese H *Digitalis* Thieme Leipzig 1936
- and Dieckhoff J Zur Kumulation der digitalis glycoside *Arch f exper Path u Pharmacol* 116 754 1934
- Wenckebach K F The use of foxglove at the bedside *Brit M J* 1 181 1930
- Whittingham H Barbour A B and Macgown J C Medical fitness for air travel *Brit M J* 1 603 1949
- Wiggers C J and Stimson B Studies on the cardiodynamic actions of drugs III The mechanism of cardiac stimulation by digitalis and strophanthin *J Pharmacol & exp Therap* 30 211 1927
- Wishart J H and Chapman C H Dicumarol therapy in congestive heart failure *New England J Med* 239 701 1948
- Wolff L and Sagall E S Intravenous administration of mercurial diuretics in man *Arch Int Med* 91 137 1948
- Wollenberger A The energy metabolism of the failing heart and the metabolic action of the cardiac glycosides *Pharm Rev* 1 311 1949
- Wood I F Jr Ferguson D H and Lawrence I Cation exchange resins as an adjunct in treatment of heart failure *J A M A* 158 870 1952
- Zwillinger J Über die Magennwirkung auf das Herz *Klin Wchnschr* 14 1420 1935



# Index

- Abortion 676 677  
 Abscess 750 417  
 Abdominal aorta *see* Aorta  
 Absolute dullness 51  
 Accidental murmurs *see* Murmurs  
 Accretio cordis 324 *see also* I ricarditis  
     adhesive  
 Acetazole amide 715  
 Acetonuria 400 442  
 Acetphenetidin 305 456  
 Acetyl beta methyl choline 574 580 664  
     *see also* Methyl  
     digitoxin 757  
     salicylic acid 704  
     atrophantine 760  
 Acrocyanosis 502 677 707  
 Acromegaly 504  
 Atherosclerosis 699 701  
 ACTH *see* Steroids  
 Actinomyces 167  
 Actomyosin 739  
 Acute mediastino cardiac reaction 301  
 Acyanotic lesions 75  
 Addison's disease 34 764 804 873 709 711  
 Adenosine triphosphate 664 691 739  
 Adhesive pericarditis *see* Pericarditis  
     adhesive  
 Adnexitis 253  
 Aionis vermalis 760  
 Adrenalin *see* Epinephrine  
 Adrenals *see* *individual diseases*  
     irradiation of 458  
 Adrenergic fibers *see* Autonomic system  
 Aerosols 509 514  
 Age 98 112 130 14 140 193 305 306 394  
     blood pressure and 518  
     cholesterol 770  
     coronary sclerosis 273  
     mitral stenosis 134  
     subacute bacterial endocarditis 159  
 Aglucone 13  
 Agranulocytosis 14  
 Air embolism 94  
 Air travel 443 30  
 Albuminuria 86 134 167 57 61, 626  
     679 *see also* *individual diseases*  
     coronary thrombosis and 400  
 Alcohol 8 115 261 457 618 690 694  
     peripheral vascular diseases and 68,  
     spor 781  
 Aklolase 409  
 Aldosterone 764 505 521  
 Allergy 114 719 680 717 747 *see also*  
     *infectious diseases and drugs*  
     myocarditis 756 257  
     periarteritis nodosa 70,  
     rheumatic fever 131  
     thromboangitis obliterans 681  
 Allixan 773  
 Alpha lipoproteins 211  
 Amaurosis 87 432 592 697 706 714  
     pulseless disease and 705  
 Aminophylline 402  
 Amidopyrine 144 145 672 76,  
 Ammophylline 14 15 91 438 440 454  
     455 509 582 696 691 602 765 778  
     779 782  
 Amniotic naga 456  
 Amebiasis 300  
 Ammonium 775  
     chloride 196 316 772 774 776  
     mercury diuretics and 329  
 Amyl nitrites *see* Nitrites  
 Amyloidosis 768 326  
 Anarchie intracutane 760  
 Androgens 503 504  
 Anemia 55 61 65 75 87 135 136 147  
     175 186 753 758 259 279 359 390  
     391 497 625 *see also* *individual*  
     *diseases*  
     angina pectoris and 467 464  
     diuretics 770  
     murmurs and 271  
     split sounds and 719  
     subacute bacterial endocarditis 161 160  
     184  
 Anethesia 97 *see also* Surgery

- Aneurysm 598-614 *see also individual vessels*  
 abdominal aorta 604  
 acquired 370 591  
 aortic 594 693 726 *see also Aorta*  
 aortic sinus 359  
 arteriovenous 370  
 cardiac 418-420  
 circle of Willis 366  
 congenital 259 30 598 605 606  
 coronary 322 385 605  
 course 602  
 differential diagnosis 602  
 dissecting *see* Dissection of aorta  
 etiology 599  
 hemopericardium 322  
 innominate 603  
 leaflet 155  
 left atrial 68 225  
 mycotic 159 163 385 605 695  
 peripheral arteries 605  
 pulmonary artery 603  
 signs of 601  
 sinus of Valsalva 185 599  
 symptoms 600  
 therapy 598  
 thoracic 598
- Angitis obliterans 706
- Anginal pain 15 77 97 507 50 351 359  
 343 443-459 467 513 514 600 622  
 anemia and 467 504 548 591 645 658  
 aortic regurgitation and 174 184  
 aortic stenosis 188 192 193  
 causes 391  
 coronary sclerosis 276 390  
 decubital 454  
 exertional 433 443-459  
 hemorrhage and 431  
 hypertensive crises 462  
 hyperthyroidism 467  
 hypothyroidism 469  
 mitral stenosis 197  
 myocarditis 250 255  
 non occlusive 343  
 ovarian malfunction and 435  
 paroxysmal tachycardia 432 465  
 pulmonary embolism 100 105 470  
 syphilitic aortitis 592  
 thyroidectomy 52
- Angina pectoris *see* Anginal pain
- Angiocardiography 17 346 348 366 590  
 Ball thrombus 514 congenital cardiac  
 vascular defects 337 338
- Angiocardiography — *Cont'd*  
 Fabry's disease 357  
 Eisenmenger's syndrome 354  
 Fallot's tetralogy 355  
 mitral stenosis 211  
 patent ductus arteriosus 359  
 patent ventricular septum 350  
 pericardial effusion 314  
 pulmonary stenosis 352  
 tricuspid atresia 356
- Angiocardiography 679 *see also individual lesions*
- Angiotonin 527
- Annulus fibrosus 173
- Anomalous pulmonary vein 346
- Anorexia 156 159 167 257 258
- Anoxemia test 448
- Anoxia 339
- Ansolvain *see* Pentolinium
- Antiarth 760
- Anticoagulants 103 113-118 43 513  
 691 692  
 congestive heart failure 89
- Antidiuretic hormone 83
- Antistreptolysin titer 131 138
- Anuria 413 609 746
- Anxiety 100 105 107 445 525 571 614  
 621 654  
 neurosis *see* Cardiac neurosis
- Aorta  
 abdominal aneurysm 604  
 ascending 52 175 181 186  
 coarctation 528 579  
 descending 57  
 mycotic aneurysm 159  
 occlusion 366  
 riding embolus 67  
 thoracic aneurysm 101 215
- Aortalgia 586
- Aortic arch  
 aneurysm 101 340  
 anomalies of 215 341 366-367  
 atheroma 615-617  
 double 367  
 right 341 354 359 367
- Aortic coarctation *see* Coarctation
- Aortic configuration 53 175 541 471
- Aortic dissection *see* Dissection of aorta
- Aortic insufficiency *see* Aortic  
 regurgitation
- Aortic knob 52 180 185 227 345 347 513
- Aortic pulmonary septal defect 357

- Aortic regurgitation** 10 54 61 65 66 67  
92 172-186 19\_ 199 204 208 236  
594 597 594 606 611  
auscultation 180  
blood pressure in 177  
complications 184  
diastolic blood pressure 177  
differential diagnosis 184  
etiology 172  
Elliott's phenomenon 177  
hypertension 173  
percussion in 178  
peripheral signs 177  
relative 173 61 3 1  
rupture 366  
signs 174  
surgery 180 217  
symptoms 173  
traumatic 181
- Aortic second sound** see in *Intestinal lesions*
- Aortic stenosis** 36 43 44 59 66 70 144  
182 186-194 199 390 521 530  
angina pectoris 188 19\_ 193  
auscultatory gap 198  
basal metabolism 5 59\_  
button hole 188  
cardiac hypertrophy 36 67  
congenital 186 190 351-358  
differential diagnosis 19\_  
dysphagia 215  
etiology 186  
incidence 186  
mechanism 187  
prognosis 193  
relative 182  
signs 186 188  
surgery 193 217  
symptoms 187
- Aortic valve** 391 see also Aortic regurgitation and Aortic stenosis  
angina pectoris 462  
bicuspid 167  
pregnancy 65  
subacute bacterial endocarditis 154  
trauma 489
- Aorta** 157 159 162 173 175 183 19  
193 386 45 59\_- 537 61\_  
complications 590  
congenital syphilis 59  
course 59\_  
differential diagnosis 593  
incidence 591
- Aortitis - Central**  
prognosis 592  
signs 597  
symptoms 596  
treatment 594
- Aortography** 338 366
- Aphonia** 610
- Vocal impulse** = 43 44 51 see also in *Intestinal lesions*  
aortic regurgitation 178  
aortic stenosis 184 189 203  
mitral regurgitation 221  
mitral stenosis 198  
pericardial adhesions 327  
pericardial effusion 310  
pneumopericardium 323
- Apomorphine** 664
- Appendicitis** 97 101 116 131 135 141  
159 309 709
- Apr-soline** 547-549
- Arachnodactyly** 339
- Arborization block** 87
- Argentaffinoma** 237
- Arrhenoblastoma** 524
- Arrhythmias** see also in *Intestinal types*  
aortic stenosis 192  
cardiac trauma 469  
congenital heart disease 34 350  
coronary thrombosis 410  
digitals 745  
electrolyte imbalance 263  
pheochromocytoma 522
- Artic** 141
- Anphenamine** see Salvarsan
- Arterial embolism** 697-699  
etiology 692  
pathologic physiology 693  
prognosis 694  
signs 693  
symptoms 693  
treatment 694
- Arterial thrombosis** 69
- Arteriography** 371
- Arteriosclerosis** 263
- Arterioluminal vessels** 336
- Arteriosclerosis** 78 87 147 149ff & 4  
pulse 176 177
- Arteriovenous fistula** 346
- Arterovenous anastomosis** 14  
aneurysms 370  
fistula 36 65 157 168 163 166 168
- Arthralgia** 4 11 159 167 219 280

- Arthritis 101 131 13a  
   gonococcic 141  
 Aschoff body 132 142 158 167 249 721  
 Ascites a 34 77 111 94 329 763  
   tricuspid regurgitation 231  
 Asiatic cholera 300  
 Asphyxia 358  
 Asthma 602 780-783  
   bronchial 12 13 14 92 100 109 111 792  
 Atelectasis 74 97 134  
 Atheroma aortic 52a 615-617 684  
 Atheromatosis 157 172 17a 186 189 193  
   3a6 339 370-373 *see also individual vessels*  
   congenital cardiovascular defect 341  
   lesser circuit 372  
   mitral regurgitation 221  
   pathology 269  
 Atherosclerosis *see* Atheromatosis  
 Atherosclerosis peripheral arteries 583  
   686-692  
   course 690  
   incidence 686  
   pathology 689  
   signs 689  
   symptoms 689  
   treatment 690-692  
 Athletes 33  
 Atrial enlargement  
   left 16 32 32 68 10a 224 22a  
   right 39 51 84  
 Atrial extrasystoles *see* Extrasystoles  
 Atrial fibrillation, 16 6a 71 79 136 143  
   16 24 3a 319 377 643-650 69  
   696 74 74  
   aortic regurgitation 184  
   atrial septal defect 347  
   ball thrombus 214  
   coronary thrombosis 412 413 4a1 4fJ  
   489 49j  
   differential diagnosis 64a  
   digitalis, 745  
   dynamics 644  
   duration 647  
   electrocardiogram 644  
   embolism 644  
   gall p rhythm 24f  
   incidence 644  
   injury 12f  
   mechanism 646  
   mesenteric occlusion 646  
   mitral stenosis 206 212 213  
 Atrial fibrillation - *Cont'd*  
   paroxysmal 6a5  
   pregnancy 62a  
   pulmonary embolism 103  
   signs 645  
   surgery 218  
   treatment 649-650  
   venous pulse 229  
 Atrial flutter 650-65 746  
   anginal pain 412  
   coronary thrombosis 413  
   mechanism 6a0  
   paroxysmal 65a  
   therapy 653  
 Atrial pressure right 337  
 Atrial puncture  
   transbronchial 338  
   transthoracic 334  
 Atrial septal defect *see* Septal defects  
 Atrial tachycardia paroxysmal 65off  
   etiology 6a6  
   mechanism 6a5  
 Atriocleptopsy 347  
 Atrioventricular block 212 2a3 240 59a  
   complete 260  
   partial 258  
 Atrioventricular canal 343 346  
 Atropine 119 445 518 570 582 664 718  
   782  
   coronary blood flow 359  
 Aureomycin 165  
 Auricular *see* Atrial  
 Auscultation 54-61 232 39a 494 544  
   *see also individual diseases*  
 Auscultatory gap 319  
 Austin Flint murmur *see* Murmurs  
 Autonomic system 337  
 A V rhythm 264  
 Avitaminosis 43 137 26a *see also individual diseases and vitamins*  
 a waves 229 234  
 Axillary vein thrombosis 7a  
 Ayerza Arrillaga syndrome 77  
 Azapetine 697  
 Azotemia 87 102 16a 714 701  
 Azigos vein 8 216 314 701  
 Bacillary dysentery 300  
 Bacitracin 164  
 Backward fall 74

- Bacterial endocarditis 155—174 184 194  
     644 650  
     acute 155 156  
     subacute *see* Subacute bacterial endocarditis
- Bainbridge reflex 66
- Ballistocardiogram 366 449
- Ball thrombus 14 332 571 702  
     gangrene 84
- Barbiturates 393 523 581 611 633
- Barium chloride 579
- Basal metabolic rate 5 78 111 522 675
- Baumgartner's syndrome 727
- Bed rest 440 452 694 721 723
- Belladonna 119
- Bellergal 119
- Benedryl 673
- Benemid 165
- Benign pericarditis *see* Pericarditis
- Benzathine penicillin G 149
- Benzodioxane test 523 672
- Beriberi 43 65 92 175 176 200 261 *see also* Thiamine
- Bernheim's syndrome 70
- Beta lipoproteins 271
- Bicillin 149
- Bicuspid aortic valve 157 349 361 365
- Bigeminal rhythm 286 635 750 754  
     pulse *see* Pulse
- Bilirubin 80 101
- Biot breathing 27
- Bismuth 595
- Blalock Taussig operation 356
- Blindness *see* Amaurosis
- Blood cultures 161
- Blood pressure 189 302 371 387 399  
     494 517—519 589 *see also* Hyper and Hypotension  
     aortic regurgitation 177 399  
     coronary thrombosis 399  
     measurement 518  
     mitral stenosis 198  
     normal 517  
     pericardial adhesions 393  
     peripheral vascular diseases 616  
     pregnancy and 629  
     pulmonary 510
- Blood volume 69 625  
     cardiac size 34
- Boeck's sarcoid *see* Sarcoidosis
- Boric acid 684 691
- Brachial neuralgia 42
- Bradycardia 22 110 126 305 327 572 630  
     athletes 34 389  
     aortic stenosis 192  
     coronary sclerosis 282  
     coronary thrombosis 412  
     decompensation 66  
     digitalis 148  
     heart size 32  
     murmurs 181  
     pheochromocytoma 522  
     pregnancy 630
- Brain abscess 163
- Brain tumor 526
- Branchial arteries *see* Gill arteries
- Broadbent sign 327
- Brock operation 356
- Bromides 619
- Branchial asthma *see* Asthma
- Bronchiectasis 348
- Bronchitis 15 514 601
- Bronchogenic carcinoma 97 104 371 373  
     332 346 503 612
- Broncho spasm 14 100
- Brown atrophy 259
- Brucellosis 165 167
- Bruit *see* Murmurs  
     du pot fele 393
- Buerger's disease *see* thromboangiitis obliterans
- Bundle branch block 59 104 159 260 280  
     346 357 402 408 423 509 578
- Bunion 694
- Butazolidine *see* Phenylbutazone
- Button hole stenosis *see* individual valves
- Cachectic endocarditis 166
- Caesarian section 628
- Caffeine 401 438 757 84  
     Cheyne Stokes respiration 778  
     diuretics 764  
     extrasystoles 639  
     sodium benzoate 579 582
- Calcified annulus 189
- Calcified myocardium 189
- Calcified pericardium 189
- Calcified valves 189 204
- Calium 582 673 770 *see also* Hyper and Hypocalcemia  
     gluconate 91 773
- Camphor 785
- Capillary microscope 176 619  
     pulse 176 26 467



- Caprylic alcohol 781  
 Caput medusa 328 727  
 Carbon dioxide 570  
   narcosis 510  
   pulmonary stasis and 4  
   tension 12  
 Carbonic anhydrase 776  
 Carbon monoxide 394 390 395 459  
 Carbo Resin 776  
 Carcinoid 233 237-8  
 Carcinoma 259  
   metastatic 17  
   phlebitis and 725  
 Cardiac aneurysm 185 300 491  
 Cardiac arrest *see* Ventricular standstill  
 Cardiac arrhythmia *see* Cardiac rhythm  
 Cardiac asthma 7-15 21 92 106 281 524  
 Cardiac atrophy 259-260  
 Cardiac borders 51 52  
 Cardiac catheterization *see* Catheterization  
 Cardiac commotion 48  
 Cardiac contusion 487  
 Cardiac decortication 330  
 Cardiac dilatation 36-48 136 262  
 Cardiac dullness 51  
 Cardiac enlargement 33-36  
 Cardiac failure *see* Failure  
 Cardiac hypertrophy 36-48 331  
 Cardiac massage 591 634 632  
 Cardiac measurements 5 35  
 Cardiac nerves 387  
 Cardiac neuroses 1 26 43 55 59 78 136  
   203 212 242 495 609 618-623 642  
   6 8 74  
 Cardiac output 197  
 Cardiac pain *see* Anginal pain  
 Cardiac rate 34 102 410 745  
 Cardiac reserve 63  
 Cardiac resuscitation 691 634  
 Cardiac rhythm disturbances of 126 263  
   410 635 *see also individual types*  
   atrial fibrillation 582  
   atrial flutter 650-654  
   extrasystoles 635-643  
   paroxysmal tachycardia B 4  
   sinus tachycardia 654  
 Cardiac rotation 3-9  
 Cardiac rupture 433  
 Cardiac size 33-36  
 Cardiac stimulants "94-"85  
 Cardiac surgery *see* Surgery  
 Cardiac tamponade 319 416 609 74  
 Cardiac tonus 35  
 Cardiac trauma 402 487-492  
   coronary thrombosis and 490  
   etiology 487  
   pathology 487  
   signs 487  
   symptoms 488  
   therapy 491  
 Cardiac weight 33  
 Cardiazol 785  
 Cardiohepatic angle 311  
 Cardiolytic 330  
 Cardioomentopexy 459  
 Cardiopexicardiopexy 459  
 Cardiopulmonic rates 46 461  
 Cardiopulmonic ratio 46  
 Cardiothoracic ratio 35  
 Cardiovascular disturbances *see individual types*  
 Caronamide 165  
 Carotid artery 372 572 593  
   pressure 218  
   pulse 218  
   reflexes *see* Reflexes  
 Carotid artery internal  
   narrowing 632  
   thrombosis 692  
 Cataract 340 706  
 Cathcholamines 400 523  
 Catheterization  
   aortic stenosis 193  
   atrial septal defect 346  
   coarctation 366  
   cong cardiovascular defects 337  
   constrictive pericarditis 376  
   Ebstein's disease 357  
   Fallot tetralogy 355  
   mitral regurgitation 250  
   mitral stenosis 229  
   patent ductus arteriosus 359  
   pulmonary stenosis 350  
   tricuspid atresia 356  
   tricuspid stenosis 234  
 Causalgia 704-705  
 Cavatus aneurysm 370  
 Cebrian 634 680 739 748 763  
 Cerebral abscess 341 355  
 Cerebral arteriosclerosis 616 64  
 Cerebral crisis 464  
 Cerebral edema 78  
 Cerebral embolism 418 433 436  
 Cerebral hemorrhage 91 306

- Cerebral thrombosis 416  
 Cervical ribs 697 701  
 Chagas disease 253 418  
 Chest pain *see* Pain  
 Chest pulsations 231 687  
 Cheyne Stokes respiration 7 10 20 27 28  
     8 197 198 231 576 *see also* individual  
     diseases  
     treatment 778-780  
 Chiari syndrome 72  
 Chills 107 112 136 227 318  
 Chloral hydrate 504 619 622 780  
 Chloroform 216 260  
 Chloroacetin 160  
 Chlorpromazine 548  
 Chlorotetracycline 305  
 Cholecystitis 97 101 106 253 384 428  
     429 408  
 Cholelithiasis 127 132 428 499  
 Cholesterol 172 269  
     pericarditis 331  
     phospholipid ratio 210-271  
 Choline 277 452 664 686  
 Cholepericardium 3 2  
 Chorea 147 148 14 104  
 Chylopericardium 322  
 Cincophen 145  
 Cirrhosis 60 78  
     cardiac 231 232 233  
     portal 776  
 Circulation time 14 91-93 339  
 Cirsoil aneurysm 370  
 Cleft palate 339 340  
 Cicks 56 ■ 8 512  
 Climaacterium 186 190 499 524 529 626  
     angina pectoris in 437  
     diagnosis 502  
     edema 500  
     heart disease 503  
     in disease 498  
     male 504  
     pathogenesis 502  
     signs 499  
     symptoms 500  
     treatment 503  
 Climate 13 148 790  
 Cloudy swelling 260  
 Clubbings 71 160 234 398 738 354 35  
     3 3 513  
 Coagulation time 114 401 749  
 Coarctation of aorta 158 104 338 341  
     361-366 608 629 673  
 Cecal infections 249 253 *see also* individual  
     types  
 Codeine 147 305  
 Coeur en sabot 346 355  
 Coffee *see* Caffeine  
 Cold agglutinins 699  
 Cold cyanosis 76  
 Cold extremities 76  
 Coldness 673  
 Cold pressor test 690  
 Colitis 253 770  
 Collateral circulation  
     coronary arteries 388  
     peripheral circulation 675 ff  
 Colonic distension 428  
 Color changes 234  
 Coma 80 102 187 355 373 418 673 605  
 Combined valvular lesions 237  
 Combustion 160  
 Commisurotomy 217  
 Compensation 63  
     hypertrophy 61  
     increased rate 66  
     mechanisms 65  
 Complexion 174 187  
 Concato disease 317  
 Concretio cordis 324  
 Conduction disturbances of 666-687 *see*  
     *also* individual types  
 Congenital cardiovascular defects 76 81 92  
     157 190 235 337-382 629  
     abnormal aortic arch 366-368  
     cyanotic 339 337-382  
     angiocardiography 337-338  
     aortic tendons 357  
     arteriovenous fistula 370-374  
     atrial septal defects 342  
     cardiac catheterization 337-338  
     coarctation of aorta 361-366  
     cyanotic types 339 340 355  
     diagnostic features 338-340  
     Ebstein's disease 357  
     endocardial fibroelastosis 373  
     etiology 340-341  
     general remarks 337  
     patent ductus arteriosus 357-360  
     patent interventricular septum 348  
     pulmonary stenosis 377  
     tetralogy of Fallot 354  
     transposition of great vessels 369

- Congenital cardiovascular defects — *Cont'd*  
 tricuspid atresia 356
- Congestive cirrhosis *see* Cirrhosis and individual lesions
- pulmonary regurgitation 235
- tricuspid regurgitation 228
- tricuspid stenosis 233
- Congestive heart failure *see* individual lesions
- hydropericardium 321
- hypertension 174 525
- Congo red 91
- Constipation 275 497 604 609 639 642
- Constrictive pericarditis *see* Pericarditis
- Convallaria majalis 760
- Convulsions 24 80 134 187 188 280 355  
 553 570 571 574 609
- ball thrombus 215
- Coramine 778 785
- Cor bovinum 281
- aortic regurgitation 179
- hypertension 535
- Cor hirsutum 301
- Corn oil 272
- Coronary artery
- abnormal 385
- anatomy 384—385
- blood flow 127
- Coronary circulation 384—388
- adaptation 388
- anastomosis 386
- anatomy 384—385
- aneurysm 385
- blood flow 127 387
- cardiac nerves 387
- insufficiency 384 459—461
- ischemia 390
- systole 388
- Coronary disease *see* individual lesions
- Coronary failure 384 459
- Coronary occlusion *see* Coronary thrombosis and Myocardial infarction
- Coronary perforation 392
- Coronary sclerosis 21 22 41 67 212  
 269—278 322 424 443 577 578 586  
 622 628 632 644 645 737 744
- age 274
- atherosclerosis 269
- digitalis 747
- eating habits 274
- etiology 270
- Coronary sclerosis — *Cont'd*
- extrasystoles 639
- fibrillation 644
- heart block 667
- hypercholesterolemia 271
- hypertension 539
- incidence 275
- introduction 269
- myocardium 248
- pathology 269
- rheumatic fever 134
- race 274
- signs 276
- strophanthin 762
- symptoms 276
- surgery 632
- therapy 277
- Coronary stenosis 174 179 180 383 390  
 395 443 459 469 491
- clinical course 450
- differential diagnosis 449
- prognosis 450
- signs 445
- therapy 457
- Coronary sinus vein 348 386 775
- Coronary thrombosis 632 642 681 690  
 747 *see also* Myocardial infarction
- Cor pulmonale 24 39 65 100 190 508—516  
 608 624 644 776
- acute 107
- atherosclerosis 273
- differential diagnosis 513
- incidence 508
- pathology 508
- physiology 504
- signs 512
- subacute 103 115
- symptoms 511
- treatment 513
- Corrigan pulse 176 230 262 611
- Cortisone *see* Steroids
- Cor trioculare batriatum 349
- Cor trioculare biventriculare 345
- Cor villosum 301
- Costoclavicular syndrome 701
- Cotton seed oil 272
- Cough 8 20 77 81 109 300 307 344 600  
 631
- Coumadin *see* Warfarin
- Cracked pot sound 373
- C-reactive protein 134 400
- Crying, cyanosis 74

- Cryoglobulinemia 699  
 Cushing syndrome 146 504 593  
 Cyanosis 71 75 76 80 99 106 300 304  
     354 356 357 358 361 385 508 513  
     601 604 694 698 795 *see also* *individual lesions*  
     atrial septal defect 347  
     ball thrombus 214  
     mitral stenosis 194  
     patent interventricular septum 349  
     pericardial effusion 309  
     peripheral vascular disease 674  
     pulmonary embolism 107 106  
     Raynaud syndrome 698  
     superior vena caval syndrome 745  
     tardive 344  
     tricuspid regurgitation 432  
     tricuspid stenosis 234  
 Cyclopropane 633 639  
 Cystic necrosis *see* Dissection of aorta  
 Cytellin 278
- Da Costa syndrome 619  
 D A H 619  
 Dakin's solution 684  
 Danilone *see* Phenylhydandine  
 Dead fingers 697  
 Deafness 144 145  
 Deamination 527  
 Death sudden 433 451 488  
 Decompensation 63  
     minus 69  
     plus 68  
 Decubital angina *see* Anginal pain  
 De epicardialization 459  
 Dehydration 4 438 771  
 Dehydrogenase 404  
 Delirium 140 301 05  
 Demerol 196 355 428 434 514  
 Depressor crises 464  
 Depropanex 687 691  
 Dermatomyositis 256 699  
 Dermography 57  
 Desoxycorticosterone 264 505 524 531  
 Dextran 437 450  
 Dextrocardia 340  
 Dextroposition 3 0  
 Dextrose 720  
 Dextroversion 370  
 Diabetes 116 264 765 301 574 524 688  
     690 710  
     coronary disease 271 394 395 401
- Diabetes — *Cont'd*  
     peripheral vascular dis *see* 688  
 Diamond shaped murmurs *see* Murmurs  
 Diamox 514 775  
 Diaphragm 604  
     hernia 331 340  
     pain 101  
     position III 52 53 626  
 Diarrhea 34 116 144 264 275 611  
 Diastolic murmur *see* Murmur  
 Dibenamine 550  
 Dibenzylene 705  
 Dicoumarol 116—116  
     coronary thrombosis 436  
 Diencephalic syndrome 527  
 Diet 147 617 629 789  
     coronary atherosclerosis 274 277  
     coronary thrombosis 442  
     Karell 789  
     salt free 543 789  
 Diethylstilbestrol 503  
 Digifolin 757  
 Digiloid 739 757 759  
 Digalen 757  
 Digifortis 757  
 Digitaline nativelle 739  
 Digitalis 78 112 147 160 196 218 287  
     316 514 580 678 633 643 648 650  
     656  
     administration 197 759  
     allies 759  
     chemistry 739  
     contraindications 747  
     coronary thrombosis 443 451  
     cumulation 740—741  
     dosage 755  
     extrasystoles 643 49ff  
     fibrillation 649 745  
     flutter 652  
     full dose 754  
     indications 745  
     initial dose 755  
     intoxication 747  
     maintenance dose 750  
     pharmacology 739  
     pregnancy 629  
     preparations 757  
     standardization 744  
     tachycardias 213  
     thrombosis 119  
     untoward effects 266  
     vagal action 740

- Ergot 712  
   gangrene 702  
 Ergotamine 119 628  
 Eruptions *see individual types*  
 Erysipelothrix 167  
 Erythema marginatum 136 142  
 Erythema multiforme 136  
 Erythralgia 704  
 Erythema nodosum 136  
 Erythralgia 704  
 Erythrol tetranitrate 454 456  
 Erythromelalgia 672 704  
 Erythromycin 149 164  
 Esidrone 767  
 Esophageal carcinoma 602  
 Esophageal stricture 700  
 Essential hematuria 710  
 Essential hypertension 520 529-567 629  
   *see also* Hypertension  
   pulmonary 500  
 Estrogens 29 82 273 277 452 502 503 680  
 Estrone 82  
 Ether 91 633  
 Ethinyl estradiol 501  
 Ethyl biscoumacetate 117  
 Ethyl chloride 633  
 Ethylene 633  
 Euphyllin *see* Aminophylline  
 Ewart sign 390  
 Exercise test 446 448  
 Exertion 33 79 690  
 Exophthalmos 601  
 Expansile pulsation  
   aortic 180  
   liver 86 231  
 Extracardiac anastomoses 386  
 Extrasystoles 22 136 203 258 264 287  
   577 618 696 673 636-643  
   atrial 196  
   cardiodynamics 636  
   coronary thrombosis 410 411 412 433 439  
   definition 635  
   differential diagnosis 639  
   digitalis 741 749  
   electrocardiogram 63  
   mechanism 640  
   occurrence 639  
   origin 635  
   significance 640  
   signs 638  
   symptoms 637  
   treatment 641  
 Eye signs 311  
 Factor P 673  
 Failure 264 673 733 744  
   backward 64  
   energetic dynamic 71  
   forward 64  
   left ventricular 68 262 434  
   right ventricular 68 262  
 Fainting 187 192 373 569 571-584 640  
   706 *see also* Syncope  
   carotid sinus syndrome 573  
   cor pulmonale 511  
   pulmonary disease 706  
   vaso-vagal syncope 572  
 Fallot syndrome 41 338 339 351 354-356  
   364 369  
 Familial hypercholesterolemia 211  
 Familial teleangiectasia 372  
 Fatigue 78 82 130 351 358 522 533 610  
   673 749  
   coronary sclerosis 135  
   mitral stenosis 197  
 Fat embolism 98  
 Fat infiltration 261  
 Fat pad 54 421  
 Fatty degeneration 261  
 Female heart 63  
 Femoral vein 111  
   ligation 113 724  
 Fever 9 55 72 92 142 143 147 156 167  
   203 214 219 222 257 258 301 300  
   307 318 401 495 588 600 692 694  
   709 722 755 770 *see also individual*  
   *diseases*  
   coronary thrombosis 399  
   parietalitis nodosa 709  
   pericardial effusion 309  
   pulmonary embolism 102 106  
   rheumatic 135-149  
   subacute bacterial endocarditis 160 161  
   syphilitic aortitis 588  
   thromboangitis obliterans 684  
   thrombophlebitis 722  
 Fibrinous pericarditis 299  
   electrocardiogram 307  
   etiology 200  
   introduction 299  
   prognosis 304  
   signs 302  
   special forms 304  
   symptoms 301  
 Filiformyoma 332  
 Fibrositis 450  
 Fick principle 337 338

- Medler's myocarditis 256 264  
 Filaria 304  
 First heart sound 54 183 203 212 270  
     344 536 690  
 Flat foot 84 111  
 Fluorescein 91 679  
 Fluorocardiogram 275  
 Flushes 499  
 Flutter *see* Atrial and Ventricular flutter  
 Focal infection 253 738  
 Foramen interventriculare 349  
 Foramen ovale 353 354 513 603  
     primum 342  
     secundum 349  
 Forward failure 64 65  
 Fourth heart sound 56  
 Fractures 99  
 Friction rub  
     coronary occlusion 394  
     pericardial 60 301 302 310 323  
     uremic pericarditis 396  
 Friedrich's ataxia 264 265  
 Fro bite 746  
 Functional murmurs *see* Murmurs  
 Fundus hypertension 536—538  
 Fungus infection 724  
 Funnel chest 339 509  
  
 Gallop rhythm 56 59 60 183 276 227  
     504 269 357 412 441 449 536 541  
     610 639 772  
     clinical aspects 284  
     coronary occlusion 398  
     coronary sclerosis 293  
     differential diagnosis 286  
     frequency 285  
     hypertension 536  
     importance 286  
     pericardial adhesions 328  
     presystolic 293  
     protodiastolic 282  
     pulmonary embolism 103 104  
     rheumatic fever 134  
     summation 283  
     systolic 283 284  
     angionectionomy 709  
 Gangrene 371 690 694 698 *see also*  
     individual diseases  
     ball thrombus 215  
     symmetrical 106  
     types 707  
     upper extremities 694—700  
 Gangrenous pericarditis 390  
 Gargism 149  
 Gastritis 429  
 Gerhardt ribbon dullness 359  
 German measles 340  
 Gibbon's murmur 359  
 Gilt arteries 366  
 Gitalin 739 708  
 Gistoxin 739  
 Glioma tumor 714—716  
 Glossopharyngeal neuralgia 126 581  
 Glucose solutions 16 264 782 *see also*  
     Hypertonic glucose solution  
 Glycogen storage diseases 780  
     von Gierke's disease 280  
 Glycosuria 146 522  
     coronary thrombosis 400 401  
 Goldblatt mechanism 527  
 Gonococci 155 249  
 Gonococcal pericarditis 318  
 Gout 771  
 Graham Steell murmur 235 512  
 Growing pains 135  
 Cystrophanthin 760  
  
 Hallucinations 78  
 Hamman Rich disease 509  
 Hand Christian Schuller disease 272  
 Hare lip 340  
 Headache 77 82 157 163 373 522 528  
     706 714 796  
     hypertension 533 539  
     pheochromocytoma 572  
 Heart *see* Cardiac  
 Heart block 56 139 259 332 571, 578  
     666—667  
     congenital 350  
     coronary thrombosis 412 413  
     digitalis 748  
     intraventricular 262  
     murmurs 182  
     rate 54  
     sounds 54 59 183 *see also* individual  
     cases  
 Heart failure cells 79  
 Hedulin *see* Phenylindanedione  
 Helleborus 460  
 Hematuria 115 141 156 162  
 Hemoc murmurs *see* Murmurs  
 Hemiplegia 159 259 322 377 604 609 692  
     coronary thrombosis 418  
 Hemoglobinuria 62

- Hemopericardium 115 321-322 436  
 Hemoptysis 19 77 341 373 509 601 638  
     coronary thrombosis 106 418  
     mitral stenosis 214  
     pulmonary embolism 101 106  
     tuberculous pericarditis 307  
 Hemorrhage 82 165  
     anginal pain 388 391  
 Hemosiderosis 72  
 Heparin 113-114 278 436 452 694  
 Heparinoids 118  
 Hepatic enlargement 39 65 69 77 78 79  
     80 94 106 223 234 304 308 326 343  
     468 495 513 645 658 769  
 Hepatic pulse 231 234  
 Hepatic veins 51 309 326  
 Hepatitis 254 278 686  
 Hepato jugular reflux 93  
 Heredity 530 621 *see also individual diseases*  
 Hering Breuer reflex *see* Reflexes  
 Heroin addiction 159  
 Herpes zoster 427 601  
 Hexamethonium 550-552 703 704 787  
 Hiatus esophageal 102  
 Hiatus hernia 430  
 Hiccough 103 601  
 High output failure 63  
 Hilar dance 203 345 349  
     pulsation 236  
 Hill's phenomenon 177  
 Hirsutism 147 223  
 Histamine 15 91 630 647 702  
     phenchromocytoma 523 527  
 Hoarseness 311  
 Hodgkin's disease 300 346 411  
 Hormones *see* *individual glands*  
 Horner's syndrome 601  
 Hufnagel button 186 349  
 Hunger atrophy 260  
 Hydralazine *see* Apressoline  
 Hydrocortisone 147  
 Hydropic degeneration 26  
 Hydropic pericardium 321  
 Hydropericardium 370  
 Hydrothorax 22 81 84-85 103 49 763  
 Hyp abduction syndrome 704  
 Hypertapnia 401 509  
 Hyperchlremic azotemia 77  
 Hypercholesterolemia 271 288 414  
 Hyperglycemia 141  
     coronary thrombosis 400 401 523  
     hypertensive crises 464  
 Hyperkalemia 265 266 545  
 Hypermotility 262  
 Hypernatremia 521  
 Hyperparathyroidism 503  
 Hypersensitivity *see* allergy  
 Hypertension 8 13 21 22 36 43 44 46  
     54 60 70 72 114 115 146 173 179  
     187 200 276 306 416 450 517-567  
     600 605 608 629 *see also individual diseases*  
     adrenals 521  
     aortitis 593  
     atherosclerosis 525  
     auscultatory gap 519  
     ball thrombus 216  
     blood pressure 518  
     cardiovascular disease 524  
     climacteric 500 503 531  
     cold pressor test 520  
     congestive heart failure 525  
     coronary disease 273 301  
     course 535  
     definition 517 529  
     diencephalic syndrome 527  
     digitalis 746  
     dyspnea 7  
     endocrine disturbances 521  
     etiology 531  
     friction rub 302  
     hypoovarianism 167 571  
     incidence 527 529  
     laget's disease 268  
     paroxysmal 174  
     periarthritis nodosa 710  
     pheochromocytoma 521  
     prognosis 541  
     pulse 176  
     renal disease 527  
     significance 517  
     signs 522 533  
     symptoms 522 533  
     types 570  
 Hypertensive crises 432 462 579  
     anginal pain 131  
 Hyperthyroidism 5 17 24 43 55 56 59  
     60 65 67 92 115 176 177 200 203  
     252 247 402-406 57 622 641 644  
     721 739 745 755  
     atrial fibrillation 644  
     anginal pain 469 786  
     blood pressure 177  
     extra systoles 499

- Hyperthyroidism — *Contd*  
   murmurs 160 222 49,  
   palpitation 196 494  
   pulse 146 1  
   split sound 312  
 Hypertonic glucose solution 78  
 Hypertrophic pulmonary osteoarthropathy 339 373  
 Hypertrophy *see* *infectious diseases*  
   cardiac lesions 40  
   concentric 42 67  
   eccentric 64  
   left ventricle 42  
   right ventricle 47  
 Hyperventilation 20 20 621 775 783  
 Hyphex therapy 503  
 Hypocalcemia 265  
 Hypocapnia 4 6 11 20 783  
 Hypochloremic alkalosis 71  
 Hypoglycemia 60 447  
 Hypohalemia 264 266 71  
 Hyponatremia 344  
 Hypovarianism 29 221 *see also* Climacterium  
 Hypoparathyroidism 503  
 Hypopotasemia *see* Hypokalemia  
 Hypostatic congestion 78  
 Hypoprotebinemia 115 144 730  
 Hypotension 110 4 6 371 417 572  
   constitutional 568  
   orthostatic 569  
   symptomatic 102 568  
 Hypothyroidism 78 92 496—498  
   myocardial degeneration 766  
 Hysteria 578  
 Ictus laryngeus 511  
 Idiopathic cardiac hypertrophy 281 312  
 Idiopathic hyperlipemia 70  
 Idiopathic myocarditis 708  
 Iliofemoral thrombosis 740  
 Ileus 97 101 106 110 170  
 Illiter *see* Azupetin  
 Immersion foot 716  
 Infectious mononucleosis 340  
 Inferior vena cava *see* Vena cava  
 Inflovestasis 16 316  
 Infraction  
   left ventricle 40 190 201  
   right ventricle 41 61  
 Influenza 141 10 157 16 54  
 Infraepithelial grafting 327  
 Infundibular pulmonary tenosis *see* Pulmonary stenosis  
 Innominate artery 176  
   aneurysm 603  
 Innominate vein 52 230  
 Inositol 277 4,  
 Insomnia 24 500 618  
 Infection *see* *infectious diseases*  
   peripheral vascular disease 54  
 Insulin 280 447 82  
 Intercoastal neuralgia 427 451  
 Interference dissociation 615  
 Interlobar effusion 85  
 Intermediate syndrome 460  
 Intermittent claudication 191 362 383 390  
   673 682 699  
 Interstitial myocarditis *see* Myocarditis  
 Interventricular septum *see* Septum  
 Intratrial thrombi 111  
 Intrapulmonary reflexes *see* Reflexes  
 Intestinal lesion 772  
 Inversine HCl 663  
 Iodides 495 61,  
 Iodine 545 590 64  
 Ion exchange resins *see* Resins  
 Iontophoresis 687 690 21  
 Irridocyclitis 279  
 Ischemic neuritis 64  
 Isopropylatereanol *see* Isuprel  
 Isthmus stenosis *see* Constriction of aorta  
 Isuprel 437 440 510 664  
 Janeway lesion 161  
 Jarisch Bezold reflex *see* Reflex  
 Jaundice 80 10 147 714 290 418 420  
 Joints 103 120  
 Jugular vein 91 216 309 326  
   pulmonary *see* Pulmonary hypertension  
   pulso 230  
   thrombosis 84  
 Kashiwa diet 799  
 Kartagener syndrome 440  
 Karl y lines 4  
 Ketosteroids 400 64  
 Kikilim 456  
 Kimmelstiel Wilson syndrome 579  
 Knerchtigutinin 507  
 Krenzelbaum method 89  
 Kystocephalus 100  
 Kystic breathing 760  
 Kymography *see* Radiology  
 Kyphoscoliosis 49 53 56 57 211 310  
   731 709 704 804



- Laennec murmur 103  
 Lanatoside C *see* Cedilanid  
 Lanolin 690  
 Laryngeal epilepsy 511  
 Laryngeal nerve paralysis mitral stenosis 215  
 Lathyrus odoratus 609  
 Lecithin 270  
 Leeches 723 785  
 Left ventricular failure *see* Ventricular failure  
 Leg ulcers 638  
 Leprosy 300  
 Leriche syndrome 366  
 Leukemia 322  
 Leukocytosis 103 137 140 143 156 169 214 219 401 609 658 694 722  
 Linoleic acid 272 218  
 Lipid metabolism 270  
 Lipoma 332  
 Lipoproteins 271  
 Litten's murmur 103  
 Little infarctions 459  
 Liver abscess 322  
 Liver function tests 70  
 Liver pulse 231  
 Livido racemosa 704 709  
 Lobectomy 373  
 Lobeline 01 774  
 Loculated effusion *see* Pericardial effusion  
 Loeffler syndrome 268 712  
 Low salt syndrome 771  
 Lungs *see* Pulmonary  
 Lupus erythematosus 160 166-167 300 549  
 Lutembacher syndrome 212 347  
 Lycopodium 110  
 Lymphadenopathy 167 29  
  
 Machinery murmur *see* Murmur  
 Magnesium carbonate 14  
 Magnesium sulfate 557 554  
 Mahl's sign 102  
 Maladie d'Roger 344  
 Mal de Sais poulx 705  
 Mal climacterium *see* Climacterium  
 Malic acid dehydrogenase 402  
 Malignant exanthema *see* Bacterial endocarditis  
 Malignant hypertension 40-42  
 Mamilla left 44  
 Mania 494  
 Mannitol hexanitrate 454  
 Marcumar 117  
 Marfan method 315  
 Marfan syndrome 173 339 606  
 Massive collapse 104  
 Masson body 134  
 McDowall reflex 432  
 Measles 252  
 Mecamylamine *see* Inversine HCl  
 Mechanical factors 272  
 Mechanical gouter heart 509  
 Mecholyl *see* Acetyl beta choline  
 Mediastinal emphysema 323  
 Mediastinal tuberculous lymphadenopathy 307  
 Mediastinal tumor 30  
 Mediastino cardiac reaction 301  
 Mediastino pericarditis 374 439 *see also* Pericarditis  
 Medionecrosis aortica cystica *see* Dissection of aorta  
 Melena 609  
 Meningitis 141 143 163  
 Meningococci 153 157  
 Meningococcus pericarditis *see* Pericarditis  
 Menopause *see* Climacterium  
 Menstrual edema 82  
 Mental disturbances 78 147  
 Mental retardation 341  
 Mephenteramine 438  
 Merbaphen 767  
 Mercapto imidazole 496  
 Mercurhydri 767  
 Mercupurin 767  
 Mercurial diuretics 4 13 69 80 86 213 316 594 723 767  
     administration 774  
     contraindications 774  
     dosage 773  
     edema 9 196  
     indications 768  
     pharmacology 767  
 Mercurin 767  
 Mercury 175 770  
 Mersalyl 767  
 Mesenteric lymphadenitis 13  
 Mesenteric occlusion 114 162 416 696  
 Mesopulmonitis 137  
 Metacrien 305  
 Metallic taste 323  
 Metaphyllin *see* Aminophyllin  
 Metronidazole 79 80 27, 397 604 679 649

- Methemoglobinemia 339 775  
 Methionine 217 775  
 Methylene blue 91  
 Methyl testosterone 273  
 Metrazol 285  
 Michaelis sign 107  
 Migratory thrombophlebitis *see* Thrombophlebitis  
 Miliary tuberculosis *see* Tuberculosis  
 Milk spots 301  
 Mill murmur *see* Murmur  
 Mitral facies 197  
 Mitralization 37 73 180 200 281 329  
     309 312  
     aortic 178  
     hypertension 53  
     mitral regurgitation 221  
     pericardial effusion 311  
 Mitral regurgitation 37 40 85 137 157  
     203 270—227 268  
     catheterization 2 5  
     differential diagnosis 297  
     electrocardiography 2 5  
     etiology 2 0  
     left atrium 203  
     malformation 220  
     murmur 182  
     prognosis 2 7  
     relative 183 192 220 261  
     signs 221  
     symptoms 221  
     surgery 225 227  
     traumatic 221  
 Mitral tension 19 1 37 44 55 56 57  
     54 63 68 70 72 74 77 99 156 157 184  
     193 194—200 725 343 346 347 366  
     401 501 672 625 679 641 648 677  
     anginal pain 197 461  
     auscultation 703  
     ball thrombus 214  
     button hole 212  
     congenital 194  
     diuretics 168  
     differential diagnosis 212  
     dyspnea 2 7 10 26 72  
     etiology 194  
     fatigue 521  
     functional 137  
     gangrene 215  
     hemoptysis 101  
     intermittent claudication 613  
     murmurs 181 183 204  
 Mitral stenosis — *Contd*  
     pathology 194  
     pathophysiology 195  
     percussion 200  
     pregnancy 625  
     prognosis 216  
     pulmonary embolism 111  
     pulse 176  
     radiology 200  
     signs 197  
     surgery 146  
     symptoms 195  
 Monckeberg sclerosis 269 690  
 Mononucleosis 254  
 Morgagni Stokes Adams *see* Stokes Adams  
 Morphine 5 13 339 514 557 610 627  
     684 780 780 782 790—791  
     addiction 159  
     coronary thrombosis 396 397 401 417  
     434 443 460  
     pulmonary edema 16 196  
 Morrison test 204  
 Mucoproteins 138  
 Mueller's experiment 373  
 Mural thrombus 214 252 259 264 417 418  
 Murmurs 56 302 601 610 615  
     accidental 221  
     anemia 221  
     aortic 180 182 190—192 208 276 362  
     497 588  
     apical 137 182 208 216 280  
     Austin Flint 180 182 212  
     continuous 185 373  
     cooing 57 181  
     crescendo 204  
     decrecendo 204  
     diamond shaped 190 352  
     diastolic 137 156 180 192 199 211 219  
     359  
     Durozier 177 467  
     functional 221 227  
     grades 57 223  
     Graham Steell 190 235 344 512  
     hemic 26 222  
     hourglass 182  
     Laennec 103 222  
     Litten 103  
     machinery 359 385 700  
     mill 323  
     mitral stenosis 199 204 209 206 207 497  
     organic 2 1  
     physiologic *see* Functional

Murmurs — *Cont'd*

- presystolic 200 204
- pulmo cardiac 61
- pulmonic 103 107 137 180 211 236 344 348 349
- sea gull 173 181
- significant 221
- systolic 57 137 156 167 180 182 184 211 221 — 3 276 344 348 349 416 419 469 495 588 593 626
- to and fro 180 184 404 456 457 358 420
- tricuspid 232
- tripartite 232
- water wheel 323

## Mussel sign 177

## Mute mitral stenosis 206 207

Mycotic aortitis *see* Aortitis

## Myelitis 408

## Myeloma 699

## Myocardial calcification 389

## Myocardial degeneration 248 259—260

## Myocardial fibrosis 202 259 278 342

## Myocardial gumma 596

## Myocardial infarction 14 68 93 97 99 104 105 157 160 391—443 571 610 629

## age 394

## dicumarol 116

## factors in 394

## gallop rhythm 290

## healing 394

## hemoptysis 101

## history 391

## incidence 394

## pathology 390

## precipitating mechanism 390

## prodromal symptoms 433

## prognosis 433

## pulmonary edema 1

## signs 397

## symptoms 396

## surgery 632

## treatment 434

## Myocardial ischemia 390

## Myocardial lesion ~ 39 44 54 66 67 23, 633

## Myocardial trauma 486

## Myocarditis 274

## Myocarditis 41 141 159 249—259 276 326 402 448 644 693

## clinical picture 133 136

Myocarditis — *Cont'd*

## common varieties 249

## fetal 351

## incidence 249

## interstitial 264

## pathology 249

## post partum 256

## rheumatic 133 136

## syphilitic 586

## Myocardium diseases of 50 248—289

## signs 281

## symptoms 281

## Myogenic dilatation 41

## Myoma heart 403

## Myomalacia 173 391 693

## Myopathies 278—279

## Myositis 302 402

## Myotonia atrophica 268

Myxedema 497—498 *see also* Hypothyroidism

## complications 498

## differential diagnosis 491

## hydropicardium 391

## signs 497

## treatment 499

## Myxoma 213 215 312 503

## Nails care of 684

## Natrial 776

## Nausea 79 144 140 307 322 324 614 611

## digitalis 748

Necrotizing arteritis *see* Langerhans disease

## Neomycin 165

## Neosynephrine 457 664

## Nephritis 7 17 19 141 106 301 308 46

## 464 521 527 629 769

## hemopericardium 322

## hydrothorax 80

## hypertension 527

## mercurial diuretics 769

## myocarditis 256

## periarteritis nodosa 710

## subacute bacterial endocarditis 100 16

## Nephrosclerosis 176 301 306

## Nephrosis ~ 2 8 416 529

## Nepthal 767

## Nerium 760

## Nerve block 691

## Nervous disorder

## hypertension in 506

## rheumatic fever 174

- Neurocirculatory asthenia 26 28 71 619—  
623  
differential diagnosis 621  
etiology 621  
occurrence 619  
prognosis 621  
signs 620  
symptoms 620  
treatment 622
- Neurofibromatosis 364
- Nicotine 273
- Nicotinic acid 278 459
- Night cramps 673
- Nitrites 119 339 430 678  
amyl 452  
extra-aortic 639
- Nitroglycerin 100 119 174 427 4 9 431  
433 440 448 449 452 460 462 466  
468 511 592 672 738
- Nitroglyn 430 453
- Nitrous oxide 633
- Nocturia 13 307
- Nonspecific pericarditis 304
- Nonprotein nitrogen 401
- Norepinephrine 531 573 516  
coronary thrombosis 400 437  
pheochromocytoma 522
- Novasurol 789
- Novocaine 315 427 574 723
- Novurit 787
- Numbness 721
- Obesity 33 49 71 84 98 195 272 273  
282 299 435 534 536
- Occupation 395
- Ocular pressure 662
- Opening snap 209 219 225 234
- Orthopnea 1 2 6 69 70 192 196 213 228
- Orthostatic hypotension 504 547 552 566  
—570 573
- Oscillometry 67, 694
- Osler's nodes 159 160
- Osteomyelitis 141 155 159 317 319 605
- Osteoporosis 4 4 499 523
- Otitis 158
- Ouabain 656 664 739 740 *see also*  
Strophanthin
- Outflow tract  
hypertension 40  
left ventricle 40 51 53 179 189 535  
right ventricle 41 51 53 54 107 180  
199 200 280
- Ovarian hypofunction *see* Climacterium
- Oxygen ■ 11 355 581 587 611 633 788  
Cheyne Stokes 25  
coronary thrombosis 435  
pulmonary embolism 119  
saturation 337 338 343 346 355 361  
373
- Oxytetracycline 305
- Paget Schroetter syndrome 72
- Paget's disease 65 268
- Pain  
abdominal 604  
anginal *see* Anginal pain  
cardiac 339 390  
coronary sclerosis 270  
coronary thrombosis 396—397  
embolism 693  
epigastric 622  
peripheral vascular disease 673  
pericarditis 299 301 307  
precordial 267 343  
retrophic 673  
pulmonary embolism 100  
Raynaud phenomenon 694  
rest 689  
retroorbital 372  
retrosternal 373 430  
shoulder 420 499 534  
thromboangitis obliterans 681  
thrombophlebitis 722
- Pallor 176 215 309 383 512 674
- Palpation 357 358  
mitral regurgitation 221  
mitral stenosis 198  
myocardial disease 281 420  
pericardial effusion 110  
thiamine deficiency 262
- Palpitation 27 80 173 252 257 260 305  
307 498 494 522 601 604 619 670  
mitral stenosis 195 196  
pheochromocytoma 522
- Pancreatic adenoma 405
- Pancreatitis 402 429
- Pantopon 119 434 443
- Papaveril phosphate 454
- Papaverine 108 119 438 455 457 686 695  
embolism 119
- Papilleloma 513 679 858
- Papillary muscle rupture 416
- Para-aminobenzoic acid 147
- Paradoxical embolism 347

- Paradoxical pulse *see* Pulsus paradoxus
- Paracentesis 82 232 315-316 319
- Paraldrine 536 577
- Paraesthesiae 673 689 694
- Parahippuric acid 165
- Paralysis 113 400
- Paralytic ileus *see* Ileus
- Paraplegia 639
- Parasahylic acid 309
- Parasystole 635
- Paravertebral block 435 458 606 678 695  
705 723
- Paroxysmal tachycardia 22 26 65 79 128  
127 289 357 424 432 433 439  
464-469 575 618 630 652 654 666  
746 752
- anginal pain 374 392 411 412
- atrial 109
- digitalis 664
- hemoptysis 101
- palpitation 106
- pregnancy 626 630
- prognosis 661
- pulmonary edema 16
- pulsu alternans 209
- symptoms 674
- intricular 110 228
- Patent ductus arteriosus 36 78 157 158  
163 175 185 203 215 338 339 341  
34 346 350-360 361 369 371 603  
609
- Pectus excavatum heart 63
- Penicillin 45 112 131 144 149 15 156  
161 163 164 165 253 509 534 626 684
- Pentaerythrol 454
- Pentamethonium 550-551
- Pentapyridine 555
- Pentolinum tartrate 557
- Pepsin ulcer 439
- Pericarditis 49 61 544
- aortic regurgitation 178
- aortic stenosis 189
- coronary thrombosis 307
- mitral regurgitation 255
- mitral stenosis 209
- pericardial friction 311
- tricuspid regurgitation 23
- Pericarditis nodosa 309 313 317 672 677  
706-713
- coronary artery stenosis 322
- differential diagnosis 715
- etiology 707
- Periarthritis nodosa — *Cont'd*
- laboratory findings 712
- pathology 707
- prognosis 712
- signs 707
- symptoms 707
- treatment 713
- Pericardial adhesions *see* Pericarditis  
adhesive
- Pericardial calcification 325 330-331 488
- Pericardial diverticulum 314 331
- Pericardial friction rub 300
- Pericardial grafts 227
- Pericardial malformations 331
- Pericardial trauma 487
- Pericardial tumors 322
- Pericardectomy 321
- Pericardiocentesis *see* Paracentesis pericardii
- Pericarditic pseudocirrhosis 317
- Pericarditis 162 419
- acute 432
- adhesive 59 65 76 79 81 95 101 768  
285 307 324-330 399 724 769
- course 329
- etiology 324
- incidence 324
- nomenclature 324
- pathologic mechanism 32
- pathology 325
- radiology 329
- symptoms and signs 396
- treatment 329
- benign 304
- constrictive 305-307 324 325  
and coronary thrombosis 394
- epidemic 321
- with effusion 146 147 166 254 304 304  
309 317 398 497
- diagnosis 312
- electrocardiogram 312
- incidence 309
- noninflammatory 321
- paracentesis 315
- radiology 31
- signs 310
- symptoms 307
- tests 314
- treatment 315
- peritonocardiaca 318
- filicula 166 207 303
- fungous 30
- myocardial 313 315

- Pericarditis — *Cont'd*  
   meningococcal 318  
   neoplastic 332  
   nonspecific 304  
   rheumatic 130 140 305 317 320  
   suppurative 317—320 325  
   traumatic 498  
   tuberculous 300 325  
   uremic 300 305  
 Pericardium diseases of 298—333  
   anatomy 295  
   electrocardiogram 302  
   etiology 300  
   introduction to 299  
   pathology 301 318  
   physiology 290  
   prognosis 304  
   signs 302  
   special forms 304  
   symptoms 301  
   trauma 487  
 Periodic dropped beat *see* Wenckebach period  
 Perirenal insufflation 523  
 Peripheral vascular diseases 672—736  
   examination 673  
   introduction to 6 2  
   interpretation 677  
   miscellaneous tests 679  
 Peritoneal tap 696  
 Peritrate 454  
 Pernio 716  
 Petres test 719  
 Petechia 106  
   subacute bacterial endocarditis 156  
 Phenindione *see* Phenylindanedione  
 Phenobarbital 119 235 442 504 545 622  
   diuretics and 765  
 Phenol 300 459 702  
 Phenol red 306 459 70  
 Phenol amine 523  
 Phenylbutazone 147 724 725  
 Phenylindanedione 117  
 Pheochromocytoma 14 463 521—524  
 Pherentasin 531 549  
 Phlebogram 211  
 Phlebotomy 33 7 119 374 509 627 *see*  
   also Venesection  
 Phlebotrombosis 111  
 Phlegmasia alba dolens 722  
 Phlegmasia caerulea dolens 723  
 Phonocardiogram 54 57—58 189 204 211  
   226  
 Phosgene 15 19  
 Phospholipids 276 277  
 Phrenic nerve 101  
 Physicologic murmur *see* Murmur  
 Physostigmine 664  
 Pyridonadione 117  
 Pyridoxine 317  
 Pylocarpine 551  
 Pylosterm arteries 616  
 Pistol shot sound 467  
 Pitresin 629  
 Pituitary adenoma 504  
 Pituitary extracts 700  
 Plasma proteins 82  
 Pleural adhesions 72 75 78 85 99 203  
   212 218 409  
 Pleural effusion 17 319 329 601 611 725  
   *see also* Hydrothorax  
 Pleural shock 126  
 Pleural sinus veins 49  
 Pleurisy 97 99 100 101 104 106 136 141  
   147 166 308 416 428 723  
 Pleuropericardial sounds 302  
 Pleuropneumonia 101 163 295  
 Pneumococcosis 73 506  
 Pneumomediastinum 323 324  
 Pneumonia 15 17 77 78 141 150 162  
   175 254 299 301 416 417 498 644  
   723 745  
   hypostatic 106  
   infection 102 106  
   primary atypical 97  
 Pneumopericardium 320 322—324  
 Pneumoperitoneum 309  
 Pneumothorax 323  
 Pneumothorax 109 126  
 Polomyelitis 141 254 526 703  
 Polycystic disease 527  
 Polycythemia 75 7 112 234 341 354  
   358 373 509 513 521 534 704 721  
 Polymyositis 709  
 Polymyxin 165  
 Polyneuritis 710  
 Polyserositis 317 329  
 Popliteal artery 605  
 Postcannula urotomy syndrome 219  
 Positive pressure breathing 781  
 Posterior dullness 311  
 Postinfarction syndrome 416  
 Postpartum myocarditis 226  
 Posttraumatic disturbances 704—705  
 Postural hypotension 543

- Posture 309 374  
 Potassium 78 254 *see also* Hyper and Hypokalemia  
 Potassium acetate 666  
 Potassium chloride 147 666 750  
 Potassium iodide 666 714  
 Potassium nitrate 666  
 Potassium permanganate 684 691  
 Potassium preparations 666 666 770  
 Pott's operation 232  
 Pouter heart 236  
 Precordial pain *see* Anginal and Chest pain  
 Prednisolone 167  
 Prednisone 146 167  
 Preeclampsia syndrome 657  
 Pregnancy 98 102 158 194 195 299 434  
     462 529 550 607 626-631  
     cardiac diameters 34  
     clinical findings 626  
     complications 626  
     contraindications 625  
     medical advice 627  
     pathophysiology 624  
     prognosis 626  
 Pregnanediol 82  
 Premature contractions *see* Extrasystoles  
 Resorcinamines 8 13 425 437 467 664 784  
 Pressor substances 364  
 Presystolic gallop rhythm 284  
 Pretrophia pain 688  
 Iriacoline 69 705  
 Probenecid 166  
 Procaine 499 630 643 653 705 744  
 Procaine amide 581 587 643 666  
 Progesterone 82  
 Progressive muscular atrophy 264 268  
 Prolonged P R interval 280 284 287 666  
 Pronestyl *see* Procaine amide  
 Propylthiouracil 457 496  
 Prostatic hypertrophy 441  
 Prostigmine 551 573 664 664  
 Protamine sulfate 116  
 Prothrombin time 116 436  
 Protodiastolic rhythm 243  
 Protoveratrine 50  
 Proxell maleate 50  
 Pseudo Cushing syndrome 524  
 Psittacosis 254  
 Psychosis 81 134 164  
 Psychotherapy 73  
 Pteroglutamic acid 341  
 Iucteral sepsis 158  
 Pulmocardiac murmurs *see* Murmur  
 Pulmonary abscesses 106 301  
 Pulmonary arteriovenous fistula 339  
 Pulmonary artery 52 385  
     aneurysm 340 603  
     atresia 339 354 356  
     dilatation 53 329 346  
     pressure 337 343  
     rupture 322  
 Pulmonary carcinoma 508 *see also* Bronchogenic carcinoma  
 Pulmonary congestion 14 16 65 69 71  
     76 80 85 141 197 213 234  
 Pulmonary conus 199 200 345 359  
 Pulmonary cysts 99  
 Pulmonary edema 7 8 15-21 100 136  
     308 417 443 627 763 780-789  
     acute 17  
     chronic 17  
     coronary occlusion 392  
     hemoptysis 101  
     mitral stenosis 7 196  
     pheochromocytoma 522  
     postpartum 16  
     treatment 780  
     types 16  
 Pulmonary embolism 71 78 79 97-111  
     159 162 214 257 338 361 508 513  
     628 632 723 737  
     anginal pain 417  
     anticoagulants 113  
     complications 106  
     coronary thrombosis 301  
     differential diagnosis 106  
     incidence 96  
     pathologic physiology 107  
     pathology 98  
     signs 102  
     surgery 218  
     symptoms 99 102  
     treatment 118  
     tricuspid regurgitation 112 233  
 Pulmonary fibrosis 4 19 73  
 Pulmonary gangrene 106  
 Pulmonary hypertension 59 73 77 219  
     281 346 509 534 571  
 Pulmonary infarction 72 73 77 78 8  
     97-111 214 399 402  
 Pulmonary ischemia 339  
 Pulmonary murmur *see* Murmur  
 Pulmonary neoplasm 11  
 Pulmonary plethora 339

- Pulmonary regurgitation 99 237—236 350  
     352  
 Pulmonary sclerosis 4 19 72 73 77—78 513  
 Pulmonic second sound 73 103 107 180  
     208 209 212 233 235 236  
   mitral regurgitation 223 345 349 352  
     359  
   palpable 199 209 236  
 Pulmonary stasis *see* Pulmonary congestion  
 Pulmonary stenosis 59 237 257 339 342  
     351—354 581 603  
   infundibular 351 354  
   murmur 190  
   pregnancy and 699  
   relative 344  
   supravalvular 327 351  
 Pulmonary tuberculosis 59 508 568  
 Pulmonary veins 200 216 348  
   anomalous drainage 346  
 Pulsating exophthalmus 372  
 Pulsation expansile 601  
 Pulse  
   altus 176 188  
   aortic regurgitation 175  
   ball thrombus 215  
   bimeminal 287  
   capillary 176  
   carotid 176 190  
   celer 175 176 180 236  
   coarctation 367  
   Corrigan 175  
   dorsalis pedis 615  
   femoral 362 364 682  
   liver 468  
   mitral regurgitation 19  
   mitral stenosis 197  
   myocardial disease 281  
   paradoxus 311 327  
   parvus 188  
   pericardial effusion 310  
   peripheral vascular disease 675  
   pulseless disease 706  
   radial 362  
   tardus 188 192  
 Pulseless disease 393 705—706 517 572  
 Pulsus alternans 787—289 536  
   significance 279  
 Pulsus paradoxus *see* Pulse  
 Purpura 161  
 Pyelography 523  
 Pyelonephritis 141  
   hypertension 524  
 Pyopericardium *see* Pericarditis suppurative  
 Pyramidon *see* Aminopyrine  
 Pyridoxin 272 278 452  
 Pyrogens 541  
  
 Quinidine 112 579 580 581 582 630 647  
     648—649 652 655 662 673 745  
   coronary thrombosis 412 438 456  
   fibrillation 214  
 Quinine dihydrochloride 663  
  
 Racemose aneurysm 370  
 Radiation 341  
 Radiculitis 427 488  
 Radioactive iodine 457 470 495 496 630  
 Radiological examination  
   acrocyanosis 100  
   adhesive pericarditis 326 329  
   anemia 467  
   aneurysm 602  
   anomalous pulmonary veins 348  
   aortic aneurysm 605  
   aortic arch anomalies 368  
   aortic atheroma 616  
   aortic dissection 610  
   aortic regurgitation 178 201  
   aortic stenosis 189  
   aortitis 588  
   arteriovenous fistula 371  
   atrial septal defect 345  
   cardiac aneurysm 420  
   cardiac tumor 331  
   cervical rib 101  
   coarctation 362 364  
   combined valv lesions 23  
   cor pulmonale 512  
   coronary sclerosis 276 281 282  
   coronary thrombosis 403  
   Ebstein's disease 357  
   Fallot tetralogy 355  
   fibrinous pericarditis 303  
   hiatus hernia 430  
   hydropericardium 321  
   hydrothorax 85  
   hypertension 201 534  
   hyperthyroidism 494  
   left atrial dilatation 75  
   left cardiac border 34  
   left ventricular hypertrophy 43  
   mitral regurgitation 201 225  
   mitral stenosis 37 38 74 200 201  
   myocarditis 253



- Radiological examination — *Cont d*  
   nonspecific pericarditis 304  
   patent ductus arteriosus 359  
   patent interventricular septum 349 350  
   pericardial calcification 330  
   pericardial diverticulum 331  
   pericardial effusion 258 311 312 323  
   peripheral vascular disease 679  
   pneumopericardium 323  
   pulmonary artery aneurysm 604  
   pulmonary congestion 73-74  
   pulmonary edema 17 18 19  
   pulmonary infarction 99 103  
   regurgitation 236  
   rheumatic pneumonia 134 136  
   stasis 33  
   Raynaud syndrome 698  
   right ventricular dilatation 43  
   thromboangitis obliterans 690  
   tricuspid regurgitation 232  
   tricuspid stenosis 234  
 Radium 91 300  
 Rauwolfia serpentina 523 546-548  
 Raynaud disease 697-699  
 Raynaud syndrome 672 682 697-699  
 Reactive hyperemia 678  
 Redigitalization 772  
 Reflexes 10 12 110 119 168 431 656 576  
   772  
   Bainbridge 66  
   carotid 1 11 67 94 188 431 622 572  
   coronary blood flow and 110  
   digestive 127  
   dyspnea from 100  
   extrasystoles 639  
   Hering Breuer 3 11  
   intrapulmonary 100 107  
   Jarisch Bezold 71 400 414 550  
   McDowall 433  
   pulmocoronary 107 109  
   pulmonary embolism 109  
   vago vagal 1  
   viscero visceral 127  
 Reflex sympathetic dystrophy 704  
 Refrigeration anesthesia 69  
 Reitin test 523  
 Renal congestion 86  
 Renin Oslor Weber syndrome 372  
 Rennin 527  
 Rescinamine 57  
 Resins ion exchange 54, 776-777  
 Respiratory arrhythmia 136 446  
   Reserpine *see* Rauwolfia  
   Resodex 776  
   Respiratory alternans 28  
   Restless legs 673  
   Retinal vessels 365  
   Rhabdomyoma 332  
   Rheumatic arteritis 394  
   Rheumatic arthritis 142 166  
   Rheumatic fever 130-154 172 194 259  
     287 608 624 626 708 721  
     bed rest 143  
     clinical course 139 140  
     differential diagnosis 141  
     etiology 130  
     heart block 139  
     heart failure 140 146  
     hyperpyretic 140  
     incidence 130  
     mitral regurgitation 220  
     myocarditis 249  
     pathology 132  
     pneumonia 134 136  
     prognosis 142  
     prophylaxis 148  
     signs 135  
     symptoms 134  
     treatment 143 147  
   Rheumatic pericarditis *see* Pericarditis  
   Rib erosions  
     coarctation 364  
     pulseless disease 706  
   Rice diet 543  
   Rickettsial diseases 254  
   Riding aorta 75 339 354 369  
     embolus 695  
   Right aortic arch *see* Aortic arch  
   Right ventricular failure *see* Ventricular failure  
   Roentgenology *see* Radiology  
   Roger's disease 348  
   Ronalcol 699  
   Roth's sign 311  
   Rubeola 254 340  
   Saccharine 91  
   Salicylates 27 135 138 140 141 240 30  
     acetyl 11 140  
     methyl 145  
     sodium 144  
   Salivation 749  
   Salt free diet 78  
   Salsaban 170 256 295 717

- Salygran 767  
 Saphenous vein ligation 791  
 Sarcoidosis 13 219-250 300 308  
 Sarcoma 337  
 Scalenus anticus syndrome 519 697 701  
 Scarlet fever 141 639  
   myocarditis 253  
 Schaumann's disease *see* Sarcoidosis  
 Schizophrenia 134  
 Schönlein Henoch purpura 709  
 Schwartz's test 719  
 Scilla 740  
 Scillaren A 760  
 Sclerodactyly 699  
 Sclerema 700  
 Scleroderma 64 699-700  
 Scoliosis *see* Kyphoscoliosis  
 Scrub typhus 956  
 Scurvy 31 329  
 Seagull murmur *see* Murmur  
 Second heart sound 56 57 184 190 193  
   190 208 978 536 588  
 Sedimentation rate 103 138 140 149 145  
   189 252 279 305 401 599 593 689  
   694 712  
 Senile gangrene 102  
 Sepsis 99 15, 163 417  
   pericarditis 317  
 Septal defects 58 699  
   cyanosis 75  
   interatrial 104 919 933 339 341 347  
   343-348 353 356 357 358 603  
   interventricular 78 167 168 169 162  
   203 348-351 352 354 369 416 489  
 Septal infarction 70  
 Septal lines 75  
 Serotonine 110 238 521 548  
 Serpasil *see* Rauwolfia  
 Serum iron 40  
 Serum proteins 81  
 Serum sickness 301 393  
 Serum zinc 407  
 Sex 188 361 579 583 680 692  
   coronary sclerosis 273  
   hypertension 529  
   mitral stenosis 194  
   rheumatic fever 13  
 Sexual intercourse 196 44 738  
 Sf units 271  
 Shelter laws 111 727  
 Shock 107 116 903  
   coronary thrombosis 390 399 413 433  
   437  
 Shoulder hand syndrome 424  
 Sickle cell disease 149 280 393  
 Sighing respiration 20 494 499 618  
 Sigheones 781  
 Simmonds's disea. 669 711  
 Sinus block 489 606  
 Sinus infection *see* Focal infection  
 Sinus rhythm 230 234  
 Sinus tachycardia 26 18 136 184 303  
   437 500 512 652 654 661 744  
 Sinus thrombosis 155  
 Sitosterol 977  
 Situs inversus totalis 310 370  
 Situs solitus 370  
 Skin 174  
 Smoking *see* Tobacco  
 Sodium amytal 534  
 Sodium bicarbonate 145 490  
 Sodium chloride 673 686 790  
 Sodium cyanide 91  
 Sodium dehydrocholate 91  
 Sodium gentisate 145  
 Sodium lactate 580  
 Sodium morphuate 770  
 Sodium succinate 91  
 Sodium thiocyanate 467  
 Southey tubes 777-778  
 Soy bean oil 272  
 Spasmalgia 119  
 Spider fingers *see* Arachnodactyly  
 Spleen palpation of 233  
 Splenomegaly 156 161  
 Split sounds 59 137 109 949 289 983 348  
   467  
   mitral stenosis 212  
   pericardial adhesions 328  
 Spondyloarthritis 496 450  
 Spontaneous pneumothorax 498  
 Squatting 339 354 593  
 Squills 760  
 Stagnant anoxemia 76 620  
 Staphylococci 155 164 218 249 968  
 Starling's law 36 63 83 177  
 Stasis hypertension 177 595 189  
 Steering wheel accidents 321 487  
 Stellate ganglion 66 458  
 Stellate ganglion block 249  
 Sternal movements 397  
 Sternal puncture 391

## Steroids

- ACTH 138 145 147 158 167 305 531  
699 700 705  
cortisone 138 145 147 167 278 264  
278 305 425 699 700 705  
desoxycorticosterone 739

## Stethogram 349

## Stilbestrol 273

Stokes Adams syndrome 26 127 413 426  
440 575-582 645 748

## differential diagnosis 577

## mechanism 576

## nomenclature 575

## prognosis 578

## signs 575

## symptoms 575

## treatment 579

## Stokes collar 326

## Streptococci 130 141 149 157 247 249 318

## Streptomycin 164 165 305 309 330 627

Strophanthin 412 580 634 760-763 *see*  
*also* Oubaine

## contraindications 762

## dosage 763

## indications 761

## pharmacology 760

## preparations 760

## Strophoside 760

## Strychnine 778 784

Subacute bacterial endocarditis 155 156-  
171 175 195 222 250 280 589 605  
627 708

## aortic regurgitation 184

## congenital cardiac defects 342 347 351

## 306 372 374 392

## etiology 157

## friction rub 306

## pathogenesis 157

## pregnancy 158 163

## surgery 217

## Subarachnoid hemorrhage 162

## Subclavian artery

## anomalous 360 365

## arteriovenous fistula 372

## Subcutaneous emphysema 327

## Subcutaneous nodules 136 142 146 709

## Subcutaneous tissues rheumatic fever 134

## 136 141

## Sucquet Hoyer canal 714

## Sudeck's atrophy 705

## Sulphocyanates 545-546

Sulfonamide 131 145 159 156 164 252  
256 316Summation gallop rhythm = Gallop  
rhythm

## Sunlight 166

Suppurative pericarditis *see* Pericarditis  
suppurativeSurgery 159 264 347 348 350 351 373  
443 458 459 554 632-634 786

## aortic regurgitation 116

## aortic stenosis 193 216-217

## cardiac disease and 632

## coarctation 366

## constrictive pericarditis 309

## Fallot tetralogy 355-356

## hypertension 554

## mitral disease 216 225 227

## pulmonary stenosis 353

## vein ligation 118

## Suspicious respiration 27

## Svedberg flotation units 271

## Sweating 80 102 156 156 159 670

## Symmetrical gangrene 702

Sympathectomy 217 528 573 697 691  
699 704 705

## Sympathetic block 116

## Sympathol 569

Syncope 126 187 203 308 396 509 511  
*see also* Fainting

## aortic stenosis 393 443 499 524

## ball thrombus 216

## Syncope d'effort 577

## Synovitis 135

Syphilis 77 185 187 259 280 300 418 450  
494 672 702 705 725

## aneurysm 598

## aortic regurgitation 172 191 18 197

## aortitis 393 443 488 574

## Stringomyelia 703

Systolic click *see* Gallop rhythm systolicSystolic murmur *see* Murmur

## Tabes 573

Tachycardia 33 34 103 156 257 260 333  
308 323 3 3 409 654

## sinus 67 130 163 184 213 2 7

## Takayasu's disease 705

## Talcum 300 684

Tapazole *see* Mercaptopurine

## Tausig Bing syndrome 369

## Teeth 157 163 184

- Teleangiectasia 31  
 Temperature  
   local 112  
   peripheral vascular disease 678  
 Temporal arteritis 710 713  
 Tenotomy 691  
 Tension pneumopericardium 323  
 Terminal pericarditis 301  
 Terramycin 165  
 Terpin hydrate 509  
 Tetany 4 2<sup>n</sup>  
 Tetralogy of Fallot *see* Fallot's syndrome  
 Theobromine 438 686 764-766  
   calcium salicylate 454  
   diuresis 16,  
   sodium salicylate 434  
   thromboangitis obliterans 686  
 Theocaine 454  
 Theoin *see* Theophyllin  
 Theophyllin 316 438 448 454 455 686  
   691 696 717 767 770  
   sodium acetate 455 686  
   calcium acetate 766  
 Therapy 737-799 *see also* in individual diseases  
 Thebesian vessels 386 514  
 Thiamine "B<sub>1</sub>" 261-264 278 281 321  
   8 8 39  
 Thi merin 767  
 Thiouracil 467 410 650 654  
 Thiourea 797  
 Third heart sound 56 60 13 211 219 283  
   344  
 Thoracic duct 327  
 Thoracentesis 17 373  
 Thorazine *see* Chlorpromazine  
 Thrills 139 344 349 351 35, 359 367 371  
   416  
   aortic insufficiency 176 182  
   aortic stenosis 184 197  
   femoral 610  
   mitral stenosis 109  
   pulmonary regurgitation 236  
 Thromboangitis obliterans 397 62 673  
   680-68 604 61 5  
   course 693  
   differential diagnosis 693  
   etiology 680  
   incidence 680  
   pathology 681  
   signs 681  
   symptoms 691  
   treatment 683-687  
 Thrombophlebitis 102 111 147 308 722-  
   724  
   migrans 691 724  
   symptoms 112  
 Thymsus 574  
 Thyroid extract 321  
 Thyroidectomy 458 459 470 632 786  
 Thyroxine 498  
 Tiebout's syndrome 600  
 Tinnitus 145  
 Tobacco 643 608 639 656 690 684 690  
   coronary disease 273 394 442 45  
   extrasystoles 639  
   hypertension 543  
   thromboangitis obliterans 680 684  
 Toluidine blue 116  
 Tomography 348 364 3 3 605  
 Tonogenic dilatation 40 46  
 Tonsillitis 130 148 156 184 250-257 257  
 Tonsillectomy 148 153 252 253  
 Tonsils 158 163  
 Toxoplasmosis 253  
 Tracheal tug 601  
 Tracheostomy 323  
 Transaminase 139 402 428  
 Transfusion 116  
 Transposition  
   aortic "a"  
   vessels 78 355 769  
 Traube's sound 177  
 Trauma 131 157 173 186 194 418 604  
   coronary occlusion 393  
   hemopericardium 301  
   pericarditis 300  
   pneumopericardium 3 2  
   thrombosis 721  
 Tremor 622  
   cardiac 296  
 Trench foot 716  
 Trendelenburg test 719 721  
 Triangle of safety 718  
 Trichinosis 553 300 709  
 Trenchard atresia 356-357  
 Tricuspid lesions dyspnea in 7 21  
 Tricuspid regurgitation 41 44 70 86 181  
   25-233 568 292 346  
   differential diagnosis 533  
   dynamics 298  
   dyspnea 70  
   etiology 278  
   fibrillation 230  
   prognosis 231

- Ammonium magnesium phosphate in urinary sediments 367  
 urates in urinary sediments 367
- Ammiotic fluid 421  
 specific gravity 421  
 total solids 420 421
- Amniotin 777
- Amphetamine sulfate 774
- Amyl nitrite 774
- Amylase in duodenal juice 279  
 280 281  
 plasma 181  
 in saliva 699  
 serum 181 186 282  
 in urine 284 305
- Amytal 774
- Analgon effect on color of urine 301
- Anatomical normals 641-653
- Anatovon 780
- Analysis gastric See Gastric
- Anatomy x ray of heart 16
- Androgenic bio-assay of urine 537  
 biochemistry 335  
 biologic actions 537  
 assay 535  
 normal values 534  
 physiology 536  
 sources 535  
 urinary 535
- Androgenic substances in sweat 489
- Androsterone 530  
 structural formula 536
- Anertan 784
- Anesthasin 777
- Anesthetics local chart of 780 787
- Angstrom 795
- Angular measure 814
- Angulation of coccyx 449
- Anhydroxyprogesterone 774
- Anise oil of olfactory coefficient 29
- Ankle range of motion 450
- Anovulatory cycle 403
- Anoxemia test 6
- Antecubital space petechial reaction 62
- Anteflexion of uterus 399
- Anterior horn of lateral ventricle 301
- Anteron A P L 776
- Anteverson of uterus 399
- Antiacrodynia factor 764  
 vitamin 764
- Antianthrax serum 774
- Antidermatitis factor chick 763
- Antidysenteric serum 774
- Antiegg white injury factor 763
- Antierysiploid serum 774
- Antifebrin 773
- Antimeningococcic serum 774
- Antimony potassium tartrate 774  
 sodium thioglycollate 774
- Antipellagra vitamin 763
- Antipneumococcus serum 774
- Antisera Rh 76
- Antisterility vitamin 769
- Antithrombin 69
- Antutrin 776
- Antivenen crotalus 774  
 Latrodectus mactans 774
- Aorta measurements of 641
- Apocrine glands 486
- Apomorphine hydrochloride 774
- Apothecaries fluid measure 814  
 and metric equivalents 815  
 weight 814
- Apparatus vestibular 621
- Aqueduct of Sylvius 302
- Arachidonic acid in serum fatty acids 115
- Area surface of heart 20
- Arginine in saliva 698  
 in serum 109  
 in urine 304 365
- Argyn 782
- Argyrol 787
- Arithmetic mean 706  
 standard error of 712
- Arm eccrine glands in 486  
 ossification 440  
 skin temperature 469  
 sweat gland distribution 487
- Army food requirements for 771  
 rations nutritive value 771
- Arthropod classification of neurophils 50
- Arrhythmia sinus 3
- Asphenamine 774
- Artefacts urinary 364
- Arterial blood pressure 30
- Asafetida olfactory coefficient 599
- Aschheim Zondek test for pregnancy 560 566
- Ascorbic acid 766 774 See also Vitamin C  
 absorption from small intestine 246  
 in blood 137  
 daily dietary allowances 716  
 in foods 718-740 759-761  
 in prostatic secretion 387  
 in serum 186  
 in sweat 488  
 in urine 363 369
- Ash content of body 650  
 in foods 752  
 in human milk 419  
 in nails 492  
 in saliva 697 698  
 in synovial fluid 458
- Aspartic acid in serum 108  
 in urine 354
- Aspidium oleoresin 774
- Aspirin 773
- Atabrine 774 781
- Atom 799  
 per cent 794 799  
 excess 794 799
- Atomic number 799  
 weights international 796
- Atophan 776
- Atrisia folliculi 401
- Atropine sulfate 774
- Audiometer test of hearing 517
- Auditory canal 515
- Auricle of ear 515
- Autoagglutination 73 74
- Autonomic nervous system 290 291  
 averages statistical 705
- Avordupois weight 814
- Ascorbin 774 test of liver function 268 272
- Back eccrine glands in 486
- Bacteria in gastric contents 230  
 in skin 480 481
- Balance mineral of normal men 309  
 muscle of eye 506  
 tests of renal function 339
- Ball bearings rate of passage through digestive tract 261
- Bárdny tests 620
- Barbital 715
- Barium effect on color of feces 235  
 rate of passage through in testinal canal 249 250  
 sulfate 775
- Basal metabolism 575  
 calculation of surface area 575  
 calories per hour in relation to body surface in children 569 591  
 to height in children 591  
 to weight in children 590
- Harris Benedict standard 580 586  
 mean values in children 590  
 in menstruation 587  
 nomogram for computing rate of 584  
 normal standards 585  
 for children 586  
 in pregnancy 588 593  
 relation to menstruation 590  
 surface area DuBois for mals 517 578 579 580 581 582
- Base total of serum 774
- Basophils of bone marrow 84 85  
 of infants 86

- Basophils in bone marrow in pregnancy 57  
 in peripheral blood of infants 56  
 range 57  
 in infants 57  
 in Schilling hemogram 56  
 Beads gives rate of passage through digestive tract 251  
 Beef highest total acidity 249  
 Beets effect on color of feces 251  
 Belladonna extract 7  
 Benadryl 77a  
 Benzedrine 74  
 Benzestrol 7  
 Benzene olfactory coefficient 59  
 Benzoin compound tincture 775  
 Benzyl benzoate saponated 775  
 Beta ray 99  
 rhythm 306  
 Beta-carotene 107  
 Beta tocopherol 769  
 Betanaphthol 775  
 effect on color of urine 331  
 Bicarbonate in blood 163 168  
 plasma 161  
 in cerebrospinal fluid 316  
 30  
 in duodenal juice 779 81  
 in gallbladder bile 375  
 in liver bile 264  
 in pancreatic juice 8  
 Bicuspid teeth eruption according to age 659  
 mesiodistal width 674  
 permanent dimensions of 8  
 Bile acids in gallbladder bile 27a  
 in liver bile 64  
 gallbladder 75 - 8  
 in gastric contents 79  
 hepatic steroid content 6  
 liver 263 264  
 salts 75  
 in gallbladder bile 77  
 in liver bile 64  
 volume secreted per day 1  
 Biliary drainage 77a  
 Bilirubin in blood 110  
 in gallbladder bile 25  
 in liver bile 264  
 serum 156 67  
 test of liver function 24  
 tolerance test 149 151  
 of liver function 67  
 Biotin 763  
 in blood 137  
 in urine 369  
 Bismarck 7a  
 Bismocymol 75  
 Bismol 5  
 Bismuth 7a  
 camphocarboxylate 775  
 effect on color of feces 251  
 Bite pressure(s) 649  
 effect of muscle stimulation on 649  
 in girl 659 69  
 in pounds 690  
 strength of 690  
 Bladder 3 344  
 cystometric values 343 346  
 position 343  
 shape 34  
 Bleeding time 59 60 64  
 venous is 59 60  
 Blind pot physiologic 505  
 Blood acid base balance 16  
 adrenal axis in 16  
 agglutinin titers  
 agglutinogens 74 75 77  
 also agglutinogens  
 albumin in 163  
 alcohol 153  
 leucins 182  
 alpha ketoglutaric acid in 15  
 aluminum in 167  
 amino acid nitrogen test of renal function 11 341  
 ammonia in 109  
 amylin 151  
 antithrombin 69  
 autoagglutination 73 4  
 bicarbonate in 163 167  
 bile duct time 59 60 61  
 bromide in 157  
 calcium in 165  
 carbon dioxide in 13 159  
 166  
 capacity 160  
 lens on 159  
 carboxyhemoglobin in 149  
 cell(s) chlorine content 649  
 6a1  
 count in infants 86  
 diameter red 43 44  
 errors in counting 69  
 fat content 649 6a1  
 genealogy 60  
 magnesium content 649  
 6a1  
 phosphorus content 649  
 61  
 potassium content 649  
 6a1  
 red 7 See also Erythrocytes  
 normal values 38  
 packed normal values 38  
 sodium content 649  
 sulfur content 649  
 water content 649 61  
 weight of 61  
 cellular constituents for use per cent  
 chemical composition same 166  
 chemistry during pregnancy 413 415  
 chloride(s) in 163 163 166  
 146  
 Blood circulation time 27 28  
 citric acid in 14  
 clot retraction 64 65  
 clotting time 63  
 coagulation time 61 64  
 during pregnancy 414  
 constituent tests of renal function 337  
 copper in 167 168  
 corpuscles hematocrit reading 15a  
 lipids 113  
 creatine in 156  
 creatinine in 157  
 concentration on test of renal function 337 341  
 diastase values 283  
 effect on color of feces 5a  
 erythrocytes 37 See also Erythrocytes  
 estrogen values 510  
 in pregnancy 30  
 of fetus 474  
 fibrinogen 69  
 flow hepatic 264  
 renal 33  
 freezing point depression 99  
 in gastric contents 79  
 globulins in 163  
 glucose in 167  
 curve in children 143  
 groups distribution 74  
 heredity 77  
 major 1  
 cross agglutination 71  
 hemoglobin total 173 See also Hemoglobin  
 hemostatic function tests of 50  
 Hfr factor 76  
 iodine concentration test of renal function 337 341  
 iodine 163  
 iron in 157  
 isoelectrical point 4  
 reaction 73  
 isoelectrical points 7  
 isoelectrical 73  
 ketone bodies 151  
 lactic acid in 15  
 lead in 16  
 leukocytes 44 4c also Leukocytes  
 lipids 114 116 153 See also Lipids  
 magnesium in 156 163  
 manganese in 167  
 mean corpuscular volume during pregnancy 41  
 methemoglobin in 16  
 concentration 1  
 minute volume 6  
 nitrogen in 15  
 nonprotein nitrogen 101 110  
 concentration test of renal function 337 341  
 constituents 109

- Blood oxygen capacity 123  
187  
content 123 166 187  
saturation 166  
values 129  
packed cell volume during  
pregnancy 410 412  
pH 157 158 160  
phosphatase 179  
phospholipid(s) 118  
content 652  
phosphorus in 163 164 165  
plasma See *Plasma*  
platelets 66 See also *Platelets*  
porphyrins 199  
potassium in 154 155 165  
pressure 30  
average according to age  
32  
capillary 33  
of skin 417  
during pregnancy 408 409  
lowest level 31  
in right auricle 33  
ventricle 33  
systolic variations in 32  
uppermost level 31  
values in children 33  
venous 32  
proteins 101  
relative dimensions 101  
prothrombin level test of  
liver function 271  
norms for 67  
time 68  
pseudocoagulation 73 74  
pyruvic acid in 163  
refractive index 96  
Rh agglutinin 75  
serum See *Serum*  
silver in 167  
sodium in 164 165 166  
specific gravity 93  
during pregnancy 414  
factors 95  
serum water and 93 94  
sterol content 65  
stroke volume 6  
subgroups 73  
sugar 112 168  
concentrations 113  
curves gastric acidity and  
239  
difference arteriovenous  
139  
sulfur in 164 168  
supply of bone marrow 81  
systolic discharge 6  
tin in 167  
tolerance tests 14 139  
types heredity 77  
Rh heredity 78  
urea in 109 189  
concentration 111  
nitrogen in 168  
concentration test of  
renal function 337  
341
- Blood urea acid in 189  
concentration test of  
renal function 337  
341  
values gonadotrophin 570  
vessels of skin 467 468  
diameter 406  
viscosity 99 181  
vitamins 137  
volume 171 181  
total during pregnancy  
408  
water in 181  
whole chloride in 648  
iron in 166  
Bodies leucithin 391  
Body build intermediate type  
469  
lipids relative to 170  
calcium content 649 650  
chloride in 648  
chlorine in 649 650  
fluids 172  
of lateral ventricles 301  
length of children 643  
mechanics 459  
metabolism 575  
muscles 460 461  
secretions volume 176  
surface area DuBois for  
mula 577 578 579 580  
581 582  
calories per square meter  
583  
DuBois chart 5 6  
temperature auxiliary deter-  
mination 636  
normal 635-637  
oral determination 635  
rectal determination 636  
weight changes during preg-  
nancy 415  
Roehler angle of foot 467 468  
Bone(s) calcium in 682  
carbon dioxide in 682  
cellularity 81  
development after birth 646  
variations in 441  
epiphysis 437  
of feet maturation 446  
of hand maturation of 441  
long trace metals in 653  
magnesium in 669  
marrow 79 See also *Marrow*  
normal 431  
number of 431  
ossification centers 435  
phospholipid content 65  
phosphorus in 682  
Pierres 443  
structure variations in 441  
tarsal development of 442  
tubular 437  
Botulism antitoxin 775  
Bradycardia sinus 3  
Bran aluminum in 653  
aqueeduct of Sylvius 301  
calcium content 649 651
- Bran chloride in 648  
chlorine content 649 651  
castanea 303  
commissures 304  
copper in 653  
diameter of 641  
fat content 649 651  
lead in 652 653  
magnesium content 649 651  
manganese in 653  
phospholipid content 651  
phosphorus content 649 651  
potassium content 649 651  
silver in 653  
sodium content 649 651  
sterol content 651  
sulfur content 649 651  
tin in 653  
ventricles 301 302  
water content 649 651  
weight of 611 651  
in children 643  
at various ages 644  
Brass relative hardness 680  
687 688  
Bread highest total acidity  
240  
Breast(s) changes induced by  
pregnancy 407  
skin temperature 409  
Breathing types of 202  
Bromide in blood 183  
Bromoform effect on color of  
urine 341  
Bromosulfalein excretion test of  
liver function 267  
test of liver function 279  
Bromural 775  
Bronchi 193  
Bronchopulmonary segments  
194 195  
Brucella vaccine 775  
Bull o-urethral glands 348  
Burbot liver oil 775  
Buttocks eccrine glands in 486  
Butyric acid olfactory coeffi-  
cient 9
- Cade oil of olfactory coeffi-  
cient 5 9  
Caffeine 775  
and sodium benzoate 775  
Cakes highest total acidity  
710  
Calcaneus epiphyseal union  
443  
Calciferol 5 785  
Calcification of teeth 69  
Calcium in amniotic fluid 490  
41  
in blood 165  
during pregnancy 413  
in body 649 650  
in bone 642  
carbonate precipitated 775  
in urinary sediments 361  
in cerebrospinal fluid 316  
3 0 4 0

- Calcium chloride urea 775  
   in contents of small intestine 215  
   daily dietary allowances 716  
   in dentin 649  
   in enamel 64 644  
   in feces 9 5 960  
   in foods 718-740 754 759-61  
   in gallbladder bile 775  
   gluconate 775  
   in human milk 419  
   hydroxide solution 775  
   iodobenzenate 775  
   lactate 5  
   in saliva 964  
   in lymph 177  
   oxalate in urinary sediments 367  
   in pancreatic juice 9 8 954  
   pantothenate 763 775  
   phosphate dibasic 175  
     in urinary sediments 367  
   in plasma 177  
   in prostatic secretion 392  
   in saliva 697 698 699  
   in seminal fluid 346  
   serum 155 156 186 490  
     of serum proteins 156  
   in skin 479  
   in synovial fluid 648  
   in teeth 653  
   in urine 58 304 305  
 Calcium binding power of serum proteins 186  
 Calices renal 3 4  
 Calomel 773  
   effect on color of feces 755  
 Caloric & daily dietary allowances 716  
   in foods 716-740 759-761  
   for height in children 598  
   per hour in relation to body surface in children 589 591  
     to height in children 591  
     to weight in children 590  
   per square meter of body surface per hour 593  
     per hour standard values 593  
   for weight in children 587  
 Caloric method of stimulation 594  
   test 590  
   value in feces 755  
   of food stuffs 91  
 Camphor 73  
   olfactory coefficient 59  
 Causal and tory 515  
   intercellular of skin width 466  
 Candy highest total acidity 440
- Canine teeth chronology of 648  
   deciduous eruption of 649  
   erupt on time 670  
   permanent eruption of 667 668 669  
   weight of 69  
 Capacity measures of 813  
 Capillary resistance or fragility test 61  
 Caproic acid in sweat 468  
 Caprylic acid in sweat 495  
 Carbochol 5  
 Carbamol 753  
 Carbarone 770  
 Carbohydrate in foods 718-740 759-761  
   oxidation 594  
   in skin 479  
 Carbolic acid effect on color of urine 302  
 Carbon dioxide in blood 155  
   159 166  
   in bone 684  
   capacity of blood 100  
   of serum 160 166  
   in olonic gas 953  
   combining power of cerebrospinal fluid 316 319  
   in oil 682  
   in enamel 64  
   in plasma 158 159 161  
   in prostatic secretion 39  
   in saliva 698  
   in seminal fluid 346  
   in serum 159 166  
   during pregnancy 413  
   in synovial fluid 455  
   in teeth 653  
   tension of blood 158  
   plasma 159  
   serum 159  
   tetrachloride 73  
 Carbonate in enamel 644  
 Carbonic acid in blood plasma 161  
 Carboniltheme structural formula 17  
 Carboxyhemoglobin 196  
   absorption spectra 1  
   in blood 196  
 Carbonyl 173  
 Cardiac vessels measurements of 641  
 Carina trachea 193  
 Carmine rate of passage through intestinal canal 1  
 Carotene 45  
   body distribution 17  
 Carotenoids in blood 137  
   in serum 16  
 Carotid sinus reflex 7  
 Carotin in serum 166  
 Carner 793  
 Carrots effect on color of feces 45  
 Carunculae myrtiformes 399  
 Casarea sagrada effect on color of urine 351
- Casarea sagrada extract 775  
   Casein absorption from small intestine 746 747  
 Castor oil 776  
 Ca in urine 360  
 Cathespin in gastric contents 735  
 Cedarwood oil of olfactory coefficient 579  
 Cell(s) basal of skin see 466  
   blood See Blood  
   count differential of cerebrospinal fluid 320  
   in synovial fluid 459  
   total of cerebrospinal fluid 319  
   elliptical 41  
   dam tern red blood 43 47  
   Mexican hat 43  
   potassium in 150  
   prostatic granular 391  
   sodium in 150  
   spinous of skin size 466  
   sugar loaf 43  
   target 43 49  
 Cellular elements in urine 360  
 Cellularity of bones 81  
 Cellulose rate of passage through digestive tract 51  
 Cementum index of refraction 650  
   specific weight 640  
   weight relative to enamel and dentin 677 650  
 Cephalin in blood 118  
   in human milk 419  
 Cephalic-cholesterol flocculation test of liver function 269 270 273  
 Cereals highest total acidity 210  
 Cerebrospinal fluid amino acid nitrogen 316  
   amount 314 370  
   carbon dioxide combining power 316 370  
   chemical components 316  
   colloidal tests 319  
   cytology 319  
   electrical conductivity 315 370  
   enzyme in 318  
   free x hydrophobic 315 370  
   hormones in 318  
   immunological components 318  
   pH 316 370  
   physical properties 315  
   potassium permanganate test 319  
   pressure 314 315 370  
   Queckenstedt test 314  
   refractive index 315 370  
   specific gravity 315 370  
   surface tension 370  
   total base 318 370  
   solids 370  
   viscosity 315 370  
   vitamins in 318



- Chain reaction 799  
 Chalk mixture 770  
   precipitated 770  
 Charcoal effect on color of feces 250  
 Charcot's crystals 386  
 Charts growth 697  
 Cheek eccrine glands in 486  
   skin temperature 469  
 Chemical composition of liver bile 264  
   of tears 508  
 Chemistry of saliva 607  
   of synovial fluid 456  
   of teeth 652-653  
 Chest 193  
   internal diameter percentage relationship of transverse diameter of heart to 25  
   topography 197 198  
 Chews per meal 692 693 694  
 Chick antidermatitis factor 763  
 Chicken highest total acidity 240  
 Children albuminuria in 350  
   androgens in 538  
   basal metabolism in mean values 592  
   normal standards 586  
   basophil range 57  
   bile in gastric contents 720  
   blood glucose curve 143  
   doses of drugs for 773  
   electrocardiograms in 14  
   electroencephalogram patterns in 31  
   eosinophil range 57  
   eruption of deciduous teeth 662 663 664 665  
   estrogen values 517  
   Eton Rose glucose tolerance test 140  
   fasting gastric juice 233  
   gastric acidity 30 231  
   emptying time 211  
   juice analysis 230  
   gonadotrophin values 507  
   growth standards 597  
   height 599  
   standards 597  
   hemoglobin values in 41  
   17 ketosteroids in 549  
   leukocyte count 57  
   lipids in 115  
   lymphocyte range 57  
   monocyte range 57  
   neutrophil range 57  
   pancreatic enzymes in duodenal juice 261  
   percentage of with permanent teeth 666  
   pH of gastric secretion 30  
   premature eruption of teeth in 667  
   pressure required in petechial reaction 62  
   puls in 5  
   rate of formation of fasting gastric secretion 243  
 Children sedimentation rate 48  
   temperature of skin 409  
   thoracic index 197  
   urine volume 350  
   visual acuity 500 502  
   vital capacity 207 209  
   weight 599  
   of kidneys 327  
   of various organs 643  
   standards 597  
 Chin skin of thickness 466  
 Chinofoin 716  
 Chloral hydrate 776  
 Chloride(s) in amniotic fluid 471  
   balance test of renal function 339 341  
   in blood 163 164 166 186  
   during pregnancy 413  
   in cerebrospinal fluid 316 320  
   in feces 708 260  
   in gallbladder bile 75  
   in gastric contents 73  
   juice 235  
   in human milk 419  
   in liver bile 64  
   in lymph 177  
   in pancreatic juice 278  
   in plasma 177  
   in prostatic secretion 382  
   in saliva 697 698  
   in seminal fluid 386  
   in serum 186 421  
   in skin 479  
   in tissues 648  
   in urine 53 361 368  
   fetal 40  
 Chlorine in body 649 650  
   in foods 741 74 743  
 Chlorobutanol 776  
 Chocolate effect on color of feces 250  
 Cholate-cholesterol ratio of gallbladder bile 770  
 Cholera D H 776  
 Cholestatography 776  
 Choleglobin absorption spectra 170  
 Cholera vaccine 776  
 Cholesterol in blood 116  
   corpuscles 113  
   during pregnancy 413  
   in cerebrospinal fluid 316 320  
   esters in blood 116  
   in plasma 116  
   in serum 115 116  
   in foods 749 750  
   in gallbladder bile 770 276  
   in human milk 413  
   in liver bile 64  
   in plasma 116  
   during pregnancy 414  
   in prostatic secretion 380  
   in seminal fluid 386  
   serum 114 116  
   tests of liver function 271 273  
 Cholesterol in skin 479  
   in urine 368  
 Choline 705  
   in cerebrospinal fluid 316  
   in urine 319  
 Chorda tympani nerve 290  
 Chorionin 775  
 Chorionic gonadotrophic hormone 549  
   gonadotrophin 561 569 706  
 Chyle 177  
 Cinchophen 716  
 Circulation fetal 470  
   time 27 28  
 Cisterna ambiens 333  
   magna 303  
   pontis 393  
 Citrate in seminal fluid 386  
 Citric acid in blood 182  
   in foods 706  
   in human milk 419  
   in prostatic secretion 382  
   in saliva 697  
   in sweat 488  
   in urine 357 368  
 Citrin 766  
 Citrulline in blood 110  
 Clark's rule 773  
 Clasmatocytes in synovial fluid of knee 459  
 Clearance tests renal 330  
 Climacteric 403  
   androgens in 539  
   estrogen values in 549  
   17 ketosteroids in 549  
 Climacterium praecox 403  
   404  
   tardum 404  
 Clorarsen 776  
 Clot retraction 64 65  
 Clotting of seminal ejaculate 367  
   time 63  
 Cloves oil of olfactory coefficient 79  
 Coagulation time 61 64  
   during pregnancy 414  
   vitamin 770  
 Coal tar ointment 763  
 Cocaine 776  
 Coccyx angulation of 73  
   range of motion 448  
 Cocoa effect on color of feces 250  
 Cold liver oil 776  
 Codeine 706  
 Coefficient(s) creatinine 353  
   mastication 693  
   of variation, computation of 709  
 Coffee ground olfactory coefficient 570  
 Colechicine 776  
 Cold perception 700  
   points of skin 470  
 Colloid (aluminum hydroxide) 774  
   benzoin test of cerebrospinal fluid 319

- Colloidal gold test of cerebrospinal fluid 319  
of liver function 270  
71 3  
massic test of cerebrospinal fluid 319  
red test of liver function 271  
Colon status twenty four excretion of "y"  
functions 249  
absorption 7  
length of 64  
parts of 249  
rate of passage of material through 749  
Color of feces 254 25  
of gallbladder bile 276  
of urine 340  
Constrictions of brain 304  
Compound licorice powder 76  
sebaceous glands 489  
Concentration tests renal 334  
Conductivity electrical of cerebrospinal fluid 313  
30  
specific of serum 92  
Confinement date 414  
estimation of 418  
table 41  
Constant Ambard's 313  
Constrictions esophageal 28  
Contractions premature of heart 3  
Cooke and Ponder classification of neutrophils 51  
Copper in blood 187 188  
daily dietary allowances 217  
in feces 9  
in foods 249 741 742 743  
in lung bones 643  
in serum 186  
in urine 361 368  
Coproprophyrin absorption spectra 132  
fluorescence spectrum 132  
physical constants 131  
structural formula 130  
Coproprophyrin I 133  
Coproprophyrin III 133  
Coramine 760  
Corneal reflex 94  
Corneum thickness 466  
Corpora amylacea 391  
Corpus luteum 776  
hormone international unit 782  
Corpuscles blood lipids of 119  
chloride in 648  
Corrupted erythrocyte sedimentation rate 49  
Cortate 776  
Count blood platelet 62 66  
erythrocyte during pregnancy 410  
spermatozoal 90  
Cowper's glands 348  
Cranial nerve 59  
Creatin of blood 110 186  
nitrogen of blood 110  
Creatine of skin 480  
in serum 186  
in urine 33 368  
Creatinine in amniotic fluid 40 41  
balance test of renal function 339 341  
of blood 110 187 337  
in cerebrospinal fluid 316  
30 420  
clearance test of renal function 331 340  
coefficient 343  
in lymph 177  
nitrogen of blood 110  
of skin 480  
in plasma 177  
in serum 15 40 471  
in urine 352 353 364  
fetal 470  
Creatinuria in normal persons 341  
Cresote olfactory coefficient 379  
Crowns tooth See Teeth  
Crunch xiphisternal 4  
Cryoscopy test of renal function 341  
of urine 318  
Crystals Charcot's 346  
in urinary sediments 367  
in urine 368  
Curare 78  
Cure 99  
Cuspid teeth deciduous dimensions of 671  
eruption according to age 669  
mesiodistal width 674  
permanent dimensions of 670  
Cusps of molar teeth 674  
Cuticle thickness 466  
Cycle anovulatory 403  
female sex endocrine 348  
menstrual 40 403  
length of 404  
Cyclobarbitol 481  
Cyclopentenophenanthrene structural formula 244  
Cyclophoria 506  
Cyclotriphenyl 506  
Cyst in serum 108  
Cyst in serum 108  
in urine 343 363  
Cytology of bone marrow 69  
of cerebrospinal fluid 319  
DECAY 799  
Decolour 76  
sodium 776  
Defecation frequency of 704  
Defect mass 600  
Deficiency of trogen 554 555  
Dehydroandrosterone structural formula 636  
Dehydroascorbic acid 766  
Dehydrofolate sodium solution 76  
Dehydrocholic acid 776  
Dehydroandrosterone 536  
Delta water 306  
Delvinal sodium 760  
Demerol hydrochloride 6  
Density of cold points of skin 470  
distribution of dentin 68  
of enamel 6  
of hypercemented root tips 678  
Dental caries relation of fluorine content to 664  
tissues specific weight and index of refraction 650  
Dentin calcium in 647  
carbon dioxide in 647  
density distribution 68  
fluorine in 643 644 645  
index of refraction 640  
magnesium in 642  
phosphorus in 68  
relative hardness 656 657 658  
specific weight 650  
weight relative to enamel and cementum 647 640  
Dentition See also Teeth  
chronology of 68  
deciduous normal complement 61  
development of 670 661  
Depression freezing point of blood and serum 99  
Dermatomes of skin 477 478  
47 47  
Desoxycorticosterone acetate 76  
Deuteron 799  
Deuteroporphyrin absorption spectra 13  
physical constants 131  
structural formula 130  
Deuteroporphyrin 9 type III 134  
Derivat standard See Standard  
Dextrose 7  
Diadokinesia 793  
Diameter mean corpuscular of erythrocytes 43  
red blood cell 43 46  
Distal values blood 293  
Distal test of renal function 340 341  
Dichlorophenamine hydrochloride 776  
Dimarol 716  
Disruption of teeth and 667  
Dietary allowance daily 716  
analysis food composition table 703  
Diethylstilbestrol 76  
Digalen 776  
Digestion effect on cardiac output 6  
Digestion rate of passage of inert materials through 71

- Digifolia 776  
 Digipoten 776  
 Digitalis 776  
 Digitoxin injection 776  
 Dihydromorphinone hydrochloride 776  
 Dihydrotheclin 777  
 Dihydroxyestrin 543  
 Dihydroxytestosterone 776  
 Dilantin 776  
 Dilaudid 776  
 Dilution tests renal 334  
 Dimenformin pro folin 777  
 Dimensions of deciduous teeth 671  
     of permanent teeth 672  
 Diodes clearcut test of renal function 332 340  
 Diom 777  
 Diphenylhydantoin sodium 776  
 Diphtheria antitoxin 776  
     toxin 776  
     toxoid 777  
 Diodoquin 777  
 Direct arterial blood pressure 30  
 Discrimination two point 296  
 Disease eruption of teeth and 607  
 Disintegration 790  
     constant 790  
 Distribution law Poisson's 801  
     random sampling 712  
 Doryl 775  
 Dose(s) of drugs 773-767  
     for children 773  
     tolerance 802  
 Drisdol 780  
 Drugs and their doses 773 787  
     effect on color of urine 301  
     international standards 780  
 DuBois chart of body surface 676  
     formula of body surface 577  
     578 579 580 581 582  
 Ducts ejaculatory 379  
     seminal 377  
 Ductus deferens 377  
 Duodenal juice pancreatic enzymes in 50  
     volume 71 240  
 Duodenum 443  
     length of 64  
 Duration normal of labor 418  
 Dyspnea 700
- Eggs highest total acidity 340  
 Ejaculate semen 384  
     clotting and liquefaction 357  
     volume 384 385  
 Ejaculatory ducts 379  
 Elbow bones of development 411  
     range of motion 450  
 Electrocardiogram(s) after middle age 15  
     application of electrodes for chest leads 9  
     effect of posture 11  
     esophageal leads 13  
     excitation process 11  
     in infancy and childhood 14  
     normal 10  
     in limb leads 8  
     P waves 8  
     P R interval 8  
     precordial leads 1 1<sub>2</sub>  
     QRS complex 8  
     Q T interval 11  
     relation of ventricular complexes in indirect leads 10  
     T wave 10  
     time relations 11  
     U waves 1  
     variations in 13  
 Electrodes application for chest leads in electrocardiograms 9  
 Electroencephalogram(s)  
     alpha rhythm 300 307  
     average amplitude of potentials 310  
     beta rhythm 306  
     delta waves 306  
     fast waves 306  
     focal signs 310  
     hyperventilation effect on 309 311  
     instability of pattern 308  
     irregularity 308  
     normal patterns 307 308  
     patterns in children 31  
     sleep effect on 311  
     slow waves 306  
 Electrolytes in cerebrospinal fluid 316 317 320  
 Electromagnetic spectrum 790  
 Electron 799  
     volt 799  
 Elsberg test of smell 730  
 Embryo determination of age 443  
     relations of age size and weight 44  
 Emetine bismuth iodid 777  
     hydrochloride 777  
 Emmenon 777  
 Emotions effect on cardiac output 6  
 Enamel calcium in 687  
     carbon dioxide in 682  
     composition of 641  
     density distribution 677  
     fluorine in 643 681 680
- Enamel index of refraction 680  
     magnesium in 640  
     phosphorus in 687  
     relative hardness 687 687  
     688  
     specific weight 680  
     weight relative to dentin and cementum 677 680  
 Encephalogram 300  
     normal 301  
 Encephalography 300  
 Endocrine(s) cycle female sex 645  
     in pregnancy 415  
     relations of pituitary gland and placenta during pregnancy 410  
 Endolymph 517  
 Endometrium progesterone function 662  
 Energy equivalence of mass 730  
     requirements in various activities 690  
 Enzymes in cerebrospinal fluid 318  
     in gastric contents 237  
     pancreatic in blood serum 790  
     in duodenal juice 280  
     in feces 260  
     in urine 284  
 Eosinophils 57  
     in bone marrow 84 84  
     of infants 86  
     in pregnancy 87  
     in peripheral blood of infants 86  
     range 57  
     in Schilling hemogram 56  
 Ephedrine hydrochloride 777  
     sulphate 777  
 Epidermis thickness 466  
 Epididymis 377  
 Epinephrine 777  
 Epiphyseal union age order 443  
 Epiphysis 437  
 Epithelial cells in gastric contents 730  
     in urine 365  
 Epithelium urinary 363  
 Epsom salt 779  
 Ergonovine maleate 77  
 Ergotamine tartrate 777  
 Ergothioneine of blood 110  
     nitrogen of blood 110  
 Error(s) hematologic 87 90  
     probable See Probable  
     standard See Standard  
 Eruption of deciduous teeth 639  
     order of 684  
     of permanent teeth 667 668  
     669  
     of teeth according to age 659  
     diet and 667  
     disease and 667  
     in premature children 667

- Eruption of teeth race and 667  
sex and 665  
time of teeth 670
- Erythroblasts in bone marrow 84  
of infants 86
- Erythrocyt (s) color index 47  
count in children 41  
during pregnancy 410  
at various altitudes 37  
crenated 1  
during pregnancy 41  
errors in counting 59 90  
fragility 51  
frequency distribution during pregnancy 410  
hematoctent readings at various altitudes 45  
hemoglobin concentration 37  
hemolysis 51  
hyperchromic 46  
hypo chromic 46  
mutating factor 233  
mean corpuscular diameter 43  
effect of altitude on 44  
hemoglobin 46  
concentration at various altitudes 47  
thickness 44  
effect of altitude on 45  
volume 46  
at various altitudes 47  
diameter thickness ratio 46  
volume 46  
Mexican hat 4  
normal 4  
résumé of 5  
normo chromic 46  
number of 37  
oval 4  
packed cell volume 46 60  
reticulated 50  
staining index 47  
sedimentation method 49  
rat 48  
during pregnancy 411  
shape 41  
sickleocytes  
phocytes 42  
sugrlof 42  
in urine 36+ 36  
volume index 47 49
- Erythrol tetra nit 77
- Erythro-myeloid reaction 43  
in bone marrow of infant 86
- Echinin 774
- Esophagus  
constrictions 8  
length of 64
- Esophoria 506
- Eotropia 506
- Estradiol 543 77  
benzoate international standard 547  
structural formula 544  
in urine in pregnancy 501
- Estrane 543
- Estrin 543  
structural formula 544  
in urine in pregnancy 501
- Estrogen(s) 7 5  
bio-assay 546  
bio hemistry 543  
biological actions 544  
blood values 549  
deficiency 541 5 5  
effect 543  
vaginal smear method 542  
excretion 548  
in urine 549  
physiology 544  
sources 543  
in urine of men 5  
values by bio-assay 547  
in pregnancy 541  
in serum 549  
in urine 549
- Estrone 535 543 7  
international standard 547  
structural formula 544  
in urine in pregnancy 501
- Estrone-podu hormone in international unit 54
- Ethmoid sinus 530
- Ethyl c ribamate 760
- Ethylaminobenzoate 717
- Ethylchaumograte 77
- Ethylmorphine hydrochloride 717
- Etioporphyrin(s) fluorescence spectrum 137  
physical constants 131  
structural formula 130
- Euglobulin in serum protein 103
- Eupnea 700
- Evaluation times of various articles of diet 740
- Evip soluble 78
- Excitation process 11
- Excretion of coproporphyrin I 133  
of estrogens 548  
of 17 ketosteroids 539 540  
541 548  
tests of renal function 338  
of urobilinogen in feces and urine 67
- Exercise muscular effect on cardiac output 6  
tolerance tests 7
- Exophoria 06
- Exotropia 506
- Extinction of glucose tolerance test 143  
in children 145
- Extinction 777 779
- Eye 495  
accommodation 504 505  
clinical perimetry 510
- Eye dimensions 495  
field of fixation 505  
of rotation re-ording 507  
intra-ocular pressure or tension 505 506  
isopters in normal field of vision 510  
muscle balance 506  
physiologic blindness 508  
test American Medical Association far type chart 457  
near type card 500  
rating reading card 501  
Snellen's type 49  
visual fields 509  
extent for white 511
- Eye lid skin thickness 466
- Face skin thickness 466  
sweat gland distribution 467
- Facial nerve 449
- Factor(s) H<sub>r</sub> 76  
Rh 76
- Fallopian tubes 399  
changes induced by pregnancy 407  
contractility 400
- Farley St Clair and Reisinger classification of neutrophils 56
- Fast waves in electroencephalogram 307
- Fasting influence on lipids 191
- Fat in body 649 110  
caloric value 693  
composition of feces 756  
757 760  
content of liver 763  
of skin 480  
daily dietary allowances 717  
diet high effect on color of feces 26  
in food 718-740 769-761  
in human milk 419  
ingestion influence on lipids 179  
in nails 49  
neutral in blood corpuscles 119  
during pregnancy 413  
in gallbladder bile 5  
in rib bile 764  
in plasma or serum 116  
nitrogen tolerance test 113  
oxidation 594  
retention on milk diet 77  
tolerance test 14 151
- Fatigue laboratory index 7
- Fatty acids in blood during pregnancy 413  
in gallbladder bile 5  
in liver bile 764  
in serum 116
- Fecal excretion of coproporphyrin I 133

- Feces ammonia content 258  
 amount 255  
 bulk 255  
 caloric value 256  
 chemical composition 256  
 260  
 color 254 255  
 dry matter in 255  
 fat composition 256 257  
 food in 255  
 form and consistency 254  
 histamine content 260  
 lead in 259  
 minerals in 258  
 mucus in 255  
 nitrogen composition 258  
 odor of 255  
 pancreatic enzymes 260  
 protein content 258  
 trace elements in 259  
 urobilinogen content 259  
 267  
 water content 255 256  
 weight 260  
 Fel bovis 777  
 Femur angle neck to shaft of 457  
 development 444  
 epiphyseal union 443  
 Feosol 777  
 Ferric ammonium citrate 777  
 Ferrihemoglobin 126  
 Ferrous sulfate 777  
 Fetal circulation 425  
 Fetus 422  
 blood of 424  
 circulation in 424  
 determination of age 423  
 length 422  
 pulse 4  
 relations of age size and weight 4 2  
 skull of 426  
 weight 424  
 Fibrils of skin thickness 466  
 Fibrin in plasma 109  
 during pregnancy 414  
 Fibrinogen 69  
 in plasma 107 109  
 Fibula development 443  
 epiphyseal union 443  
 Field rations Army 771  
 Finger range of motion 452  
 Finger-to-finger test 293  
 Finger-to-nose test 293  
 Fingernails rate of growth 491  
 Fish highest total acidity 240  
 Fishberg concentration test of renal function 335 340  
 dilution test of renal function 335 340  
 Fission nuclear 800  
 Fixation of eye field of 508  
 Flatus colonic twenty four hour excretion 232  
 Fluid(s) amniotic 4 1  
 body 172  
 extracellular 172  
 volume 173  
 Fluid(s) labyrinthine 517  
 acmenal 384  
 synovial 408  
 Fluorescence spectra of porphyrins 132  
 Fluorides in urine 368  
 Fluorine content relation to dental caries 694  
 in dentin 693 694 685  
 in enamel 683 694 695  
 Folic acid 764 777  
 daily dietary allowances 717  
 in urine 363 369  
 Follicle-stimulating hormone 864  
 Follutein 776 718  
 Food(s) ash in 752  
 calcium concentration 754  
 cholesterol concentration 749 750  
 composition table for dietary analysis 759  
 in feces 255  
 in gastric contents 299  
 iodine in 751  
 mineral components 741  
 and nutritional requirements during pregnancy 474  
 nutritive values 718-740  
 organic acid constituents 750  
 oxalate concentration 754  
 potassium contents 744-747  
 purine concentration 751  
 rate of passage through digestive tract 251  
 requirements for the Army 771  
 sodium contents 744 747  
 values 716-772  
 Foodstuffs caloric value 593  
 Foot Boehler angle 457 468  
 bones of development 442  
 maturation of 44  
 eccrine glands in 486  
 ossification 439  
 phalanges of epiphyseal union 443  
 skin temperature 469  
 supernumerary ossicles 444  
 Forearm bones of development 441  
 ossification 440  
 skin temperature 469  
 sweat gland distribution 487  
 Forehead petechial reaction 67  
 skin temperature 469  
 the knee 466  
 Formula(s) DuBois of body surface 577 578 579 580  
 581 585  
 height weight of calories per square meter of body surface per hour 583  
 structural of hemoglobin compounds 1 2  
 Fossa infraclavicular petechial reaction 65
- Fowler's solution 761  
 Fractionation of 17 ketosteroids 542  
 of serum proteins 101 103  
 Fragility capillary 61  
 Freezing point of cerebrospinal fluid 315 320  
 depression of amniotic fluid 4 0 471  
 of blood 99  
 of cerebrospinal fluid 470  
 of serum 99 185 470  
 421  
 of urine fetal 470  
 of liver bile 764  
 Frequency distribution(s) 701  
 skewed 701  
 symmetrical 701 707  
 Friedman test for pregnancy 565 566  
 Frog tests for pregnancy 565  
 Frontal sinus 530  
 Fructose tolerance test of liver function 73  
 Fruits highest total acidity 240  
 Fustin 777  
 Function utricular Grasse's test 517  
 Fundus uteri height during pregnancy 406  
 Gag reflex 291  
 Galactose absorption from small intestine 246  
 tolerance test 145 148  
 intravenous 269  
 of liver function 73  
 oral 268  
 urinary excretion 147  
 Gallbladder 275  
 bile 275 276  
 biliary drainage 270  
 evacuation of 778  
 Caloric test of position 591  
 Gametokinetic gonadotrophin 564  
 Gamma rays 800  
 wavelength 795  
 Gas(es) colonic composition of 75  
 gangrene antitoxin 777  
 rate of passage through digestive tract 251  
 Gastric acidity 730 731  
 after alcohol meal 733  
 age and 235  
 blood sugar curves and 779  
 during first month of age 231  
 normal standards 735 735  
 analysis 7 5  
 chart 2 3  
 contents acidity after alcohol meal 733  
 bacteria in 730  
 bile in 9

- Gastric contents blood in 29  
chlorid concentration 238  
color 29  
enzymes in 237  
epithelial cells in 230  
extrinsic factor 33  
food in 23  
histamine stimulation 237  
hydrochloric acid in 230  
normal range 233  
intrinsic factor 233  
leukocytes in 29  
mucus in 29  
odor 33  
organic acid in 37  
secretions and 25  
volume 27  
emptying time 239 241  
juice acidity in children 239  
analysis in child 23  
chemical constituents 238  
fasting in children 233  
volume of 238  
in children 33  
secreted per day 176  
secretion acidity of age and 239  
fasting rate of formation 29  
hydrochloric acid in 237  
insulin test 33 39  
pH 30  
tonus 7
- Gelatin absorption from small intestine 246 47  
highest total acidity 240  
Genealogy of blood cells 80  
Genitalia female 307 393  
male 80  
external 370  
Gentian violet 779  
Gestation period length 418  
Gluc(ald) adrenal 35  
apocrine 486  
bulbo urethral 348  
Cowper's 348  
eccrine 486  
pineal weight of 641  
prostate 340 See also *Prostate*  
sebaceous 489  
sudoriferous 486 See also *Sudoriferous*  
Glabrous salt 283  
Globulin in blood during pregnancy 413  
in cerebrospinal fluid 40  
gamma in serum antigen partition 109  
human immune 178  
in pancreatic juice 276  
in plasma 107  
serum 107  
in infants 106  
protein 103  
Globulins in blood 160  
Gloss in 178  
Glossary of terms in isotope research 799
- Glossopharyngeal nerve 91  
Glucose absorption from colon 302  
from small intestine 245  
46  
in blood 167  
in cerebrospinal fluid 317  
318 390  
curve in children 143  
in prostatic secretion 352  
in saliva 699  
in seminal fluid 353 356  
in serum 315  
tolerance 140  
curve factors influencing 10  
during pregnancy 410  
tests 139  
Exton Rose 143  
in children 140  
intravenous 144 140  
one-dose 141  
oral 139  
in pregnancy 149  
Glucose insulin tolerance test 140 146  
Glutamic acid in saliva 698  
699  
in serum 108  
in urine 34  
Glutamine in blood 110  
in serum 108  
Glutathione of blood 110  
nitrogen of blood 110  
Gluteal region petechial reaction in children 11  
Glycerol tolerance test 145  
149  
Glyceryl trimyristate 78  
Glycin in serum 108  
Glycocholic acid in urine 307  
Glycogen in liver 63  
Glycosuria 307  
Glycotauric 778  
Gold sodium thiosulfate 718  
test colloidal of liver function 770 771  
Gonadotrophic hormones 404  
Gonadotrophin(s) bioassay 564  
blood values 570  
chorionic 64 569 778  
in pregnancy 570  
tests for 560  
gametone 564  
in serum 565  
in urine 64 569 570  
values 567 568  
in men 571  
in pregnancy 571  
serum 571  
Graham Cole test of liver function 213  
Grahn's test for utricular function 517  
Gram 81  
Granules leucithin 381  
Grubloblasts in bone marrow in pregnancy 87
- Granulocytes in bone marrow in pregnancy 87  
Graph temperature 401  
Graphesthesia 296  
Growth charts 597  
normal standards 597-634  
for adults 631  
for children 597  
Guano of blood 110  
Guanidine in serum 109  
Guinea hen highest total acidity 40  
Gynagen 177
- Hair 483  
color 483  
diameter 484  
length 483  
life span 484  
number 483  
rate of growth 484  
thickness 484  
Half life 800  
Halibut liver oil 778  
Hand bones of development 441  
maturation of 441  
eccrine glands in 486  
ossification 439  
phalanges of epiphyses also on 443  
skin temperature 489  
sweat gland distribution 487  
Hardness relative of teeth 680-683  
Harris Benedict standards of basal metabolism 685 690  
Head sagittal section 390  
Hearing 517  
tests 61  
threshold acuity measurements 519  
Heart aluminum in 653  
anatomy x ray 11  
anterior border 16  
outline 18  
aortic measurement 3  
block aorticular 3  
blood diameter 19  
calcium content 649 651  
cardiac function tests 6  
index 11  
output 6  
cardiothoracic ratio 13  
in infants 24  
changes induced by pregnancy 407  
chloride in 648  
blood content 649 651  
classification 11  
coppe in 653  
diaphragmatic contour 18  
surface 16  
fat content 649 651  
horizontal depth diameter 20  
inflow tract analysis 24  
lateral diagonal diameter 20

- Heart lead in** 652 6.3  
 left atrium x ray analysis 25  
 auricular diameter 20  
 ventricle x ray analysis 24  
 ventricular diameter 19  
 wall thickness 20  
 longitudinal diameter 19  
 magnesium content 649 6.1  
 manganese in 6.3  
 normal 3  
 outflow tract analysis 24  
 phospholipid content 6.2  
 phosphorus content 649  
 positions for anterior oblique views 17  
 posterior silhouette 18  
 potassium content 649 6.1  
 premature contractions 3  
 pulmonary vessels measurement of 23  
 rate normal 3  
 retrocardiac border 16  
 rhythm 3  
 right auricle x ray analysis 25  
 auricular diameter 20  
 ventricle x ray analysis 24  
 ventricular cord 20  
 shadow measurements of 18  
 in infants 18  
 sodium content 649 6.1  
 sounds 3  
 extracardiac 4  
 murmurs 4  
 quality 4  
 surface area 20  
 estimation of 20  
 nomograms for 21  
 prediction for 22  
 tin in 653  
 transverse diameter 18  
 average table of 19  
 nomograms for 21  
 percentage relationship to internal diameter of chest 25  
 prediction for 22  
 volumetric reconstruction 23  
 water content 649 6.1  
 weight of 641 644 651  
 in children 643  
 x ray criteria for chamber analysis 24  
 examination 16  
 left anterior oblique position 18  
 postero-anterior view 16  
 right anterior oblique position 16
- Heat effect on cardiac output** 6  
 loss 635  
 perception 295  
 production 635
- Heel to-knee test** 293  
**Heel to-toe test** 294
- Height in children** 599  
 calories for 599  
 normal standards 597-634  
 for adults 631  
 for children 597  
 relation to strength 595  
 standing and vital capacity of men 210  
 of women 212  
 table for men 633  
 for women 634
- Height weight formula of calories per square meter of body surface per hour** 583  
 normal 595
- Height weight age tables** 600
- Heliotrope oil of olfactory coefficient** 529
- Hematocrit nomogram for calculation of** 77  
 reading 40  
 of blood corpuscles 185  
 during pregnancy 410  
 of serum 185
- Hematogones in bone marrow of infants** 86
- Hematoporphyrin absorption spectra** 132
- Fluorescence spectrum** 132  
 physical constants 131  
 structural formula 137
- Hematoporphyrin O type III** 134
- Heme structural formula** 124
- Hemin structural formula** 124
- Hemoglobin absorption spectra** 125  
 in the aged 38  
 carbon monoxide 126  
 compounds structural formulas 124  
 concentration of erythrocytes 37  
 mean corpuscular 46  
 at various altitudes 47  
 determinations percentage of frequency distributions in Negroes 49  
 in white persons 39  
 during pregnancy 411 412  
 errors in counting 59 90  
 green 18  
 inactive 126  
 blood concentrations 127  
 in infants 38  
 nomogram for calculation of 97  
 normal values 33  
 in peripheral blood of infants 86  
 total of blood 123  
 types of 123  
 values in child en 41  
 in Negroes 40  
 in white persons 40  
 at various altitudes 41
- Hemogram Schilling** 56
- Hemolysis of erythrocytes** 51
- Heparin sodium** 778
- Heredity of blood groups and types** 77  
 of M and N agglutinogens 77  
 of Rh blood types 78
- Hering Breuer reflex** 199
- Hertzian waves wavelength** 795
- Heterophoria** 506
- Hexamine** 778 779
- Hexavitamin tablets** 778
- Hexobarbital soluble** 778
- Hexylresorcinol** 779
- Hip range of motion** 453 454
- Hippuran clearance test of renal function** 340
- Hippuric acid synthesis test of liver function** 272 340  
 341  
 test of liver function 273  
 in urine 359 360 368
- Histamine content of feces** 260  
 phosphate 779  
 stimulation of gastric contents 237
- Histidine in serum** 105  
 in urine 354
- Hodges and Eyster estimation of surface area of heart** 90
- Homatropine methylbromide** 778
- Hormone(s) anterior pituitary** 40-  
 in cerebro spinal fluid 318  
 chorionic gonadotrophic 569  
 corpus luteum 78  
 estrus producing 785  
 follicle stimulating 564  
 gonadotrophic 564  
 interstitial-cell-stimulating 564  
 luteinizing 564  
 male international unit 785  
 sex male 535 See also An d o r e  
 in urine 364 365
- Hr factor** 76
- Humerus carrying angle** 456  
 457  
 epiphyseal union 447
- Hyaluronidase in seminal fluid** 347
- Hydroiodic acid syrup** 779
- Hydrochloric acid dilute** 7 8  
 in gastric contents 230  
 normal range 433  
 juice 238  
 secretion 437
- Hydrogen in colonic gas** 253  
 ion concentration of blood 157 158 166  
 of cerebrospinal fluid 316 370  
 of contents of small intestine 244  
 of feces 256 260  
 of gallbladder bile 276

- Hydrogen ion concentration of  
gastric juice °73  
secretions 30  
of human milk 419  
of liver bile °11  
of pancreatic juice ° 8  
°54  
of prostatic secretion  
34  
of saliva 60° 609  
of seminal fluid 395  
of serum during preg-  
nancy 413  
of skin 479  
of sweat 4 9 494  
of synovial fluid 408  
of urine 301 319  
of vagina 399
- Hymen 394  
Hyoscine hydr bromine ° 8  
789  
Hyoscyamus tincture °°8  
Hyperalgia °9  
Hyperphoria °06  
Hypertropia 506  
Hyperventilation effect on  
electroencephalogram 309  
311  
Hypoglossal °95  
Hypoglossal nerve 203  
Hypophoria °06  
Hypotropia 506  
Hysterol ° 6
- Icn(s) cream highest total  
acidity 40  
highest total acidity 240  
Icteric index of gallbladder  
bile 20  
Icterus index °06  
of serum 167  
test of liver function °73  
Ileum 243  
Indazole derivatives in urine  
302 3 3 364  
in serum 109  
Incisor teeth chronology of  
653  
deciduous dimensions of  
6°1  
eruption of 659  
eruption according to age  
6 9  
time 670  
mesiodistal width 6 4  
permanent dimensions of  
6°~  
eruption of 667 668  
669  
weight of 6°9  
shape of 6°4  
width of 673
- Index cardiac ■  
color of erythrocytes 47  
fatigue laboratory °  
icterus 256  
of serum 187  
of Leane of renal function  
333
- Index of refraction of dental  
tissues 650  
refractive of blood 96  
of cerebrospinal fluid 315  
°70  
of serum 95  
saturation of erythrocytes  
47  
Schilling °8  
Schneider °  
thoracic 196 19  
volume of erythrocytes 4°  
49  
Ind can in blood 110 33  
in serum 15° 15° 30°  
365  
Indigo-carmin excretion test  
of renal function 334 341  
Indirect arterial blood pres-  
sure 30  
Indole in serum 109  
Infants abdominal reflex 294  
albumin globulin ratio 108  
basophil range °  
cardiothoracic ratio °1  
dimensions of heart shadow  
3  
of thoraco-abdominal cavity  
°3  
electrocardiograms of 14  
cosinophil range 57  
excretion of creatine 303  
of creatinine 303  
fat composition of feces °5°  
°03  
gastric emptying time 239  
240  
Gastrointestinal passage time  
of milk in 201  
grasping reflex 295  
hemoglobin in 38  
leukocyte count °  
lipids in 118  
lymphocyte range °  
marrow count in 86  
monocyte range °7  
 Moro reflex 38  
nervous system 3°  
neutrophil range 5°  
neutrophilic myelocytes  
range in 5  
in newborn normal pulse °  
pancreatic enzymes in duo-  
denal juice 41  
peripheral blood count in 86  
plantar reflex 9  
plasma protein 104  
pulse normal 5  
respiratory rate 01  
response to stimuli 50~  
sedimentation rate 45  
sensibility 98  
serum albumin 106  
globulin 106  
proteins 104 108  
stomach shape 205  
sucking reflex 204  
visual acuity 500  
vital capacity 207
- Inferior horns of lateral ven-  
tricles °01  
Infra red rays wavelength °95  
Innervation segmental of skin  
4 3 4°  
Inositol °60  
Insulin ° 8  
international unit 76  
test of gastric secretion 234  
°37  
tolerance test 145 146  
Insulin adjuvant tolerance  
test 145 146°  
Interaction of radiation with  
matter 500  
Interstitial-cell stimulating  
hormone °1  
Intestinal juices volume se-  
creted per day 176  
tract pressure required to  
rupture 20  
Intestine(s) aluminum in 603  
calcium content 649 651  
chloride in 645  
chlorine content 649 651  
copper in 6 3  
fat content 649 651  
lead in 603  
magnesium content 649 651  
manganese in 603  
phospholipid content 60  
phosphorus content 649 651  
potassium content 649 651  
silver in 6 3  
small absorption from 45  
of amino acids from 246  
of ascorbic acid from  
°46  
of casein from °46 °47  
of gelatin from 46° 447  
of sugars from 245  
chemical composition of  
contents 244 245  
emptying time °43  
length of 64~  
motor activities 43  
osmotic pressure of con-  
tents 44 4  
pant references from 247  
pH of contents 244  
tonus 43  
sodium content 651  
sulfur content 540  
tin in 653  
water content 649 651  
weight of 651
- Intoxication 778  
Intraocular pressure or ten-  
sion °05 °06  
Intrapleural pressure 199  
Intrapulmonary pressure 196  
Intrathoracic pressure 199  
Insulin clearance test of renal  
function 331 340  
Iodine blood 168  
in cerebrospinal fluid 316  
3 0  
daily dietary allowances 717  
in food °31



- Iodine number of serum fatty acids 115  
 serum protein bound 168  
 strong solution 778  
 in urine 365  
 Iodobismutol with benzocaine 778  
 Ionization 800  
 Ipecac syrup 778  
 Iprat calcium 778  
 Iron in blood 166 187  
   daily dietary allowances 716  
   effect on color of feces 55  
   in foods 718-740 750-761  
   in human milk 419  
   in plasma 160  
   in serum 166 167 187  
   in urine 360 368  
 Irrigation mass 520  
 Isberg and Newburgh concentration test of renal function 335 340  
 Isoagglutination 74  
   reaction 73  
 Isoagglutinin(s) of blood 72  
   titer 78  
 Isoandrosterone 536  
 Isober 800  
 Isohemolysis 73  
 Isoleucine in saliva 008  
   in serum 108  
   in urine 304  
 Isometric transition 800  
 Isopters in normal field of vision 510  
 Isotone 800  
 Isotops(s) 788-802 800  
   cyclotron produced 785  
   research glossary of terms 790  
   stable 794  
 JEJUNAL secretions fasting osmotic pressure 45  
 Jejunum 243  
 Jimson weed 783  
 Joints 444  
   anatomical angles 456  
 Junket highest total acidity 240  
 KARYONLASTS in bone marrow in pregnancy 87  
 Karyocytes in bone marrow in pregnancy 87  
 Keratin in hair 445  
   in nails 494  
 Ketohydroxyestrin 243  
 Ketone bodies of blood 191  
   in urine 361 368  
 Ketosteroids 17 535  
   alpha 536  
   beta 536  
   bio-assay of urine 537 538  
   biochemistry 535  
   colorimetric determination in urine 538  
 Ketosteroids excretion of 539  
   540 541 542  
   fractionation 542  
   normal values 539  
   day and night 541  
   in urine 369  
 Kidney(s) 370  
   aluminum in 633  
   calcium content 649 651  
   calices 378  
   chloride in 648  
   chlorine content 649 651  
   copper in 653  
   fat content 649 651  
   fixation 327  
   lead in 652 653  
   magnesium content 649 651  
   manganese in 653  
   motility 327  
   pelvis 378  
   phospholipid content 652  
   phosphorus content 649 651  
   position 325  
   potassium content 649 651  
   size 370 377  
   sodium content 649 651  
   sterol content 652  
   tin in 653  
   water content 649 651  
   weight of 376 377 641 651  
   in children 3 7 643  
 Knee range of motion 450  
 Kobrak method of stimulation 524  
 Korotkin 776 778  
 LABIAL angle skin of thickness 466  
 Labor 416  
 Labyrinth of ear 516  
   membranous 517  
   osseous 516  
 Labyrinthine fluid 517  
 Lacrimal fluid Schirmer test 508  
 Lactation 419  
 Lactic acid in blood 150  
   in cerebrospinal fluid 317  
   320  
   in seminal fluid 386  
   in sweat 448  
   in synovial fluid 4 8  
   test of liver function 69  
   73  
   tolerance test 147  
   in urine 368  
 Lactogen in human milk 419  
 Lamb highest total acidity 440  
 Lanatide C 778  
 Langer's lines 478  
 Larynx 193  
 Lashmet and Newburgh concentration test of renal function 330 340  
 Lateral ventricle of brain 301  
 Lavender oil of olfactory coefficient 599  
 Lead in blood 167 360  
   in feces 259 260 360  
   in food 259  
   in long bones 657 658  
   in rib 653  
   in tissues 652  
   in urine 360 361 368  
 Leads esophageal in electrocardiogram 13  
   limb in electrocardiograms 8  
   precordial in electrocardiogram 12  
 Lecithin in blood 118  
   bodies 351  
   granules 381  
   in human milk 419  
   in serum 189  
 Leg ossification 499  
   skin temperature 460  
   sweat gland distribution 487  
 Lemon oil of olfactory coefficient 529  
 Length measures of 812  
 Lentine 770  
 Leptazol 779  
 Leucine in serum 108  
   in urine 354  
 Leukocyte(s) count in children differential 57  
   in infants 57  
   normal 57  
   total 54  
   during pregnancy 410  
   errors in counting 83 90  
   in gastric contents 2 9  
   lymphocytes 57  
   monocytes 57  
   polymorphonuclear basophilic 56  
   eosinophilic 58  
   neutrophilic 55 See also Neutrophils  
   in urine 364 366  
 Levulose absorption from small intestine 246  
   tolerance test 147 149  
   of liver function 969  
   773  
 Licorice highest total acidity 240  
 Lid reflex 591  
 Life table(s) 803-811  
   for total United States population 806  
   white United States population 809  
 Ligamentum annulara 193  
 Lime water 110  
 Linear measures useful equivalents 516  
 Linoleic acid in serum fatty acids 115  
 Lipas in blood serum 987 988  
   in duodenal juice 79 250  
   51  
   in gastric juice 245  
 Lipid(s) blood 114 116 188  
   cholesterol 114  
   esters 115

- Lipid(s)** blood corpuscles 119  
daily and seasonal variations 170  
fatty acid 115  
phospholipid 115  
of cells 118  
during menstruation 119  
during pregnancy 10  
in infants and children 118  
influence of fasting on 171  
off t ingestion on 10  
metabolism liver function tests 11  
in plasma 116  
in prostatic secretion 33  
relative to age 119  
to body build 10  
in serum 116 183  
in urine 359
- Lipiodol** 79
- Liquefaction of seminal space** late 57
- Liquid measure(s)** 814  
useful equivalents 816
- Liter** 81
- Liver** 62  
albumin in 63  
bile 63 764  
calcium content 649 651  
chemical composition 762  
chloride in 645  
chlorine content 643 651  
copper in 63  
dimensions 76  
extract 779  
fat content 63 649 651  
function bil rubin tolerance test 26  
excretion of urobilinogen in feces and urine 6  
icterus index 66  
serum bil rubin 76  
tests 76  
dependent on protein metabolism alteration 279  
related to carbohydrate metabolism 263  
to detoxifying activities 7  
to dye excretion 76  
to lipid metabolism 71  
glycogen in 63  
hepatic blood flow 64  
injection 779  
lead in 650 653  
in guinea pig content 649 651  
manganese in 653  
measurements of 641  
phosphatase activity 263  
phospholipid content 65  
phosphorus content 649 651  
potassium content 649 651  
protein content 263  
silver in 653  
size 762  
sodium content 649 651  
solution 70
- Liver sterol content** 651  
with stomach 79  
sulfur content 649 651  
tin in 653  
water content 649 651  
weight of 651 644 651  
in children 643
- Lobocytes in bone marrow in pregnancy** 87
- Localization spot** 796
- Longevity maximum weight table based on** 639
- Lugol's solution** 776
- Lumb r region petechial reaction** 6
- Luminal** 781
- Lundsgaard's concentration test of renal function** 340  
dilution test of renal function 340  
modification of Volhard test 33
- Lung(s)** 197  
aluminum 653  
calcium content 649 651  
chloride in 649  
chlorine content 649 651  
copper in 653  
fat content 649 651  
int al pleural pressure 199  
intr al pulmonary pressure 199  
intrathoracic pressure 199  
lead in 653  
magnesium content 649 651  
manganese in 653  
phospholipid content 650  
phosphorus content 649 651  
potassium content 649 651  
silver in 653  
sodium content 649 651  
sterol content 65  
sulfur content 649  
tin in 653  
vital capacity 204 206  
volume 204  
water content 649 651  
weight of 641 651  
in children 643
- Luteinizing hormone** 664
- Lutocytin** 781
- Lymph** 147  
phospholipid content 650
- Lymphatics of bone marrow** 81  
of skin 377 478
- Lymphocytes** 57  
in bone marrow 81 85  
of infants 86  
in pregnancy 87  
in peripheral blood of infants 86  
range 57  
in Schilling hemogram 6  
in synovial fluid of knee 459
- Lysin in serum** 108  
in urine 354
- Macrocytes** 46
- Macrophage in synovial fluid of knee** 45)
- Magnesia magma** 779
- Magnesium in blood** 156 165  
in body 649 650  
in bone 649  
carbonate 773  
in cerebrospinal fluid 317 370  
citrate solution 779  
in dentin 652  
in enamel 68 644  
in feces 758 259 60  
in food 259 741-743  
in human milk 419  
oxide 773  
phosphate tribasic 779  
in saliva 697  
in serum 157  
in skin 479  
sulfate 770  
in teeth 653  
triethylate 79  
in urine 33 359 360 369
- Male fern** 74
- Malic acid in food** 706
- Mandelic acid** 719
- Manganese in blood** 167  
in foods 741 74 743  
in long bone 653  
in rib 653  
in urine 371 368
- Mannitol clearance test of renal function** 340  
hexamitate 779
- Maple sugar** 779 780
- Mariotte physiologic blood spot of 508**
- Marrow bone** 73  
aspiration 73  
blood supply 81  
count differential 83 84  
85  
in infants 86  
in pregnancy 87  
cytologic pattern 8  
erythro myeloid ratio 83  
lymphatics of 81  
in ribs of 79  
normal 83  
phospholipid content 652  
stroma 79
- Mass defect** 800  
energy equivalence of 790  
irrigation 80  
measures of 813  
number 800  
unit 800
- Maturation 659-694**  
coefficients 693
- Matter interaction of radiation with** 800
- Maxillary sinus** 330
- Maxillomandibular angle skin of thickness** 476
- McLean's index of renal function** 333 340
- Mean arithmetic** See Arithmetic
- Measles immun serum human** 779

- Measures domestic 614  
tables of 812-817
- Meat protein effect on color of  
feces 255
- Mechanics body 459
- Mecholyl bromide 773  
chloride 79
- Median 706
- Medinal 773 779
- Megakaryoblasts in bone mar-  
row 84
- Megakaryocytes in bone mar-  
row 81 86  
of infants 86
- Megaloblasts in bone marrow  
84  
of infants 86  
in pregnancy 87
- Melituria 307  
incidence 308
- Membrana tympani 516
- Men strength of 503
- Menadione 70 779
- Menarche age of 401
- Menopause 403  
gonadotrophin values during  
568
- Menstrual cycle 402 408  
length 404
- Menstruation effect on basal  
metabolism 587 592  
lipids during 119
- Mensuration pelvis 499
- Mentolabial furrow skin of  
thickness 400
- Meperidine 776
- Mercuhydrin sodium solution  
779
- Mercuripurin 779
- Mercurial ointment 779
- Mercuric salicylate 779  
succinimide 779
- Mercurophylline injection 779
- Mercurous chloride mild 779
- Mersalyl and theophylline 779
- Mesopin 778
- Mesoporphyrin absorption  
spectra 132  
fluorescence spectrum 132  
physical constants 131  
structural formula 130
- Mesoporphyrin  $\alpha$  type III 131
- Mesotron 800
- Metabolism basal 573 See  
also *Basal Metabolism*  
body 575  
protein liver function test  
263
- Metacholine chloride 779
- Metagranulocytes in bone mar-  
row in pregnancy 87
- Metakaryocytes in bone mar-  
row in pregnancy 87
- Metals trace in tissues 633  
in urine 361
- Metamucil 779
- Metamyelocytes in bone mar-  
row 84  
in pregnancy 87
- Metamyelocytes in Schilling  
hemogram 46
- Metandren 779
- Metaphyllin 774
- Meter 612
- Methane in colonic gas 233
- Methemalbumin 124  
absorption spectra 125
- Metheme structural formula  
124
- Methemoglobin absorption  
spectra 125  
in blood 126  
concentrations 127  
colorimetric determination  
127  
gasometric determination  
126
- Methenamine 779  
tetraoxide 763
- Methionine in serum 108  
in urine 354
- Methyl salicylate 779
- Methylene blue 779  
effect on color of urine 331  
excretion test of renal  
function 338 341
- Methylrosaniline chlorid 760
- Methyltestosterone 779
- Metrazol 779
- Metric and apothecaries  
equivalents 813  
system 812
- Mev 800
- Microcytes 46
- Milk diets fat retention 257  
effect on color of feces 233  
gastrointestinal passage time  
in infants 251  
highest total acidity 240  
human constituents 419  
specific gravity 419  
of magnesium 779  
phospholipid content 632  
sterol content 632
- Millet seeds rate of passage  
through digestive tract 331
- Millimicron 763
- Mineral(s) balance of normal  
men 339  
content of body 649 650  
in feces 238  
in urine 239
- Mineralization irregular of  
skeleton 445
- Mode 707
- Moderator 800
- Moisture in nails 493
- Molar teeth chronology of  
638  
cusps of 674  
deciduous dimensions of  
671  
eruption of 633  
retained 636  
eruption according to age  
639  
time 670  
mesiodistal width 674
- Molar teeth permanent dimen-  
sions of 674  
eruption of 667 669 669  
weight of 639  
unerupted relative hard-  
ness 687
- Molds urinary 874
- Monocytes 57  
in bone marrow 84 85  
in pregnancy 87  
in peripheral blood of in-  
fants 86  
range 57  
in infants 57  
in Schilling hemogram 56  
in synovial fluid of knee 439
- Moro reflex 296
- Morphine sulfate 779
- Morphology of spermatozoa  
390
- Mortality graduated annual  
rate 803  
table standard ordinary 804
- Mo enthal volume-specific  
gravity test of renal func-  
tion 336 341
- Motility of spermatozoa 391  
392
- Motion per eption passive 790
- Motor muscle tests electrical  
reactions 297  
point 296  
system 293
- Mucin in synovial fluid 458
- Mucus in feces 233  
in gastric contents 73  
in urine 366
- Murmurs cardiac 4
- Muscle(s) aluminum in 653  
balance of eye 590  
of body 707 711  
calcium content 649 651  
chloride in 618  
chlorine content 649 651  
copper in 633  
electrical reactions 236  
fat content 649 651  
lead in 633 633  
magnesium content 649 651  
manganese in 633  
phospholipid content 633  
phosphorus content 649 651  
potassium content 649 651  
skeletal 435  
sodium content 649 651  
sterol content 632  
stimulation effect on late  
pressure 649  
sulfur content 649 651  
tests motor 79  
tin in 633  
water content 649 651  
weight of 631
- Musculature skeletal 439  
voluntary 439
- Myeloblasts in bone marrow  
81 86  
of infants 86  
in pregnancy 87

- Myelocytes in bone marrow  
84 85  
of infants 86  
in pregnancy 87  
in peripheral blood of infants 81  
range in infants 57  
in Schilling hemogram 56
- Myoglobin 1 b  
absorption spectra 1 a  
Myohemoglobin, 1 8
- N trait for fast neutrons 800
- Naegele's rule 418
- Nails chemistry of 497
- Naphthalene effect on color of urine 351
- Naphthyl sodium " 893
- Nick eccrine glands in 447  
range of in tition 448
- Negros eruption time of teeth 170  
heart weight 644  
hemoglobin values in 40  
liver weight 644  
percentage of freju ney distributions of hemoglobin d te min tions 40  
s eeking trait 43  
vital capacity 206 207
- Nembutal 760
- Neostaphen mine 179
- Neotcinophen " 1
- Nicobinbreol 51
- Nical 7 9
- Neosalvarsan 749
- Neosilvol " 67
- Nestigmine bromide 7 9  
methylsulphate 760
- Neosynephine hydrochloride 780
- Neptunium 800
- Nerve(s) of bone marrow 79  
chorda tympani 30  
cranial 290  
facial 289  
glossopharyngeal 291  
hypoglossal 291  
olfactory 29  
roots position relative to vertebral column 297  
sensory 29  
spinal accessory 297  
trigeminal 29  
vagu 231
- Nervous system : autonomic 210 291  
infantile 97
- Neutrin 800
- Neutro 500
- th rinal 50
- Neutrophils 55  
Arneht classification 5  
in bone marrow 84  
Cooke and Ponder classification 56  
Foley St Cla and Ren nger classification 11
- Neutrophils Pons and Krum bha r cl sification 56  
range 57  
in infants 57  
E halling cl sification 56  
segmented in E halling hemogram 56  
stabnuclear in Schilling hemogram 56  
in synovial fluid of knee 459
- Newcomer e timation of surface area of heart 20
- Nixem 763 760  
in blood 137  
daily dietary allowance 716  
in foods 718 740 797 61  
in urine 363 369
- Niacinamide 763 750
- Nickel in urine 361 368
- Nicotinamide 760
- Nicotinic acid 763 780  
daily dietary allowance 716  
in urine 361 363
- Nikettamide 80
- Nitrates in urine 369
- Nitrogen amino in gastric juice 735  
in blood 187  
in body 650  
in colonic gas 703  
in contents of small intestine 415  
in feces 704 960  
nonprotein in amniotic fluid 400 421  
in blood 101 109 110 337  
in cerebrospinal fluid 4 0  
in gastric juice 35  
in human milk 419  
in lymph 117  
in pancreat c juice 2 2  
in plasma 117  
in prostatic secretion 35  
in saliva 637  
in seminal fluid 396  
in serum 4 0 4 1  
in skin 4 9 480  
in synovial fluid 4 5  
in tears 308  
nonurea of blood 110  
partition of albumin in serum 109  
in saliva 697 698  
in serum 101 187  
in skin 47 480  
in synovial fluid 4 5  
in tests 508  
total in prostatic secretion 397  
in urine 35 368  
fetal 4 0  
urinary c loric value 593
- Nitroglycerine 778
- Nomogram for computing basal metabol c rate 684
- Normoblasts in bone marrow 84 85  
of infants 86
- Normoblasts in bone marrow in pregnancy 87
- Normocytes 46
- No e 571  
skin of thickness 467
- Nostrils 115
- Novatropine 778 780
- Nucleospirous of skin 81 461
- Nucleon 601
- Nucleotide nitrogen of blood 110
- Nucleus 601
- Nuts highest total acidity 240
- Octofollic 170
- Odor of feces 255  
minimal identifiable 5 J  
of urine 3 0
- Oil of G ultheria 7 9
- Oleovitamin 780
- Olfact 5 9
- Olfaction 78
- Olfactory coefficient of odorous substances 5 J  
nerve 29
- Opium 760
- Or ng pel oil of olfactory coefficient 299
- Orange albumin highest total acidity 240
- Oretol 779
- Oretone 184
- Organic acid in gastric contents 237
- Oridin 780
- Ortol-sodium 780
- Orthophoria 507
- Os intermetatarsum 443  
peroneum 44  
tibiale (externum) 442  
trigunum 442  
vesalianum 443
- Osmot c p ssure of fasting jejun 1 scretions 245  
of secretions of small intestine 244 245
- Ossicles supernumerary of feet 447
- Ossification of arm 247  
of bones after birth 646  
centers 435  
of foot 439  
of forearm 440  
of hand 435  
of leg 439  
of skull 438  
of thigh 299
- Ousabain 780
- Ovalocytes 41 42
- Ovarian function vaginal smear method 22
- Ovaries 400
- Ovary changes induced by pregnancy 407  
chlo de n 648  
men urem nts of fetal weight 1 64 645

- Overton's rule 469  
 Ovulation 401  
 Ox bile extract 780  
 Oxalate concentration of foods 754  
 Oxalic acid in urine 368  
 Oxidation of carbohydrate 391  
 of fat 394  
 Oxygen capacity of blood 123  
 157  
 content of blood 123 166  
 187  
 saturation of blood 166  
 values in blood 179  
 Oxyheme structural formula 124  
 Oxyhemoglobin absorption spectra 124  
 Oxyphenarsine hydrochloride 780  
 P wave of electrocardiogram 8  
 PABA 780  
 Pain perception 295  
 point of skin 470  
 density and threshold 471  
 reference from small intestine 247  
 threshold in various regions of body 472  
 Palms of hand eccrine glands in 486  
 Pancreas 278  
 calcium content 649 651  
 chlorine content 649 651  
 fat content 649 651  
 magnesium content 649 651  
 measurements of 641  
 phospholipid content 652  
 phosphorus content 649 651  
 potassium content 649 651  
 sodium content 649 651  
 sterol content 652  
 water content 649 651  
 weight of 641 651  
 Pancreatic enzymes in blood serum 282  
 in duodenal juice 280  
 in urine 284  
 juice 278  
 chemical analysis 278  
 279 284  
 pH 2.8 284  
 physical appearance 278  
 specific gravity 278 284  
 titrable alkalinity 279  
 volume 281  
 secreted per day 176  
 Pancreatin 780  
 Pantothenic acid 763 780  
 in blood 137  
 in urine 369  
 Papaverine hydrochloride 780  
 Papillae of skin 466  
 Para aminobenzoic acid 763 780  
 Paraldehyde 780  
 Parathyroid 780  
 gland measurements of 642  
 weight of 642  
 Iaregonic 780  
 Paroidin 780  
 Latella cubiti 417  
 development 443  
 Ielvic inlet with diameters 493  
 mensuration 429  
 types 474 476 477  
 Pelvimetry 423 479 480  
 Ielvis android 426  
 anthrooid 477  
 ape 477  
 epiphyseal union 443  
 flat 476  
 gynecoid 424  
 male 476  
 platypelloid 476  
 renal 378  
 Penicillin 780  
 Penis 375  
 dimensions 374  
 length of 614  
 Pentaquine 780  
 Pentdyopent 131  
 Pentnucleotide 780  
 Pentobarbital sodium 780  
 Pentothal sodium 784  
 Peppermint oil of olfactory coefficient 529  
 Pepsin in gastric juice 238  
 Peptide in serum 109  
 Perandren 784  
 Perception stereognostic 296  
 Perchloroethylene 784  
 Iercomorph liver oil 780  
 Percorten 776  
 Perimetry clinical 510  
 Peripheral blood cell count in infants 86  
 Permeability of skin 469  
 Perspiration 487 See also  
 Sweat  
 insensible 487 488 489  
 Pertussis hemophilus vaccine 780  
 immune serum 780  
 Ietrolagar 780  
 Petrolatum liquid 780  
 pH See Hydrogen ion concentration  
 Phalanges of foot epiphyseal union 443  
 of hand epiphyseal union 443  
 Pharynodon 781  
 I hairygeal refl x 794  
 Phenacetin 773  
 Phenarsone sulfoxylate 781  
 Phenethyl 781  
 Phenobarbital 781  
 Phenocol effect on color of urine 361  
 Phenol(s) of blood 110  
 effect on color of urine 361  
 red excretion test of renal function 338 341  
 Phenol(s) in urine 3 2 35 379  
 Phenolphthalein 781  
 effect on color of urine 361  
 Phenolsulfonphthalein test fractional of renal function 338  
 Phenylamine in serum 108  
 Phenylalanine in urine 361  
 Phitonium 501  
 Phlorizin test of renal function 339 341  
 Phosphatase activity of liver 263  
 of prostate gland 384  
 alkaline test of liver function 273  
 of blood 179  
 during pregnancy 413  
 level alkaline test of liver function 272  
 in prostatic secretion 382  
 in seminal fluid 386  
 serum 180  
 Phosphate in urinary sediments 367  
 in urine 369  
 Phosphatid in gallbladder bile 275  
 in liver bile 264  
 Phosphatides in serum 189  
 Phospholipid(s) of blood 118  
 corpuscles 119  
 during pregnancy 413  
 in plasma 116  
 serum 115 116  
 in tissues 652  
 Phosphorus in amniotic fluid 421  
 in blood 163 164 165  
 in body 649 650  
 in bone 682  
 in cerebrospinal fluid 317 320  
 in contents of small intestine 245  
 daily dietary allowances 17  
 in dentin 682  
 in enamel 682 684  
 in feces 755 60  
 in foods 718-740 79-761  
 in human milk 419  
 in lymph 117  
 in pancreatic juice 284  
 in plasma 177  
 in prostatic secretion 382  
 in saliva 697 708  
 in seminal fluid 386  
 in serum 163 187 471  
 inorganic 337  
 in teeth 693  
 in urine 58 361  
 Photon 501  
 Physostigmine salicylate 781  
 Isocroton 781  
 Pierie's bone 443  
 Iues highest total acidity 710  
 Iigments in feces 264  
 of skin 468  
 Pile atonear 801

- Pilocarpine nitrate 781  
 Pineal gland weight of 641  
 Pitocin 781  
 Pitressin 781  
 Pituitary gland enolactase relations to placenta during pregnancy 416  
   measurements of 617  
   weight of 617  
   hormones anterior 407  
   posterior 761  
 Pituitrin 781  
 Pix carbonis 763  
 Placenta 470  
   endocrine relation to pituitary gland during pregnancy 416  
 Plague vaccine 781  
 Plantago seed 781  
 Plasma amino acids in 177  
   amylase 181  
   bicarbonate in 161  
   electrophoretic pattern of 10  
   calcium in 177  
   carbon dioxide in 159 159  
   161  
   tens on 159  
   carbonic acid in 161  
   elasticity in bone marrow 8  
   cholesterol during pregnancy 414  
   chlorides in 177  
   citric acid in 181  
   creatinine in 177  
   fibrin in 109  
   during pregnancy 414  
   fibrinogen 109  
   iron in 166  
   lipids in 116  
   nonprotein nitrogen in 177  
   normal human 81  
   phosphorus in 177  
   protein 101 177  
   components 107  
   in infants 104  
   nomogram for calculation of 9  
   pyruvic acid in 18  
   sugar in 177  
   total precipitation of 168  
   urea in 177  
   uric acid in 177  
   viscosity 11  
   volume 171  
 Plasmocytes in bone marrow 84  
 Platelets blood 66  
   count 65 66  
   diameter 6  
   during pregnancy 413  
   number 66  
   volume 67  
 Point motor 96  
 Poise law of distribution 801  
 Polymorphonuclears in bone marrow in pregnancy 87  
 Polyuria experimental 336  
 Pons and Krumholz classification of neutrophils 56  
 Pop corn highest total acidity 240  
 Pork highest total acidity 240  
 Porphyrin fluorescence spectrum 13  
 Porphobilinogen 134  
 Porphyrin(s) 179  
   absorption spectra 11  
   fluorescence spectra 13  
   physical constant 131  
   structural formulae 130  
   structure 179  
   in urine 36 369  
 Potassium Galtian test 371  
   perception 736  
   of renal pelvis 3 3  
 Potassium 801  
 Posterior horns of lateral ventricles 301  
 Posture effect on cardiac output 8  
   on electrocardiogram 11  
   respiration and 701  
 Potassium acetate 781  
   arsenic solution 781  
   bicarbonate 761  
   in blood 154 155 165  
   in body 649 650  
   bromide 781  
   in cells 153  
   in cerebrospinal fluid 317 3 0  
   chloride 761  
   in feces 58 60  
   in foods 741 742 743 744-747  
   in human milk 419  
   iodide 781  
   permanganate test of cerebrospinal fluid 319  
   in prostatic secretion 381  
   in salts 691 699  
   in serum 154 155 188  
   in skin 479  
   sodium tartrate 181  
   in tears 509  
   tolerance test 151  
   in urine 5 338 369  
   in water supplies 745  
 P R interval 8  
 Prandine 7 4  
 Pranturan 776  
 Pregnancy 406  
   androgens in 539  
   blood chemistry during 413  
   body weight changes during 415  
   chorionic gonadotrophin 572  
   effect on basal metabolism 555 593  
   on blood 407  
   on bone marrow counts 87  
   on cardiac output 6  
   on genital organs 406  
   on heart 407  
 Pregnancy endocrine(s) in 415  
   relations of pituitary gland and placenta 416  
   estrogen values in 500 5 1  
   food and nutritional requirements during 4 4  
   glucose tolerance test 142  
   gonadotrophin values 569 5 1  
   height of fundus uteri 406  
   ketosteroids in 542  
   lipids during 1 0  
   pregnanediol values 560 5 1  
   prolactin excretion 577  
   serum gonadotrophin value 571  
   tests of  
     interpretation 567  
     false-negative reactions 577  
     false-positive reactions 566  
   urea clearance in 337  
   uterus during 407 08  
   vaginal smear 506  
 Pregnandiol 507  
   excretion in pregnancy 560 801  
   structural formula 508  
   values 560  
   in pregnancy 81  
 Pregnenolone 507  
 Premolar teeth chronology of 634  
   eruption time 670  
   permanent eruption of 667 675 699  
   in 676  
   weight of 679  
 Pressure bite See Bite  
 Blood See Blood pressure of cerebrospinal fluid 314 315 370  
   negative required in petechial reaction of skin 6  
   required to rupture intestinal tract 751  
   secretory of liver bile 464  
   in sigmoid 511  
 Probable error 710  
   limitations of 13  
 Process excitation 11  
 Proctos test of sense of smell 5 8 379  
 Proerythroblasts in bone marrow 84  
 Progesterone 781  
   bio-assay 509  
   biochemistry 557  
   biological action 51  
   function in endometrium 562  
   physiology 519  
   source 51  
   structural formula 5 3  
 Progestin 781  
 Progestone 781  
 Progestoral 774

- Progranulocytes in bone marrow in pregnancy 87  
 Progynon B 777  
 Projection range of skin papillae 466  
 Prokaryocytes in bone marrow in pregnancy 87  
 Prolan A 564  
   B 564  
   excretion in pregnancy 572  
 Proline in serum 108  
   in urine 354  
 Proluton 781  
 Promyelocytes in bone marrow 81  
   in pregnancy 87  
 Pronation supination test 293  
 Propadrin hydrochloride 781  
 Propionic acid in sweat 485  
*Propolis* 674 675  
 Prostate gland 380  
   measurements of 642  
   phosphatase activity 382  
   secretion 381  
   size 380  
   weight 381 642 645  
 Prostatic granular cells 381  
   secretion 381  
   amount 382  
   chemical composition 382  
   pH 382  
 Prostigmine 779 781  
 Protargol 782  
 Protein(s) and amino acid tolerance tests 151 152  
   in amniotic fluid 420 421  
   blood 101  
   during pregnancy 413  
   relative dimensions of 102  
   calorie value 693  
   in cerebrospinal fluid 317  
   320 420  
   daily dietary allowances 716  
   in feces 258 280  
   in foods 718-740 753-761  
   in human milk, 419  
   in liver 263  
   in lymph 177  
   metabolism liver function tests 269  
   in pancreatic juice 278 284  
   plasma 101 107 177  
   in infants 104  
   nomogram for calculation of 97  
   in prostatic secretion 381  
   in saliva 698  
   in seminal fluid 381 346  
   serum 101 188 420 421  
   during pregnancy 414  
   fractionation of 101 103  
   amino acid composition 105  
   in infants 104 106  
   precipitation 106  
   refractometer values 98  
   in synovial fluid 458  
   in tears 508  
   test of liver function 273
- I rotein(s) in urine 355 357 369  
 I roteinase in duodenal juice 281  
 I roteinase base in serum 186  
 I rotemuria 356  
 I rothrombin blood norms for 67  
   level during pregnancy 415  
   test of liver function 271  
   273  
   time 67 68  
   one-stage method 69  
   two stage method 69  
 I rotein 801  
 I rotoporphyrin absorption spectra 132  
   fluorescence spectrum 137  
   physical constants 131  
   structural formula 130  
 I rotoporphyrin 9 type III 134  
 I seudoagglutination 73 74  
 I seudoglobulin in serum protein 103  
 I SP test 339 341  
 I psyllium seed 781  
 I teroylglutamic acid 764  
 I tyalin in saliva 699 700  
 I uddings highest total acidity 240  
 I udendum muliebre 307  
 I uerperium uterus in 419  
 I ulse normal at various ages 200  
   peripheral 5  
   rate body temperature and 200  
*I unctum proximum* 704  
*remotum* 704  
 I upillary reflex 294  
 I urine(s) bases in urine 309  
   concentration of foods, 751  
   in urine 352 355  
 I yramidon effect on color of urine 351  
 I yrethrum ointment 781  
 I ytribenzamine hydrochloride 781  
 I yridium effect on color of urine 351  
 I yridoxal 764  
 I yridoxamine 764  
 I yridoxime hydrochloride 764  
   781  
   in urine 369  
 I yrimidines in urine 355  
 I yruvic acid in blood 149
- QRS complex 6  
 Q T interval 11  
 Queckenstedt test for cerebrospinal fluid pressure 314  
 Quinaerine hydrochloride 781  
 Q uinidine sulfate 781  
 Q uinin 781
- RABIES vaccin 781  
 Race eruption of teeth and 667
- Radiation interaction with matter 800  
 Radioactivity 801  
 Radioisotopes 788  
 Irradiated units 789  
 Radium in body 653 798  
 Radius angle of articular surface 456  
   epiphyseal union 443  
 Range statistical 708  
 Rat test for pregnancy 565  
 Rate heart normal 5  
 Ratings visual efficiency 498  
 Ratio Addis 333  
   albumin globulin 107  
   in infants 106  
   cardiothoracic 73  
   in infants 24  
   erythro-myeloid 83  
   urea 337  
 Rations Army nutritive value 771  
 Reaction(s) chain 799  
   electrical in motor muscle tests 97  
   of muscles 296  
   isoagglutination 73  
   petechial of skin 61  
   pressure required 67  
   resonance 801  
   Takata Ara 273 319  
   van den Bergh 760  
   vestibular 572  
 Reading card American Medical Association rating 801  
 Reflex abdominal 205  
   in infants 298  
   Achilles 294  
   biceps 294  
   femoris 295  
   brachioradial 294  
   carotid sinus 7  
   corneal 294  
   cremasteric 295  
   gag 791  
   gluteal 295  
   grasping 793  
   lacrimal 289  
   lid 794  
   mandibular 294  
   Moro 293  
   patellar 294  
   pharyngeal 794  
   plantar 94  
   in infants 797  
   pupillary 231  
   scapular 795  
   scapulohumeral 795  
   sucking 298  
   triceps 294  
 Refraction index of of dental tissues 680  
 Refractive errors age prevalence 704  
   index of serum 185  
 Regression estrogen effect with 515  
 Rem 801

- Renal blood flow test of renal function 337 340  
calices 118  
concentration of nonprotein nitrogen blood components 337  
to 334  
of Isberg and Newburgh 333  
of Lashmet and Newburgh 333  
of specific solids 337  
dilution to 334  
function Addison's ratio 333  
McLean's index 333  
quantitative formulation of maximum specific gravity 336  
tests of 330  
acid alkali 339  
alizarin 339  
balance 339  
blood constituent 337  
depending upon urinary specific gravity 334 336  
on urinary volume 337  
diaz 340  
foreign substance excretion 338  
hippuric acid synthesis 340  
indigo-carmin excretion 338  
methylene blue excretion 338 341  
phenol red excretion 339  
phlorizin 339  
pelvis 338  
position 338  
Rennin in gastric juice 237  
Rep 801  
Reproduction 407  
Resistance capillary 61  
Resonance reaction 801  
Resonance 782  
Respiration external 199  
internal 199  
postural and 191  
of skin 476  
Respiratory rate 199  
body temperature and 190  
in infants 191  
Reticular length and width 466  
Reticular cells 50  
in bone marrow 55  
count at various altitudes 51  
during pregnancy 411  
in peripheral blood of infants 86  
Reticuloendothelial cells in bone marrow 54 85  
Reticulum in bone marrow of infants 86  
Retraction clot 116  
Retrospect of uterus 399  
Retroflexion of uterus 399  
Retroversion of uterus 399  
Rh agglutinin 75  
antisera 76  
blood types heredity 78  
factors 76  
types 75  
Rhadinocytes in bone marrow in pregnancy 57  
Rh 801  
Rhubarb effect on color of feces 35  
of urine 351  
Rhythm alpha 305 307  
beta 306  
of heart 3  
Rib trace metals in 673  
Riboflavin 76 78  
in blood 137  
daily dietary allowances 716  
in foods 718 740 749-761  
in urine 369  
Rice pol lungs extra 78  
Rodium 782  
Rochelle salt 781  
Roentgen 801  
Roentgen-equivalent man 801  
Roentgen-equivalent physical 801  
Roentgen per hour at one-meter 801  
Root of teeth completion of 659  
tip density distribution 68  
Roenberg test of live function 68 273  
of olfactory coefficient 529  
Rotation of eyefields of recording 50  
test 50  
Rutherford 807  
SACCHARIN 82  
Sajodin 75  
Sal volatile 774  
Saliva 697-701  
activated 698  
analysis of 698  
mean values 698  
rate of flow 696  
solids in 698  
amino acid concentration 698  
amylase in 699  
chemistry of 698  
glucose in 699  
inorganic constituents 697  
salts in 697  
mineral analysis 699  
mixed analyses of 698  
solids in 698  
normal values 697  
organic constituents 697  
pH of 697 699 700  
ptyalin in 699  
rate of flow 695  
resting 695  
analysis of 698  
Saliva resting rate of flow 696  
solids in 698  
solids in 697  
specific gravity 697  
volume of 697  
secreted per day 176  
Salol effect on color of urine 351  
Salophen 781  
Salt daily dietary allowances 717  
Salvarsan 774 76  
Salyrgan theophylline 79 78  
Sanocrysin 718  
Santonin effect on color of feces 205  
of urine 351  
Sassafras oil of olfactory coefficient 9  
Scalp hair counts 463  
Scapular region petechial reaction in child 62  
Scarlet fever immune serum human 78  
streptococcus toxin 787  
Scillaren 782  
Schilling classification of neuropathology 56  
hemogram 56  
index 56  
Schneider index 7  
Scopolamine hydrobromide 78  
Sebaceous glands 463  
Sebum 469  
chemical composition 490  
Sedimentation 78  
Secretion gastric 25 See also Gastric secretion  
of liver bile 204  
prostatic 381  
seminal vesicle 379  
vaginal 399  
Secretory pressure of liver bile 264  
Sediments of alkaline urine 367 366  
Sedimentation methods 49  
rate 48  
Segmenters in bone marrow 84  
Semen 384  
ejaculation 384  
Seminal ducts 3  
fluid 384  
chemistry 385  
formation in 388  
physical properties 385  
physicochemical properties 385  
vesicle 379  
measurements of 64  
secretion 379  
weight of 645  
Semiferous tubules 377  
Senna 73  
effect on color of feces 755  
of urine 351  
Sensitivity 215  
gnostic 796  
in infants 98



- Septa pellucida 301  
 Serine in saliva 698  
   in serum 108  
 Serum albumin 102 107  
   in infants 106  
   in plasma 107  
   amino acid composition of  
     protein fractions 108  
   ammonia in 186  
   amylase 181 186 282  
   antidysenteric 774  
   anticyrripeloid 774  
   antimeningococci 774  
   antipneumococcus 774  
   ascorbic acid in 186  
   base proteinate in 186  
   bilirubin in 186 266  
   calcium in 155 156 186 649  
     651  
   carbon dioxide capacity 160  
     186  
     content 169 186  
     tension 169  
   carotenoids in 182  
   carotin in 186  
   chlorides in 186 648  
   chlorine content 649 651  
   cholesterol in 114 116  
     tests of liver function 271  
     273  
   conductivity during preg-  
     nancy 413  
   copper in 186  
   creatinine in 186  
   creatinine in 187  
   estrogens in 549  
     values in pregnancy 550  
   fat content 649 651  
   freezing point depression 99  
     185  
   globulin 102  
     in infants 106  
   gonadotrophins in 565  
     values in pregnancy 571  
   hematocrit reading 186  
   icterus index 187  
   indican in 182 187  
   inorganic phosphorus con-  
     centration test of renal  
     function 337 341  
   iodine protein bound 169  
   iron in 166 167 187  
   lecithin in 189  
   lipase 287 283  
   lipids in 116 188  
   magnesium in 187 649 651  
   nitrogen in 187  
     partition of albumin 109  
   normal human 782  
   pancreatic enzymes in 282  
   phosphatase 180  
   phosphatides in 189  
   phosphorus in 163 187 649  
     651  
   potassium in 154 155 188  
     649 651  
   protein 101 189  
     calcium binding power  
       156
- Serum protein during preg-  
   nancy 414  
   fractionation 101 103  
   in infants 104 106  
   precipitation 106  
   refractometer values 98  
   serum calcium of 166  
   refractive index 96 98 185  
   specific conductivity 96  
   gravity 96 145 421  
   sodium in 164 166 188  
     649 651  
   sugar in 188  
   sulfur in 164 188 649  
   total base 96 98 154  
     during pregnancy 413  
     solids 470 421  
   urea in 189  
     nitrogen in 189  
   uric acid in 189  
   viscosity 99 186  
   volume 186  
   water in 185 649 651  
     specific gravity of blood  
       and 93 94  
     weight of 651  
 Sexendocrine cycle female 545  
 eruption of teeth and 665  
 organs development of 645  
 Shadow cardiac measurement  
   of 18  
   dimensions in infants 23  
 Shoulder range of motion 449  
 Sickle cell trait 41  
 Sicking trait in Negroes 43  
 Sigma See Standard deviation  
 Sigmoid pressure in 252  
 Silicates in urine 369  
 Silver in blood 167  
   in feces 259  
   in food 259  
   nitrate 782  
   protein 766  
   in rib 653  
   in urine 361  
   wire rate of passage through  
     digestive tract 261  
 Sinus(es) 530  
   arrhythmia 3  
   bradycardia 3  
 Somme 782  
 Skeleton 436  
   anterior view 436  
   calcium content 649 651  
   chlorine content 649 651  
   fat content 649 651  
   magnesium content 649  
     651  
   mineralization 445  
   phosphorus content 649 651  
   potassium content 649 651  
   sodium content 649 651  
   sulfur content 651  
   water content 649 651  
   weight of 651  
 Skin 466  
   absorption by 469  
   aging of 468  
   anatomy 466
- Skin bacterial flora 480 491  
   blood vessels 467 468  
   calcium content 649 651  
   capillary blood pressure 47  
   chemistry of 479  
   chloride in 648  
   chlorine content 619 651  
   cold points 470  
   color 467  
   dermatomes 479 478 474  
     475  
   development after birth 647  
   of face thickness 466  
   fat content 649 651  
   Langer's lines 476  
   lines of normal tension 476  
   lymphatics 477 478  
   magnesium content 649 651  
   measurements 460  
   nitrogen values 450  
   pain points 470  
     density and threshold  
       471  
   papillae 466  
   permeability 469  
   petichial reaction 61  
     pressure required 67  
   phospholipid content 657  
   phosphorus content 649 651  
   potassium content 649  
   respiration 476  
   segmental innervation 43  
     474  
   sodium content 649 651  
   sterol content 652  
   sulfur content 651  
   temperature 469  
   thickness 466  
   two-point discrimination  
     796  
   warm points 470  
     density of 471  
   water content 649 651  
   weight of 651  
 Skull of fetus 495  
   ossification 458  
 Sleep effect on electroen-  
   cephalogram 311  
 Slow waves in electroenceph-  
   alogram 306  
 Smallpox vaccine 782  
 Small tests of 578  
   Elsberg 530  
   Froetz 578 579  
 Snellen's test types 496  
 Sobisminol 786  
 Sodeman Engelhardt test of  
   renal function 334 341  
 Sodium acid phosphate 787  
   in amniotic fluid 40 421  
   ascorbate 782  
   bicarbonate 782  
   biphosphate 787  
   in blood 154 155 166  
   in body 649 651  
   bromide 782  
   in cells 156  
   in cerebrospinal fluid 317  
     320 470

- Sodium chloride 782  
 in amniotic fluid 470  
 in cerebrospinal fluid 420  
 concentration of serum during pregnancy 413  
 excretion test 157  
 in saliva 697  
 in serum 40  
 in sweat 488  
 in synovial fluid 458  
 in tears 508  
 citrate 782  
 iodide 78  
 in feces 208 960  
 in foods 741 74 743 744-747  
 in human milk 419  
 iodide 78  
 lactate 78  
 in liver bile 264  
 morrhuate injection 787  
 nitrite 78  
 in pancreatic juice 778  
 perborate 783  
 phosphate 783  
 in prostatic secretion 382  
 selenate 783  
 in saliva 697 699  
 in serum 154 15 188 471  
 in skin 479  
 sulfate 783  
 precipitation of blood serum proteins 106  
 sulfite precipitation of blood serum proteins 106  
 in tears 508  
 thiocyanate 783  
 thiosulfate 783  
 urates in urinary sediments 367  
 in urine 255 308 369  
 in water supplies 748  
 Soles of feet eccrine glands in 476  
 Solids total in synovial fluid 458  
 in tears 508  
 Sound(s) level 3  
 levels in decibels 518  
 Specific activity 802  
 gravity of blood 93  
 factors 93  
 of glycerol bile 276  
 of gastric juice 238  
 of liver bile 264  
 maximum quantitative formulation in renal function 336  
 of prostatic secretion 38  
 of serum 95 180  
 water 93 94  
 of synovial fluid 458  
 Spectra absorption of hemoglobin 125  
 of porphyrins 13  
 Spectrum electromagnetism 790  
 Spermatocoid topographic relations 326  
 Spermatozoa 389  
 chemistry of 392  
 Spermatozoa morphology 390  
 motility 391 39  
 types 390 391  
 urinary 393  
 Spermatozoal count 390  
 Sphenoid sinus 530  
 Spherocytes 47  
 Spinach effect on color of feces 450  
 Spinal accessory nerve 29  
 cord chloride in 618  
 length of 611  
 phospholipid content 65  
 weight of 611  
 Spine cervical range of motion 416  
 lumbar range of motion 447  
 range of motion 447  
 Sphingomyelin in blood 118  
 Spleen aluminum in 603  
 calcium content 649 601  
 chlorine content 649 601  
 copper in 653  
 fat content 649 601  
 lead in 653  
 magnesium content 649 601  
 manganese in 653  
 measurements of 611  
 phospholipid content 652  
 phosphorus content 649 651  
 silver in 603  
 sterol content 65  
 sulfur content 649  
 tin in 653  
 water content at 649 651  
 weight of 611 601  
 in children 643  
 Spot localization 296  
 Standard(s) deviation 708  
 computation of 709  
 from mean probability of 710  
 uses of 710  
 error 710  
 estimation of 711  
 of mean 71  
 tables of 812-817  
 Staphylococcus antitoxin 783  
 toxoid 783  
 vaccine 783  
 Starch caloric value 593  
 Statistical data requirements for 713  
 measures 700  
 methods 705-714  
 purpose 700  
 Steel relative hardness 686  
 687 688  
 Stellar phosphate in urinary sediments 367  
 Sternum lead in 60  
 Site of content of tissues 652  
 Stibophen 777 783  
 Stibic acid 776 783  
 Stimulation caloric method 594  
 Kobrak method 54  
 Stomach 25  
 aluminum in 603  
 anatomic divisions 7  
 copper in 653  
 gastric contents and secretions 270  
 lead in 603  
 manganese in 603  
 phospholipid content 60  
 powdered 783  
 shape 277  
 in infants 270  
 tin in 73  
 Stovarsol 73 743  
 Stramonium 783  
 Stratum granulosum thickness 466  
 Strength relation to weight 595  
 of women compared with that of men 530  
 Streptomycin 63  
 Stroma of bone marrow 79  
 Strophanthum 783  
 G 780  
 Strychnine sulfate 783  
 Sulfanilic acid 783  
 Sucrose tolerance test 147 150  
 Sudoriparous glands bodily distribution 487  
 number 486  
 size 486  
 Sugar(s) absorption from small intestine 45  
 in amniotic fluid 420 41  
 blood 117 188  
 concentrations of 118  
 in cerebrospinal fluid 317  
 3040  
 evacuation time 240  
 highest total acidity 240  
 loaf cells 4  
 in lymph 177  
 in pancreatic juice 284  
 in plasma 17  
 in saliva 697  
 in serum 188 40 471  
 in skin 479  
 in synovial fluid 458  
 in tears 506  
 in urine 307  
 fetal 40  
 Sulfadiazine 783  
 Sulfaguanidine 783  
 Sulfamezole 783  
 Sulfanilamide 783  
 Sulfapyridine 783  
 Sulfapyridine 783  
 Sulfarsphenamine 83  
 Sulfasuxidine 783  
 Sulfathiazole 783  
 excretion test of renal function 338 341  
 Sulfhemoglobin absorption spectra 125  
 Sulfocyanate in saliva 697  
 Sulfobenzene structural formula 14  
 Sulfonil effect on color of urine 301

- Sulfonethylmethane 783  
Sulfonmethane 783  
  effect on color of urine 351  
Sulfur in blood 164 188  
  in body 649 650  
  in feces 258 260  
  in foods 741 742 743  
  in nails 492  
  in saliva 697  
  in serum 164 185  
  in urine 208 361 369  
Sulphadial 783  
Sulpharsphenamine bismuth 775  
Sulphonal 783  
Suprarenalin 783  
Suramin sodium 783  
Surface area and vital capacity  
  of men 214  
  of women 216  
  measures of 812  
Sweat 487  
  androgenic substances in 489  
  chemical composition 437 489  
  glands See *Sudoriparous glands*  
Sylvius aqueduct of 304  
Synovial fluid 458  
  differential cell count 459  
Syntropan 783  
Systole electrical 11
- T wave 10  
Takata Ara reaction of cerebrospinal fluid 319  
  test of liver function 273  
Tannic acid 784  
Target cells 42 43  
Tarsal bones development 442  
Tartar emetic 774  
Tears 508  
Teeth See also *Dentition*  
  calcification of 658  
  canine See *Canine*  
  carious composition of enamel 684  
  fluorine content 685  
  chemical analysis 683  
  chemistry of 684-685  
  completion of crown 684  
  of root 683  
  composition of enamel 684  
  crowns relative hardness 686  
  cuspid See *Cuspid*  
  deciduous dimensions of 671  
  eruption of 609 662 663 664 665  
  missing 676  
  retained 676  
  enamel See *Enamel*  
  eruption of according to age 659  
  diet and 667  
  disease and 677  
  in premature children 667
- Teeth eruption race and 667  
  sex and 665  
  time 670  
  filling amalgam relative hardness 688  
  fluorine content 685  
  formation and eruption of 657-681  
  incisor See *Incisor*  
  inorganic constituents 683  
  longitudinal section 657  
  missing combinations of 675 676  
  congenitally 674  
  number of 675  
  molar See *Molar*  
  mottled fluorine content 664 680  
  peg shaped 675  
  permanent dimensions of 672  
  eruption of 667 668 669  
  number erupted 665  
  percentage of children with 676  
  weights of 679  
  relative hardness 686-688  
  weights 677  
Temperature basal 636  
  body age and 200  
  axillary determination 636  
  normal 635-637  
  oral determination 635  
  pulse rate and 200  
  rectal determination 636  
  respiratory rate and 200  
  equivalents 816  
  graph of 401  
  of skin 469  
Tension normal lines of 476  
Test(s) acid alkali 339  
  adrenalin 146  
  tolerance 145  
  Albarran 336  
  alkaline phosphatase 272  
  anovena 11  
  Aschheim Zondek 565 566  
  ascorubin S 268  
  balance of renal function 69  
  Barany 500  
  bilirubin tolerance 149 151 67  
  blood constituent of renal function 337  
  prothrombin level 71  
  bromsulphalein excretion 267  
  caloric 500  
  capillary resistance or fragility 61  
  cardiac function 6  
  cephalic cholesterol flocculation 269 270  
  chloride balance 339  
  for chorionic gonadotropin 665  
  colloidal benzoin 319  
  gold 270 271 319  
  mastic 319
- Test(s) colloidal red 771  
  concentration of Isberg and Newburgh 335  
  of Lashmet and Newburgh 335  
  creatinine balance 339  
  clearance 331  
  endogenous 337  
  diazotization 340  
  diuretic clearance 33  
  Elsberg 530  
  exercise tolerance 7  
  fat tolerance 147 149 151  
  finger to finger 293  
  finger to nose 33  
  Fishberg's concentration 335  
  dilution 335  
  foreign substance excretion of renal function 339  
  Friedman 560 568  
  frog of pregnancy 665  
  galactose tolerance 145 149  
  intravenous 269  
  oral 268  
  Galvanic 521  
  glucose tolerance 139  
  Evton Rose 143  
  intravenous 144 145  
  one-dose 141  
  oral 139  
  in pregnancy 142  
  glucose insulin tolerance 145 146  
  glycerol tolerance 145 149  
  Grahe's for utricular function 517  
  hearing 517  
  heel to-knee 293  
  heel to toe 294  
  of hemostatic function of blood 59  
  hippuric acid synthesis 340  
  indigo-carmin excretion 339  
  insulin of gastric secretion 35 209  
  tolerance 145 146  
  insulin adrenalin tolerance 145 146  
  insulin clearance 331  
  lactic acid 269  
  tolerance 147  
  levulose tolerance 147 149 269  
  liver function 266  
  dependent on protein metabolism alteration 269  
  related to carbohydrate metabolism 708  
  to detoxifying activities 272  
  to dye excretion 267  
  to lipid metabolism 271  
Lundsgaard's modification of Volhard's test 335  
methylene blue excretion 338 341

- Test(s) Mosenthal volume-specific gravity 336  
 motor muscle 297  
 nitrogen tolerance 149  
 phenol red excretion 373  
 phenolsulfonylthaleim fractional 334  
 phlorhizin 339  
 potassium permanganate 319  
 tolerance 151  
 pregnancy 56  
 Proetz 528 599  
 pronation supination 793  
 protein and amino acid tolerance 151 152  
 Queckenstedt 314  
 rat 56  
 renal blood flow 332  
 clearance 330  
 concentration 334  
 Addis and Shavsky 334  
 of specific solids 337  
 dilution 334  
 function 330  
 depending upon urinary specific gravity 334 336  
 on urinary volume 330  
 rose bengal 298  
 rotation 570  
 Schirmer 508  
 serum cholesterol 271 273  
 of smell 29  
 Soderman Engelhardt 334  
 sodium chloride excretion 152  
 sucrose tolerance 147 150  
 sulfathiazole excretion 338  
 thymol flocculation 20  
 turbidity 20  
 tubular excretory mass calculation 337  
 type chart American Medical Association 497 500  
 Snellen's 496  
 tyrosine tolerance 271  
 urea balance 339  
 clearance 330 331  
 concentration 337  
 vestibular apparatus 570  
 visual response of infants 507  
 Volhard dilution-concentration 335  
 water excretion 151  
 xylose concentration 337
- Taste(s) 316  
 calcium content 649  
 chloride in 648  
 chlorine content 649  
 fat content 649  
 magnesium content 649  
 Teles 316  
 measurements of 647  
 phospholipid content 652  
 volume 315  
 weight of 647 645
- Testosterone 533 536  
 propionate 54  
 structural formula 536  
 Testoviron 784  
 Tetanus antitoxin 764  
 toxoid 764  
 Tetrachloromethylene 784  
 Tetraonal effect on color of urine 331  
 Thalline effect on color of urine 331  
 Theelin 543 777 784  
 Theclol 543 777 784  
 Theobromine and sodium acetate 784  
 Theocalcin 784  
 Theocin 784  
 Theophylline 784  
 ethylether amine 774  
 Thermal neutron 60  
 Thiamine 762  
 in blood 137  
 daily dietary allowance 716  
 in foods 716-740 759-761  
 hydrochloride 784  
 in urine 369  
 Thigh ecrine gland in 496  
 of skin on 499  
 skin temperature 499  
 Thiobismol 784  
 Thiopental sodium 784  
 Thioracil 784  
 Thoracic index 190 197  
 Thoraco-abdominal cavity dimensions in infants 23  
 Thorax ecrine glands in 456  
 Threonine in serum 109  
 in urine 334  
 Threshold acuity measurements of hearing 519  
 Thromboplastin 764  
 Thumb range of motion 452  
 Thyloquinone 784  
 Thymol flocculation test of liver function 270 273  
 turbidity test of liver function 270 3  
 Thymus gland weight of 642  
 Thyroid 311  
 gland chlorine content 649  
 fat content 649  
 magnesium content 649  
 measurements of 647  
 phosphorus content 649  
 weight of 64  
 Thyroxine 764  
 Tibia development 443  
 epiphyseal union 443  
 variations in 444  
 Time III edging 59 60 61  
 venostasis 59 60  
 circulation 729  
 clotting 63  
 coagulation 61 64  
 of ovulation 401  
 peripheral 67 68  
 relations of electrocardiograms 11
- Tin in blood 167  
 in feces 259  
 in food 259  
 in long bones 653  
 in rib 653  
 in urine 361 369  
 Tissues chloride in 645  
 Titters agglutinin 72  
 isoagglutinin 72  
 Toenails rate of growth 491  
 Toes range of motion 456  
 Tolerance dose 502  
 tests glucose 139  
 Tolyxin 779  
 Tomato seeds rate of passage through digestive tract 251  
 Tonus gastric 577  
 of small intestine 543  
 Tooth system development after birth 646 See also TDA  
 Total base in blood serum 95  
 97  
 Totatone 784  
 Touch perception 295  
 Tracer 807  
 Trach 193  
 Tracheobronchial tree dimensions 194  
 Trait sickle cell 41  
 sickling in Negroes 43  
 Transmutation isometric 800  
 Transmuton 802  
 Triasyn tablets 784  
 Trichinella extract 784  
 Tridione 784  
 Trigminal nerve 289  
 Triglyceride in plasma 115  
 Trihydroxy stria 543  
 Trimethicon 784  
 Trional 783 784  
 effect on color of urine 331  
 Triple phosphate in urinary sediments 36  
 Tropia 506  
 Troy weight 814  
 Trunk sweat gland distribution 487  
 Trypsinamide 764  
 Trypsin in duodenal juice 79  
 793  
 Tryptophane in saliva 695 699  
 in serum 108  
 in urine 354  
 Tubes uterine 399  
 Tube culinoid 784  
 purified protein derivative 784  
 Tubular excretory mass calculation of renal function 342  
 index 340  
 Tubules seminiferous 377  
 Turkey highest total acidity 49  
 Turpentine oil of olfactory coefficient 59  
 Typhoid vaccine 784  
 Typhus epidemic vaccine 784

- Tyrosine in serum 109  
   tolerance test of liver function 271  
   in urine 301  
 Tyrothricin 785
- U waves 12
- Ulna epiphyseal union 413
- Ultraviolet rays wavelength 790
- Umbilical region petechial reaction in children 62
- Undulant fever vaccine 785
- Urea 780  
   balance test of renal function 339 341  
   in blood 109 110 111 189  
   clearance in pregnancy 332  
   test of renal function 330 331 340  
   concentration test of renal function 337 341  
   in lymph 177  
   nitrogen of blood 110 188 337  
   in cerebrospinal fluid 318 320  
   in gastric juice 238  
   in pancreatic juice 278 281  
   in saliva 697  
   in serum 188  
   in skin 480  
   in plasma 177  
   ratio 337 341  
   in seminal fluid 386  
   in serum 188  
   in sweat 488  
   in tears 508  
   in urine 352 369
- Urease in gastric juice 238
- Ureter(s) 325 343  
   diameter 343 344  
   length 343
- Urethane 780
- Urethra 325 347  
   female 349  
   male 347  
   anterior 348  
   diameter 347  
   membranous 348  
   posterior 347  
   prostatic length 345
- Uroguin 785
- Uric acid in amniotic fluid 421  
   of blood 110 189 337  
   in gastric juice 238  
   in lymph 177  
   nitrogen of blood 110  
   of skin 480  
   in pancreatic juice 278  
   in plasma 177  
   in saliva 697  
   in serum 188 471  
   in sweat 488  
   in synovial fluid 458  
   in urinary sediments 367  
   in urine 352 355 369
- Urinary androgens 530  
   artefacts 364  
   epithelium 363  
   erythrocytes 364  
   hormones 364  
   leukocytes 364  
   molds 364  
   specific gravity renal functions tests depending upon 344 336  
   spermatozoa 363  
   system 300  
   topographic relations 300  
   vitamins 363  
   volume renal function tests depending on 336
- Urine acid sediments of 362  
   alkaline sediments of 360 367  
   appearance 300  
   bio assay for androgens 537  
   for 17 ketosteroids 537 538  
   cellular elements 365  
   chemical composition 352  
   color 300  
   effect of drugs on 351  
   cryoscopy 338  
   estrogens in 549 552  
   excretion 419  
   values in pregnancy 400 651  
   fetal composition 420  
   formed elements 365  
   galactose in 147  
   gonadotrophins in 564 563 569  
   values 470  
   inorganic constituents 258 358  
   minerals in 209 358  
   nitrogenous substances 352  
   odor 350  
   pancreatic enzymes in 284  
   pH 351  
   physical characteristics 350  
   pregnandiol excretion in pregnancy 661  
   reaction 351  
   reducing substances 369  
   specific gravity 301 365  
   total solids 302 368 369  
   urobilinogen in 467  
   volume 301 368  
   in children 300
- Urinol 300
- Urobilin in blood 110  
   in urine 369
- Urobilinogen content of feces 200  
   excretion in feces and urine 267  
   test of liver function 273  
   in urine 367 363
- Urogenital tract male 306
- Uroporphyrin absorption spectra 130  
   fluorescence spectrum 132  
   physical constants 131
- Uroporphyrin structural formula 100  
   type I 134  
   type III 131
- Urotropin 779 785
- Uterine tubes 399
- Uterus 399  
   calcium content 649  
   changes induced by pregnancy 406  
   chlorine content 649  
   during pregnancy 407 409  
   fundus of height during pregnancy 406  
   height post partum 419  
   magnesium content 649  
   measurements of 642  
   phosphorus content 649  
   potassium content 649  
   in puerperium 419  
   sodium content 649  
   weight of 647 645
- Utricular function Grahe's test 517
- Uva ursi: effect on color of urine 351
- VAGINA 397  
   changes induced by pregnancy 408  
   vaginal secretion 398  
   pH 333  
   smear method for estrogen effect 502  
   for ovarian function 552  
   in pregnancy 556
- Vagus nerve 291
- Valine in saliva 698  
   in serum 108  
   in urine 354
- Van den Bergh reaction 266
- Vanilla olfactory coefficient 20
- Variability measures of 708
- Variation coefficient of computation of 709
- Vas deferens 377
- Veal highest total acidity 240
- Vegetables highest total acidity 240
- Venostasis bleeding time 59 60
- Ventricle(s) fourth 302  
   lateral 301  
   measurements in postero-anterior view 300  
   third 300
- Ventricular complexes in in direct leads of electrocardiograms 10  
   system dorsal view 303  
   measurements 300  
   right lateral view 300
- Ventriculin 763 785
- Ventriculography 300
- Verdohemoglobin 128  
   absorption spectra 105
- Veronal 775 780

- Vertebral column position of nerve roots relative to 29  
 Vesicles seminal 39  
 Vestibular apparatus 521  
   tests 520  
   reactions 520  
 Vibration perception 296  
 Vinbarbital sodium 782  
 Violesterol 780 82  
 Viruses relative sizes 817  
 Viscosity of blood 99 182  
   of cerebrospinal fluid 315 320  
   of plasma 93  
   of serum 99 182  
   of synovial fluid 48  
 Visible rays wavelength 95  
 Vision near 500  
 Visual acuity 495 499 503  
   of children 500 507  
   equivalents 498  
   in infants 500  
   relation to visual efficiency 499  
   efficiency ratings 495  
   fields 509  
   extent of white 511  
   tests response of infants to 507  
 Vital capacity 204 Or 207 208  
   age and 205  
   of men body weight and 218  
   standing height and 210  
   surface area and 214  
   sex differences 206  
   of women body weight and 20  
   standing height and 17  
   surface area and 216  
 Vitamin(s) A 787 795  
   in blood 13  
   daily dietary allowances 716  
   in foods 718-740 750-761  
   in urine 364 367  
   antineurotic 767  
   antipellagra 763  
   antirachitic 768  
   antiscorbutic 766  
   antisterility 79  
   antixerophthalmic 767  
   B 78  
   complex 762  
   B<sub>1</sub> 784 See also Thiamine  
   in blood 137  
   in urine 369  
   L<sub>2</sub> 782 See also Riboflavin  
   in blood 137  
   in urine 369  
   B<sub>3</sub> 764 781  
   in urine 369  
 Vitamin(s) in blood 137  
   C 766 782 See also Ascorbic acid  
   in blood 137  
   in cerebrospinal fluid 316  
   coagulation 770  
   D 768 782  
   daily dietary allowances 716  
   in urine 364 367  
   E 769  
   in blood 137  
   in urine 364 369  
   fat soluble 767  
   in urine 364  
   in foods 718-740  
   G See Riboflavin  
   H See Biotin  
   K 710 779 782  
   daily dietary allowances 717  
   in urine 364 369  
   mixed 782  
   P 767  
   summary 76 770  
   urinary 363  
   in urine 367  
   water soluble 767  
 Vocal cords false 193  
 Voice test of hearing 517  
 Volhard a concentration test of renal function 340  
   dilution-concentration test of renal function 335  
   dilution test of renal function 340  
 Volume in measures of 813  
 Volume specific gravity test of renal function 336  
 Vulva 397  
 Warm points of skin 470  
   density of 471  
 Water in amniotic fluid 40  
   balance 173 174 175  
   in blood 182  
   in body 649 650  
   in cerebrospinal fluid 40  
   daily dietary allowances 717  
   excretion at 151  
   in feces 525 526 527  
   in foods 718 740  
   in gastric juice 38  
   in human milk 419  
   in pancreatic juice 784  
   in prostatic secretion 38  
   in sweat 697  
   in serum 182 40  
   specific gravity of blood and 93 94  
   in skin 479  
   supplies potassium ions 748  
 Water supplies sodium contents 748  
   in sweat 168  
   in synovial fluid 458  
   in teeth 783  
   terminal in a run 109  
   in urine 369  
 Waves in electroencephalogram 306  
 Weight(s) atomic international 796  
   of body 620 651  
   changes during pregnancy 415  
   and vital capacity of men 718  
   of women 20  
   of children 599  
   calorie for 587  
   domestic 814  
   of testes 269  
   of kidneys 36  
   and measures of equivalents 818  
   in measures of 813  
   normal standards 597-634  
   for adults 631  
   for children 597  
   relative of enamel to dentin and cementum 677  
   specific of dental tissues 650  
   tables of 814-817  
   based on maximum ion gravity 632  
   for men 633  
   for women 634  
   of teeth 677  
   useful equivalents 818  
 Weight height normal 535  
 Width weight tables 697  
   values 601  
 Women strength of 535  
 Wrist range of motion 401  
 X-ray(s) analysis of chambers of heart 74  
   anatomy of heart 16  
   examination of heart postero-anterior view 16  
   right anterior oblique position 16  
   wavelength 792  
   X-ray olfactory coefficient 929  
 Xylose concentration test of renal function 337 341  
 YATHEN 776  
 Yeast growth factor 763  
 Yeastlike organisms in skin 451  
 Young a rule of dosage 773



